ACURA

Service Manual 1994

INTRODUCTION

How to Use This Manual

This manual is divided into 23 sections. The first page of each section is marked with a black tab that lines up with its corresponding thumb index tab on this page and the back cover. You can quickly find the first page of each section without looking through a full table of contents. The symbols printed at the top corner of each page can also be used as a quick reference system.

Each section includes:

- 1. A table of contents, or an exploded view index showing:
 - Parts disassembly sequence.
 - Bolt torques and thread sizes.
 - Page references to descriptions in text.
- 2. Disassembly/assembly procedures and tools.
- 3. Inspection.
- 4. Testing/troubleshooting.
- 5. Repair.
- 6. Adjustments.

Special Information -

A WARNING Indicates a strong possibility of severe personal injury or loss of life if instructions are not followed.

CAUTION: Indicates a possibility of personal injury or equipment damage if instructions are not followed.

NOTE: Gives helpful information.

CAUTION: Detailed descriptions of standard workshop procedures, safety principles and service operations are not included. Please note that this manual contains warnings and cautions against some specific service methods which could cause PERSONAL INJURY, damage a vehicle or make it unsafe. Please understand that these warnings cannot cover all conceivable ways in which service, whether or not recommended by HONDA, might be done, or of the possible hazardous consequences of every conceivable way, nor could HONDA investigate all such ways. Anyone using service procedures or tools, whether or not recomended by HONDA, must satisfy himself thoroughly that neither personal safety nor vehicle safety will be jeopardized.

All information contained in this manual is based on the latest product information available at the time of printing. We reserve the right to make changes at any time without notice. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise, without the prior written permission of the publisher. This includes test, figures and tables.

First Edition 7/93 1448 pages All Rights Reserved Specifications Apply to U.S.A. and Canada

HONDA MOTOR CO.,LTD. Service Publication office

Special Tools **Specifications** Maintenance **Engine**

Cooling

*General Info

Fuel and Emissions

*Transaxle

*Steering

Suspension

*Brakes (Including ABS)

*Body

*Heater and Air Conditioner

*Electrical (Including SRS)



specs



























As sections with * include SRS components, special precautions are required when servicing.

SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM (SRS)

The Integra SRS includes a driver's airbag, located in the steering wheel hub. In addition, all models except the RS model for Canada have a front passenger's airbag located in the dashboard above the glove box. Information necessary to safely service the SRS is included in this Service Manual. Items marked with an asterisk (*) on the contents page include, or are located near, SRS components. Servicing, disassembling or replacing these items will require special precautions and tools, and should therefore be done by an authorized Acura dealer.

A WARNING

- To avoid rendering the SRS inoperative, which could lead to personal injury or death in the event of a severe
 frontal collision, all SRS service work must be performed by an authorized Acura dealer.
- Improper service procedures, including incorrect removal and installation of the SRS, could lead to personal injury caused by unintentional activation of the airbags.
- All SRS electrical wiring harnesses are covered with yellow insulation. Related components are located in the steering column, front console, dashboard, and dashboard lower panel, and in the dashboard above the glove box. Do not use electrical test equipment on these circuits.

NOTE: The original radio has a coded theft protection circuit. Be sure to get the customer's code number before — disconnecting the battery.

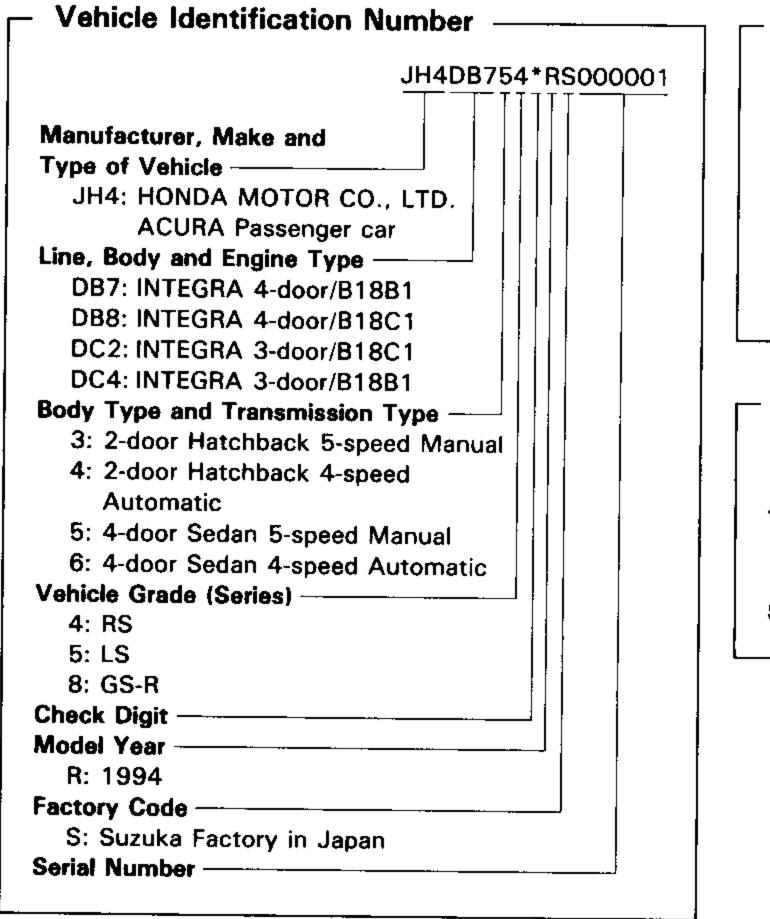
- removing the No. 32 (7.5 A) fuse from the under-hood fuse/relay box.
- removing the radio.

After service, reconnect power to the radio and turn it on. When the word "CODE" is displayed, enter the customer's 5-digit code to restore radio operation.

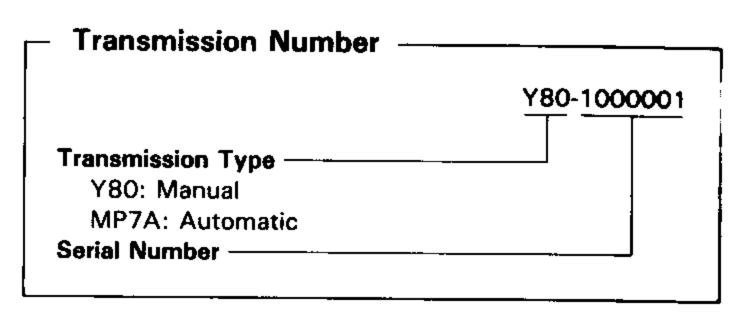
General Information

| Chassis and Paint Codes | 1-2 |
|---------------------------------|------|
| Identification Number Locations | 1-4 |
| Warning/Caution Label Locations | 1-5 |
| Lift and Support Points | |
| Lift | 1-9 |
| Floor Jack | 1-10 |
| Safety Stands | 1-11 |
| Towing | |

Chassis and Paint Codes U.S.Model

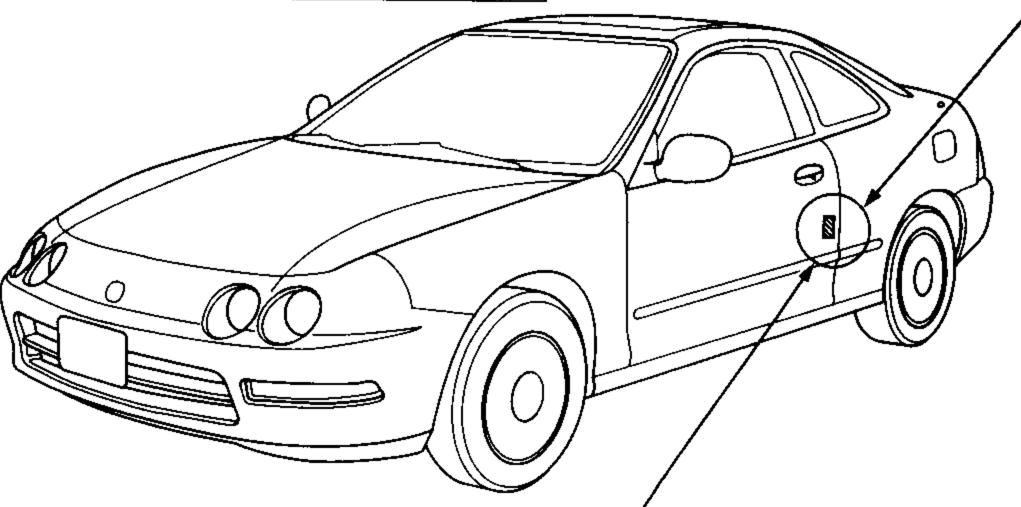


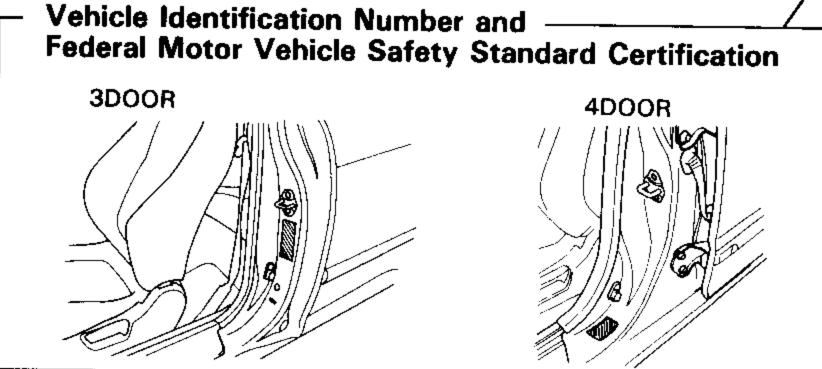
Engine Number B18B1-1300001 Engine Type B18B1: 1.8 \(\text{DOHC Sequential Multi-port} \) Fuel-injected engine B18C1: 1.8 \(\text{DOHC VTEC Sequential} \) Multi-port Fuel-injected engine Serial Number



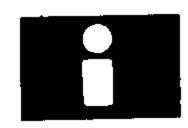
COLOR BG-33P

Paint Code ———

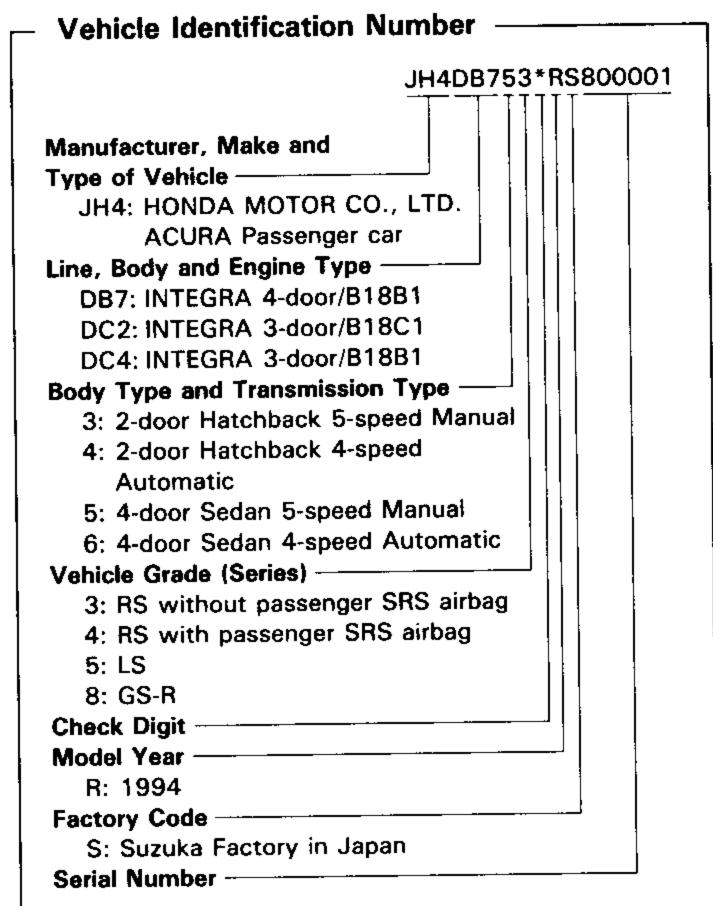


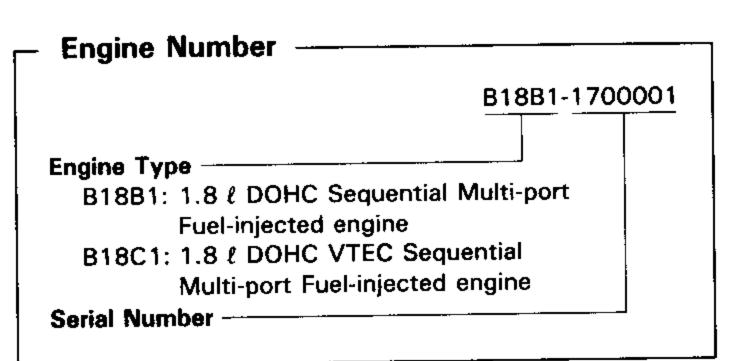


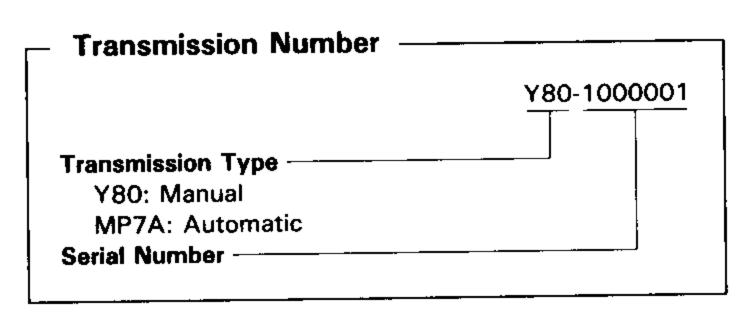
| - Paint Co | ode |
|------------|---------------------------|
| Paint Code | Color |
| BG-33P | Paradise Blue-green Pearl |
| G-71P | Lausanne Green Pearl |
| NH-503P | Granada Black Pearl |
| NH-538 | Frost White |
| NH-575M | Thunder Gray Metallic |
| R-72P | Torino Red Pearl |
| R-81 | Milano Red |
| RP-24P | Stealth Gray Pearl |
| YR-503M | Rosewood Brown Metallic |



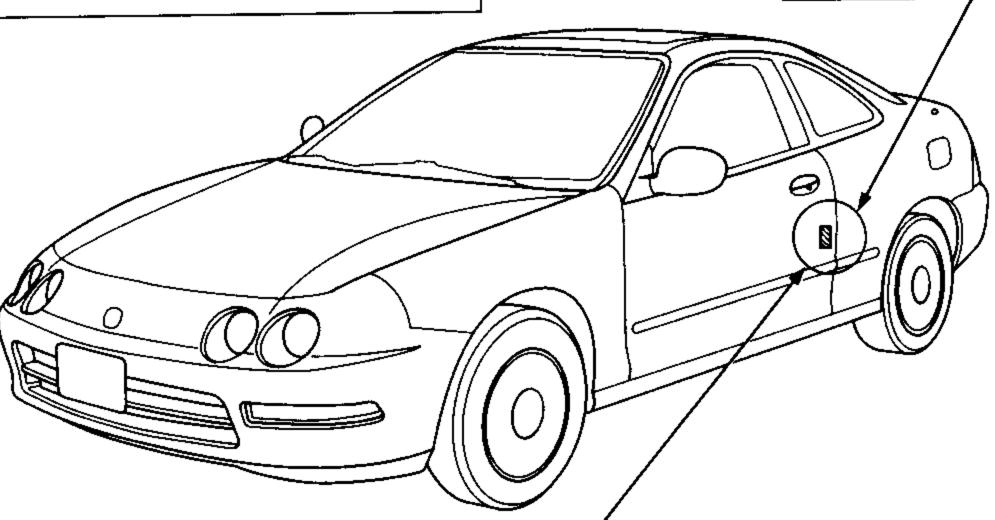
Canada Model

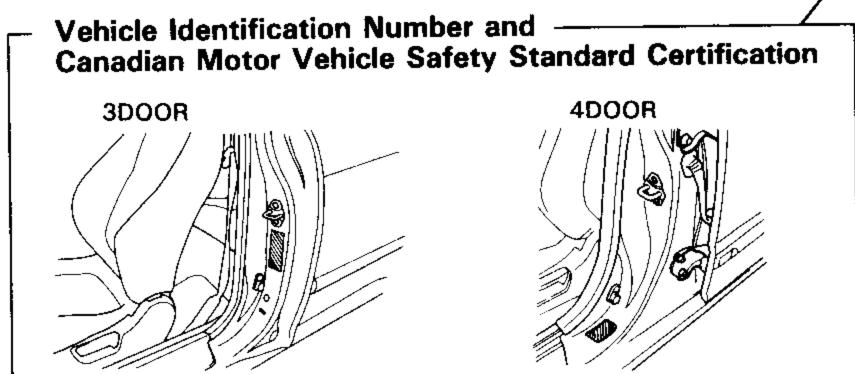






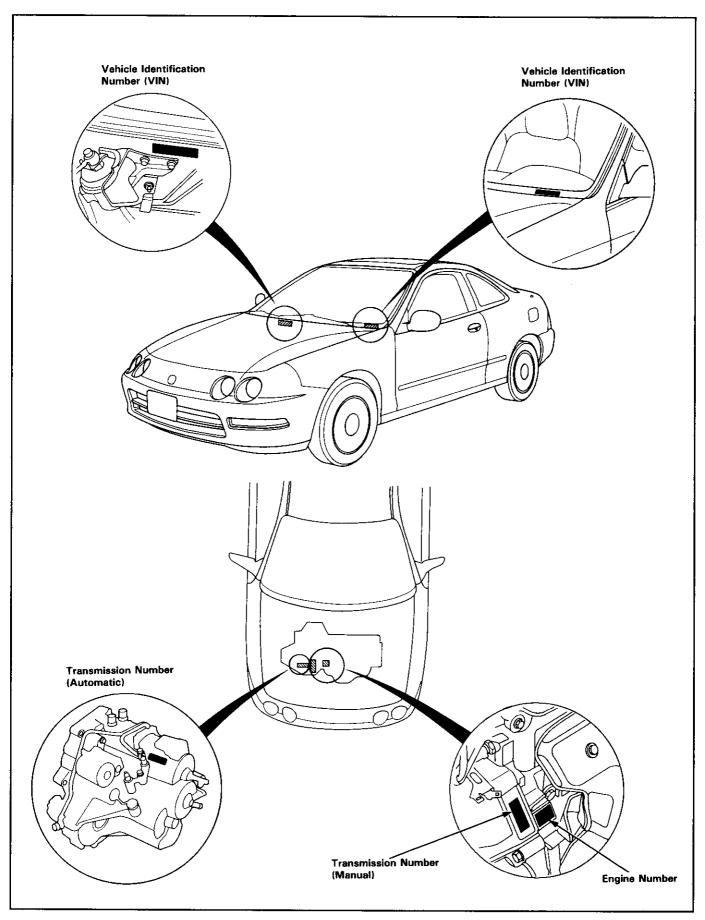
COLOR BG-33P





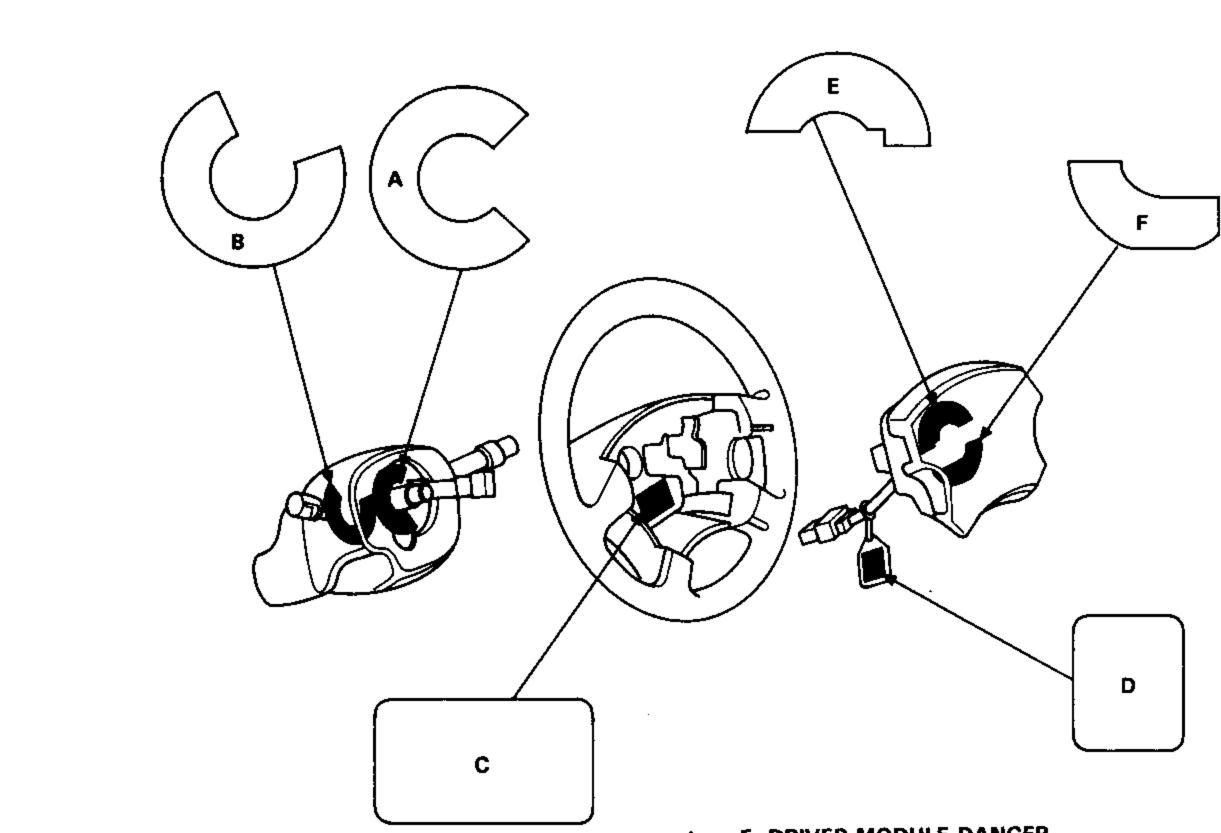
| Paint Co | de — |
|------------|---------------------------|
| Paint Code | Color |
| BG-33P | Paradise Blue-green Pearl |
| G-71P | Lausanne Green Pearl |
| NH-503P | Granada Black Pearl |
| NH-538 | Frost White |
| NH-575M | Thunder Gray Metallic |
| R-72P | Torino Red Pearl |
| R-81 | Milano Red |
| RP-24P | Stealth Gray Pearl |
| YR-503M | Rosewood Brown Metallic |

Identification Number Locations



Warning/Caution Label Locations





A: CABLE REAL CAUTION A

SRS

REFER TO SERVICE MANUAL FOR DETAILED INSTRUCTION

B: CABLE REAL CAUTION B

SRS

REFER TO SERVICE MANUAL FOR DETAILED INSTRUCTION

C: STEERING WHEEL NOTICE

NOTICE

IMPROPER STEERING WHEEL REMOVAL OR INSTALLATION DAMAGE SRS COMPONENT.

FOLLOW SERVICE MANUAL INSTRUCTION CAREFULLY.

D: DRIVER INFLATOR WARNING TAG

WARNING

SRS

TO PREVENT ACCIDENTAL DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE INJURY:

ALWAYS INSTALL THE PROTECTIVE SHORT CONNECTOR ON THE INFLATOR CONNECTOR WHEN THE HARNESS IS DISCONNECTED.

E: DRIVER MODULE DANGER

▲ DANGER

EXPLOSIVE/FLAMMABLE

CONTACT WITH ACID, WATER OR HEAVY METALS SUCH AS COPPER, LEAD OR MERCURY MAY PRODUCE HARM-FUL AND IRRITATING GASES OR EXPLOSIVE COMPOUNDS.

STORAGE TEMPERATURES MUST NOT EXCEED 200°F (100°C). FOR PROPER HANDLING, STORAGE AND DISPOSAL PROCEDURES REFER TO THE SERVICE MANUAL, SRS SUPPLEMENT.

POISON

CONTAINS POISONOUS SODIUM AZIDE AND POTASSIUM NITRATE.

FIRST AID

IF CONTENTS ARE SWALLOWED, INDUCE VOMITING.
FOR EYE CONTACT, FLUSH EYES WITH WATER 15
MINUTES. IF GASES (FROM ACID OR WATER CONTACT)
ARE INHALED, SEEK FRESH AIR. IN EVERY CASE, GET
PROMPT MEDICAL ATTENTION.

KEEP OUT OF REACH OF CHILDREN

F: DRIVER MODULE WARNING

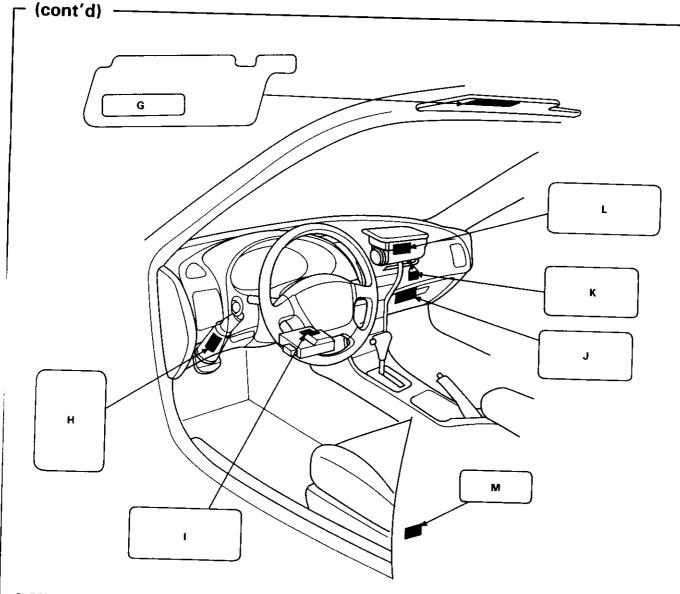
⚠ WARNING

THE AIRBAG INFLATOR IS EXPLOSIVE AND, IF ACCIDENTALLY DEPLOYED, CAN SERIOUSLY HURT OR KILL YOU.

- DO NOT USE ELECTRICAL TEST EQUIPMENT OR PROB-ING DEVICES.
- THEY CAN CAUSE ACCIDENTAL DEPLOYMENT.
- NO SERVICEABLE PARTS INSIDE. DO NOT DISAS-SEMBLE.
- PLACE AIRBAG UPRIGHT WHEN REMOVED.
- FOLLOW SERVICE MANUAL INSTRUCTIONS CAREFULLY.

(cont'd)

Warning/Caution Label Locations



G: DRIVER INFORMATION (SUNVISOR)

SRS ALWAYS WEAR YOUR SEAT BELT

- THIS CARS EQUIPPED WITH A DRIVER AIRBAG AS A SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM (SRS).
 IT IS DESIGNED TO SUPPLEMENT THE SEAT BELT.
- BEFORE DRIVING, READ LABEL INSIDE THE GLOVE BOX.

G: DRIVER INFORMATION (SUNVISOR)*

SRS ALWAYS WEAR YOUR SEAT BELT

- THIS CAR IS EQUIPPED WITH A DRIVER AIRBAG AND A FRONT SEAT PASSENGER AIRBAG AND A FRONT SEAT PASSENGER AIRBAG AS A SUPPLEMENTAL RES-TRAINT SYSTEM (SRS)
- IT IS DESIGNED TO SUPPLEMENT THE SEAT BELT.
 BEFORE DRIVING, READ LABEL INSIDE THE GLOVE BOX.

H: STEERING COLUMN NOTICE

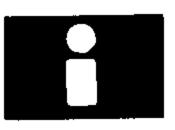
NOTICE

TO PREVENT SRS DAMAGE, REMOVE STEERING WHEEL BEFORE REMOVING STEERING SHAFT CONNECTING BOLT.

I: MONITOR NOTICE

NOTICE SRS

- NO SERVICEABLE PARTS INSIDE
- REFER TO SERVICE MANUAL FOR DETAILED IN-STRUCTIONS.
- *This version of the label is used in cars with a front seat passenger's airbag.



J: GLOVE BOX INFORMATION

AIRBAG INFORMATION

SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM (SRS)

- THE SRS MUST BE INSPECTED TEN YEARS AFTER IT IS INSTALLED. THE DATE OF INSTALLATION IS SHOWN ON THE CERTIFICATION PLATE, LOCATED ON THE DRIVER'S DOOR JAMB.
- DIAGNOSTIC CHECKS AND REPLACEMENT OF SRS COMPONENTS MUST BE DONE BY AN AUTHORIZED DEALER
- SEE YOUR OWNER'S MANUAL FOR ADDITIONAL SRS INFORMATION.

K: FRONT SEAT PASSENGER INFLATOR WARNING TAG

⚠ WARNING

ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT CAN SERIOUSLY HURT OR KILL YOU.

INSTALL THE RED SERVICE CONNECTOR WHEN THE IN-FLATOR HARNESS IS DISCONNECTED.

L: FRONT SEAT PASSENGER MODULE DANGER

▲ DANGER

EXPLOSIVE/FLAMMABLE

CONTACT WITH ACID, WATER OR HEAVY METALS SUCH AS COPPER, LEAD OR MERCURY MAY PRODUCE HARM-FUL AND IRRITATING GASES OR EXPLOSIVE COMPOUNDS.

STORGE TEMPERATURES MUST NOT EXCEED 200°F (100°C). FOR PROPER HANDLING, STORAGE AND DISPOSAL PROCEDURES REFER TO THE SERVICE MANUAL, SRS SUPPLEMENT.

POISON

CONTAINS POISONOUS SODIUM AZIDE AND POTASSIUM NITRATE.

FIRST AID

IF CONTENTS ARE SWALLOWED, INDUCE VOMITING. FOR EYE CONTACT, FLUSH EYES WITH WATER FOR 15 MINUTES.

IF GASES (FROM ACID OR WATER CONTACT) ARE IN-HALED, SEEK FRESH AIR. IN EVERY CASE, GET PROMPT MEDICAL ATTENTION.

KEEP OUT OF REACH OF CHILDREN.

⚠ WARNING

THE AIRBAG INFLATOR IS EXPLOSIVE AND, IF ACCIDENTALLY DEPLOYED, CAN SERIOUSLY HURT OR KILL YOU.

- DO NOT USE ELECTRICAL TEST EQUIPMENT OR PROBING DEVICES.

 THEY CAN CAUSE ACCIDENTAL DEPLOYMENT.
- THEY CAN CAUSE ACCIDENTAL DEPLOYMENT.
- NO SERVICEABLE PARTS INSIDE. DO NOT DISAS-SEMBLE.
- PLACE AIRBAG UPRIGHT WHEN REMOVED.
- FOLLOW SERVICE MANUAL INSTRUCTIONS CAREFULLY.

M: AIRBAG LABEL

N: SRS WARNING (ENGINE HOOD)

SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM (SRS)
THIS VEHICLE IS EQUIPPED WITH DRIVER SIDE AIRBAG.
ALL SRS ELECTRICAL WIRING AND CONNECTORS ARE
COLORED YELLOW.

TAMPERING WITH, DISCONNECTING OR USING ELECTRICAL TEST EQUIPMENT ON THE SRS WIRING CAN MAKE THE SYSTEM INOPERATIVE OR CAUSE ACCIDENTAL FIRING OF THE INFLATOR.

⚠ WANING

THE AIRBAG INFLATOR IS EXPLOSIVE AND, IF ACCIDENTALLY DEPLOYED, CAN SERIOUSLY HURT YOU. FOLLOW SERVICE MANUAL INSTRUCTIONS CAREFULLY.

N: SRS WARNING (ENGINE HOOD)*

SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM (SRS)

THIS VEHICLE IS EQUIPPED WITH DRIVER AND FRONT SEAT PASSENGER AIRBAGS.

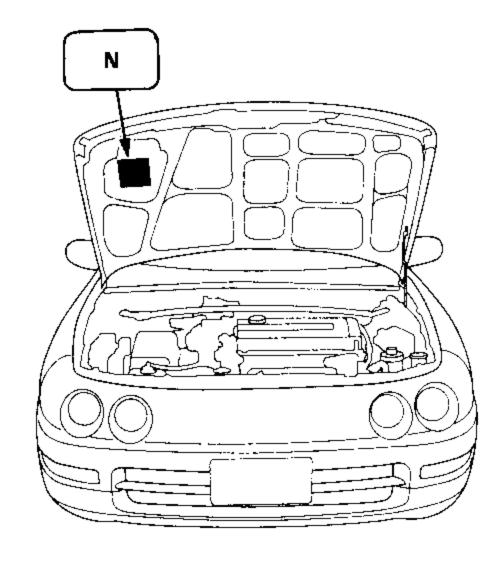
ALL SRS ELECTRICAL WIRING AND CONNECTORS ARE COLORED YELLOW.

TAMPERING WITH, DISCONNECTING OR USING ELECTRICAL TEST EQUIPMENT ON THE SRS WIRING CAN MAKE THE SYSTEM INOPERATIVE OR CAUSE ACCIDENTAL FIRING OF THE INFLATOR.

▲ WARNING

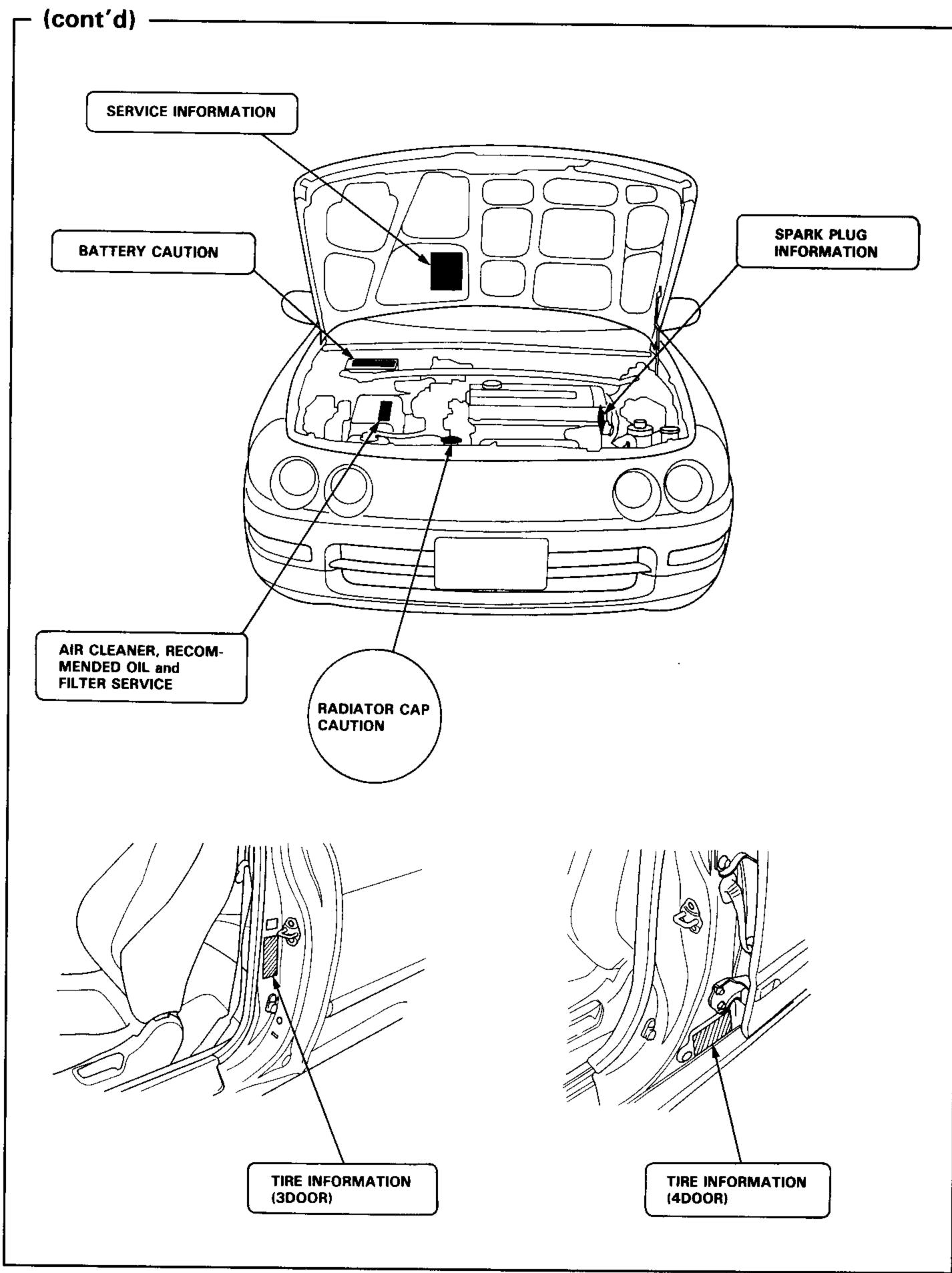
THE AIRBAG INFLATOR IS EXPLOSIVE AND, IF ACCIDENTALLY DEPLOYED, CAN SERIOUSLY HURT YOU. FOLLOW SERVICE MANUAL INSTRUCTIONS CAREFULLY.

*This version of the label is used in cars with a front seat passenger's airbag.



(cont'd)

Warning/Caution Label Locations



Lift and Support Points

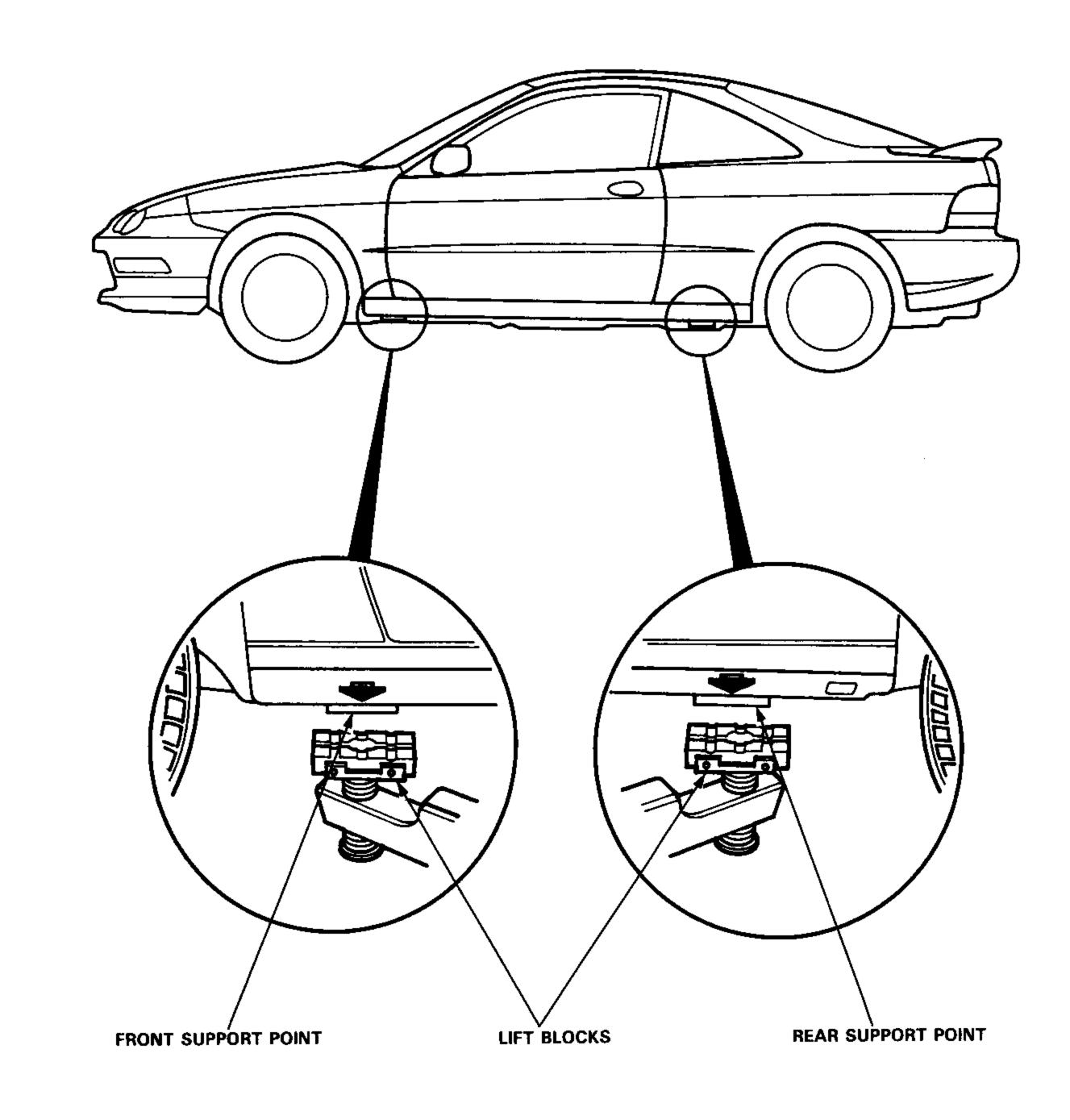


Lift -

A WARNING When heavy rear components such as suspension, fuel tank, spare tire and hatch are to be removed, place additional weight in the luggage area before hoisting. When substantial weight is removed from the rear of the car, the center of gravity may change and can cause the car to tip forward on the hoist.

NOTE: Since each tire/wheel assembly weighs approximately 14 kg (30 lbs), placing the front wheels in trunk can assist with the weight distribution.

- 1. Place the lift blocks as shown.
- 2. Raise the hoist a few inches (centimeters) and rock the car to be sure it is firmly supported.
- 3. Raise the hoist to full height and inspect lift points for solid support.



Lift and Support Points

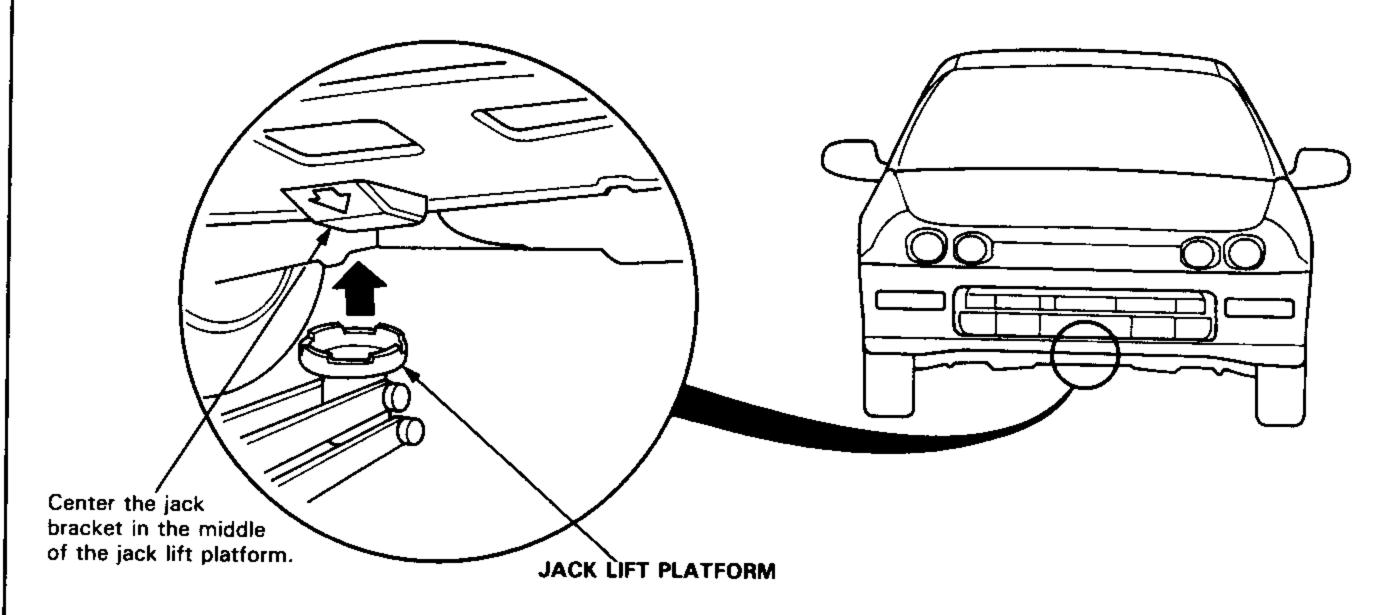
Floor Jack ———

- Set the parking brake and block the wheels that are not being lifted.
- 2. When lifting the rear of the car, put the gearshift lever in reverse (Automatic transmission in P position).
- 3. Raise the car high enough to insert the safety stands.
- Adjust and place the safety stands as shown on page 1-11 so the car will be approximately level, then lower the car onto them.

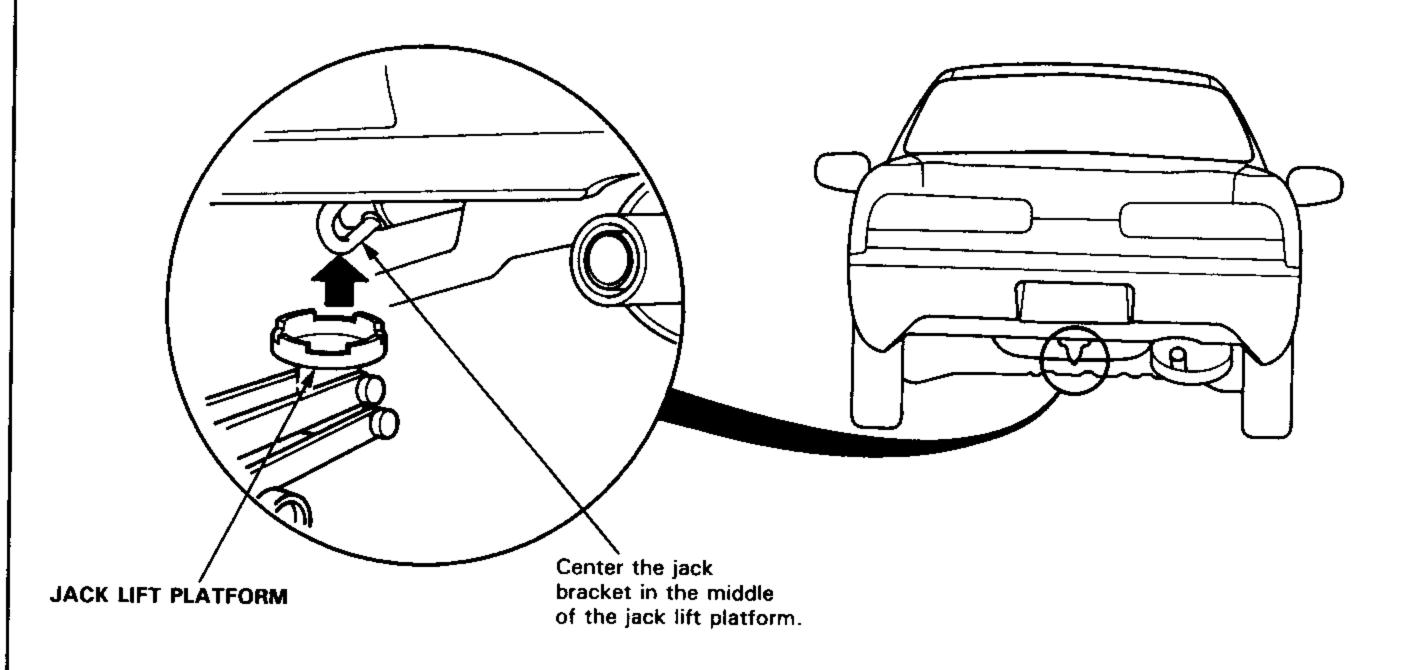
A WARNING

- Always use safety stands when working on or under any vehicle that is supported by only a jack.
- Never attempt to use a bumper jack for lifting or supporting the car.

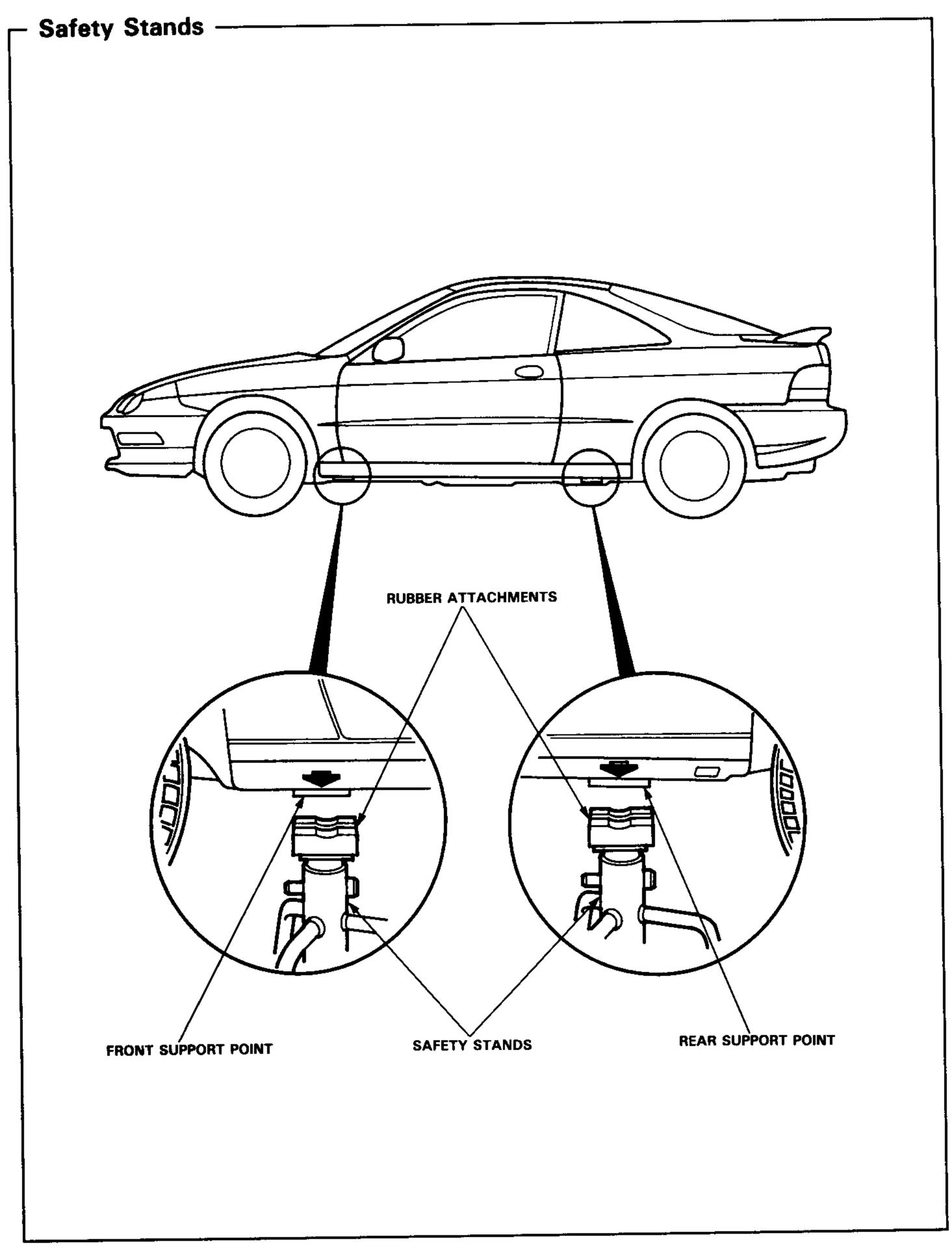
Front -



Rear







Towing

If the car needs to be towed, call a professional towing service. Never tow the car behind another car with just a rope or chain. It is very dangerous.

Emergency Towing

There are three popular methods of towing a car:

Flat-bed Equipment—The operator loads the car on the back of a truck. This is the best way of transporting the car.

Wheel Lift Equipment—The tow truck uses two pivoting arms that go under the tires (front or rear) and lifts them off the ground. The other two wheels remain on the ground.

Sling-type Equipment — The tow truck uses metal cables with hooks on the ends. These hooks go around parts of the frame or suspension and the cables lift that end of the car off the ground. The car's suspension and body can be seriously damaged if this method of towing is attempted.

If the car cannot be transported by flat-bed, it should be towed with the front wheels off the ground. If due to damage, the car must be towed with the front wheels on the ground, do the following:

Manual Transmission

- Release the parking brake.
- Shift the transmission to Neutral.

Automatic Transmission

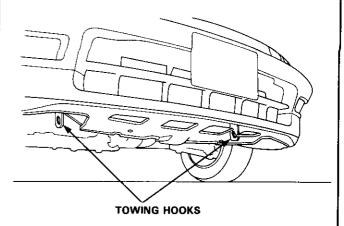
- Release the parking brake.
- Start the engine.
- Shift to D₄ position, then to N position.
- Turn off the engine.

NOTICE: Improper towing preparation will damage the transmission. Follow the above procedure exactly. If you cannot shift the transmission or start the engine (automatic transmission), your car must be transported on a flat-bed.

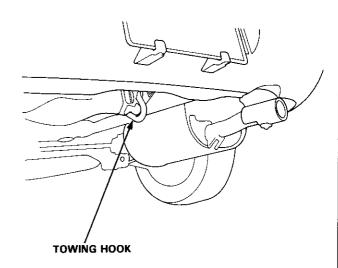
It is best to tow the car no farther than 50 miles (80 km), and keep the speed below 35 mph (55 km/h).

NOTICE: Trying to lift or tow your car by the bumpers will cause serious damage. The bumpers are not designed to support the car's weight.

Front:



Rear:





Special Tools

Individual tool lists are located at the front of each section.

Specifications

| Standards and Service Limits | 3-2 |
|------------------------------|------|
| Design Specifications | 3-17 |
| Body Specifications | 3-20 |

Cylinder Head/Valve Train (B18B1 engine) - Section 6 -**MEASUREMENT** STANDARD (NEW) **SERVICE LIMIT** Compression 250 rpm and wide open throttle Nominal 1,370 (14.0, 199) kPa (kgf/cm², psi) Minimum 930 (9.5, 140) Maximum variation 200 (2.0, 28) Cylinder head Warpage 0.05 (0.002) Height 131.95 - 132.05 (5.195 - 5.199) Camshaft End play 0.05 - 0.15 (0.002 - 0.006)0.5 (0.02) Camshaft-to-holder oil clearance 0.030 - 0.069 (0.0012 - 0.0027)0.15 (0.006) Total runout 0.03 (0.001) max. 0.04 (0.002) Cam lobe height IN 33.716 (1.3274) 33.528 (1.3200) ΕX Valve Valve clearance (Cold)* IN 0.08 - 0.12 (0.003 - 0.005) EX 0.16 - 0.20 (0.006 - 0.008) Valve stem O.D. 6.580 - 6.590 (0.2591 - 0.2594) IN 6.55 (0.258) EX $6.550 \sim 6.560 \ (0.2579 - 0.2583)$ 6.52 (0.257) Stem-to-guide clearance IN 0.02 - 0.05 (0.001 - 0.002)0.08 (0.003) 0.05 - 0.08 (0.002 - 0.003)ĒΧ 0.11 (0.004) Valve seat Width IN 1.25 - 1.55 (0.049 - 0.061) 2.0 (0.08) EX 1.25 - 1.55 (0.049 - 0.061) 2.0 (0.08) Stem installed height 40.765 - 41.235 (1.6049 - 1.6234) IN 41.485 (1.6333) ΕX 42.765 - 43.235 (1.6837 - 1.7022) 43.485 (1.7120) Valve spring Free length (Reference) IN 42.36 (1.668) 41.56 (1.636) £Χ NH 47.09 (1.854) 46.27 (1.822) СН 47.08 (1.854) 46.27 (1.822) Valve guide I.D. IN 6.61 - 6.63 (0.260 - 0.261) 6.65 (0.262) EX 6.61 - 6.63 (0.260 - 0.261) 6.65 (0.262) Installed height IN 13.75 - 14.25 (0.541 - 0.561) EX 15.75 - 16.25 (0.620 - 0.640)

^{*:} Measured between the camshaft and rocker arm. NH: NIHON HATSUJO manufactured valve spring CH: CHUO HATSUJO manufactured valve spring



Unit of length: mm (in)

| | MEASUREMENT | | STANDARD (NEW) | SERVICE LIMIT |
|----------------|--|------------------|---|---|
| Cylinder block | Warpage of deck surface Bore diameter Bore taper Reboring limit | _ | 0.07 (0.003) max. 81.00 – 81.02 (3.189 – 3.190) ———————————————————————————————————— | 0.10 (0.004) 81.07(3.192) 0.05 (0.002) 0.25 (0.010) |
| Piston | Skirt O.D. at 15 mm (0.6 in) from bottom of skirt Clearance in cylinder Groove width (For ring) Top Second Oil | | 80.98 - 80.99 (3.188 - 3.189) 0.01 - 0.04 (0.0004 - 0.0016) 1.030 - 1.040 (0.0406 - 0.0409) 1.230 - 1.240 (0.0484 - 0.0488) 2.805 - 2.820 (0.1104 - 0.1110) | 80.97 (3.188) 0.05 (0.002) 1.06 (0.042) 1.26 (0.050) 2.84 (0.112) |
| Piston ring | Ring-to-groove clearance Top Second | R T | 0.045 - 0.070 (0.0018 - 0.0028) 0.040 - 0.065 (0.0016 - 0.0026) 0.045 - 0.070 (0.0018 - 0.0028) | 0.13 (0.005) 0.13 (0.005) 0.13 (0.005) |
| | Ring end gap Top Second Oil | R T R T | 0.20 - 0.35 (0.008 - 0.014) 0.20 - 0.30 (0.008 - 0.012) 0.40 - 0.55 (0.016 - 0.022) 0.20 - 0.50 (0.008 - 0.020) 0.20 - 0.45 (0.008 - 0.018) | 0.60 (0.024) 0.60 (0.024) 0.70 (0.028) 0.70 (0.028) 0.70 (0.028) |
| Piston Pin | O.D. Pin-to-piston clearance | | 20.994 - 21.000 (0.8265 - 0.8268) 0.010 - 0.022 (0.0004 - 0.0009) | |
| Connecting rod | Pin-to-rod interference Small end bore diameter Large end bore diameter Nominal End play installed on crankshaft | - | 0.013 - 0.032 (0.0005 - 0.0013) 20.968 - 20.981 (0.8255 - 0.8260) 48.0 (1.89) 0.15 - 0.30 (0.006 - 0.012) | |
| Crankshaft | Main journal diameter No. 1, 2, 4 and 5 journals No. 3 journal Rod journal diameter Taper Out-of-round End play Runout | | 54.976 - 55.000 (2.1644 - 2.1654) 54.970 - 54.994 (2.1642 - 2.1651) 44.976 - 45.000 (1.7707 - 1.7717) 0.005 (0.0002) max. 0.005 (0.0002) max. 0.10 - 0.35 (0.004 - 0.014) 0.03 (0.001) max. | |
| Bearing | Main bearing-to-journal oil clearance No. 1, 2, 4 and 5 journals No. 3 journal Rod bearing-to-journal oil clearance | | 0.024 - 0.042 (0.0009 - 0.0017) 0.030 - 0.048 (0.0012 - 0.0019) 0.020 - 0.038 (0.0008 - 0.0015) | 0.050 (0.0020) 0.060 (0.0024) 0.050 (0.0020) |

R: RIKEN manufacture piston ring
T: TEIKOKU PISTON RING manufacture piston ring

Cylinder Head/Valve Train (B18C1 engine) — Section 6 -MEASUREMENT STANDARD (NEW) **SERVICE LIMIT** 250 rpm and wide open throttle Compression Nominal | 1,860 (19.0, 270) kPa (kgf/cm², psi) Minimum 930 (9.5, 140) Maximum variation 200 (2.0, 28) Cylinder head Warpage 0.05 (0.002) Height 141.95 - 142.06 (5.589 - 5.593) Camshaft End play 0.05 - 0.15 (0.002 - 0.006)0.5 (0.02) Camshaft-to-holder oil clearance 0.050 - 0.089 (0.0020 - 0.0035) 0.15 (0.006) Total runout 0.015 (0.0006) max. 0.03 (0.001) Cam lobe height IN Primary 33.411 (1.3154) Mid 36.377 (1.4322) Secondary 34.547 (1.3601) EX Primary 33.111 (1.3036) Mid 35.720 (1.4063) Secondary 34.381 (1.3536) Valve Valve clearance (Cold)* IN 0.15 - 0.19 (0.006 - 0.007)EΧ 0.17 - 0.21 (0.007 - 0.008)Valve stem O.D. 5.475 - 5.485 (0.2156 - 0.2159) IN 5.445 (0.2144) EΧ 5.450 - 5.460 (0.2146 - 0.2150) 5.420 (0.2134) Stem-to-guide clearance 0.08 (0.003) IN 0.025 - 0.055 (0.0010 - 0.0022)EX 0.050 - 0.080 (0.0020 - 0.0031)0.11 (0.004) Valve seat Width IN 1.25 - 1.55 (0.049 - 0.061) 2.0 (0.08) £Χ 1.25 - 1.55 (0.049 - 0.061) 2.0 (0.08) Stem installed height IN 37.465 - 37.935 (1.4750 - 1.4935) 38.185 (1.5033) EX 37.165 - 37.635 (1.4632 - 1.4817) 37.885 (1.4915) Valve spring Free length (Reference) Outer IN 41.05 (1.616) 40.26 (1.585) Inner 36.16 (1.424) NH 35.30 (1.390) СH 36.19 (1.425) 35.30 (1.390) EΧ NH 41.96 (1.652) 40.95 (1.612) CH 41.94 (1.651) 40.95 (1.612) Valve guide I.D. IN 5.51 - 5.53 (0.217 - 0.218)5.55 (0.219) EX 5.51 - 5.53 (0.217 - 0.218) 5.55 (0.219) Installed height 12.55 - 13.05 (0.494 - 0.514) IN 12.55 - 13.05 (0.494 - 0.514) EX Rocker arm Arm-to-shaft clearance IN 0.025 - 0.052 (0.0010 - 0.0020)0.08 (0.003) EX 0.025 - 0.052 (0.0010 - 0.0020)0.08 (0.003)

*: Measured between the camshaft and rocker arm.
NH: NIHON HATSUJO manufacture valve spring
CH: CHUO HATSUJO manufacture valve spring



Unit of length: mm (in)

| | MEASUREMENT | | STANDARD (NEW) | SERVICE LIMIT |
|----------------|---|---------------------------------------|---|---|
| Cylinder block | Warpage of deck surface Bore diameter Bore taper Reboring limit | | 0.05 (0.002) max. 81.00 - 81.02 (3.189 - 3.190) | 0.08 (0.003) 81.07 (3.192) 0.05 (0.002) 0.25 (0.010) |
| Piston | Skirt O.D. at 15 mm (0.6 in) from both Clearance in cylinder Groove width (For ring) | ttom of skirt Top Second Oil | 80.98 - 80.99 (3.188 - 3.189) 0.01 - 0.04 (0.0004 - 0.0016) 1.030 - 1.040 (0.0406 - 0.0409) 1.230 - 1.240 (0.0484 - 0.0488) 2.805 - 2.820 (0.1104 - 0.1110) | 80.97 (3.188) 0.05 (0.002) 1.060 (0.0417) 1.260 (0.0496) 2.840 (0.1118) |
| Piston ring | Ring-to-piston groove clearance | Top Second | 0.045 - 0.070 (0.0018 - 0.0028) 0.040 - 0.065 (0.0016 - 0.0026) | 0.13 (0.005) 0.13 (0.005) |
| | Ring end gap | Top Second Oil | 0.20 - 0.35 (0.008 - 0.014) 0.40 - 0.55 (0.016 - 0.022) 0.20 - 0.50 (0.008 - 0.020) | 0.60 (0.024) 0.70 (0.028) 0.70 (0.028) |
| Piston Pin | O.D. Pin-to-piston clearance | | 20.994 - 21.000 (0.8265 - 0.8268) 0.010 - 0.022 (0.0004 - 0.0009) | |
| Connecting rod | Pin-to-rod interference Small end bore diameter Large end bore diameter End play installed on crankshaft | Nominal | 0.017 - 0.036 (0.0007 - 0.0014) 20.964 - 20.997 (0.8254 - 0.8267) 48.0 (1.89) 0.15 - 0.30 (0.006 - 0.012) | 0.40 (0.016) |
| Crankshaft | Main journal diameter No. 1, 2, 4 and 5 No. 3 journal Rod journal diameter Taper Out-of round End play Runout | 5 journals | 54.976 - 55.000 (2.1644 - 2.1654) 54.974 - 54.998 (2.1643 - 2.1653) 44.976 - 45.000 (1.7707 - 1.7717) 0.005 (0.0002) max. 0.004 (0.0002) max. 0.10 - 0.35 (0.004 - 0.014) 0.020 (0.0008) max. | 0.006 (0.0002) 0.45 (0.018) 0.03 (0.0012) |
| Bearing | Main bearing-to-journal oil clearand No. 1, 2, 4 and 9 No. 3 journal Rod bearing-to-journal oil clearance | 5 journals | 0.024 - 0.042 (0.0009 - 0.0017) 0.030 - 0.048 (0.0012 - 0.0019) 0.032 - 0.050 (0.0013 - 0.0020) | 0.050 (0.0020) 0.060 (0.0024) 0.060 (0.0024) |

| | MEASUREMENT | | STANDARD (NEW) | SERVICE LIMIT | |
|--------------|--|-----------|--|--|--|
| Engine oil | P (US qt, Imp qt) | B1 engine | 4.6 (4.9, 4.0) for engine overhaul 3.8 (4.0, 3.3) for oil change, includ 3.5 (3.7, 3.1) for oil change, withou 4.8 (5.1, 4.2) for engine overhaul 4.0 (4.2, 3.5) for oil change, includ 3.7 (3.9, 3.3) for oil change, withou | ing filter ut filter ing filter | |
| Oil pump | Inner-to-outer rotor clearance Pump housing-to-outer rotor clearance Pump housing-to-rotor axial clearance | | 0.04 - 0.16 (0.002 - 0.006) 0.10 - 0.19 (0.004 - 0.007) 0.02 - 0.07 (0.001 - 0.003) | 0.20 (0.008) 0.21 (0.008) 0.15 (0.006) | |
| Relief valve | Pressure setting at engine oil temp. 176°F (8 kPa (kgf/cm², psi) At idle At 3,000 rpm | 30°C) | 70 (0.7, 10) min. 340 (3.5, 50) min. | | |

| | MEASUREMENT | STANDARD (NEW) |
|--------------|---|---|
| Radiator | Coolant capacity ℓ (US qt, Imp qt) B18B1 engine Including engine, heater, cooling line and reservoir Reservoir capacity: 0.6 ℓ (0.63 US qt, 0.53 Imp qt) B18C1 engine | M/T: 6.4 (6.8, 5.6) for overhaul 4.4 (4.6, 3.9) for coolant change* A/T: 6.7 (7.1, 5.9) for overhaul 4.7 (5.0, 4.1) for coolant change* M/T: 6.7 (7.1, 5.9) for overhaul 4.7 (5.0, 4.1) for coolant change* |
| Radiator cap | Opening pressure kPa (kgf/cm², psi) | 93 – 123 (0.95 – 1.25, 13.5 – 17.8) |
| Thermostat | Start to open °F (°C) Fully open °F (°C) Valve lift at fully open | 169 – 176 (76 – 80) 194 (90) 8.0 (0.31) min. |
| Cooling fan | Thermoswitch "ON" temperature °F (°C) Thermoswitch "OFF" temperature °F (°C) | 196 – 203 (91 – 95) Subtract 5 – 14 (3 – 8) from actual "ON" temperature |

^{*:} Including the coolant in the reservoir and that remaining in the engine.



Unit of length: mm (in)

| | MEASUREMENT | | STANDARD (NEW) | SERVICE LIMIT |
|--------------------|--|--|--|----------------------------------|
| Fuel pump | Displacement in 12 V, 10 seconds ml (fl oz, Imp oz) | B18B1 engine B18C1 engine | 222 (7.5, 7.8) min. 364 (12.3, 12.8) min. | 120 (4.1, 4.2) 100 (3.4, 3.5) |
| Pressure regulator | Pressure with regulator vacuum hos kPa (kgf/cm², psi) | e disconnected B18B1 engine B18C1 engine | 275 - 324 (2.80 - 3.30, 39.8 - 46.9) 329 - 378 (3.35 - 3.85, 47.6 - 5.47) | |
| Fuel tank | Capacity & (US gal, Imp gal) | | 50 (13.2, 11.0) | |
| Engine | Idle speed with headlight and coolin | g fan off rpm | 750 ± 50 (M/T: neutral) 750 ± 50 (A/T: N or P position) | |
| | Fast idle rpm | | 1,600 ± 200 (M/T: neutral) 1,600 ± 200 (A/T: N or P position) | |
| | Idie CO % | | 0.1 max. | |

| | MEASUREMEN | IT | STANDARD (NEW) | SERVICE LIMIT |
|----------------|--|----------------------|--|----------------------------|
| Clutch pedal | Pedal height Stroke Pedal play Disengagement height | to floor to floor | 164 (6.46) 130 – 140 (5.12 – 5.51) 12 – 21 (0.47 – 0.83) 83 (3.27) min. | |
| Flywheel | Clutch surface runout | | 0.05 (0.002) max. | 0.15 (0.006) |
| Clutch disc | Rivet head depth Thickness | | 1.3 (0.05) min. 8.4 – 9.1 (0.33 – 0.36) | 0.2 (0.01) 6.0 (0.24) |
| Pressure plate | Warpage Diaphragm spring finger alignme | nt | 0.03 (0.001) max. 0.6 (0.02) max. | 0.15 (0.006) 0.8 (0.03) |

| | MEASUREMENT | | STANDARD (NEW) | SERVICE LIMIT |
|--|---|------------------------------|--|---|
| Transmission oil | Capacity ℓ (US qt, Imp qt) | | 2.2 (2.3, 1.9) for 2.3 (2.4, 2.0) for | |
| Mainshaft | End play Diameter of ball bearing contact area (clutch housing side) Diameter of 3rd gear contact area Diameter of ball bearing contact area (transmission housing side) Runout | | 0.11 - 0.18 (0.004 - 0.007) 27.977 - 27.990 (1.101 - 1.102) 37.984 - 38.000 (1.495 - 1.496) 27.987 - 28.000 (1.1018 - 1.1024) 0.02 (0.0008) max. | Adjust 27.93 (1.10) 37.93 (1.493) 27.94 (1.10) 0.05 (0.002) |
| Mainshaft 3rd and 4th gears | I.D. End play Thickness | 3rd 4th | 43.009 - 43.025 (1.6933 - 1.6939) 0.06 - 0.21 (0.0024 - 0.0083) 34.92 - 34.97 (1.3748 - 1.3768) 31.42 - 31.47 (1.2370 - 1.2390) | 43.08 (1.696) 0.3 (0.012) 34.8 (1.370) 31.3 (1.232) |
| Mainshaft 5th gear | I.D. End play Thickness | | 43.009 - 43.025 (1.6933 - 1.6939) 0.06 - 0.21 (0.0024 - 0.0083) 31.42 - 31.47 (1.237 - 1.239) | 43.08 (1.696) 0.3 (0.012) 31.3 (1.232) |
| Countershaft | Diameter of needle bearing contact area Diameter of ball bearing contact area Diameter of 1st gear contact area Runout | • | 33.000 - 33.015 (1.299 - 1.300) 24.980 - 24.993 (0.9835 - 0.9840) 36.984 - 37.000 (1.4561 - 1.4567) 0.02 (0.0008) max. | 32.95 (1.297) 24.94 (0.982) 36.93 (1.454) 0.05 (0.002) |
| Countershaft 1st gear | I.D. End play | | 42.009 - 42.025 (1.6539 - 1.6545) 0.04 - 0.12 (0.0016 - 0.0047) | 42.08 (1.657) Adjust |
| Countershaft 2nd gear | I.D. End play Thickness | B18B1 engine B18C1 engine | 47.009 - 47.025 (1.8507 - 1.8514) 0.05 - 0.12 (0.0020 - 0.0047) 34.62 - 34.67 (1.3630 - 1.3650) 28.92 - 28.97 (1.1386 - 1.1405) | 47.08 (1.854) Adjust 34.5 (1.358) 28.8 (1.134) |
| Spacer collar (Countershaft 2nd gear) | I.D. O.D. Length | A B | 36.48 - 36.49 (1.4362 - 1.4366) 41.989 - 42.000 (1.6531 - 1.6535) 29.02 - 29.04 (1.1425 - 1.1433) 29.07 - 29.09 (1.1444 - 1.1453) | 36.5 (1.437) 41.94 (1.651) |
| Spacer collar (Mainshaft 4th and 5th gears) | I.D. O.D. Length | A B | 31.002 - 31.012 (1.2205 - 1.2209) 37.989 - 38.000 (1.4956 - 1.4961) 56.45 - 56.55 (2.2224 - 2.2264) 26.03 - 26.08 (1.0248 - 1.0268) | 31.06 (1.223) 37.94 (1.494) |

Unit of length: mm (in)

| | MEASUREMENT | STANDARD (NEW) | SERVICE LIMIT |
|--------------------------------|--|--|--|
| Reverse idler gear *1 | I.D. Gear-to-reverse gear shaft clearance | 20.016 - 20.043 (0.7880 - 0.7891) 0.036 - 0.084 (0.0014 - 0.0033) | 20.09 (0.7909) 0.16 (0.006) |
| Synchro ring | Ring-to-gear clearance (ring pushed against gear) | 0.85 - 1.10 (0.033 - 0.043) | 0.4 (0.016) |
| Double cone synchro ring *2 | Clearance (ring pushed against gear) Outer synchro ring-to-gear Inner synchro ring-to-gear Outer synchro ring-to-synchro cone | 0.95 1.68 (0.037 0.066) 0.5 1.0 (0.02 0.04) 0.5 1.0 (0.02 0.04) | 0.6 (0.024) 0.3 (0.01) 0.3 (0.01) |
| Shift fork | Shift fork finger thickness Fork-to-synchro sleeve clearance | 7.4 - 7.6 (0.291 - 0.299) 0.35 - 0.65 (0.014 - 0.026) | 1.0 (0.039) |
| Reverse shift fork | Shift fork pawl groove width Fork-to-reverse idler gear clearance "L" groove width at 5th gear side at reverse gear side Fork-to-5th/reverse shift piece pin clearance at 5th gear side at reverse gear side | 13.0 - 13.3 (0.512 - 0.524) 0.5 - 1.1 (0.020 - 0.043) 7.40 - 7.70 (0.291 - 0.303) 7.05 - 7.25 (0.278 - 0.285) 0.4 - 0.9 (0.016 - 0.035) 0.05 - 0.45 (0.0020 - 0.018) | 1.8 (0.07) |
| Shift arm | Groove width of change piece contact area Change piece-to-shift arm clearance | 11.8 - 12.0 (0.4646 - 0.4724) 0.05 - 0.35 (0.002 - 0.014) | 0.80 (0.031) |
| Shift piece | Groove width of shift arm contact area Shift piece-to-shift arm clearance I.D. Shift piece-to-shaft clearance Diameter of shift fork contact area Shift piece-to-shift fork shaft clearance | 7.9 - 8.0 (0.311 - 0.315) 0.10 - 0.30 (0.004 - 0.012) 14.000 - 14.068 (0.551 - 0.554) 0.011 - 0.092 (0.0004 - 0.0036) 11.90 - 12.00 (0.469 - 0.472) 0.20 - 0.50 (0.008 - 0.020) | 0.60 (0.024) 0.150 (0.0059) 0.80 (0.031) |
| Selector arm | Diameter of change piece contact area Arm-to-change piece clearance Groove width of interlock contact area Arm-to-interlock clearance | 11.90 - 12.00 (0.469 - 0.472) 0.05 - 0.35 (0.002 - 0.014) 10.05 - 10.15 (0.3957 - 0.3996) 0.05 - 0.25 (0.002 - 0.010) | 0.50 (0.020) |

^{*1:} B18B1 engine *2: B18C1 engine

| Automotio | Transmission | Section 1 | Λ |
|----------------|--------------|-----------|---|
| Alltomatic | Transmission | 3ecilon I | - |

| | MEASUREMENT | STANDARD (NEW) | SERVICE LIMIT |
|-----------------------|---|--|--|
| Transmission fluid | Capacity ((US qt, Imp qt) | 5.9 (6.2, 5.2) for overhaul 2.7 (2.9, 2.4) for fluid change | |
| Hydraulic pressure | Line pressure at 2,000 rpm (N or P position) | 830 - 880 (8.5 - 9.0, 120 - 130) | 780 (8.0, 110) |
| kPa (kgf/cm², psi) | 2nd clutch pressure at 2,000 rpm (D4 position) | 460 – (4.7, 67) throttle fully closed | 410 (4.2, 60) throttle fully closed |
| | 3rd clutch pressure at 2,000 rpm (D4 position) | 830 - 880 (8.5 - 9.0, 120 - 130) | 780 (8.0, 110) throttle more than |
| | 4th clutch pressure at 2,000 rpm (Da position) | throttle more than 3/16 opened | 3/16 opened |
| | 2nd clutch pressure at 2,000 rpm (2 position) | 830 – 880 (8.5 – 9.0, 120 – 130) | 780 (8.0, 110) |
| | 1st clutch pressure at 2,000 rpm (D4 or 1 position) | 830 - 880 (8.5 - 9.0, 120 - 130) | 780 (8.0, 110) |
| | 1st-hold clutch pressure at 2,000 rpm (1) position) | 830 - 880 (8.5 - 9.0, 120 - 130) | 780 (8.0, 110) |
| | Throttle pressure B Throttle fully closed Throttle fully opened | 0 - 15 (0 - 0.15, 0 - 21) 830 - 880 (8.5 - 9.0, 120 - 130) | 780 (8.0, 110) |
| Stall speed rpm (Cl | heck with car on level ground) | 2,200 – 2,600 | Below 2,200, above 2,600 |

(cont'd)

| | MEASUREMEN | π | STANDARD (NEW) | SERVICE LIMIT |
|--------|---|--|---|---|
| Clutch | Clutch initial clearance | 1st, 2nd 3rd, 4th 1st-hold | 0.65 - 0.85 (0.026 - 0.033) 0.40 - 0.60 (0.016 - 0.024) 0.5 - 0.8 (0.020 - 0.031) | |
| | Clutch return spring free length | 1st, 3rd, 4th 2nd 1st-hold | 31.0 (1.22) 33.2 (1.31) 34.6 (1.36) | 29.0 (1.14) 31.2 (1.23) 32.6 (1.28) |
| | Clutch disc thickness Clutch plate thickness | 10111010 | 1.8 – 2.0 (0.071 – 0.079) 1.95 – 2.05 (0.077 – 0.081) | Until grooves worn out Discoloration |
| | Clutch end plate thickness (1st) | MARK 1 MARK 2 MARK 3 MARK 4 MARK 5 MARK 6 MARK 7 MARK 8 MARK 9 MARK 10 MARK 11 MARK 12 MARK 13 | 2.05 - 2.10 (0.081 - 0.083) 2.15 - 2.20 (0.085 - 0.087) 2.25 - 2.30 (0.089 - 0.091) 2.35 - 2.40 (0.093 - 0.094) 2.45 - 2.50 (0.096 - 0.098) 2.55 - 2.60 (0.100 - 0.102) 2.65 - 2.70 (0.104 - 0.106) 2.75 - 2.80 (0.108 - 0.110) 2.85 - 2.90 (0.112 - 0.114) 2.95 - 3.00 (0.116 - 0.118) 3.05 - 3.10 (0.120 - 0.122) 3.15 - 3.20 (0.128 - 0.130) 3.35 - 3.40 (0.132 - 0.134) | Discoloration |
| | Clutch end plate thickness (2nd, 3rd, 4th) | MARK 1 MARK 2 MARK 3 MARK 4 MARK 5 MARK 6 MARK 7 MARK 8 MARK 9 MARK 10 | 2.05 - 2.10 (0.081 - 0.083) 2.15 - 2.20 (0.085 - 0.087) 2.25 - 2.30 (0.089 - 0.091) 2.35 - 2.40 (0.093 - 0.094) 2.45 - 2.50 (0.096 - 0.098) 2.55 - 2.60 (0.100 - 0.102) 2.65 - 2.70 (0.104 - 0.106) 2.75 - 2.80 (0.108 - 0.110) 2.85 - 2.90 (0.112 - 0.114) 2.95 - 3.00 (0.116 - 0.118) | Discoloration |
| | Clutch end plate thickness (1st-hold) | MARK 1 MARK 2 MARK 3 MARK 4 NO MARK MARK 6 MARK 7 | 2.05 - 2.10 (0.081 - 0.083) 2.15 - 2.20 (0.085 - 0.087) 2.25 - 2.30 (0.089 - 0.091) 2.35 - 2.40 (0.093 - 0.094) 2.45 - 2.50 (0.096 - 0.098) 2.55 - 2.60 (0.100 - 0.102) 2.65 - 2.70 (0.104 - 0.106) | Discoloration |

Automatic Transmission — Section 14 — Unit of length: mm (in)

| | MEASUREMENT | STANDARD (NEW) | SERVICE LIMIT |
|------------|--|-----------------------------------|-----------------|
| ansmission | Diameter of needle bearing contact area | | |
| | On mainshaft and stator shaft | 22.980 - 22.993 (0.9047 - 0.9052) | Wear or damage |
| | On mainshaft 2nd gear | 35.975 - 35.991 (1.4163 - 1.4169) | ♠ |
| | On mainshaft 4th gear collar | 31.975 - 31.991 (1.2589 - 1.2595) | |
| | On mainshaft 1st gear collar | 30.975 - 30.991 (1.2195 - 1.2201) | |
| | On countershaft (left side) | 36.004 - 36.017 (1.4175 - 1.4180) | 1 |
| | On countershaft 3rd gear | 35.980 - 35.996 (1.4165 - 1.4172) | |
| | On countershaft 4th gear | 27.980 - 27.993 (1.1016 - 1.1021) | |
| | On countershaft reverse gear collar | 31.975 - 31.991 (1.2589 - 1.2595) | |
| | On countershaft 1st gear collar | 31.975 - 31.991 (1.2589 - 1.2595) | |
| | On sub-shaft (left side) | 25.991 - 26.000 (1.0233 - 1.0236) | |
| | On sub-shaft 4th gear collar | 27.980 – 27.993 (1.1016 – 1.1021) | |
| | On reverse idler gear shaft | 13.990 – 14.000 (0.5508 – 0.5512) | Wear or damage |
| | 3 | 13.550 - 14.000 (0.5500 - 0.5512) | Wear of damage |
| | Inside diameter of needle bearing contact area | 25 000 25 016 (1.2790 1.2796) | Wear or damage |
| | On mainshaft 1st gear | 35.000 - 35.016 (1.3780 - 1.3786) | vear or damage |
| | On mainshaft 2nd gear | 41.000 - 41.016 (1.6142 - 1.6148) | 1 1 |
| | On mainshaft 4th gear | 38.000 - 38.016 (1.4961 - 1.4967) | 1 |
| | On countershaft 1st gear | 38.000 - 38.016 (1.4961 - 1.4967) | |
| | On countershaft 3rd gear | 41.000 - 41.016 (1.6142 - 1.6148) | |
| | On countershaft 4th gear | 33.000 - 33.016 (1.2992 - 1.2998) | |
| | On countershaft reverse gear | 38.000 - 38.016 (1.4961 - 1.4967) | |
| | On sub-shaft 4th gear | 32.000 - 32.016 (1.2598 - 1.2605) | |
| | On reverse idler gear | 18.007 - 18.020 (0.7089 - 0.7094) | |
| | On stator shaft (right side) | 29.000 - 29.013 (1.1417 - 1.1422) |] |
| | On stator shaft (stator side) | 27.000 - 27.021 (1.0630 - 1.1638) | } |
| | Reverse idler gear shaft holder I.D. | 14.416 - 14.434 (0.5676 - 0.5683) | Wear or damage |
| | End play | 1,,,,,, | |
| | Mainshaft 1st gear | 0.08 - 0.24 (0.003 - 0.009) | |
| | | 0.05 - 0.13 (0.002 - 0.005) | |
| | Mainshaft 2nd gear | 0.045 - 0.140 (0.002 - 0.006) | |
| | Mainshaft 4th gear | | |
| | Countershaft 1st gear | 0.1 - 0.5 (0.004 - 0.020) | |
| | Countershaft 3rd gear | 0.04 - 0.15 (0.002 - 0.006) | |
| | Countershaft 4th gear | 0.05 - 0.13 (0.002 - 0.005) | |
| | Sub-shaft 4th gear | 0.05 - 0.17 (0.002 - 0.007) | |
| | Reverse idler gear | 0.05 - 0.18 (0.002 - 0.007) | |
| | Countershaft reverse gear | 0.10 - 0.25 (0.004 - 0.010) | |
| | Selector hub O.D. | 51.87 - 51.90 (2.042 - 2.043) | Wear or damage |
| | Mainshaft 4th gear collar length | 49.00 - 49.05 (1.929 - 1.931) | |
| | Mainshaft 1st gear collar length | 27.00 - 27.15 (1.063 - 1.069) | |
| | Mainshaft 1st gear collar flange thickness | 2.5 - 2.6 (2.098 - 2.102) | Wear or damage |
| | | 38.97 - 39.00 (1.534 - 1.535) | - |
| | Countershaft distance collar length | F | |
| | | 39.02 - 39.05 (1.536 - 1.537) | |
| | | 39.07 – 39.10 (1.538 – 1.539) | |
| | | 39.12 - 39.15 (1.540 - 1.541) | |
| | | 39.17 - 39.20 (1.542 - 1.543) | |
| | | 39.22 - 39.25 (1.544 - 1.545) | |
| | | 39.27 - 39.30 (1.546 - 1.547) | 1 — |
| | | 38.87 - 38.90 (1.530 - 1.531) | |
| | | 38.92 - 38.95 (1.532 - 1.533) | |
| | Countershaft reverse gear collar length | 14.5 - 14.6 (0.571 - 0.575) | |
| | Countershaft reverse gear collar flange | | 1 |
| | thickness | 2.4 - 2.6 (0.094 - 0.102) | Wear or damage |
| | Countershaft 1st gear collar length | 14.5 – 14.6 (0.571 – 0.575) | |
| | Countershaft 1st gear collar flange thickness | 2.4 - 2.6 (0.094 - 0.102) | Wear or damage |
| | Sub-shaft 4th gear collar length | 24.0 - 24.1 (0.945 - 0.949) | Wear or damage |
| | Sub-shaft 4th gear collar flange thickness | 3.00 - 3.15 (0.118 - 0.124) | Wear or damage |

(cont'd)

| | MEASUREMENT | STANDARD (NEW) | SERVICE LIMIT |
|-------------------------|--|-----------------------------------|-----------------|
| Transmission | Mainshaft 2nd gear thrust washer thickness | 3.97 - 4.00 (0.156 - 0.157) | Wear or damage |
| (cont'd) | | 4.02 - 4.05 (0.158 - 0.159) | A |
| | | 4.07 - 4.10 (0.160 - 0.161) | |
| | | 4.12 - 4.15 (0.162 - 0.163) | |
| | | 4.17 - 4.20 (0.164 - 0.165) | |
| | | 4.22 - 4.25 (0.166 - 0.167) | |
| | | 4.27 - 4.30 (0.168 - 0.169) | i i |
| | | 4.32 - 4.35 (0.170 - 0.171) | |
| | | 4.37 - 4.40 (0.172 - 0.173) | Wear or damage |
| | Thrust washer thickness | | |
| | Mainshaft ball bearing left side | 3.45 - 3.55 (0.136 - 0.140) | Wear or damage |
| | Mainshaft 1st gear left side | 1.45 - 1.50 (0.057 - 0.059) | 1 1 |
| | Mainshaft 1st gear right side | 3.43 - 3.50 (0.135 - 0.138) | Wear or damage |
| | Sub-shaft 4th gear thrust washer thickness One-way clutch contact area l.D. | 2.93 – 3.00 (0.115 – 0.118) | Wear or damage |
| | Countershaft 1st gear | 83.339 - 83.365 (3.2810 - 3.2821) | ↓ |
| | Parking gear | 66.685 - 66.698 (2.6254 - 2.6259) | Wear or damage |
| | Mainshaft feed pipe A, O.D. (at 15 mm from end) | 8.97 - 8.98 (0.353 - 0.354) | 8.95 (0.352) |
| | Mainshaft feed pipe B, O.D. (at 30 mm from end) | 5.97 - 5.98 (0.2350 - 0.2354) | 5.95 (0.234) |
| | Countershaft feed pipe O.D. (at 15 mm from end) | 7.97 - 7.98 (0.3138 - 0.3142) | 7.95 (0.313) |
| | Sub-shaft feed pipe O.D. (at 15 mm from end) | 7.97 - 7.98 (0.3138 0.3142) | 7.95 (0.313) |
| | Mainshaft sealing ring thickness (29 mm and 35 mm) | 1.980 - 1.995 (0.0780 - 0.0785) | 1.80 (0.071) |
| | Mainshaft bushing I.D. | 6.018 - 6.030 (0.2369 - 0.2374) | 6.045 (0.2380) |
| | Mainshaft bushing I.D. | 9.000 - 9.015 (0.3543 - 0.3549) | 9.03 (0.356) |
| | Countershaft bushing I.D. | 8.000 - 8.015 (0.3150 - 0.3156) | 8.03 (0.316) |
| | Sub-shaft bushing I.D. | 8.000 - 8.015 (0.3150 - 0.3156) | 8.03 (0.316) |
| | Mainshaft sealing ring goove width | 2.025 - 2.060 (0.0797 - 0.0811) | 2.08 (0.082) |
| Regulator valve body | Sealing ring contact area I.D. | 35.000 - 35.025 (1.3780 - 1.3782) | 35.050 (1.3799) |
| Shifting device and | Reverse shift fork finger thickness | 5.90 - 6.00 (0.232 - 0.236) | 5.40 (0.213) |
| parking brake con- | Parking brake ratchet pawl | | ∖ Wear or other |
| rol | Parking gear | | defect |
| | Throttle cam stopper height | 27.0 – 27.1 (1.063 – 1.067) | <u> </u> |
| Servo body | Shift fork shaft bore I.D. | 14.000 - 14.010 (0.5512 - 0.5516) | |
| · | Shift fork shaft valve bore I.D. | 37.000 - 37.039 (1.4567 - 1.4582) | 37.045 (1:4585) |
| Oil pump | Oil pump gear side clearance | 0.03 - 0.05 (0.001 - 0.002) | 0.07 (0.003) |
| | Oil pump gear-to-body clearance Drive | 0.210 - 0.265 (0.0083 - 0.0104) | <u> </u> |
| | Driven | 0.070 - 0.125 (0.0028 - 0.0049) | |
| | Oil pump driven gear I.D. | 14.016 - 14.034 (0.5518 - 0.5525) | Wear or damage |
| | Oil pump shaft O.D. | 13.980 - 13.990 (0.5504 - 0.5508) | Wear or damage |



Unit of length: mm (in)

| - Autoi | natic Transmission — Sectior | | STANDA | RD (NEW) | |
|---------|------------------------------------|-------------|--------------|---------------|--------------|
| | MEASUREMENT | Wire Dia. | O.D. | Free Length | No. of Coils |
| Springs | Regulator valve spring A | 1.8 (0.071) | 14.7 (0.579) | 88.6 (3.488) | 16.5 |
| prings | Regulator valve spring B | 1.8 (0.071) | 9.6 (0.378) | 44.0 (1.732) | 7.5 |
| | Stator reaction spring | 5.5 (0.217) | 26.4 (1.039) | 30.3 (1.193) | 2.1 |
| | Modulator valve body | 1.3 (0.051) | 9.4 (0.370) | 37.3 (1.469) | 12.4 |
| | Torque converter check valve | 1.1 (0.043) | 8.4 (0.331) | 33.8 (1.331) | 12.5 |
| | Cooler check valve spring | 1.1 (0.043) | 8.4 (0.331) | 33.8 (1.331) | 12.5 |
| | Relief valve spring | 1.1 (0.043) | 8.6 (0.339) | 37.1 (1.461) | 13.4 |
| | 2-3 orifice control valve spring | 0.9 (0.035) | 6.6 (0.260) | 33.0 (1.299) | 14.9 |
| | Throttle valve B adjusting spring | 0.7 (0.028) | 6.2 (0.244) | 34.0 (1.339) | 15.2 |
| | Throttle valve B spring | 1.4 (0.055) | 8.5 (0.335) | 41.5 (1.634) | 10.5 |
| | Throttle valve B spring | 1.4 (0.055) | 8.5 (0.335) | 41.5 (1.634) | 11.2 |
| | Throttle valve B spring | 1.4 (0.055) | 8.5 (0.335) | 41.6 (1.638) | 12.4 |
| | 1-2 shift valve spring | 0.9 (0.035) | 8.6 (0.339) | 40.4 (1.591) | 14.5 |
| | 2-3 shift valve spring | 0.9 (0.035) | 7.6 (0.299) | 57.0 (2.244) | 26.8 |
| | 3-4 shift valve spring | 0.9 (0.035) | 7.6 (0.299) | 52.0 (2.047) | 26.8 |
| | 1st-hold accumulator spring | 4.0 (0.157) | 21.5 (0.846) | 71.7 (2.823) | 8.3 |
| | 1st accumulator spring | 2.5 (0.098) | 16.3 (0.642) | 105.4 (4.150) | 16 + 8.6 |
| | 2nd accumulator spring | 3.6 (0.142) | 22.0 (0.866) | 108.9 (4.287) | 15.2 |
| | 3rd accumulator spring | 2.8 (0.110) | 17.5 (0.689) | 105.2 (4.142) | 19.1 |
| | 4th accumulator spring | 2.6 (0.102) | 16.3 (0.642) | 103.3 (4.067) | 21.2 |
| | Lock-up shift valve spring | 0.9 (0.035) | 7.6 (0.299) | 73.7 (2.902) | 32.0 |
| | Lock-up timing B valve spring | 0.8 (0.031) | 6.6 (0.260) | 60.8 (2.394) | 22.1 |
| | Lock-up control valve spring | 0.8 (0.031) | 6.6 (0.260) | 39.5 (1.555) | 25.0 |
| | CPC valve spring | 1.3 (0.051) | 9.4 (0.370) | 35.3 (1.390) | 12.4 |
| | Kick-down valve spring | 1.0 (0.039) | 6.6 (0.260) | 28.5 (1.122) | 14.7 |
| | 3-2 kick-down valve spring | 1.3 (0.051) | 8.6 (0.339) | 45.6 (1.795) | 17.0 |
| | Servo control valve spring | 0.9 (0.035) | 6.4 (0.252) | 34.1 (1.343) | 17.5 |
| | 4th exhaust valve spring | 1.0 (0.039) | 7.1 (0.280) | 60.3 (2.374) | 18.5 |
| | Servo orifice control valve spring | 0.8 (0.031) | 6.6 (0.260) | 48.2 (1.898) | 33.0 |

Differential (Manual transmission) — Section 15

| | MEASUREMENT | = | STANDARD (NEW) | SERVICE LIMIT |
|--------------------|--------------------------------------|--------------|--|---------------|
| Differential | Pinion shaft contact area I.D. | B18B1 engine | 18.000 - 18.016 (0.7087 - 0.7093) | |
| carrier | | B18C1 engine | 18.000 - 18.018 (0.7087 - 0.7094) | |
| | Carrier-to-pinion clearance | B18B1 engine | 0.013 - 0.045 (0.0005 - 0.0018) | 0.1 (0.004) |
| | | B18C1 engine | 0.013 - 0.047 (0.0005 - 0.0019) | 0.1 (0.004) |
| | Driveshaft/intermediate shaft conta | ct area I.D. | | |
| | | B18B1 engine | 28.000 - 28.021 (1.1024 - 1.1032) | |
| | | B18C1 engine | 28.005 - 28.025 (1.1026 - 1.1033) | |
| | Carrier-to-driveshaft clearance | B18B1 engine | 0.020 - 0.062 (0.0008 - 0.0024) | |
| | | B18C1 engine | 0.045 - 0.086 (0.0018 - 0.0034) | |
| | Carrier-to-intermediate shaft cleara | nce | | |
| | | B18B1 engine | 0.050 - 0.087 (0.0020 - 0.0034) | |
| | | B18C1 engine | 0.075 - 0.111 (0.0030 - 0.0044) | |
| Differential | Backlash | | 0.05 - 0.15 (0.002 - 0.006) | Adjust |
| pinion gear | I.D. | | 18.042 - 18.066 (0.7103 - 0.7113) | |
| | Pinion gear-to-pinion shaft clearand | e | 0.055 ~ 0.095 (0.0022 – 0.0037) | 0.15 (0.006) |
| Set ring-to-beari | ng outer race clearance | B18B1 engine | 0 - 0.10 (0 - 0.004) | Adjust |
| Differential taper | roller bearing preload | | | |
| Starting torque ! | V·m (kgf·cm, lbf·in) | B18C1 engine | 2.11 - 3.04 (21.5 - 31.0, 13.0 - 18.7) | Adjust |

- Differential (Automatic transmission) — Section 15 ——

| | MEASUREMENT | STANDARD (NEW) | SERVICE LIMIT |
|-------------------|--|-----------------------------------|---------------|
| Differential | Pinion shaft contact area I.D. | 18.000 - 18.018 (0.7087 - 0.7094) | |
| carrier | Carrier-to-pinion clearance | 0.016 - 0.052 (0.0006 - 0.0020) | 0.1 (0.004) |
| | Driveshaft/intermediate shaft contact are I.D. | 28.005 - 28.025 (1.1026 - 1.1033) | |
| | Carrier-to-driveshaft clearance | 0.025 - 0.066 (0.0010 - 0.0026) | 0.12 (0.005) |
| Differential | Backlash | 0.05 - 0.15 (0.002 - 0.006) | Adjust |
| pinion gear | I.D. | 18.042 18.066 (0.7103 0.7113) | <u> </u> |
| • | Pinion gear-to-pinion shaft clearance | 0.059 - 0.095 (0.0023 - 0.0037) | 0.15 (0.006) |
| Set ring-to-beari | ng outer race clearance | 0 - 0.15 (0 - 0.006) | Adjust |

Steering — Section 17

| | MEASUREMENT | STANDARD (NEW) |
|----------------------|---|--|
| Steering wheel | Rotational play at steering wheel circumference Starting load at steering wheel circumference N (kgf, lbf) Engine running | 0 - 10 (0 - 0.39) 34 (3.5, 7.7) |
| Gearbox | Angle of rack-guide-screw loosened from locked position | 20° ± 5° |
| Pump | Pump pressure with shut-off valve closed kPa (kgf/cm², psi) | 6,400 - 7,400 (65 - 75, 920 - 1,100) |
| Power steering fluid | Recommended fluid Fluid capacity For overhaul (US qt, Imp qt) For fluid change | Honda power steering fluid-V 1.06 (1.12, 0.98) 0.79 (0.83, 0.70) |
| Power steering belt* | Deflection with 98 N (10 kgf, 22 lbf) between pulleys | 11.5 – 13.5 (0.45 – 0.53) with used belt 8.0 – 10.0 (0.31 – 0.39) with new belt |
| | Belt tension N (kgf, lbf) Measured with belt tension gauge | 390 - 540 (40 - 55, 88 - 120) with used belt 740 - 880 (75 - 90, 170 - 200) with new belt |

^{*} When using a new belt, adjust deflection or tension to new values. Run the engine for 5 minutes then turn it off. Readjust deflection or tension to used belt values.



Unit of length: mm (in)

| | MEASUREMENT | ī | STANDAR | D (NEW) |
|---------------------------|-----------------------------|-------------------------------|--|--------------------------|
| Aheel a -gnment | Camber | Front Rear | -0° 10′ ± 1° -0° 45′ ±0°45′ | |
| • | Caster | Front | 1° 10′ ± 1° | |
| | Total toe | Front Rear | $0 \pm 2 (0 \pm 0.08)$ IN 3 ⁻² ₋₁ (0.12 ^{-0.06} _{-0.04}) | |
| | Front wheel turning angle | Inward wheel Outward wheel | 36° 00′ ± 2° 30° 30′ | |
| ለጉee l bearing | End play | Front Rear | 0 - 0.05 (0 - 0.002) 0 - 0.05 (0 - 0.002) | |
| - | | | STANDARD (NEW) | SERVICE LIMIT |
| ₩heel | Rim runout (Aluminum wheel) | Axial Radial | 0 - 0.7 (0 - 0.03) 0 - 0.7 (0 - 0.03) | 2.0 (0.08) 1.5 (0.06) |
| | Rim runout (Steel wheel) | Axial Radial | 0 - 1.0 (0 - 0.04) 0 - 1.0 (0 - 0.04) | 2.0 (0.08) 1.5 (0.06) |

| | MEASUREMENT | | STANDARD | (NEW) |
|-----------------------|---|---------------------------------|--|---|
| Parking brake ever | Play in stroke at 200 N (20 kgf, 44 lbf) lever force | | To be locked when pulled 6 -10 notches | |
| Foot brake pedal | Pedal height (With floor mat removed) Free play | M/T A/T | 160 (6.30) 165 (6.50) 1 - 5 (0.04 - 0.20) | |
| Master cylinder | Piston-to-pushrod clearance | | 0 - 0.4 (0 - 0.2) | |
| | | | STANDARD (NEW) | SERVICE LIMIT |
| Disc brake | Disc thickness Disc runout | Front Rear Front Rear | 20.9 - 21.1 (0.82 - 0.83) 8.9 - 9.1 (0.35 - 0.36) | 19.0 (0.75) 8.0 (0.31) 0.10 (0.004) 0.10 (0.004) |
| | Disc parallelism Pad thickness | Front and rear Front Rear | 9.5 - 10.5 (0.37 - 0.41) 7.0 - 8.0 (0.27 - 0.31) | 0.015 (0.0006) 1.6 (0.06) 1.6 (0.06) |

| | MEASUREMENT | STANDARD (NEW) |
|-------------------------|--|--|
| Air conditioning system | Lubricant capacity mf (fl oz) Condenser Evaporator Line or hose Receiver Lubricant type: ND-OIL8 (P/N 38899 – PR7 – A01) | 25 (5/6) 40 (1 1/3) 10 (1/3) 10 (1/3) |
| Compressor | Lubricant capacity mf (fl oz) Lubricant type: ND-OIL8 (P/N 38899 – PR7 – A01) Stator coil resistance at 68°F (20°C) Ω Pulley-to-pressure plate clearance | 140*\ddot\ddot\ddot\ddot\ddot\ddot\ddot\ddo |
| Compressor belt*1 | Deflection with 98 N (10 kgf, 22 lbf) between pulleys | 7.5 - 9.5 (0.30 - 0.37) with used belt* ² 8.5 - 10.5 (0.33 - 0.41) with used belt* ³ 5.0 - 7.0 (0.20 - 0.28) with new belt |
| | Belt tension N (kgf, lbf) Measured with belt tension gauge | 390 – 540 (40 – 55, 88 – 120) with used belt* ² 340 – 490 (35 – 50, 77 – 110) with used belt* ³ 740 – 880 (75 – 90, 170 – 200) with new belt |

^{*1:} When using a new belt, adjust deflection or tension to new values. Run the engine for 5 minutes then turn it off.
Readjust deflection or tension to used belt values.

*2: B18B1 engine

*3: B18C1 engine

| | MEASUREMENT | | STANDARD (NEW) | | |
|-------------------|---|------------------|--|--|--|
| Ignition coil | Rated voltage V Primary winding resistance at 68°F (20°C) Ω Secondary winding resistance at 68°F (20°C) kΩ | | 12 0.6 - 0.8 12.8 - 19.2 | | |
| Ignition wire | Resistance at 68°F (20°C) kΩ | | 25 max. | | |
| | | | STANDARD (NEW) | SERVICE LIMIT | |
| Spark plug | Type Gap B18B1 B18C1 | engine engine | See Section 23 1.0 – 1.1 (0.039 – 0.043) | 1.3 (0.051)+1 | |
| Ignition timing | At idling BTDC (Red) – rpm | M/T A/T | 16° ± 2° -750 ± 50 (Neutral) 16° ± 2° -750 ± 50 (Nor P position) | | |
| Alternator beit*2 | Deflection with 98 N (10 kgf, 22 lbf) between pulleys | | 9.0 – 11.0 (0.35 – 0.43) with used belt 6.0 – 8.0 (0.24 – 0.31) with new belt | | |
| | Belt tension N (kgf, lbf) Measured with belt tension gauge | | 340 - 490 (35 - 50, 77 - 110) with used belt 690 - 880 (70 - 90, 154 - 198) with new belt | | |
| | | | STANDARD (NEW) | SERVICE LIMIT | |
| Alternator | Output 13.5 V at hot A Coil resistance (rotor) at 68°F (20°C) Ω Slip ring O.D. Brush length Brush spring tension N (kgf, lbf) | | 90 2.9 14.4 (0.57) 10.5 (0.41) 3.2 (0.33, 0.73) | 14.0 (0.55) 1.5 (0.06) | |
| Starter | Output Mica depth Commutator runout Commutator O.D. Brush length Brush spring tension (new) N (kgf, lbf) | | 1.4 kW 0.5 - 0.8 (0.02 - 0.03) 0 - 0.02 (0 - 0.0008) 29.9 - 30.0 (1.177 - 1.181) 15.0 - 15.5 (0.59 - 0.61) 17.7 - 23.5 (1.8 - 2.4, 4.0 - 5.3) | 0.2 (0.008) 0.05 (0.002) 29.0 (1.142) 10.0 (0.39) | |

^{*1:} Do not adjust the gap, replace spark plug if it is out of spec.
*2: When using a new belt, adjust deflection or tension to new values. Run the engine for 5 minutes then turn it off, Readjust deflection or tension to used belt values.





| | ITEM | | METRIC | ENGLISH | NOTES |
|-----------------|---|-----------------|---|--------------------|--------------|
| > MENSIONS | Overall Length | 3 DOOR | 4,380 mm | 172.4 in | |
| | | 4 DOOR | 4,525 mm | 178.1 in | |
| | Overall Width | | 1,710 mm | 67.3 in | |
| | Overall Height | 3 DOOR | 1,335 mm | 52.6 in | |
| | o voi all violgill | 4 DOOR | 1,370 mm | 53.9 in | |
| | Wheelbase | 3 DOOR | 2,570 mm | 101.2 in | |
| | *************************************** | 4 DOOR | 2,620 mm | 103.1 in | |
| | Track F/R | | 1,475/1,470 mm | 58.1/57.9 in | |
| | Ground Clearance | | 150 mm | 5.9 in | |
| | Seating Capacity | | Four (3 DOOR), F | | |
| neight (USA) | Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) | | | 3,680 lbs | |
| reight (CANADA) | Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) | | 1,670 kg | | . |
| ENGINE | Туре | B18B1 engine | Water-cooled, 4 | -stroke DOHC | |
| ENGINE | יאףי | 2 lob rollgille | gasoline (| | |
| | | B18C1 engine | Water-cooled, 4-stroke DOHC | | |
| | | Biociengino | VTEC gasoline engine | | |
| | Cylinder Arrangement | | Inline 4-cylinder, transverse | | |
| | Bore and Stroke | B18B1 engine | 81.0 x 89.0 mm | 3.19 x 3.50 in | |
| | Dole and Stroke | B18C1 engine | 81.0 x 87.2 mm | 3.19 x 3.43 in | |
| | Displacement | B18B1 engine | 1,834 cm ³ (mℓ) | 112 cu-in | |
| | Displacement | B18C1 engine | 1,797 cm ³ (mℓ) | 110 cu-in | |
| | Compression Ratio B18B1 engine B18C1 engine | | 9.2: | · | |
| | | | 10.0 : 1 | | |
| | | | Belt driven, DOHC 4 valve per cylinder | | |
| | Valve Train | B18B1 engine | | | |
| | | B18C1 engine | | | |
| | Lubrication System | | Forced and wet sump, trochoid pump | | |
| | Lubrication System | D10D1 anaina | | | |
| | Oil Pump Displacement | B18B1 engine | 50 l (53 US qt, 44 lmp qt)/minute*1 71 l (75 US qt, 62 lmp qt)/minute*2 | | |
| | B18C1 engine | | | | |
| | Water Pump Displacement | B18B1 engine | • | | |
| | Front Base Street | B18C1 engine | 140 & (148 US qt, 123 Imp qt)/minute*2 UNLEADED gasoline with 86 Pump | | |
| | Fuel Required | B18B1 engine | Octane Number or higher | | |
| | | 01001! | _ | | |
| | | B18C1 engine | Premium UNLEADED gasoline with 91 Pump Octane Number or higher | | |
| | | | | | |
| STARTER | Type | | Gear reduction 1.4 kW | | |
| | Normal Output | | | | |
| | Nominal Voltage | | 12 ' | | |
| | Hour Rating | | 30 seconds | | |
| | Direction of Rotation | | Clockwise as viewed from gear end | | |
| | Weight | | 3.7 kg | 8.3 lbs | |
| CLUTCH | Clutch Type | M/T | Single plate dry, diaphragm spring | | |
| | | A/T | Torque co | | |
| | Clutch Facing Area | M/T | 203 cm ² | 31 sq-in | |
| TRANSMISSION | Transmission Type | M/T | Synchronized 5-speed | forward, 1 reverse | |
| | ,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,, | A/T | Electronically | | |
| | | • | 4-speed automa | | |
| | Primary Reduction | | Direct | 1 | |

^{*1:} At 6,000 engine rpm *2: At 7,600 engine rpm

(cont'd)

Design Specifications

| | ITEM | | METRIC | ENGLISH | NOTES |
|--------------|--------------------------------|------------------------|---------------------------------|-------------------------|-------|
| TRANSMISSION | Туре | | Manual transmission | | |
| | | Engine type | B18B1 | B18C1 | |
| | Gear Ratio | 1st | 3.230 | 3.230 | |
| | | 2nd | 1.900 | 1.900 | |
| | | 3rd | 1.269 | 1.360 | |
| | | 4th | 0.966 | 1.034 | |
| | | 5th | 0.714 | 0.787 | |
| | | Reverse | 3.000 | 3.000 | |
| | Final Reduction Gear type | | Single helical gear | | |
| | Gear ratio | | 4.266 4.400 | | |
| | Туре | | Automatic transmission | | |
| | Gear Ratio | 1st | 2.722 | | |
| | | 2nd | 1.468 | | |
| | | 3rd | 0.97 | 75 | |
| | | 4th | 0.63 | 38 | |
| | | Reverse | 1.95 | 54 | |
| | Final Reduction | Gear type | Single helical gear | | |
| | | Gear ratio | 4.357 | | |
| AIR | Cooling Capacity | | 3,570 Kcal/h | 14,166 BTU/h | |
| CONDITIONING | Compressor Type/Make | | Swash-plate/NIPPONDENSO | | |
| | No. of Cylinder | | 10 | | |
| | Capacity | | 150 mℓ/rev l | 9.15 cu-in/rev | |
| | | Max. Speed | 7,600 | | |
| | | Lubricant Capacity | 140 ml | 4-2/3 fl oz | |
| | | | | 4.73 lmp oz | |
| | | Lubricant Type | ND-OIL8 (P/N 38899 – PR7 – A01) | | |
| | Condenser | Type | Corrugated fin | | |
| | Evaporator | Type | Corrugated fin | | |
| | Blower | Туре | Sirocco fan | | |
| | | Motor Input | 200 W/12 V | | |
| | | Speed Control | 4-spe | | |
| | | Max. Capacity | 450 m³/h | 15,900 cu ft/h | |
| | Temperature Control | | Air-mix type | | |
| | Compressor Clutch | Compressor Clutch Type | | ooly-V-belt drive | |
| | | Power Consumption | | at 68°F (20°C) | |
| | Refrigerant | Туре | HFC-134a | | |
| | | Quantity | 700₋‰g | 24.7 _{-1.8} oz | |
| STEERING | Туре | | Power assisted, r | | |
| SYSTEM | Overall Ratio | | 16. | | |
| | Turns, Lock-to-Lock | | 2.9 | • | |
| | Steering Wheel Dia. | | 380 mm | 15.0 in | |
| SUSPENSION | Туре | Front | Independent dou | • | |
| | | D | coil spring wi | | |
| | | Rear | Independent dou | | |
| | 1 | | coil spring wi | | |
| | Shock Absorber, Front and Rear | | Telescopic, hydraulic | nitrogen gas-filled | |



| | ITEM | | METRIC | ENGLISH | NOTES |
|--------------|----------------------------------|----------------|---|-----------------------|----------|
| WHEEL | Camber Front | | -0°10′ | | |
| ALIGNMENT | Rear | | -0°45′ | | |
| | Caster Front | | 1°10′ | | |
| | Total Toe | Front | 0 mm | 1 0 in | |
| | , 500, 750 | Rear | In 2 mm | In 0.08 in | |
| BRAKE SYSTEM | Type Front | | Power-assisted self-adjusting ventilated disc | | |
| | Rear | | Power-assisted self-adjusting solid disc | | |
| | Pad Surface Area | Front | 50.0 cm ² x 2 | 7.75 sq in x 2 | |
| | | Rear | 21.0 cm ² x 2 | 3.26 sq in x 2 | |
| | Parking Brake | Type | | rear two wheel brakes | |
| TIRE | Size | Front and rear | P195/60R14 85H*1 P195/55R15 84V*2 | | ! |
| | Spare Tire | | T115/70D14+3 T135/70D15+4 | | |
| ELECTRICAL | Battery | | 12 V – 36 AH/5 HR | | |
| | Starter | | 12 V – 1.4 kW | | |
| | Alternator | | 12 V – 90 A | | |
| | Fuses | | | | |
| | In Under-dash Fuse/Relay Box | | 7.5 A, 10 A, 1 | 5 A, 20 A, 30 A | |
| | In Under-hood Fuse/Relay Box | | 7.5 A, 10 A, 15 A, 20 A, 30 A, 40 A | | |
| | · · | | | 100 A | |
| | In Under-hood ABS Fuse/Relay Box | | 10 A, 15 A, 20 A, 40 A | | |
| | Headlights High | | 12 V - 65 W (HB3) | | |
| | Low | | 12 V – 55 W (HB4) | | |
| | Front Side Marker Lights | | 12 V – 3 CP | | SAE 168 |
| | Front Turn Signal/Parking Lights | | 12 V – 32/3 CP | | SAE 1157 |
| | Rear Turn Signal Lights | | 12 V – 32 CP | | SAE 1156 |
| | Stop/Taillights | | 12 V - 32/3 CP | | SAE 1157 |
| | High Mount Brake Light*5 | | 12 V - 21 W | | SAE 7440 |
| | Rear Side Marker Lights | | 12 V – 3 CP | | SAE 168 |
| | Back-up Lights | | 12 V – 3 CP | | SAE 1156 |
| | | | 12 V - 32 CF 12 V - 8 W | | JAL 1100 |
| | License Plate Lights | | 12 V - 5 W | | |
| | Ceiling Lights | | 1 - 1 - 1 | | |
| | Cargo Area Lights (3 DOOR) | | 12 V – 3.4 W | | |
| | Trunk Lights (4 DOOR) | | 12 V – 3.4 W | | |
| | Spotlights | | 12 V – 5 W | | |
| | Glove Box Light | | 12 V - 3.4 W | | |
| | Gauge Lights | | 12 V - 3.4 W | | |
| | Indicator Lights | | 12 V – 0.84 W, 0.91 W, 1.12 W, 1.4 W, 3 W | | |
| | Illumination and Pilot Lights | | | .91 W, 1.4 W, LED | |
| | Heater Illumination Lights | | 12 V - | 1.4 W | |

^{*1:} RS, LS

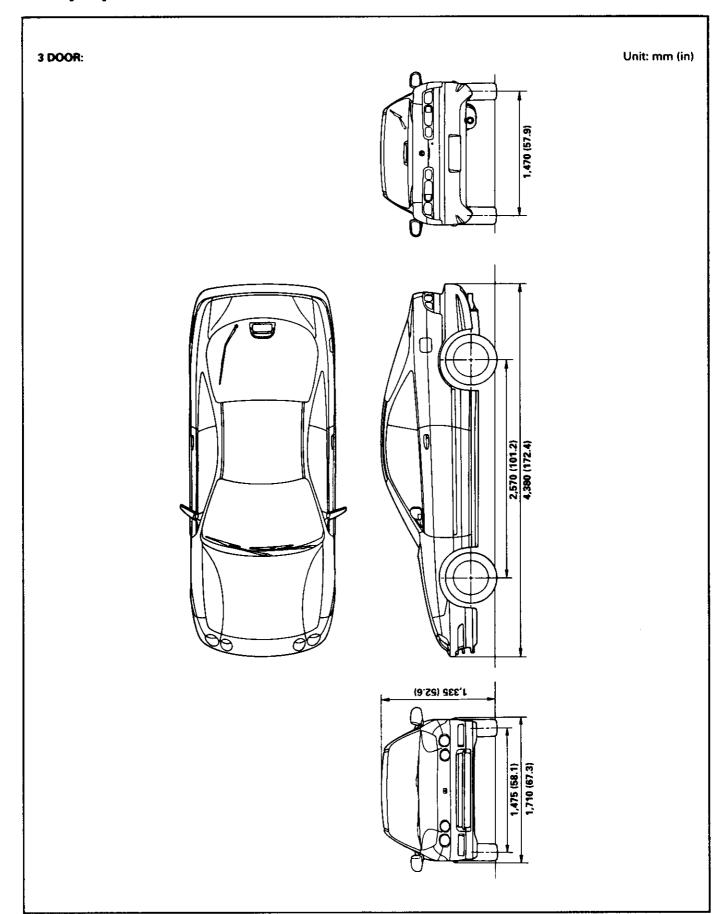
*2: GS-R

*3: RS

*4: LS, GS-R

*5: Except high mount brake light installed in rear spoiler.

Body Specifications



Unit: mm (in) 4 DOOR: 1,470 (57.9) 2,620 (103.1) (6.63) 075,r 1,475 (58.1)

Maintenance

| ubrication P | oints | | | | 4-2 |
|--------------------|-------|------|------|------|-----|
| Maintenance | Sched | dule | | | 4-4 |



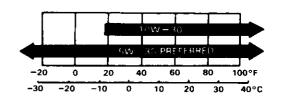
Lubrication Points

For the details of lubrication points and type of lubricants to be applied, refer to the illustrated index and various work procedure (such as Assembly/Reassembly, Replacement, Overhaul, Installation, etc.) contained in each section.

| No. | LUBRICATION POINTS | LUBRICANT |
|---|---|--|
| 1 | Engine | API Service Grade: Use SG or SH "Energy Conserving II" grade oil. The oil container may also display the API Certification seal shown below. Make sure it says "For Gasoline Engines." SAE Viscosity: See chart below. |
| 2 | Transmission Manual Automatic | API Service Grades: SF or SG SAE Viscosity: 10 W – 30 or 10 W – 40 Honda Premium Formula or DEXRON® II Automatic transmission fluid |
| 3 | Brake line (Includes Anti-lock brake line) | Brake fluid DOT3 or DOT4 |
| 4 | Clutch line | Brake fluid DOT3 or DOT4 |
| 5 | Power steering gearbox | Steering grease P/N 08733-B070E |
| 6 | Release fork (Manual transmission) | Super High Temp Urea Grease (P/N 08798-9002) |
| 7 8 | Throttle wire end (Dashboard lower panel hole) Cruise control actuator wire end (Dashboard lower panel hole) | Silicone grease |
| 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 | Throttle cable end (Throttle link) Cruise control actuator cable end (Actuator link) Brake master cylinder pushrod Clutch master cylinder pushrod Engine hood hinges and engine hood latch Battery terminals Fuel fill lid Hatch hinges or trunk hinges Door hinges, upper and lower Door open detent | .Multi-purpose grease |
| 19 | Rear brake calipers | Rust-preventive agent |
| 20 | Power steering system | Honda power steering fluid-V |
| 21 | Air conditioning compressor | Refrigerant oil ND-OIL8 (P/N 38899—PR7—A01) (For Refrigerant: HFC-134a (R-134a)) |

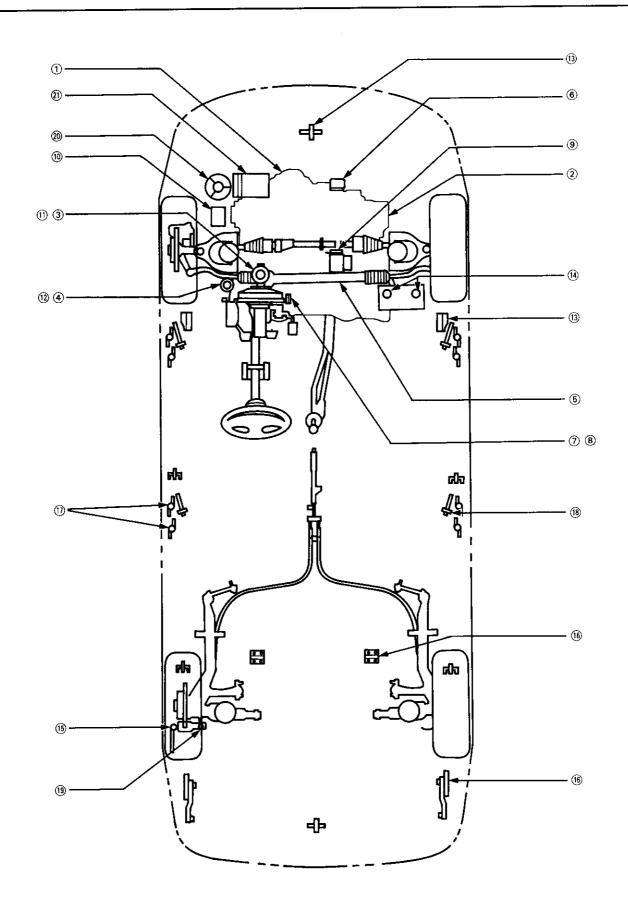


API CERTIFICATION SEAL



Recommended engine oil Engine oil viscosity for ambient temperature ranges





| necessary. |
|----------------|
| * |
| replace |
| ō |
| adjust, |
| clean, adj |
| ir inspection, |
| After |
| - nspect: |
| R-Replace |

| Coming at the let | Later COO to the factor of the control of the contr | | | | 1 | - | | | | | | | | | ŀ | | |
|------------------------------|--|-----|-------|---------|----------|-------|--------|--------|----------|-----------|----------|----------|----------|----------------|----------|---|-------------|
| ספו אוכם שו רוופ וווור | COUNTY OF THE INTERIOR INSTEAD X 1,000 MILES (OF KIT) OF SITER THAT NUMBER OF MORTHS, WHICHEVER COMES FIRST | EX | 3 0 2 | 31181 1 | ת שנו | HIDE. | Ĕ | onths, | Which | ever | COLLIE | s first. | | | | | |
| | х 1,000 miles | 7.5 | 15 | 22.5 | 230 | 37.5 | 45 | 52.5 | 90 | 67.5 | 75 | 82.5 | 06 | 97.5 | 105 | | SEC |
| | × 1,000 km | 12 | 24 | 36 | 48 | 8 | 72 | 84 | 96 | 108 | 120 | 132 | 144 | 156 1 | 168 | NOTE | and PAGE |
| Maintenance Item | n months | 9 | 12 | 18 | 24 | စ္က | 36 | 42 | 48 | 54 | 9 | 99 | 72 | 78 | 84 | | ! |
| Engine and Transmission | mission | | | - | - | - | | | | | | 1 | 1 | | 1 | | |
| ☐ Air cleaner element | ment | Щ | Ц | | | | Ц | | R | | | F | E | | | | 11-117 |
| peeds elpi | | | | | | | | | : | | | | | _ | - | Manual transmission : 750 ± 50 rpm Automatic transmission: 750 ± 50 rpm (in N or P position) | 11-95 |
| Positive cranko | Positive crankcase ventilation valve | | | | | | | | - | | | - | - | | | If clicking sound is heard as you pinch the hose between the PCV valve and intake manifold, valve is OK. | 11-134 |
| Valve clearance (cold) | e (cold) | | _ | | _ | | _ | | - | - | _ | | _ | ļ - | | Intake : 0.08—0.12 mm (0.003—0.005 in) ** Exhaust: 0.16—0.20 mm (0.006—0.008 in) ** Intake : 0.15—0.19 mm (0.006—0.007 in) ** | 6-4 |
| | | | | | _ | | | | | | | | | | _ | Exhaust: 0.17-0.21 mm (0.007-0.008 in) ** Measured when cold. | |
| Fuel filter | | | | | | | | | ř. | | | | | | | The rubber fuel hoses need periodic replacement since they are subject to cracks and deterioration during long periods of use. | 11-108 |
| Fuel pipes, hos | Fuel pipes, hoses and connections | | | | <u> </u> | | | | Ē | 1 | | _ | <u> </u> | | | Check fuel lines for loose connections, cracks and deterioration. Retighten loose connections and replace any damaged parts. | 11-98 |
| Spark plugs | B18B1 engine (LS, RS) | | | | Œ | | | | œ | | | | α | | | NGK: ZFR5F-11 **, NIPPONDENSO: KJ16CR-L11 ** NGK: PFR6G-13 **, NIPPONDENSO: PK20PR-L13 ** | |
| | B18C1 engine (GS-R) | | | | | | | | H. | | | | | | - | Gap: 1.0-1.1 mm (0.039-0.043 in) ** 1.2-1.3 mm (0.047-0.051 in) *6, *7 | 23-97 |
| Distributor ignit | Distributor ignition cap and rotor | | | | | | | | <u>-</u> | | | | | | | | 23-91 |
| gnition wires | | _ | | | | | | | - | | | | | | _ | Maximum resistance 25,000 ohms | 23-94 |
| Engine oil | | Œ | æ | Œ | E | K | R | 8 | <u> </u> | ac | e | <u> </u> | <u> </u> | <u> </u> | <u>~</u> | Cepacity for change with filter: 3.8 t (4.0 US qt, 3.3 Imp qt) ** 4.0 t (4.2 US qt, 3.5 Imp qt) ** | 8-5 |
| Engine oil filter | | | | æ | | Œ | æ | Œ | Œ | | <u> </u> | R | | | H. | | 9-8 |
| Alternator drive belt | s beit | _ | | | _ | | | | _ | | | | _ | | | 9.0-11.0 mm (0.35-0.43 in) at 98 N (10 kgf. 22 lbf) tension | 23-108 |
| | | | | | | | \int | 1 | 1 | | | | 1 | | _ | interest in Table 11 to 12 to | _ |

Check oil and coolant level at each fuel stop.

Under severe driving conditions, service these items more often.

*1; For cars sold in California, this service is recommended only; other areas, it is required.
*2; Replace every 6 years or 60,000 miles (96,000 km), whichever comes first.
*5; B1881 engine (LS, RS)
**: B18C1 engine (GS-R)
**: Do not adjust the gap, replace the spark plug if it is out of standard gap.



| f necessary |
|--------------|
| or replace i |
| ı, adjust, c |
| n, clean |
| r inspectio |
| ect: Afte |
| I-Inspe |
| R-Replace |

| Service at the interval listed x 1,000 miles (or km) or after that number of months, whichever comes first | 000 miles (or | Æ | or aft | ter th | at nun | nber c | of mor | ıths, v | vhiche | ver co | mes 1 | irst. | | | | |
|--|---------------|-----|------------|--------|-----------|---------|--------|---------|----------------------------|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------------|--|--|----------------|--|--------------------|
| × | x 1,000 miles | 7.5 | 15 | 22.5 | စ္က | 30 37.5 | 45 | 52.5 | 9 09 | 67.5 | 75 82 | 82.5 90 | | 97.5 105 | ш. С | SEC |
| × | × 1,000 km | 12 | 24 | 36 | 48 | 9 | 72 | 84 | 96 | 108 | 120 1 | 132 144 | 4 156 | 3 168 | | PAGE |
| Maintenance Item | months | ဖ | 12 | 18 | 24 | 30 | 36 | 42 | 48 | 54 | 9 09 | 66 72 | 2 78 | 84 | | |
| Engine and Transmission | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Cooling system hoses and connections | nections | | | | - | | | | <u>÷</u> | | | 1. | - | | | 10-2 |
| • Engine coolant | | | | | | | Œ | | | | nc nc | | | * * | Capacity for change: Manual transmission: 4.4 t (4.6 US qt, 3.9 lmp qt) ** 4.7 t (5.0 US qt, 4.1 lmp qt) ** Automatic transmission: 4.7 t (5.0 US qt, 4.1 lmp qt) ** Check specific gravity for freezing point. | 10-5 |
| Timing belt | | | | | | | | 1 | | | <u> </u> | £ | 1 | | | 6-10 *s 6-49 ** |
| Water pump | | | | | | | | | - | <u> </u> | | - | + | | | 10-9 |
| Three way catalytic converter heat | heat | | | | | | | | - | | | | | | Check condition and tightness | 11-132 |
| Exhaust pipe (before catalytic converter) | converter) | | | ļ | : | | | | : | + | | - | = | | Check condition and tightness | 9-5 |
| Exhaust pipe and muffler (after catalytic | r catalytic | | _ | | - | | - | | - | | _ | _ | | | Check condition and tightness | g-6 |
| ☐ Manual Transmission oil | | | | L | Œ | | | | œ | | | اكا | œ | | 2.2 l (2.3 US qt, 1.9 lmp qt) for change | 13-3 |
| ☐ Automatic transmission fluid | | | | | E | | | | æ | | | [EC] | | | 2.7 t (2.9 US qt, 2.4 Imp qt) for change HONDA Premium Formula ATF or DEXRON® II ATF | F 14-93 |
| Brakes | | | | | | | | ļ | | ŀ | ŀ | | - | | ╌ | |
| Front brake pad | | _ | _ | _ | _ | _ | _ | _ | - | - | _ | <u>-</u> _ | <u>-</u> | - | - | <u>-</u> |
| ☐ Front brake discs and calipers | | | | L | | | | | | | | | | | Min. thickness: 19 mm (0.75 in) | 19-9, 10 |
| ☐ Rear brake discs, calipers and pads | pads | | | | | | | | | | | | | | Min. thickness: Discs 8.0 mm (0.31 in) : Pads 1.6 mm (0.06 in) | 19-16, 19 20 |
| Brake hoses and lines | | | Ŀ | | - | | _ | | - | | _ | | | _ | Check for leaks, damage, interference or twisting. | 19-27 |
| Parking brake | | | <u> </u> - | | <u> -</u> | | | | - | | | F | _ | _ | Fully engaged 6 to 10 clicks. | 19-5 |
| Check oil and coolant level at each fuel stop. Under severe driving conditions, service these items more | each fuel sto | p. | ا يُو | nore | often. | | | | * * * * * •. *, *, *, * | or car herea his se 1881 | s sold fter, r rvice engin | For cars sold in Califors Thereafter, replace eve This service is recomm B18B1 engine (LS, RS) R18C1 engine (GS,R) | For cars sold in California, this ser *3: Thereafter, replace every 2 years *4: This service is recommended only, *5: B1881 engine (LS, RS) *6: R18C1 and *6: R18C1 and | 2 yez ded a | **: For cars sold in California, this service is recommended only: other areas, it is required. **: Thereafter, replace every 2 years or 30,000 miles (48,000 km), whichever comes first. **: This service is recommended only. **: Balls I engine (LS, RS) **: A 18C1 engine (CS, RS) | ਚਂ ਜ਼ੁੰ |

R-Replace 1-Inspect: After inspection, clean, adjust, or replace if necessary.

| Service at the interval listed x 1,000 miles (or km) or after | x 1,000 miles (or | km) | or aft | | nour | o redr | f mon | ths, w | rhiche | ver cc | that number of months, whichever comes first | irst. | | | | |
|---|-------------------|-----|--------|------|------|--------|-------|--------|----------|----------|--|---------|------|-------|---|----------|
| | x 1,000 miles | 7.5 | 15 | 22.5 | ဓ္တ | 37.5 | 45 | 52.5 | 90 | 67.5 | 75 82 | 82.5 90 | 97.5 | 5 105 | | SEC. |
| | x 1,000 km | 12 | 24 | 36 | 48 | 8 | 72 | 84 | 96 | 108 | 120 132 144 156 | 12 14 | 4 15 | 9 168 | 100 80 | PAGE |
| Maintenance Item | months | 9 | 12 | 18 | 24 | 8 | 36 | 42 | 84 | 54 | 8 | 66 72 | 2 78 | 8 | 4 | |
| Brakes | | | | | | | | | | | | - | - | | | |
| Brake fluid | 1 | | | | | | | | | \vdash | \vdash | _ | _ | | Use only DOT3 or DOT4 fluid. Check that brake | |
| (including Anti-tock brake system *7) | ıystem *7) | | | | Œ | | | | Œ | | | Œ | | | fluid level is between the upper and lower marks on the reservoir. | 19-6 |
| Anti-lock brake system operation *? | sration *? | | | | _ | | | | | | | | | | Function test Wheel sensor signal confirmation Anti-lock brake system indicator light | 19-151 |
| Steering, Suspension, Miscellaneous | aneons | | | | | | Ī | | | | - | - | | | | |
| Front wheel alignment | | | - | | - | | - | | - | | _ | _ | _ | _ | 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 | 18-4 |
| Steering operation, tie rod ends, steering gearbox and boots | ends, | | - | | - | | | | _ | | | | - | | Check rack grease and steering linkage. Check the boot for damage or leaking grease. | 17-19 |
| Power steering system | | | В | | | | | | <u> </u> | <u>ן</u> | | | | | | 17-23 |
| Power steering pump belt | | | | | - | | | | _ | | | _ | | | 11.5–13.5 mm (0.45–0.53 in) at 98 N (10 kgf, 22 lbf) tension | 17-20 |
| Suspension mounting | | | - | | - | | - | | _ | | | _ | | | Check tightness of bolts. | 18-8, 26 |
| Supplemental restraint system | tem | | | | Insp | ct sy | tem | 10 yes | irs aft | er pro | Inspect system 10 years after production | _ | | | | ı |

*7: For cars with Anti-lock brake system (LS and GS-R)

Severe Driving Conditions items to the chart indicate you will need some services more frequently in certain severe driving conditions.

The conditions are:

A: Driving less than 5 miles (8 km) per trip, or, in freezing temperatures, driving less than 10 miles (16 km) per trip.

B: Driving on rough or muddy roads, or de-iced roads.
C: Driving in extremely dusty conditions.
D: Extensive idling or driving long periods at slow speeds, such as a delivery vehicle.
E: Towing a trailer.

Services for Severe Driving Conditions

—Clean the air cleaner element every 15,000 miles (24,000 km) or 12 months and replace every 30,000 miles (48,000 km) or 24 months under conditions B or C.

—Replace engine oil and oil filter every 3,750 miles (6,000 km) or 3 months under conditions A, B, C, D or E.

—Replace transmission oil every 15,000 miles (24,000 km) or 12 months under conditions D or E.

—Inspect front brake discs and calipers, and rear brake discs, calipers and pads every 7,500 miles (12,000 km) or 6 months under conditions B, C, D or E.

—Inspect the power steering system every 7,500 miles (12,000 km) or 8 months under conditions A, B, or C.

Engine

| Engine Removal/Installation | 5-1 |
|-------------------------------|-----|
| Cylinder Head/Valve Train | 6-1 |
| Engine Block | 7-1 |
| Engine Lubrication | 8-1 |
| ntake Manifold/Exhaust System | 9-1 |
| Cooling | 10- |

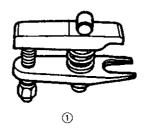


| Special Tools | 5-2 |
|-----------------------------|------|
| Engine Removal/Installation | 5-3 |
| Mount/Bracket Torque | 5-16 |



Special Tools

| Ref. No. | Tool Number | Description | Qty | Page Reference |
|----------|---------------|---------------------------|-----|----------------|
| 1 | 07MAC-SL00200 | Ball Joint Remover, 28 mm | 1 | 5-9 |





A WARNING

- Make sure jacks and safety stands are placed properly and hoist brackets are attached to the correct positions on the engine (see section 1).
- Make sure the car will not roll off stands and fall while you are working under it.

CAUTION:

- Use fender covers to avoid damaging painted surfaces.
- Unspecified items are common.
- Unplug the wiring connectors carefully while holding the coupler and the connector portion to avoid damage.
- Mark all wiring and hoses to avoid misconnection.
 Also, be sure that they do not contact other wiring or hoses, or interfere with other parts.

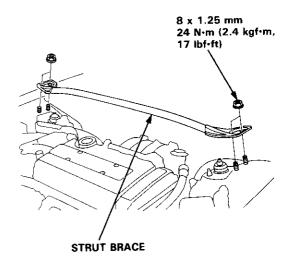
NOTE: Anti-theft radios have a coded theft protection circuit. Be sure to get the customer's code number before

- Disconnecting the battery.
- Removing the No. 32 (7.5 A) fuse from the underhood fuse/relay box.
- Removing the radio

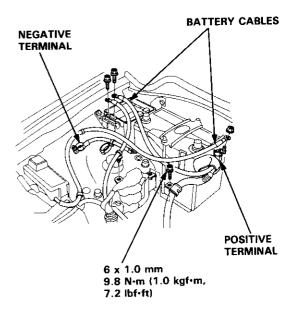
After service, reconnect power to the radio and turn it on. When the word "CODE" is displayed, enter the customer's 5-digit code to restore radio operation.

1. Remove the hood (see section 20).

2. Remove the strut brace.

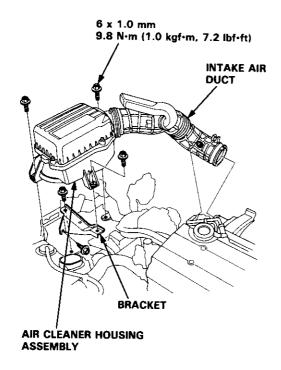


- 3. Disconnect the battery negative terminal first, then the positive terminal.
- Disconnect the battery cables from the under-hood fuse/relay box and under-hood ABS fuse/relay box.

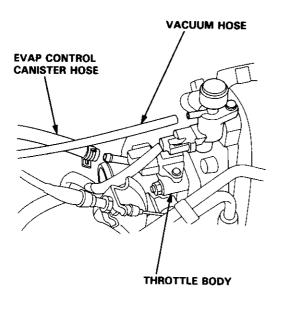


(cont'd) -

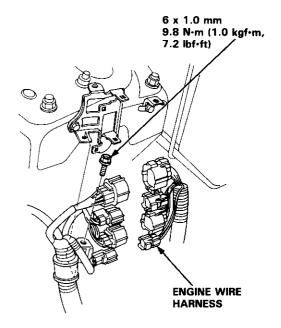
5. Remove the intake air duct, air cleaner housing assembly and the bracket.



6. Remove the evaporative emission (EVAP) control canister hose and vacuum hose.



Remove the engine wire harness connectors on the right side of engine compartment.



8. Relieve fuel pressure by loosening the service bolt on the fuel filter about one turn (see section 11).

A WARNING Do not smoke while working on the fuel system. Keep open flame away from work area. Drain fuel only into an approved container. CAUTION:

- Before disconnecting any fuel line, relieve the fuel pressure as described above.
- Place a shop towel over the fuel filter to prevent pressurized fuel from spraying over the engine.
- 9. Remove the fuel feed hose.

SERVICE BOLT
15 N·m (1.5 kgf·m, 11 lbf·ft)

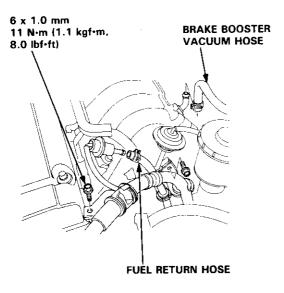
WASHERS
Replace.

BANJO BOLT
33 N·m (3.4 kgf·m, 25 lbf·ft)

FUEL FEED HOSE



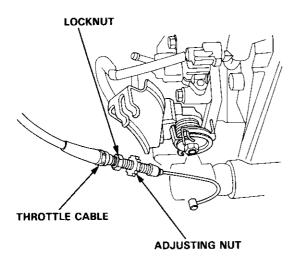
10. Remove the brake booster vacuum hose and fuel return hose.



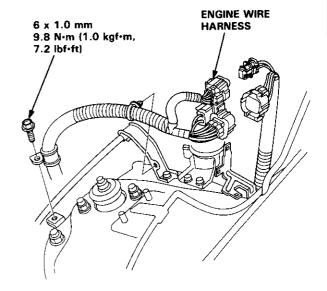
11. Remove the throttle cable by loosening the locknut, then slip the cable end out of the accelerator linkage.

NOTE:

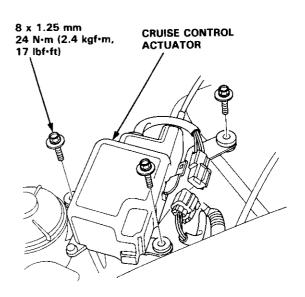
- Take care not to bend the cable when removing it. Always replace any kinked cable with a new one.
- Adjust the throttle cable when installing (see section 11).



 Remove the engine wire harness connectors, terminal and clamps on the left side of engine compartment.

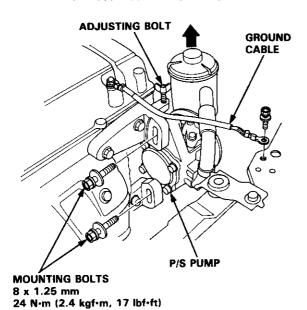


13. Remove the cruise control actuator.

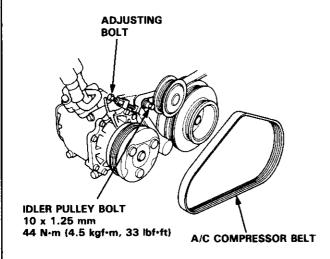


(cont'd)

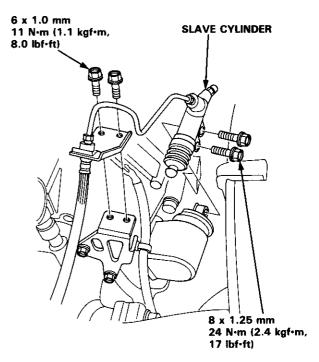
- 14. Remove the engine ground cable at the body end.
- Remove the adjusting bolt and mounting bolt, then remove the power steering (P/S) belt and pump.
 - Do not disconnect the P/S hoses.



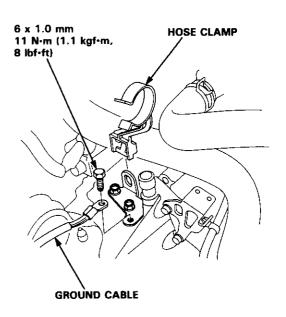
16. Loosen the idler pulley bolt and adjusting bolt, then remove the air conditioning (A/C) compressor belt.



- (Manual transmission) Remove the clutch slave cylinder and pipe/hose assembly.
 - Do not disconnect the pipe/hose assembly.



18. Remove the transmission ground cable and hose clamp.

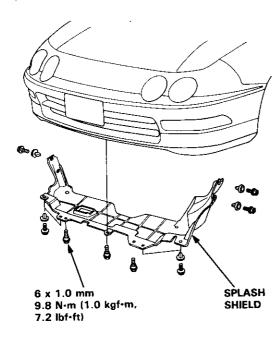




19. Remove the radiator cap.

A WARNING Use care when removing the radiator cap to avoid scalding by hot engine coolant or steam.

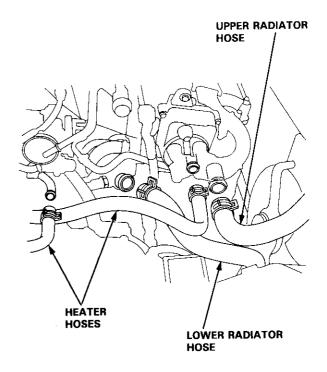
- 20. Raise the hoist to full height.
- 21. Remove the front tires/wheels and the splash shield.



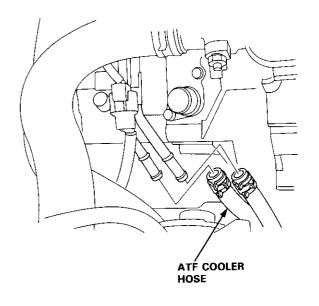
- 22. Drain the engine coolant (see page 10-5).
 - Loosen the drain plug in the radiator.
- 23. Drain the transmission oil or fluid. Reinstall the drain plug using a new washer.
- 24. Drain the engine oil. Reinstall the drain plug using a new washer.

CAUTION: Do not overtighten the drain plug.

25. Remove the upper and lower radiator hoses and the heater hoses.

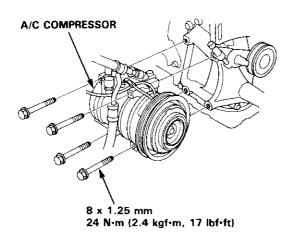


26. (Automatic transmission) Remove the ATF cooler hoses.

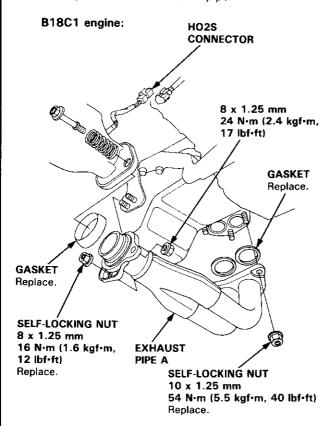


(cont'd) -

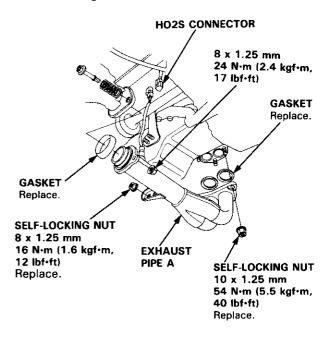
- 27. Remove the radiator assembly (see page 10-4).
- 28. Remove the A/C compressor.
 - Do not disconnect A/C hoses.



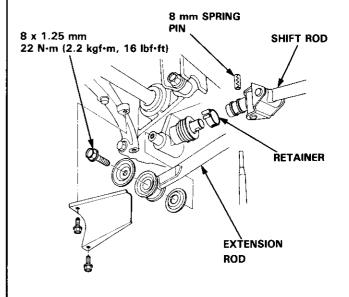
29. Disconnect the heated oxygen sensor (HO2S) connector, then remove exhaust pipe A.



B18B1 engine:

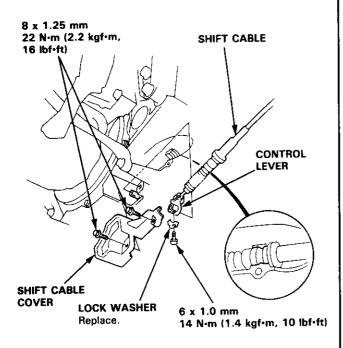


30. Remove the shift rod and extension rod (M/T).



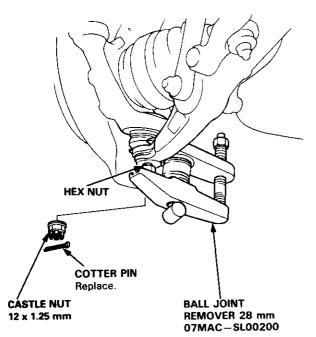


31. Remove the shift cable (A/T).



- 32. Remove the damper fork.
- 33. Disconnect the suspension lower arm ball joints using the special tool. Refer to section 18 for the proper procedure.

NOTE: Adjust the tool so the jaws are parallel to each other.

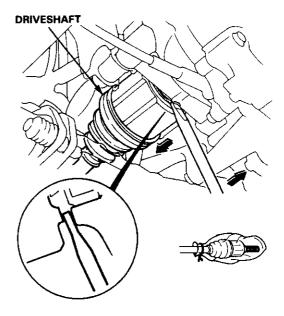


34. Remove the driveshafts.

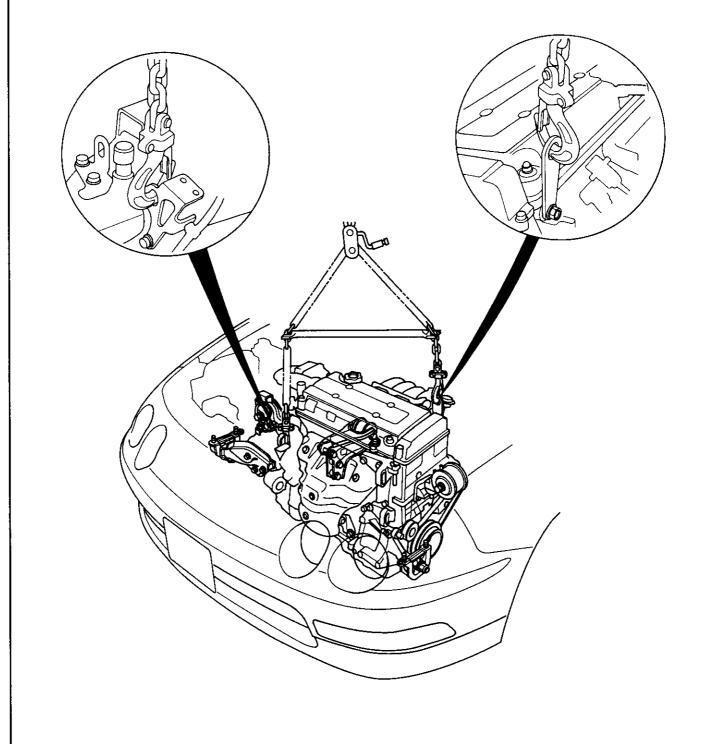
CAUTION:

- Do not pull on the driveshaft, the CV joint may come apart.
- Use care when prying out the assembly.
 Pull it straight to avoid damaging the differential oil seal or intermediate shaft dust seal.

NOTE: Coat all precision finished surfaces with clean engine oil or grease. Tie plastic bags over the driveshaft ends.

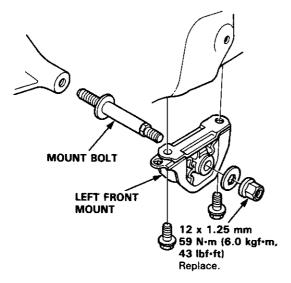


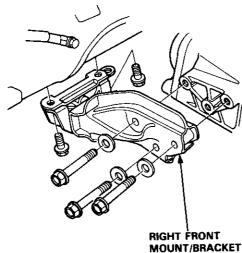
- 35. Lower the hoist.
- 36. Attach the chain hoist to the engine.



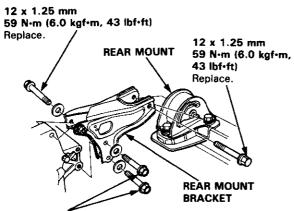


37. Remove the left and right front mounts and brackets.

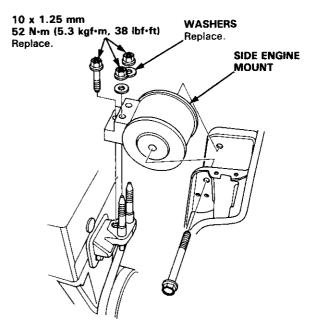




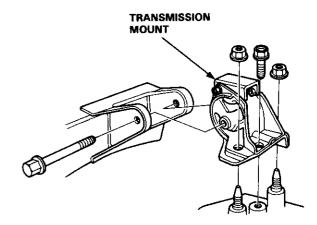
38. Remove the rear mount bracket.



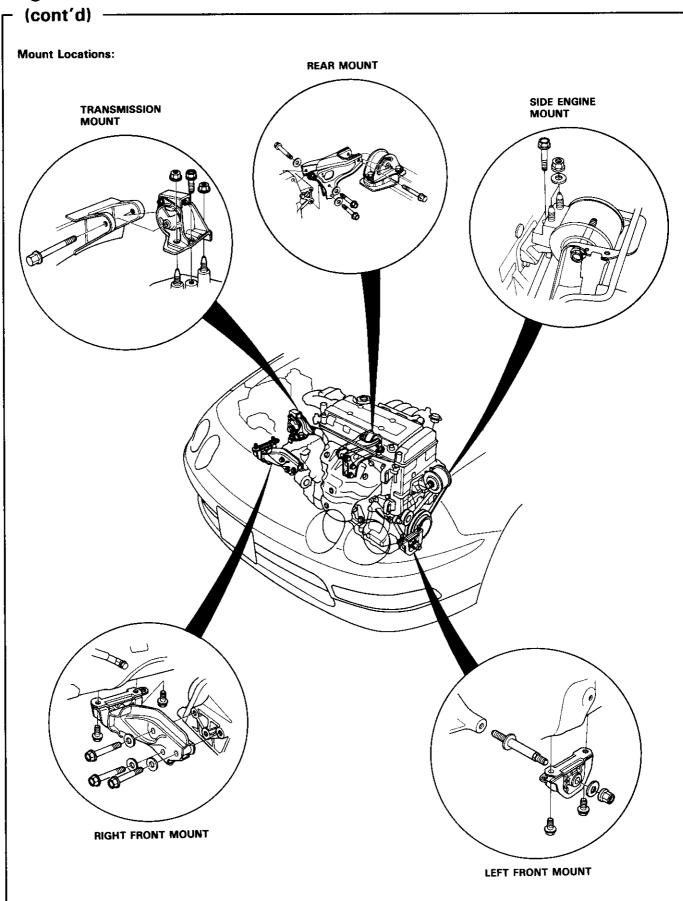
14 x 1.5 mm 118 N·m (12.0 kgf·m, 86.8 lbf·ft) Replace. 39. Remove the side engine mount.



40. Remove the transmission mount.



- 41. Check that the engine is completely free of vacuum hoses, fuel and engine coolant hoses, and electrical wiring.
- 42. Slowly raise the engine approximately 150 mm (6 in). Check once again that all hoses and wires are disconnected from the engine.
- 43. Raise the engine all the way and remove it from the car.



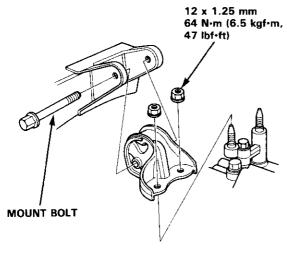


Engine Installation

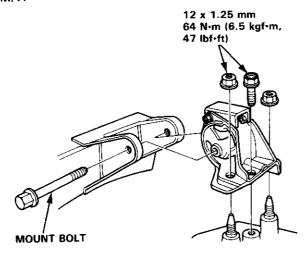
Install the engine in the reverse order of removal. Reinstall the mount bolts/nuts in the following sequence. Failure to follow these procedures may cause excessive noise and vibration, and reduce bushing life.

 Install the transmission mount, then tighten the bolt/nuts on the transmission side. Leave the mount bolt loose.

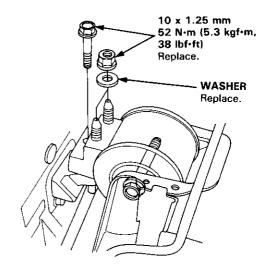
A/T:



M/T:

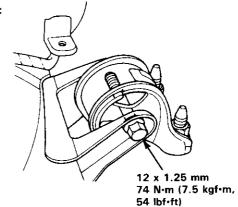


Install the engine side mount, then tighten the bolt/nuts on the engine side. Leave the mount bolt loose.

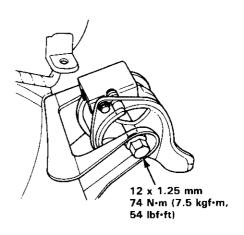


3. Tighten the mount bolt on the transmission mount.

A/T:

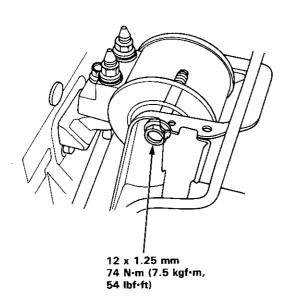


M/T:

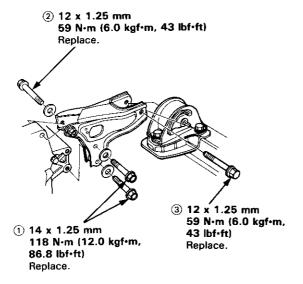


– (cont'd) ·

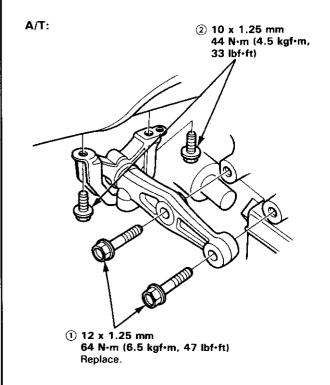
4. Tighten the mount bolt on the side engine mount.



5. Install the rear mount bracket, then tighten the bolts in the numbered sequence as shown (0-3).



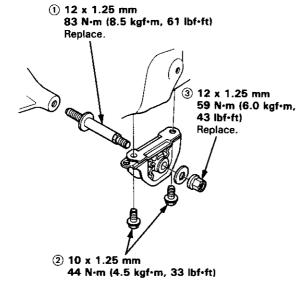
6. Install the right front mount/bracket, then tighten the bolts in the numbered sequence as shown (1-2).



1 12 x 1.25 mm 83 N·m (8.5 kgf·m, 61 lbf·ft)



Install the left front mount, then tighten the bolts in the numbered sequence as shown (1-3).

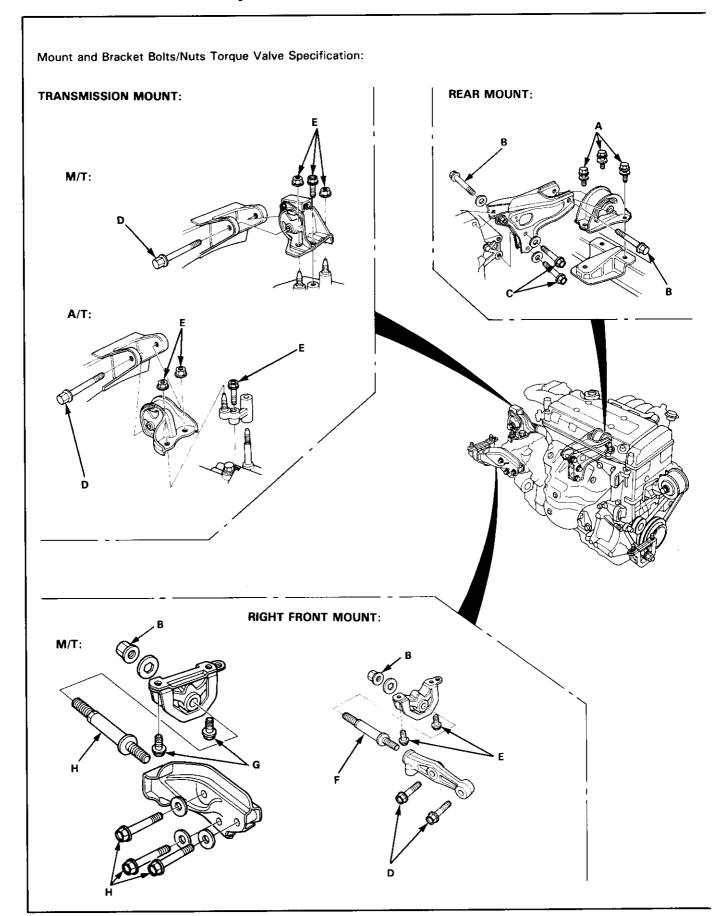


 Check that the spring clip on the end of each driveshaft clicks into place.

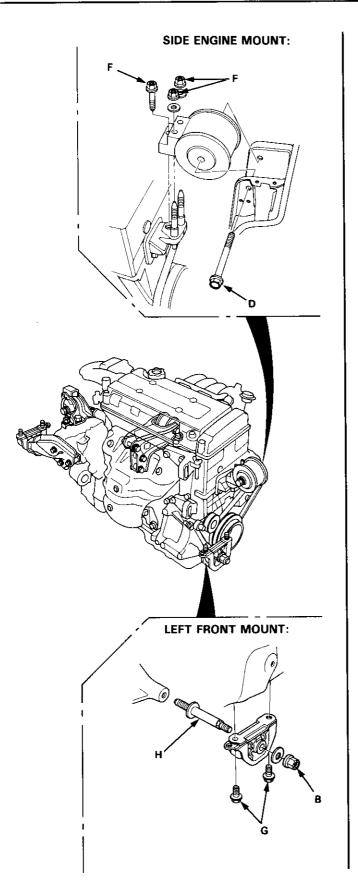
CAUTION: Use new spring clips.

- Bleed air from the cooling system at the bleed bolt with the heater valve open (see page 10-5).
- Adjust the throttle cable (see section 11).
- Check the clutch pedal free play (see section 12).
- Check that the transmission shifts into gear smoothly.
- Adjust the tension of the following drive belts.
 Alternator belt (see section 23).
 P/S pump belt (see section 17).
 A/C compressor belt (see section 22).
- Inspect for fuel leakage (see section 11).
 - After assembling fuel line parts, turn on the ignition switch (do not operate the starter) so that the fuel pump operates for approximately two seconds and the fuel line pressurizes.
 Repeat this operation two or three times and check for fuel leakage at any point in the fuel line.

Mount/Bracket Torque



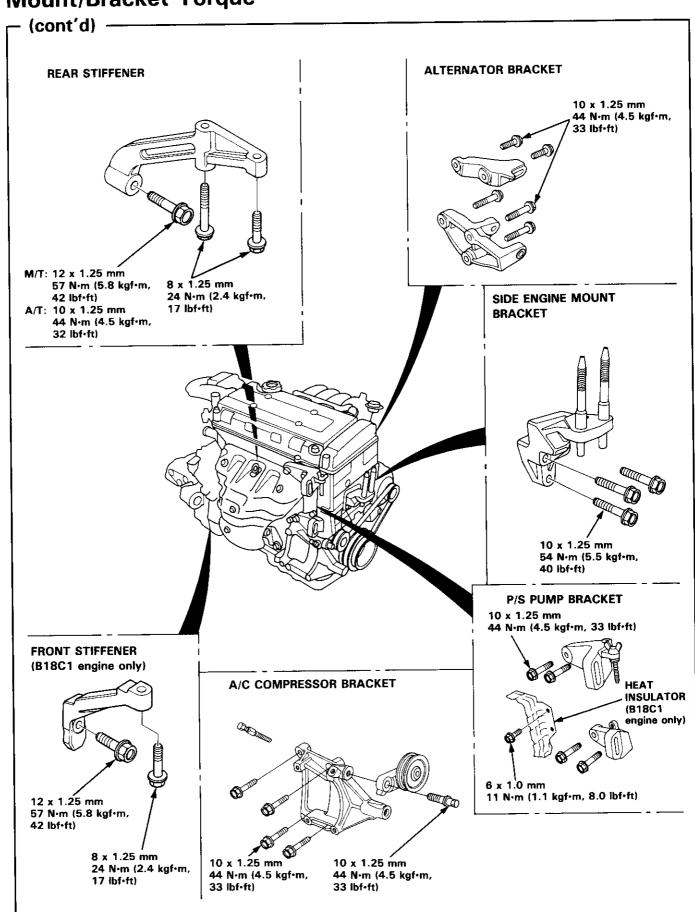




Torque Specifications:

- A: 10 x 1.25 mm 59 N·m (6.0 kgf·m, 43 lbf·ft)
- B: 12 x 1.25 mm 59 N·m (6.0 kgf·m, 43 lbf·ft) Replace.
- C: 14 x 1.5 mm 118 N·m (12.0 kgf·m, 86.8 lbf·ft) Replace.
- D: 12 x 1.25 mm 74 N·m (7.5 kgf·m, 54 lbf-ft)
- E: 12 x 1.25 mm 64 N·m (6.5 kgf·m, 47 lbf·ft)
- F: 10 x 1.25 mm 52 N·m (5.3 kgf·m, 38 lbf·ft) Replace.
- G: 10 x 1.25 mm 44 N·m (4.5 kgf·m, 33 lbf·ft)
- H: 12 x 1.25 mm 83 N·m (8.5 kgf·m, 61 lbf·ft)
- I: 12 x 1.25 mm 64 N·m (6.5 kgf·m, 38 lbf·ft) Replace.

Mount/Bracket Torque



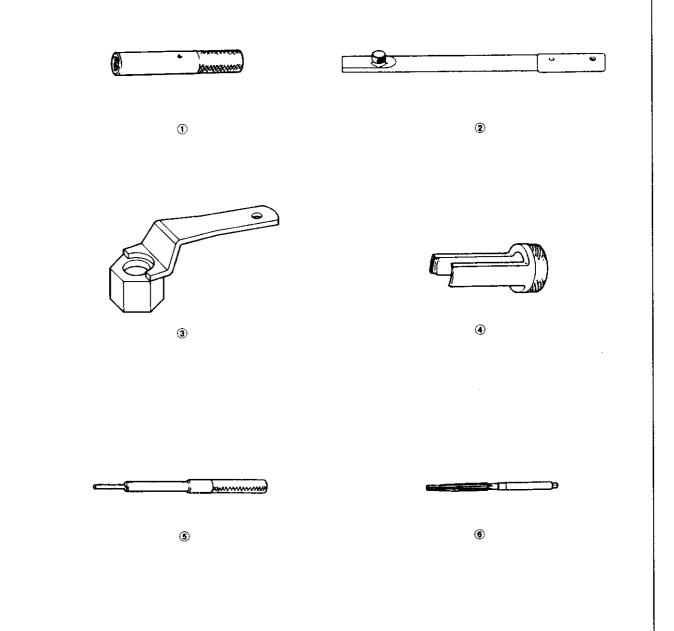
Cylinder Head/Valve Train B18B1 engine

| Special Tools 6-2 | Cylinder Head | |
|----------------------------|---------------------------------------|------------------|
| Valve Clearance | Illustrated Index6 |) -14 |
| Adjustment 6-3 | Removal6 | 5-15 |
| Valve Seals | Warpage 6 | j-28 |
| Replacement (cylinder head | Installation6 | 5-28 |
| removal not required)6-5 | Camshafts | |
| Reconditioning 6-27 | Inspection6 | j-21 |
| Timing Belt | Valves, Valve Springs and Valve Seals | |
| Illustrated Index6-7 | Removal | 3-22 |
| Inspection 6-9 | Installation Sequence 6 | j-23 |
| Tension Adjustment 6-9 | Valve Installation | 3-24 |
| Removal 6-10 | Valve Guides | |
| Installation 6-12 | Valve Movement | j-24 |
| Crankshaft Pulley Bolt | Replacement6 | 3-25 |
| Replacement 6-8 | Reaming6 | |



Special Tools

| Ref. No. | Tool Number | Description | Qty | Page Reference |
|----------|-----------------|--------------------------------------|-----|----------------|
| 1 | 07GAD - PH70100 | Valve Guide Installer | 1 | 6-23 |
| 2 | 07JAB - 001020A | Holder Handle | 1 | 6-8 |
| 3 | 07MAB - PY3010A | Pulley Holder Attachment, HEX 50 mm, | ĺ | |
| _ | | Offset | 1 | 6-8 |
| ④ | 07757 – PJ1010A | Valve Spring Compressor Attachment | 1 | 6-22 |
| <u>Š</u> | 07947 - 6570100 | Valve Guide Driver, 6.6 mm | 1 | 6-25, 26 |
| <u>6</u> | 07984 - 657010C | Valve Guide Reamer, 6.6 mm | 1 | 6-26 |



Valve Clearance

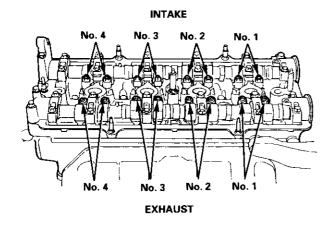


- Adjustment -

NOTE:

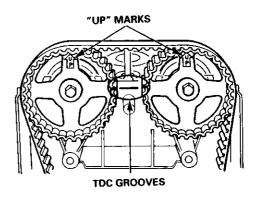
- Valves should be adjusted cold; at a cylinder head temperature of less than 100°F (38°C).
 Adjustment is the same for both intake and exhaust
- After adjusting, retorque the crankshaft pulley bolt to 177 N·m (18.0 kgf·m, 130 lbf·ft).
- 1. Remove cylinder head cover.

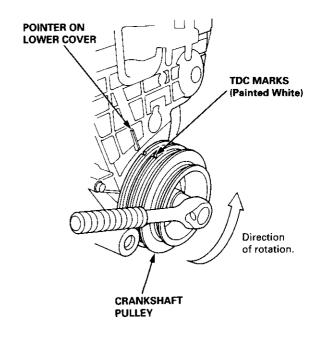
ADJUSTING SCREW LOCATIONS:



 Set the No. 1 piston at top dead center (TDC) (see page 6-12). "UP" mark on the pulley should be at the top, and the TDC grooves on the pulley should align with the TDC groove on timing belt back cover. TDC mark (painted white) on the crankshaft pulley should align with pointer on the timing belt lower cover.

Number 1 piston at TDC:





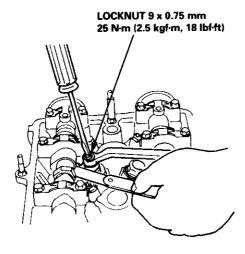
Valve Clearance

- Adjustment (cont'd)

3. Adjust valve clearances on No. 1 cylinder.

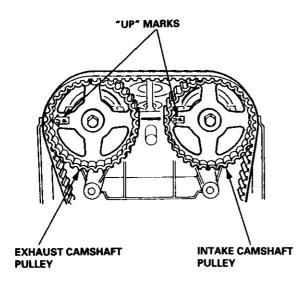
Intake: 0.08 - 0.12 mm (0.003 - 0.005 in) Exhaust: 0.16 - 0.20 mm (0.006 - 0.008 in)

 Loosen the locknut and turn the adjusting screw until feeler gauge slides back and forth with a slight amount of drag.



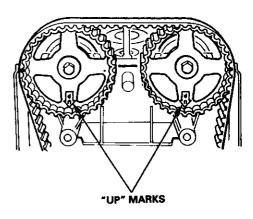
- Tighten the locknut and recheck clearance again.
 Repeat adjustment if necessary.
- Rotate the crankshaft 180° counterclockwise (camshaft pulley turns 90°). The "UP" mark should be on the exhaust side. Adjust valves on No. 3 cylinder.

Number 3 piston at TDC:



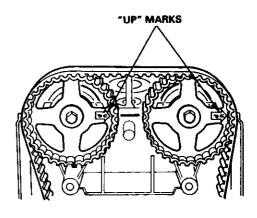
 Rotate the crankshaft 180° counterclockwise to bring No. 4 piston to TDC. The "UP" mark should be pointing straight down. Adjust valves on No. 4 cylinder.

Number 4 piston at TDC:



 Rotate the crankshaft 180° counterclockwise to bring No. 2 piston to TDC. The "UP" mark should be on the intake side. Adjust valves on No. 2 cylinder.

Number 2 piston at TDC:



NOTE: Refer to page 6-31 when installing cylinder head cover.

Valve Seals



- Replacement (cylinder head removal not required)

NOTE: Cylinder head removal is not required in this procedure.

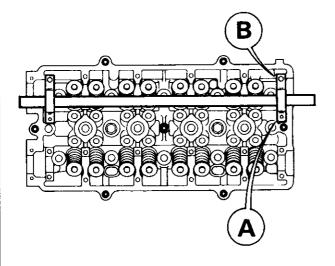
The procedure shown below applies when using the incar valve spring compressor (Snap-on YA8845 with YA8845-2A 7/8" attachment).

AWARNING When using this tool, as with any tool, always use approved eye protection. Using the right tool for each job helps increase productivity while safeguarding tools, equipment and the user.

- Turn the crankshaft so that the No. 1 and the No. 4 pistons are at top dead center (TDC).
- 2. Remove the cylinder head cover.
- 3. Remove the distributor.
- Loosen and disconnect the timing belt from the camshaft pulleys.
- Remove the camshaft holder bolts, then remove the camshaft holder, the camshaft and rocker arms.

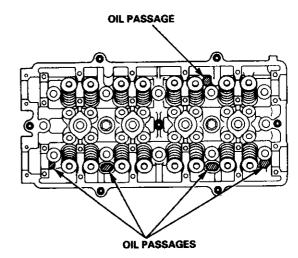
Intake Valve Seals

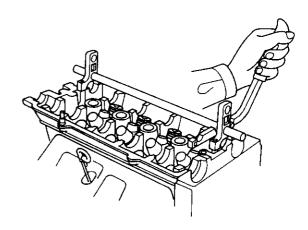
- Using the 6 mm bolts supplied with the tool, mount the two uprights to the cylinder head at the end camshaft holders. The uprights fit as shown.
- Insert the cross shaft through the bottom hole of the two uprights.



- Select the 7/8 in. diameter long compressor attachment and fasten the attachment to the No. 4 hole of the lever arm with the speed pin supplied.
- Position the piston at TDC and insert an air adaptor into the spark plug hole. Pump air into the cylinder to keep the valve closed while compressing springs and removing the valve keepers.
- 10. Position the lever arm under the cross shaft so the lever is perpendicular to the shaft and the compressor attachment rests on top of the retainer for the spring being compressed. Use the rear position slot on the lever as shown.

NOTE: Put shop towels over the oil passages to prevent the valve keepers from falling into the cylinder head.





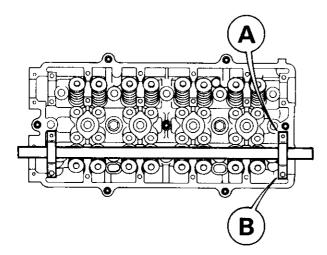
Valve Seals

Replacement (cylinder head removal not required) (cont'd)

- Using a downward motion on the lever arm, compress the valve spring and remove the keepers from the valve stem. Slowly release pressure on the spring.
- 12. Repeat step 11 for the other valve in that cylinder.
- 13. Remove the valve seals (see page 6-22).
- 14. Install the valve seals (see page 6-23).
- 15. Install the springs, the retainers and the keepers in reverse order of removal.
- 16. Repeat steps 9 to 15 for the other three cylinders.

Exhaust Valve Seals

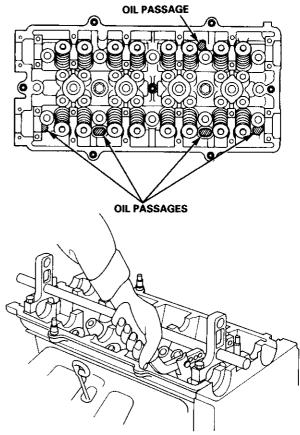
- 17. Using the 6 mm bolts supplied with the tool, mount the two uprights to the cylinder head at the end camshaft holders. The uprights fit as shown.
- 18. Insert the cross shaft through the bottom hole of the two uprights.



- 19. Select the 7/8 in. diameter short compressor attachment and fasten the attachment to the No. 4 hole of the lever arm with the speed pin supplied.
- 20. Position the piston at TDC and insert an air adaptor into the spark plug hole. Pump air into the cylinder to keep the valve closed while compressing springs and removing the valve keepers.

21. Position the lever arm under the cross shaft so the lever is perpendicular to the shaft and the compressor attachment rests on top of the retainer for the spring being compressed. Use the rear position slot on the lever as shown.

NOTE: Put shop towels over the oil passages to prevent the valve keepers from falling into the cylinder head.



- Using a downward motion on the lever arm, compress the valve spring and remove the keepers from the valve stem. Slowly release pressure on the spring.
- 23. Repeat step 22 for the other valve in that cylinder.
- 24. Remove the valve seals (see page 6-22).
- 25. Install the valve seals (see page 6-23).
- Install the springs, the retainers and the keepers in reverse order of removal.
- 27. Repeat steps 20 to 26 on the other three cylinders.

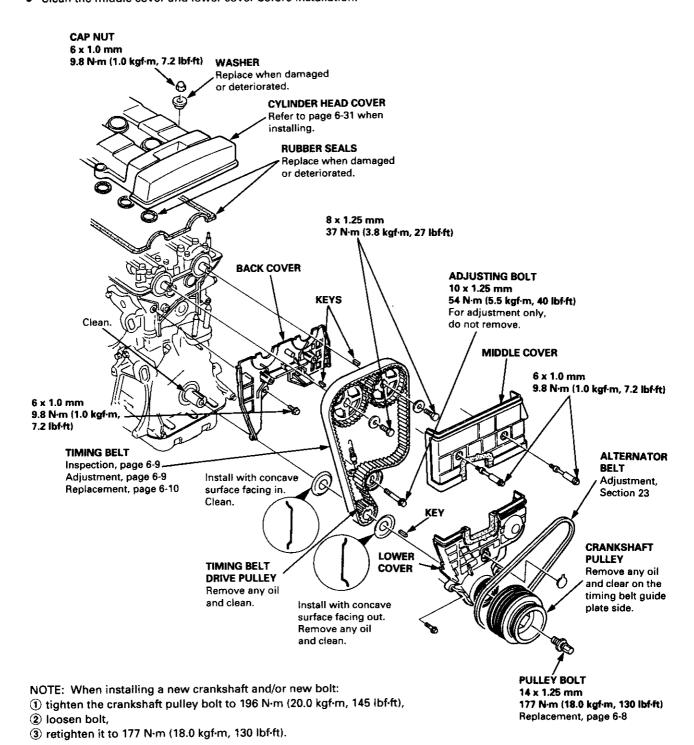
NOTE: Refer to page 6-31 when installing cylinder head cover.

Timing Belt

Illustrated Index

NOTE:

- Refer to page 6-12 for positioning crankshaft and pulley before installing belt.
- · Mark the direction of rotation on the belt before removing.
- Replace the rubber seals for oil leakage between the cylinder head and cover.
- Do not use the middle cover and lower cover for storing items disassembled.
- Clean the middle cover and lower cover before installation.



Crankshaft Pulley Bolt

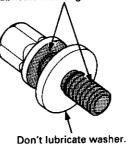
Replacement

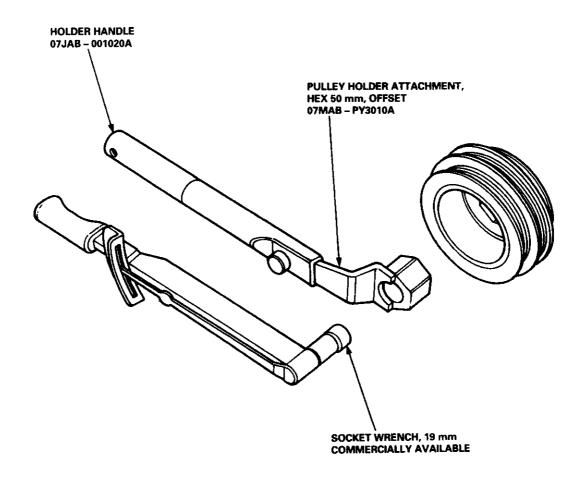
NOTE:

- Crankshaft pulley bolt size and torque value:
 14 x 1.25 mm
 177 N·m (18.0 kgf·m, 130 lbf·ft)
- When installing a new crankshaft and/or new pulley bolt:
 - 1) tighten the pulley bolt to 196 N·m (20.0 kgf·m, 145 lbf·ft),
 - 2 loosen the bolt,
 - 3 retighten it to 177 N·m (18.0 kgf·m, 130 lbf·ft).

 When installing the bolt, lubricate the threads and flange with engine oil, but don't lubricate the washer and pulley.

Lubricate with engine oil here.





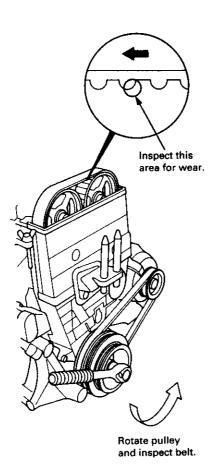
Timing Belt

Inspection

- 1. Remove the cylinder head cover.
 - Refer to page 6-31 when installing.
- 2. Inspect the timing belt for cracks and oil or coolant soaking.

NOTE:

- · Replace the belt if oil or coolant soaked.
- Remove any oil or solvent that gets on the belt.



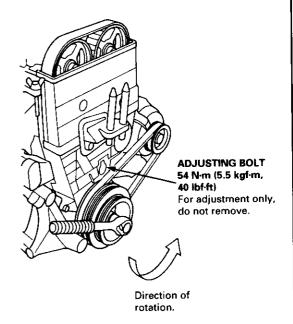
3. After inspecting, retorque the crankshaft pulley bolt to 177 N·m (18.0 kgf·m, 130 lbf·ft).

Tension Adjustment

CAUTION: Always adjust timing belt tension with the engine cold.

NOTE:

- The tensioner is spring-loaded to apply proper tension to the belt automatically after making the following adjustment.
- Always rotate the crankshaft counterclockwise when viewed from the pulley side. Rotating it clockwise may result in improper adjustment of the belt tension.
- Remove the cylinder head cover. (Refer to page 6-31 when installing.)
- 2. Set the No. 1 piston at TDC (see page 6-12).
- Rotate the crankshaft 5 6 revolutions to set the belt.
- 4. Set the No. 1 piston at TDC.



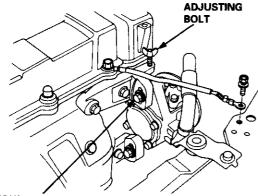
- 5. Loosen the adjusting bolt 1/2 turn (180°) only.
- Rotate the crankshaft counterclockwise 3-teeth on the camshaft pulley.
- 7. Tighten the adjusting bolt to the specified torque.
- After adjusting, retorque the crankshaft pulley bolt to 177 N·m (18.0 kgf·m, 130 lbf·ft).

Timing Belt

- Removal -

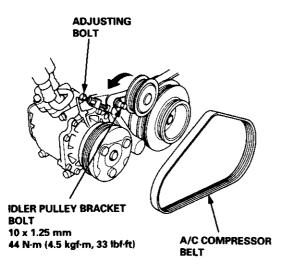
NOTE:

- Turn the crankshaft pulley so the No. 1 piston is at top dead center (TDC) before removing the belt (see page 6-12).
- Inspect the water pump when removed the timing belt (see page 10-9).
- Remove the wheel well splash shield (see page 6-18).
- Loosen the adjusting bolt and mounting bolts, then remove the power steering (P/S) pump belt.

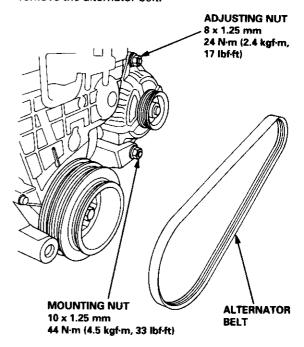


MOUNTING BOLTS 8 x 1.25 mm 24 N·m (2.4 kgf·m, 17 lbf·ft)

Loosen the adjusting bolt and idler pulley bracket bolt, then remove the air conditioning (A/C) compressor belt.

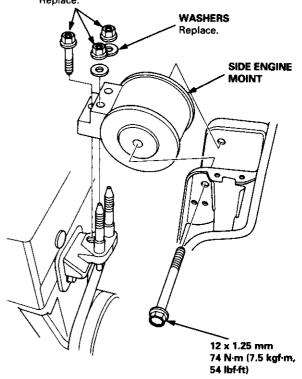


4. Loosen the adjusting nut and mounting nut, then remove the alternator belt.



- 5. Remove the cruise control actuator (see page 6-18).
- 6. Remove the side engine mount.

10 x 1.25 mm 52 N·m (5.3 kgf·m, 38 lbf·ft) Replace.

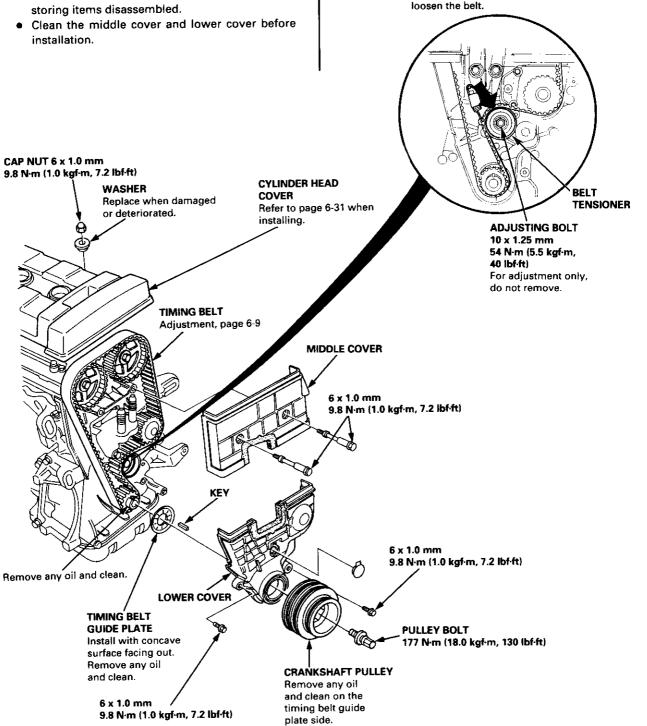




- Remove the cylinder head cover.
 - Refer to page 6-31 when installing.
- 8. Remove the pulley bolt and crankshaft pulley (see page 6-8).
- 9. Remove the middle cover and the lower cover. NOTE:
 - Do not use the middle cover and lower cover for
- 10. Loosen the adjusting bolt 180°.
- 11. Push the tensioner to remove tension from the timing belt, then retighten the bolt.

NOTE: Push the tensioner pulley to

12. Remove the timing belt from the pulleys.



Timing Belt

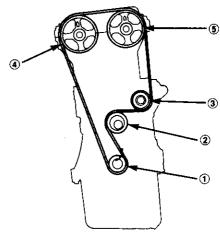
- Installation

Install the timing belt in the reverse order of removal; Only key points are described here.

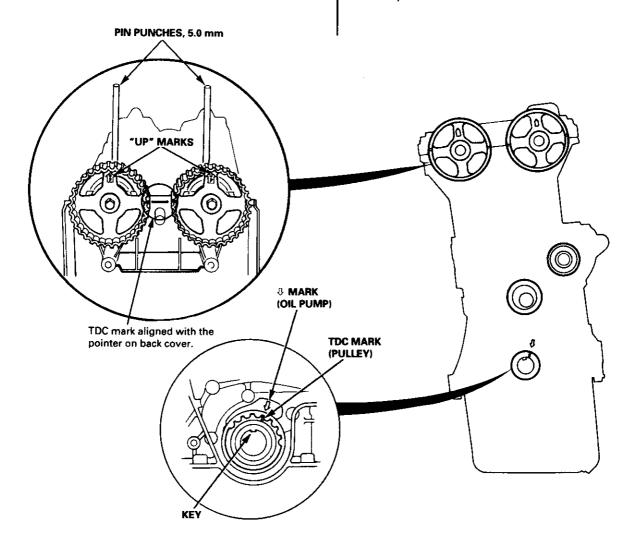
NOTE: Clean the middle cover and lower cover before installation.

- Position the crankshaft and the camshaft pulleys as shown before installing the timing belt.
 - A. Set the crankshaft so that the No. 1 piston is at top dead center (TDC). Align the groove on the teeth side of the timing belt drive pulley to the & pointer on the oil pump.
 - B. Align the TDC marks on intake and exhaust pulleys.

NOTE: To set the camshafts at TDC position for No. 1 piston, align the holes in the camshafts with the holes in No. 1 camshaft holders and insert 5.0 mm pin punches in the holes.



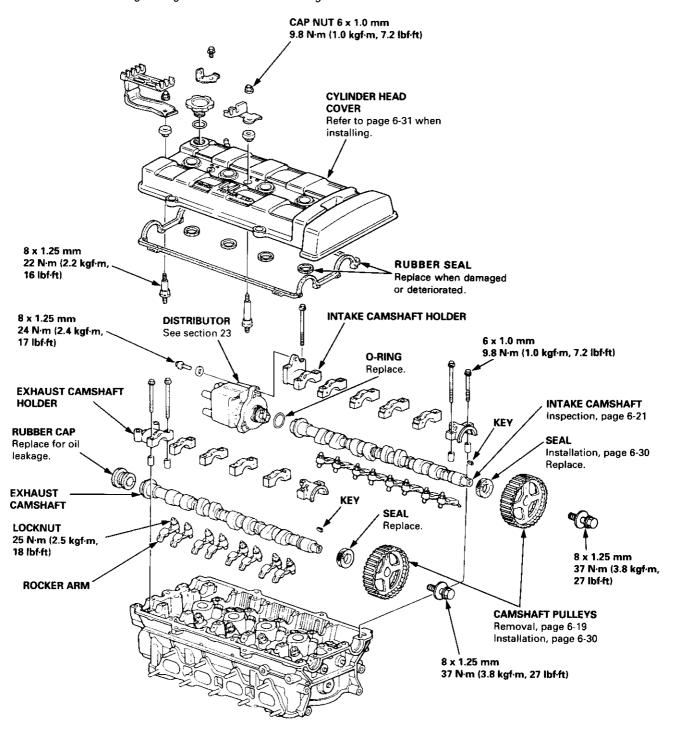
- Install the timing belt tightly in the sequence shown.
 - ① Timing belt drive pulley (crankshaft) → ② Adjusting pulley → ③ Water pump pulley → ④ Exhaust camshaft pulley → ⑤ Intake camshaft pulley.



Illustrated Index

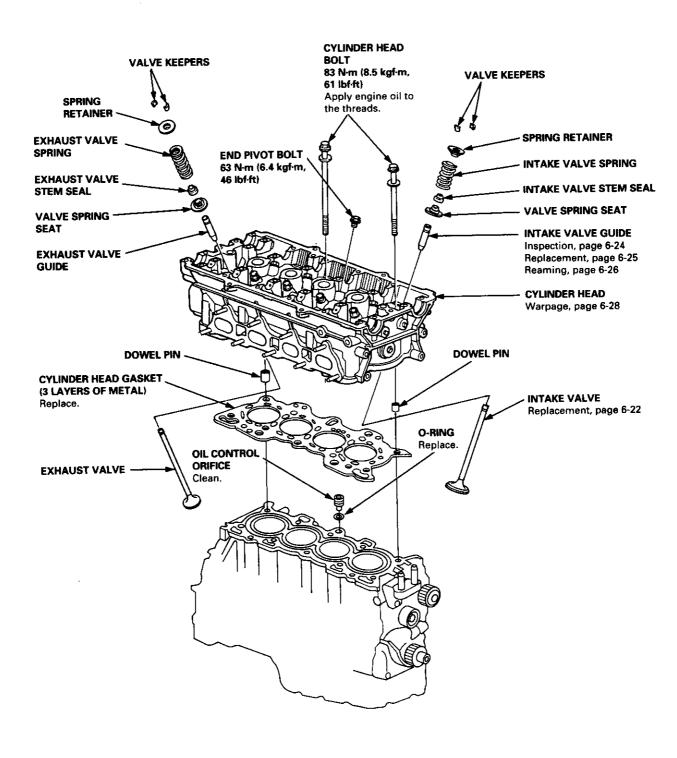
CAUTION: To avoid damaging the cylinder head, wait until engine coolant temperature drops below 100°F (38°C) before removing it.

NOTE: Use new O-rings and gaskets when reassembling.





CAUTION: In handling a metal gasket, take care not to fold it or damage the contact surface of the gasket.



Removal

Engine removal is not required for this procedure.

CAUTION: To avoid damaging the cylinder head, wait until the engine coolant temperature drops below 100°F (38°C) before loosening the retaining bolts.

NOTE:

- Inspect the timing belt before removing the cylinder head.
- Turn the crankshaft pulley so that the No. 1 piston is at top dead center (TDC) (page 6-12).
- Mark all emissions hoses before disconnecting them.
- Anti-theft radios have a coded theft protection circuit.
 Be sure to get the customer's code number before.
 - Disconnecting the battery.
 - Removing the No. 32 (7.5 A) fuse from the underhood fuse/relay box.
 - Removing the radio.

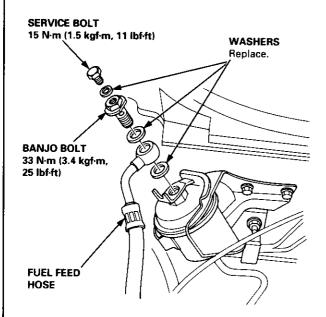
After service, reconnect power to the radio and turn it on.

When the word "CODE" is displayed, enter the customer's 5-digit code to restore radio operation.

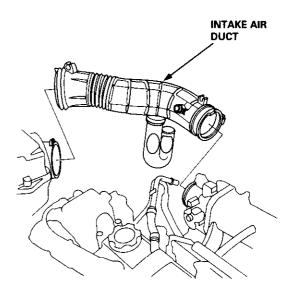
- 1. Disconnect the negative terminal from the battery.
- 2. Drain the engine coolant (see page 10-5).
 - · Remove the radiator cap to speed draining.
- 3. Relieve fuel pressure (see Section 11).

AWARNING Do not smoke white working on fuel system, keep open flame or spark away from work area. Drain fuel only into an approved container.

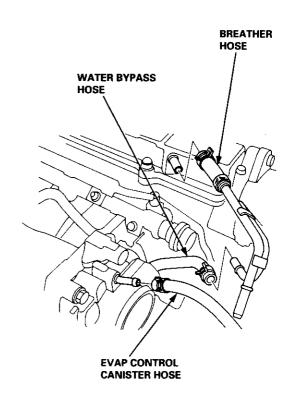
4. Disconnect the fuel feed hose.



5. Remove the intake air duct.

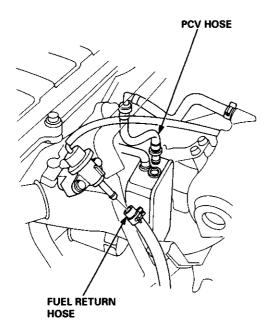


Remove the breather hose, water bypass hose and evaporative emission (EVAP) control canister hose.

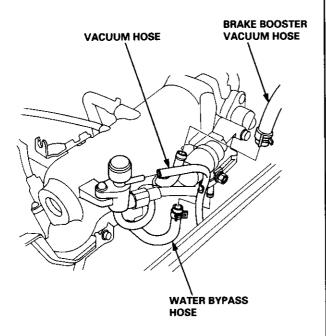




 Remove the fuel return hose and positive crankcase ventilation (PCV) hose.



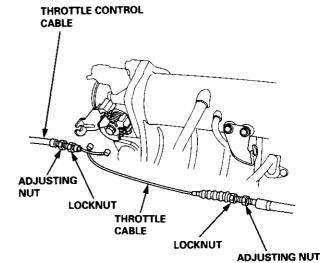
Remove the brake booster vacuum hose, water bypass hose and vacuum hose.



- 9. Remove the throttle cable.
- Remove the throttle control cable (automatic transmission only).

NOTE:

- Take care not to bend the cable when removing it. Always replace any kinked cable with a new one.
- Adjust the throttle cable and throttle control cable when installing (see section 11 and 14).

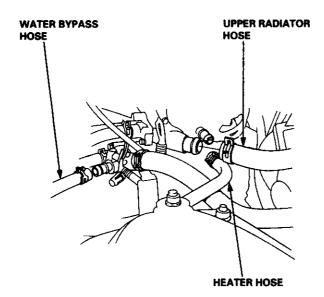


- Remove the engine wire harness connectors and wire harness clamps from the cylinder head and the intake manifold.
 - Four fuel injector connectors
 - Intake air temperature (IAT) sensor connector
 - Engine coolant temperature (ECT) sensor connector
 - TDC/CKP/CYP sensor connector
 - Ignition coil connector
 - ECT gauge sending unit connector
 - Throttle position (TP) sensor connector
 - Manifold absolute pressure (MAP) sensor connector
 - Idle air control (IAC) valve connector
 - EVAP purge control solenoid valve connector

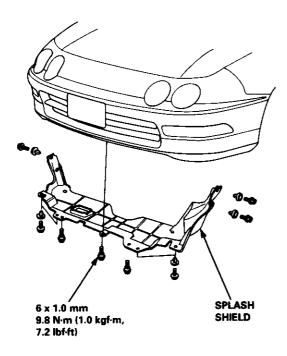
(cont'd)

Removal (cont'd)

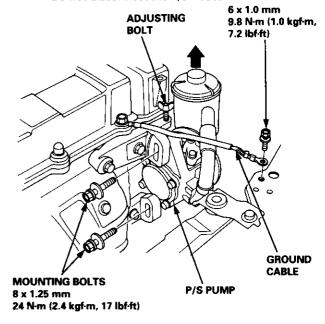
- Remove the spark plug caps and distributor from the cylinder head.
- Remove the upper radiator hose, heater hose and water bypass hose.



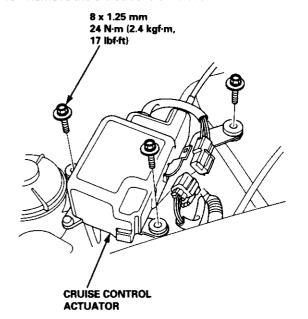
14. Remove the splash shield.



- 15. Remove the engine ground cable. Remove the adjusting bolt and mounting bolts, then remove the power steering (P/S) pump belt and P/S pump.
 - Do not disconnect the P/S hoses.

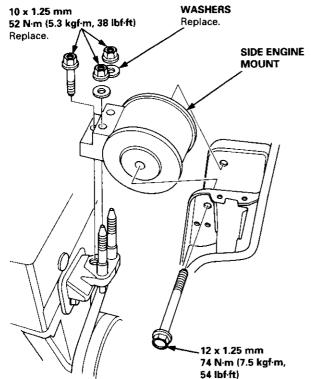


- 16. Remove the air conditioning (A/C) compressor belt (see page 6-10).
- 17. Remove the alternator belt (see page 6-10).
- 18 Remove the cruise control actuator.

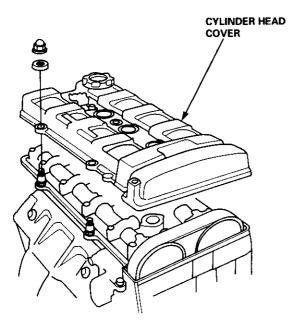




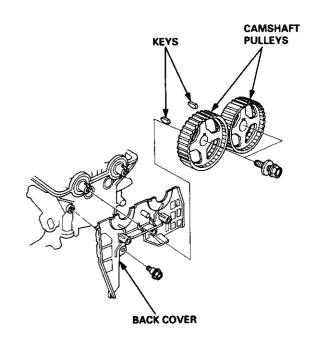
19. Remove the side engine mount.



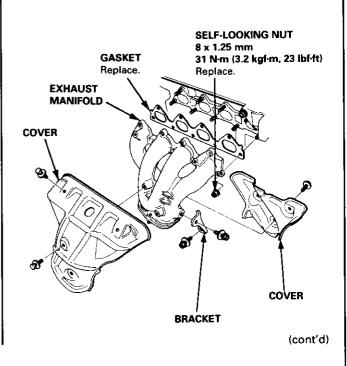
20. Remove the cylinder head cover.



- 21. Remove the timing belt (see page 6-10).
- 22. Remove the camshaft pulleys and back cover.

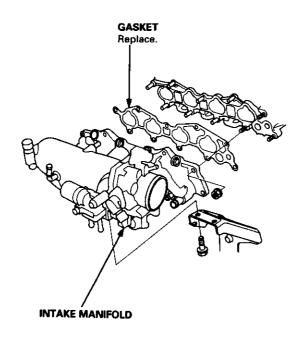


23. Remove the exhaust manifold.



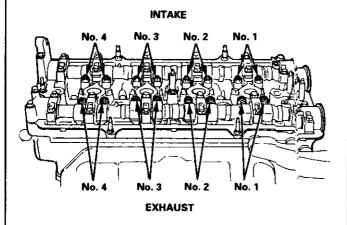
Removal (cont'd)

24. Remove the intake manifold.

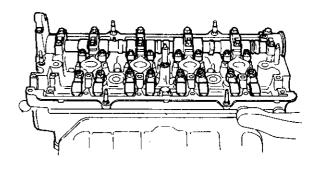


25. Loosen the locknuts and adjusting screws.

ADJUSTING SCREW LOCATIONS:



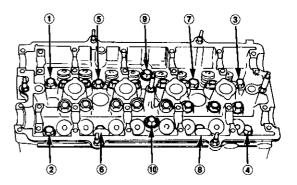
26. Remove the camshaft holder bolts, then remove the camshaft holders, camshafts and rocker arms.



27. Remove the cylinder head bolts, then remove the cylinder head.

CAUTION: To prevent warpage, unscrew the bolts in sequence 1/3 turn at a time; repeat the sequence until all bolts are loosened.

CYLINDER HEAD BOLTS LOOSENING SEQUENCE



Camshafts

Inspection

- Loosen the adjusting screws.
- 2. Remove the camshaft holders and the rocker arms.

NOTE: Mark the rocker arms before removing them.

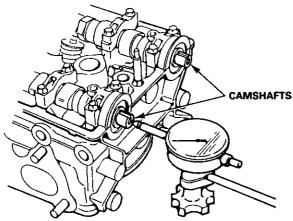
- Reinstall the camshaft and holders. Tighten the camshaft holder bolts in a crisscross pattern, beginning with the inner bolts.
 N·m (1.0 kgf·m, 7.2 lbf·ft)
- Seat the camshafts by pushing them toward the distributor end of the head with a screwdriver.
- 5. Zero the dial indicator against the end of the camshaft, push the camshaft back and forth and read the end play.

Camshaft End Play:

Standard (New): 0.05 - 0.15 mm

(0.002 - 0.006 in)

Service Limit: 0.5 mm (0.02 in)



Remove the camshaft holder bolts from the cylinder head.

NOTE: Unscrew the camshaft holder bolts two turns at a time, in a crisscross pattern.

- Lift the camshafts out of the cylinder head, wipe them clean, then inspect the lift ramps. Replace the camshaft if any lobes are pitted, scored, or excessively worm
- 8. Clean the camshaft journal surfaces in the cylinder head, then set the camshaft back in place. Insert a plastigage strip across each journal.
- Install the camshaft holders and torque the bolts to the values and in the sequence shown on page 6-30.

NOTE: Do not rotate camshafts during inspection.

10. Remove the camshaft holders. Measure the widest portion of plastigage on each journal.

Camshaft-to Holder Oil Clearance: Standard (New): 0.039 - 0.069 mm

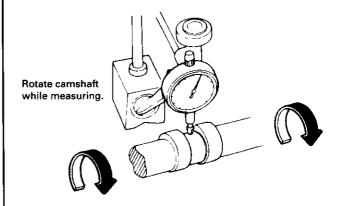
(0.0015 - 0.0027 in)
Service Limit: 0.15 mm (0.006 in)

PLASTIGAGE

- 11. If camshaft-to-holder oil clearance is out of tolerance:
 - And the camshaft has already been replaced, you must replace the cylinder head.
 - If the camshaft has not been replaced, first check total runout with the camshaft supported on Vblocks.

Camshaft Total Runout:

Standard (New): 0.03 mm (0.001 in) max. Service Limit: 0.04 mm (0.002 in)



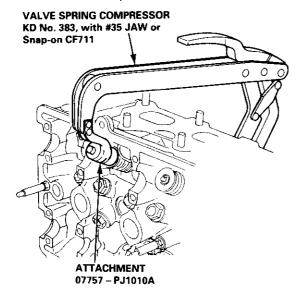
- If the total runout of the camshafts is within tolerance, replace the cylinder head.
- If the total runout is out of tolerance, replace the camshafts and recheck. If the oil clearance is still out of tolerance, replace the cylinder head.

Valves, Valve Springs and Valve Seals

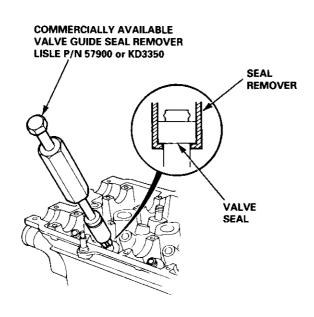
Removal

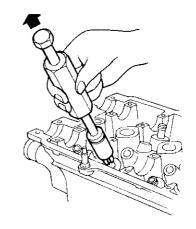
NOTE: Identify valves and valve springs as they are removed so that each item can be reinstalled in its original position.

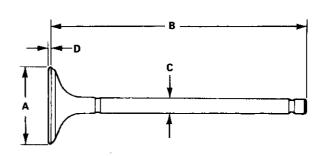
- Tap each valve stem with a plastic mallet to loosen valve keepers before installing the spring compressor.
- Install the spring compressor. Compress spring and remove valve keeper.



- 3. Install the special tool as shown.
- 4. Remove the valve seal.







Intake Valve Dimensions

A Standard (New): 30.90 - 31.10 mm

(1.217 - 1.224 in)

B Standard (New): 103.80 - 104.10 mm

(4.087 - 4.098 in)

C Standard (New): 6.580 - 6.590 mm

(0.2591 - 0.2594 in)

C Service Limit: 6.55 mm (0.258 in)

D Standard (New): 1.35 - 1.65 mm

(0.053 – 0.065 in)

D Service Limit: 1.15 mm (0.045 in)

Exhaust Valve Dimensions

A Standard (New): 27.90 - 28.10 mm

(1.098 - 1.106 in)

B Standard (New): 104.00 - 104.30 mm

(4.094 - 4.106 in)

C Standard (New): 6.550 - 6.560 mm

(0.2579 - 0.2583 in)

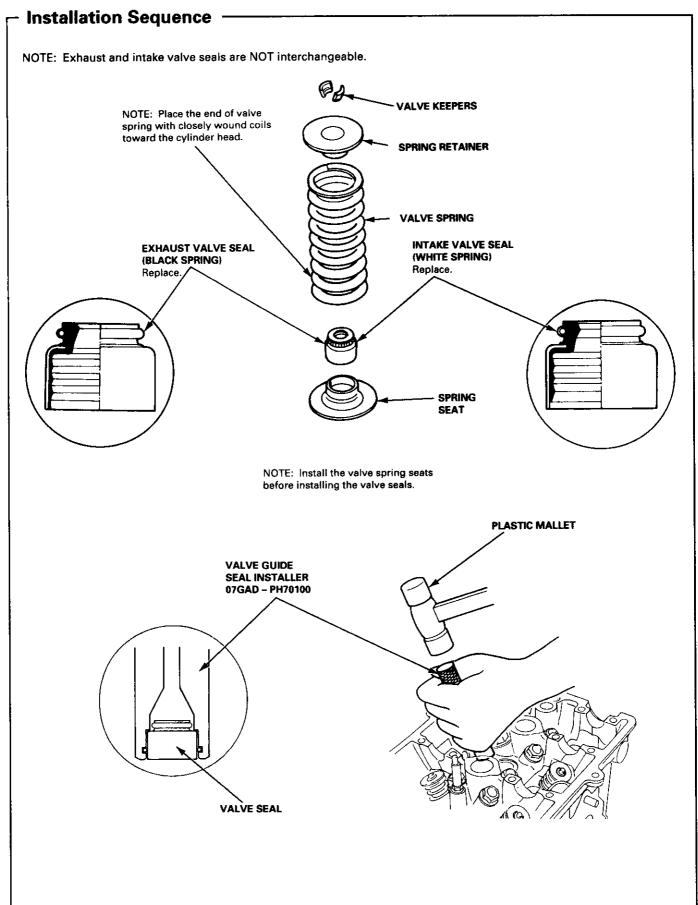
C Service Limit: 6.52 mm (0.257 in)

D Standard (New): 1.65 - 1.95 mm

(0.065 - 0.077 in)

D Service Limit: 1.45 mm (0.057 in)



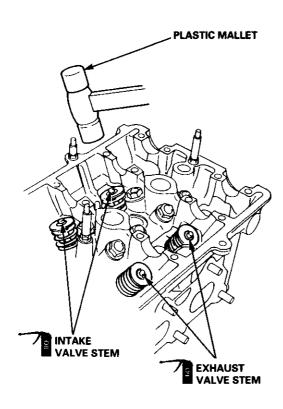


Valves, Valve Springs and Valve Seals

- Valve Installation

- When installing valves in the cylinder head, coat valve stems with oil before inserting them into valve guides, and make sure valves move up and down smoothly.
- When valves and springs are in place, lightly tap the end of each valve stem two or three times to ensure proper seating of valves and valve keepers (use plastic mallet).

NOTE: Tap the valve stem only along its axis so you do not bend the stem.



Valve Guides

Valve Movement

Measure the guide-to-stem clearance with a dial indicator while rocking the stem in the direction of normal thrust (wobble method).

Intake Valve Stem-to-Guide Clearance:

Standard (New): 0.04 - 0.10 mm

(0.002 - 0.004 in)

Service Limit: 0.16 mm (0.006 in)

Exhaust Valve Stem-to-Guide Clearance:

Standard (New): 0.10 - 0.16 mm

(0.004 - 0.006 in)

Service Limit: 0.22 mm (0.009 in)

Valve extended 10 mm out from seat.



- If measurement exceeds the service limit, recheck using a new valve.
- If measurement is now within the service limit, reassemble using a new valve.
- If measurement still exceeds limit, recheck using alternate method below, then replace valve and guide, if necessary.

NOTE: An alternate method of checking guide to stem clearance is to subtract the O.D. of the valve stem, measured with a micrometer, from the I.D. of the valve guide, measured with an inside micrometer or ball gauge.

Take the measurements in three places along the valve stem and three places inside the valve guide.

The difference between the largest guide measurement and the smallest stem measurement should not exceed the service limit

Intake Valve Stem-to-Guide Clearance:

Standard (New): 0.02 - 0.05 mm

(0.001-0.002 in)

Service Limit: 0.08 mm (0.003 in)

Exhaust Valve Stem-to-Guide Clearance:

Standard (New): 0.05 - 0.08 mm

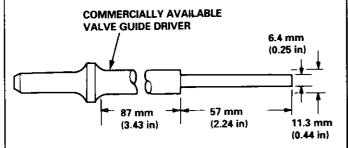
(0.002 - 0.003 in)

Service Limit: 0.11 mm (0.004 in)



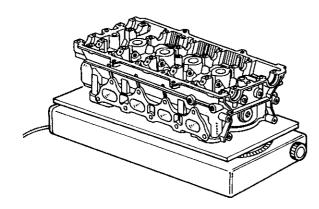
Replacement

As illustrated in the removal steps of this procedure, use a commercially-available air-impact driver attachment modified to fit the diameter of the valve guides. In most cases, the same procedure can be done using the Valve Guide Driver and a conventional hammer.



Removal and Installation VALVE GUIDE DRIVER, 6.6 mm 07942 - 6570100

- Select the proper replacement guides and chill them in the freezer section of a refrigerator for about an hour.
- Use a hot plate or oven to evenly heat the cylinder head to 300°F (150°C). Monitor the temperature with a cooking thermometer.



CAUTION:

- Do not use a torch; it may warp the head.
- Do not get the head hotter than 300°F (150°C);
 excessive heat may loosen the valve seats.
- To avoid burns, use heavy gloves when handling the heated cylinder head.

4. Working from the camshaft side, use the driver and an air hammer to drive the guide about 2 mm (0.1 in) towards the combustion chamber. This will knock off some of the carbon and make removal easier.

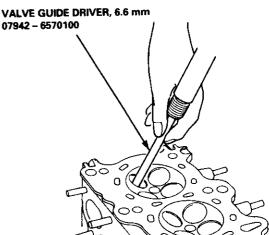
CAUTION:

- Always wear safety goggles or a face shield when using the air hammer.
- Hold the air hammer directly in line with the valve guide to prevent damaging the driver.
- Turn the head over and drive the guide out toward the camshaft side of head.

If a valve guide still won't move, drill it out with a 8 mm (5/16 in) bit, then try again.

CAUTION: Drill guides only in extreme cases: You could damage the cylinder head if the guide breaks.





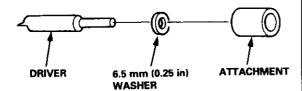
6. Remove the new guide(s) from the refrigerator, one at a time, as you need them.

(cont'd)

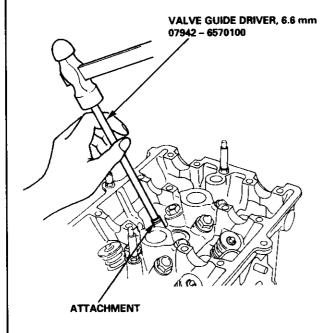
Valve Guides

- Replacement (cont'd)

 Slip a 6.5 mm (0.25 in) steel washer and the correct driver attachment over the end of the driver (The washer will absorb some of the impact and extend the life of the driver).



 Install the new guide(s) from the camshaft side of the head; drive each one in until the attachment bottoms on the head. If you have all sixteen guides to do, you may have to reheat the head one or two more times.



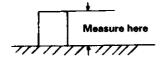
Valve Guide Installed Height:

Intake: 13.75 - 14.25 mm

(0.541 - 0.561 in)

Exhaust: 15.75 - 16.25 mm

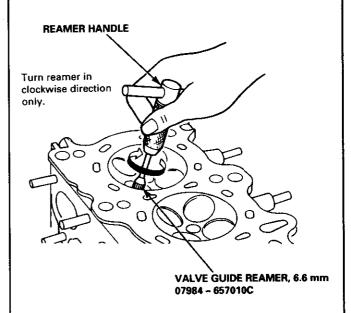
(0.620 - 0.640 in)



- Reaming

NOTE: For new valve guides only.

- 1. Coat both reamer and valve guide with cutting oil.
- 2. Rotate the reamer clockwise the full length of the valve guide bore.
- Continue to rotate the reamer clockwise while removing it from the bore.
- Thoroughly wash the guide in detergent and water to remove any cutting residue.
- 5. Check clearance with a valve (see page 6-24).
 - Verify that the valve slides in the intake and exhaust valve guides without exerting pressure.



Valve Seats

Reconditioning

 Renew the valve seats in the cylinder head using a valve seat cutter.

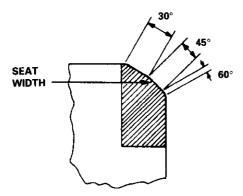
NOTE: If guides are worn (see page 6-24), replace them (see page 6-25) before cutting the valve seats.

- Carefully cut a 45° seat, removing only enough material to ensure a smooth and concentric seat.
- Bevel the upper edge of the seat with the 30° cutter and the lower edge of the seat with the 60° cutter.
 Check width of seat and adjust accordingly.
- Make one more very light pass with the 45° cutter to remove any possible burrs caused by the other cutters.

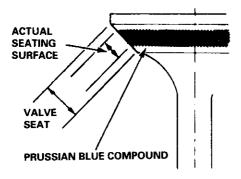
Valve Seat Width (Intake and Exhaust):

Standard: 1.25 - 1.55 mm (0.049 - 0.061 in)

Service Limit: 2.0 mm (0.08 in)



 After resurfacing the seat, inspect for even valve seating: Apply Prussian Blue compound to the valve face, and insert valve in original location in the head, then lift it and snap it closed against the seat several times.



- The actual valve seating surface, as shown by the blue compound, should be centered on the seat.
 - If it is too high (closer to the valve stem), you
 must make a second cut with the 60° cutter to
 move it down, then one more cut with the 45°
 cutter to restore seat width.
 - If it is too low (closer to the valve edge), you
 must make a second cut with the 30° cutter to
 move it up, then one more cut with the 45° cutter
 to restore seat width.

NOTE: The final cut should always be made with the 45° cutter.

 Insert intake and exhaust valves in the head and measure valve stem installed height.

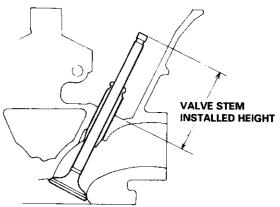
Intake Valve Stem Installed Height: Standard (New): 40.765 – 41.235 mm

(1.6049 - 1.6234 in)

Service Limit: 41.485 mm (1.6333 in) Exhaust Valve Stem Installed Height: Standard (New): 42.765 – 43.235 mm

(1.6837 - 1.7022 in)

Service Limit: 43.485 mm (1.7120 in)



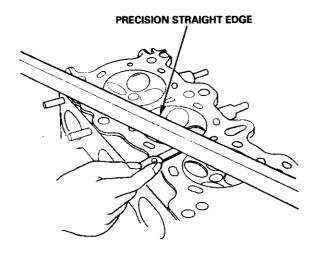
 If valve stem installed height is over the service limit, replace valve and recheck. If still over the service limit, replace cylinder head; the valve seat in the head is too deep.

Warpage

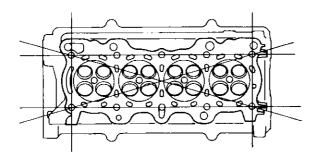
NOTE: If camshaft-to-holder oil clearances (see page 6-21) are not within specification, the head cannot be resurfaced.

If camshaft-to-holder oil clearances are within specifications, check the head for warpage.

- If warpage is less than 0.05 mm (0.002 in) cylinder head resurfacing is not required.
- If warpage is between 0.05 mm (0.002 in) and 0.2 mm (0.008 in), resurface cylinder head.
- Maximum resurface limit is 0.2 mm (0.008 in) based on a height of 132.0 mm (5.20 in).



Measure along edges, and 3 ways across center.



Cylinder Head Height:

Standard (New): 131.95 - 132.05 mm

(5.195 - 5.199 in)

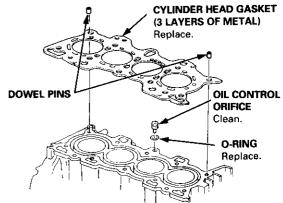
Installation

install the cylinder head in the reverse order of removal:

- · Always use a new head gasket.
- Cylinder head and cylinder block surface must be
- "UP" mark on the timing belt pulleys should be at the top.
- · Do not use the middle cover and lower cover for storing items disassembled.
- Clean the middle cover and lower cover before instal-
- Replace the washer when damaged or deteriorated.
- 1. Cylinder head dowel pins and the oil control orifice must be aligned.

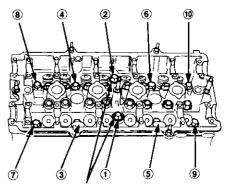
NOTE:

- · When handling a metal gasket, care should be taken not to fold it or damage the contact surface of the gasket.
- Clean the oil control orifice when installing.



- Tighten the cylinder head bolts in two steps. In the first step tighten all bolts, in sequence, to about 29 N·m (3.0 kgf·m, 22 lbf·ft); in the final step, tighten in the same sequence to 83 N·m (8.5 kgf·m, 61 lbf·ft).
 - Apply engine oil to the cylinder head bolts and the washers.
 - Use the longer bolts at positions No. 1 and No. 2 as shown.

CYLINDER HEAD BOLTS TORQUE SEQUENCE



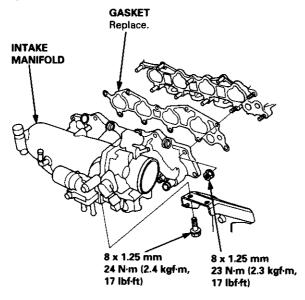
NOTE: Put longer bolts here.



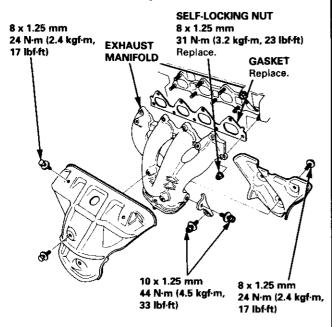
Install the intake manifold and tighten the nuts in a crisscross pattern in 2 or 3 steps, beginning with the inner nuts.

CAUTION: Check for folds or scratches on the surface of the gasket. Replace with a new gasket if damaged.

4. Tighten the intake manifold bracket bolts.

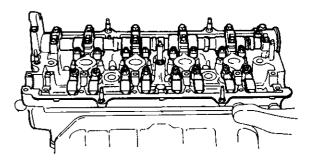


- Install the exhaust manifold and tighten the new self-locking nuts in a crisscross pattern in 2 or 3 steps, beginning with the inner nuts.
 - Use new self-locking nuts.

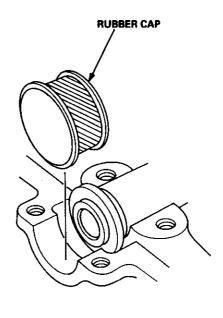


CAUTION:

- Make sure that the keyways on the camshafts are facing up and No. 1 piston is at top dead center (TDC).
- Replace the rocker arms in their original positions.
- Place the rocker arms on the pivot bolts and the valve stems.



- 7. Install the camshafts, then install the camshaft seals with the open side (spring) facing in.
- 8. Apply liquid gasket around the rubber cap, then install the rubber cap.



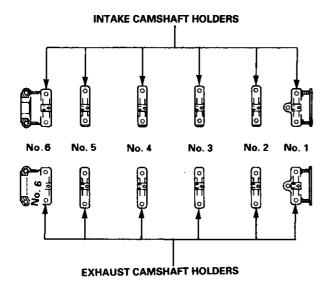
(cont'd)

Installation (cont'd)

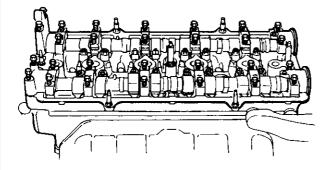
 Apply liquid gasket to the head mating surfaces of the No. 1 and No. 6 camshaft holders, then install them, along with No. 2, 3, 4, and 5.

NOTE:

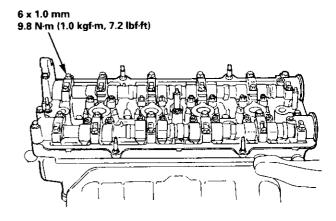
- "I" or "E" marks are stamped on the camshaft holders.
- Do not apply oil to the holder mating surface of camshaft seals.
- Apply liquid gasket to the shaded areas.
- The arrows marked on the camshaft holders should point to the timing belt.



- 10. Tighten the camshaft holders temporarily.
 - Make sure that the rocker arms are properly positioned on the valve stems.

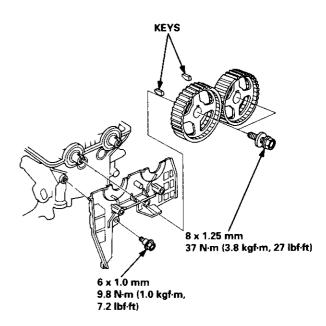


11. Tighten each bolt in two steps to ensure that the rockers do not bind on the valves.



12. Install keys into camshaft grooves.

NOTE: To set the camshafts at TDC position for No. 1 piston, align the holes in the camshafts with the holes in No. 1 camshaft holders and insert 5.0 mm pin punches in the holes.



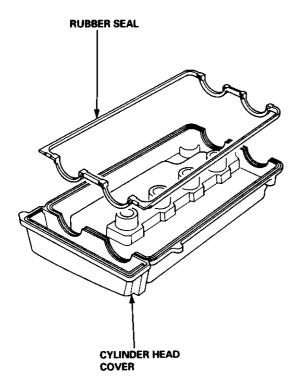
13. Push camshaft pulleys onto camshafts, then tighten the retaining bolts to the torque specified.



- 14. Install the timing belt (see page 6-12).
- 15. Adjust the valve clearance (see page 6-3).
- 16. Install the rubber seal in the groove of the cylinder head cover. Seat the seal in the recesses for the camshaft first, then work it into the groove around the outside edges.

NOTE:

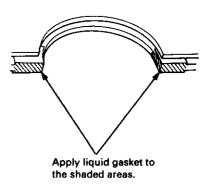
- Before installing the rubber seal, thoroughly clean the seal and the groove.
- When installing, make sure the seal is seated securely in the corners of the recesses with no gap.



 Apply liquid gasket to the rubber seal at the eight corners of the recesses.

NOTE:

- Use liquid gasket, Part No. 08718 0001.
- Check that the mating surfaces are clean and dry before applying liquid gasket.
- Do not install the parts if 20 minutes or more have elapsed since applying liquid gasket.
 Instead, reapply liquid gasket after removing old residue.
- After assembly, wait at least 20 minutes before filling the engine with oil.



(cont'd)

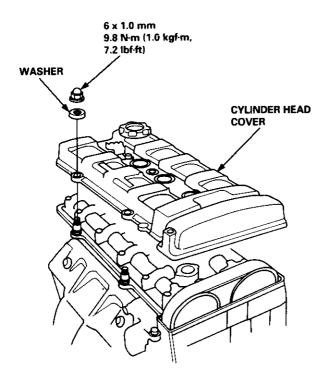
Installation (cont'd)

 When installing the cylinder head cover, hold the rubber seal in the groove by placing your fingers on the camshaft contacting surfaces (top of the semicircles).

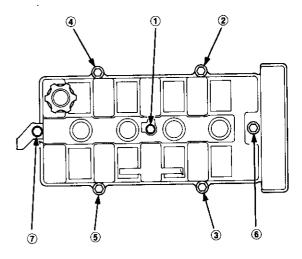
Once the cylinder head cover is on the cylinder head, slide the cover slightly back and forth to seat the rubber seal.

NOTE:

- Before installing the cylinder head cover, clean the cylinder head contacting surfaces using a shop towel.
- Do not touch the parts where liquid gasket was applied.



19. Tighten the nuts in 2 or 3 steps. In the final step, tighten all nuts, in sequence, to 9.8 N·m (1.0 kgf·m, 7.2 lbf·ft).



After installing, check that all tubes, hoses and connectors are installed correctly.

Cylinder Head/Valve Train B18C1 engine

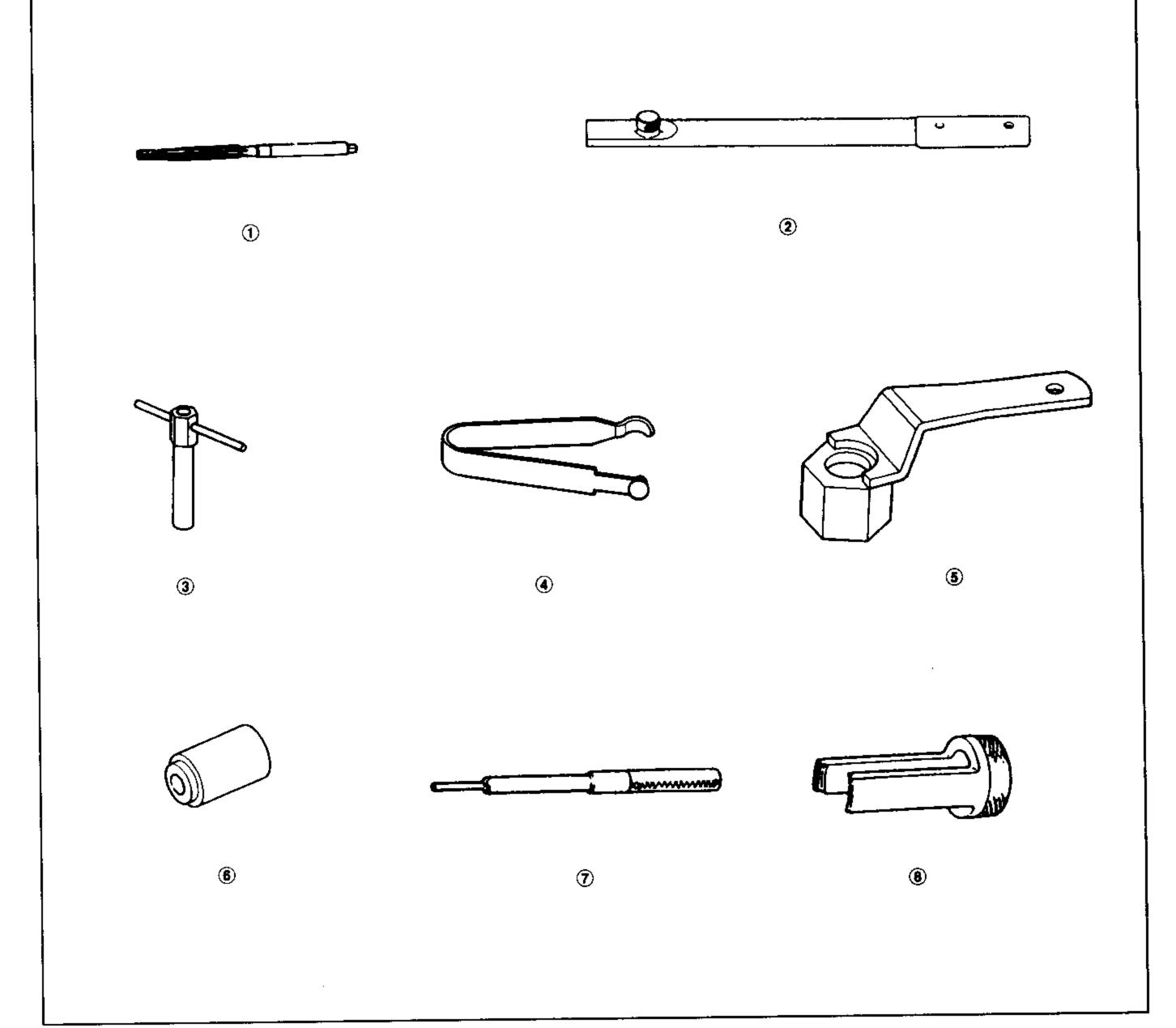
| Special Tools | 6-34 |
|--------------------------------|------|
| VTEC | |
| Troubleshooting Flowchart | |
| VTEC Solenoid Valve | 6-36 |
| VTEC Pressure Switch | 6-38 |
| VTEC Solenoid Valve Inspection | 6-41 |
| Rocker Arms | |
| Manual Inspection | 6-42 |
| Inspection Using Special | |
| Tools | 6-43 |
| Valve Clearance | |
| Adjustment | 6-44 |
| Timing Belt | |
| Illustrated Index | 6-46 |
| Inspection | 6-48 |
| Tension Adjustment | 6-48 |
| Removal | 6-49 |
| Installation | 6-51 |
| Crankshaft Pulley Bolt | |
| Replacement | 6-47 |
| Cylinder Head | |
| Illustrated Index | 6-53 |
| Removal | 6-55 |
| Warpage | 6-74 |
| Installation | 6-75 |

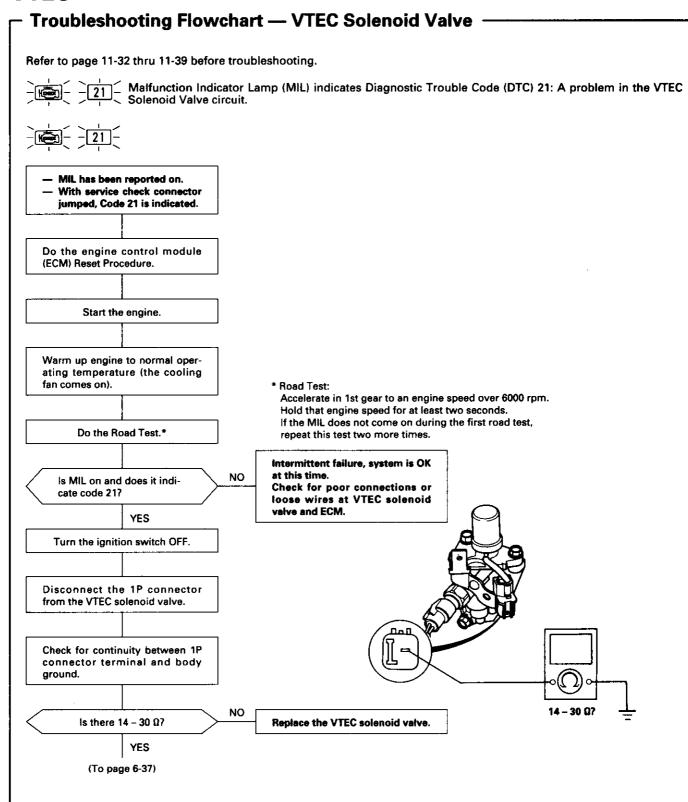
| Rocker Arms | |
|--------------------------------|---------|
| Removal | 6-60 |
| Location | 6-61 |
| Inspection | 6-62 |
| Arm-to-Shaft Clearance | 6-63 |
| Installation | 6-64 |
| Camshafts | |
| Inspection | 6-65 |
| Valve Guides | |
| Valve Movement | 6-70 |
| Replacement | 6-71 |
| Reaming | 6-72 |
| Valve Seals | |
| Reconditioning | 6-73 |
| Valves, Valve Springs and Valv | e Seals |
| Removal | 6-67 |
| Installation Sequence | 6-69 |
| Valve Installation | 6-70 |



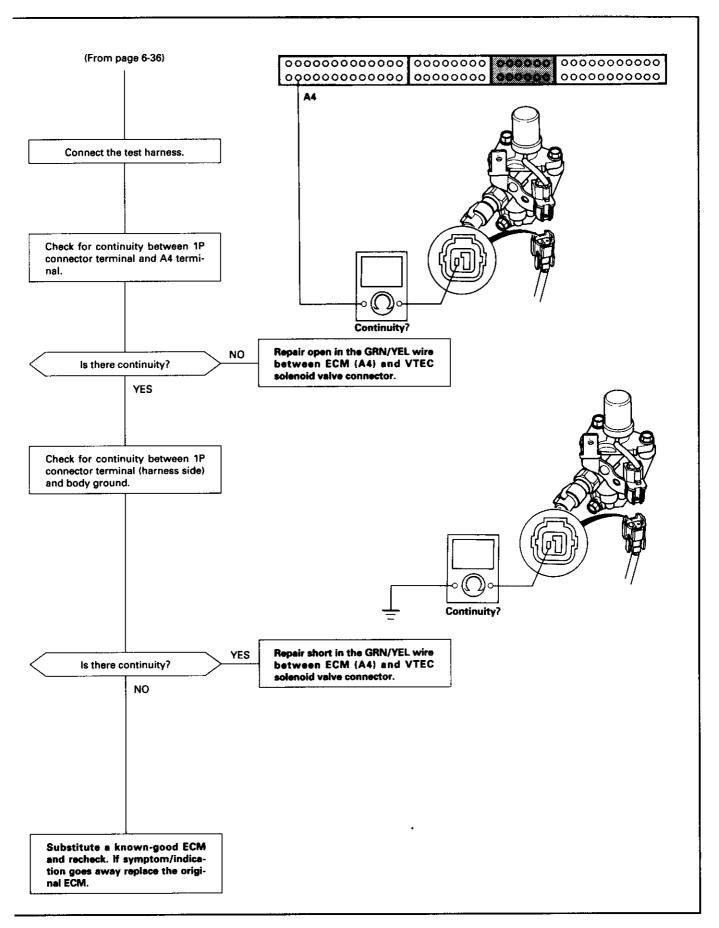
Special Tools

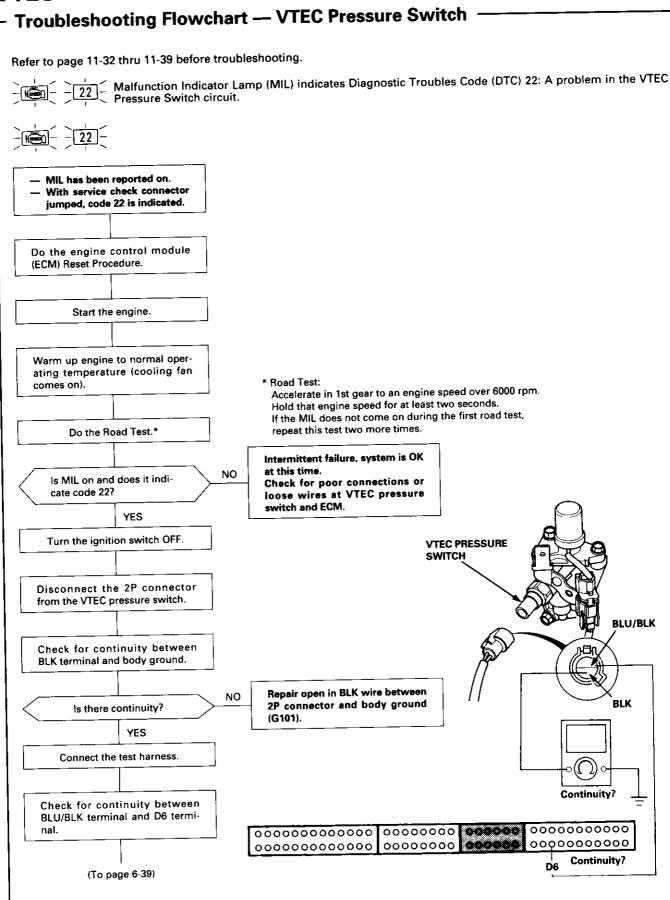
| Ref. No. | Tool Number | Description | Qty | Page Reference |
|------------|---------------------------------------|--|-----|----------------|
| 1 | 07HAH – PJ7010A or 07HAH – PJ7010B | Valve Guide Reamer, 5.5 mm | 1 | 6-72 |
| 2 | 07HAH = P37010B | Holder Handle | 1 | 6-47 |
| 3 | 07LAA - PR30100 | Tappet Adjuster Wrench | 1 | 6-45 |
| (4) | 07LAJ - PR3020A | Air Stopper | 1 | 6-43 |
| <u>\$</u> | 07MAB - PY3010A | Pulley Holder Attachment, HEX 50 mm, Offset | 1 | 6-47 |
| 6 | 07MAF – PR9010A | Valve Spring Compressor Attachment Extension | 1 | 6-67 |
| ⑦ | 07742 - 0010100 | Valve Guide Driver, 5.5 mm | 1 | 6-71, 72 |
| 8 | 07757 – PJ1010A | Valve Spring Compressor Attachment | 1 | 6-67 |



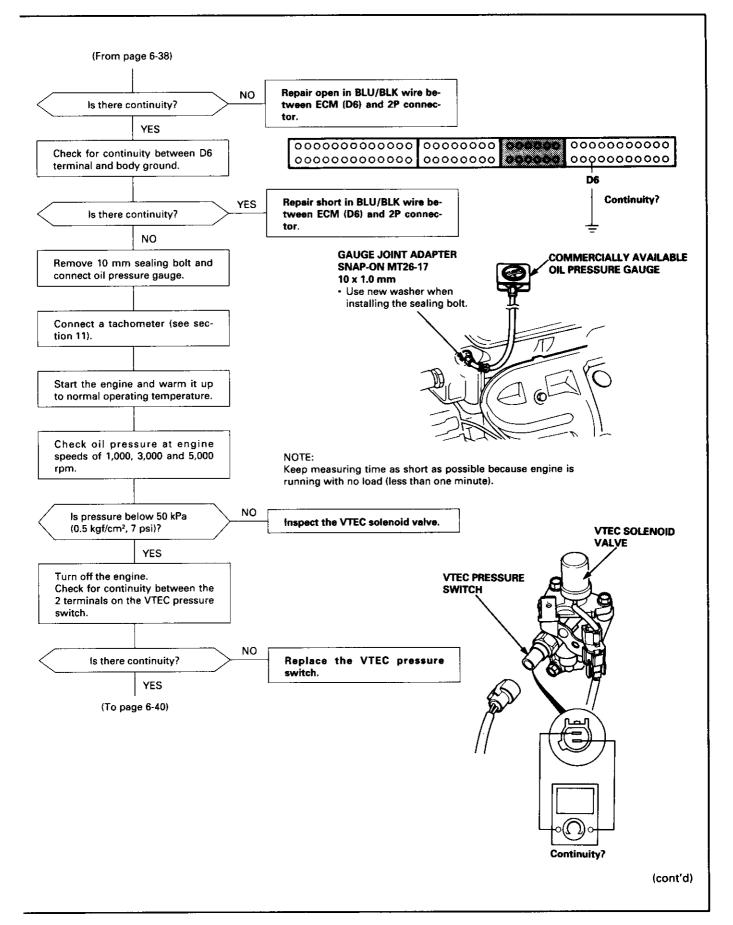


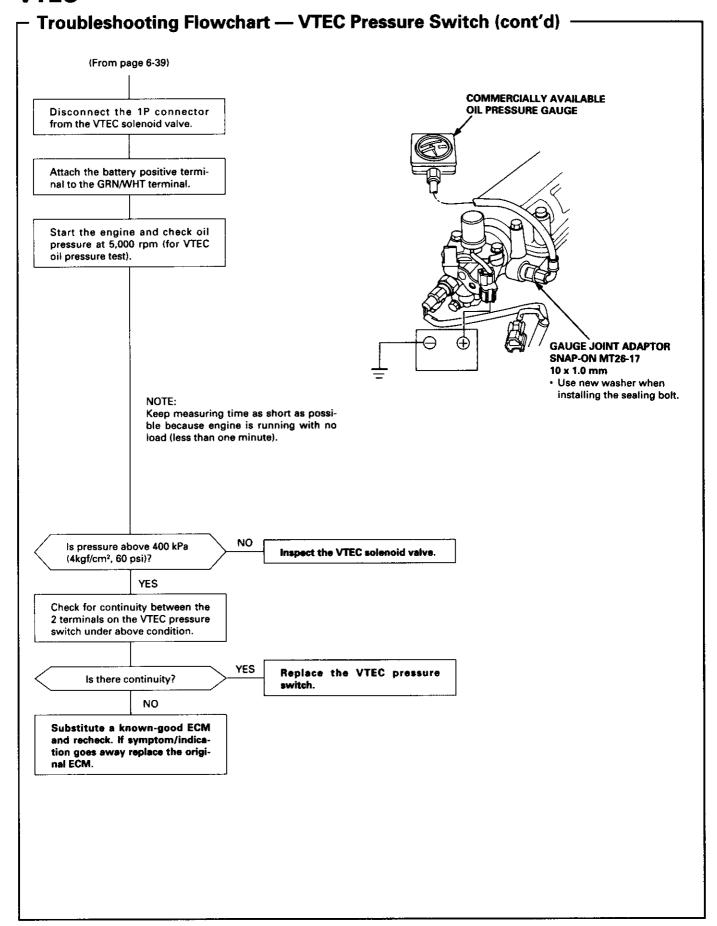










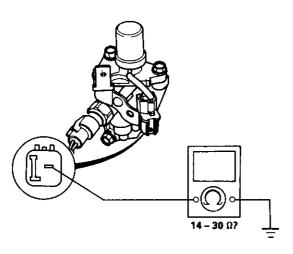




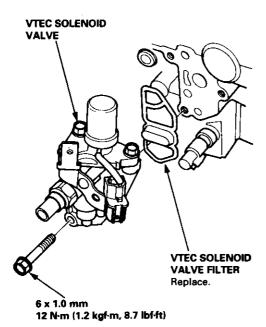
VTEC Solenoid Valve Inspection

- Disconnect the 1P connector from the VTEC solenoid valve.
- Measure resistance between the terminal and body ground.

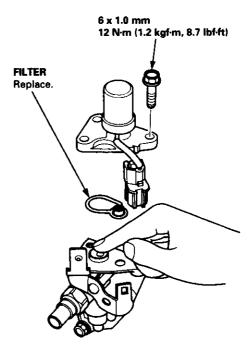
Resistance: 14 – 30 Ω



- If the resistance is within specifications, remove the VTEC solenoid valve from the cylinder head, and check the VTEC solenoid valve filter for clogging.
 - If there is clogging, replace the engine oil filter and the engine oil.

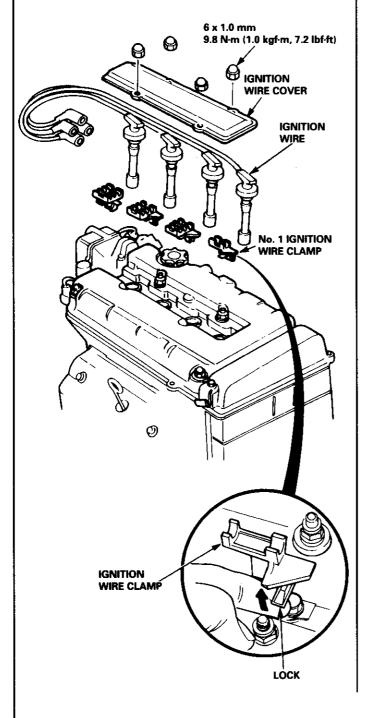


- 4. If the filter is not clogged, push the VTEC solenoid valve with your finger and check its movement.
 - If VTEC solenoid valve is normal, check the engine oil pressure.

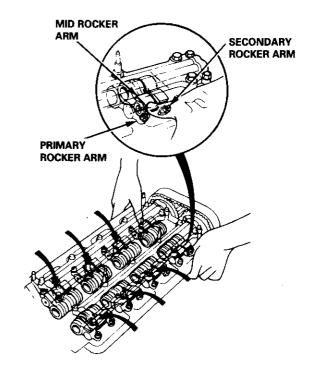


Rocker Arms — Manual Inspection

- 1. Set the No. 1 piston at TDC.
- 2. Remove the ignition wire cover and the wires.
- Remove the ignition clamps while pulling up on the lock



- 4. Remove the cylinder head cover.
- Push the mid rocker arm on the No. 1 cylinder manually.
- 6. Check that the mid rocker arm moves independently of the primary and secondary rocker arms.



- 7. Check the mid rocker arm of each cylinder at TDC.
 - If the mid rocker arm does not move, remove the mid, primary and secondary rocker arms as an assembly and check that the pistons in the mid and primary rocker arms move smoothly.
 - If any rocker arm needs replacing, replace the primary, mid, and secondary rocker arms as an assembly.

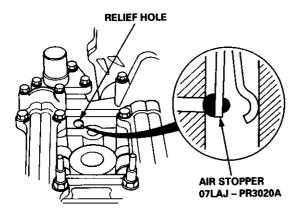
NOTE: Refer to page 6-78 when installing cylinder head cover.



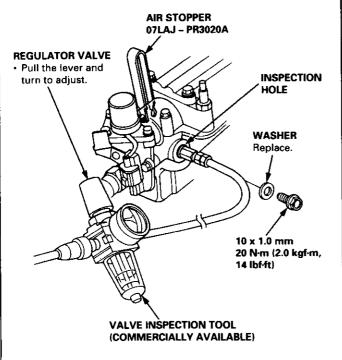
Rocker Arms — Inspection Using Special Tools -

CAUTION:

- Before using the valve inspection tool, make sure that the air pressure gauge on the air compressor indicates over 250 kPa (2.5 kgf/cm², 36 psi)
- Inspect the valve clearance before rocker arm inspection.
- Cover the timing belt with a shop towel to prevent getting oil on the belt.
- Check the mid rocker arm of each cylinder at TDC.
- 1. Remove the cylinder head cover.
- Plug the relief hole with the special tool (Air Stopper).



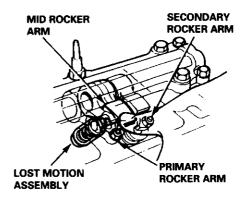
3. Remove the bolt and washer from the inspection hole and connect the valve inspection tool.



 Apply specified air pressure to the rocker arm pistons after loosening the regulator valve on the valve inspection tool.

Specified Air Pressure: 250 kPa (2.5 kgf/cm², 36 psi) — 500 kPa (5.0 kgf/cm², 71 psi)

 Make sure that the primary and secondary rocker arms are mechanically connected by the pistons and that the mid rocker arms do not move when pushed manually.



- If any mid rocker arm moves independently of the primary and secondary rocker arms, replace the rocker arms as a set.
- 6. Remove the tools.
- Check the operation of the lost motion assembly by pushing on the mid rocker arm. The lost motion assembly should compress fully and operate smoothly through its full stroke. Replace the assembly if it does not work smoothly.
- 8. After inspection, check that the Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) does not come on.

NOTE: Refer to page 6-78 when installing cylinder head cover.

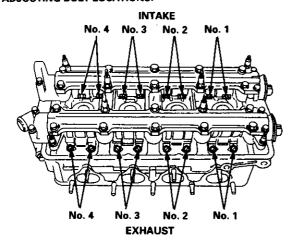
Valve Clearance

- Adjustment -

NOTE:

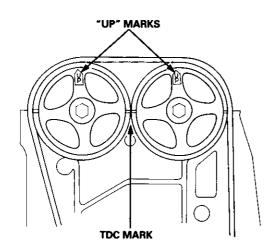
- Valves should be adjusted cold; at a cylinder head temperature of less than 100°F (38°C).
- Adjustment is the same for intake and exhaust valves.
- After adjusting, retorque the crankshaft pulley bolt to 177 N·m (18.0 kgf·m, 130 lbf·ft).
- 1. Remove cylinder head cover.

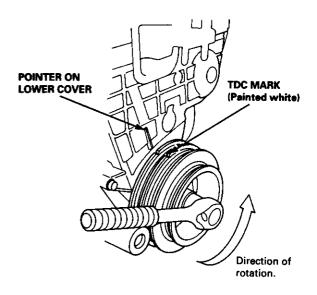
ADJUSTING BOLT LOCATIONS:



 Set No. 1 piston at TDC. "UP" mark on the pulley should be at top, and TDC grooves on the pulley should align with the pointer on back cover. TDC grooves (white paint) on the crankshaft pulley should align with pointer on the timing belt lower cover.

Number 1 piston at TDC:

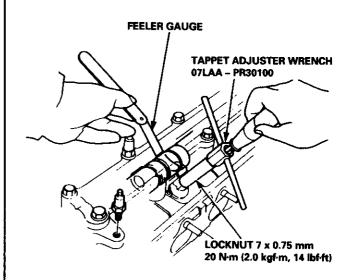




3. Adjust valve clearance on No. 1 cylinder.

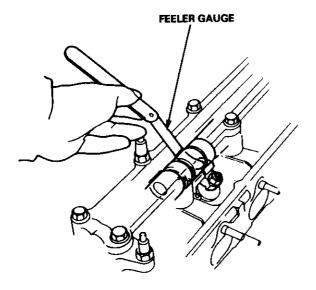
Intake: 0.15 - 0.19 mm (0.006 - 0.007 in) Exhaust: 0.17 - 0.21 mm (0.007 - 0.008 in)

 Loosen the locknut and turn the adjusting screw until feeler gauge slides back and forth with a slight amount of drag.



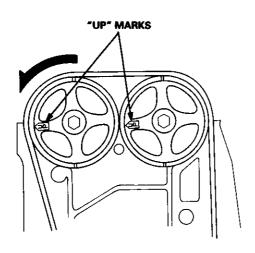


Tighten the locknut and recheck clearance again.
 Repeat adjustment if necessary.



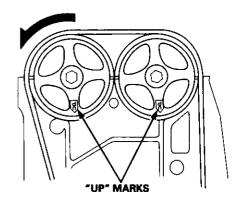
 Rotate the crankshaft 180° counterclockwise (camshaft pulley turns 90°). The "UP" mark should be on the exhaust side. Adjust valves on No. 3 cylinder.

Number 3 piston at TDC:



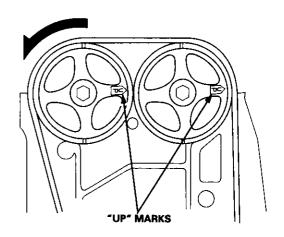
7. Rotate crankshaft 180° counterclockwise to bring No. 4 piston to TDC. The "UP" mark should be pointing straight down. Adjust valves on No. 4 cylinder.

Number 4 piston at TDC:



 Rotate crankshaft 180° counterclockwise to bring No. 2 piston to TDC. The "UP" marks should be on the intake side. Adjust valves on No. 2 cylinder.

Number 2 piston at TDC:



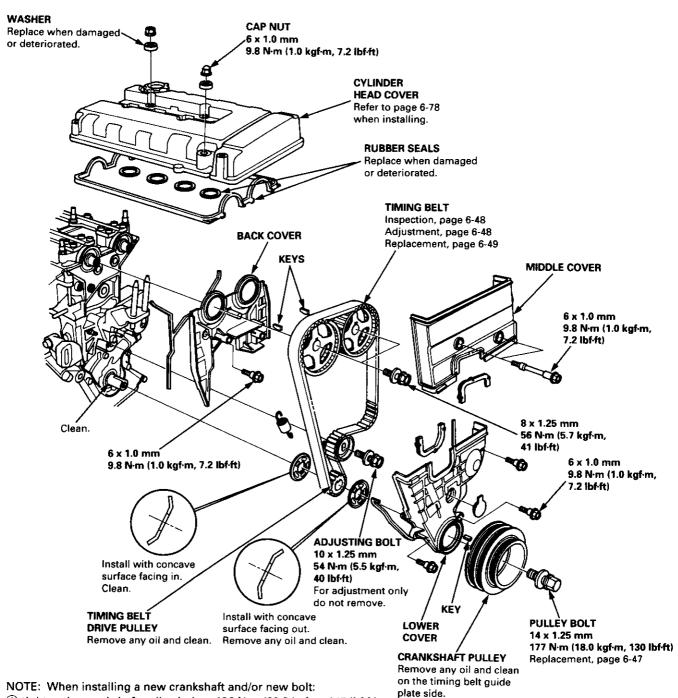
NOTE: Refer to page 6-78 when installing cylinder head cover.

Timing Belt

Illustrated Index

NOTE:

- Refer to page 6-51 for positioning crankshaft and pulley before installing belt.
- · Mark the direction of rotation on the belt before removing.
- Replace the rubber seals for oil leakage between the cylinder head and cover.
- Do not use the middle cover and lower cover for storing items disassembled.
- Clean the middle cover and lower cover before installation.



- 1 tighten the crankshaft pulley bolt to 196 N-m (20.0 kgf·m, 145 lbf·ft),
- 2 loosen bolt,
- 3 retighten it to 177 N·m (18.0 kgf·m, 130 lbf·ft).

Crankshaft Pulley Bolt



- Replacement -

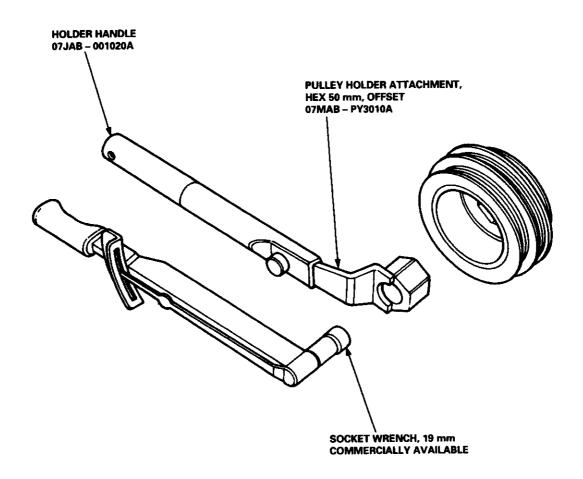
NOTE:

- Crankshaft pulley bolt size and torque value:
 14 x 1.25 mm
 177 N·m (18.0 kgf·m, 130 lbf·ft)
- When installing a new crankshaft and/or new pulley bolt:
 - ① tighten the pulley bolt to 196 N·m (20.0 kgf·m, 145 lbf·ft).
 - 2 loosen the bolt,
 - ③ retighten it to 177 N·m (18.0 kgf·m, 130 lbf·ft).

 When reinstalling the bolt, lubricate the threads and flange with engine oil, but don't lubricate the washer and pulley.

Lubricate with engine oil here.





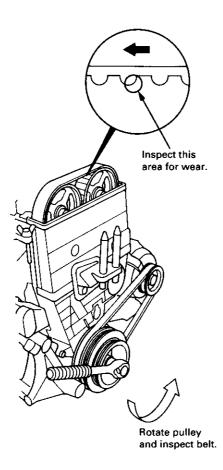
Timing Belt

Inspection

- 1. Remove the cylinder head cover.
 - Refer to page 6-78 when installing.
- Inspect the timing belt for cracks and oil or coolant soaking.

NOTE:

- · Replace the belt if oil or coolant soaked.
- Remove any oil or solvent that gets on the belt.



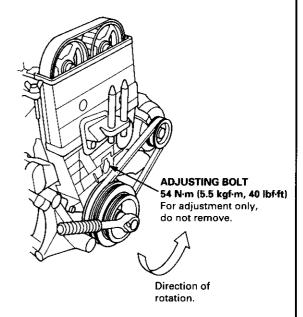
 After inspecting, retorque the crankshaft pulley bolt to 177 N·m (18.0 kgf·m, 130 lbf·ft).

Tension Adjustment

CAUTION: Always adjust timing belt tension with the engine cold.

NOTE:

- The tensioner is spring-loaded to apply proper tension to the belt automatically after making the following adjustment.
- Always rotate the crankshaft counterclockwise when viewed from the pulley side. Rotating it clockwise may result in improper adjustment of the belt tension.
- Remove the cylinder head cover. (Refer to page 6-78 when installing.)
- 2. Set the No. 1 piston at TDC (see page 6-51).
- 3. Rotate the crankshaft 5-6 revolutions to set the belt.
- 4. Set the No. 1 piston at TDC.



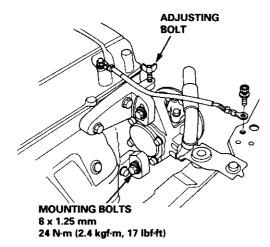
- 5. Loosen the adjusting bolt 1/2 turn (180°) only.
- Rotate the crankshaft counterclockwise 3 teeth on the camshaft pulley.
- 7. Tighten the adjusting bolt.
- 8. After adjusting, retorque the crankshaft pulley bolt to 177 N·m (18.0 kgf·m, 130 lbf·ft).



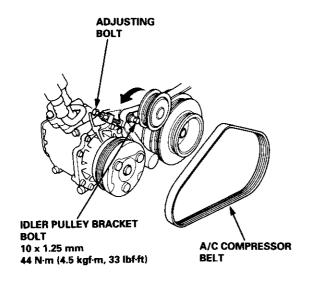
Removal

NOTE:

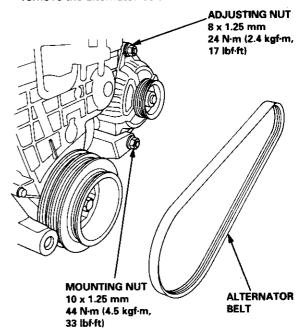
- Turn the crankshaft pulley so the No. 1 piston is at top dead center (TDC) before removing the belt (see page 6-51).
- Inspect the water pump when removed the timing belt (see page 10-9).
- Remove the wheel well splash shield (see page 6-57).
- Loosen the adjusting bolt and mounting bolts, then remove the power steering (P/S) pump belt.



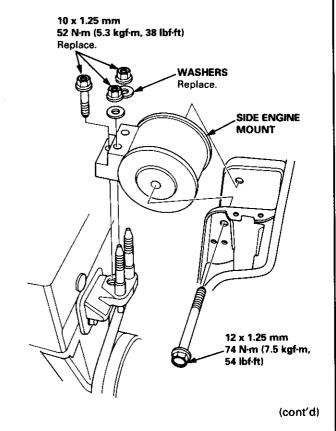
 Loosen the adjusting bolt and idler pulley bracket bolt, then remove the air conditioning (A/C) compressor belt.



 Loosen the adjusting nut and mounting nut, then remove the alternator belt.



- 5. Remove the cruise control actuator (see page 6-58).
- 6. Remove the side engine mount.

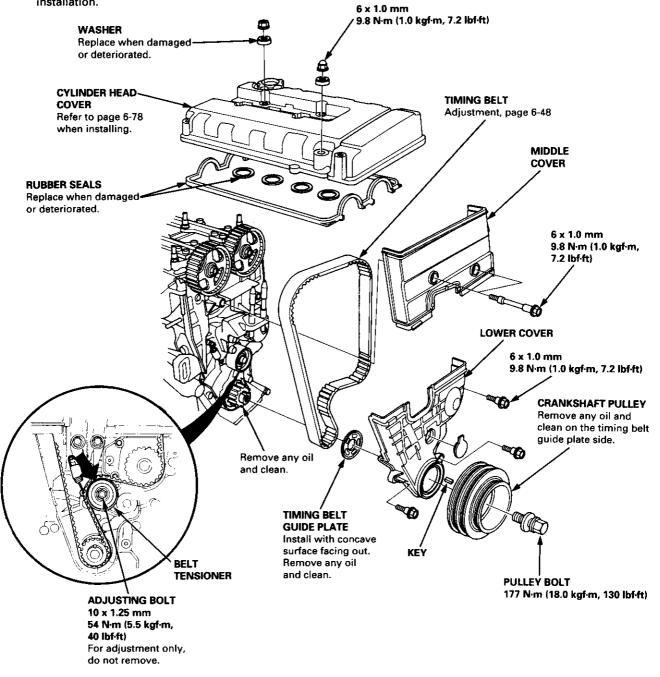


Timing Belt

Removal (cont'd)

- 7. Remove the cylinder head cover.
 - Refer to page 6-78 when installing.
- 8. Remove the pulley bolt and crankshaft pulley (see page 6-47).
- Remove the middle cover and the lower cover.
 NOTE:
 - Do not use the middle cover and lower cover for storing items disassembled.
 - Clean the middle cover and lower cover before installation.

- 10. Loosen the adjusting bolt 180°.
- 11. Push the tensioner to remove tension from the timing belt, then retighten the bolt.
- 12. Remove the timing belt from the pulleys.



Timing Belt

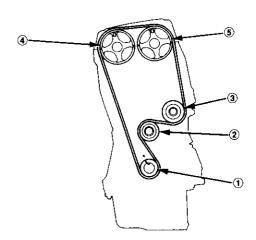


- Installation

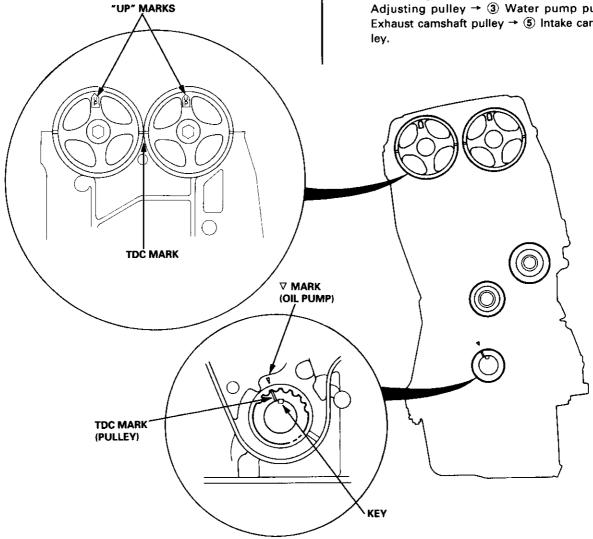
Install the timing belt in the reverse order of removal; Only key points are described there.

NOTE: Clean the middle cover and lower cover before installation.

- Position the crankshaft and the camshaft pulleys as shown before installing the timing belt.
 - A. Set the crankshaft so that the No. 1 piston is at top dead center (TDC). Align the groove on the teeth side of the timing belt drive pulley to the ∇ pointer on the oil pump.
 - B. Align the TDC marks on intake and exhaust pulleys.



- 2. Install the timing belt tightly in the sequence
 - ① Timing belt drive pulley (crankshaft) → ② Adjusting pulley → ③ Water pump pulley → ④ Exhaust camshaft pulley → ⑤ Intake camshaft pul-

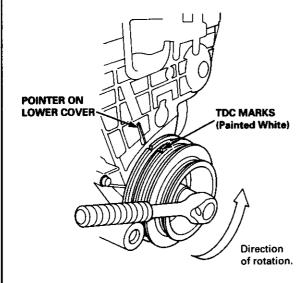


Timing Belt

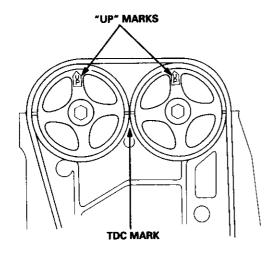
Installation (cont'd)

- Loosen and retighten the adjusting bolt to tension the belt.
- Rotate the crankshaft about 4 or 6 turns counterclockwise so that the belt positions on the pulleys.
- 5. Adjust the timing belt tension (see page 6-48).
- Check the crankshaft pulley and the camshaft pulleys at TDC.

CRANKSHAFT PULLEY:



CAMSHAFT PULLEY:



 If a camshaft pulley is not positioned at TDC, remove the timing belt and adjust the positioning following the procedure on page 6-51, then reinstall the timing belt.

NOTE: Refer to page 6-49 for timing belt removal.

After installation, adjust the tension of each belt.

- See section 23 for alternator belt tension adjustment
- See section 22 for A/C compressor belt tension adjustment.
- See section 17 for P/S pump belt tension adjustment.

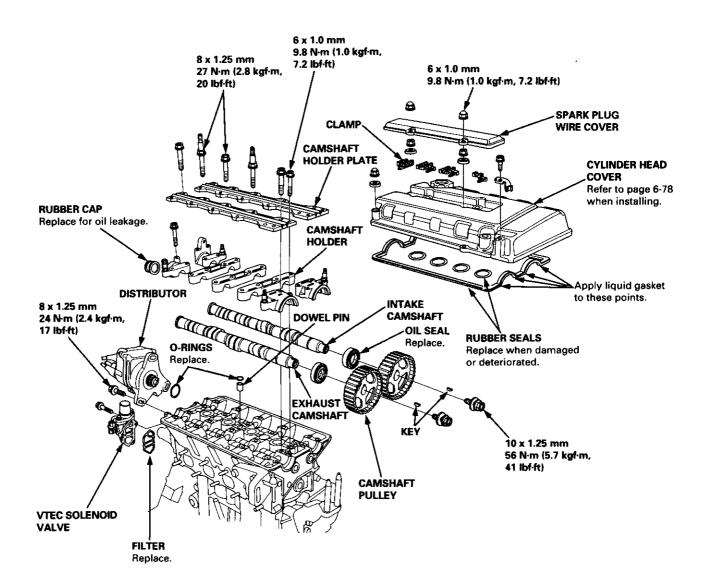
Illustrated Index

CAUTION: To avoid damaging the cylinder head, wait until the engine coolant temperature drops below 100°F (38°C) before removing it.

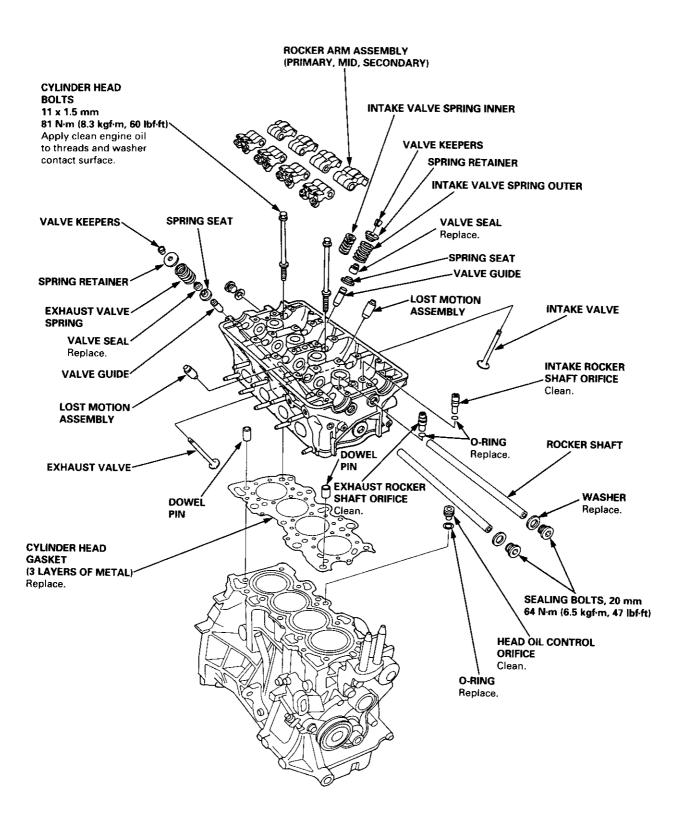
NOTE:

- · Use new O-rings and gaskets when reassembling.
- Use liquid gasket, Part No. 08718 0001.
- Replace the rubber seals for oil leakage between the cylinder head and cover.

Prior to reassembling, clean all the parts in solvent, dry them, and apply lubricant to any contact parts.



NOTE: Clean the head oil control orifice and the rocker shaft orifices when installing.



Removal

Engine removal is not required or this procedure.

CAUTION: To avoid damaging the cylinder head, wait until the engine coolant temperature drops below 100°F (38°C) before loosening the retaining bolts.

NOTE:

- Inspect the timing belt before removing the cylinder head
- Turn the crankshaft pulley so that the No. 1 piston is at top dead center (TDC) (page 6-51).
- Mark all emissions hoses before disconnecting them.
- Anti-theft radios have a coded theft protection circuit.
 Be sure to get the customer's code number before
 - Disconnecting the battery.
 - Removing the No. 32 (7.5 A) fuse from the underhood fuse/relay box.
 - Removing the radio.

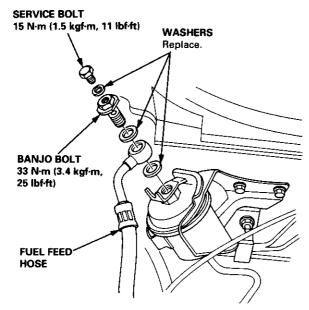
After service, reconnect power to the radio and turn it on.

When the word "CODE" is displayed, enter the customer's 5-digit code to restore radio operation.

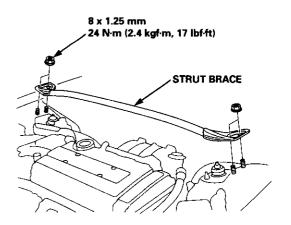
- 1. Disconnect the negative terminal from the battery.
- 2. Drain the engine coolant (see page 10-5).
 - · Remove the radiator cap to speed draining.
- 3. Relieve fuel pressure (see section 11).

A WARNING Do not smoke while working on fuel system, keep open flame or spark away from work area. Drain fuel only into an approved container.

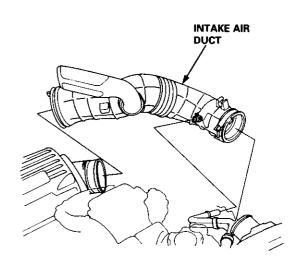
4. Disconnect the fuel feed hose.



5. Remove the strut brace.

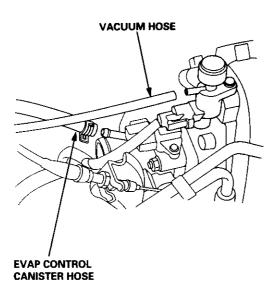


6. Remove the intake air duct.

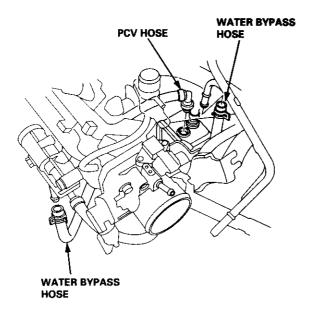


- Removal (cont'd)

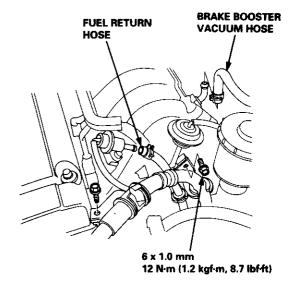
Remove the vacuum hose and evaporative emission (EVAP) control canister hose.



8. Remove the water bypass hose and positive crankcase ventilation (PCV) hose.



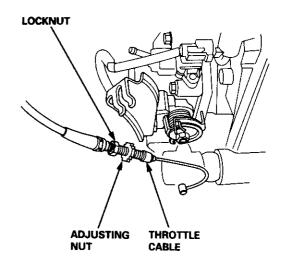
Remove the brake booster vacuum hose and fuel return hose.



10. Remove the throttle cable.

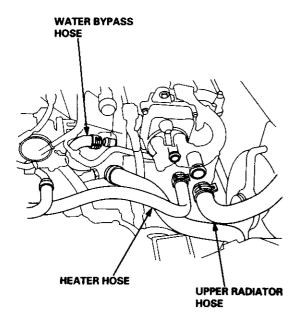
NOTE:

- Take care not to bend the cable when removing it. Always replace any kinked cable with a new one.
- Adjust the throttle cable when installing (see section 11).

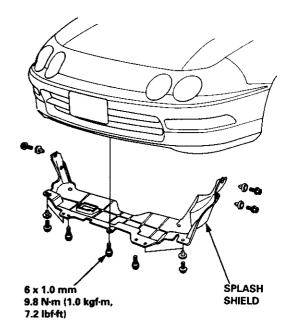




- Remove the engine wire harness connectors and wire harness clamps from the cylinder head and the intake manifold.
 - Four fuel injector connectors
 - Intake air temperature (IAT) sensor connector
 - Engine coolant temperature (ECT) sensor connector
 - TDC/CKP/CYP sensor connector
 - Ignition coil connector
 - · ECT gauge sending unit connector
 - Throttle position (TP) sensor connector
 - VTEC solenoid valve connector
 - VTEC pressure switch connector
 - Manifold absolute pressure (MAP) sensor connector
 - Idle air control (IAC) sensor connector
 - EVAP purge control solenoid valve connector
 - Intake air bypass (IAB) control solenoid valve connector
- 12. Remove the spark plug caps and distributor from the cylinder head.
- 13. Remove the upper radiator hose, heater hose and water bypass hose.



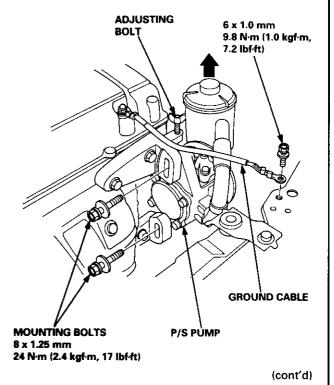
14. Remove the splash shield.



15. Remove the engine ground cable.

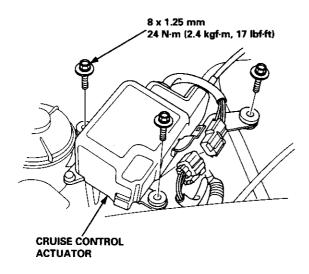
Remove the adjusting bolt and mounting bolts, then remove the power steering (P/S) pump belt and P/S pump.

• Do not disconnect the P/S hoses.

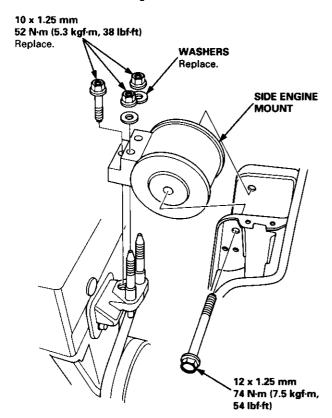


- Removal (cont'd)

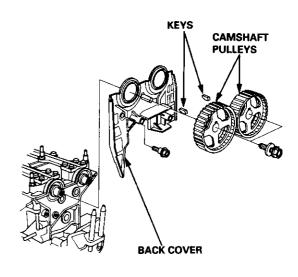
- 16. Remove the heat shield from the P/S bracket (see page 5-18).
- 17. Remove the air conditioning (A/C) compressor belt (see page 6-49).
- 18. Remove the alternator belt (see page 6-49).
- 19. Remove the cruise control actuator.



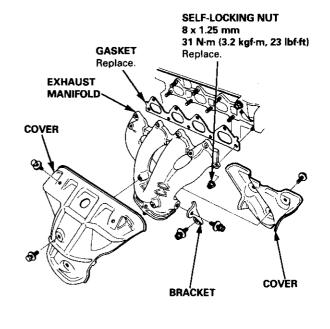
20. Remove the side engine mount.



- 21. Remove the cylinder head cover.
- 22. Remove the timing belt (see page 6-49).
- 23. Remove the camshaft pulleys and back cover.

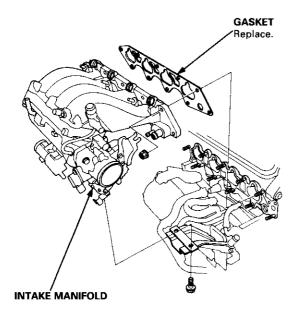


24. Remove the exhaust manifold.

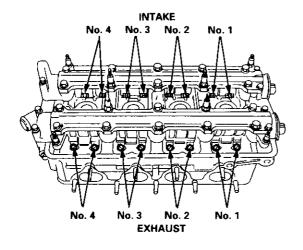




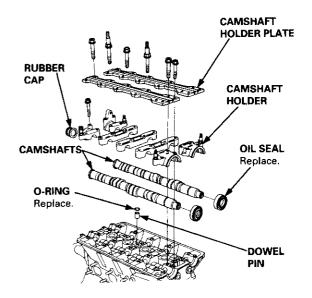
25. Remove the intake manifold.



26. Loosen the adjusting screws.



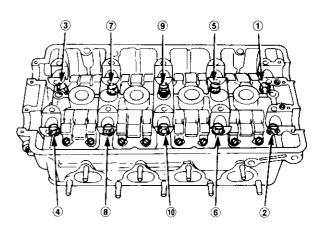
27. Remove the camshaft holder plates, camshaft holders, and camshafts.



28. Remove the cylinder head bolts, then remove the cylinder head.

CAUTION: To prevent warpage, unscrew the bolts in sequence 1/3 turn at a time; repeat until all bolts are loosened.

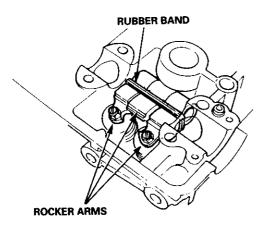
CYLINDER HEAD BOLT LOOSENING SEQUENCE



Rocker Arms

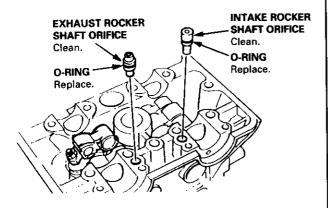
- Removal -

 Hold the rocker arms together with a rubber band to prevent them from separating.

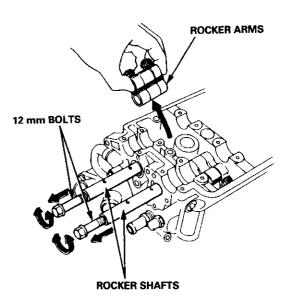


Remove the intake and exhaust rocker shaft orifices, then remove the VTEC solenoid valve and the sealing bolts.

NOTE: The shapes of the rocker shaft orifices of the intake and exhaust are different. Identify the parts as they are removed to ensure reinstallation in the original locations.



 Screw 12 mm bolts into the rocker arm shafts.
 Remove each rocker arm set while slowly pulling out intake and exhaust rocker arm shafts.





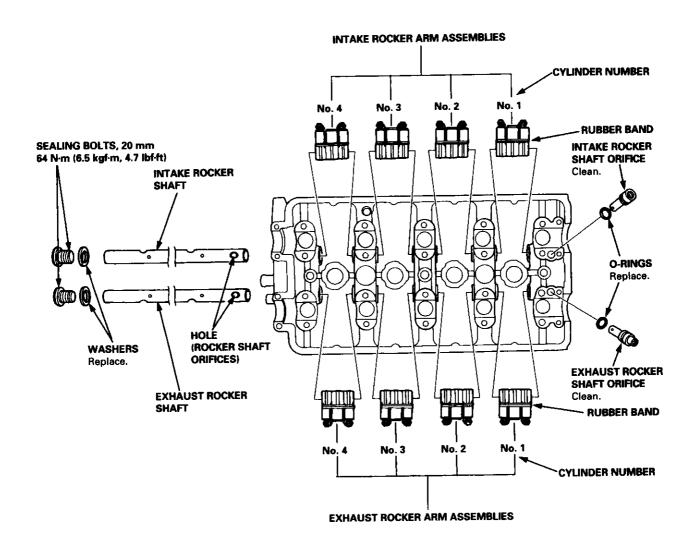
Locations

CAUTION: After installing the rocker shaft orifice, try to turn the rocker shaft to make sure that the orifice is correctly inserted in the hole of the rocker shaft. If the orifice is in place, it should not turn.

NOTE:

- Identify parts as they are removed to ensure reinstallation in original locations.
- Inspect rocker shafts and rocker arms (see pages 6-62 and 63).
- Rocker arms must be installed in the same position if reused.
- Clean the rocker shaft orifices when installing.

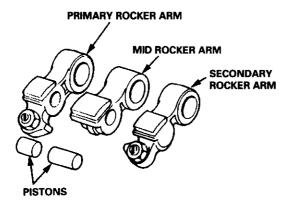
Prior to reinstalling, clean all the parts in solvent, dry them and apply lubricant to any contact surfaces.



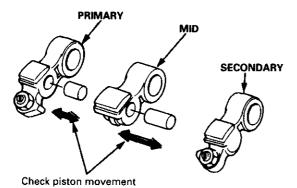
Rocker Arms

- Inspection

NOTE: When reassembling the primary rocker arm, carefully apply air pressure to the oil passage of the rocker arm.



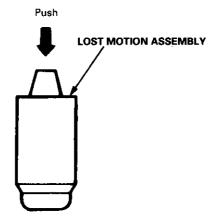
- 1. Inspect the rocker arm piston. Push it manually.
 - If it does not move smoothly, replace the rocker arm assembly.



NOTE:

- · Apply oil to the pistons when reassembling.
- Bundle the rocker arms with a rubber band to keep them together as a set.

- Remove the lost motion assembly from the cylinder head and inspect it. Test it by pushing the plunger with your finger.
 - If the lost motion assembly does not move smoothly, replace it.

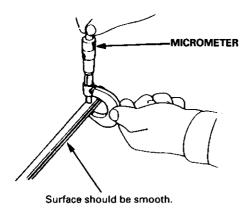




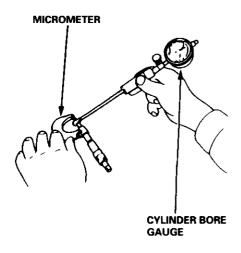
Arm-to-Shaft Clearance

Measure both the intake rocker shaft and exhaust rocker shaft.

1. Measure diameter of shaft at first rocker location.



2. Zero gauge to shaft diameter.



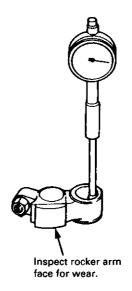
3. Measure inside diameter of rocker arm and check for out-of-round condition.

Rocker Arm-to-Shaft Clearance: Intake and Exhaust

Standard (New): 0.025 - 0.052 mm

(0.0010 - 0.0020 in)

Service Limit: 0.08 mm (0.003 in)



Repeat for all rockers.

 If over limit, replace rocker shaft and all over tolerance rocker arms.

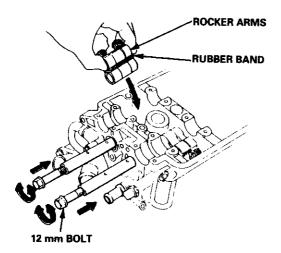
NOTE: If any rocker arm needs replacement, replace all three rocker arms in that set (primary, mid, and secondary).

Rocker Arms

Installation

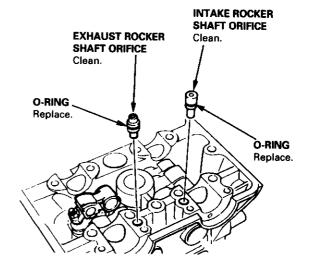
- Install the rocker arms in the reverse order of removal:
 - Valve adjusting locknuts should be loosened and adjusting screw backed off before installation.
 - The component parts must be reinstalled in the original locations.
- 2. Install the lost motion assemblies.
- Install the rocker arms while inserting the rocker arm shaft into the cylinder head.

NOTE: Remove the rubber band after installing the rocker arms.



4. Clean and install the rocker shaft orifices with new O-rings. If the holes in the rocker arm shaft and cylinder head are not in line with each other, screw a 12 mm bolt into the rocker arm shaft and rotate the shaft.

NOTE: The shapes of the rocker shaft orifices for the intake and exhaust are different. The orifices must be installed in the original locations.



Camshafts

- Inspection

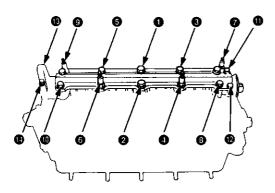
NOTE:

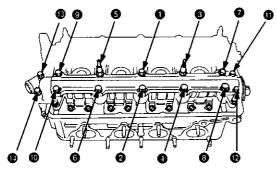
- · Do not rotate the camshaft during inspection.
- · Remove the rocker arms and rocker shafts.
- Put the camshafts and camshaft holders on the cylinder head, and then tighten the bolts to the specified torque.

Specified Torque:

1 - 10: 8 mm bolts 26 N·m (2.7 kgf·m, 20 lbf·ft)

1 - 1: 6 mm bolts 9.8 N·m (1.0 kgf·m, 7.2 lbf·ft)





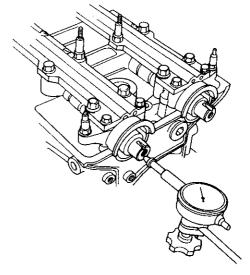
- Seat each camshaft by pushing it toward distributor end of the cylinder head.
- Zero the dial indicator against end of distributor drive, then push the camshaft back and forth and read the end play.

Camshaft End Play:

Standard (New): 0.05 - 0.15 mm

(0.002 - 0.006 in)

Service Limit: 0.5 mm (0.02 in)



Remove the bolts, then remove the camshaft holders from the cylinder head.

NOTE: Unscrew the camshaft holder bolts two turns at a time, in a crisscross pattern.

- Lift camshaft out of cylinder head, wipe clean, then inspect lift ramps. Replace camshaft if lobes are pitted, scored, or excessively worn.
- Clean the camshaft bearing surfaces in the cylinder head, then set camshaft back in place.
- 7. Place a plastigage strip across each journal.
- Install the camshaft holders, and then tighten the bolts to the specified torque as shown in the left column on this page.

NOTE: Do not rotate camshafts during inspection.

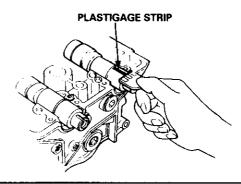
 Remove the camshaft holders. Measure widest portion of plastigage strip on each journal.

Camshaft-to-Holder Oil Clearance:

Standard (New): 0.050 - 0.089 mm

(0.002 - 0.004 in)

Service Limit: 0.15 mm (0.006 in)



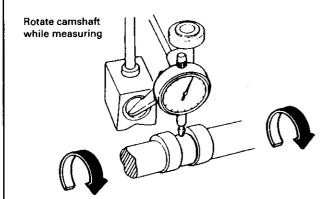
Camshafts

Inspection (cont'd)

- If camshaft-to-holder oil clearance is out of tolerance:
 - And camshaft has already been replaced, you must replace the cylinder head.
 - If camshaft has not been replaced, first check total runout with the camshaft supported on Vblocks.

Camshaft Total Runout:

Standard (New): 0.015 mm (0.0006 in) Service Limit: 0.03 mm (0.0012 in)

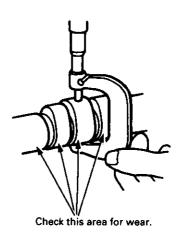


- If the total runout of the camshaft is within tolerance, replace the cylinder head.
- If the total runout is out of tolerance, replace the camshaft and recheck. If the oil clearance is still out of tolerance, replace the cylinder head.

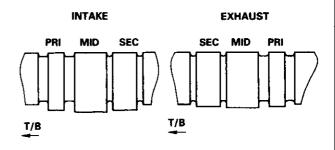
11. Check cam lobe wear.

Cam Lobe Height Standard (New):

| | INTAKE | EXHAUST | |
|-----------|--------------------------|--------------------------|--|
| PRIMARY | 33.411 mm (1.3154 in) | 33.111 mm (1.3036 in) | |
| MID | 36.377 mm (1.4322 in) | 35.720 mm (1.4063 in) | |
| SECONDARY | 34.547 mm (1.3601 in) | 34.381 mm (1.3536 in) | |



Cam Position



T/B: TIMING BELT PRI: PRIMARY MID: MID SEC: SECONDARY

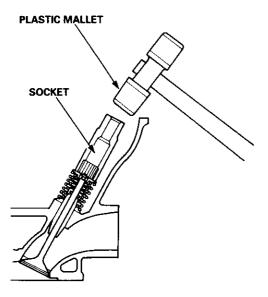
Valves, Valve Springs and Valve Seals



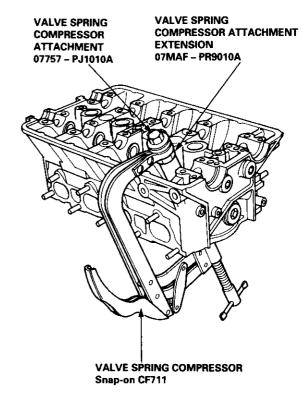
- Removal

NOTE: Identify valves and valve springs as they are removed so that each item can be reinstalled in its original position.

 Using an appropriate-sized socket and plastic mallet, lightly tap the valve retainer to loosen the valve keepers before installing the valve spring compressor.



2. Install spring compressor. Compress spring and remove valve keeper.

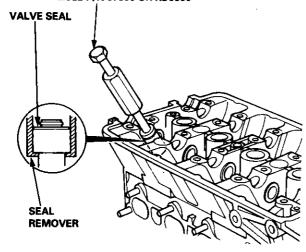


Valves, Valve Springs and Valve Seals

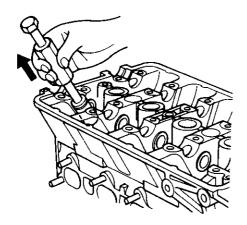
Removal (cont'd) -

3. Install the special tool as shown.

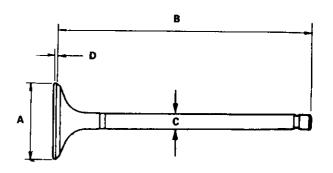
COMMERCIALLY AVAILABLE VALVE GUIDE SEAL REMOVER LISLE P/N 57900 OR KD3350



4. Remove the valve guide seal.



Valve Dimensions



Intake Valve

A Standard (New): 32.90 - 33.10 mm

(1.295 - 1.303 in)

B Standard (New): 101.00 - 101.30 mm

(3.976 - 3.988 in)

C Standard (New): 5.475 - 5.485 mm

(0.2156 - 0.2159 in)

C Service Limit: 5.445 (0.2144 in)

D Standard (New): 1.05 - 1.35 mm

(0.041 - 0.053 in)

D Service Limit: 0.85 mm (0.033 in)

Exhaust Valve

A Standard (New): 27.90 - 28.10 mm

(1.098 - 1.106 in)

B Standard (New): 100.60 - 100.90 mm

(3.961 – 3.972 in)

C Standard (New): 5.450 - 5.460 mm

(0.2146 - 0.2150 in)

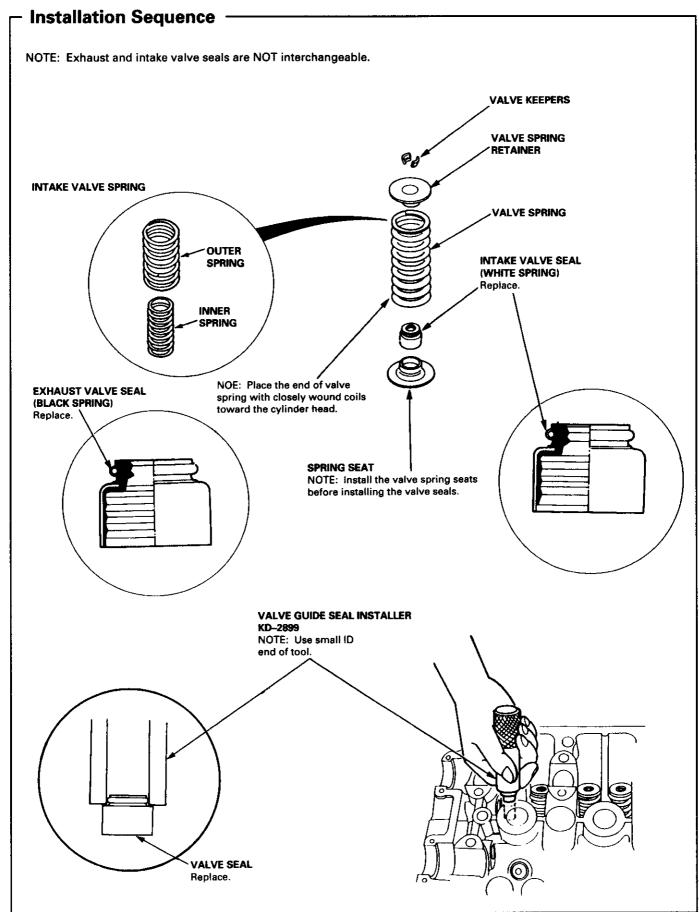
C Service Limit: 5.420 (0.2134 in)

D Standard (New): 1.65 - 1.95 mm

(0.065 - 0.077 in)

D Service Limit: 1.45 mm (0.057 in)



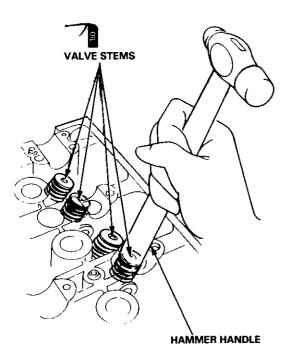


Valves, Valve Springs and Valve Seals

- Valve Installation

- When installing valves in cylinder head, coat valve stems with oil before inserting into valve guides, and make sure valves move up and down smoothly.
- When valves and springs are in place, lightly tap the end of each valve stem two or three times to ensure proper seating of valve and valve keepers (use hammer handle).

NOTE: Tap the valve stem only along its axis so you do not bend the stem.



Valve Guides

Valve Movement

Measure the guide-to-stem clearance with a dial indicator while rocking the stem in the direction of normal thrust (wobble method).

Intake Valve Stem-to-Guide Clearance:

Standard (New): 0.05 - 0.11 mm

(0.002 - 0.004 in)

Service Limit: 0.16 mm (0.006 in)

Exhaust Valve Stem-to-Guide Clearance:

Standard (New): 0.10 - 0.16 mm

(0.004 - 0.006 in)

Service Limit: 0.22 (0.009 in)

Valve extended 10 mm out from seat.



- If measurement exceeds the service limit, recheck using a new valve.
- If measurement is now within the service limit, reassemble using a new valve.
- If measurement still exceeds limit, recheck using alternate method below, then replace valve and guide, if necessary.

NOTE: An alternate method of checking guide to stem clearance is to subtract the O.D. of the valve stem, measured with a micrometer, from the I.D. of the valve guide, measured with an inside micrometer or ball gauge.

Take the measurements in three places along the valve stem and three places inside the valve guide.

The difference between the largest guide measurement and the smallest stem measurement should not exceed the service limit.

Intake Valve Stem-to-Guide Clearance:

Standard (New): 0.025 - 0.055 mm

(0.0010 - 0.0022 in)

Service Limit: 0.08 mm (0.003 in)

Exhaust Valve Stem-to-Guide Clearance:

Standard (New): 0.050 - 0.080 mm

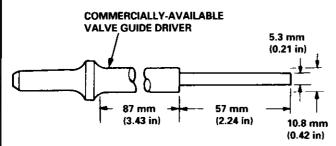
(0.0020 - 0.0031 in)

Service Limit: 0.11 mm (0.004 in)



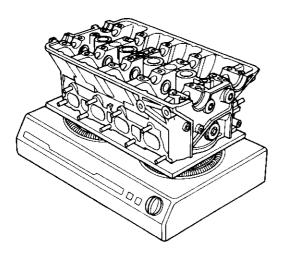
Replacement

As illustrated in the removal steps of this procedure, use a commercially — available air-impact driver attachment modified to fit the diameter of the valve guides. In most cases, the same procedure can be done using the Valve Guide Driver and a conventional hammer.



Removal and Installation VALVE GUIDE DRIVER, 5.5 mm 07742 – 0010100

- Select the proper replacement guides and chill them in the freezer section of a refrigerator for about an hour.
- 3. Use a hot plate or oven to evenly heat the cylinder head to 300°F (150°C). Monitor the temperature with a cooking thermometer.



CAUTION:

- Do not use a torch; it may warp the head.
- Do not get the head hotter than 300°F (150°C);
 excessive heat may loosen the valve seats.
- To avoid burns, use heavy gloves when handling the heated cylinder head.

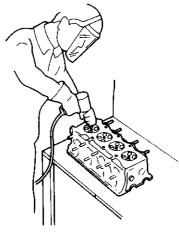
4. Working from the camshaft side, use the driver and an air hammer to drive the guide about 2 mm (0.1 in) towards the combustion chamber. This will knock off some of the carbon and make removal easier.

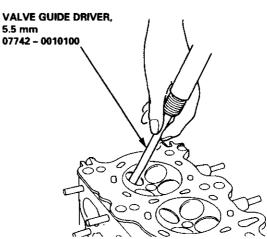
CAUTION:

- Always wear safety goggles or a face shield when using the air hammer.
- Hold the air hammer directly in line with the valve guide to prevent damaging the driver.
- Turn the head over and drive the guide out toward the camshaft side of head.

If a valve guide still won't move, drill it out with a 8.0 mm (5/16 in) bit, then try again.

CAUTION: Drill guides only in extreme cases: you could damage the cylinder head if the guide breaks.



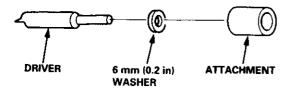


Remove the new guide(s) from the refrigerator, one at a time, as you need them.

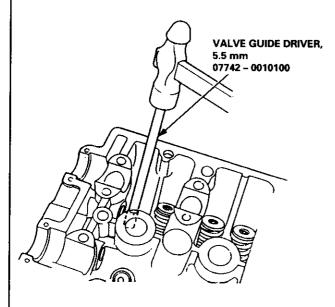
Valve Guides

- Replacement (cont'd) -

 Slip a 6 mm (0.2 in) steel washer and the correct driver attachment over the end of the driver (The washer will absorb some of the impact and extend the life of the driver).

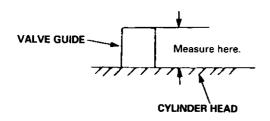


 Install the new guide(s) from the camshaft side of the head; drive each one in until the attachment bottoms on the head. If you have all sixteen guides to do, you may have to reheat the head one or two more times.



Valve Guide Installed Height:

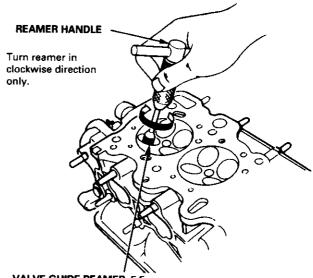
Intake: 12.55 – 13.05 mm (0.494 – 0.514 in) Exhaust: 12.55 – 13.05 mm (0.494 – 0.514 in)



Reaming

NOTE: For new valve guides only.

- 1. Coat both reamer and valve guide with cutting oil.
- Rotate the reamer clockwise the full length of the valve guide bore.
- Continue to rotate the reamer clockwise while removing it from the bore.
- Thoroughly wash the guide in detergent and water to remove any cutting residue.
- 5. Check clearance with a valve (see page 6-70).
 - Verify that the valve slides in the intake and exhaust valve guides without exerting pressure.



VALVE GUIDE REAMER, 5.5 mm 07HAH - PJ7010A or 07HAH - PJ7010B

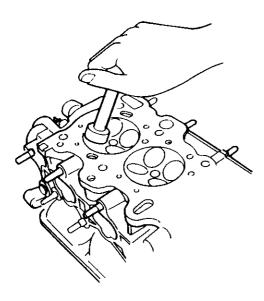
Valve Seats

Reconditioning

valve seat cutters.

. Renew the valve seats in the cylinder head using

NOTE: If guides are worn, replace them before cutting the valve seats.

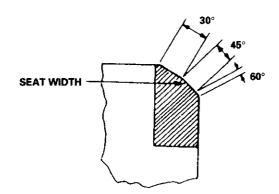


- 2. Carefully cut a 45° seat, removing only enough material to ensure a smooth and concentric seat.
- Bevel the upper edge of the seat with the 30° cutter and the lower edge of the seat with the 60° cutter. Check width of seat and adjust accordingly.
- Make one more very light pass with the 45° cutter to remove any possible burrs caused by the other cutters.

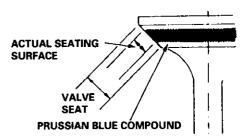
Valve Seat Width:

Standard: 1.25 - 1.55 mm (0.049 - 0.061 in)

Service Limit: 2.0 mm (0.08 in)



 After resurfacing the seat, inspect for even valve seating: Apply Prussian Blue Compound to the valve face, and insert valve in original location in the head, then lift it and snap it closed against the seat several times.



- 6. The actual valve seating surface, as shown by the blue compound, should be centered on the seat.
 - If it is too high (closer to the valve stem), you
 must make a second cut with the 60° cutter to
 move it down, then one more cut with the 45°
 cutter to restore seat width.
 - If it is too low (closer to the valve edge), you
 must make a second cut with the 30° cutter to
 move it up, then one more cut with the 45° cutter
 to restore seat width.

NOTE: The final cut should always be made with the 45° cutter.

Insert intake and exhaust valves in the head and measure valve stem installed height.

Intake Valve Stem Installed Height:

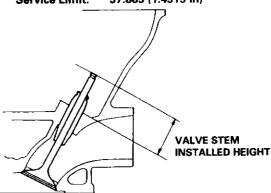
Standard (New): 37.465 - 37.935 mm

(1.4750 - 1.4935 in)

Service Limit: 38.185 mm (1.5033 in) Exhaust Valve Stem Installed Height: Standard (New): 37.165 – 37.635 mm

(1.4632 - 1.4817 in)

Service Limit: 37.885 (1.4915 in)



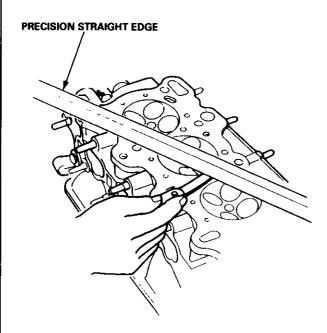
 If valve stem installed height is over the service limit, replace valve and recheck. If still over the service limit, replace cylinder head; the valve seat in the head is too deep.

- Warpage

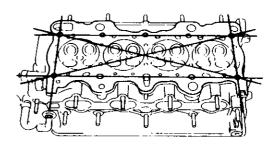
NOTE: If camshaft-to-holder oil clearances (see page 6-65) are not within specification, the head cannot be resurfaced.

If camshaft-to-holder oil clearances are within specifications, check the head for warpage.

- If warpage is less than 0.05 mm (0.002 in) cylinder head resurfacing is not required.
- If warpage is between 0.05 mm (0.002 in) and 0.2 mm (0.008 in), resurface cylinder head.
- Maximum resurface limit is 0.2 mm (0.008 in) based on a height of 142 mm (5.59 in).



Measure along edges, and 3 ways across center.



Cylinder Head Height: Standard (New): 141.95 – 142.05 mm (5.589 – 5.593 in)



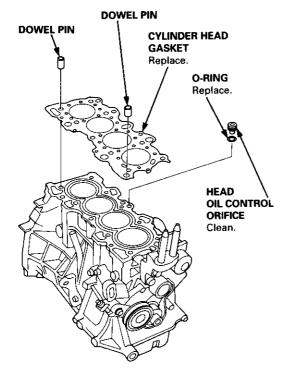
Installation

Install the cylinder head in the reverse order of removal:

NOTE:

- · Always use a new head and manifold gasket.
- The cylinder head gasket is a metal gasket. Take care not to bend it.
- Rotate the crankshaft, set the No. 1 piston at TDC (page 6-51).
- Do not use the middle cover and lower cover for storing items disassembled.
- Clean the middle cover and lower cover before installation.
- Replace the washer when damaged or deteriorated.
- Install the cylinder head gasket, dowel pins and the head oil control orifice on the cylinder head.

NOTE: Clean the oil control orifice when installing.

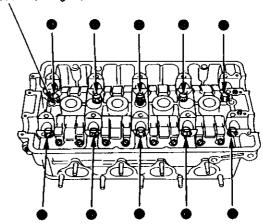


2. Tighten cylinder head bolts in two steps. In the first step, tighten all bolts in sequence to about 29.N·m (3.0 kgf·m, 22 lbf·ft). In the final step, tighten in same sequence to 81 N·m (8.3 kgf·m, 60 lbf·ft).

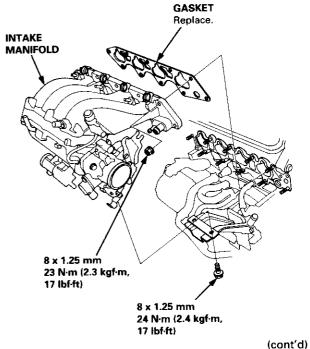
NOTE: Apply clean engine oil to the bolt threads and under the bolt head.

CYLINDER HEAD BOLT TORQUE SEQUENCE

11 x 1.5 mm 81 N·m (8.3 kgf·m, 60 lbf·ft)

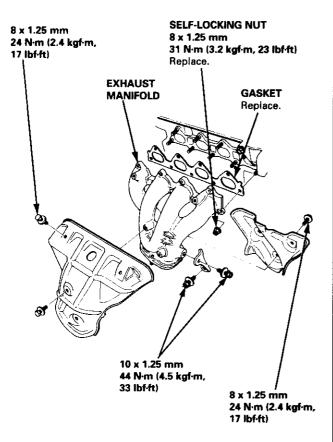


3. Install the intake manifold and tighten the nuts in a crisscross pattern in two or three steps, beginning with the inner nuts.



Installation (cont'd)

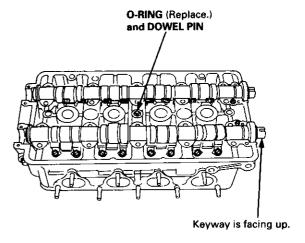
- Install the exhaust manifold and tighten the new self-locking nuts in a crisscross pattern in two or three steps, beginning with the inner nuts.
 - Use new self-locking nuts.



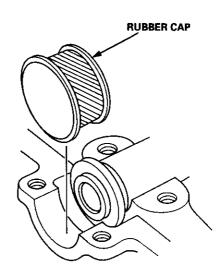
Install the camshafts, camshaft oil seals and rubber cap.

NOTE:

- Install the camshafts with keyway facing up.
- Install the oil seal with the spring side facing in.
- The oil seal housing surface should be dry.
- Set the O-ring and dowel pin in the oil passage of the No. 3 camshaft holder.



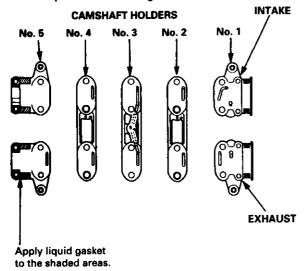
Apply liquid gasket around the rubber cap, then install the rubber cap.



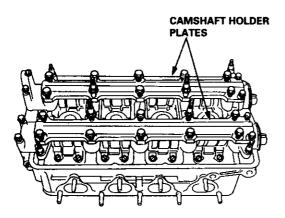


7. Apply liquid gasket to the head mating surface of the No. 1 and No. 5 camshaft holders on both the intake and exhaust side. Confirm that the camshaft keyways face up, then place those holders, together with the No. 2, No. 3 and No. 4 camshaft holders, on the cylinder head.

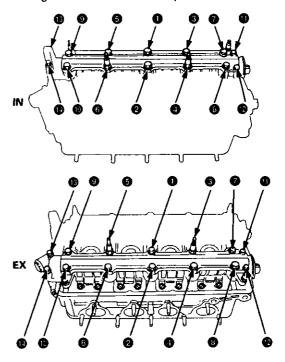
NOTE: The arrows marked on the camshaft holders should point to the timing belt.



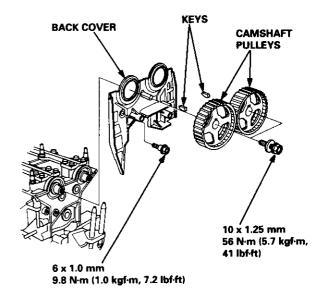
 Temporarily tighten the bolts of the camshaft holders and the camshaft holder plates.



9. Tighten the bolts in the sequence shown below.



- ① ①: 8 x 1.25 mm 27 N·m (2.8 kgf·m, 20 lbf·ft)
- **①** − **②**: 6 x 1.0 mm 9.8 N·m (1.0 kgf·m, 7.2 lbf·ft)
- 10. Install the back cover and camshaft pulleys.

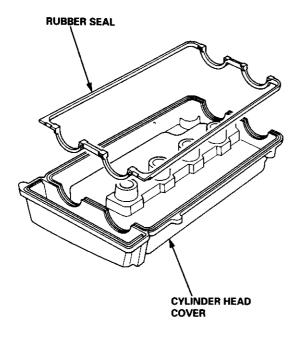


Installation (cont'd)

- 11. Install the timing belt (see page 6-51).
- 12. Adjust the valve clearance (see page 6-44).
- 13. Install the rubber seal in the groove of the cylinder head cover. Seat the seal in the recesses for the camshaft first, then work it into the groove around the outside edges.

NOTE:

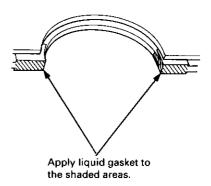
- Before installing the rubber seal, thoroughly clean the seal and the groove.
- When installing, make sure the seal is seated securely in the corners of the recesses with no gap.



 Apply liquid gasket to the rubber seal at the eight corners of the recesses.

NOTE:

- Use liquid gasket, Part No. 08718 0001.
- Check that the mating surfaces are clean and dry before applying liquid gasket.
- Do not install the parts if 20 minutes or more have elapsed since applying liquid gasket.
 Instead, reapply liquid gasket after removing old residue.
- After assembly, wait at least 20 minutes before filling the engine with oil.



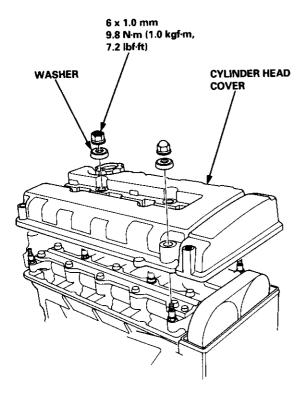


 When installing the cylinder head cover, hold the rubber seal in the groove by placing your fingers on the camshaft contacting surfaces (top of the semicircles).

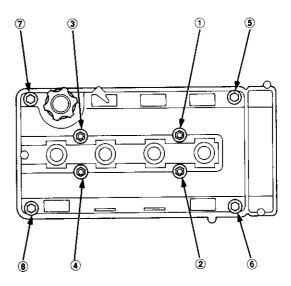
Once the cylinder head cover is on the cylinder head, slide the cover slightly back and forth to seat the rubber seal.

NOTE:

- Before installing the cylinder head cover, clean the cylinder head contacting surfaces using a shop towel.
- Do not touch the parts where liquid gasket was applied.



16. Tighten the nuts in 2 or 3 steps. In the final step, tighten all nuts, in sequence, to 9.8 N·m (1.0 kgf·m, 7.2 lbf·ft).



17. After installing, check that all tubes, hoses and connectors are installed correctly.

Engine Block

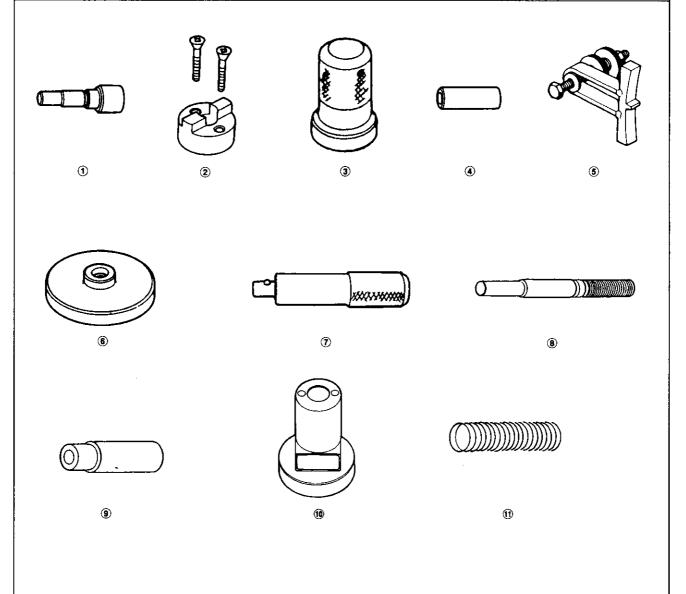
| Special Tools | 7-2 |
|--------------------------|------|
| Illustrated Index | 7-3 |
| Flywheel and Drive Plate | |
| Replacement | 7-7 |
| Main Bearings | |
| Clearance | 7-8 |
| Selection | 7-8 |
| Connecting Rod Bearings | |
| Clearance | 7-9 |
| Selection | 7-9 |
| Crankshaft | |
| Removal | 7-10 |
| End Play | 7-12 |
| Inspection | 7-12 |
| Installation | 7-22 |
| Cylinder Block | |
| Inspection | 7-13 |
| Bore Honing | 7-14 |
| Pistons | |
| Inspection | 7-15 |
| Installation | 7-16 |

| Piston Rings | |
|-------------------------------|--------------|
| Replacement | 7-16 |
| End Gap | 7-17 |
| Ring-To-Groove Clearance | 7-1 7 |
| Alignment | 7-18 |
| Piston Pins | |
| Removal | 7-18 |
| Installation (B18B1 engine) | 7-19 |
| Installation (B18C1 engine) | 7-20 |
| Inspection | 7-20 |
| Connecting Rods | |
| End Play | 7-21 |
| Selection | 7-22 |
| Oil Seal | |
| Installation | 7-25 |
| Installation | |
| (engine removal not required) | 7-26 |
| | |



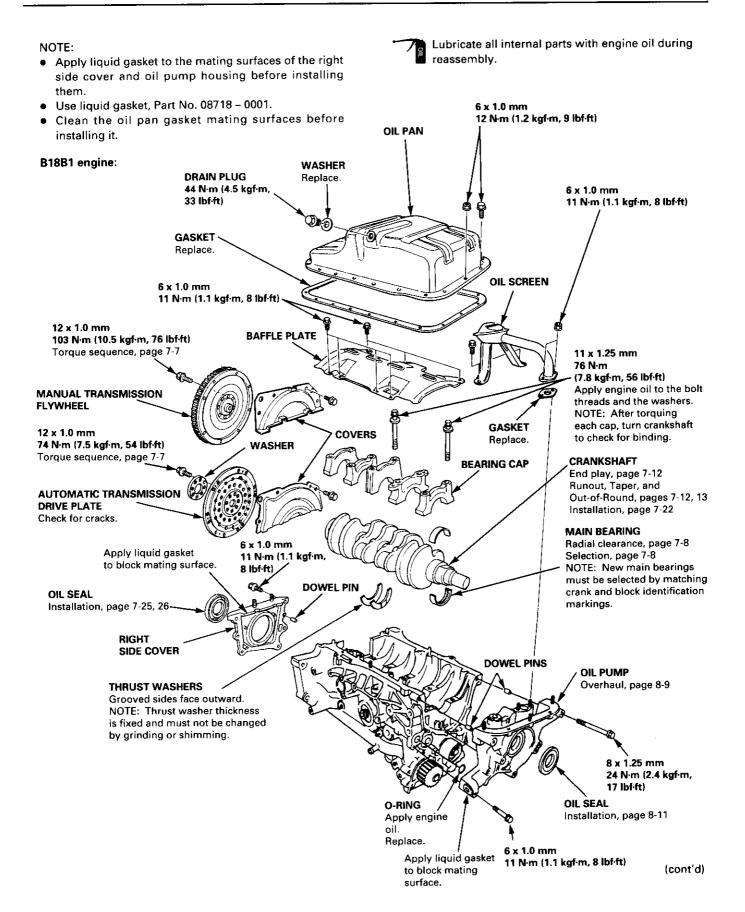
Special Tools

| Ref. No. | Tool Number | Description | Qty | Page Reference |
|----------|--------------------|-------------------------|-----|----------------|
| ① | 07GAF - PF60300 | Piston Pin Base Insert | 1 | 7-18, 19, 20 |
| 2 | 07HAF - PL20102 | Piston Base Head | 1 | 7-18, 19, 20 |
| ② ③ | 07LAD - PR4010A | Seal Driver | 1 | 7-26 |
| 4 | 07LAF - PR30100 | Pilot Collar | 1 | 7-19, 20 |
| ⑤ | 07LAB - PV00100 or | Ring Gear Holder | 1 | 7-7 |
| | 07924 - PD20003 or | _ | | |
| | 07924 - PD20002 | | | |
| 6 | 07948 - SB00101 | Driver Attachment | 1 | 7-25, 26 |
| ⑦ | 07749 – 0010000 | Driver | 1 | 7-25, 26 |
| 8 | 07973 - PE00310 | Piston Pin Driver Shaft | 1 | 7-19, 20 |
| 9 10 | 07973 - PE00320 | Piston Pin Driver Head | 1 | 7-19, 20 |
| 10 | 07973 – 6570500 | Piston Base | 1 | 7-18, 19, 20 |
| 10 | 07973 – 6570600 | Piston Base Spring | 1 | 7-18 |



Illustrated Index





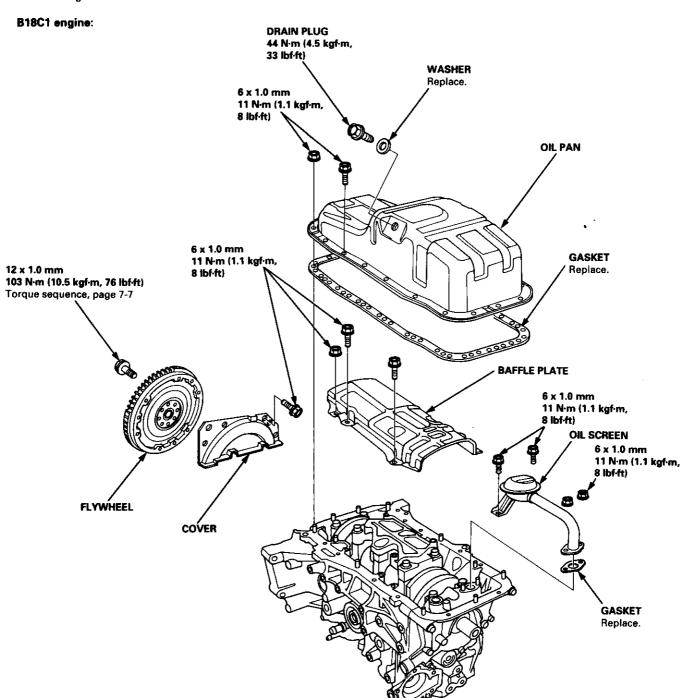
Illustrated Index

(cont'd)

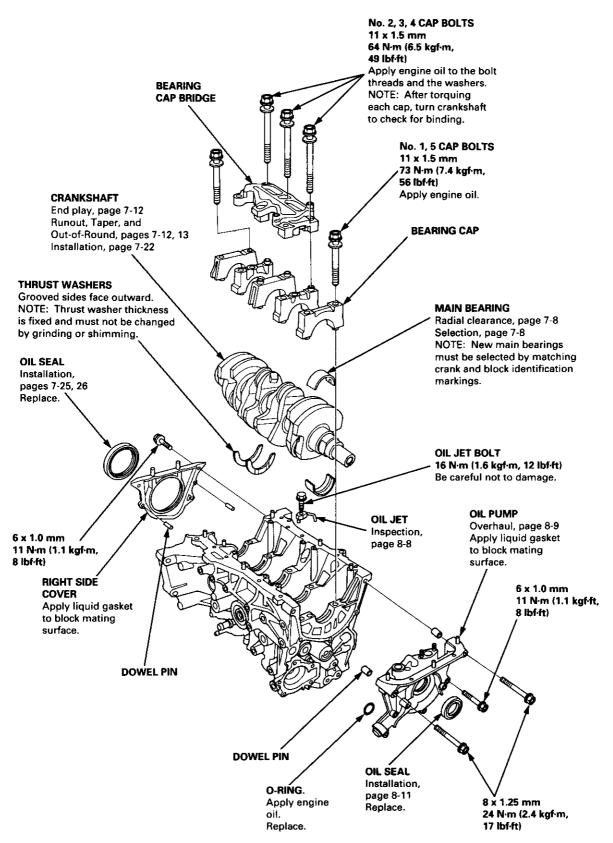
NOTE:

- Apply liquid gasket to the mating surfaces of the right side cover and oil pump housing before installing them.
- Use liquid gasket, Part No. 08718 0001.
- Clean the oil pan gasket mating surfaces before installing it.

Lubricate all internal parts with engine oil during reassembly.





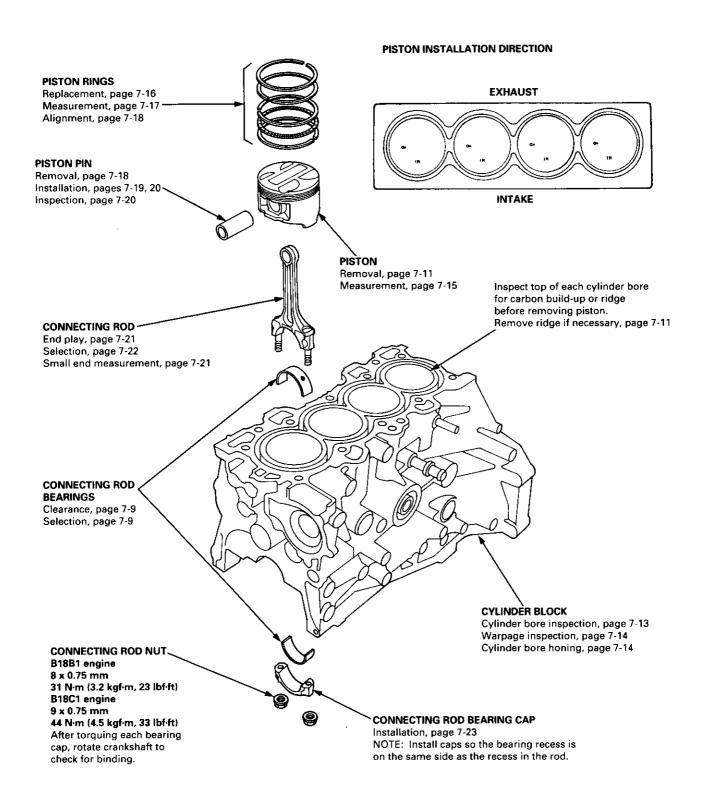


Illustrated Index

(cont'd)

NOTE: New rod bearings must be selected by matching connecting rod and crankshaft identification markings (see pages 7-8, 9)

Lubricate all internal parts with engine oil during reassembly.



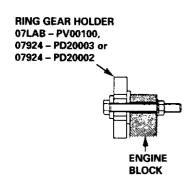
Flywheel and Drive Plate



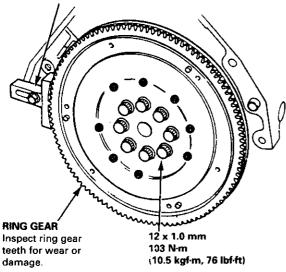
Replacement ·

Manual Transmission:

Remove the eight flywheel bolts, then separate the flywheel from the crankshaft flange. After installation, tighten the bolts in the sequence shown.

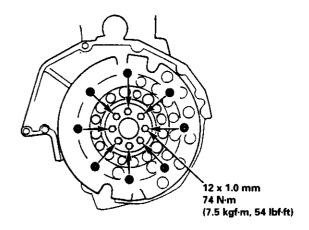


07LAB - PV00100, 07924 - PD20003 or 07924 - PD20002



Automatic Transmission:

Remove the eight drive plate bolts, then separate the drive plate from the crankshaft flange. After installation, tighten the bolts in the sequence shown.



Main Bearings

Clearance

- To check main bearing-to-journal oil clearance, remove the main caps and bearing halves.
- 2. Clean each main journal and bearing half with a clean shop towel.
- 3. Place one strip of plastigage across each main jour-

NOTE: If the engine is still in the car when you bolt the main cap down to check clearance, the weight of the crankshaft and flywheel will flatten the plastigage further than just the torque on the cap bolt, and give you an incorrect reading. For an accurate reading, support the crank with a jack under the counterweights and check only one bearing at a time.

4. Reinstall the bearing caps and cap bridge (B18C1 engine only) then torque the bolts.

B18B1 engine: 77 N·m (7.8 kgf·m, 56 lbf·ft) B18C1 engine:

No. 1, 5 cap bolts 73 N·m (7.4 kgf·m, 56 lbf·ft) No. 2, 3, 4 cap bolts 64 N·m (6.5 kgf·m, 49 lbf·ft)

NOTE: Do not rotate the crankshaft during inspection.

 Remove the cap bridge (B18C1 engine only), caps and bearings again, and measure the widest part of the plastigage.

Main Bearing-to-Journal Oil Clearance:

Standard (New):

No. 1, 2, 4, 5: 0.024 - 0.042 mm

(0.0009 - 0.0017 in)

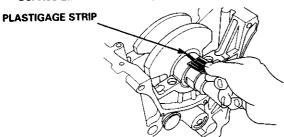
Service Limit: 0.050 mm (0.0020 in)

No. 3:

0.030 - 0.048 mm

(0.0012 - 0.0019 in)

Service Limit: 0.060 mm (0.0024 in)



6. If the plastigage measures too wide or too narrow, (remove the engine if it's still in the car), remove the crankshaft, and remove the upper half of the bearing. Install a new, complete bearing with the same color code (select the color as shown in the right column), and recheck the clearance.

CAUTION: Do not file, shim, or scrape the bearings or the caps to adjust clearance.

7. If the plastigage shows the clearance is still incorrect, try the next larger or smaller bearing (the color listed above or below that one), and check again.

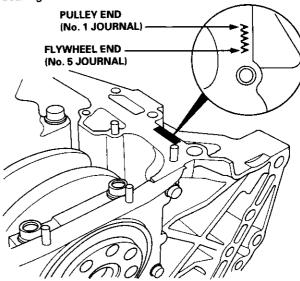
NOTE: If the proper clearance cannot be obtained by using the appropriate larger or smaller bearings, replace the crankshaft and start over.

Selection

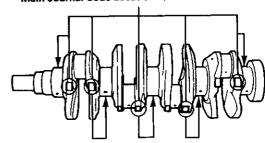
CAUTION: If the codes are indecipherable because of an accumulation of dirt and dust, do not scrub them with a wire brush or scraper. Clean them only with solvent or detergent.

Crankshaft Bore Code Location

Letters have been stamped on the end of the block as a code for the size of each of the 5 main journal bores. Use them, and the numbers or bars stamped on the crank (codes for main journal size), to choose the correct bearings.

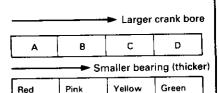


Main Journal Code Locations (Numbers or Bars)



Bearing Identification

Color code is on the edge of the bearing.



Green

Brown

Yellow

Brown

Black

Blue

| | 1 or 1 | ı |
|---|---------|---|
| | 2 or ıl | |
| | 3 or nl | |
| • | 4 oruil | ļ |

Green Iller ing

Pink

Yellow

Smaller Smaller main bearing journal (thicker)

Connecting Rod Bearings

Clearance

- Remove the connecting rod cap and bearing half.
- Clean the crankshaft rod journal and bearing half with a clean shop towel.
- 3. Place the plastigage across the rod journal.
- Reinstall the bearing half and cap, and torque the nuts.

B18B1 engine: 31 N·m (3.2 kgf·m, 23 lbf·ft) B18C1 engine: 44 N·m (4.5 kgf·m, 33 lbf·ft)

NOTE: Do not rotate the crankshaft during inspection.

Connecting Rod Bearing-to-Journal Oil Clearance:

B18B1 engine:

Standard (New): 0.020 - 0.038 mm

(0.0008 - 0.0015 in)

Service Limit: 0.050 mm (0.0020 in)

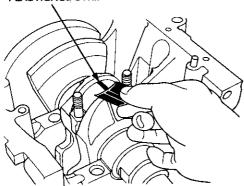
B18C1 engine:

Standard (New): 0.032 - 0.050 mm

(0.0013 - 0.0020 in)

Service Limit: 0.060 mm (0.0024 in)

PLASTIGAGE STRIP



 If the plastigage measures too wide or too narrow, remove the upper half of the bearing, install a new, complete bearing with the same color code (select the color as shown in the right column), and recheck the clearance.

CAUTION: Do not file, shim, or scrape the bearing or the caps to adjust clearance.

 If the plastigage shows the clearance is still incorrect, try the next larger or smaller bearing (the color listed above or below that one), and check clearance again.

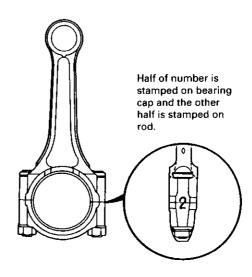
NOTE: If the proper clearance cannot be obtained by using the appropriate larger or smaller bearings, replace the crankshaft and start over.

Selection

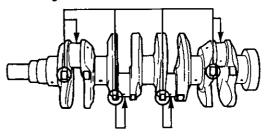
CAUTION: If the codes are indecipherable because of an accumulation of dirt and dust, do not scrub them with a wire brush or scraper. Clean them only with solvent or detergent.

Connecting Rod Code Location

A number has been stamped on the side of each connecting rod as a code for the size of the big end. Use it, and the letters stamped on the crank (codes for rod journal size), to choose the correct bearings.

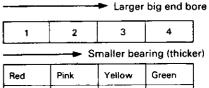


Connecting Rod Journal Code Locations (Letters or Bars)



Bearing Identification

Color code is on the edge of the bearing.





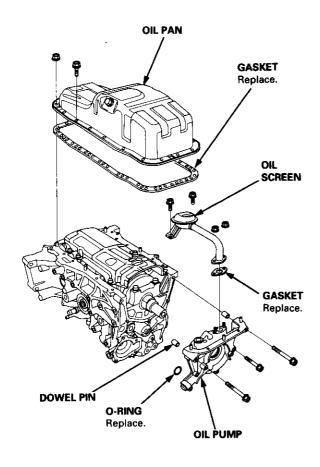
| Red | Pink | Yellow | Green |
|--------|--------|--------|-------|
| Pink | Yellow | Green | Brown |
| Yellow | Green | Brown | Black |
| Green | Brown | Black | Blue |

Smaller Smaller rod bearing journal (thicker)

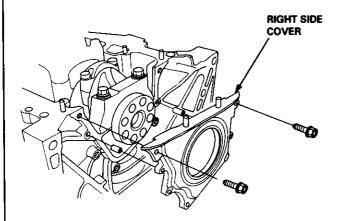
Removal

NOTE: End play for the connecting rods and crankshaft should be inspected before removing the crankshaft.

Remove the oil pan, oil screen and the oil pump.

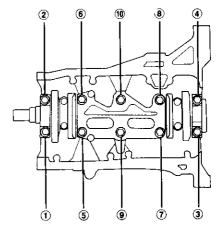


- 2. Remove the baffle plate.
- 3. Turn the crankshaft so No. 2 and 3 crankpins are at the bottom.
- 4. Remove the right side cover.

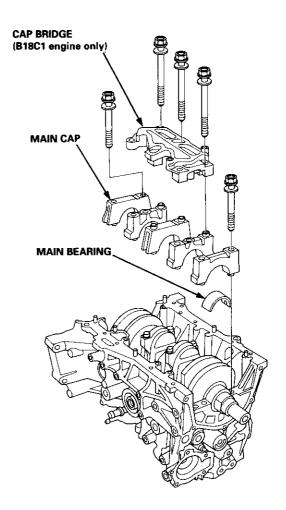


5. Remove the bearing cap bolts.

CAUTION: To prevent warpage, unscrew the bolts in sequence 1/3 turn at a time; repeat the sequence until all bolts are loosened.

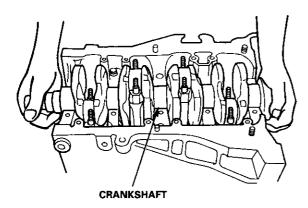


Remove the cap bridge (B18C1 engine only) and main caps/bearings. Keep all caps/bearings in order.





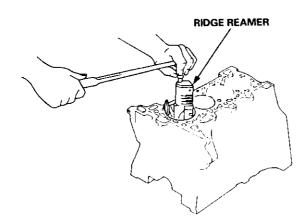
- Remove the rod caps/bearings. Keep all caps/bearings in order.
- 8. Lift the crankshaft out of the engine, being careful not to damage journals.



- 9. Remove the upper bearing halves from connecting rods and set them aside with their respective caps.
- Reinstall main caps and bearings on the engine in proper order.
- If you can feel a ridge of metal or hard carbon around the top of each cylinder, remove it with a ridge reamer.

Follow the reamer manufacturer's instructions.

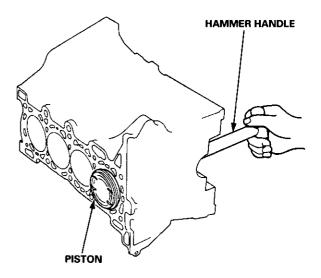
CAUTION: If the ridge is not removed, it may damage the pistons as they are pushed out.



12. Use the wooden handle of a hammer to drive the pistons out.

CAUTION:

- Take care not to damage the contact surface of the metal gasket.
- When removing the piston/connecting rod, take care not to hit the oil jet (B18C1 engine only).
- If the oil jet nozzle is damaged or bent, replace the oil jet assembly (B18C1 engine only, page 8-8).



- Reinstall the rod bearings and caps after removing each piston/connecting rod assembly.
- 14. Mark each piston/connecting rod assembly with its cylinder number to avoid mixup on reassembly.

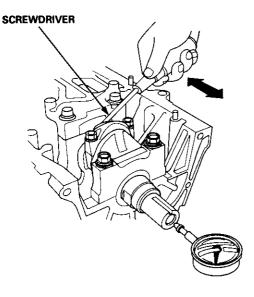
NOTE: The existing number on the connecting rod does not indicate its position in the engine, it indicates the rod bore size.

Crankshaft

End Play

NOTE: End play should be inspected before removing crankshaft.

Push the crank firmly away from the dial indicator, and zero the dial against the end of the crank. Then pull the crank firmly back toward the indicator; dial reading should not exceed service limit.



Crankshaft End Play:

Standard (New): 0.10 - 0.35 mm

(0.04 - 0.014 in)

Service Limit: 0.45 mm (0.018 in)

 If end play is excessive, inspect the thrust washers and thrust surface on the crankshaft. Replace parts as necessary.

NOTE:

- Thrust washer thickness is fixed and must not be changed either by grinding or shimming.
- Thrust washers are installed with grooved sides facing outward.

Inspection

NOTE:

- Clean the crankshaft oil passages with pipe cleaners or a suitable brush.
- · Check the keyway and threads.

Alignment

- Measure runout on all main journals to make sure the crank is not bent.
- The difference between measurements on each journal must not be more than the service limit.

Crankshaft Total Indicated Runout:

B18B1 engine:

Standard (New): 0.03 mm (0.001 in) max.

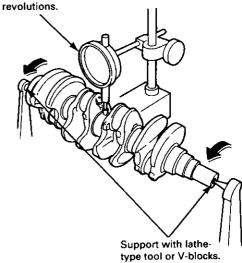
Service Limit: 0.05 mm (0.002 in)

B18C1 engine:

Standard (New): 0.020 mm (0.0008 in) max. Service Limits: 0.030 mm (0.0012 in)

DIAL INDICATOR

Rotate two complete



Cylinder Block



Out-of-Round and Taper

- Measure out-of-round at the middle of each rod and main journal in two places.
- The difference between measurements on each journal must not be more than the service limit.

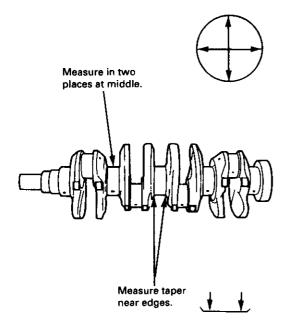
Journal Out-of-Round:

B18B1 engine:

Standard (New): 0.005 mm (0.0002 in) max. Service Limit: 0.010 mm (0.0004 in)

B18C1 engine:

Standard (New): 0.004 mm (0.00016 in) max. Service Limit: 0.006 mm (0.00024 in)





- Measure taper at the edges of each rod and main journal.
- The difference between measurements on each journal must not be more than the service limit.

Journal Taper: B18B1 engine:

Standard (New): 0.005 mm (0.0002 in) max. Service Limit: 0.010 mm (0.0004 in)

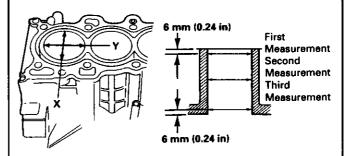
B18C1 engine:

Standard (New): 0.005 mm (0.0002 in) max.

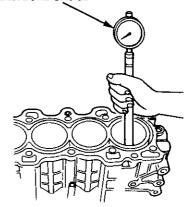
Service Limit: ——

Inspection -

 Measure wear and taper in direction X and Y at three levels in each cylinder as shown.



CYLINDER BORE GAUGE



Cylinder Bore Size:

Standard (New): 81.00 - 81.02 mm

(3.189 - 3.190 in)

Service Limit: 81.07 (3.192 in)

Oversize:

0.25: 81.25 - 81.27 mm (3.199 - 3.200 in)

Bore Taper:

Service Limit: (Difference between first and third

measurement) 0.05 mm (0.002 in)

- If measurements in any cylinder are beyond Oversize Bore Service Limit, replace the block.
- If the block is to be rebored, refer to Piston Clearance Inspection (see page 7-15) after reboring.

NOTE: Scored or scratched cylinder bores must be honed.

Reboring Limit: 0.25 mm (0.01 in)

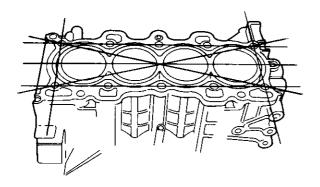
(cont'd)

Cylinder Block

Inspection (cont'd)

 Check the top of the block for warpage.
 Measure along the edges and across the center as shown.

SURFACES TO BE MEASURED



Engine Block Warpage:

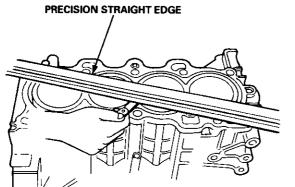
B18B1 engine:

Standard (New): 0.07 mm (0.003 in) max.

Service Limit: 0.10 mm (0.004 in)

B18C1 engine:

Standard (New): 0.05 mm (0.002 in) max. Service Limit: 0.08 mm (0.003 in)

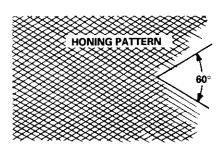


Bore Honing

- Measure cylinder bores as shown on page 7-13.
 If the block is to be reused, hone the cylinders and remeasure the bores.
- 2. Hone cylinder bores with honing oil and a fine (400 grit) stone in a 60 degree cross-hatch pattern.

NOTE:

- Use only a rigid hone with 400 grit or finer stone such as Sunnen, Ammco, or equivalent.
- Do not use stones that are worn or broken.

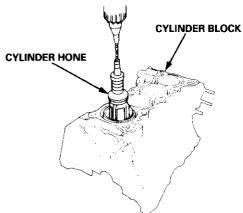


 When honing is complete, thoroughly clean the cylinder block of all metal particles. Wash the cylinder bores with hot soapy water, then dry and oil immediately to prevent rusting.

NOTE: Never use solvent, it will only redistribute the grit on the cylinder walls.

 If scoring or scratches are still present in cylinder bores after honing to the service limit, rebore the engine block.

NOTE: Some light vertical scoring and scratching is acceptable if it is not deep enough to catch your fingernail and does not run the full length of the bore.



NOTE:

- After honing, clean the cylinder thoroughly with soapy water.
- Only scored or scratched cylinder bores must be honed.

Pistons

Inspection

1. Check the piston for distortion or cracks.

NOTE: If the cylinder is bored, an oversized piston must be used.

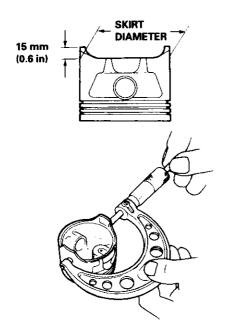
2. Measure the piston diameter at a point 15 mm (0.6 in) from the bottom of the skirt.

Piston Diameter:

Standard (New): 80.98 - 80.99 mm

(3.188 - 3.189 in)

Service Limit: 80.97 mm (3.188 in)

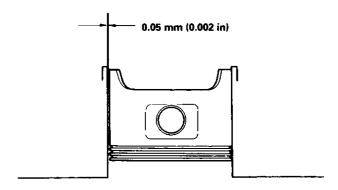


3. Calculate the difference between cylinder bore diameter on (see page 7-13) and piston diameter.

Piston-to-Cylinder Clearance: Standard (New): 0.010 - 0.040 mm

(0.0004 - 0.0016 in)

Service Limit: 0.05 mm (0.002 in)



If the clearance is near or exceeds the service limit, inspect the piston and cylinder block for excessive wear.

Oversize Piston Diameter: 0.25; 81.23 – 81.24 mm (3.1980 – 3.1984 in)

Piston

Installation

Before installing the piston, apply a coat of engine oil to the ring grooves and cylinder bores.

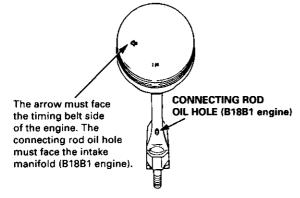
- 1. If the crankshaft is already installed:
 - Remove the connecting rod caps and slip short sections of rubber hose over the threaded ends of the connecting rod bolts.
 - Install the ring compressor, check that the bearing is securely in place, then position the piston in the cylinder and tap it in using the wooden handle of a hammer.

Stop after the ring compressor pops free and check the connecting rod-to-crank journal alignment before tapping piston into place.

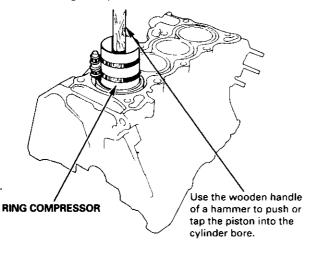
 Install the rod caps with bearings, then torque the nuts.

B18B1 engine: 31 N·m (3.2 kgf·m, 23 lbf·ft) B18C1 engine: 44 N·m (4.5 kgf·m, 33 lbf·ft)

- 2. If the crankshaft is not installed:
 - Remove the rod caps and bearings, install the ring compressor, then position the piston in the cylinder and tap it in using the wooden handle of a hammer.
 - · Position all pistons at top dead center.



NOTE: Maintain downward force on the ring compressor to prevent rings from expanding before entering the cylinder bore.



Piston Rings

Replacement

- 1. Using a ring expander, remove old piston rings.
- 2. Clean all ring grooves thoroughly.

NOTE:

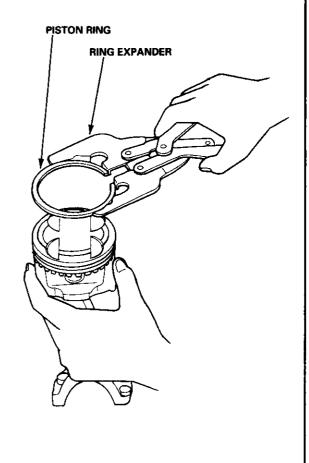
- Use a squared-off broken ring or ring groove cleaner with blade to fit piston grooves.
- Top ring groove is 1.0 mm (0.039 in) wide, second groove is 1.2 mm (0.047 in) wide, and oil ring groove is 2.8 mm (0.110 in) wide.
- File down blade if necessary.

CAUTION: Do not use a wire brush to clean the ring lands, or cut ring lands deeper with cleaning tool.

NOTE: If the piston is to be separated from the connecting rod, do not install new rings yet.

 Install new rings in the proper sequence and position (see page 7-18).

NOTE: Do not use old piston rings.





End Gap

- 1. Using a piston, push a new ring into the cylinder bore 15 20 mm (0.6 0.8 in) from the bottom.
- Measure the piston ring end-gap with a feeler gauge:
 - If the gap is too small, check to see if you have the proper rings for your engine.
 - If the gap is too large, recheck the cylinder bore diameter against the wear limits on page 7-13.
 If the bore is over the service limit, the cylinder block must be rebored.

Piston Ring End-Gap:

Top Ring

Standard (New): 0.20 - 0.35 mm

(0.008 – 0.014 in)*1 0.20 – 0.30 mm (0.008 – 0.012 in)*2

Service Limit: 0.60 mm (0.024 in)

Second Ring

Standard (New): 0.40 - 0.55 mm

(0.016 - 0.022 in)

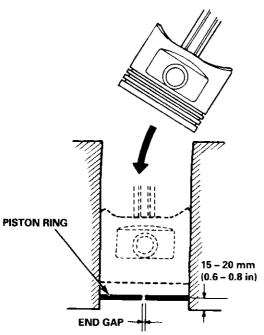
Service Limit: 0.70 mm (0.028 in)

Oil Ring

Standard (New): 0.20 - 0.50 mm

(0.008 - 0.020 in)¹ 0.20 - 0.45 mm (0.008 - 0.018 in)²

Service Limit: 0.70 mm (0.028 in)



- 11: RIKEN manufactured piston ring
- *2: TEIKOKU PISTON RING manufactured piston ring (B18B1 engine only)

Ring-to-Groove Clearance

After installing a new set of rings, measure the ring-to-groove clearances:

Top Ring Clearance:

Standard (New): 0.045 - 0.070 mm

(0.0018 - 0.0028 in)

Service Limit: 0.13 mm (0.005 in)

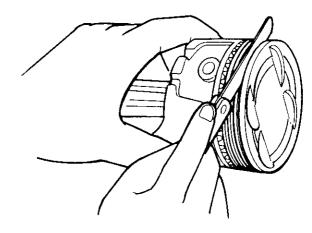
Second Ring Clearance:

Standard (New): 0.040 - 0.065 mm

(0.0015 – 0.0026 in)*1 0.045 – 0.070 mm

(0.0018 - 0.0028 in)*2

Service Limit: 0.13 mm (0.005 in)



- 11: RIKEN manufactured piston ring
- *2: TEIKOKU PISTON RING manufactured piston ring (B18B1 engine only)

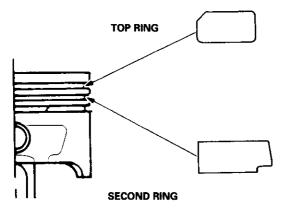
Piston Rings

- Alignment

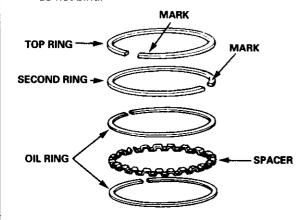
1. Install the rings as shown.

Identify top and second rings by the chamfer on the edge. Make sure they are in their proper grooves on the piston.

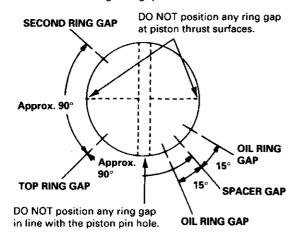
NOTE: The manufacturing marks must be facing upward.



Rotate the rings in their grooves to make sure they do not bind.



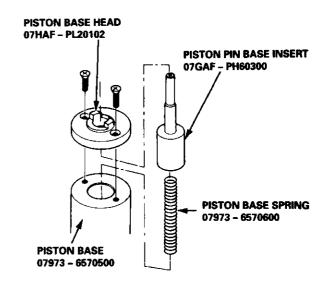
3. Position the ring end gaps as shown:



Piston Pins

Removal

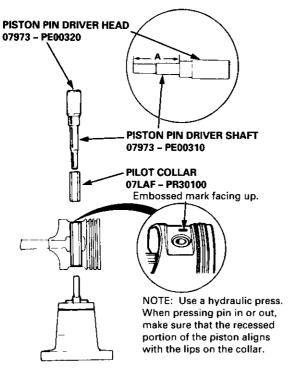
1. Assemble the Piston Pin Tools as shown.





2. Adjust the length A of the piston pin driver.

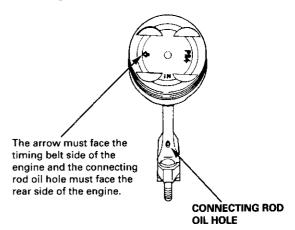
A: B18B1 engine: 49.70 mm (1.957 in) B18C1 engine: 51.70 mm (2.035 in)



Place the piston on the piston base and press the pin out with a hydraulic press.

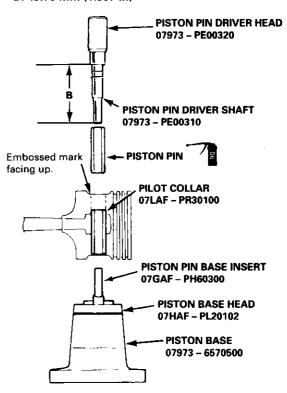
Installation (B18B1 engine)

- 1. Use a hydraulic press for installation.
 - When pressing the pin in or out, be sure to position the recessed flat on the piston against the lugs on the base attachment.



2. Adjust the length B of the piston pin driver.

B: 49.70 mm (1.957 in)

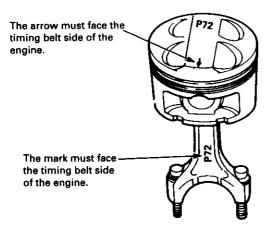


NOTE: Install the assembled piston and rod with the oil hole facing the intake manifold.

Piston Pins

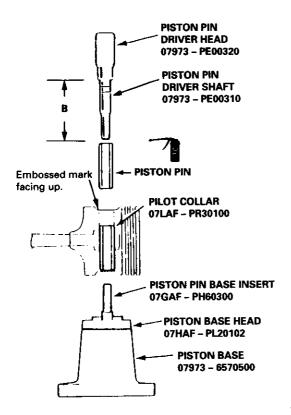
- Installation (B18C1 engine) -

- 1. Use a hydraulic press for installation.
 - When pressing pin in or out, be sure you position the recessed flat on the piston against the lugs on the base attachment.



2. Adjust the length B of piston pin driver.

B: 51.70 mm (2.035 in)



- Inspection

1. Measure the diameter of the piston pin.

Piston Pin Diameter:

Standard (New): 20.994 - 21.000 mm

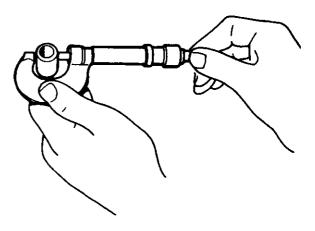
(0.8265 - 0.8268 in)

Oversize:

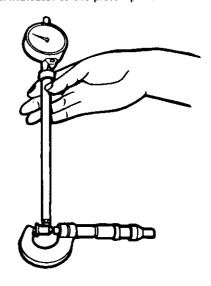
20.997 - 21.003 mm

(0.8267 - 0.8269 in)

NOTE: All replacement piston pins are oversize.



2. Zero the dial indicator to the piston pin diameter.



Connecting Rods

End Play -

the crankshaft.

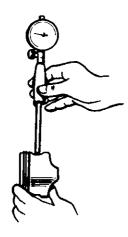


3. Measure the piston pin-to-piston clearance.

NOTE: Check the piston for distortion or cracks.

If the piston pin clearance is greater than 0.022 mm (0.0009 in), remeasure using an oversize piston pin.

Piston Pin-to-Piston Clearance: Standard (New): 0.010 - 0.022 mm (0.0004 - 0.0009 in)



 Check the difference between piston pin diameter and connecting rod small end diameter.

Piston Pin-to-Connecting Rod Interference:

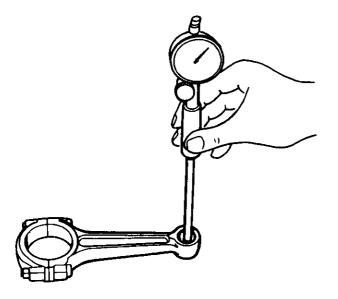
Standard (New):

B18B1 engine: 0.013 - 0.032 mm

(0.0005 - 0.0013 in)

B18C1 engine: 0.017 - 0.036 mm

(0.0007 - 0.0014 in)



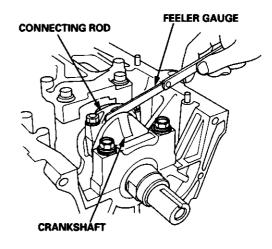
NOTE: End play should be inspected before removing

Connecting Rod End Play:

Standard (New): 0.15 - 0.30 mm

(0.006 - 0.012 in)

Service Limit: 0.40 mm (0.016 in)



- If out-of-tolerance, install a new connecting rod.
- If still out-of-tolerance, replace the crankshaft (see pages 7-10 and 7-22)

Connecting Rods

Selection

Each rod falls into one of four tolerance ranges (from 0 to \pm 0.024 mm (0 to \pm 0.0009 in), in 0.006 mm (0.0002 in) increments) depending on the size of its big end bore. It's then stamped with a number (1, 2, 3, or 4) indicating the range.

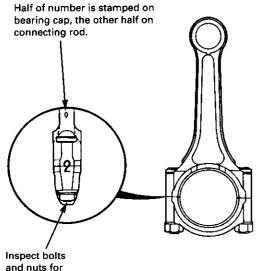
You may find any combination of 1, 2, 3, or 4 in any engine.

Normal Bore Size: 48.0 mm (1.89 in)

NOTE:

- Reference numbers are for big end bore size and do NOT indicate the position of the rod in the engine.
- Inspect connecting rod for cracks and heat damage.

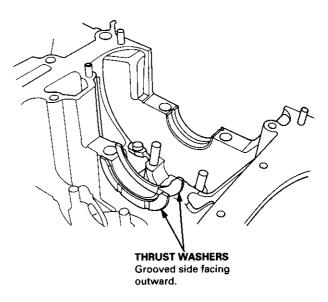
CONNECTING ROD BORE REFERENCE NUMBER



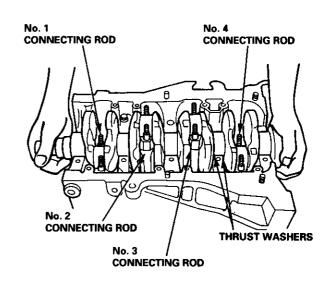
Crankshaft

Installation

- Before installing the crankshaft, apply a coat of engine oil to the main bearings and rod bearings.
- Install the thrust washers in the No. 4 journal of the cylinder block.



- 2. Insert bearing halves in the engine block and connecting rods.
- Hold the crankshaft so rod journals for cylinders No. 2 and No. 3 are straight up.
- 4. Lower the crankshaft into the block, putting the rod journals into connecting rods No. 2 and No. 3. Install the rod caps and nuts finger-tight.



stress cracks.



Rotate the crankshaft clockwise, put journals into connecting rods No. 1 and No. 4, and install the rod caps and nuts finger-tight.

NOTE: Install caps so the bearing recess is on the same side as the recess in the rod.

6. Check rod bearing clearance with plastigage (see page 7-9), then tighten the capnuts in 2 steps.

1st step: 20 N·m (2.0 kgf·m, 14 lbf·ft)

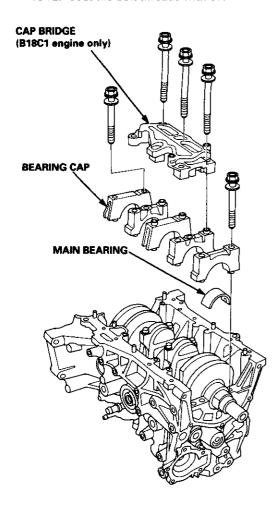
2nd step:

B18B1 engine: 31 N·m (3.2 kgf·m, 23 lbf·ft) B18C1 engine: 44 N·m (4.5 kgf·m, 33 lbf·ft)

NOTE: Reference numbers on connecting rod are for big-end bore tolerance and do NOT indicate the position of piston in the engine.

7. Install the main bearings/caps and cap bridge (B18C1 engine only).

NOTE: Coat the bolt threads with oil.



 Check clearance with plastigage (see page 7-8), then tighten bearing cap bolts in 2 steps.

1st step: 29 N·m (3.0 kgf·m, 22 lbf·ft)

2nd step:

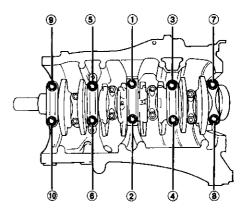
B18B1 engine: 76 N·m (7.8 kgf·m, 56 lbf·ft)

B18C1 engine:

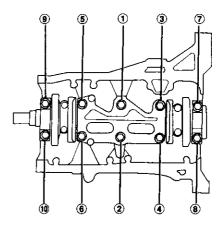
No. 1, 5 cap bolts: 73 N·m (7.4 kgf·m, 56 lbf·ft) No. 2, 3, 4 cap bolts: 64 N·m (6.5 kgf·m, 49 lbf·ft)

BEARING CAP BOLTS TORQUE SEQUENCE

B18B1 engine:



B18C1 engine:



CAUTION: Whenever any crankshaft or connecting rod bearing is replaced, it is necessary after reassembly to run the engine at idling speed until it reaches normal operating temperature, then continue to run it for approximately 15 minutes.

(cont'd)

Crankshaft

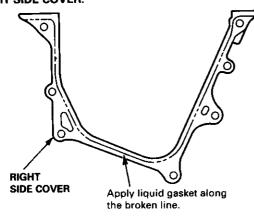
- Installation (cont'd)

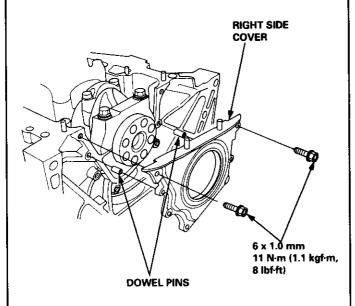
 Apply non-hardening liquid gasket to the block mating surface of the right side cover, and install it on the cylinder block.

NOTE:

- Use liquid gasket, Part No. 08718 0001.
- Check that the mating surfaces are clean and dry before applying liquid gasket.
- Apply liquid gasket as an even bead, centered between the edges of the mating surface.
- To prevent leakage of oil, apply liquid gasket to the inner threads of the bolt holes.
- Do not install the parts if 20 minutes or more have elapsed since applying the liquid gasket.
 Instead, reapply liquid gasket after removing the old residue.
- After assembly, wait at least 20 minutes before filling the engine with oil.

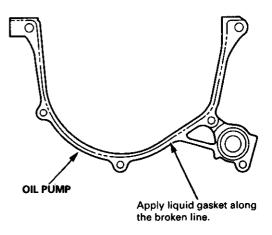
RIGHT SIDE COVER:

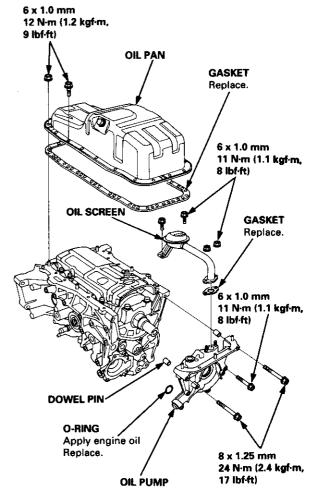




 Apply non-hardening liquid gasket to the block mating surface of the oil pump, and install it on the cylinder block.

OIL PUMP:





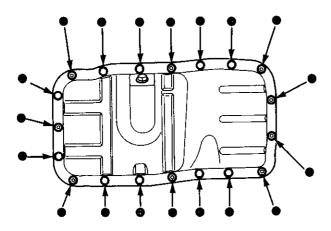
Oil Seal

- 11. Install the oil screen.
- 12. Install the oil pan.

NOTE: Clean the oil pan gasket mating surfaces.

13. Tighten the bolts as shown below.

Torque: 12 N·m (1.2 kgf·m, 9 lbf·ft)



NOTE: Tighten the bolts and nuts in two steps and torque the bolts in a crisscross pattern.

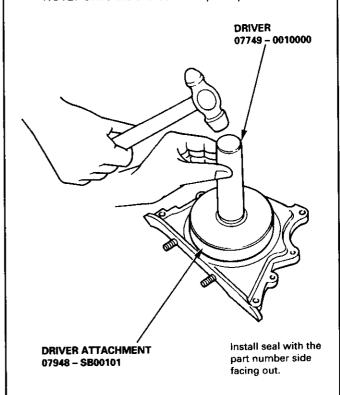
Installation

The seal surface on the block should be dry.

Apply a light coat of oil to the crankshaft and to the lip of the seal.

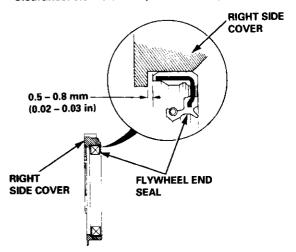
1. Drive in flywheel end seal against right side cover.

NOTE: Drive the end seal in squarely.



Confirm that clearance is equal all the way around with a feeler gauge.

Clearance: 0.5 - 0.8 mm (0.02 - 0.03 in)



NOTE: Refer to right column and 8-10 for installation of the oil pump side oil seal.

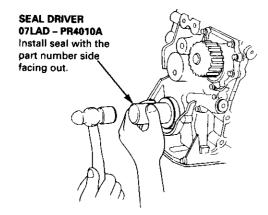
Oil Seal

Installation (engine removal not required)

- The seal surface on the block should be dry.

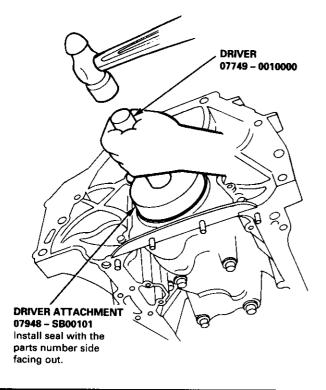
 Apply a light coat of grease to the crankshaft and to the lip of seal.
- Using the special tool, drive in the timing pulleyend seal until the driver bottoms against the oil pump.

When the seal is in place, clean any excess grease off the crankshaft and check that the oil seal lip is not distorted.



2. Using the special tool, drive in the flywheel-end seal until the driver bottoms against block.

NOTE: Align the hole in the driver attachment with the pin on the crankshaft.



Engine Lubrication

| Special Tools8- | 2 |
|------------------------------------|----|
| Illustrated Index8- | 3 |
| Engine Oil | |
| Inspection 8- | 5 |
| Replacement 8- | 5 |
| Oil Filter | |
| Replacement 8- | 6 |
| Oil Pressure | |
| Testing 8- | 8 |
| Oil Jet | |
| Inspection (B18C1 engine only) 8- | 8 |
| Oil Pump | |
| Overhaul 8- | 9 |
| Removal/Inspection/Installation 8- | 10 |



| Ref. No. | Tool Number | Description | Qty | Page Reference |
|----------|---------------|-------------------|-----|----------------|
| ① | 07LAD—PR4010A | Seal Driver | 1 | 8-11 |
| ② | 07912—6110001 | Oil Filter Wrench | | 8-7 |

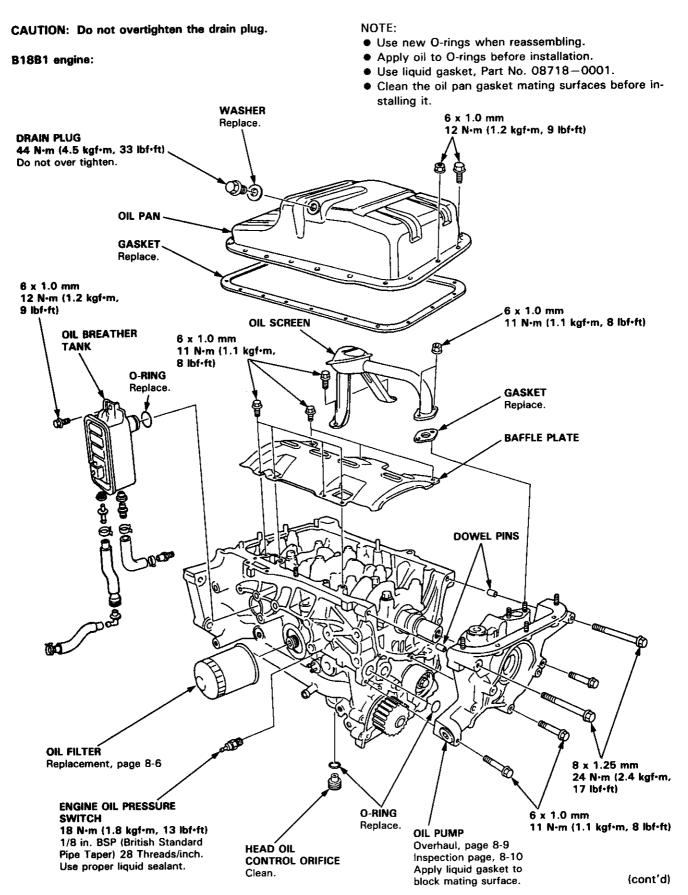




2

Illustrated Index





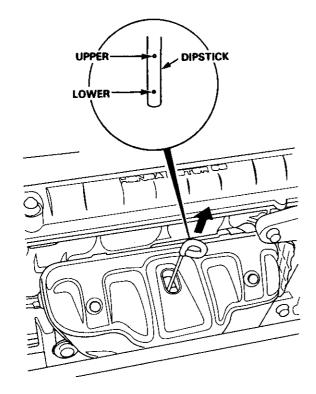
CAUTION: Do not overtighten the drain plug. NOTE: Use new O-rings when reassembling. B18C1 engine: Apply oil to O-rings before installation. Use liquid gasket, Part No. 08718-0001. **DRAIN PLUG** · Clean the oil pan gasket mating surfaces before in-44 N·m (4.5 kgf·m, 33 lbf·ft) stalling it. Do not overtighten. WASHER Replace. OIL PAN 6 x 1.0 mm 12 N·m (1.2 kgf·m, 9 lbf·ft) 6 x 1.0 mm 11 N·m (1.1 kgf·m, 8 lbf·ft) **OIL JET BOLT** 16 N·m (1.6 kgf·m, 13 lbf·ft) GASKET Replace. **OIL JET** Be careful not to damage. Inspection, page 8-8 **BAFFLE PLATE O-RING** Replace. 6 x 1.0 mm OIL BREATHER 11 N-m (1.1 kgf-m, 8 lbf-ft) **TANK OIL SCREEN GASKET** Replace. **DOWEL** ENGINE OIL COOLER, 6 x 1.0 mm **ENGINE OIL FILTER** 11 N·m (1.1 kg-m, Replacement, page 8-6 8 lb-ft) O-RINGS **O-RING** Replace. Replace. OIL COOLER 8 x 1.25 mm **CENTER BOLT HEAD OIL CONTROL** 24 N·m (2.4 kg-m, 17 lb-ft) 74 N·m (7.5 kgf·m, 54 lbf·ft) ENGINE OIL PRESSURE ORIFICE Clean. **SWITCH** OIL PÙMP 18 N·m (1.8 kgf·m, 13 lbf·ft) Overhaul, page 8-9 1/8 in. BSP (British Standard Removal/Inspection/Installation, page 8-10 Pipe Taper) 28 threads/inch. Apply liquid gasket to mating Use proper liquid gasket. surface of the engine block.

Engine Oil

- Inspection

- 1. Check engine oil with the engine off and the car parked on level ground.
- 2. Make certain that the oil level indicated on the dipstick is between the upper and lower marks.
- 3. If the level has dropped close to the lower mark, add oil until it reaches the upper mark.

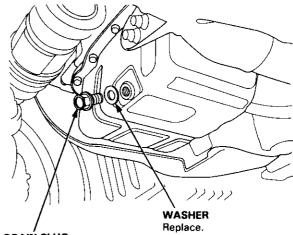
CAUTION: Insert the dipstick carefully to avoid bending it.



Replacement -

CAUTION: Remove the drain plug carefully while the engine is hot; the hot oil may cause scalding.

- 1. Warm up the engine.
- 2. Drain the engine oil.



DRAIN PLUG 44 N·m (4.5 kgf·m, 33 lbf·ft)

3. Reinstall the drain plug with a new washer, and refill with the recommended oil.

CAUTION: Do not overtighten the drain plug.

| Requirement | API Service Grade: Use "Energy Conserving II" SG or SH grade oil. SAE 5W-30 preferred. |
|-------------|--|
| Capacity | B18B1 engine: 3.5 \(\ell \) (3.7 US qt, 3.1 Imp qt) at oil change. 3.8 \(\ell \) (4.0 US qt, 3.3 Imp qt) at change, including filter. 4.6 \(\ell \) (4.9 US qt, 4.0 Imp qt) after engine overhaul. B18C1 engine: 3.7 \(\ell \) (3.9 US qt, 3.3 Imp qt) at oil change. 4.0 \(\ell \) (4.2 US qt, 3.5 Imp qt) at change, including filter. 4.8 \(\ell \) (5.1 US qt, 4.2 Imp qt) after engine overhaul. |
| Change | Every 7,500 miles (12,000 km) or 6 months |

(cont'd)

Engine Oil

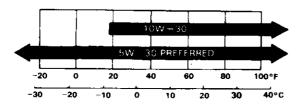
- Replacement (cont'd) -



API CERTIFICATION SEAL

The numbers in the middle of the API Service label tell you the oil's SAE viscosity or weight. Select the oil for your car according to this chart:

Ambient Temperature



An oil with a viscosity of 5W-30 is preferred for improved fuel economy and year-round protection in the car. You may use a 10W-30 oil if the climate in your area is limited to the temperature range shown on the chart.

4. Fill the engine with oil up to the specified level, run the engine for more than three minutes, then check for oil leakage and oil level.

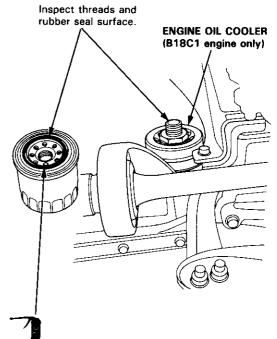
Oil Filter

Replacement -

CAUTION: After the engine has been run, the exhaust pipes will be hot; be careful when working around the exhaust manifold.

- 1. Remove the oil filter with the special oil filter wrench.
- Inspect the threads and rubber seal on the new filter.Wipe off seat on engine block, then apply a light coat of oil to the filter rubber seal.

NOTE: Use only filters with a built-in bypass system.



Apply oil to rubber seal before installing.

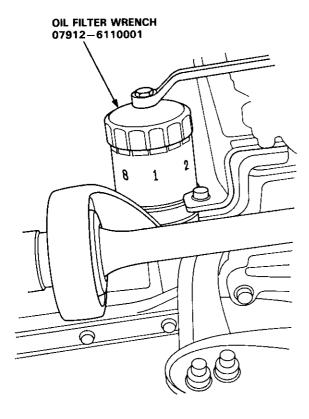


- 3. Install the oil filter by hand.
- After the rubber seal seats, tighten the oil filter clockwise with the special tool.

Tighten: 7/8 turn clockwise.

Tightening torque: 22 N·m (2.2 kgf·m, 16 lbf·ft)

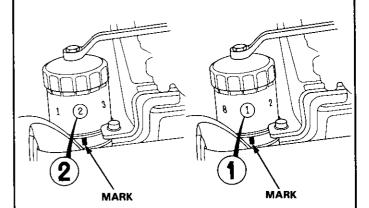
CAUTION: Installation other than the above procedure could result in serious engine damage due to oil leakage.



Eight numbers (1 to 8) are printed on the surface of the filter.

The following explains the procedure for tightening filters using these numbers.

- Make a mark on the cylinder block under the number that shows at the bottom of the filter when the rubber seal is seated.
- 2) Tighten the filter by turning it clockwise seven numbers from the marked point. For example, if a mark is made under the number 2 when the rubber seal is seated, the filter should be tightened until the number 1 comes up to the marked point.



Number when rubber seal is seated.

Number after tightening.

| Number when rubber seal is seated | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 |
|-----------------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Number after tightening | 8 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 |

 After installation, fill the engine with oil up to the specified level, run the engine for more than 3 minutes, then check for oil leakage and oil level.

Oil Pressure

- Testing

If the oil pressure warning light stays on with the engine running, check the engine oil level. If the oil level is correct:

- 1. Connect a tachometer.
- Remove the oil pressure switch and install an oil pressure gauge.
- Start the engine. Shut it off immediately if the gauge registers no oil pressure. Repair the problem before continuing.
- Allow the engine to reach operating temperature (fan comes on at least twice). The pressure should be:

Engine Oil Pressure:

At idle:

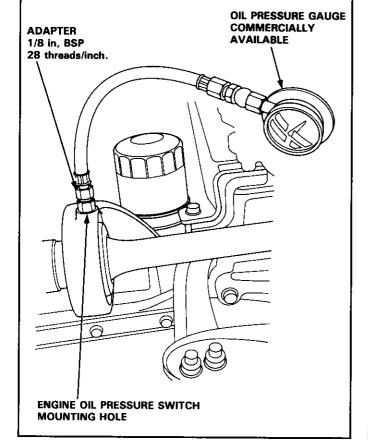
70 kPa (0.7 kgf/cm², 10 psi)

minimum

At 3,000 rpm: 340 kPa (3.5 kgf/cm², 50 psi)

minimum

- If oil pressure is within specifications, replace the engine oil pressure switch and recheck.
- If oil pressure is NOT within specifications, inspect the oil pump (see page 8-10).

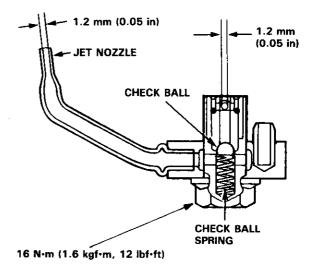


Oil Jet

Inspection (B18C1 engine only)

- Remove the oil jet (see page 8-4) and inspect it as follows.
 - Make sure that a 1.1 mm (0.04 in) diameter drift will go through the nozzle hole (1.2 mm (0.05 in) diameter).
 - Insert the other end of the same 1.1 mm (0.04 in) drill into the oil intake (1.2 mm (0.05 in) diameter).
 - Make sure the check ball moves smoothly and has a stroke of approximately 4.0 mm (0.16 in).
 - Check the oil jet operation with an air nozzle. It should take at least 200 kPa (2.0 kgf/cm², 28 psi) to unseat the check ball.

NOTE: Replace the oil jet assembly if the nozzłe is damaged or bent.



Mounting torque is critical. Be very precise when installing.

Torque: 16 N·m (1.6 kgf·m, 12 lbf·ft)

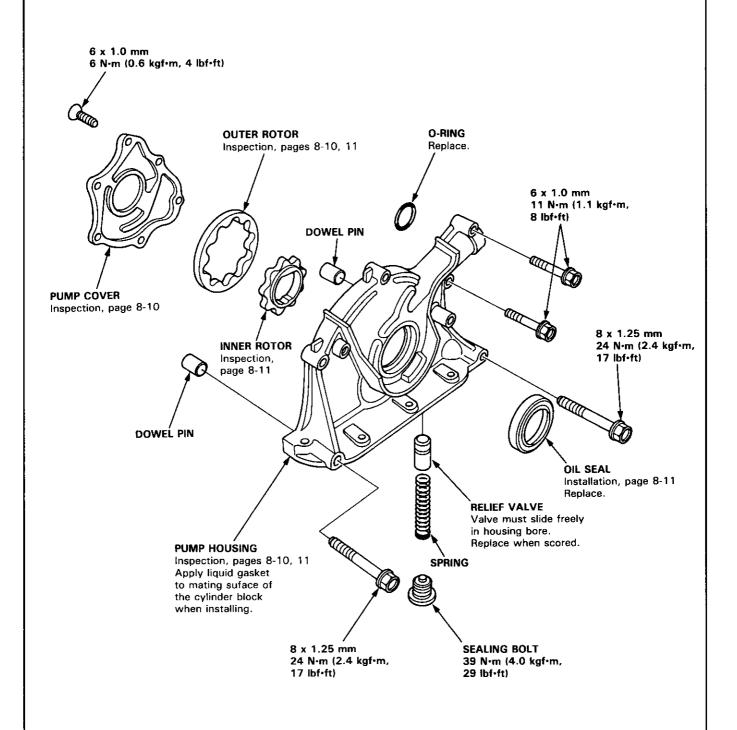
Oil Pump



Overhaul

NOTE:

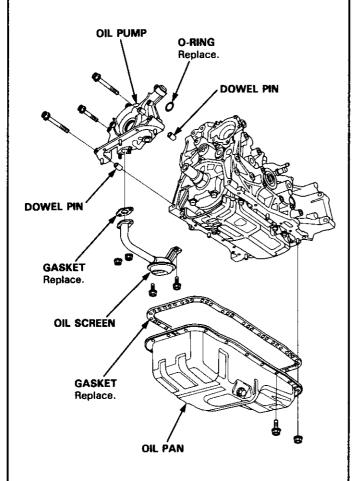
- Use new O-rings when reassembling.
- Apply oil to O-rings before installation.
- Use liquid gasket, Part No. 08718-0001.
- After reassembly, check that the rotors move without binding.



Oil Pump

Removal/Inspection/Installation

- 1. Drain the engine oil.
- Turn the crankshaft and align the white groove on the crankshaft pulley with the pointer on the lower cover.
- 3. Remove the cylinder head cover and middle cover.
- Remove the power steering pump belt, air conditioner belt and the alternator belt.
- Remove the crankshaft pulley and remove the lower cover.
- 6. Remove the timing belt.
- 7. Remove the drive pulley.
- 8. Remove the oil pan and oil screen.
- Remove the oil pump.



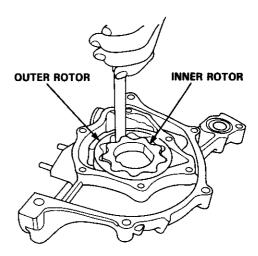
- Remove the screws from the pump housing, then separate the housing and cover.
- Check the inner-to outer rotor radial clearance on the pump rotor.

Inner Rotor-to-Outer Rotor Radial Clearance

Standard (New): 0.04-0.16 mm

(0.002-0.006 in)

Service Limit: 0.20 mm (0.008 in)

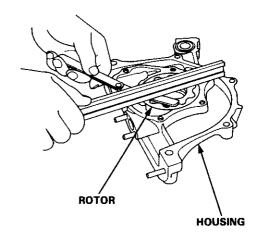


Check the housing-to-rotor axial clearance on the pump rotor.

Housing-to-Rotor Axial Clearance Standard (New): 0.02-0.07 mm

(0.001-0.003 in)

Service Limit: 0.15 mm (0.006 in)





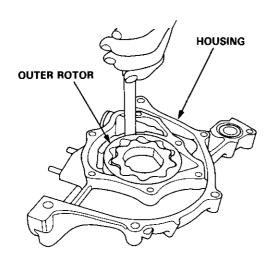
13. Check the housing-to-outer rotor radial clearance.

Housing-to-Outer Rotor Radial Clearance:

Standard (New): 0.10-0.19 mm

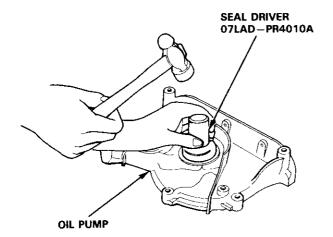
(0.004-0.007 in)

Service Limit: 0.20 mm (0.008 in)



- 14. Inspect both rotors and pump housing for scoring or other damage. Replace parts if necessary.
- 15. Remove the old oil seal from the oil pump.
- 16. Gently tap in the new oil seal until the special tool bottoms on the pump.

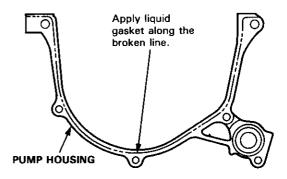
NOTE: The oil seal alone can be replaced without removing the oil pump.



- 17. Reassemble the oil pump, applying thread lock to the pump housing screws.
- 18. Check that the oil pump turns freely.
- 19. Apply a light coat of oil to the seal lip.
- 20. Install the two dowel pins and new 0-ring on the oil pump.
- 21. Apply liquid gasket to the cylinder block mating surface of the oil pump.

NOTE:

- Use liquid gasket, Part No. 08718-0001.
- Check that the mating surfaces are clean and dry before applying liquid gasket.
- Apply liquid gasket evenly, in a narrow bead centered on the mating surface.
- To prevent leakage of oil, apply liquid gasket to the inner threads of the bolt holes.



- Do not install the parts if 20 minutes or more have elapsed since applying liquid gasket. Instead, reapply liquid gasket after removing the old residue.
- After assembly, wait at least 20 minutes before filling the engine with oil.

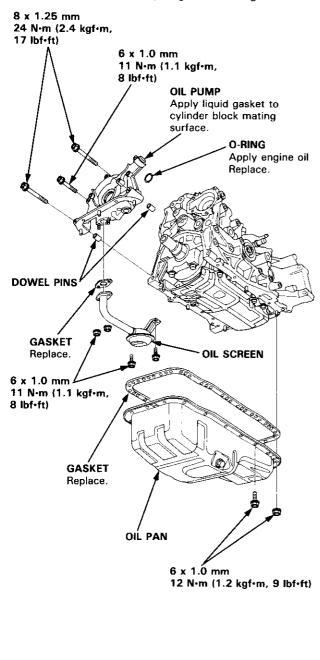
(cont'd)

Oil Pump

Removal/Inspection/Installation (cont'd)

- 22. Install the oil pump on the cylinder block.
 - Apply grease to the lip of the oil pump seal.
 Then, install the oil pump onto the crankshaft.
 When the pump is in place, clean any excess grease off the crankshaft and check that the oil seal lip is not distorted.
- 23. Install the oil screen.
- 24. Install the oil pan.

NOTE: Clean the oil pan gasket mating surfaces.



Intake Manifold/Exhaust System

| Intake Manifold | |
|--------------------------|-----|
| Replacement | 9-2 |
| Exhaust Manifold | |
| Replacement | 9-4 |
| Exhaust Pipe and Muffler | |
| Renlacement | 9-5 |



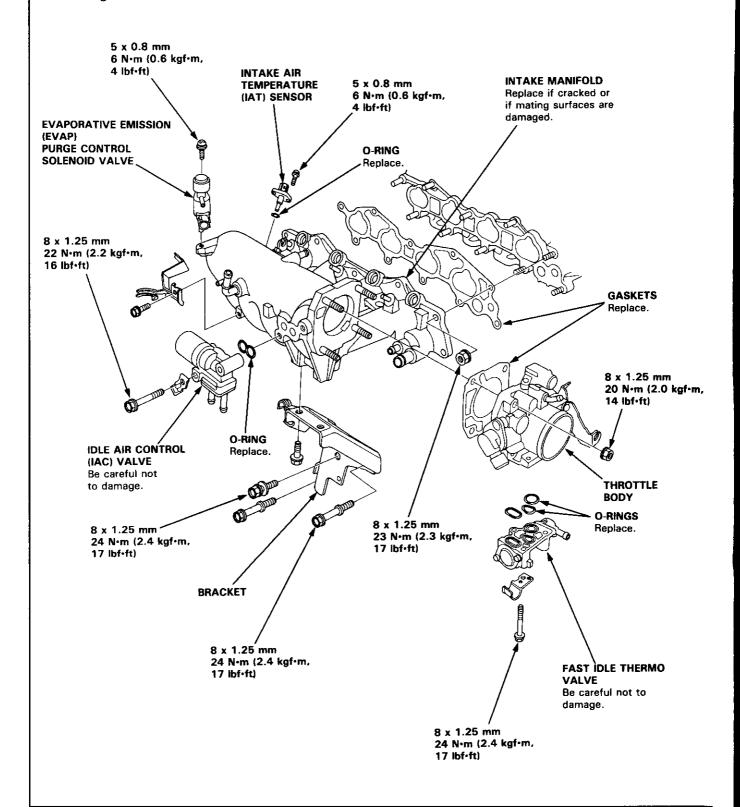
Intake Manifold

- Replacement -

NOTE: Use new O-rings and gaskets when reassembling.

CAUTION: Check for folds or scratches on the surface of the gasket. Replace with a new gasket if damaged.

B18B1 engine:

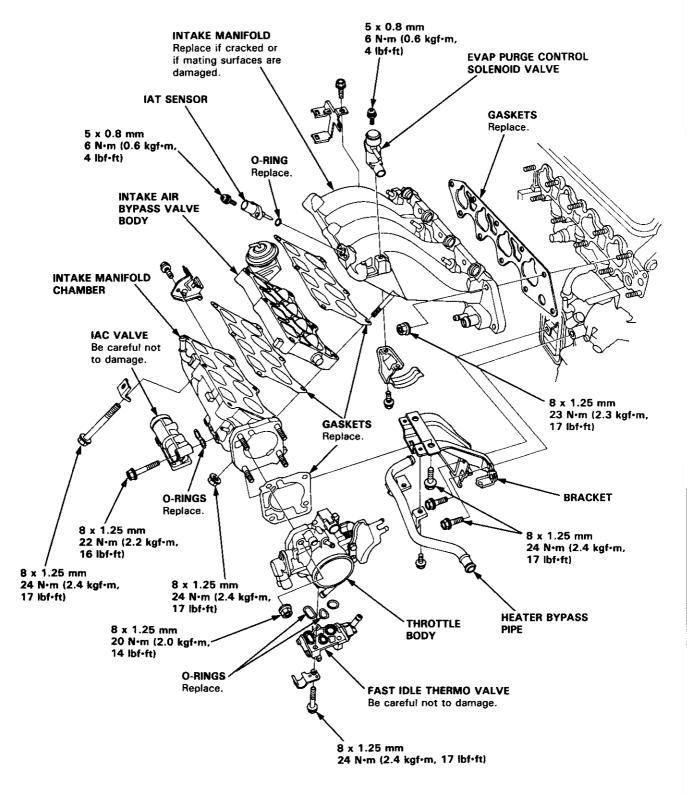




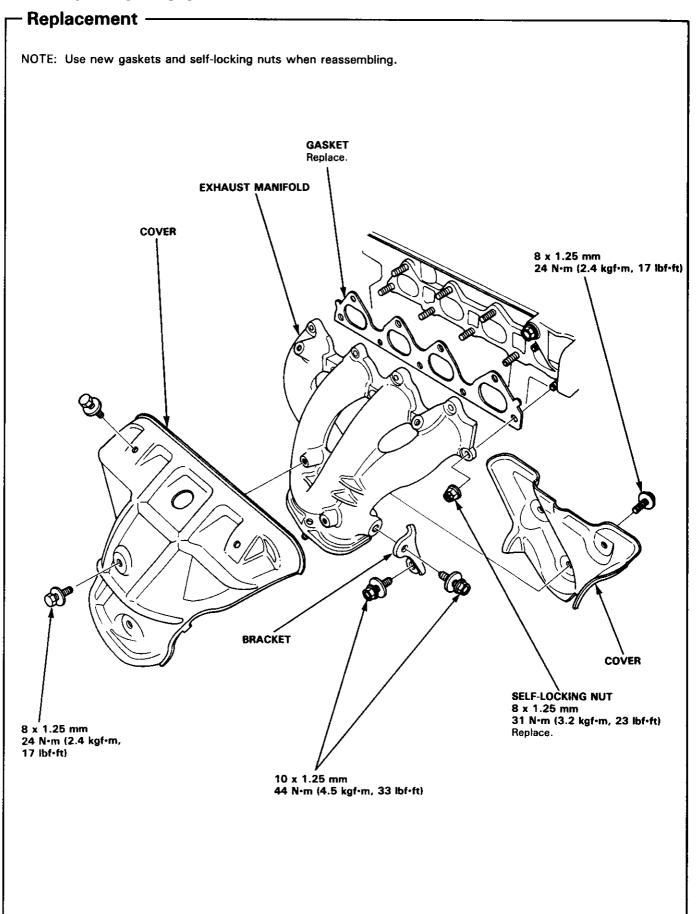
NOTE: Use new O-rings and gaskets when reassembling.

CAUTION: Check for folds or scratches on the surface of the gasket. Replace with a new gasket if damaged.

B18C1 engine:



Exhaust Manifold

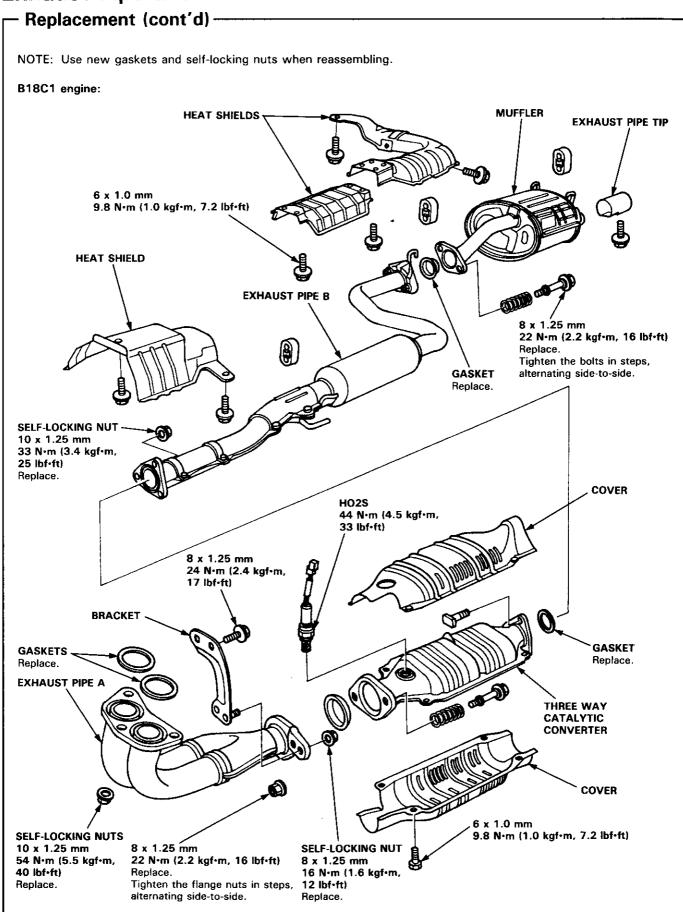


Exhaust Pipe and Muffler



- Replacement -NOTE: Use new gaskets and self-locking nuts when reassembling. B18B1 engine: **HEAT SHIELDS MUFFLER** 6 x 1.0 mm 9.8 N·m (1.0 kgf·m, 7.2 lbf·ft) **EXHAUST PIPE TIP** EXHAUST PIPE B **HEAT SHIELD** 8 x 1.25 mm 22 N·m (2.2 kgf·m, 16 lbf·ft) **GASKET** Tighten the bolts in steps, Replace. alternating side-to-side. **SELF-LOCKING NUT** 10 x 1.25 mm 33 N·m (3.4 kgf·m, 25 lbf+ft) Replace. COVER **HEATED OXYGEN** SENSOR (HO2S) 44 N·m (4.5 kgf·m, 33 lbf·ft) 8 x 1.25 mm 24 N·m (2.4 kgf·m, 17 lbf·ft} BRACKET **GASKET** Replace. **GASKETS GASKET** Replace. Replace. THREE WAY CATALYTIC CONVERTER **CÒVER** 6 x 1.0 mm 9.8 N·m (1.0 kgf·m, 7.2 lbf·ft) **SELF-LOCKING NUTS** SELF-LOCKING NUT 8 x 1.25 mm 10 x 1.25 mm 8 x 1.25 mm 22 N·m (2.2 kgf·m, 16 lbf·ft) 16 N·m (1.6 kgf·m, 54 N·m (5.5 kgf·m, Replace. 12 lbf-ft) 40 lbf·ft) (cont'd) Tighten the flange nuts in steps, Replace. Replace. alternating side-to-side.

Exhaust Pipe and Muffler



Cooling

| llustrated Index | 10-2 |
|------------------------------|--------|
| Radiator | |
| Replacement | 10-4 |
| Engine Coolant Refilling and | |
| Bleeding | . 10-5 |
| Cap Testing | . 10-6 |
| Pressure Testing | . 10-6 |
| Thermostat | |
| Replacement | . 10-7 |
| Testing | . 10-7 |
| Water Pump | |
| Illustrated Index | . 10-8 |
| Inspection | . 10-9 |
| Replacement | |



A WARNING System is under high pressure when engine is hot. To avoid danger of releasing scalding engine coolant, remove cap only when engine is cool.

Total Cooling System Capacity (Including heater and reservoir)

B18B1 engine:

M/T: 6.4 ℓ (6.8 US qt, 5.6 lmp qt) A/T: 6.7 ℓ (7.1 US qt, 5.9 lmp qt)

B18C1 engine:

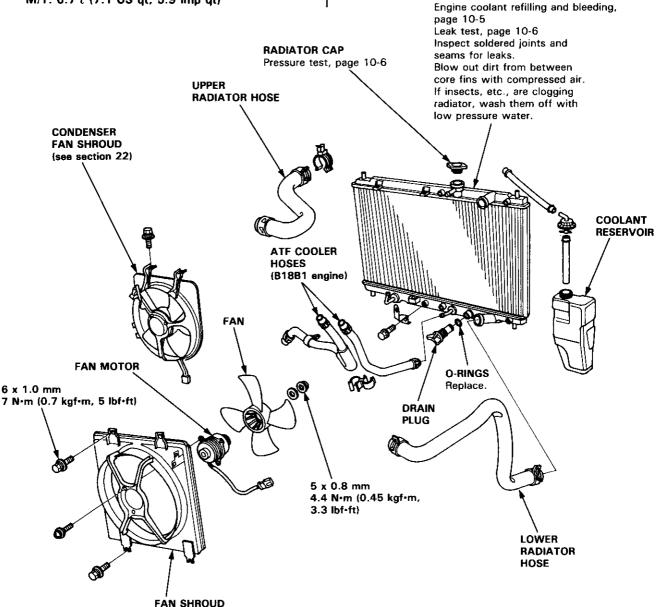
M/T: 6.7 \ell (7.1 US qt, 5.9 lmp qt)

CAUTION: If any engine coolant spills on painted portions of the body, rinse it off immediately.

NOTE:

- Check all cooling system hoses for damage, leaks or deterioration and replace if necessary.
- Check all hose clamps and retighten if necessary.
- Use new O-rings when reassembling.

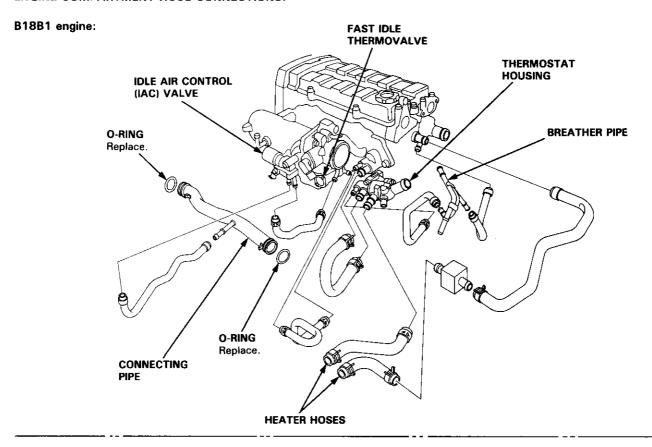
RADIATOR



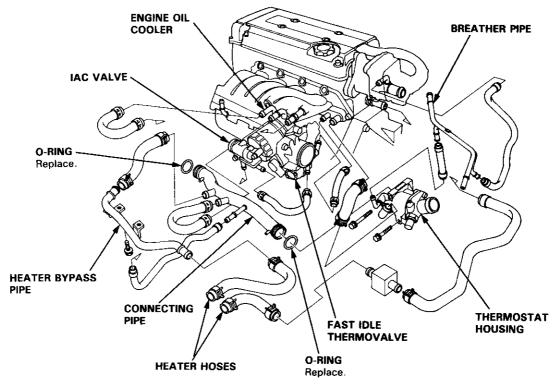
M/T: Manual transmission A/T: Automatic transmission ATF: Automatic transmission fluid



ENGINE COMPARTMENT HOSE CONNECTIONS:







Radiator

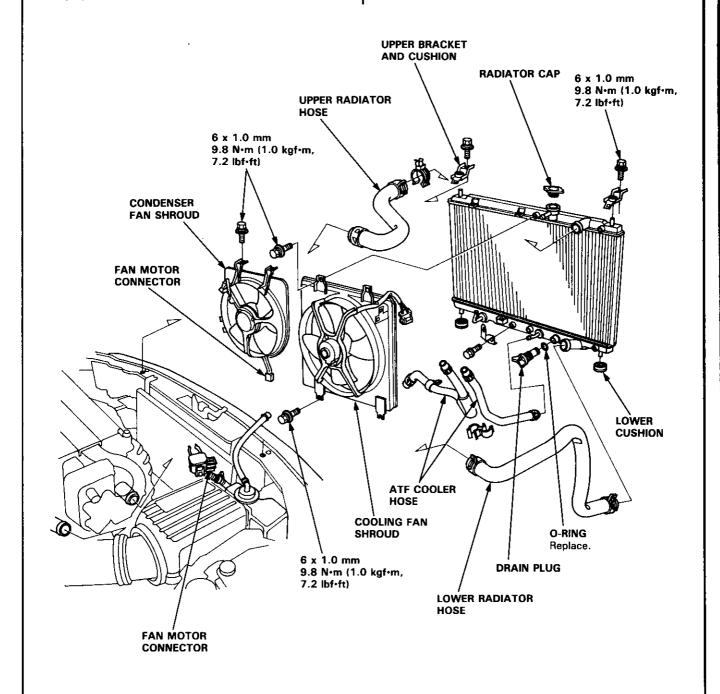
- Replacement

- 1. Drain the engine coolant.
- Remove the upper and lower radiator hoses, and ATF cooler hoses.
- 3. Disconnect the fan motor connectors.
- Remove the radiator upper brackets, then pull up the radiator.
- Remove the fan shroud assemblies and other parts from radiator.

Install the radiator in the reverse order of removal:

NOTE:

- Set the upper and lower cushions securely.
- Fill the radiator and bleed the air.



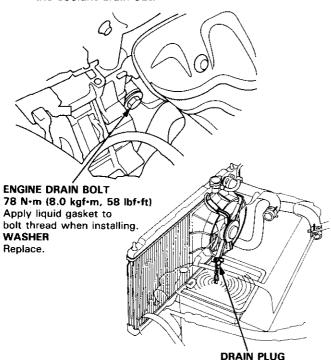


Engine Coolant Refilling and Bleeding

A WARNING Removing the radiator cap while the engine is hot can cause the engine coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you. Always let the engine and radiator cool down before removing the radiator cap.

CAUTION: When pouring engine coolant, be sure to shut the relay box lid and not to let coolant spill on the electrical parts or the paint. If any coolant spills, rinse it off immediately.

- Slide the heater temperature control lever to maximum heat.
 - Make sure the engine and radiator are cool to the touch.
- 2. Remove the radiator cap.
- Loosen the drain plug on the bottom of the radiator, and remove the drain bolt from the engine block. Let the coolant drain out.



- Remove the reservoir from its holder by pulling it straight up. Drain the coolant, then put the reservoir back in its holder.
- 5. When the coolant stops draining, apply liquid gasket to the drain bolt threads, then reinstall the bolt with a new washer. Tighten it securely.
- 6. Tighten the radiator drain plug securely.
- 7. Mix the recommended antifreeze/coolant with an equal amount of water in a clean container.

NOTE:

- Use only HONDA-RECOMMENDED antifreeze/ coolant.
- For best corrosion protection, the engine coolant concentrations must be maintained year-round at 50% MINIMUM. Coolant concentrations less than 50% may not provide sufficient protection against corrosion or freezing.

CAUTION:

- Do not mix different brands of anti-freeze/ coolants.
- Do not use additional rust inhibitors or anti-rust products; they may not be compatible with the recommended engine coolant.

Engine Coolant Refill Capacity: including reservoir $(0.6 \ \ell \ (0.6 \ US \ qt, \ 0.5 \ Imp \ qt))$.

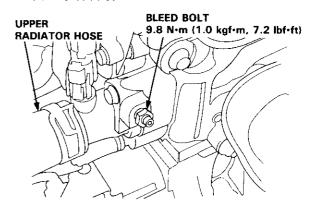
B18B1 engine:

M/T: 4.4 ℓ (4.6 US qt, 3.9 Imp qt) A/T: 4.7 ℓ (5.0 US qt, 4.1 Imp qt)

B18C1 engine:

M/T: 4.7 ℓ (5.0 US qt, 4.1 Imp qt)

- 8. Pour coolant into the radiator up to the base of the filler neck.
- 9. Loosen the bleed bolt on top of the engine. Tighten it again when coolant comes out in a steady stream with no bubbles.



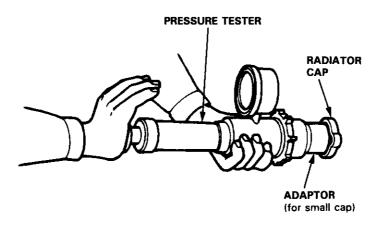
- 10. Refill the radiator to the base of the filler neck. Put the cap on the radiator, and tighten it only to the first stop. Start the engine and let it run until it warms up (the radiator cooling fan comes on at least twice).
- Turn off the engine. Check the level in the radiator, and add coolant if needed. Install the radiator cap, and tighten it fully.
- Fill the reservoir to the MAX mark. Install the reservoir cap.

Radiator

- Cap Testing

- Remove the radiator cap, wet its seal with engine coolant, then install it on the pressure tester.
- Apply a pressure of:
 93-123 kPa
 (0.95-1.25 kgf/cm², 13.5-17.8 psi)

3. Check for a drop in pressure.



- Pressure Testing

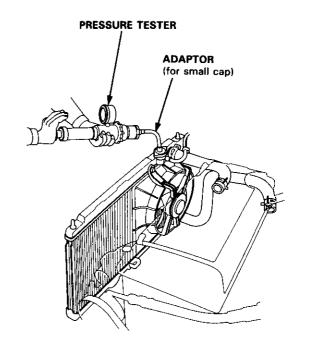
- Wait until the engine is cool, then carefully remove the radiator cap and fill the radiator with engine coolant to the top of the filler neck.
- Attach the pressure tester to the radiator and apply a pressure of: 93-123 kPa

(0.95-1.25 kgf/cm², 13.5-17.8 psi)

- 3. Inspect for engine coolant leaks and a drop in pressure.
- 4. Remove the tester and reinstall the radiator cap.

NOTE:

- Check for engine oil in the engine coolant and/or coolant in the engine oil.
- Check for ATF in the engine coolant and/or coolant in the ATF (A/T).

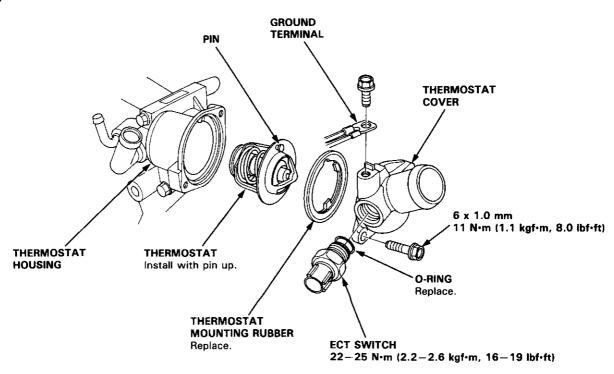


Thermostat



- Replacement -

NOTE: Use new gaskets and O-rings when reassembling.



- Testing

Replace thermostat if it is open at room temperature.

To test a closed thermostat:

- Suspend the thermostat in a container of water as shown.
- Heat the water and check the temperature with a thermometer. Check the temperature at which the thermostat first opens and at full lift.

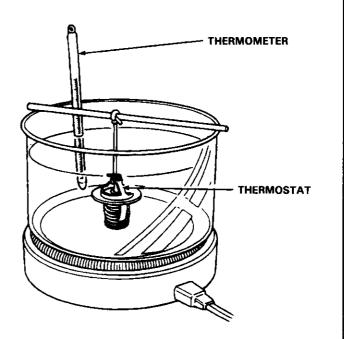
CAUTION: Do not let the thermometer touch the bottom of the hot container.

Measure the lift height of the thermostat when it's fully open.

STANDARD THERMOSTAT

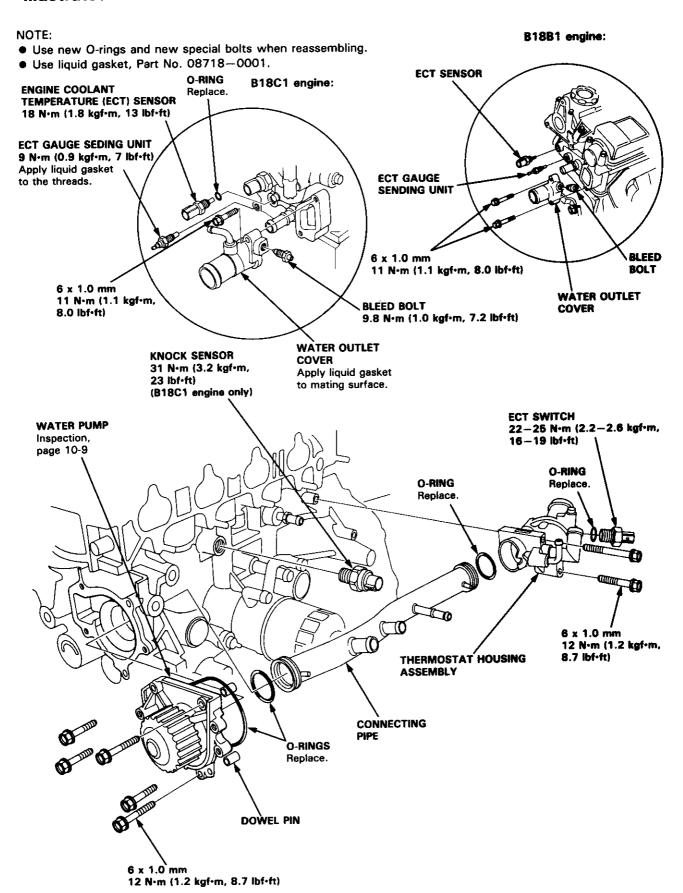
Lift height: above 8.0 mm (0.31 in) Starts opening: $169-176^{\circ}F$ ($76-80^{\circ}C$)

Fully open: 194°F (90°C)



Water Pump

illustrated Index

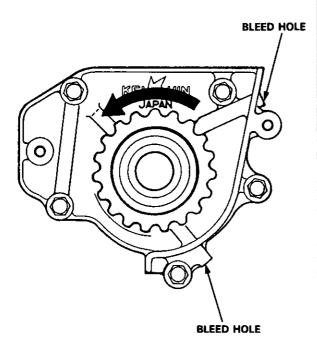




Inspection

- 1. Remove the timing belt (B18B1 engine: see page 6-10, B18C1 engine: see page 6-49).
- Check that the water pump pulley turns counterclockwise.
- 3. Check for signs of seal leakage.

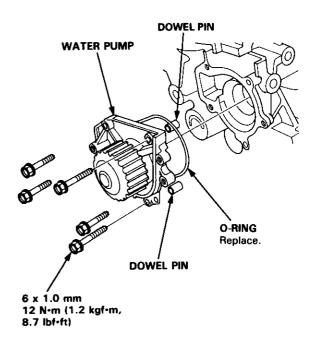
NOTE: A small amount of "weeping" from the bleed hole is normal.



Replacement ·

- 1. Remove the timing belt (B18B1 engine: see page 6-10, B18C1 engine: see page 6-49).
- 2. Remove the camshaft pulleys and the back cover (B18B1 engine: see page 6-19, B18C1 engine: see page 6-58).
- 3. Remove the water pump by removing five bolts.

NOTE: Inspect, repair and clean the O-ring groove and mating surface with the cylinder block.



Install the water pump in the reverse order of removal.

NOTE:

- Keep the O-ring in position when installing.
- Clean the spilled engine coolant.

Fuel and Emissions

| Special Tools 11-2 |
|---|
| Component Location |
| Index 11-3 |
| System Description |
| Vacuum Connections 11-8 |
| Electrical Connections 11-12 |
| System Connectors |
| Troubleshooting |
| Troubleshooting Guide 11-32 |
| Self-diagnostic Procedures |
| How to Read Flowcharts 11-39 |
| PGM-FI System |
| System Description 11-40 |
| Troubleshooting Flowcharts |
| Engine Control Module 11-42 |
| Heated Oxygen Sensor 11-46 |
| Heated Oxygen Sensor Heater |
| Fuel Supply System |
| Manifold Absolute Pressure |
| Sensor 11-52 |
| Top Dead Center/Crankshaft |
| Position/Cylinder Position sensor 11-56 |
| Engine Coolant Temperature Sensor 11-58 |
| |
| Throttle Position Sensor |
| Intake Air Temperature Sensor |
| Barometric Pressure Sensor |
| Ignition Output Signal 11-66 |
| Vehicle Speed Sensor 11-68 |
| Electrical Load Detector |
| Knock Sensor [B18C1 engine] 11-74 |
| A/T FI Signal A/B 11-76 |
| Idle Control System |
| System Troubleshooting Guide 11-78 |
| System Description |
| Troubleshooting Flowcharts |
| Idle Air Control Valve11-82 |
| Air Conditioning Signal |
| Alternator FR Signal |
| AITEMATOT PR SIANAI I I-AN |
| |
| Automatic Transaxle (A/T) Gear |
| Automatic Transaxle (A/T) Gear Position Signal11-88 |
| Automatic Transaxle (A/T) Gear Position Signal |
| Automatic Transaxle (A/T) Gear Position Signal |
| Automatic Transaxle (A/T) Gear Position Signal |

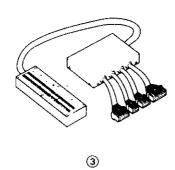
| ruei Suppiy System | |
|---------------------------------------|----------|
| System Troubleshooting Guide | . 11-97 |
| Fuel Lines | . 11-98 |
| System Description | . 11-100 |
| Fuel Pressure | . 11-100 |
| Fuel Injectors | 11-102 |
| Fuel Pressure Regulator | . 11-106 |
| Fuel Filter | . 11-108 |
| Fuel Pump | 11-109 |
| PGM-FI Main Relay | . 11-111 |
| Fuel Tank | 11-114 |
| Intake Air System | |
| System Troubleshooting Guide | . 11-115 |
| System Description | |
| Air Cleaner | |
| Throttle Cable | |
| Throttie Body | |
| Intake Air Bypass Control System | |
| [B18C1 engine] | 11-123 |
| Intake Manifold [B1881 engine] | |
| Emission Control System | |
| System Troubleshooting Guide | . 11-129 |
| System Description | |
| Tailpipe Emission | |
| Three Way Catalytic Converter | |
| Positive Crankcase Ventilation System | |
| Evanorative Emission Control | |

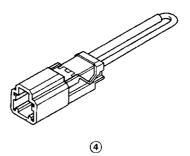


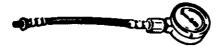
| Ref. No | Tool Number | Description | Qty | Page Reference |
|----------|-----------------|----------------------------------|-----|--------------------------|
| 1) | A973X-041-XXXXX | Vacuum Pump/Gauge | 1 | 11-120, 124, 137, 140 |
| 2 | 07JAZ-001000B | Vacuum/Pressure Gauge 0-4 in. Hg | 1 | 11-139, 140 |
| 3 | 07LAJ-PT3010A | Test Harness | 1 | 11-37 |
| 4 | 07PAZ-0010100 | SCS Short Connector | 1 | 11-34 |
| ⑤ | 07406-0040001 | Fuel Pressure Gauge | 1 | 11-101, 106 |











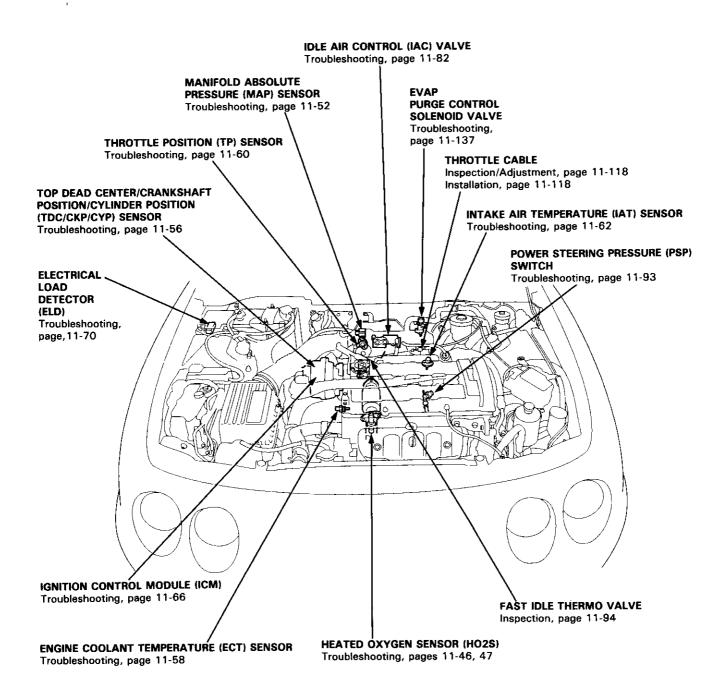
⑤

Component Locations



Index -

B18B1 engine:



Component Locations

Index -B18C1 engine: **EVAP PURGE CONTROL SOLENOID VALVE** Troubleshooting, page 11-137 **MANIFOLD ABSOLUTE** INTAKE AIR TEMPERATURE PRESSURE (MAP) SENSOR (IAT) SENSOR Troubleshooting, page 11-52 Troubleshooting, page 11-62 **THROTTLE** POSITION (TP) THROTTLE CABLE SENSOR Inspection/Adjustment, page 11-119 Troubleshooting, Installation, page 11-119 page 11-60 **IDLE AIR CONTROL (IAC) VALVE** TOP DEAD CENTER/CRANKSHAFT Troubleshooting, page 11-82 POSITION/CYLINDER POSITION (TDC/CKP/CYP) SENSOR POWER STEERING PRESSURE (PSP) Troubleshooting, page 11-56 **SWITCH** Troubleshooting, page 11-93 ELECTRICAL . LOAD **DETECTOR** (ELD) Troubleshooting, page,11-70 **IGNITION CONTROL MODULE (ICM)** Troubleshooting, page 11-66 KNOCK SENSOR (KS)

> **HEATED OXYGEN SENSOR (HO2S)** Troubleshooting, pages 11-46, 47

Troubleshooting, page 11-74

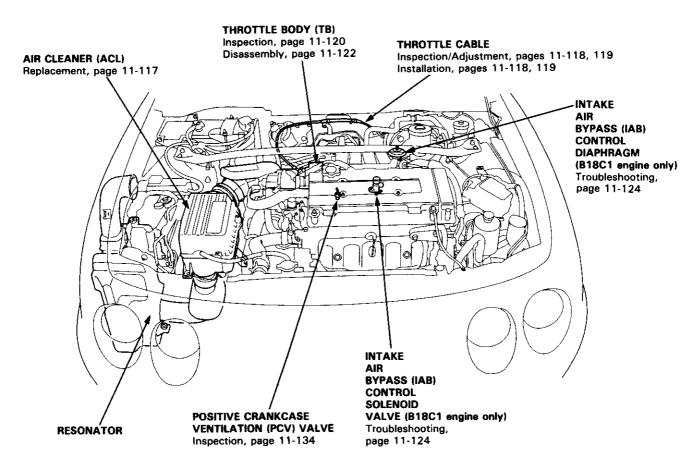
FAST IDLE THERMO VALVE Inspection, page 11-94

ENGINE COOLANT TEMPERATURE

Troubleshooting, page 11-58

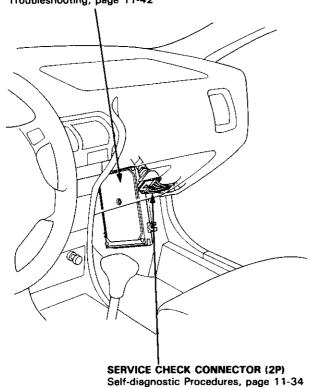
(ECT) SENSOR

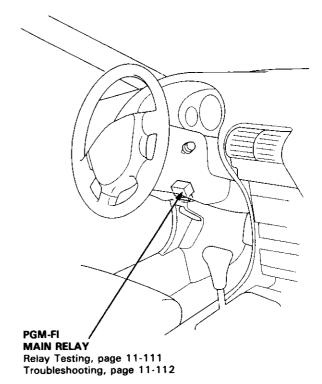


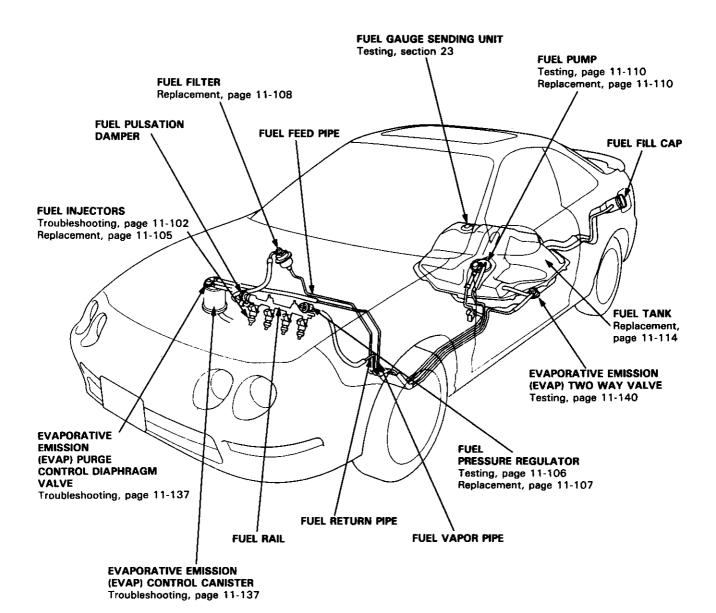


ENGINE CONTROL MODULE (ECM)

Self-diagnostic Procedures, page 11-34 Troubleshooting, page 11-42



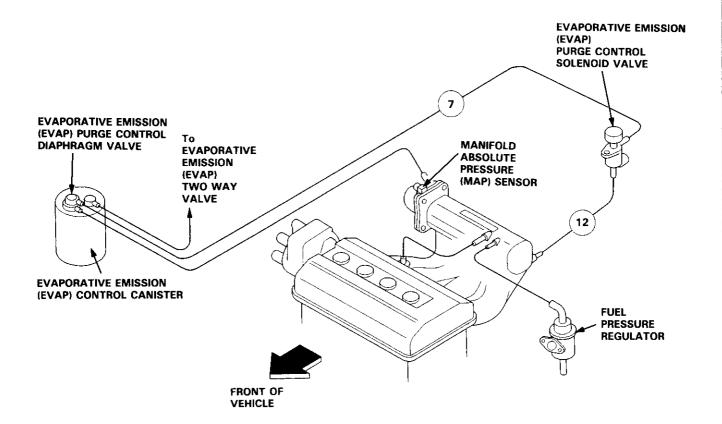




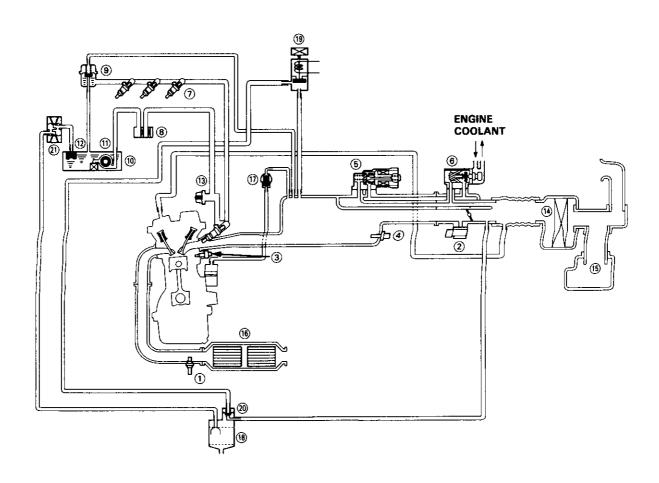
System Description

Vacuum Connections

B18B1 engine:







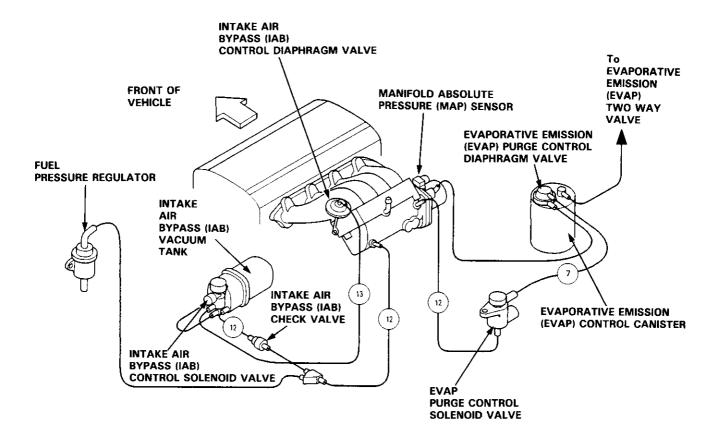
- 1 HEATED OXYGEN SENSOR (HO2S)
- 2 MANIFOLD ABSOLUTE PRESSURE (MAP) SENSOR
- ③ ENGINE COOLANT TEMPERATURE (ECT) SENSOR ④ INTAKE AIR TEMPERATURE (IAT) SENSOR
- **(i)** IDLE AIR CONTROL (IAC) VALVE
- **6** FAST IDLE THERMO VALVE
- 7 FUEL INJECTOR
- ® FUEL FILTER
- **9** FUEL PRESSURE REGULATOR
- (10) FUEL PUMP (FP)
- 11 FUEL TANK

- 1 FUEL TANK EVAPORATIVE EMISSION (EVAP) VALVE
- (i) FUEL PULSATION DAMPER
- (4) AIR CLEANER
- (§) RESONATOR
- (B) THREE WAY CATALYTIC CONVERTER (TWC)
- 1 POSITIVE CRANKCASE VENTILATION (PCV) VALVE
- ® EVAPORATIVE EMISSION (EVAP) CONTROL CANISTER
- 1 EVAPORATIVE EMISSION (EVAP) PURGE CONTROL **SOLENOID VALVE**
- **(2) EVAPORATIVE EMISSION (EVAP) PURGE CONTROL** DIAPHRAGM VALVE
- ② EVAPORATIVE EMISSION (EVAP) TWO WAY VALVE

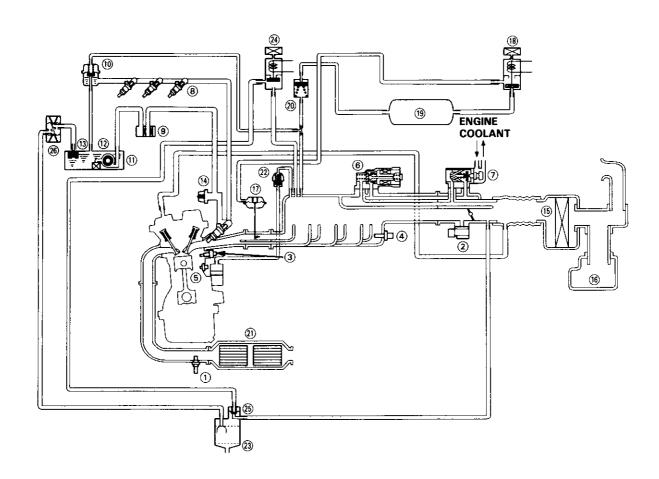
System Description

Vacuum Connections

B18C1 engine:



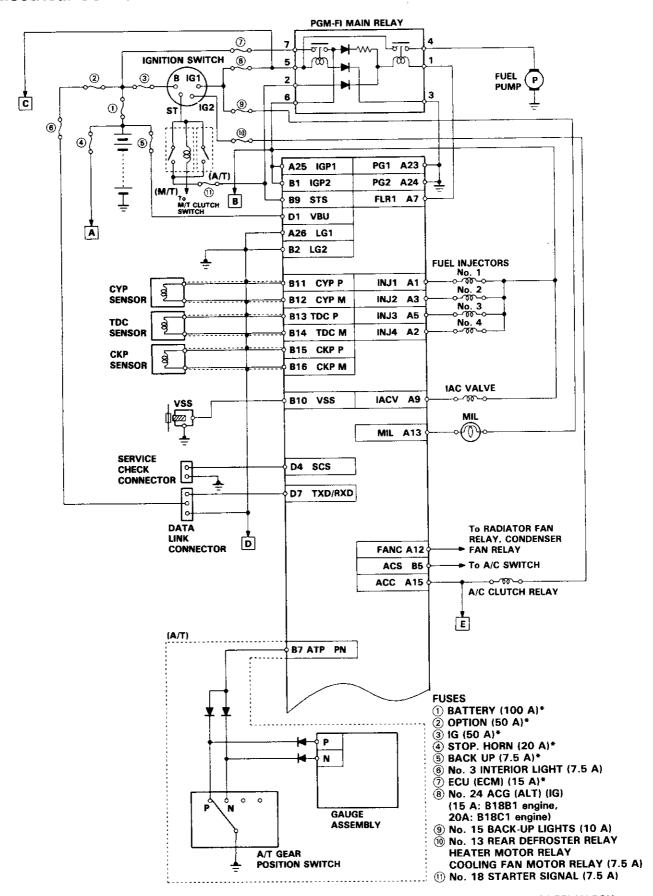




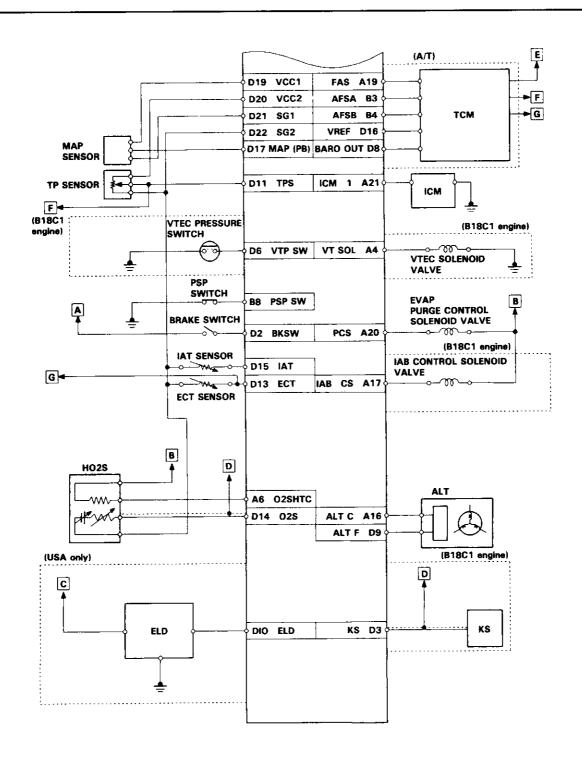
- ① HEATED OXYGEN SENSOR (HO2S)
- 2 MANIFOLD ABSOLUTE PRESSURE (MAP) SENSOR
- (ENGINE COOLANT TEMPERATURE (ECT) SENSOR
- (IAT) SENSOR
- (KS) KNOCK SENSOR
- (6) IDLE AIR CONTROL (IAC) VALVE
- TAST IDLE THERMO VALVE
- **®** FUEL INJECTOR
- 9 FUEL FILTER
- **10 FUEL PRESSURE REGULATOR**
- (I) FUEL PUMP (FP)
- 12 FUEL TANK
- **3 FUEL TANK EVAPORATIVE EMISSION (EVAP) VALVE**

- (1) FUEL PULSATION DAMPER
- 15 AIR CLEANER
- (i) RESONATOR
- T INTAKE AIR BYPASS (IAB) CONTROL DIAPHRAGM VALVE
- ® INTAKE AIR BYPASS (IAB) COTROL SOLENOID VALVE
- 📆 INTAKE AIR BYPASS (IAB) VACUUM TANK
- (IAB) CHECK VALVE
- THREE WAY CATALYTIC CONVERTER (TWC)
- 2 POSITIVE CRANKCASE VENTILATION (PCV) VALVE
- **② EVAPORATIVE EMISSION (EVAP) CONTROL CANISTER**
- (EVAPORATIVE EMISSION (EVAP) PURGE CONTROL SOLENOID VALVE
- (3) EVAPORATIVE EMISSION (EVAP) PURGE CONTROL DIAPHRAGM VALVE
- **(3) EVAPORATIVE EMISSION (EVAP) TWO WAY VALVE**

Electrical Connections





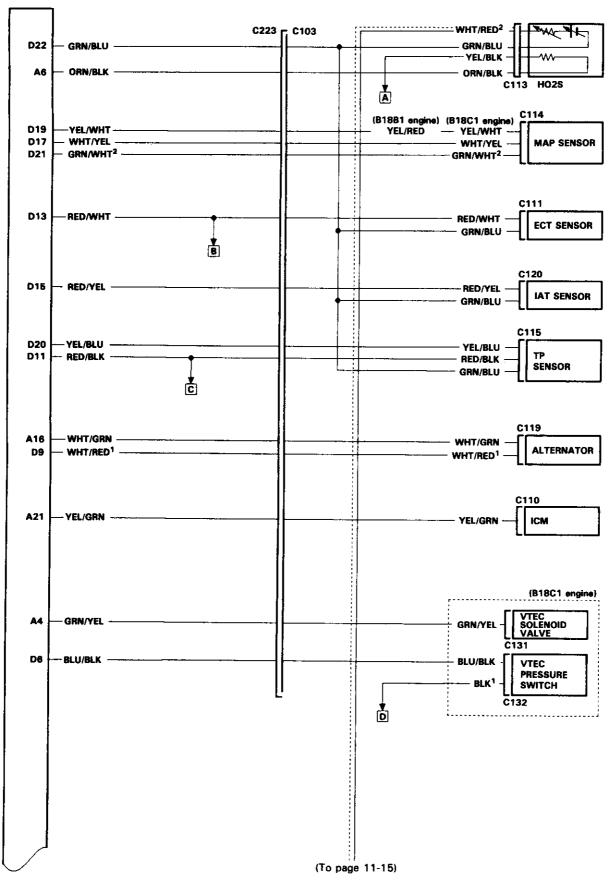


| | TERMINAL LOCATIONS | | | | |
|---|---|-----------------------------|---|--|--|
| 1 | | | , | | |
| | A1 A3 A5 A7 A9 A11 A13 A15 A17 A19 A21 A23 A25 | BI 83 B5 87 B9 B11 B13 B15 | DI D3 D5 D7 09 D11 043 D15 D17 D19 D21 | | |
| | 0000000000000 | 00000000 | 0000000000 | | |
| , | 0000000000000 | 00000000 000000 | 0000000000 | | |
| | 12 44 45 48 A1G 517 414 416 518 420 577 424 426 | B2 B4 B5 88 B10 B12 B14 B16 | D2 D4 D6 O8 D10 D12 D14 D16 D18 020 022 | | |

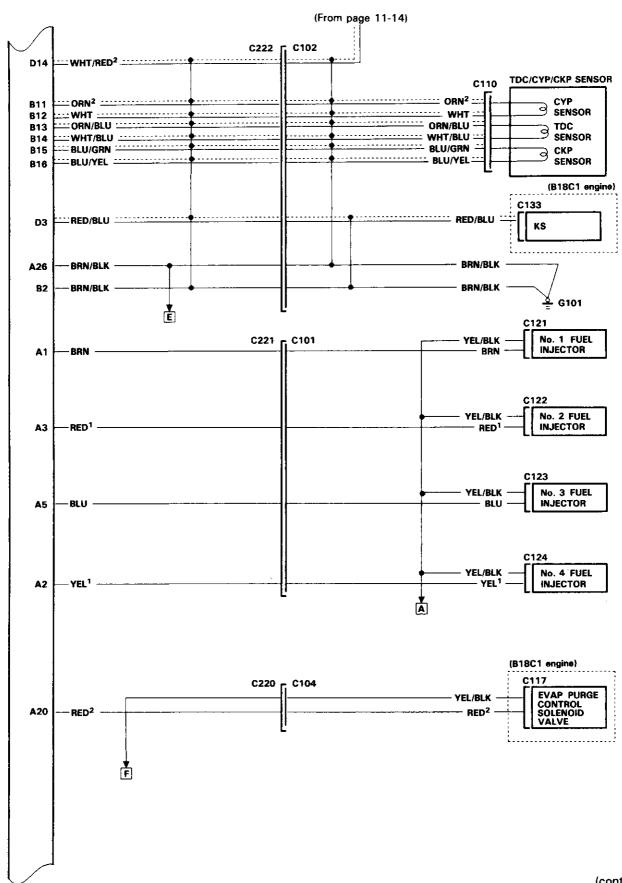
(cont'd)

System Description

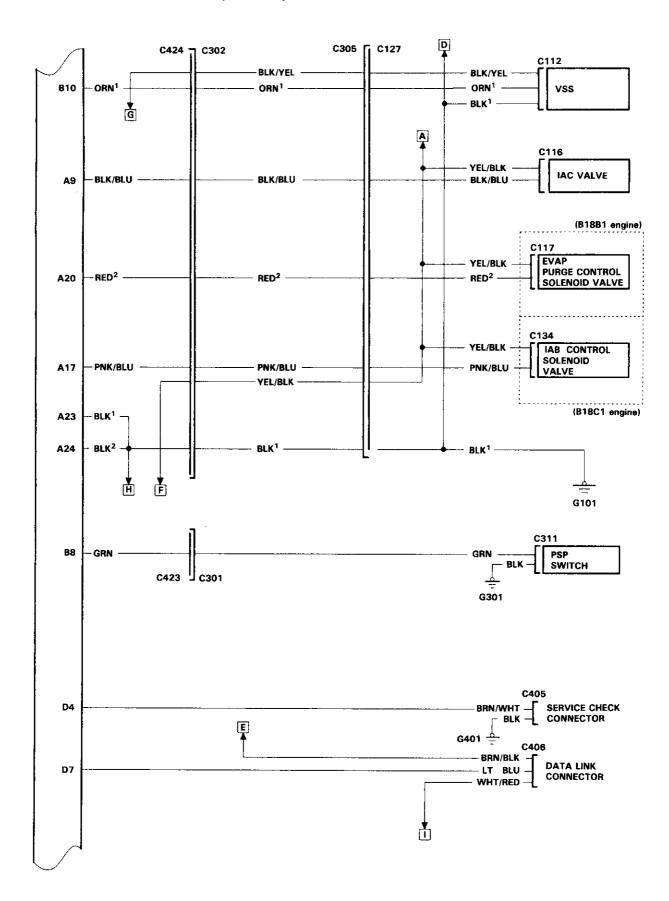
Electrical Connections (cont'd)



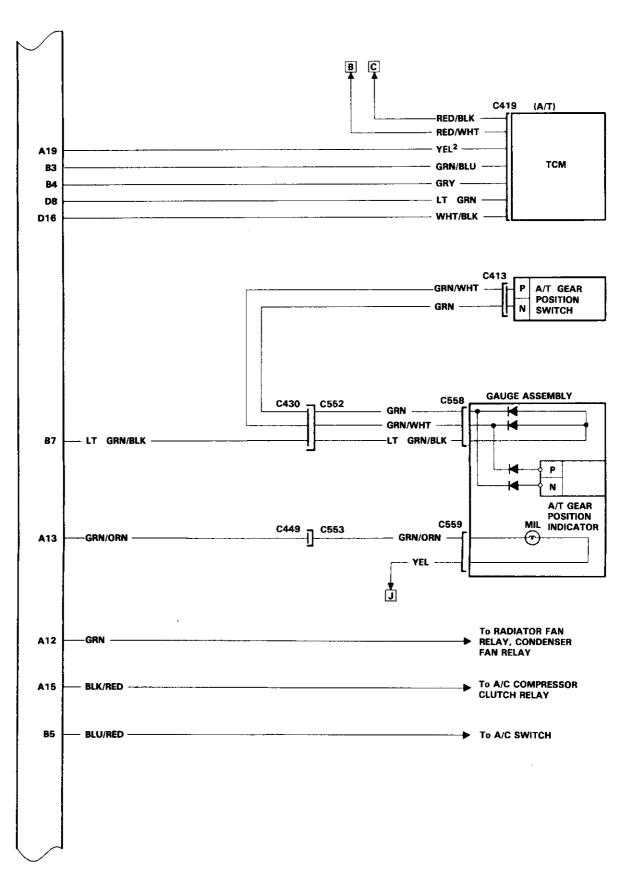


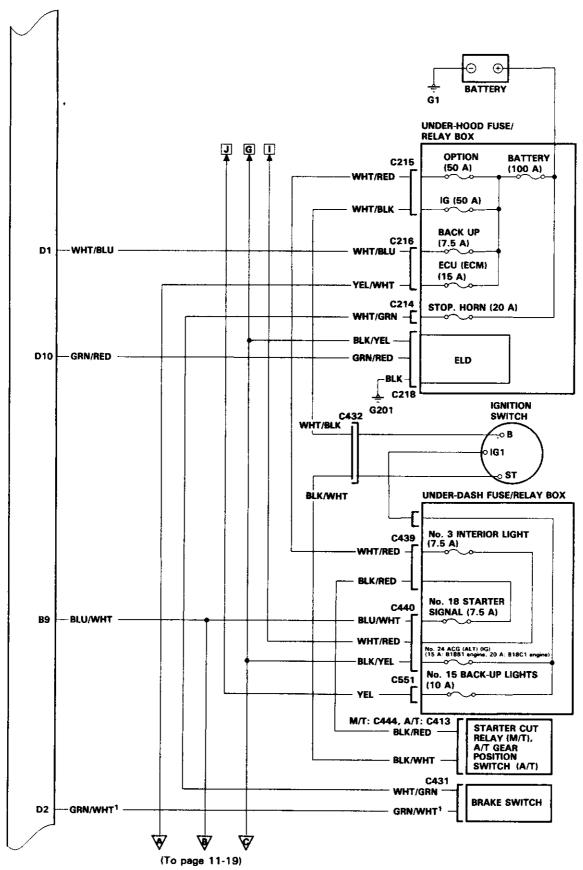


(cont'd)

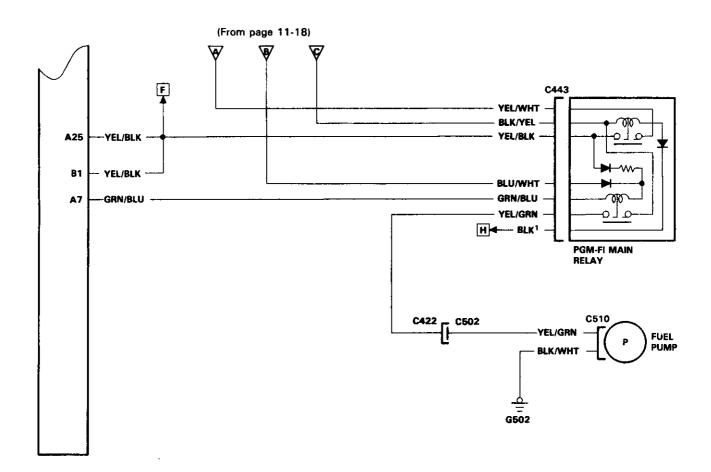


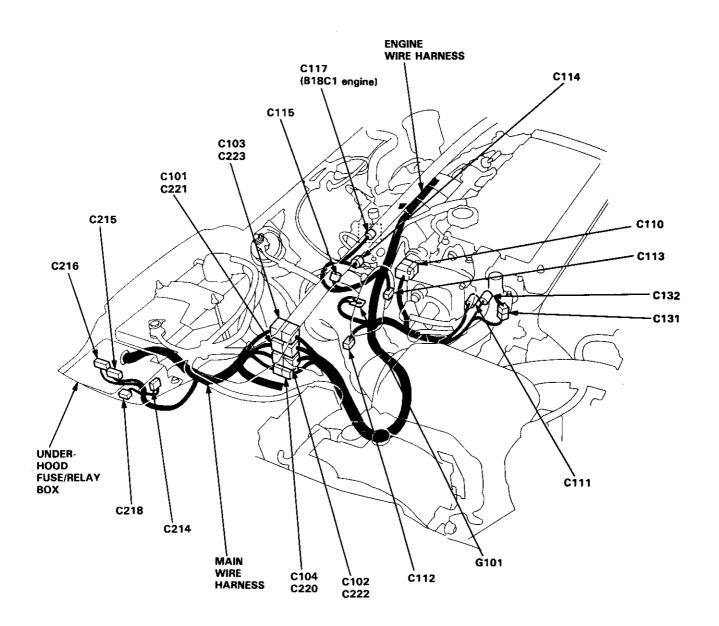














C110

| 1 | 2 | n | 4 |
|---|---|---|---|
| | 6 | 7 | 8 |

C111



C112



C113

| | _ |
|---|---|
| 1 | 2 |
| 3 | 4 |

C114



| | Θ | YEL/GRN | 5 | _ |
|-----|---|------------------|---|---------|
| - 1 | 2 | BLU/GRN | 8 | BLU/YEL |
| į | 3 | ORN/BLU | 7 | WHT/YEL |
| | • | ORN ² | ⊛ | WHT |

| 0 | RED/WHT |
|---|---------|
| 2 | GRN/BLU |
| _ | |

| 1 | BLK1 |
|----------|------------------|
| 2 | BLK/YEL |
| 3 | ORN ¹ |
| <u> </u> | |

| ① | WHT/RED ² |
|---|----------------------|
| 2 | GRN/BLU |
| 3 | YEL/BLK |
| • | ORN/BLK |

C115



| C117 | |
|--------|---------|
| (B18C1 | engine) |



| ① | YEL/BLK |
|-----|------------------|
| (2) | RED ² |

C131











| ١ | _ | |
|---|---|---------|
| | Θ | GRN/BLU |
| | @ | RED/BLK |
| | 3 | YEL/BLU |

| ① | YEL/BLK | |
|------|------------------|--|
| (19) | RED ² | |
| | | |



| (O) | BLU/BLK | |
|-----|---------|--|
| 2 | BLK1 | |

C215







C218



C220



| | ٦ |
|---|---|
| 1 | 2 |
| 3 | 4 |

| 1 | WHT/BLK |
|---|---------|
| 2 | WHT |
| 3 | WHT/RED |

| 1 | |
|-----|---------|
| 2 | WHT/BLU |
| 3 | RED/GRN |
| 4 | WHT |
| (5) | YEL/WHT |

| ① | BLK |
|---|---------|
| 2 | GRN/RED |
| 3 | BLK/YEL |
| | |

| 0 | RED ² | 1 |
|---|------------------|---|
| 2 | YEL/BLK | |
| Ψ | | |

| 0 | RED ¹ |
|------------|------------------|
| (3) | BRN |
| 3 | YEL1 |
| (4) | BLU |

C222



| 1 | BRN/BLK | 6 | ORN/BLU |
|-----|----------------------|-----|---------|
| 2 | WHT/RED ² | 0 | WHT/BLU |
| 3 | BRN/BLK | 8 | BLU/GRN |
| 4 | ORN ² | 9 | BLU/YEL |
| (5) | WHT | 100 | RED/BLU |

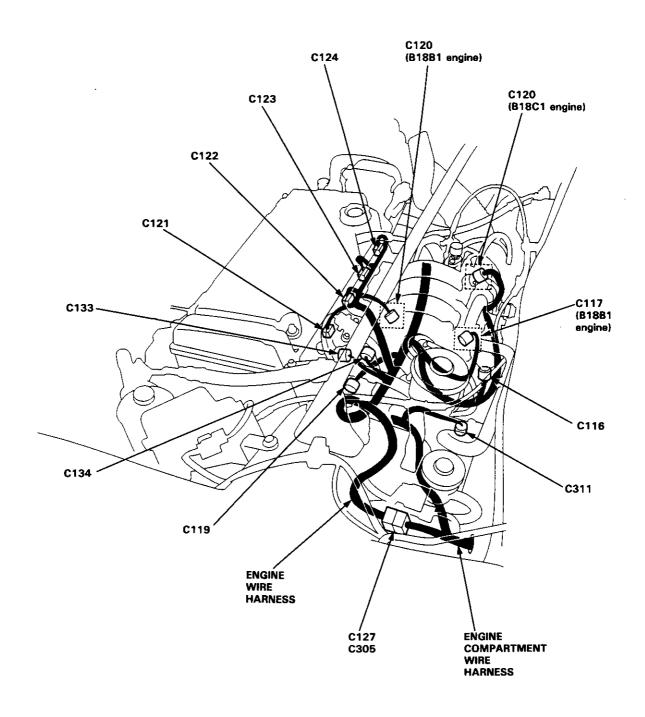
| | _ | _ | _ | | |
|----|---|----|---|---|---|
| 1 | | 2 | 3 | | |
| 4 | 5 | 1 | 5 | 7 | |
| 8 | 9 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 |
| 1: | 2 | 13 | 1 | 4 | Ì |

C223

| 0 | WHT/GRN | 8 | RED/BLK |
|------------|----------------------|-----|----------|
| 2 | ORN/BLK | 9 | GRN/BLU |
| ③ | GRN/YEL | 100 | YEL/BLU |
| (4) | GRN/WHT ² | 100 | YEL/GAN |
| (5) | WHT/YEL | 13 | RED/YEL |
| (6) | YEL/WHT | (B) | RED/WHT |
| 7 | 8LU/BLK | 19 | WHT/RED1 |

- NOTE: Different wires with the same color have been given a number suffix to distinguish them (for example, YEL/BLK1 and YEL/BLK2 are not the same).
 - O: Related to Fuel and Emissions System.
 - Connector of male terminals: View from terminal side
 - Connector of female terminals: View from wire side

(cont'd)





C116



C117 (B18B1 engine)



C119



C120 (B18B1 engine)



C120 (B18C1 engine)



① BLK/BLU
② YEL/BLK

① YEL/BLK ② RED² ① WHT/GRN
② WHT/RED¹
3 BLK/YEL
4 WHT/BLU

① GRN/BLU
② RED/YEL

① GRN/BLU
② RED/YEL

C121



C122



C123



C124



C133



① BRN ② YEL/BLK ① RED¹
② YEL/BLK

① BLU
② YEL/BLK

① YEL'

① RED/BLU 2 —

C134



C305

| 1 2 3 | | | | | | | |
|----------|--|----|-----|----|---|---|---|
| 4 | | 4, | 5 6 | | 7 | | 7 |
| 8 | | ľ | 9 | 10 | | 1 | 1 |
| 12 13 14 | | | | | | | |

C311



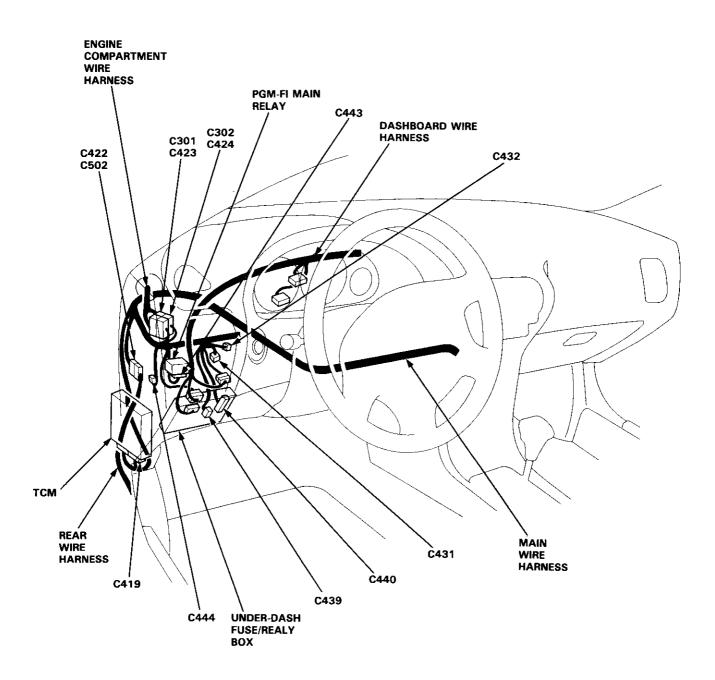
① PNK/BLU
② YEL/BLK

| 1 | BLK/YEL | 8 | YEL/RED | |
|-----|------------------|----------------|---------|--|
| 2 | WHT/BLU | 9 | GRN | |
| 3 | RED ² | (9) | BLK1 | |
| ľ | PNK/BLU* | 11 | YEL/GRN | |
| (4) | BLK/BLU | (13) | YEL/BLK | |
| • | BLK/YÉL | 13 | GRN/BLK | |
| 0 | ORN ¹ | 14 | YÉL | |
| 7 | 8LU | *:B18C1 engine | | |

① GRN ② BLK

NOTE: • Different wires with the same color have been given a number suffix to distinguish them (for example YEL/BLK¹ and YEL/BLK² are not the same).

- O: Related to Fuel and Emissions System.
- -- Connector of male terminals: View from terminal side
 - Connector of female terminals: View from wire side





C419 C422 4 5 2 6 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 12/14/ /17//19/20/ 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 12 GRN/WHT 1 LT BLU 8 BLK/WHT ② LT GRN 9 GRN/RED 2 RED/BLU ③ RED/WHT 14 BRN/WHT 3 GRN/BLK 10 GRN/WHT RED/BLK YEL/GRN 15 11 BLK/GRN 5 ORN 16 5 GRN 12 LT GRN/RED GRY 17 WHT/BLU 6 LT GRN/BLK 13 GRN/BLU ③ GRN/BLU 18 7 LT GRN 14 BLK/RED 19 YEL² 8 BLU/YEL 9 BLU/GRN 10 ORN/BLU 21 -C431 11 22 C424 C431 (With C423 (Without cruise cruise 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 1 2 3 4 5 6 control) control) 111213 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 2 1 1 3 4 2 11 GRN/BLK 1 YEL 1 GRN/WHT 11 BRN/BLK ② BLK/BLU 2 WHT/RED 12 BRN/RED 1 BLK/YEL 3 BLK/YEL 13 YEL/BLK 3 GRN/BLU* 13 GRN/BLU 1 LT GRN ① WHT/GRN 4 WHT/YEL 14 BLU 4 RED/BLK 14 BRN ② WHT/GRN 15 RED/GRN** ② GRN/WHT RED² PNK/BLU* 5 RED/YEL 15 BLU/YEL (5) ③ GRN/WHT 16 BLK/YEL 6 RED/GRN 16 BLU/WHT 4 GRY 6 RED/BLU** 17 BLK/RED** 17 BLU 7 BLU 18 GRN/RED 8 18 GRN/BLK 9 GRN ® ORN 19 BLK/GRN 19 GRN 10 BRN/WHT 9 YEL/RED 20 BLK 20 BLU/BLK 10 YEL/GRN *: 818C1 engine **: Canada C432 C439 C443 C440 1 2 3 2 3 2 3 4 6 9 10 4 5 6 7 6 11 12 13 4 17 18 19 5 6 16 ① BLK/WHT ① WHT/RED 1 RED/GRN 12 YEL/BLK* ① GRN/BLU 2 LT BLU 2 WHT* 2 RED/WHT 13 WHT/BLU 2 BLU/WHT ③ WHT/BLK 3 BLK ③ BLU/WHT 14 RED/YEL 3 BLK1 4 BLK BLK/RED 4 RED/BLU 15 BLK/YEL YEL/GRN 5 WHT/YEL 5 16 RED/GRN BLK/YEL 6 WHT/BLU 6 GRN/BLK 6 GRN/ORN 17 WHT/BLU YEL/BLK 7 WHT/GRN 7 RED/GRN 18 RED/BLK 7 GRN/YEL ⑦ YEL/WHT 19 WHT/YEL 8 BLK/YEL 20 21 GRN/RED 10 YEL ① WHT/RED 22 GRN/BLU Canada

C444

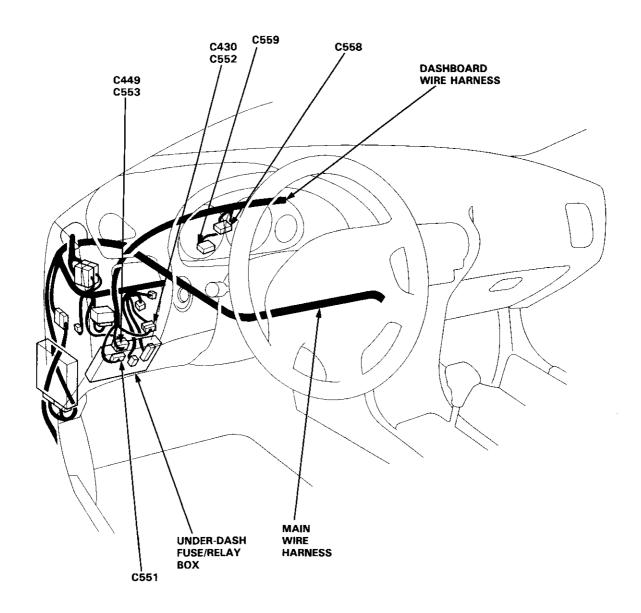
| | 2 |
|---|---|
| 3 | 4 |

| | ① | BLK/WHT |
|---|---|---------|
| | 2 | BLK/WHT |
| | 3 | BLK/RED |
| Į | 4 | BLU/BLK |

NOTE: • Different wires with the same color have been given a number suffix to distinguish them (for example YEL/BLK1 and YEL/BLK2 are not the same).

- O: Related to Fuel and Emissions System.
- Connector of male terminals: View from terminal side
 - Connector of female terminals: View from wire side

(cont'd)





C551

1 BLK/YEL
2 BLK
3 BLK
4 GRN/YEL

5 GRN/RED

6 GRN/WHT

8 GRN/BLU

9 GRN/ORN

10 —

| , | | | | | | | | | _ | | |
|---|----------------|----|----|---|----|----|----|---|----|----|----|
| Ì | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | ┍ | _ | 5 | 6 | | 8 | 9 |
| ļ | \overline{Z} | 11 | 12 | | 14 | 15 | 16 | | 18 | 19 | 20 |

| 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | | J | 5 | 6 | ľ | \angle | 8 | 9 |
|------|----|----|---|------|----|----|---|---|----------|----|----|
| otag | 11 | 12 | | 14 1 | 15 | 16 | | | 18 | 19 | 20 |
| | | | | | | | | | | | |

11 BLK/YEL 12 WHT/BLU 13 -(YEL

15 RED/GRN

16 YEL/RED 17

19 RED/BLK

20 WHT/BLU

18 ORN

| C | 5 | 5 | 2 |
|---|---|---|---|
| | | | |

| | | | | | _ |
|----------------|---|---|---|---|----|
| 1 | 2 | | _ | 3 | 4 |
| \overline{Z} | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 |

| 1 | YEL/WHT | 6 | GRN/RED |
|----------|------------|----|---------|
| 2 | LT GRN/WHT | 0 | GRN/WHT |
| 3 | GRN | 8 | GRN/BLK |
| ④ | LT GRN/BLK | 9 | GRN/BLU |
| 5 | | 10 | GRN/YEL |

C553

| 1 | 2 | 3 | حا | _ | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 |
|---|---|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
| 8 | 9 | 10 | 11 | 12 | 13 | 14 | 15 | 16 |

| 1 | RED/BLU | 9 | RED/GRN |
|----|---------|----|---------|
| 1 | LT GRN | 10 | BRN/BLK |
| 13 | BLU | 11 | WHT/GRN |
| 4 | ORN | 12 | BLU/YEL |
| 5 | YEL/RED | 13 | RED |
| 6 | YEL/GRN | 10 | GRN/ORN |
| 7 | YEL | 15 | BLU |
| 8 | YEL/BLK | 16 | BLU/RED |

C558



| CE | 559 | | | | L | | | | | |
|----|-----|---|---|---|---|---|----------------|----|----|----|
| 2 | | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 9 | \overline{Z} | 11 | 12 | 13 |

| 1 | YEL/WHT | 8 | GRN |
|---|------------|----|------------|
| 2 | | 7 | GRN/BLU |
| 3 | LT GRN/BLK | 8 | GRN/YEL |
| • | GRN/WHT | 9 | LT GRN/WHT |
| 5 | GRN/RED | 10 | GRN/BLK |

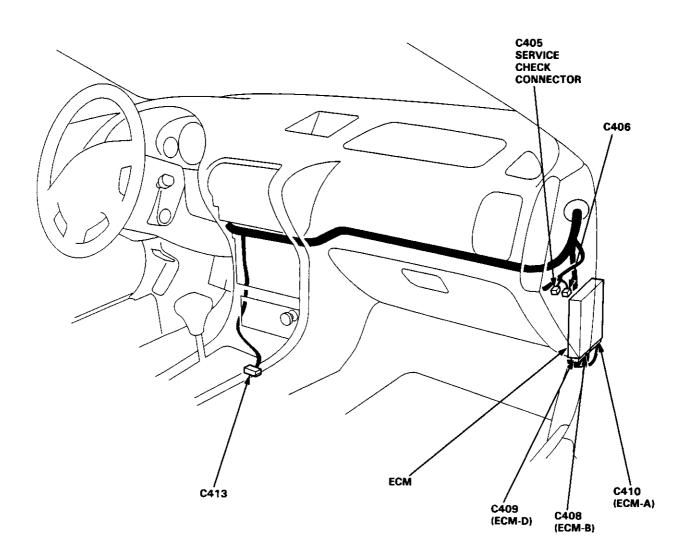
| 1 | | 8 | |
|-----|---------|----|---------|
| 2 | PNK | 9 | WHT/BLU |
| 3 | | 10 | |
| (4) | YEL | 11 | YEL/RED |
| 5 | RED/BLU | 12 | GRN/ORN |
| 6 | BLK | 13 | BLU |
| 7 | YEL/GRN | | |

NOTE: • Different wires with the same color have been given a number suffix to distinguish them (for example YEL/BLK¹ and YEL/BLK² are not the same).

O: Related to Fuel and Emissions System.

• - Connector of male terminals: View from terminal side

- Connector of female terminals: View from wire side





C405

1 2

C406

1 2 3

C410 (ECM-A)

| | | | | | | | | _ | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|----------------|----|-----------|----|----------------|----|----|----|----|
| | 1 | 3 | 5 | 7 | 9 | | 13 | 15 | 17 | 19 | 21 | 23 | 25 |
| i | 2 | 4 | 6 | | \overline{Z} | 12 | \square | 16 | \overline{Z} | 20 | | 24 | 26 |

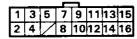
| 0 | BRN/WHT |
|---|---------|
| 2 | BLK |

| ① | BRN/BLK |
|-----|---------|
| @ | WHT/RED |
| (3) | LT BLU |

| 0 | BRN | 14 | _ |
|----------|------------------|------------|------------------|
| 2 | YEL1 | ٩ | BLK/RED |
| 3 | RED ¹ | ۳ | WHT/GRN |
| • | GRN/YEL* | (3) | PNK/BLU* |
| (5) | BLŲ | 18 | |
| • | ORN/BLK | (9) | YEL2 · · |
| 7 | GRN/BLU | 8 | RED ² |
| 8 | | (3) | YEL/GRN |
| 9 | BLK/BLU | 22 | _ |
| 10 | _ | (3) | BLK ¹ |
| 11 | <u> </u> | (3) | BLK ² |
| (12) | GRN | 2 5 | YEL/BLK |
| (13) | GRN/ORN | 8 | BRN/BLK |

^{*:} B18C1 engine

C408 (ECM-B)



C409 (ECM-D)

| | 1 | 3 | / | 7 | 9 | 11 | 13 | 15 | 17 | 19 | 21 |
|---|---|---|---|---|----|--------------|----|----|----|----|----|
| 1 | 2 | 4 | 6 | 8 | 10 | \mathbb{Z} | 14 | 16 | / | 20 | 22 |

C413

| 1 | 2 | 3 | _ | _ | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 |
|----------------|---|----|---|---|----|----|----|----|
| \overline{Z} | 9 | 10 |) | 1 | 11 | 12 | 13 | 14 |

| Ű | YEL/BLK | 9 | BLU/WHT |
|-----|--------------|------|------------------|
| 2 | BRN/BLK | 100 | ORN ¹ |
| 3 | GRN/BLU** | (1) | ORN ² |
| (4) | GRY** | 10 | WHT |
| 6 | BLU/RED | (13) | ORN/BLU |
| 6 | | 10 | WHT/BLU |
| 7 | LT GRN/BLK** | (15) | BLU/GRN |
| (8) | GAN | ⑤ | BLU/YEL |

^{**:} B1881 angine

| 1 | WHT/BLU | 12 | |
|-----|----------------------|----------|----------------------|
| 2 | GRN/WHT ¹ | (13) | RED/WHT |
| 3 | RED/BLU* | • | WHT/RED ² |
| • | BRN/WHT | (15) | RED/YEL |
| 5 | | 1 | WHT/BLK** |
| € | BLU/BLK * | (| WHT/YEL |
| 3 | LT BLU | 18 | _ |
| 8 | LT GRN** | (9) | YEL/WHT |
| 9 | WHT/RED1 | 3 | YEL/BLU |
| (0) | GRN/RED | (I) | GRN/WHT ² |
| 0 | RED/BLK | 3 | GRN/BLU |

^{*:} B18C1 engine

| 1 | BLK | 8 | |
|---|------------|-----|---------|
| 2 | LT GRN/WHT | 9 | PNK |
| 3 | YEL | 10 | BLK/WHT |
| 4 | GRN/BLK | 0 | BLK/RED |
| 5 | GRN/YEL | 1 | GRN/WHT |
| 6 | GRN/BLU | 13 | GRN/RED |
| 7 | PNK/GRN | (4) | GRN |

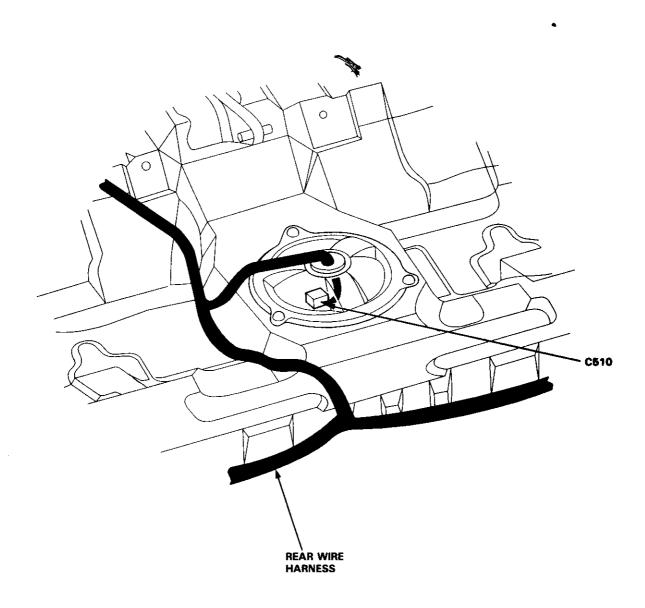
NOTE: • Different wires with the same color have been given a number suffix to distinguish them (for example YEL/BLK¹ and YEL/BLK² are not the same).

O: Related to Fuel and Emissions System.

• - Connector of male terminals: View from terminal side

- Connector of female terminals: View from wire side

^{**:} B18B1 engine





C510

1 2

| ① | BLK/WHT |
|---|---------|
| 2 | YEL/GRN |

NOTE: • Different wires with the same color have been given a number suffix to distinguish them (for example YEL/BLK¹ and YEL/BLK² are not the same).

- O: Related to Fuel and Emissions System.
- - Connector of male terminals: View from terminal side
 - Connector of female terminals: View from wire side

Troubleshooting

Troubleshooting Guide

NOTE: Across each row in the chart, the systems that could be sources of a symptom are ranked in the order they should be inspected starting with ①. Find the symptom in the left column, read across to the most likely source, then refer to the page listed at the top of that column. If inspection shows the system is OK, try the next most likely system ②, etc.

| PAGE | SYSTEM | | · | | | PGM-F | i | | | | |
|---------------------------|---------------------------------------|-----------------------------|----------------------------|--|--|---|--------------------------------|--|---------------------------------------|------------------------------|----------------------------|
| | | ENGINE CONTROL MODULE | HEATED OXYGEN SENSOR | MANIFOLD ABSOLUTE PRESSURE SENSOR | TOP DEAD CENTER/ CRANKSHAFT POSITION/ CYLINDER POSITION SENSOR | ENGINE COOLANT TEMPERA- TURE SENSOR | THROTTLE POSITION SENSOR | INTAKE AIR TEMPERA- TURE SENSOR | BARO- METRIC PRESSURE SENSOR | IGNITION OUTPUT SIGNAL | VEHICLE SPEED SENSOR |
| SYMPTOM | | 11-42 | 46, 47, 50 | 11-52 | 11-56 | 11-58 | 11-60 | 11-62 | 11-64 | 11-66 | 11-68 |
| | ON INDICATOR TURNS ON | (□1 or) <u>(□</u> (| - | - | | | - | - | | | \ <u></u> |
| MALFUNCTH LAMP (MIL) | ON INDICATOR * BLINKS | (or) (| or (III) | - 3 - | | -66- | 7 | 10 | 13 | 15 | -17- |
| ENGINE WOI | ∉'T START | 1 | | | 3 | | | | : | 3 | |
| DIFFICULT T ENGINE WHE | | BU | | 3 | 3 | 1 | | | | | |
| | WHEN COLD FAST IDLE OUT OF SPEC | BU | | | | 3 | | | | | |
| IRREGULAR | ROUGH IDLE | B∪ | | 3 | | | | | | | |
| IDLING | WHEN WARM RPM TOO HIGH | BU | | | | 3 | | | | | • |
| | WHEN WARM RPM TOO LOW | BU | | | | | | | | | |
| FREQUENT | WHILE WARMING UP | BU | | | | 3 | | | | | |
| STALLING | AFTER WARMING UP | BU | | | | | | | | | |
| | MISFIRE OR ROUGH RUNNING | BU | | 2 | 3 | | | | | | |
| POOR PERFORM- ANCE | FAILS EMISSION TEST | BU | 3 | 2 | | | | | | | |
| | LOSS OF POWER | BU | | 3 | | | 2 | | | | |

^{*} If codes other then those listed above are indicated, count the number of blinks again. If the MIL is in fact blinking these codes, replace the ECM.

| * * | USA: | | CANADA: | |
|-----|-------------|----------------|---------|------------|
| | MALFUNCTION | _ | CHECK | \ |
| | INDICATOR | - <u>[[@</u>] | ENGINE | -[HĀ] |
| | LAMP (MIL) | 7 \ | LIGHT | / <u>;</u> |

⁽BI) If the MIL is on while the engine is running, connect the SCS short connector to the service check connector. If no code is displayed (MIL stays on steady), the back-up system is in operation.

Substitute a known-good ECM and recheck. If the indication goes away, replace the original ECM.

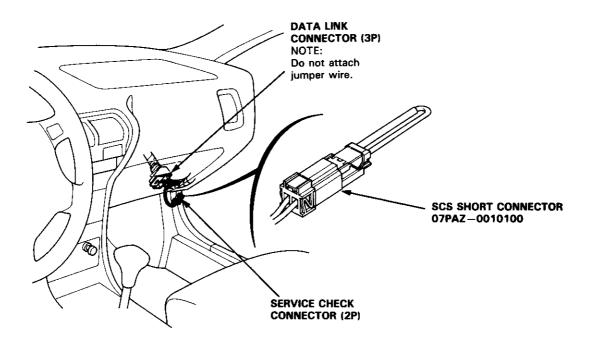


| | | PGM-FI | | | | IDLE CO | ONTROL | FUEL S | UPPLY | | |
|--------------------------------|--|----------------|-----------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|------------------------------|---------------------------|------------------|-------------------------|---------------|----------------------|
| ELECTRICAL LOAD DETECTOR | VARIABLE VALVE TIMING & VALVE LIFT ELECTRONIC CONTROL SOLENOID VALVE*** | TIMING & VALVE | KNOCK SENSOR | A/T FI SIGNAL A | A/T FI SIGNAL B | IDLE AIR CONTROL VALVE | OTHER IDLE CONTROLS | FUEL INJECTOR | OTHER FUEL SUPPLY | INTAKE AIR | EMISSION CONTROLS |
| 11-70 | 6-36 | 6-38 | 1,1-74 | 11-76 | 11-76 | 11-82 | 11-78 | 11-102 | 11-97 | 11-115 | 11-129 |
| | - | - | | | | | | <u>-</u> | | | |
| | <u></u> | - 22 | 23 | 30 = | 31 | -14- | | <u></u> | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | 2 | | |
| | | | | | | | | | 2 | | |
| | | | | | | 1 | 2 | | | | |
| | | | | | | 1 | 2 | 2 | | | |
| | | | | | | 1 | 2 | | | | |
| 3 | | | | | | 1 | 2 | 2 | | | |
| | | | | | | 1 | 2 | | 3 | | |
| | | | | | | 2 | | | 1 | | |
| | | | | | | | | 1 | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | 1 |
| | 3 | 3 | | | | | | 3 | 1) | 3 | |

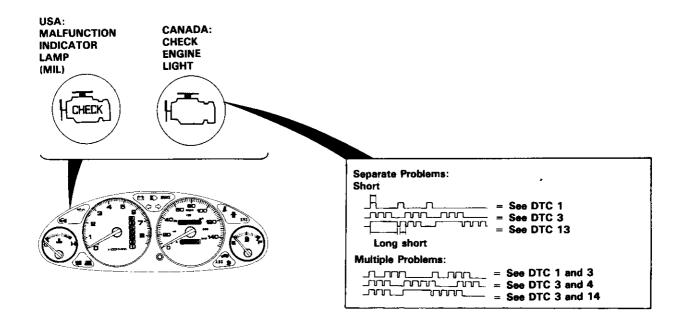
Troubleshooting

Self-diagnostic Procedures

- I. When the Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) has been reported on, do the following:
 - 1. Connect the SCS short connector to Service Check Connector as shown. (The 2P Service Check Connector is located under the dash on the passenger side of the car.) Turn the ignition switch on.

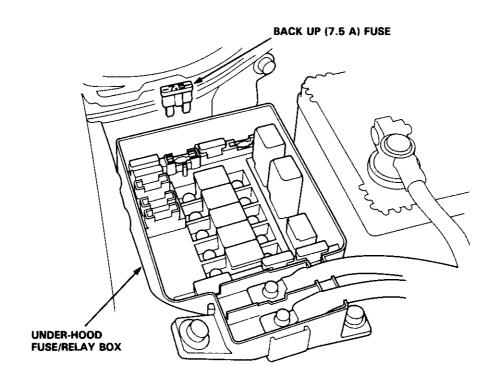


2. Note the Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC): The MIL indicates a code by the length and number of blinks. The MIL can indicate multiple component problems by blinking separate codes, one after another. Codes 1 through 9 are indicated by individual short blinks. Codes 10 through 43 are indicated by a series of long and short blinks. The number of long blinks equals the first digit, the number of short blinks equals the second digit. Sometimes the first blink is difficult to see; always count the blinks at least twice to verify the code.





- II. Engine Control Module (ECM) Reset Procedure
 - 1. Turn the ignition switch off.
 - 2. Remove the BACK UP (7.5 A) fuse from the under-hood fuse/relay box for 10 seconds to reset the ECM.



- III. Final Procedure (this procedure must be done after any troubleshooting)
 - 1. Remove the SCS Short Connector.

NOTE: If the SCS short connector is connected and there are no DTCs stored in the ECM, the MIL will stay on.

2. Do the ECM Reset Procedure.

(cont'd)

Troubleshooting

Self-diagnostic Procedures (cont'd) -

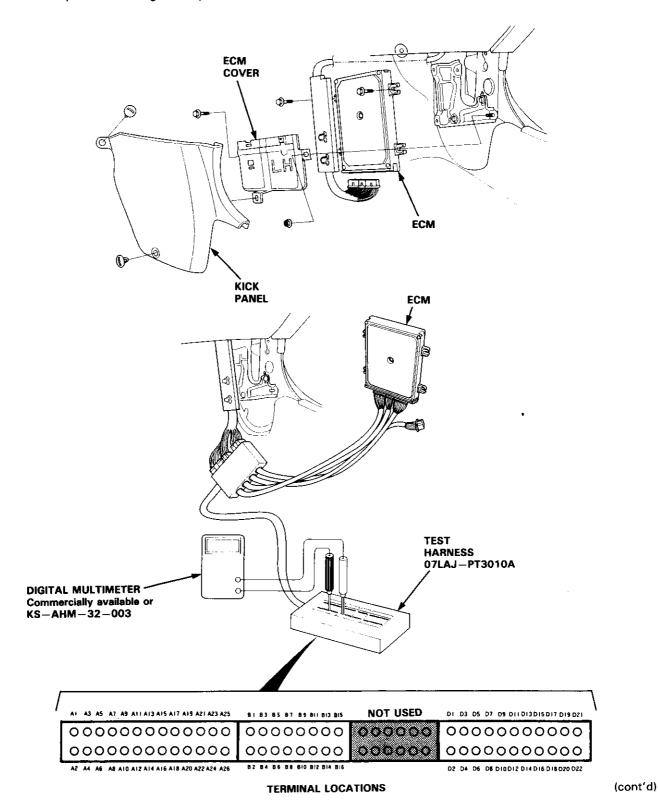
| DIAGNOSTIC TROUBLE CODE (DTC) | SYSTEM INDICATED | Page |
|-------------------------------------|---|--------|
| 0 | ENGINE CONTROL MODULE (ECM) | 11-42 |
| 1 | HEATED OXYGEN SENSOR (HO2S) | 11-46 |
| 3 | MANIFOLD ABSOLUTE PRESSURE (MAP SENSOR) | 11-52 |
| 4 | CRANKSHAFT POSITION (CKP SENSOR) | 11-56 |
| 6 | ENGINE COOLANT TEMPERATURE (ECT SENSOR) | 11-58 |
| 7 | THROTTLE POSITION (TP SENSOR) | 11-60 |
| 8 | TOP DEAD CENTER POSITION (TDC SENSOR) | 11-56 |
| 9 | No. 1 CYLINDER POSITION (CYP SENSOR) | 11-56 |
| 10 | INTAKE AIR TEMPERATURE (IAT SENSOR) | 11-62 |
| 13 | BAROMETRIC PRESSURE (BARO SENSOR) | 11-64 |
| 14 | IDLE AIR CONTROL (IAC VALVE) | 11-82 |
| 15 | IGNITION OUTPUT SIGNAL | 11-66 |
| 16 | FUEL INJECTOR | 11-102 |
| 17 | VEHICLE SPEED SENSOR (VSS) | 11-68 |
| 20 | ELECTRICAL LOAD DETECTOR (ELD) | 11-70 |
| 21 | VARIABLE VALVE TIMING & VALVE LIFT ELECTRONIC CONTROL SOLENOID VALVE (VTEC SOLENOID VALVE)* | 6-36 |
| 22 | VARIABLE VALVE TIMING & VALVE LIFT ELECTRONIC CONTROL PRESSURE SWITCH (VTEC PRESSURE SWITCH)* | 6-38 |
| 23 | KNOCK SENSOR (KS)* | 11-74 |
| 30 | A/T FI SIGNAL A | 11-76 |
| 31 | A/T FI SIGNAL B | 11-76 |
| 41 | HEATED OXYGEN SENSOR (HO2S) HEATER | 11-47 |
| 43 | FUEL SUPPLY SYSTEM | 11-50 |

*: B18C1 engine

- If codes other than those listed above are indicated, verify the code. If the code indicated is not listed above, replace the ECM.
- The MIL may come on, indicating a system problem when, in fact, there is a poor or intermittent electrical connection. First, check the electrical connections, clean or repair connections if necessary.
- The MIL and D₄ indicator light may light simultaneously when the Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) 6, 7 or 17. Check the PGM-FI system according to the PGM-FI system troubleshooting, then recheck the D₄ indicator light. If it lights, see page 14-50, 51.
- The MIL does not come on when there is a malfunction in the A/T FI signal or Electrical Load Detector (ELD) circuits. However, it will indicate the codes when the Service Check Connector is shorted.



If the inspection for a particular code requires the test harness, remove the right door sill molding and kick panel. Pull the carpet back to expose the ECM. Unbolt the ECM cover. Turn the ignition switch off and connect the test harness. Check the system according to the procedure described for the appropriate code(s) listed on the following pages.



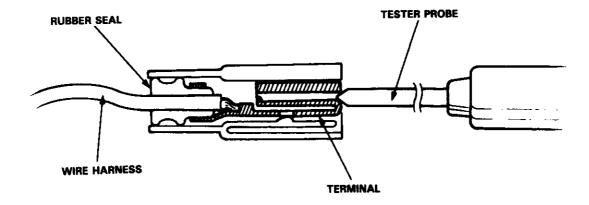
11-37

Troubleshooting

- Self-diagnostic Procedures (cont'd) -

CAUTION:

- Puncturing the insulation on a wire can cause poor or intermittent electrical connections.
- For testing at connectors other than the test harness, bring the tester probe into contact with the terminal from the connector side of wire harness connectors in the engine compartment. For female connectors, just touch lightly with the tester probe and do not insert the probe.





How to Read Flowcharts

A flowchart is designed to be used from start to final repair. It's like a map showing you the shortest distance. But beware: if you go off the "map" anywhere but a "stop" symbol, you can easily get lost.

(bold type) Describes the conditions or situation to start a troubleshooting flowchart.

Asks you to do something; perform a test, set up a condition etc.

DECISION Asks you about the result of an action, then sends you in the appropriate troubleshooting direction.

(bold type) The end of a series of actions and decisions, describes a final repair action and sometimes directs you to an earlier part of the flowchart to confirm your repair.

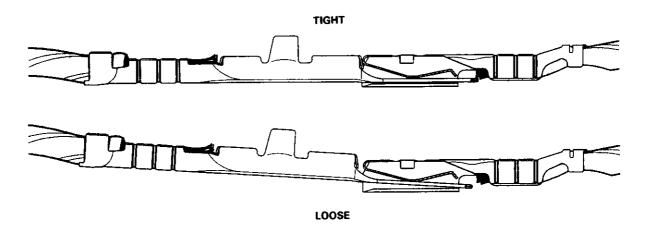
NOTE:

• The term "Intermittent Failure" is used in these charts. It simply means a system may have had a failure, but it checks out OK at this time. If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) on the dash does not come on, check for poor connections or loose wires at all connectors related to the circuit that you are troubleshooting (see illustration below).

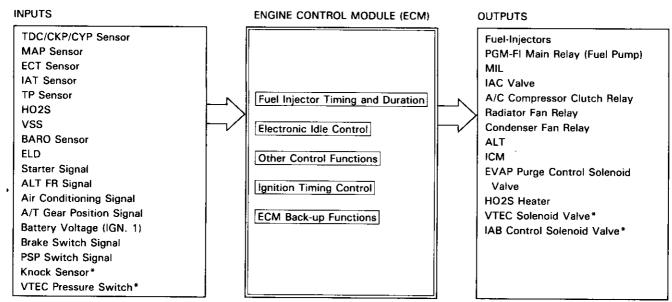
Most of the troubleshooting flowcharts have you reset the Engine Control Module (ECM) and try to duplicate the Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC). If the problem is intermittent and you can't duplicate the code, do not continue through the flowchart. To do so will only result in confusion and, possibly, a needlessly replaced ECM.

"Open" and "Short" are common electrical terms. An open is a break in a wire or at a connection. A short is an
accidental connection of a wire to ground or to another wire. In simple electronics, this usually means something won't
work at all. In complex electronics (like ECM's), this can sometimes mean something works, but not the way it's supposed to.

• If the electrical readings are not as specified when using the test harness, check the test harness connections before proceeding.



System Description -



*: B18C1 engine

PGM-FI System

The PGM-FI system on this model is a sequential multiport fuel injection system.

Fuel Injector Timing and Duration

The ECM contains memories for the basic discharge durations at various engine speeds and manifold pressures. The basic discharge duration, after being read out from the memory, is further modified by signals sent from various sensors to obtain the final discharge duration.

Idle Air Control

Idle Air Control Valve (IAC Valve)

When the engine is cold, the A/C compressor is on, the transmission is in gear (A/T only) the brake pedal is depressed, the P/S load is high, or the alternator is charging, the ECM controls current to the IAC Valve to maintain correct idle speed.

Ignition Timing Control

- The ECM contains mamories for basic ignition timing at various engine speeds and manifold pressures, Ignition timing
 is also adjusted for engine coolant temperature.
- A Knock Control System is also used. When detonation is detected by the knock sensor, the ignition timing is retarded (B18C1 engine).

Other Control Functions

- 1. Starting Control
 - When the engine is started, the ECM provides a rich mixture by increasing fuel injector duration.
- 2. Fuel Pump Control
 - When the ignition switch is initially turned on, the ECM supplies ground to the PGM-FI main relay that supplies current to the fuel pump for two seconds to pressurize the fuel system.
 - When the engine is running, the ECM supplies ground to the PGM-FI main relay that supplies current to the fuel pump.
 - When the engine is not running and the ignition is on, the ECM cuts ground to the PGM-FI main relay which cuts current to the fuel pump.



3. Fuel Cut-off Control

 During deceleration with the throttle valve closed, current to the fuel injectors is cut off to improve fuel economy at speeds over following rpm:

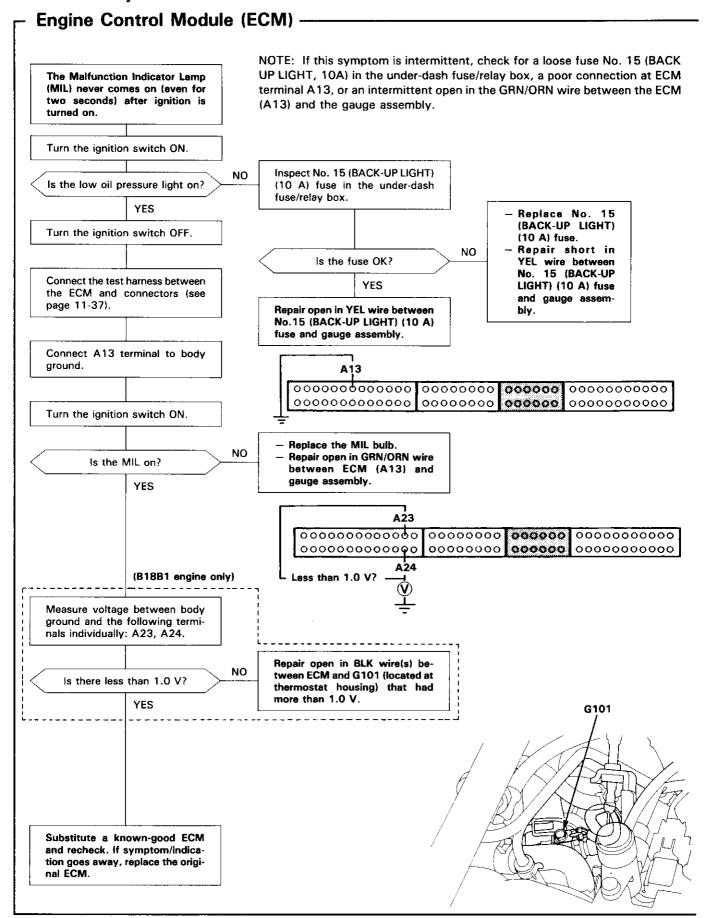
· B18B1 engine: 910 rpm (Canada model: 1,050 rpm)

• B18C1 engine: 950 rpm (Canada model: 1,050 rpm)

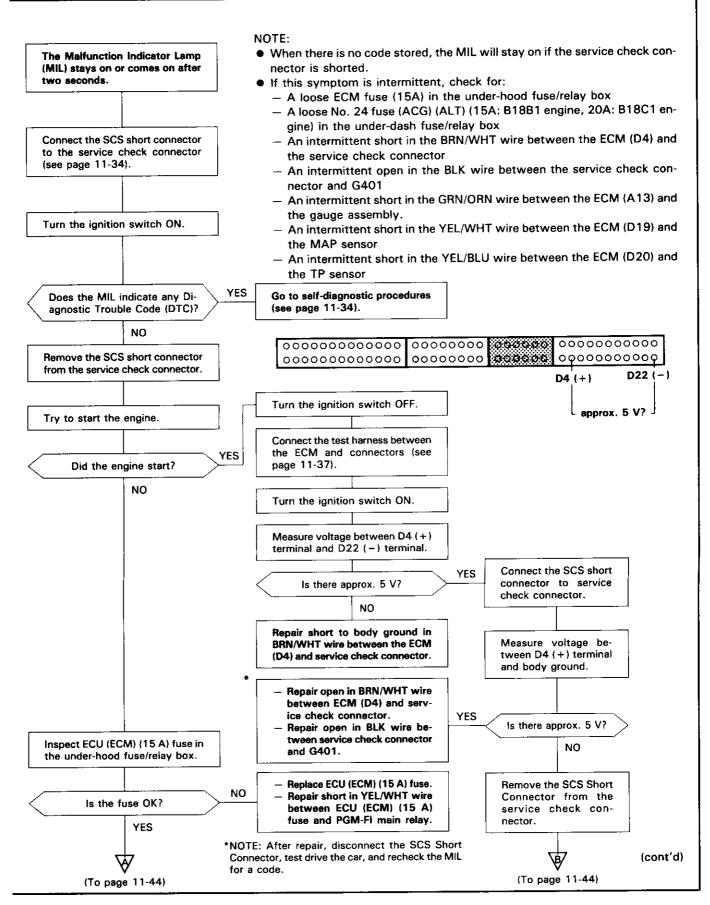
- Fuel cut-off action also takes place when engine speed exceeds, 7,000 rpm (B18B1 engine), 8,100 rpm (B18C1 engine), regardless of the position of the throttle valve, to protect the engine from over-revving.
- 4. A/C Compressor Clutch Relay
 When the ECM receives a demand for cooling from the air conditioning system, it delays the compressor from being
 energized, and enriches the mixture to assure smooth transition to the A/C mode.
- Evaporative Emission (EVAP) Purge Control Solenoid Valve
 When the engine coolant temperature is below 163°F (73°C), the ECM supplies a ground to the EVAP purge control
 solenoid valve which cuts vacuum to the EVAP purge control diaphragm valve.
- 6. Intake Air Bypass (IAB) Control Solenoid Valve When the engine rpm is below 5,750 rpm, the IAB control solenoid valve is activated by a signal from the ECM, intake air flows through the long intake path, then high torque is delivered. At speeds higher than 5,750 rpm, the solenoid valve is deactivated by the ECM, and intake air flows through the short intake path in order to reduce the resistance in airflow.

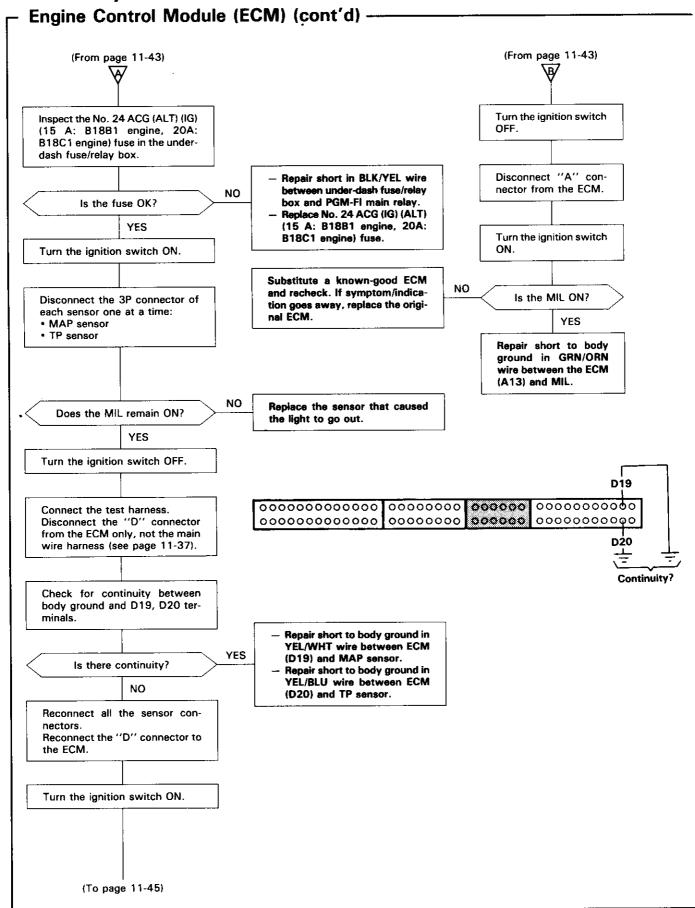
ECM fail-safe/back-up Functions

- Fail-safe Function
 When an abnormality occurs in a signal from a sensor, the ECM ignores that signal and assumes a pre-programmed value for that sensor that allows the engine to continue to run.
- Back-up Function
 When an abnormality occurs in the ECM itself, the fuel injectors are controlled by a back-up circuit independent of
 the system in order to permit minimal driving.
- 3. Self-diagnosis Function [Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL)]
 When an abnormality occurs in a signal from a sensor, the ECM supplies ground for the MIL and stores the code in erasable memory. When the ignition is initially turned on, the ECM supplies ground for the MIL for two seconds to check the MIL bulb condition.
- 4. Two Trip Detection Method To prevent false indications, the Two Trip Detection Method is used for the HO2S and fuel metering-related self-diagnostic functions. When an abnormality occurs, the ECM stores it in its memory. When the same abnormality recurs after the ignition switch is turned OFF and ON again, the ECM informs the driver by lighting the MIL. However, to ease troubleshooting, this function is cancelled when you short the service check connector. The MIL will then blink immediately when an abnormality occurs.

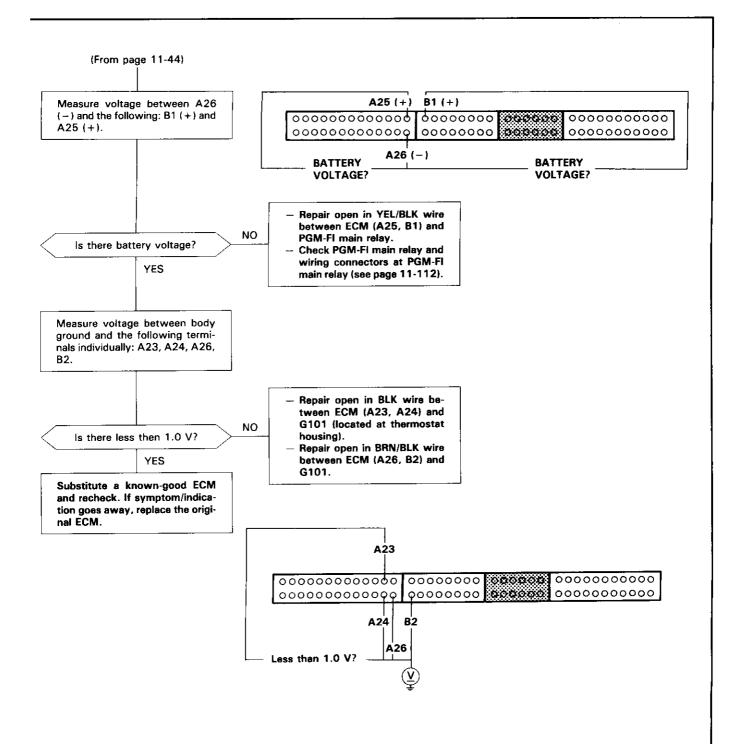










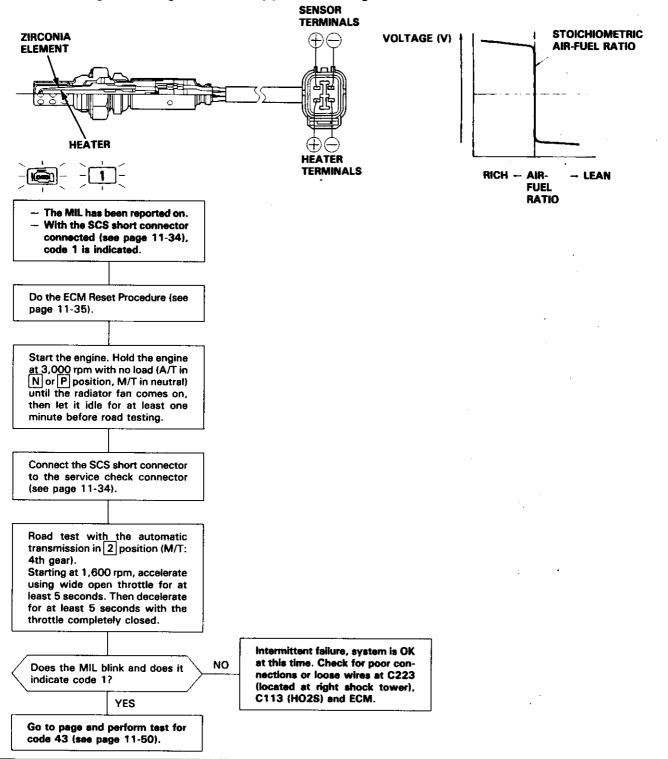


Heated Oxygen Sensor (HO2S) -

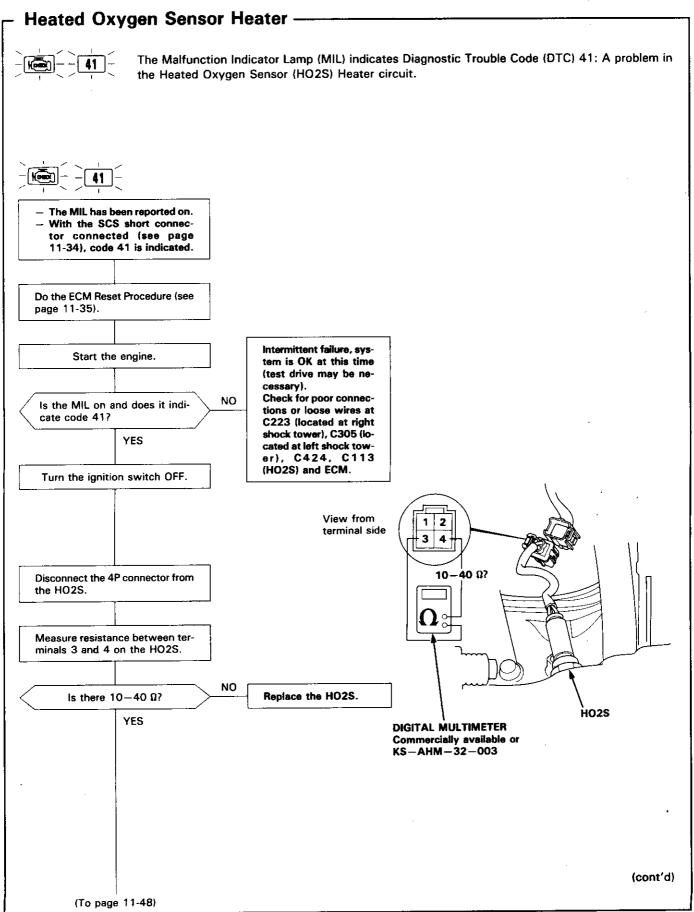
The Malfund

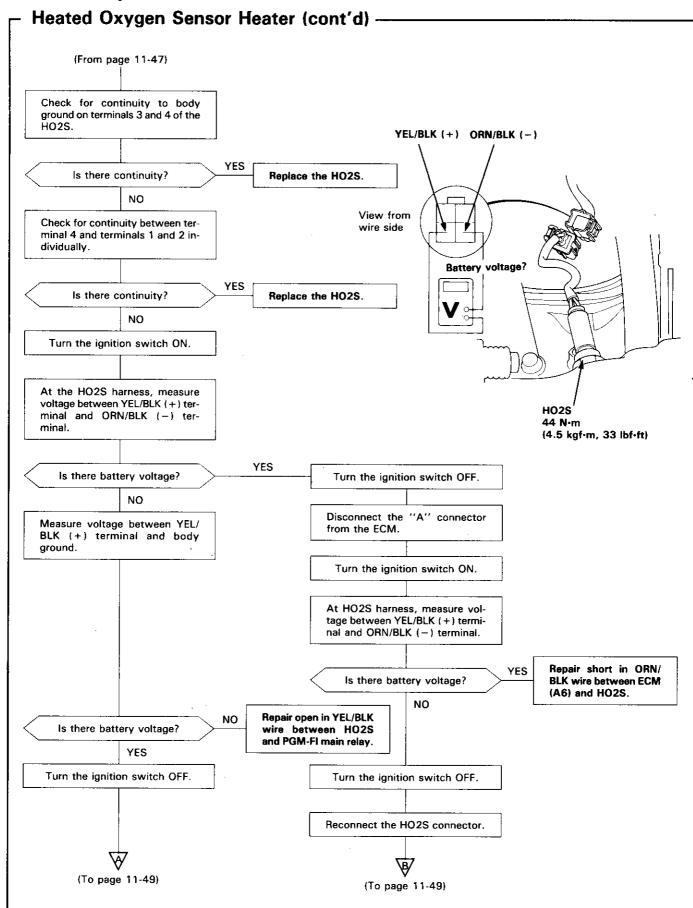
The Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) indicates Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) 1: A problem in the Heated Oxygen Sensor (HO2S) circuit.

The Heated Oxygen Sensor (HO2S) detects the oxygen content in the exhaust gas and signals the ECM. In operation, the ECM receives the signals from the sensor and varies the duration during which fuel is injected. To stabilize the sensor's output, the sensor has an internal heater and the sensor element is coated with a catalyst. The HO2S is installed in TWC housing (B18C1 engine) or exhaust pipe B (B18B1 engine).

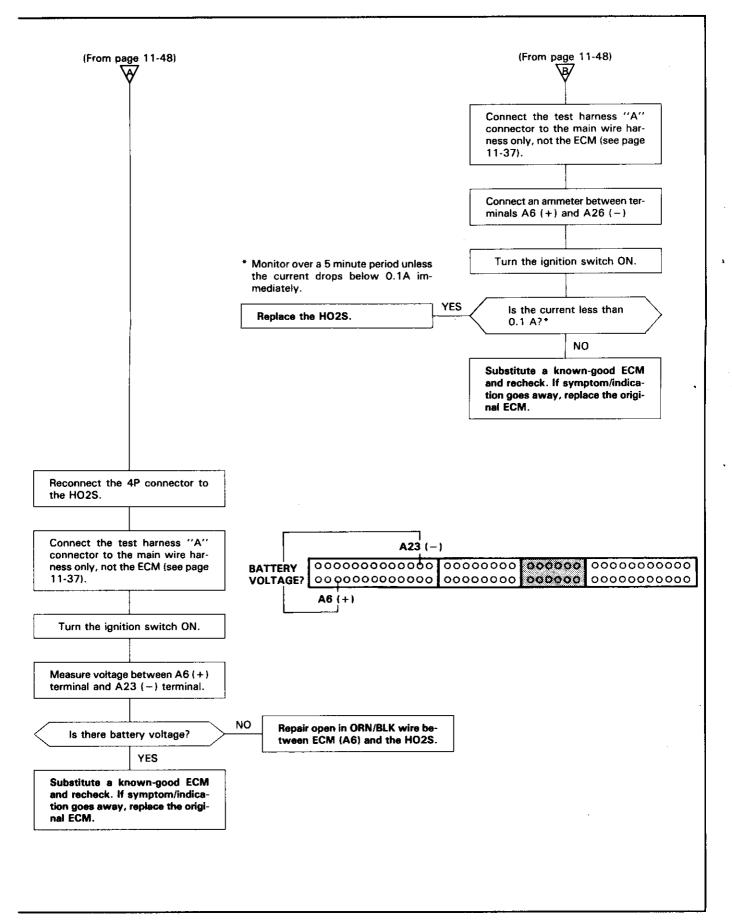


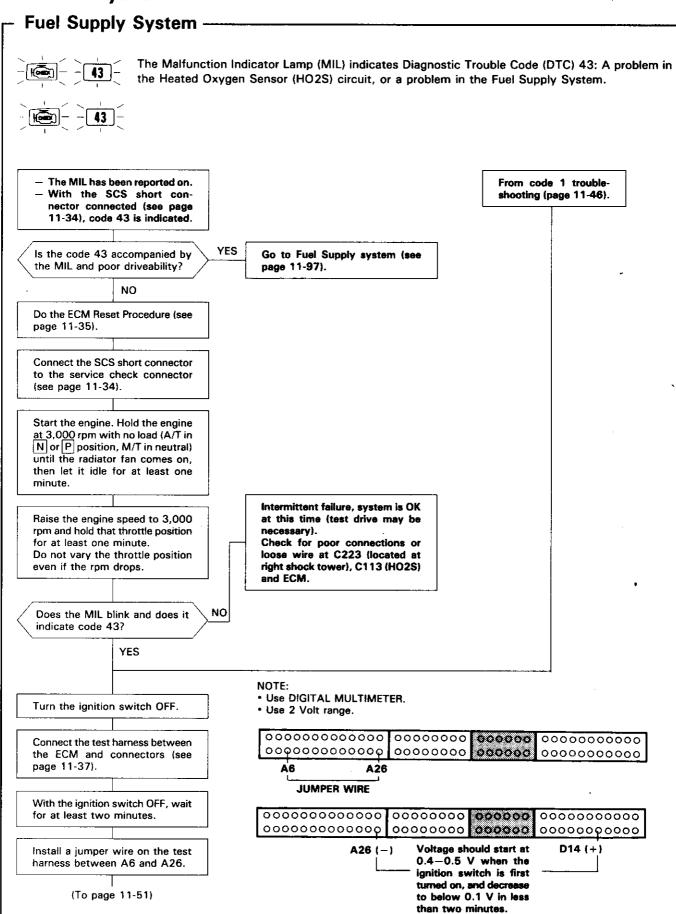




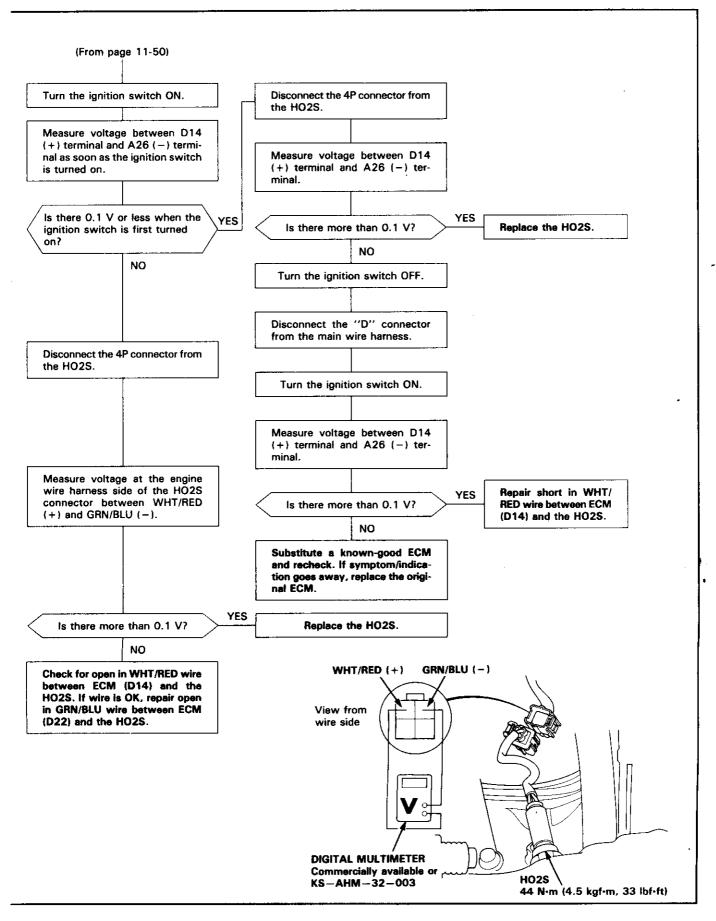


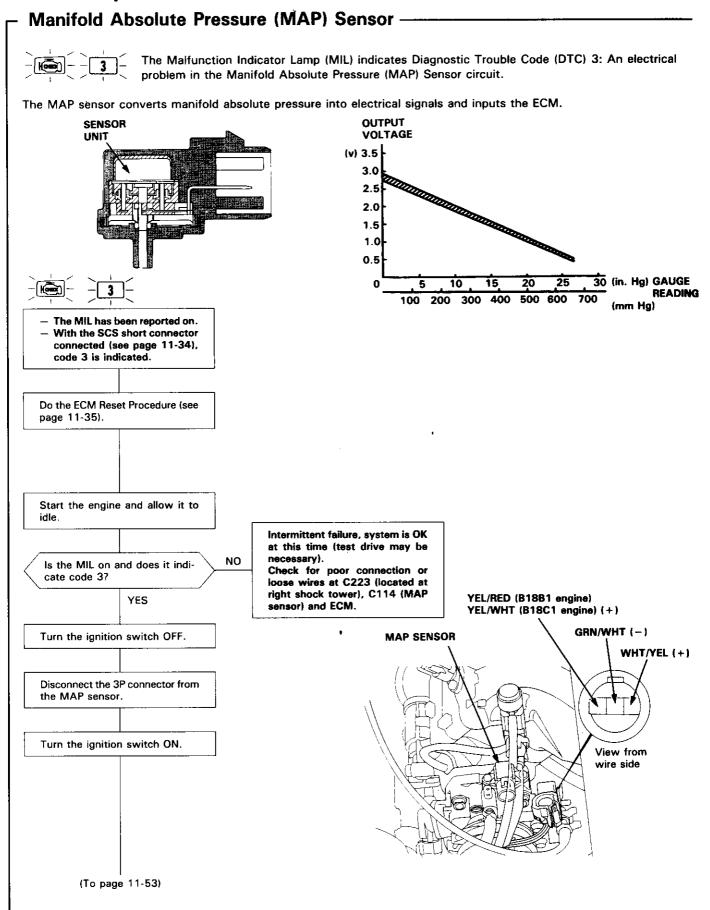




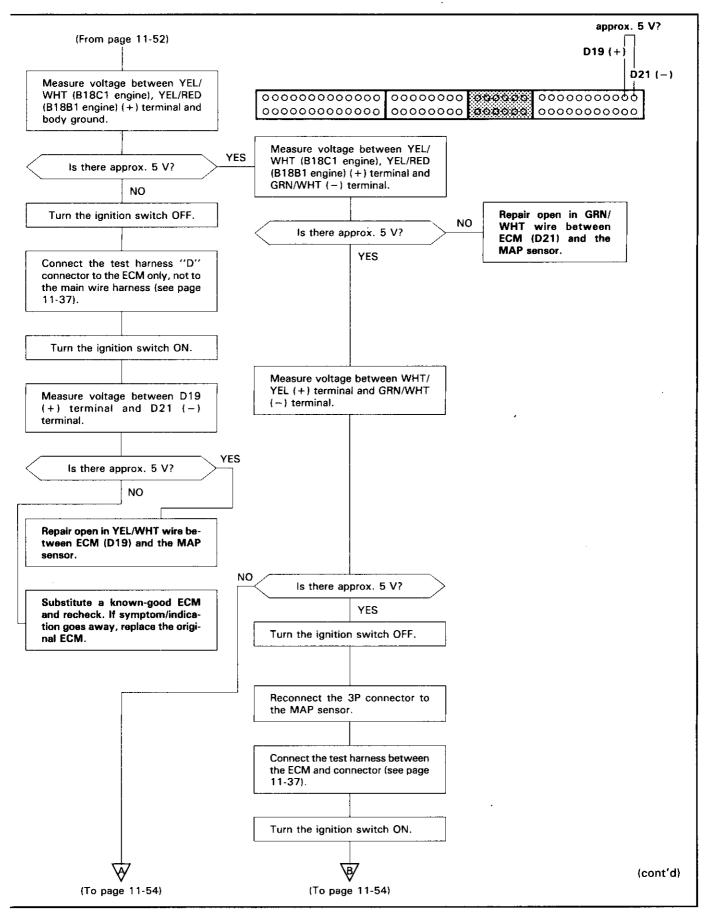


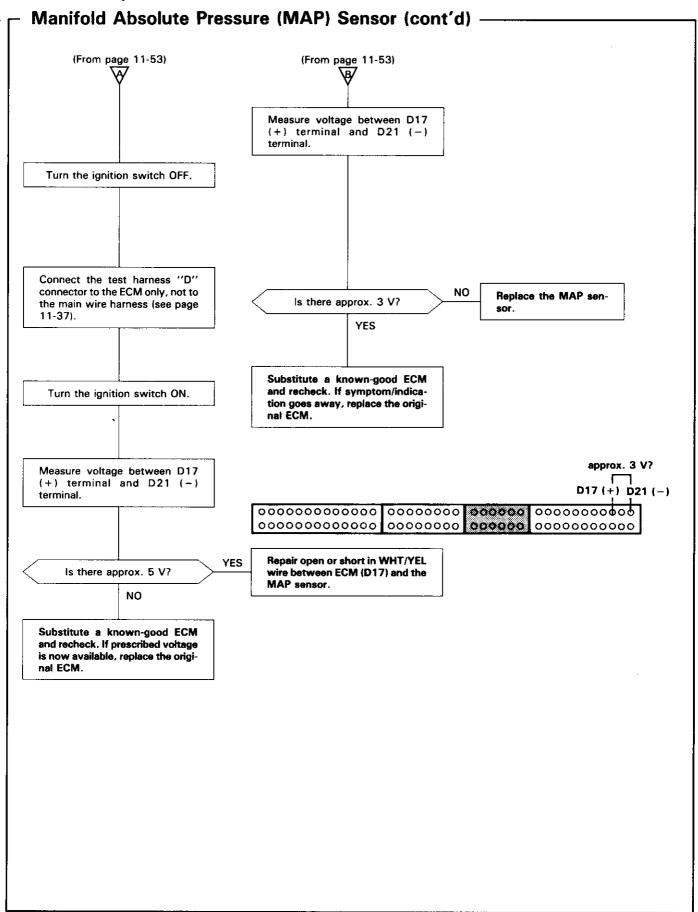




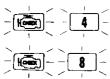




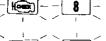




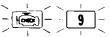
TDC/CKP/CYP Sensor



The Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) indicates Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) 4: A problem in the Crankshaft Position (CKP) Sensor circuit.

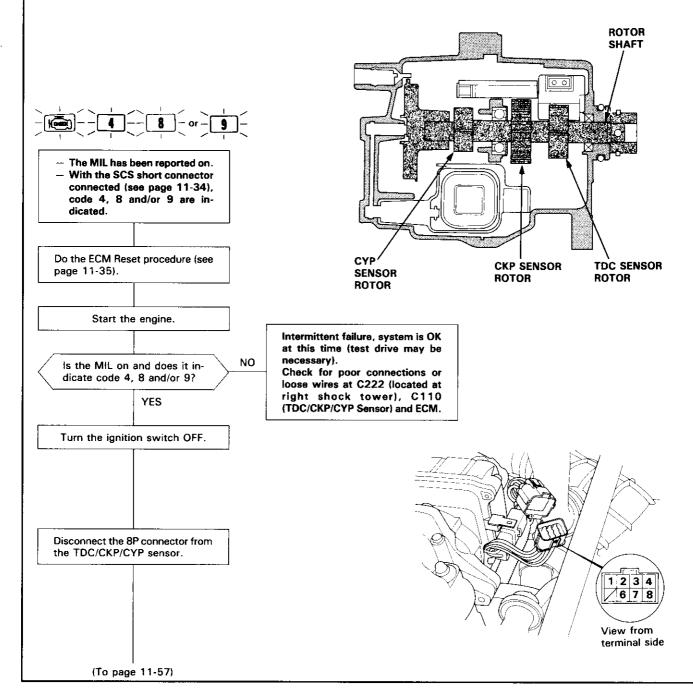


The Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) indicates Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) 8: A problem in the Top Dead Center (TDC) Sensor circuit.

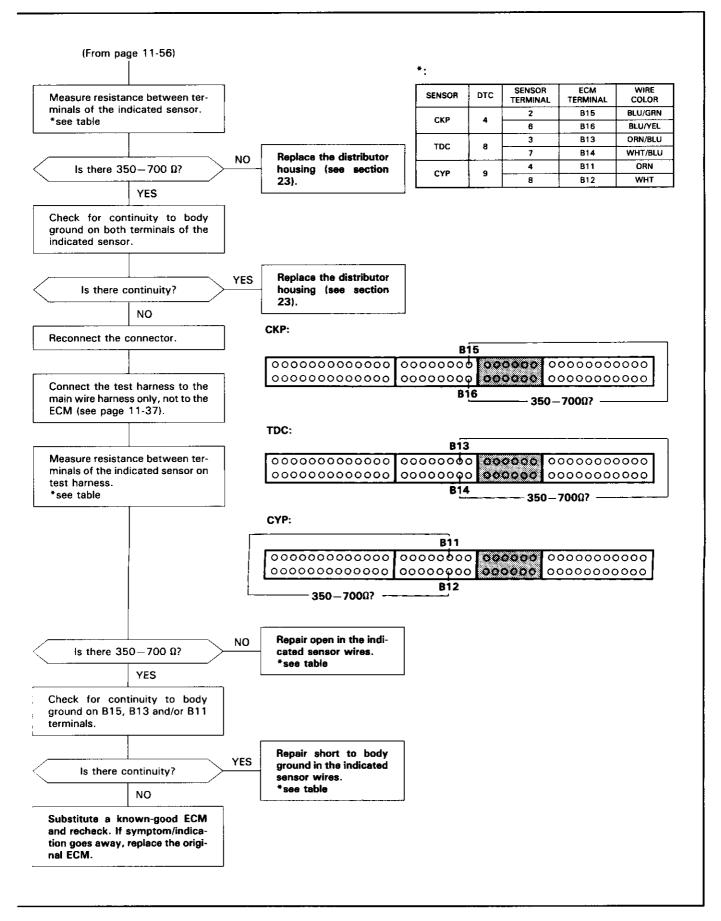


The Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) indicates Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) 9: A problem in the Cylinder Position (CYP) Sensor circuit.

The CKP Sensor determines timing for fuel injection and ignition of each cylinder and also detects engine speed. The TDC Sensor determines ignition timing at start-up (cranking) and when crank angle is abnormal. The CYP Sensor detects the position of No. 1 cylinder for sequential fuel injection to each cylinder.

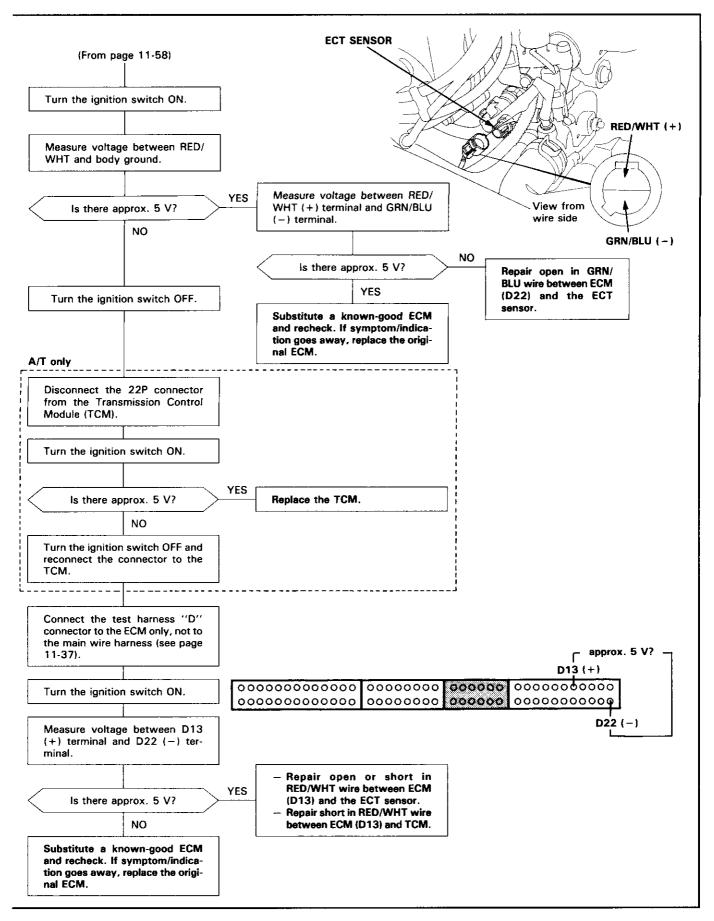


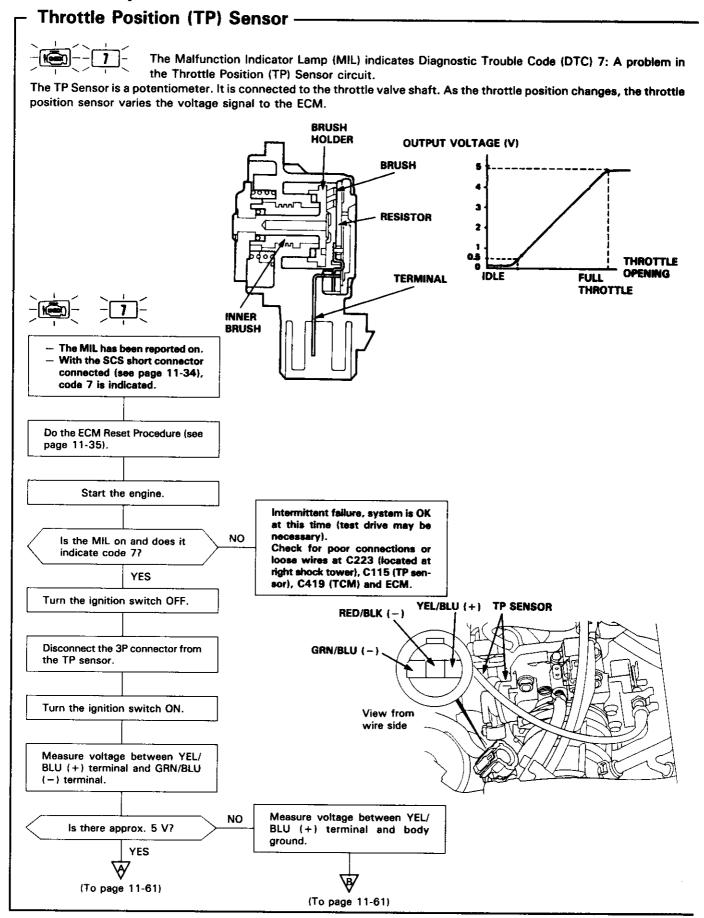




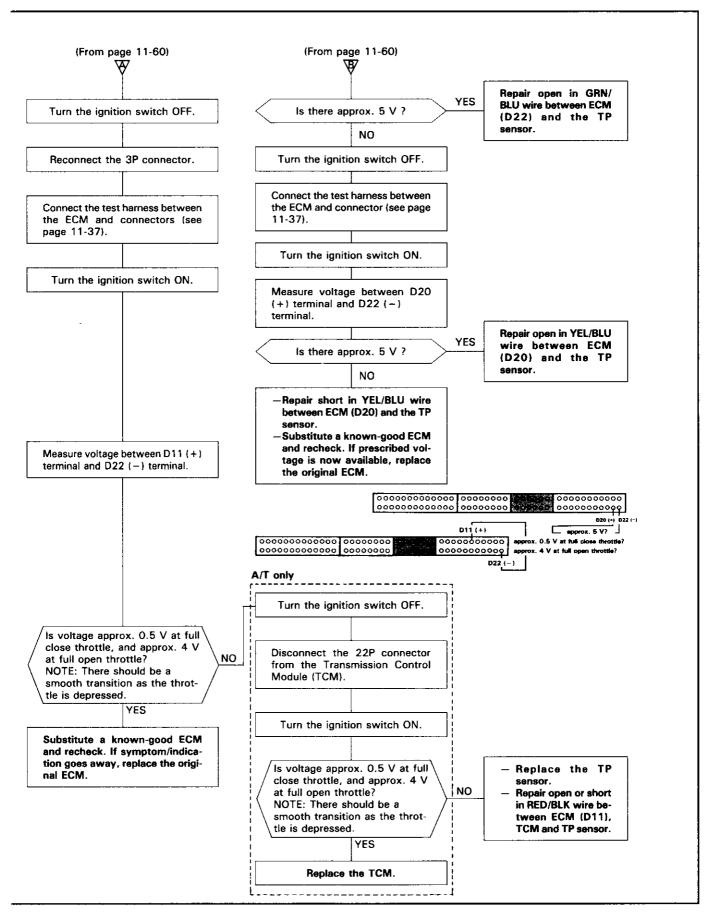
Engine Coolant Temperature (ECT) Sensor The Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) indicates Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) 6: A problem in the Engine Coolant Temperature (ECT) Sensor circuit. The ECT Sensor is a temperature dependant resistor (thermistor). The resistance of the thermistor decreases as the engine coolant temperature increases as shown below. RESISTANCE THERMISTOR -4 32 68 104 140 176 212 248 ('F) -20 0 20 40 60 80 100 120 ('C) **ENGINE COOLANT TEMPERATURE** The MIL has been reported on. With the SCS short connector connected (see page 11-34), code 6 is indicated. Do the ECM Reset Procedure (see page 11-35). Turn the ignition switch ON. Intermittent failure, system is OK at this time (test drive may be necessary). NO Is the MIL on and does it indi-Check for poor connections or cate code 6? loose wires at C223 (located at right shock tower, C111 (ECT YES sensor), C419 (TCM) and ECM. Start the engine. Hold the engine at 3,000 rpm with no load (A/T in N or P position, M/T in neutral) until the radiator fan comes on, then let it idle. Turn the ignition switch OFF. Disconnect the 2P connector from the ECT sensor. Measure resistance between the 2 terminals on the ECT sensor. NO Is there 200-400 Ω ? Replace the ECT sensor. YES (To page 11-59)







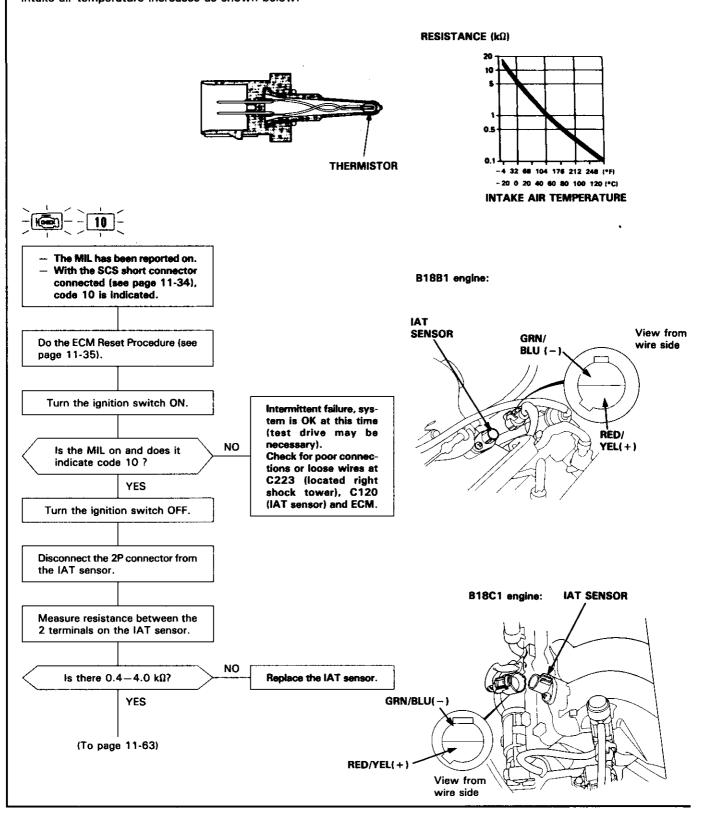




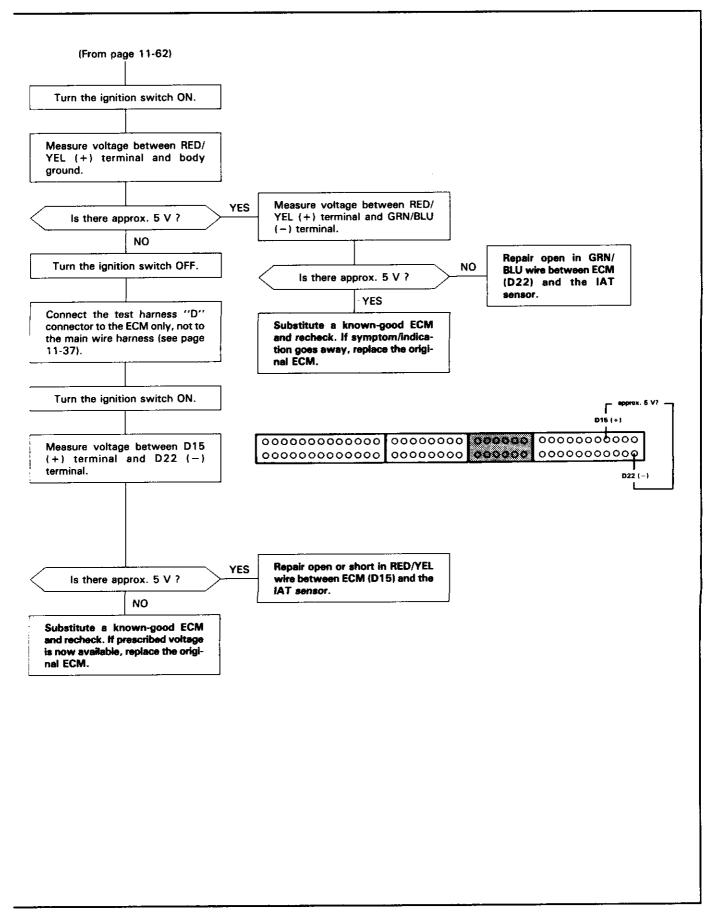
Intake Air Temperature (IAT) Sensor -

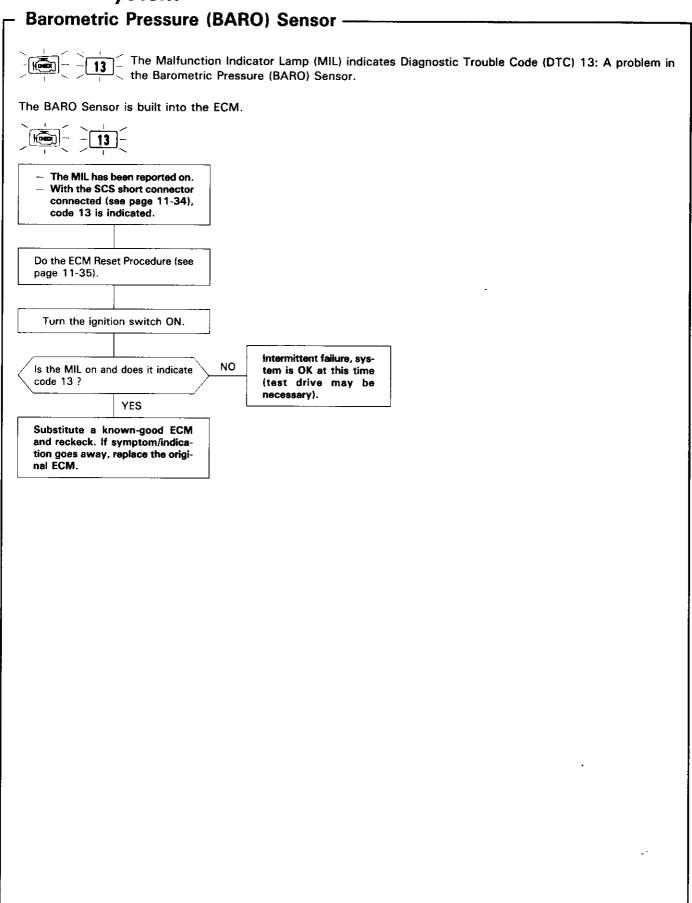
The Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) indicates Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) 10: A problem in the Intake Air Temperature (IAT) Sensor circuit.

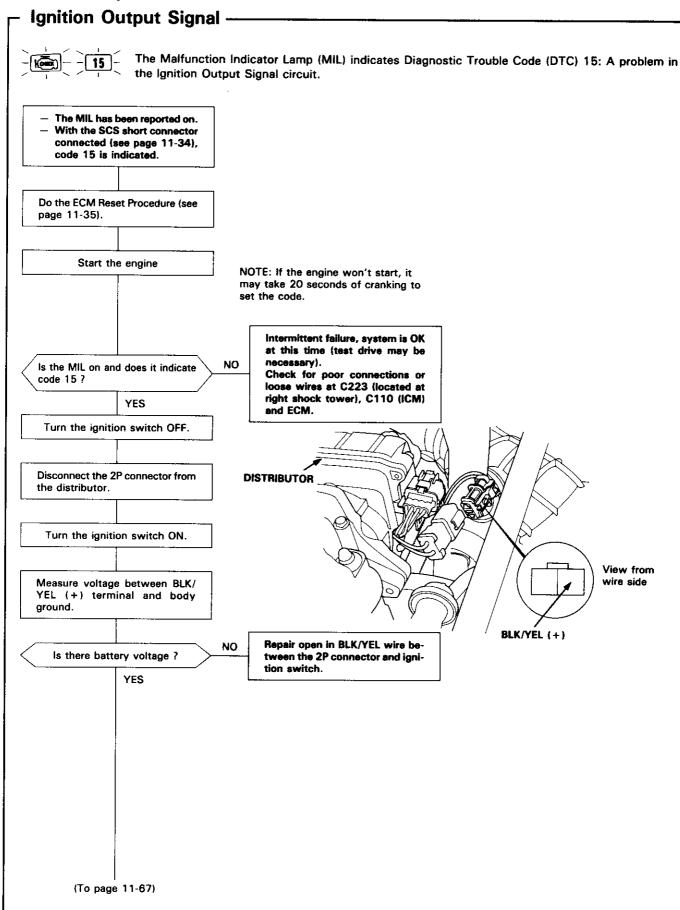
The IAT Sensor is a temperature dependant resistor (thermistor). The resistance of the thermistor decreases as the intake air temperature increases as shown below.



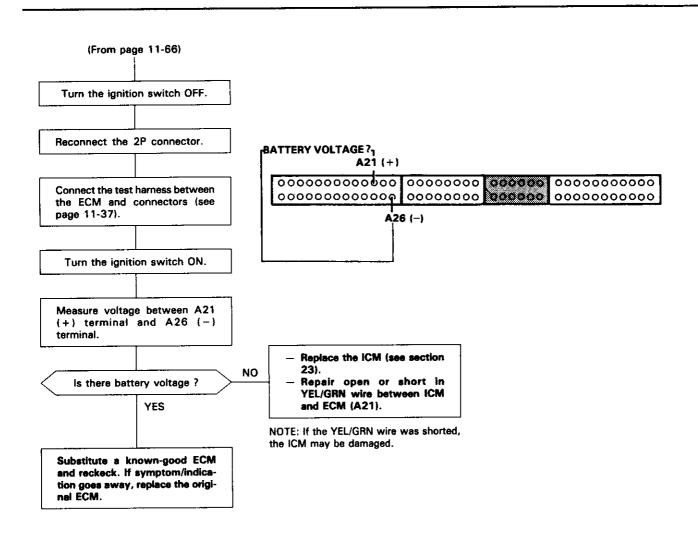


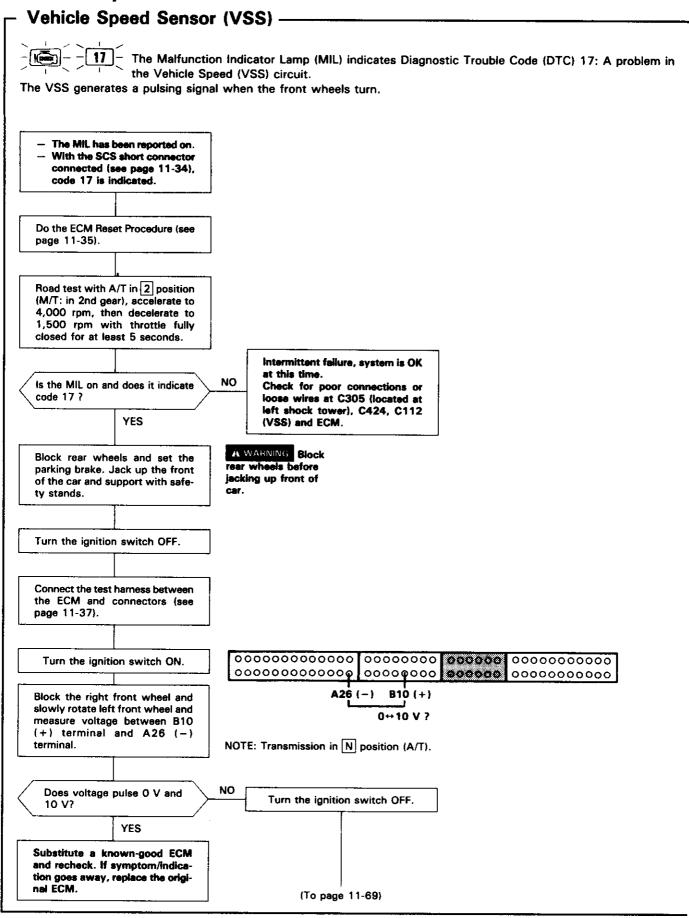




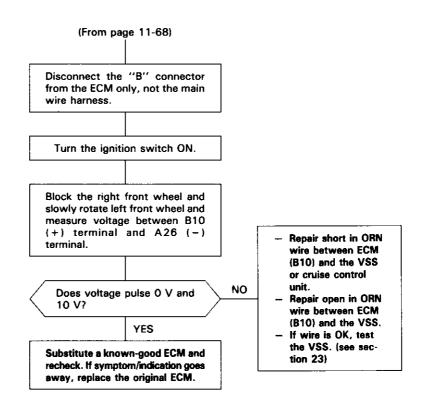


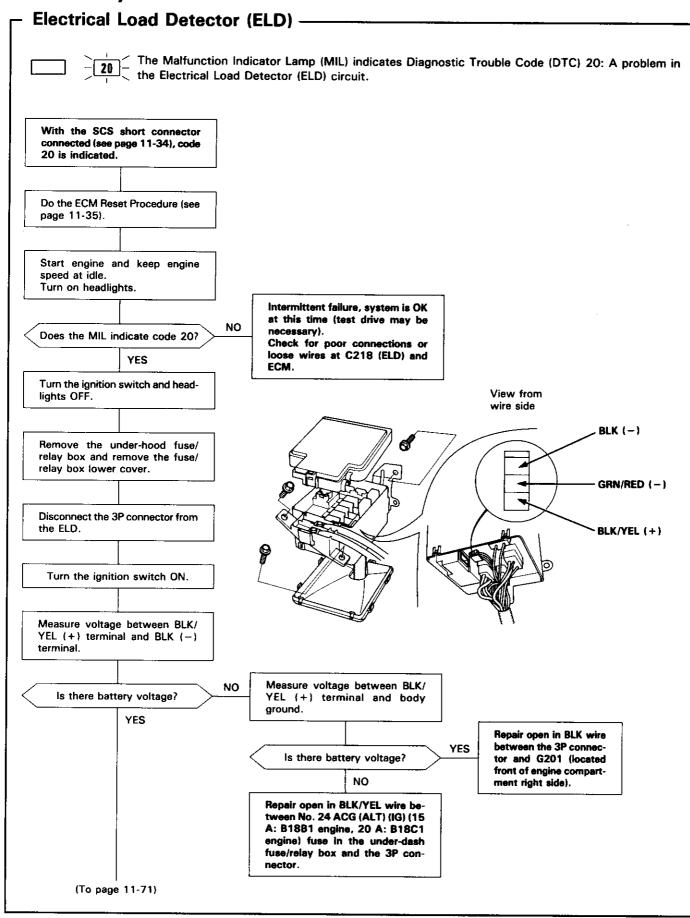




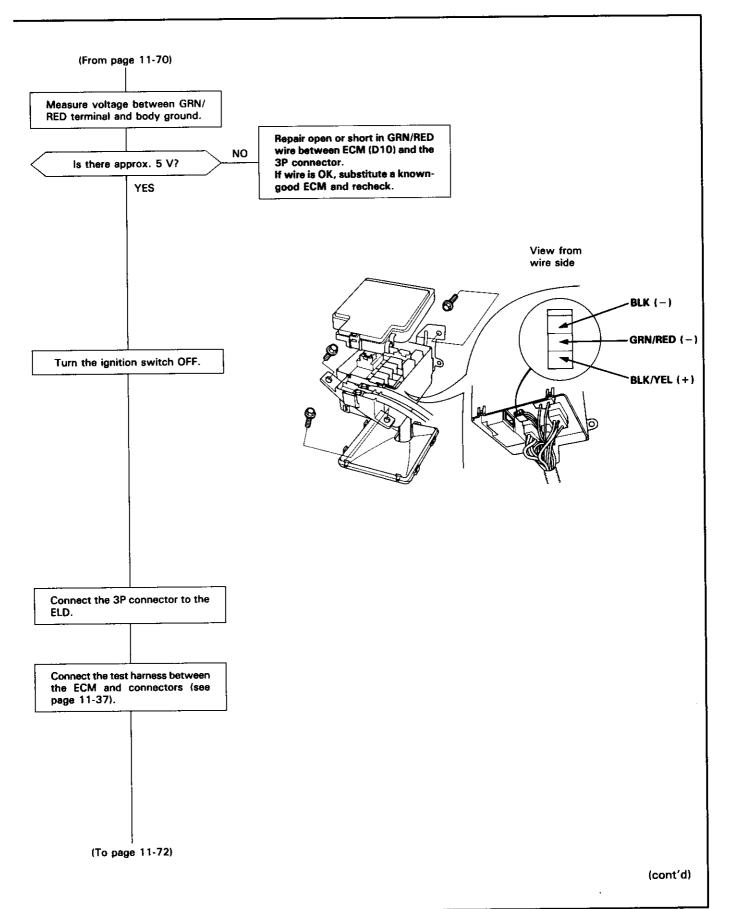


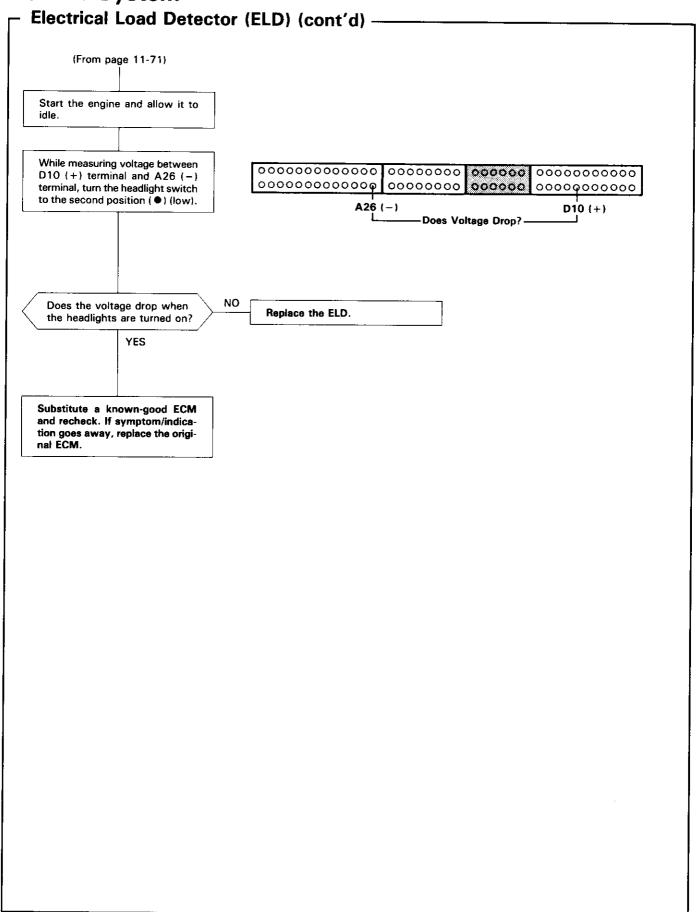


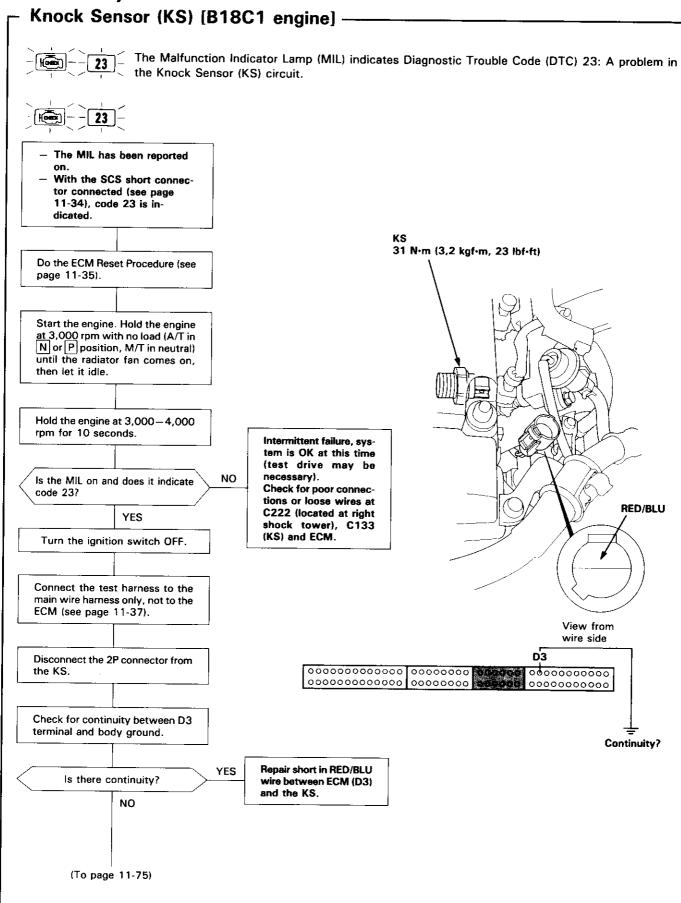




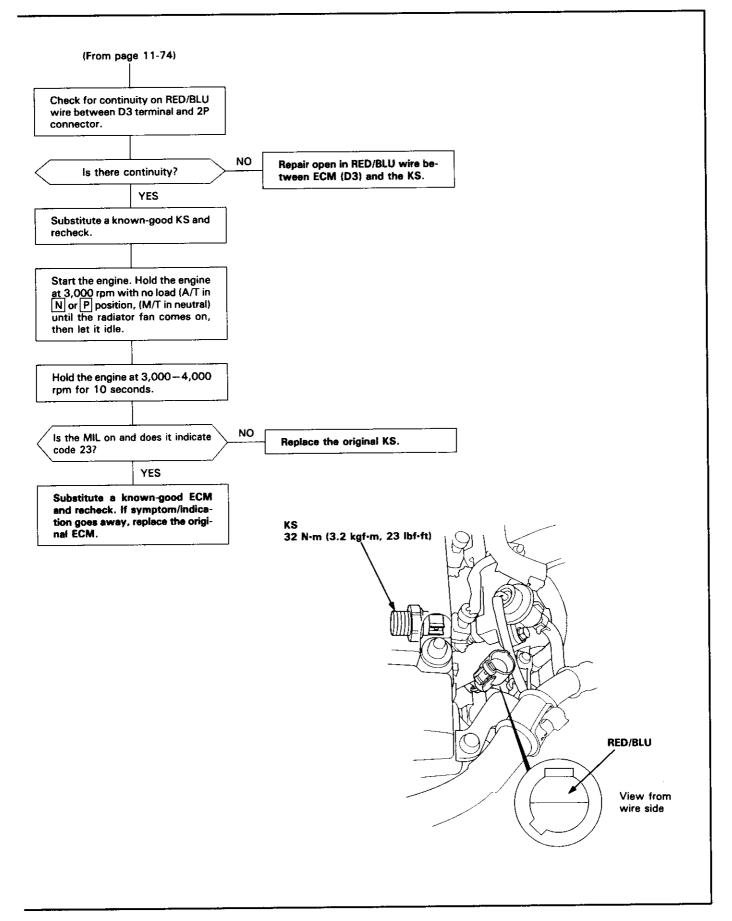






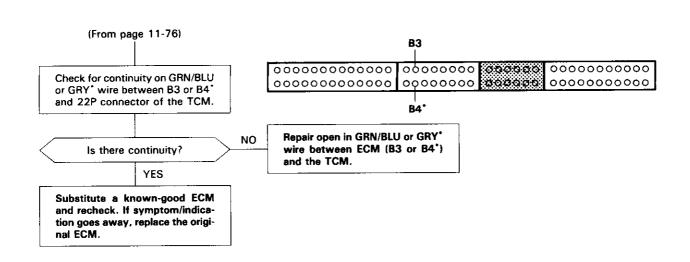






A/T FI Signal A/B (A/T only) The Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) indicates Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) 30: A problem in the A/T FI Signal A circuit between Transmission Control Module (TCM) and ECM. The Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) indicates Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) 31: A problem in the A/T FI Signal B circuit between Transmission Control Module (TCM) and ECM. With the SCS short connector connected (see page 11-34), code 30 and/or 31 are indicated. Do the ECM Reset Procedure (see page 11-35). Test drive necessary. Drive the car for several miles so that the transmission upshifts and downshifts several times. Intermittent failure, system is OK at this time. Does the MIL indicate code NO Check for poor connections or 30 and/or 31? loose wires at C419 (TCM) and ECM. YES Turn the ignition switch OFF. Connect the test harness to the main harness only, not to the ECM (see page 11-37). Disconnect the 22P connector 000000000000 0000000 **0000**00 0000000000 from the TCM. **B4**° Continuity? Continuity? Check for continuity between B3 and/or B4° terminal and body ground. *: code 31 (A/T FI signal B) Repair short in GRN/BLU or GRY* YES is there continuity? wire between ECM (B3 or B4*) and the TCM. NO (To page 11-77)





System Troubleshooting Guide -

NOTE:

- Across each row in the chart, the sub-systems that could be sources of a symptom are ranked in the order they should
 be inspected, starting with ①. Find the symptom in the left column, read across to the most likely source, then refer
 to the page listed at the top of that column. If inspection shows the system is OK, try the next system ②, etc.
- If the idle speed is out of specification and the Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) does not blink Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) 14, go to inspection described on page 11-81.

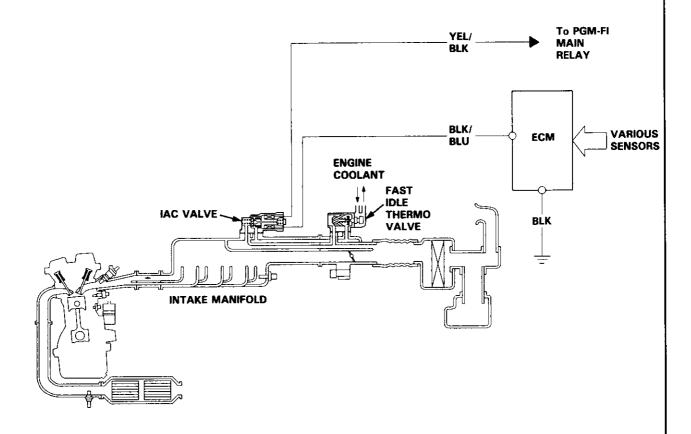
| PAGE | SUB-SYSTEM | IDLE ADJUSTING SCREW | IDLE AIR CONTROL VALVE | AIR CONDI- TIONING SIGNAL | ALTER- NATOR FR SIGNAL | AUTOMATIC TRANSAXLE GEAR POSITION SIGNAL | BRAKE SWITCH SIGNAL | STARTER SWITCH SIGNAL | POWER STEERING PRESSURE SWITCH SIGNAL | FAST IDLE THERMO VALVE | HOSES AND CONNEC- TIONS |
|---|---|----------------------------|------------------------------|------------------------------------|------------------------------|--|---------------------------|-----------------------------|---|------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| SYMPTOM | SYMPTOM | | 11-82 | 11-84 | 11-86 | 11-88 | 11-90 | 11-92 | 11-93 | 11-94 | |
| DIFFICULT TO START ENGINE WHEN COLD | | | | | | | | 2 | | 0 | |
| WHEN COLD FAST IDLE OUT OF SPEC (1,000-2,000 rpm) | | 3 | 2 | | | | | | | 1 | |
| ROUGH IDLE | | | 2 | | | | | | | | 0 |
| WHEN WAR | WHEN WARM RPM TOO HIGH | | • | | | | | | 3 | 2 | 3 |
| | Idle speed is below specified rpm (no load) | 2 | 1 | | | | | | | | |
| | Idle speed does not increase after initial start up. | | ① | | | | | | | | |
| WHEN WARM RPM | On models with automatic transmission, the idle speed drops in gear | | 2 | | | 0 | | | | | |
| TOO LOW | Idle speeds drops when air conditioner in ON | | 2 | 0 | | | | | | | |
| | Idle speed drops when steering wheel is turning | | 2 | | | | | | 0 | | |
| | Idle speed fluctuates with electrical load | | 2 | | 3 | | | | | | 0 |
| FREQUENT STALLING | WHILE WARMING UP | 2 | ① | | | | | | | | |
| | AFTER WARMING UP | ① | 2 | | | | | | | | |
| FAILS EMISSION TEST | | | | | | | | | | | 0 |



System Description

The idle speed of the engine is controlled by the Idle Air Control (IAC) Valve.

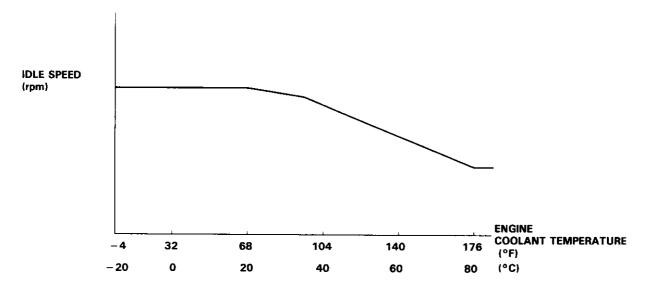
The valve changes the amount of air bypassing into the intake manifold in response to electric current controlled by the ECM. When the IAC Valve is activated, the valve opens to maintain the proper idle speed.



(cont'd)

- System Description (cont'd) -

- 1. After the engine starts, the IAC valve opens for a certain time. The amount of air is increased to raise the idle speed about 150-300 rpm.
- 2. When the coolant temperature is low, the IAC valve is opened to obtain the proper fast idle speed. The amount of bypassed air is thus controlled in relation to the engine coolant temperature.



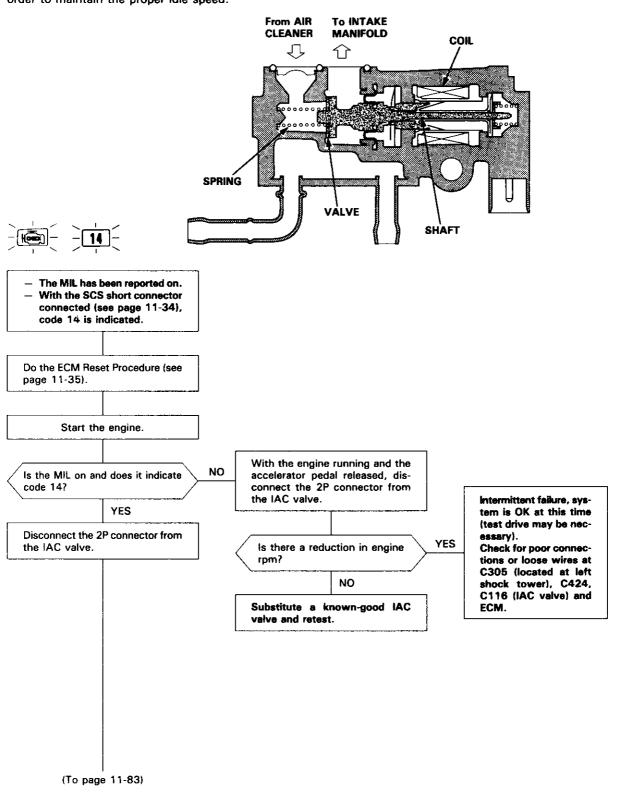


- 1. When the idle speed is out of specification and the Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) does not blink Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) 14, check the following items:
 - · Adjust the idle speed (see page 11-95)
 - · Air conditioning signal (see page 11-84)
 - ALT FR signal (see page 11-86)
 - A/T gear position signal (see page 11-88)
 - Brake switch signal (see page 11-90)
 - Starter switch signal (see page 11-92)
 - PSP switch signal (see page 11-93)
 - Fast idle thermo valve (see page 11-94)
 - · Hoses and connections
 - · IAC valve and its mounting O-rings
- 2. If the above items are normal, substitute a known-good IAC valve and readjust the idle speed (see page 11-95).
 - If the idle speed still cannot be adjusted to specification (and the MIL does not blink code 14) after IAC valve replacement, substitute a known-good ECM and recheck. If symptom goes away, replace the original ECM.

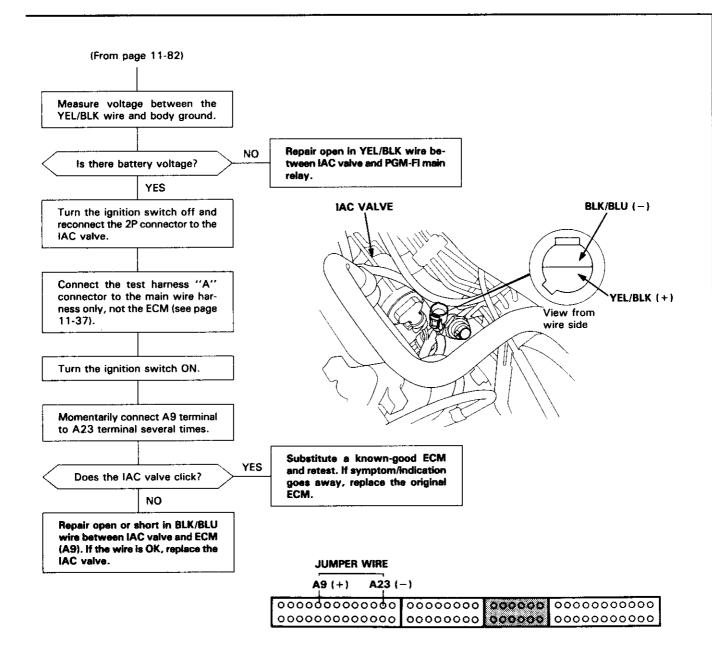
Idle Air Control (IAC) Valve

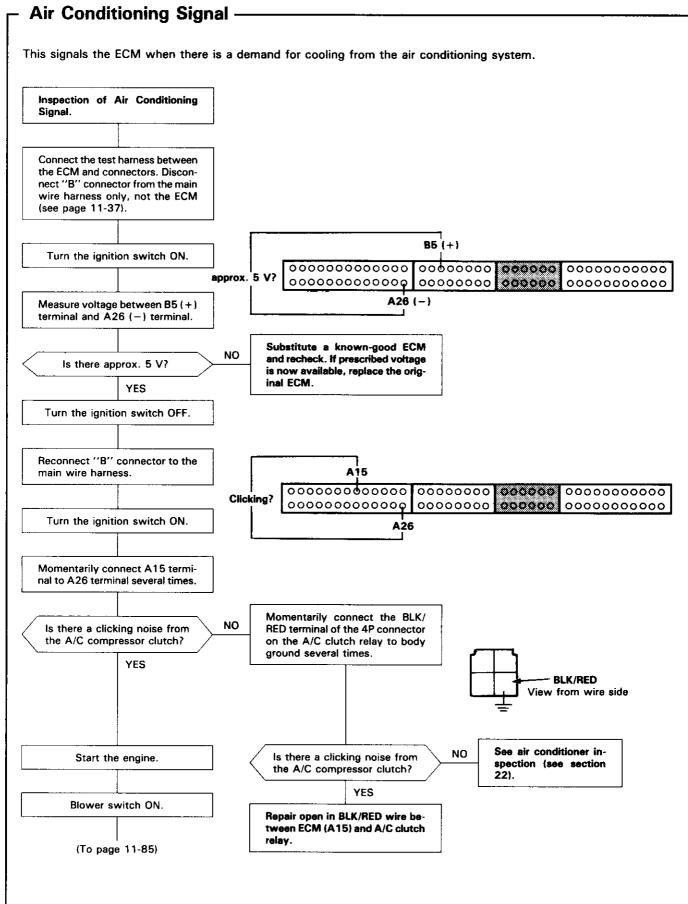
The Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) indicates Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) 14: A problem in the Idle Air Control (IAC) Valve circuit.

The IAC Valve changes the amount of air bypassing the throttle body in response to a current signal from the ECM in order to maintain the proper idle speed.

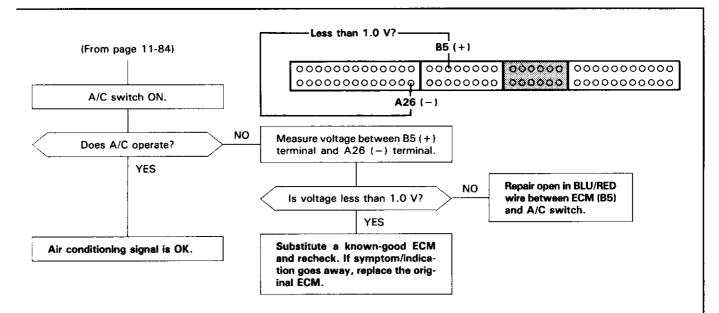


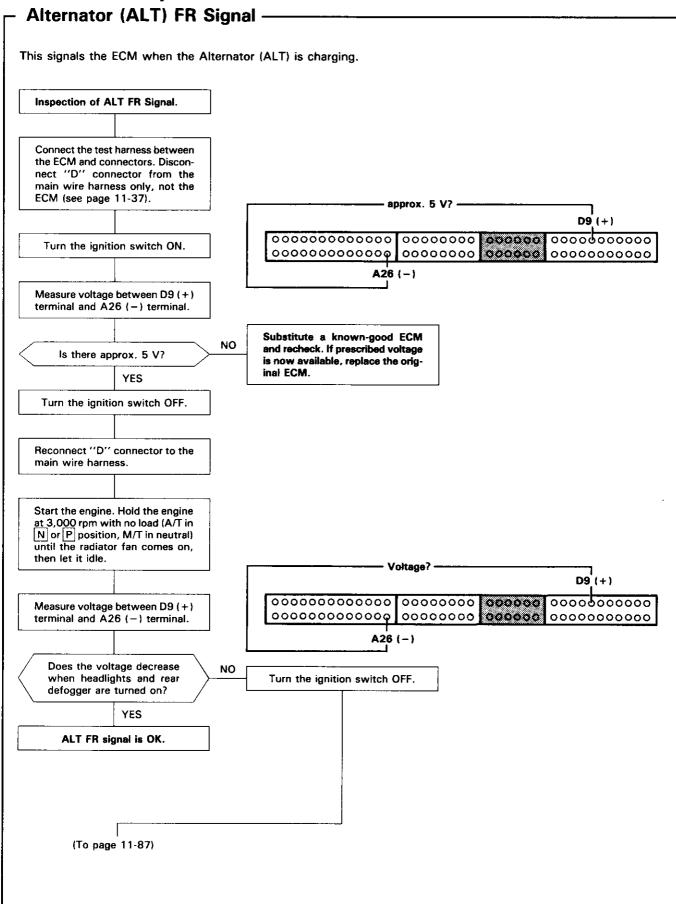




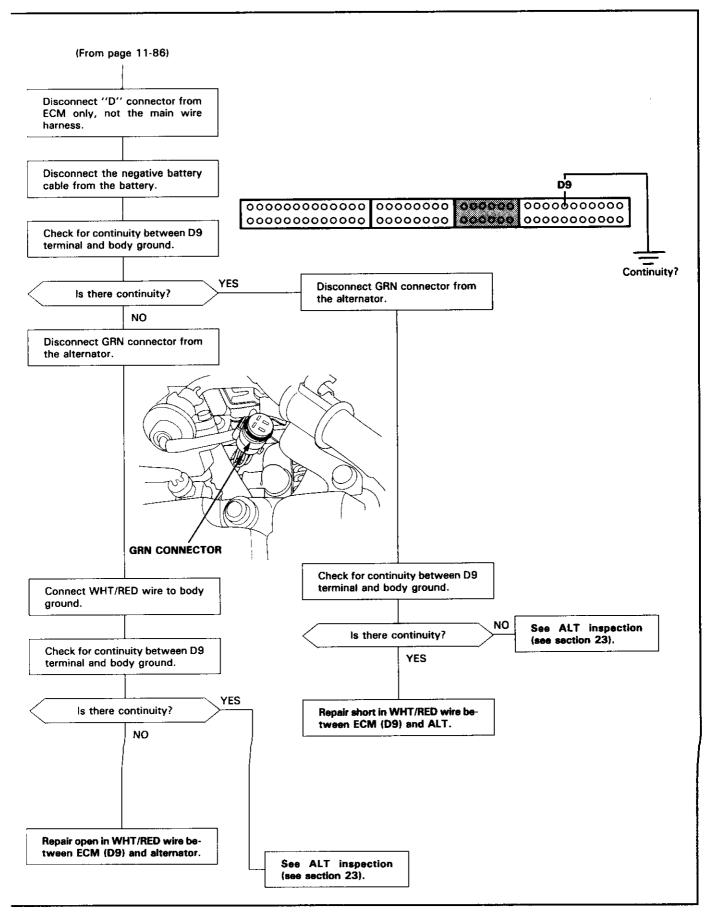


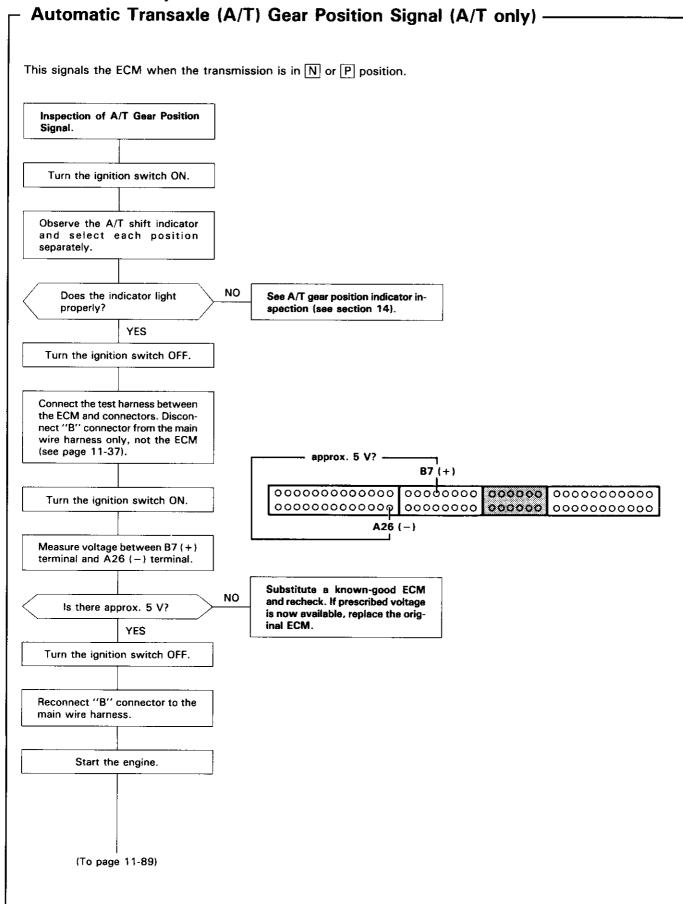




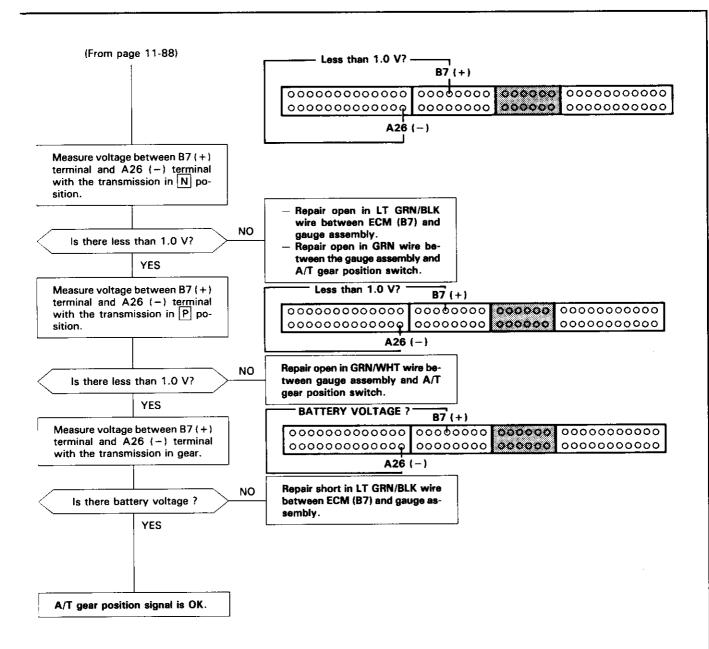


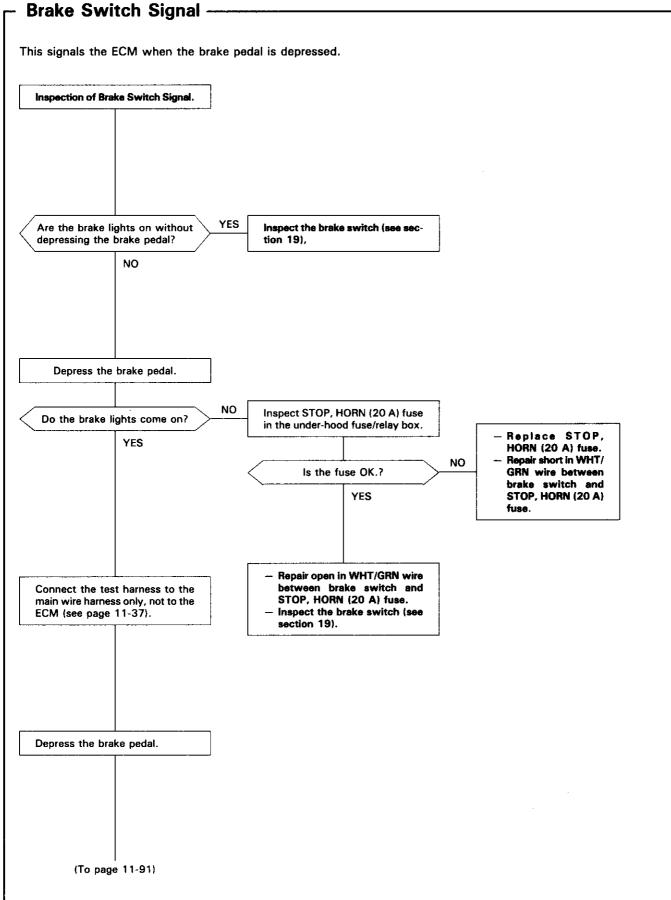




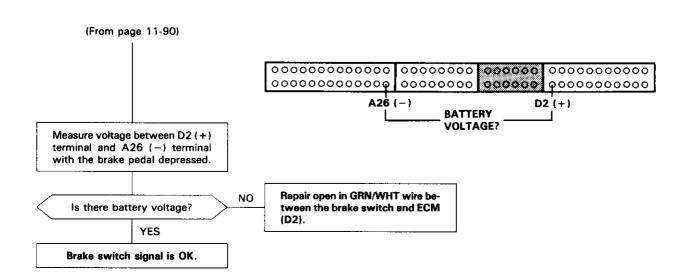


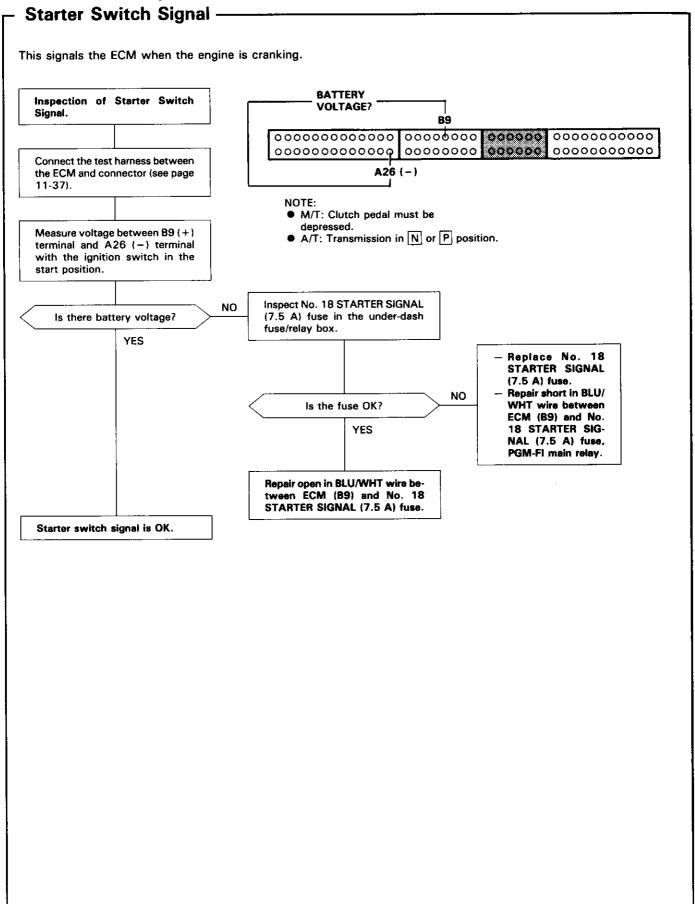




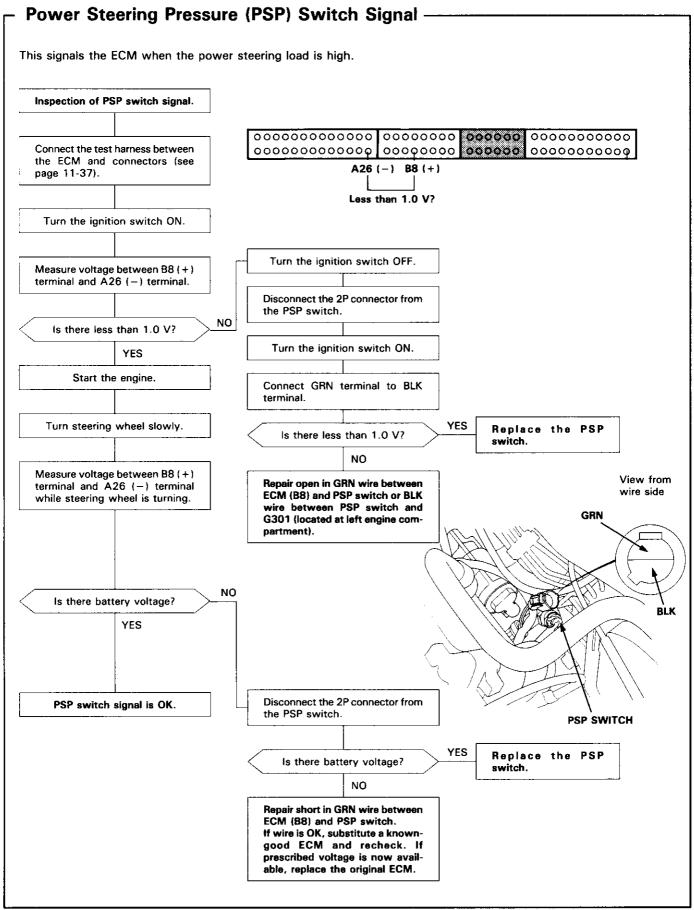








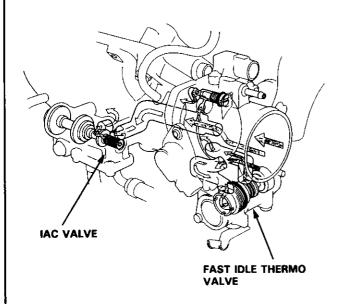


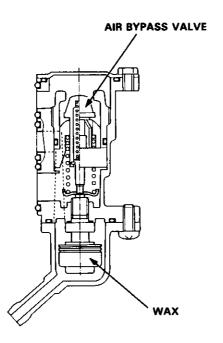


- Fast Idle Thermo Valve

Description

To prevent erratic running when the engine is warming up, it is necessary to raise the idle speed. The fast idle thermo valve is controlled by a thermowax plunger. When the engine is cold, the engine coolant surrounding the thermowax contracts the plunger, allowing additional air to be bypassed into the intake manifold so that the engine idles faster. When the engine reaches operating temperature, the valve closes, reducing the amount of air bypassing into the manifold.

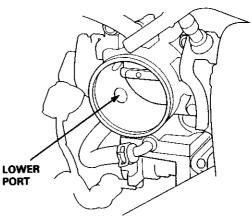




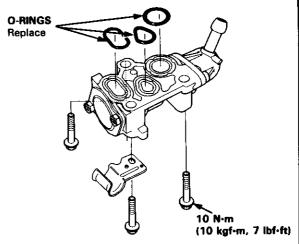
Inspection

NOTE: The fast idle thermo valve is factory adjusted; it should not be disassembled.

- 1. Remove the intake air duct from the throttle body.
- 2. Start the engine.
- Put your finger over the lower port in throttle body and make sure that there is air flow with the engine cold (engine coolant temperature below 86°F, 30°C).



 If not, replace the fast idle thermo valve and retest.



- 4. Start the engine. Hold the engine at 3.000 rpm with no load (A/T in N or P position, M/T in neutral) until the radiator fan comes on, then let it idle.
- 5. Check that valve is completely closed. If not, air suction can be felt at the lower port in the throttle body.
 - If any suction is felt, the valve is leaking. Check engine coolant level and for air in the engine coolant system (see section 10). If OK, replace the fast idle thermo valve and recheck.

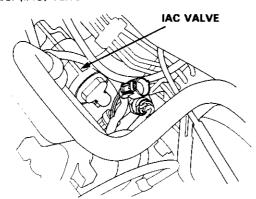


- Idle Speed Setting

Inspection/Adjustment

NOTE:

- When the idle speed set, check the following items:
 - The MIL has not been reported on.
 - Ignition timing
 - Spark plugs
 - Air cleaner
 - PCV system
- (Canada) Pull the parking brake lever up. Start the engine, then check that the headlights are off.
- Start the engine. Hold the engine at 3,000 rpm with no load (A/T in N or P position, M/T in neutral) until the radiator fan comes on, then let it idle.
- 2. Connect a tachometer.
- Disconnect the 2P connector from the Idle Air Control (IAC) valve.



- Start the engine with the accelerator pedal slightly depressed. Stabilize the rpm at 1,000, then slowly release the pedal until the engine idles.
- Check idling in no-load conditions: headlights, blower fan, rear defogger, radiator fan, and air conditioner are not operating.

Idle speed should be;

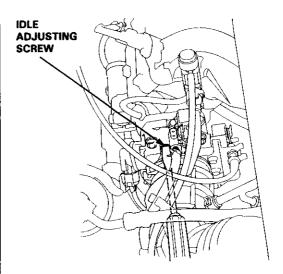
B18B1 engine:

| M/T | 480 ± 50 rpm |
|-----|--------------------------------------|
| A/T | 480 ± 50 rpm (in N or P position) |

B18C1 engine: 480 ± 50 rpm

Adjust the idle speed, if necessary, by turning the idle adjusting screw.

NOTE: After adjust the idle speed in this step, check the ignition timing (see section 23). If it is out of spec, go back to step 4.



- 6. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
- Reconnect the 2P connector on the IAC valve, then remove the BACK UP (7.5 A) fuse in the under-hood fuse/relay box for 10 seconds to reset the ECM.
- 8. Restart and idle the engine with no-load conditions for one minute, then check the idle speed.

NOTE: (Canada) Pull the parking brake lever up. Start the engine, then check that the headlights are off.

Idle speed should be;

B18B1 engine:

| M/T | 750 ± 50 rpm |
|-----|---|
| A/T | 750 \pm 50 rpm (in \boxed{N} or \boxed{P} position) |

B18C1 engine: 750 ± 50 rpm

(cont'd)

Idle Speed Setting (cont'd) -

9. Idle the engine for one minute with headlights (Low) ON and check the idle speed.

Idle speed should be;

B18B1 engine:

| M/T | 750 ± 50 rpm |
|-----|--------------------------------------|
| A/T | 750 ± 50 rpm (in N or P position) |

B18C1 engine: 750 ± 50 rpm

10. Turn the headlights off.

Idle the engine for one minute with heater fan switch at HI and air conditioner on, then check the idle speed.

Idle speed should be;

B18B1 engine:

| M/T | 820 ± 50 rpm |
|-----|--------------------------------------|
| A/T | 840 ± 50 rpm (in N or P position) |

B18C1 engine: 850 \pm 50 rpm

NOTE: If the idle speed is not within specification, see System Troubleshooting Guide on page 11-78.





System Troubleshooting Guide -

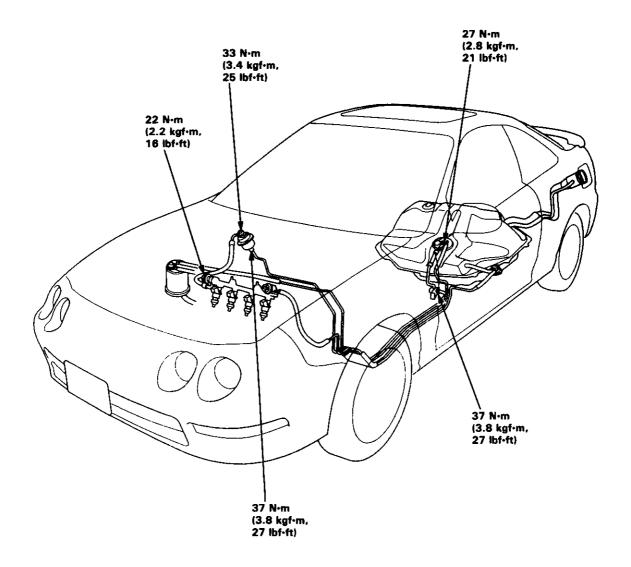
NOTE: Across each row in the chart, the sub-systems that could be sources of a symptom are ranked in the order they should be inspected starting with ①. Find the symptom in the left column, read across to the most likely source, then refer to the page listed at the top of that column. If inspection shows the system is OK, try the next most likely system ②, etc.

| PAGE | SUB-SYSTEM | FUEL LINES | FUEL INJECTOR | FUEL PRESSURE REGULATOR | FUEL FILTER | FUEL PUMP | PGM-FI MAIN RELAY | CONTAM- INATED FUEL |
|---|--------------------------------|---------------|------------------|-------------------------------|-----------------------|--------------|-------------------------|---------------------------|
| SYMPTOM | | 11-98 | 11-102 | 11-106 | 11-108 | 11-109 | 11-111 | |
| ENGINE WON'T START | | | | , | 3 | 1 | 2 | |
| DIFFICULT TO START ENGINE WHEN COLD OR HOT | | | | | 1 | 2 | | |
| ROUGH IDLE | | | 1 | | - 11 - 111 | | | 2 |
| POOR PER- FORMANCE | MISFIRE OR ROUGH RUNNING | | 1) | 3 | | | | 2 |
| | FAILS EMISSION TEST | | 2 | 1 | | | | |
| | LOSS OF POWER | | 3 | | 2 | 1 | | |
| FREQUENT STALLING | WHILE WARMING UP | | | ① | | | | |
| | AFTER WARMING UP | | | 1 | | | | |

Fuel Supply System

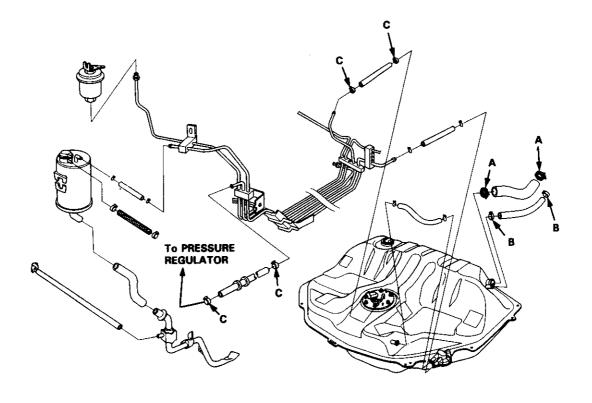
- Fuel Lines -

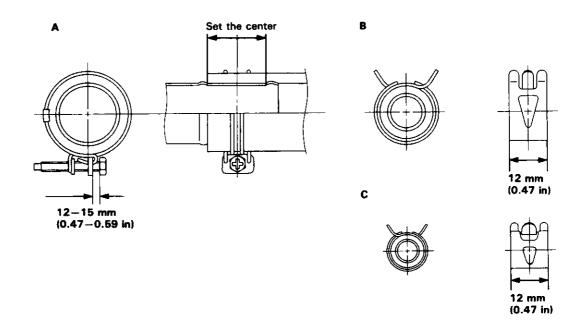
NOTE: Check all fuel system lines and hoses for damage, leaks or deterioration, and replace if necessary.





NOTE: Check all hose clamps and retighten if necessary.





Fuel Supply System

- System Description -

The fuel supply system consists of a fuel tank, in-tank high pressure fuel pump, PGM-FI main relay, fuel filter, fuel pressure regulator, fuel injectors, fuel pulsation damper and fuel delivery and return lines. This system delivers pressure-regulatored fuel to the fuel injectors and cuts the fuel delivery when the engine is not running.

- Fuel Pressure

Relieving

A WARNING

- Do not smoke while working on the fuel system.
 Keep open flames or sparks away from your work area.
- Be sure to relieve fuel pressure while the engine is off.

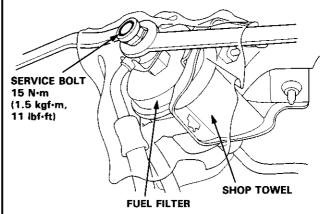
NOTE: Before disconnecting fuel pipes or hoses, release pressure from the system by loosening the 6 mm service bolt on top of the fuel filter.

Disconnect the battery negative cable from the battery negative terminal.

NOTE: The LS and GS-R model radio may have a coded theft protection circuit. Be sure to get the customer's code number before disconnecting the battery.

After service, reconnect power to the radio and turn it on. When the word "CODE" is displayed, enter the customer's 5-digit code to restore radio operation.

- 2. Remove the fuel fill cap.
- Use a box end wrench on the 6 mm service bolt at the fuel filter, while holding the special banjo bolt with another wrench.
- 4. Place a rag or shop towel over the 6 mm service bolt.
- Slowly loosen the 6 mm service bolt one complete turn.



NOTE:

- A fuel pressure gauge can be attached at the 6 mm service bolt hole.
- Always replace the washer between the service bolt and the special banjo bolt, whenever the service bolt is loosened.
- Replace all washers whenever the bolts are removed.



Inspection

- 1. Relieve fuel pressure (see page 11-100)
- Remove the service bolt on the fuel filter while holding the banjo bolt with another wrench. Attach the special tool
- Start the engine. * Measure the fuel pressure with the engine idling and vacuum hose of the fuel pressure regulator disconnected from the fuel pressure regulator and pinched.

Pressure should be;

B18B1 engine:

275-324 kPa (2.8-3.3 kgf/cm², 40-47 psi)

B18C1 engine:

329-378 kPa (3.35-3.85 kgf/cm², 48-55 psi)

4. Reconnect vacuum hose to the fuel pressure regulator.

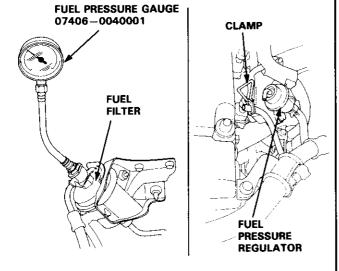
Pressure should be;

B18B1 engine:

216-245 kPa (2.2-2.5 kgf/cm², 31-36 psi)

B18C1 engine:

270-319 kPa (2.75-3.25 kgf/cm², 39-46 psi)



*: If the engine will not start, turn the ignition switch on, wait for two seconds, turn it off, then back on again and read the fuel pressure.

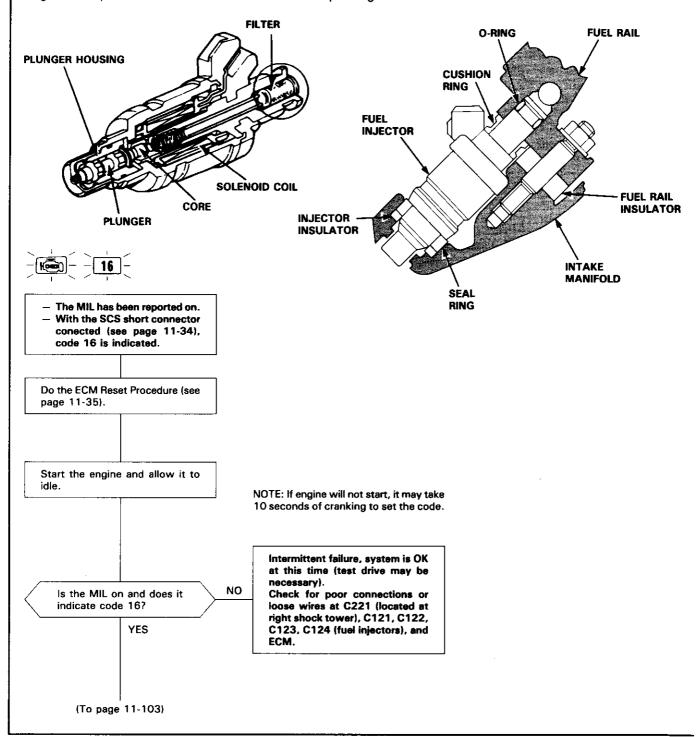
- If the fuel pressure is not as specified, first check the fuel pump (see page 11-110). If the fuel pump is OK, check the following:
- If the fuel pressure is higher than specified, inspect for:
 - · Pinched or clogged fuel return hose or line.
 - Faulty fuel pressure regulator (see page 11-106)
- If the fuel pressure is lower than specified, inspect for:
 - Clogged fuel filter.
 - Faulty fuel pressure regulator (see page 11-106).
 - · Leakage in the fuel line.

Fuel Injectors ----

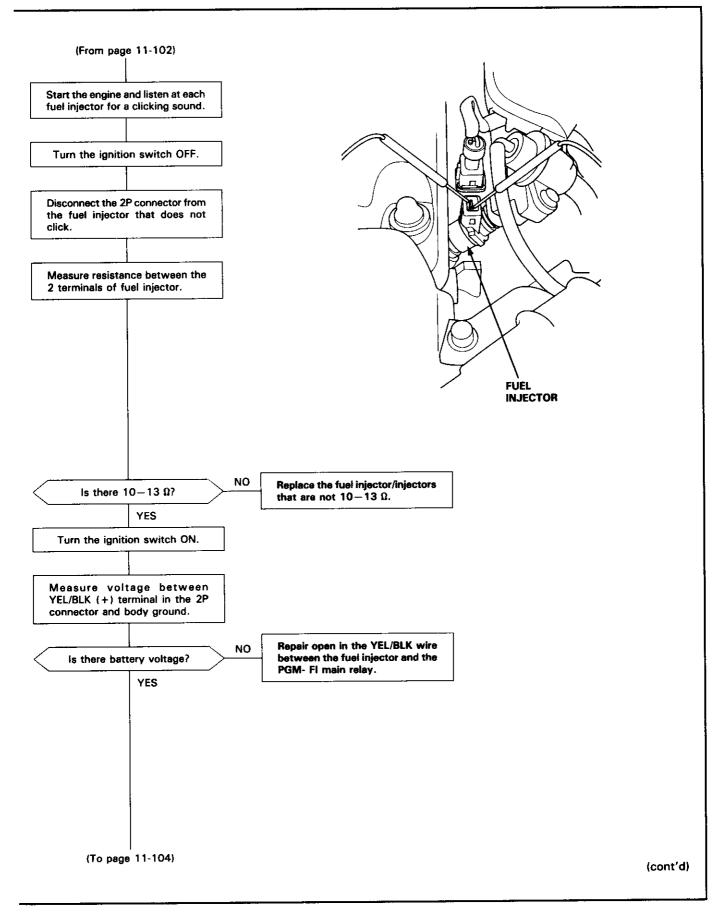


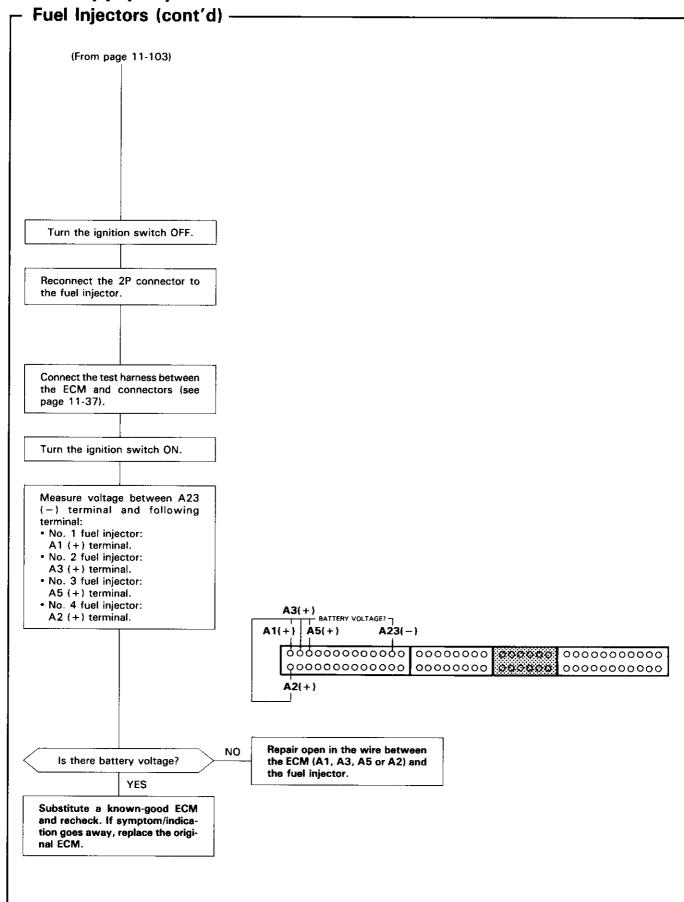
The Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) indicates Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) 16: A problem in the Fuel Injector circuit.

The Fuel Injectors are a solenoid-actuated constant-stroke pintle type consisting of a solenoid, plunger needle valve and housing. When current is applied to the solenoid coil, the valve lifts up and pressurized fuel is injected. Because the needle valve lift and the fuel pressure are constant, the injection quantity is determined by the length of time that the valve is open (i.e., the duration the current is supplied to the solenoid coil). The Fuel Injector is sealed by an O-ring and seal ring at the top and bottom. These seals also reduce operating noise.











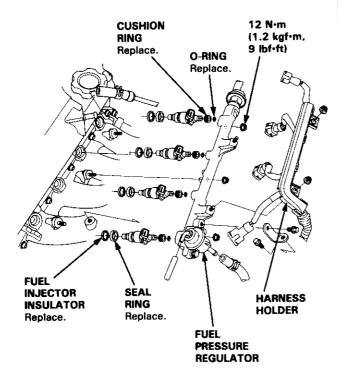
Replacement

A WARNING Do not smoke during the work. Keep open flames away from your work area.

- 1. Relieve fuel pressure (see page 11-100).
- 2. Disconnect the connectors from the fuel injectors.
- Disconnect the vacuum hose and fuel return hose from the fuel pressure regulator.

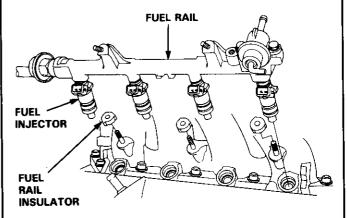
NOTE: Place a rag or shop towel over the hoses before disconnecting them.

- Loosen the retainer nuts on the fuel rail and harness holder.
- Disconnect the fuel rail.
- Remove the fuel injectors from the intake manifold.

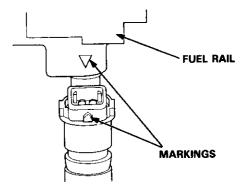


- 7. Slide new cushion rings onto the fuel injectors.
- 8. Coat new O-rings with clean engine oil and put them on the fuel injectors.
- 9. Insert the injectors into the fuel rail first.
- 10. Coat new seal rings with clean engine oil and press them into the intake manifold.
- Install the fuel injectors and fuel rail assembly in the intake manifold.

CAUTION: To prevent damage to the O-rings, install the fuel injectors in the fuel rail first, then install them in the intake manifold.



12. Align the center line on the connector with the mark on the fuel rail.



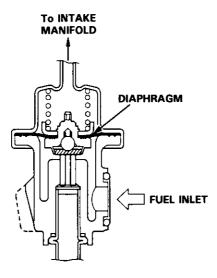
- 13. Install and tighten the retainer nuts.
- 14. Connect the vacuum hose and fuel return hose to the fuel pressure regulator.
- 15. Install the connectors on the fuel injectors.
- 16. Turn the ignition switch ON, but do not operate the starter. After the fuel pump runs for approximately two seconds, the fuel pressure in the fuel line rises. Repeat this two or three times, then check whether there is any fuel leakage.

- Fuel Pressure Regulator

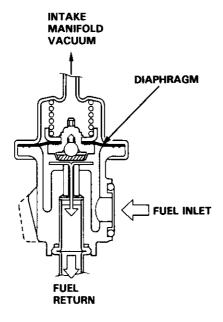
Description

The fuel pressure regulator maintains a constant fuel pressure to the fuel injectors. When the difference between the fuel pressure and manifold pressure exceeds 3.0 kgf/cm² (294 kPa, 43 psi) [B18C1 engine: 3.5 kgf/cm² (343 kPa, 50 psi)], the diaphragm is pushed upward, and the excess fuel is fed back into the fuel tank through the return line.

CLOSE:



OPEN:



Testing

A WARNING Do not smoke during the test. Keep open flames away from your work area.

1. Attach a fuel pressure gauge to the service port of the fuel filter (see page 11-101).

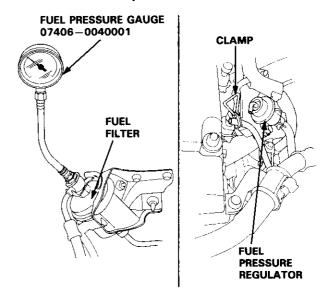
Pressure should be;

B18B1 engine:

 $275 - 324 \text{ kPa } (2.8 - 3.3 \text{ kgf/cm}^2, 40 - 47 \text{ psi})$

B18C1 engine:

329-378 kPa (3.35-3.85 kgf/cm², 48-55 psi) (with the fuel pressure regulator vacuum hose disconnected and pinched)



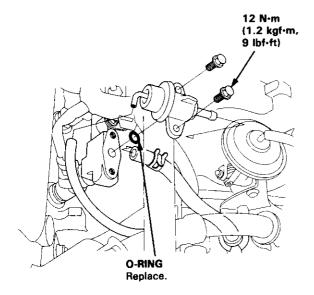
- Reconnect the vacuum hose to the fuel pressure regulator.
- Check that the fuel pressure rises when the vacuum hose from the fuel pressure regulator is disconnected again.
 - If the fuel pressure did not rise, replace the fuel pressure regulator.



Replacement

A WARNING Do not smoke while working on fuel system. Keep open flame away from your work area.

- 1. Place a shop towel under the fuel pressure regulator, then relieve fuel pressure (see page 11-100).
- 2. Disconnect the vacuum hose and fuel return hose.
- 3. Remove the two 6 mm retainer bolts.



NOTE:

- Replace the O-ring.
- When assembling the fuel pressure regulator, apply clean engine oil to the O-ring and assemble it into its proper position, taking care not to damage the O-ring.

- Fuel Filter

Replacement

A WARNING

- Do not smoke while working on fuel system.
 Keep open flame away from your work area.
- While replacing the fuel filter, be careful to keep a safe distance between battery terminals and any tools.

The fuel filter should be replaced every 4 years or 60,000 miles (96,000 km), whichever comes first, or whenever the fuel pressure drops below the specified value $[275-324 \text{ kPa}, 2.8-3.3 \text{ kgf/cm}^2, 40-47 \text{ psi} (B18C1 \text{ engine: } 329-378 \text{ kPa}, 3.35-3.85 \text{ kgf/cm}^2, 48-55 \text{ psi})$ with the fuel pressure regulator vacuum hose disconnected) after making sure that the fuel pump and the fuel pressure regulator are OK.

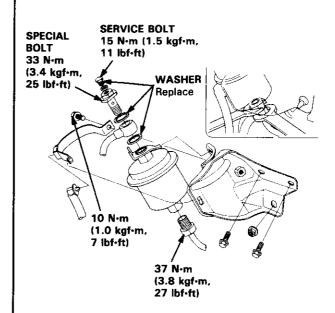
1. Disconnect the battery negative cable from the battery negative terminal.

NOTE: The LS and GS-R model radio may have a coded theft protection circuit. Be sure to get the customer's code number before disconnecting the battery.

After service, reconnect power to the radio and turn it on. When the word "CODE" is displayed, enter the customer's 5-digit code to restore radio operation.

- 2. Place a shop towel under and around the fuel filter.
- 3. Relieve fuel pressure (see page 11-100).
- Remove the special banjo bolt and the fuel feed pipe from the fuel filter.
- 5. Remove the fuel filter clamp and fuel filter.
- 6. When assembling, use new washers, as shown.

NOTE: Clean the flared joint of high pressure hoses thoroughly before reconnecting them.

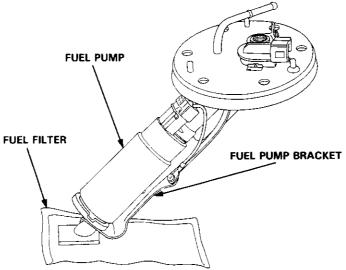




Fuel Pump -

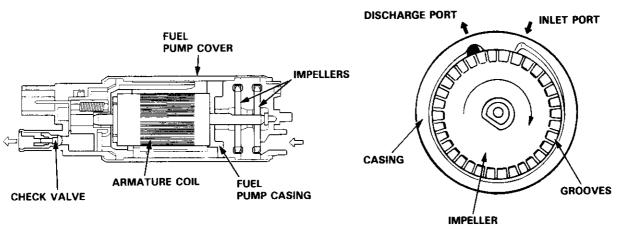
Description

Because of its compact impeller design, the fuel pump is installed inside the fuel tank, thereby saving space and simplifying the fuel line system.



FUEL PUMP CROSS SECTION (Side view)

FUEL PUMP ASSEMBLY CROSS SECTION (Top view)



The fuel pump consists of a DC motor, a circumference flow pump, a relief valve for protecting the fuel line systems, a check valve for retaining residual pressure, an inlet port, and a discharge port. The fuel pump assembly consists of the impellers (driven by the motor), the fuel pump casing (which forms the pumping chamber), and the fuel pump cover.

OPERATION

- (1) When the engine is started, the PGM-FI main relay actuates the fuel pump, and the motor turns together with the impellers.
 - Differential pressure is generated by the numerous grooves around the impellers.
- (2) Fuel entering the inlet port flows inside the motor from the pumping chamber and is forced through the discharge port via the check valve.
 - If fuel flow is obstructed at the discharge side of the fuel line, the relief valve will open to bypass the fuel to the inlet port and prevent excessive fuel pressure.
- (3) When the engine stops, the fuel pump stops automatically. However, a check valve closes by gravity to retain the residual pressure in the line, helping the engine to restart more easily.

(cont'd)

- Fuel Pump (cont'd) -

Testing

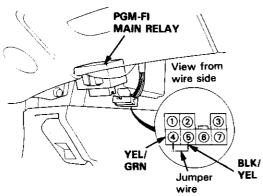
A WARNING Do not smoke during the test. Keep open flame away from your work area.

If you suspect a problem with the fuel pump, check that the fuel pump actually runs; when it is ON, you will hear some noise if you hold your ear to the fuel fill port with the fuel fill cap removed. The fuel pump should run for two seconds, when ignition switch is first turned on. If the fuel pump does not make noise, check as follows:

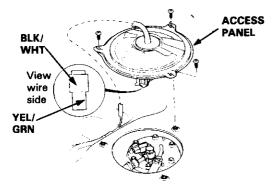
- 1. Remove the rear seat (see section 20).
- 2. Remove the access panel.
- 3. Disconnect the 2P connector from the fuel pump.

CAUTION: Be sure to turn the ignition switch OFF before disconnecting the wires.

4. Connect the BLK/YEL (5) wire and YEL/GRN (4) wire with a jumper wire at the PGM-FI main relay connector.



 Check that battery voltage is available at the fuel pump connector when the ignition switch is turned ON (positive probe to the YEL/GRN wire, negative probe to the BLK/WHT wire).

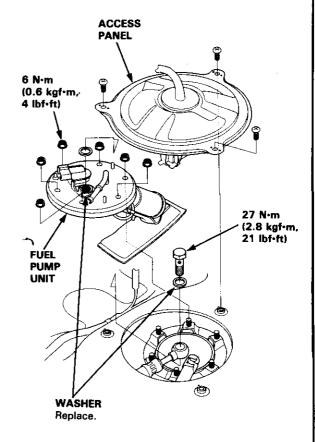


- If battery voltage is available, replace the fuel pump.
- If there is no voltage, check the fuel pump ground and wire harness (see page 11-112).

Replacement

A WARNING Do not smoke while working on fuel system. Keep open flames away from your work area.

- 1. Remove the rear seats (see section 20).
- 2. Remove the access panel.
- 3. Disconnect the 2P connector from the fuel pump.
- 4. Remove the fuel pump mounting nuts.
- 5. Remove the fuel pump from the fuel tank.
- 6. Install a new washer on the banjo bolt, then install parts in the reverse order of removal.





PGM-FI Main Relay

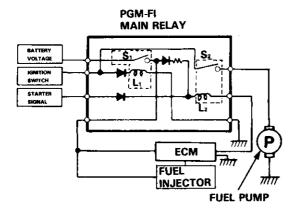
Description

The PGM-FI main relay actually contains two individual relays.

This relay is located at the left side of the cowl.

One relay is energized whenever the ignition is on which supplies the battery voltage to the ECM, power to the fuel injectors, and power for the second relay.

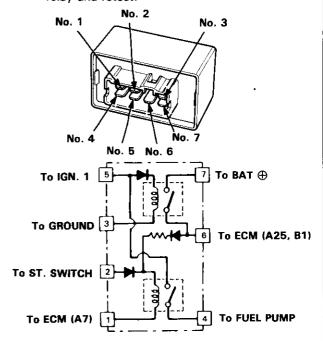
The second relay is energized for 2 seconds when the ignition is switched on, and when the engine is running, to supply power to the fuel pump.



Relay Testing

NOTE: If the car starts and continues to run, the PGM-FI main relay is OK.

- 1. Remove the PGM-FI main relay.
- Attach the battery positive terminal to the No. 2 terminal and the battery negative terminal to the No. 1 terminal of the PGM-FI main relay. Then check for continuity between the No. 5 terminal and No. 4 terminal of the PGM-FI main relay.
 - If there is continuity, go on to step 3.
 - If there is no continuity, replace the PGM-FI main relay and retest.

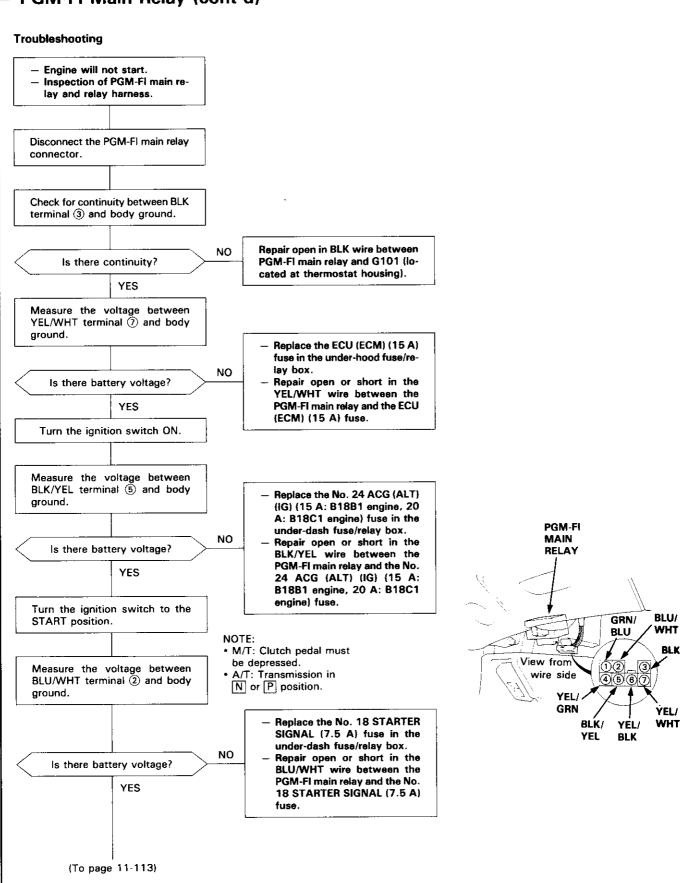


- Attach the battery positive terminal to the No. 5 terminal and the battery negative terminal to the No. 3 terminal of the PGM-FI main relay. Then check that there is continuity between the No. 7 terminal and No.6 terminal of the PGM-FI main relay.
 - If there is continuity, go on to step 4.
 - If there is no continuity, replace the PGM-FI main relay and retest.
- Attach the battery positive terminal to the No. 6 terminal and the battery negative terminal to the No.

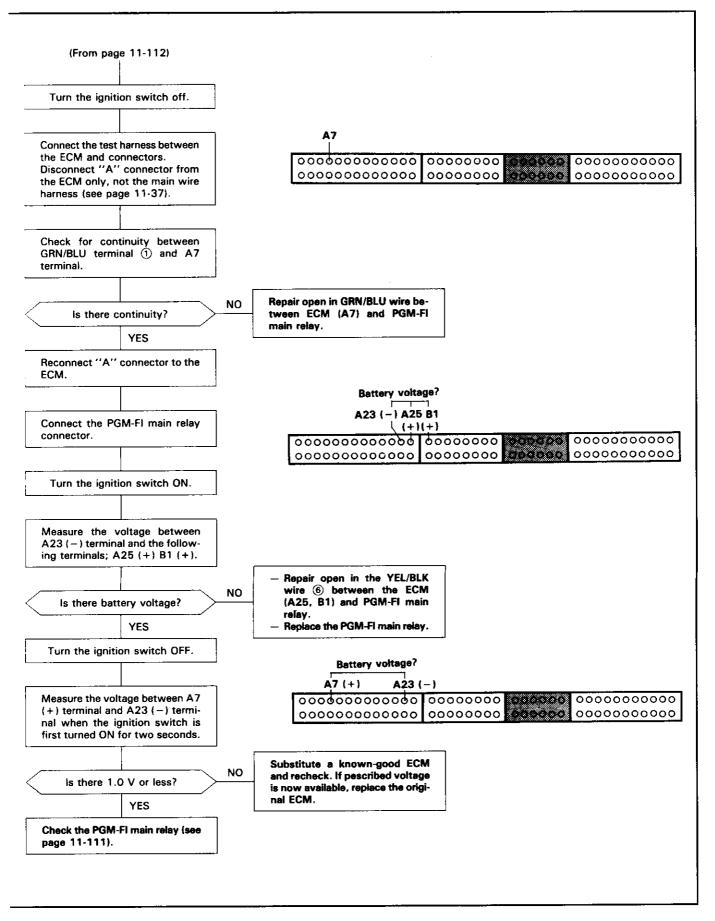
 terminal of the PGM-FI main relay. Then check that there is continuity between the No. 5 terminal and No. 4 terminal of the PGM-FI main relay.
 - If there is continuity, the PGM-FI main relay is OK.
 - If there is no continuity, replace the PGM-FI main relay and retest.

(cont d)

PGM-FI Main Relay (cont'd)







- Fuel Tank -

Replacement

A WARNING Do not smoke while working on fuel system. Keep open flame away from your work area.

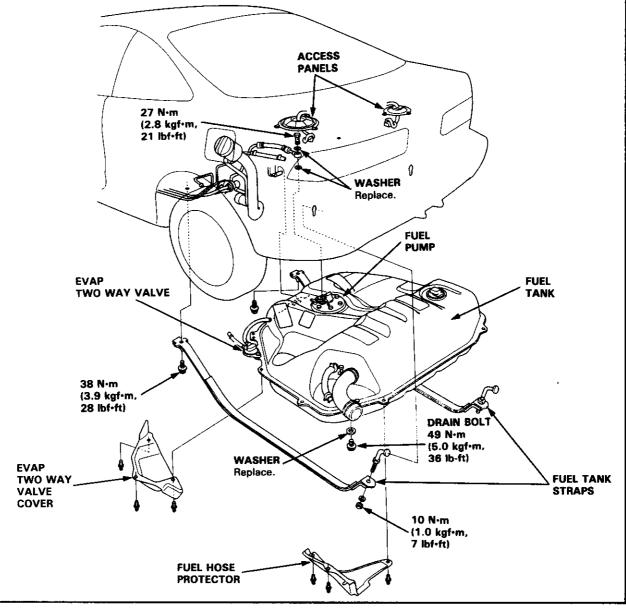
- 1. Relieve the fuel pressure (see page 11-100).
- 2. Jack up the car and support with jackstands.
- 3. Remove the drain bolt and drain the fuel into an approved container.
- 4. Remove the rear seat, access panels and disconnect the 2P and 3P connectors.
- 5. Remove the EVAP two way valve cover and fuel hose protector.
- 6. Disconnect the hoses.

CAUTION:

- When disconnecting the hoses, slide back the clamps, then twist hoses as you pull, to avoid damaging them.
- Clean the flared joint of high pressure hoses thoroughly before reconnecting them.
- 7. Place a jack, or other support, under the tank.
- 8. Remove the strap nuts and let the straps fall free.
- 9. Remove the fuel tank.

NOTE: The tank may stick on the undercoat applied to its mount. To remove, carefully pry it off the mount.

10. Install a new washer on the drain bolt, then install parts in the reverse order of removal.





System Troubleshooting Guide -

NOTE: Across each row in the chart, the sub-systems that could be sources of a symtom are ranked in the order they should be inspected starting with ①. Find the symptom in the left column, read across to the most likely source, then refer to the page listed at the top of that column. If inspection shows the system is OK, try the next system ②, etc.

[B18B1 engine]

| PAGE | SUB-SYSTEM | THROTTLE CABLE | THROTTLE BODY | AIR CLEANER AND INTAKE AIR DUCT |
|--------------|---------------------|----------------|---------------|---------------------------------------|
| SYMPTOM | | 11-118 | 11-120 | 11-117 |
| WHEN COLD FA | ST IDLE OUT OF SPEC | | ① | |
| WHEN WARM I | DLE SPEED TOO HIGH | 2 | ① | |
| LOSS OF POWE | R | | 0 | 2 |

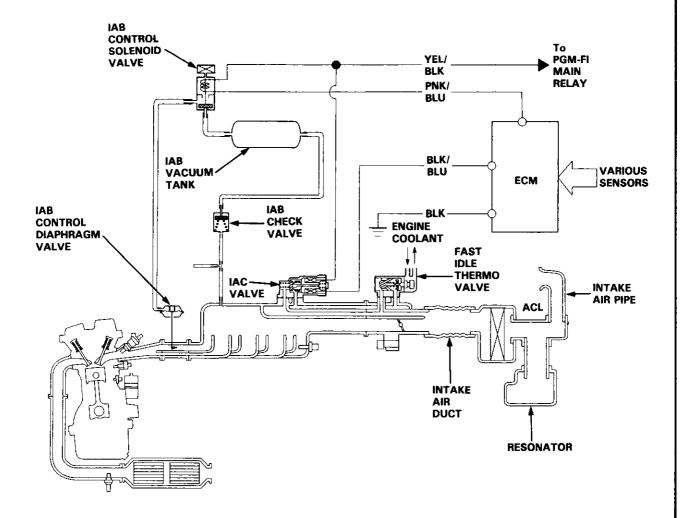
[B18C1 engine]

| PAGE | SUB-SYSTEM | THROTTLE CABLE | THROTTLE BODY | INTAKE AIR BYPASS (IAB) CONTROL | AIR CLEANER AND INTAKE AIR DUCT |
|---------------|--------------------|-------------------|------------------|---------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| SYMPTOM | | 11-119 | 11-120 | 11-124 | 11-117 |
| WHEN COLD FAS | T IDLE OUT OF SPEC | | ① | | |
| WHEN WARM IDL | E SPEED TOO HIGH | 2 | 0 | | |
| LOSS OF POWER | | | 0 | 2 | 3 |

System Description

The system supplies air for all engine needs. It consists of the intake air pipe, Air Cleaner (ACL), intake air duct, Throttle Body (TB), Idle Air Control (IAC) Valve, fast idle thermo valve, and intake manifold.

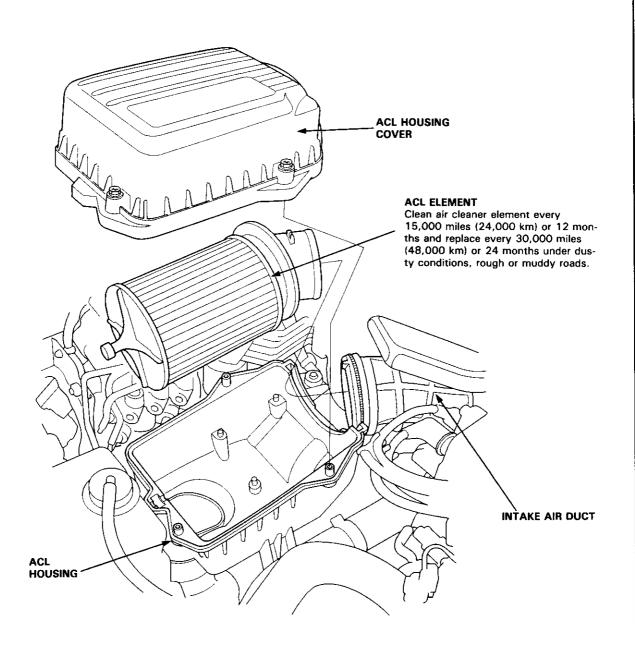
A resonator in the intake air pipe provides additional silencing as air is drawn into the system.





Air Cleaner (ACL)

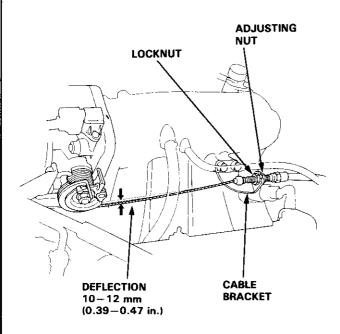
ACL Element Replacement



- Throttle Cable [B18B1 engine] -

Inspection/Adjustment

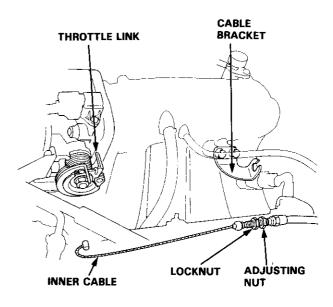
- Start the engine. Hold the engine at 3,000 rpm with no load (A/T in N or P position, M/T in neutral) until the radiator fan comes on, then let it idle.
- 2. Check that the throttle cable operates smoothly with no binding or sticking. Repair as necessary.
- 3. Check cable free play at the throttle linkage. Cable deflection should be 10-12 mm (0.39-0.47 in.)



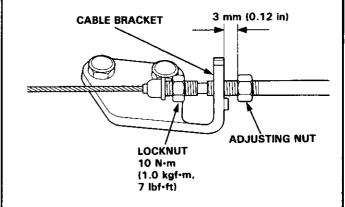
- 4. If deflection is not within specs, loosen the locknut and turn the adjusting nut until the deflection is as specified.
- 5. With the cable properly adjusted, check the throttle valve to be sure it opens fully when you push the accelerator pedal to the floor. Also check the throttle valve to be sure it returns to the idle position whenever you release the accelerator pedal.

Installation

- Fully open the throttle valve, then install the throttle cable in the throttle linkage and install the cable housing in the cable bracket.
- 2. Start the engine. Hold the engine at 3,000 rpm with no load (A/T in N or P position, M/T in neutral) until the radiator fan comes on, then let it idle.



- Hold the cable sheath, removing all slack from the cable.
- Turn the adjusting nut until it is 3 mm (0.12 in.) away from the cable bracket.
- Tighten the locknut. The cable deflection should now be 10-12 mm (0.39-0.47 in.). If not, see Inspection/Adjustment.

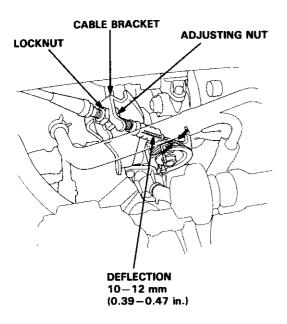




Throttle Cable [B18C1 engine] -

Inspection/Adjustment

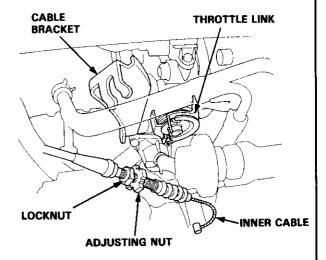
- Start the engine. Hold the engine at 3,000 rpm with no load in neutral until the radiator fan comes on, then let it idle.
- Check that the throttle cable operates smoothly with no binding or sticking. Repair as necessary.
- Check cable free play at the throttle linkage, Cable deflection should be 10-12 mm (0.39-0.47 in.)



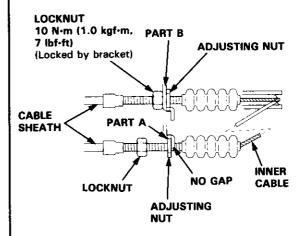
- 4. If deflection is not within specs, loosen the locknut and turn the adjusting nut until the deflection is as specified.
- 5. With the cable properly adjusted, check the throttle valve to be sure it opens fully when you push the accelerator pedal to the floor. Also check the throttle valve to be sure it returns to the idle position whenever you release the accelerator pedal.

Installation

- Fully open the throttle valve, then install the throttle cable in the throttle linkage and install the cable housing in the cable bracket.
- Start the engine. Hold the engine at 3,000 rpm with no load in neutral until the radiator fan comes on, then let it idle.



- With part A of the cable bracket, support the cable sheath so that there is no inner wire free play. Turn the adjusting nut until it touches part A, leaving a gap between the locknut and adjusting nut.
- Move the cable sheath to part B of the cable bracket that so the bracket slides into the gap between the locknut and adjusting nut. Tighten the locknut.

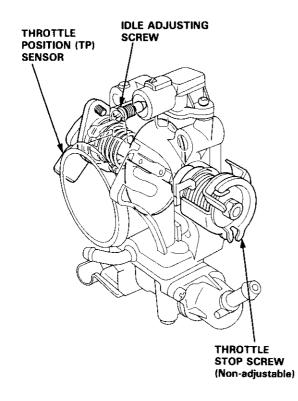


5. The cable deflection should now be 10-12 mm (0.39-0.47 in.). If not, see Inspection/Adjustment.

- Throttle Body -

Description

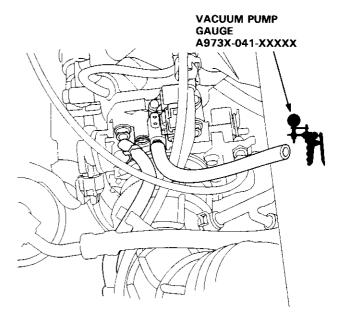
The throttle body is of the single-barrel side-draft type. The lower portion of the throttle valve is heated by engine coolant from the cylinder head. The idle adjusting screw which increases/decreases bypass air and the Evaporative Emission (EVAP) Control Canister port are located on the top of the throttle body.



Inspection

CAUTION: Do not adjust the throttle stop screw. It is preset at the factory.

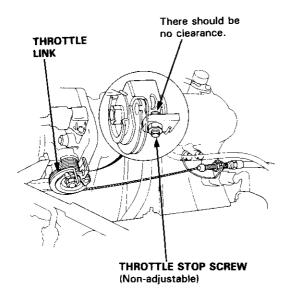
- Start the engine. Hold the engine at 3,000 rpm with no load (A/T in N or P position, M/T in neutral) until the radiator fan comes on, then let it idle.
- Disconnect the vacuum hose (to the EVAP control canister) from the top of the throttle body; connect a vacuum, gauge to the throttle body.



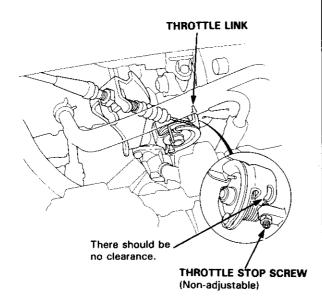
- Allow the engine to idle and check that the gauge indicates no vacuum.
 - If there is vacuum, check the throttle cable (see page 11-118, 119).
- 4. Check that vacuum is indicated on the gauge when the throttle is opened slightly from idle.
 - If the gauge indicates no vacuum, check the throttle body port. If the throttle body port is clogged, clean it with carburetor cleaner.
- Stop the engine and check that the throttle cable operates smoothly without binding or sticking.
 - If there are any abnormalities in the above steps, check for:
 - Excessive wear or play in the throttle valve shaft.
 - Sticky or binding throttle lever at full close position
 - Clearance between throttle stop screw and throttle lever at full close position.



B18B1 engine:



B18C1 engine:



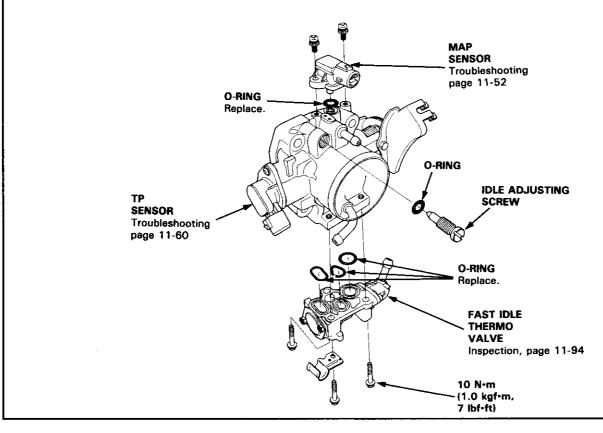
Replace the throttle body if there is excessive play in the throttle valve shaft or if the shaft is binding or sticking.

(cont'd)

Disassembly 20 N·m (2,0 kgf·m, 14 lbf·ft) THROTTLE CABLE

CAUTION:

- The throttle stop screw is non-adjustable.
- After reassembly, adjust the throttle cable (page 11-118, 119), and A/T throttle control cable (section 14) for cars with A/T.
- The TP sensor is not removable.



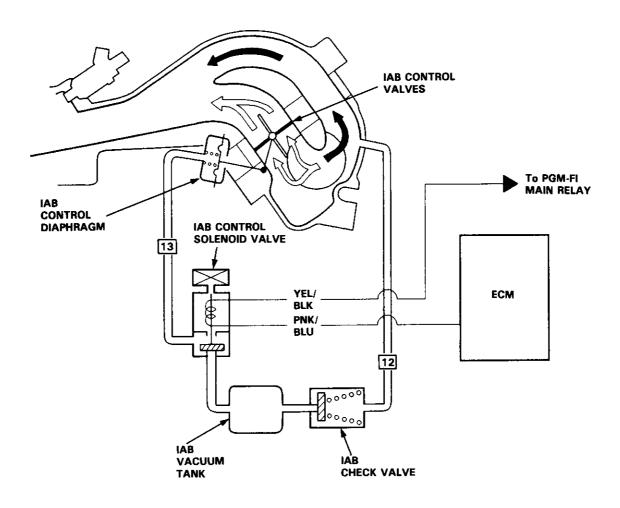


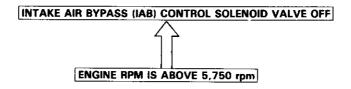
Intake Air Bypass (IAB) Control System [B18C1 engine]

Description

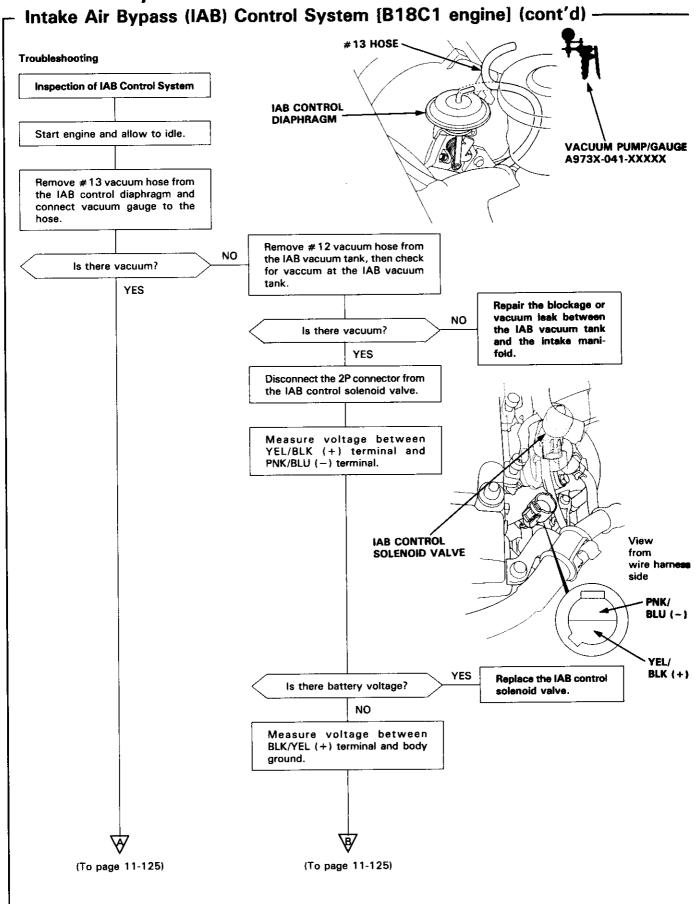
Two air intake paths are provided in the intake manifold to allow the selection of the intake path most favorable for a given engine speed.

Satisfactory power performance is achieved by closing and opening the intake air bypass (IAB) control valves. High torque at low RPM is achieved when the valves are closed, whereas high power at high RPM is achieved by when the valves are opened.

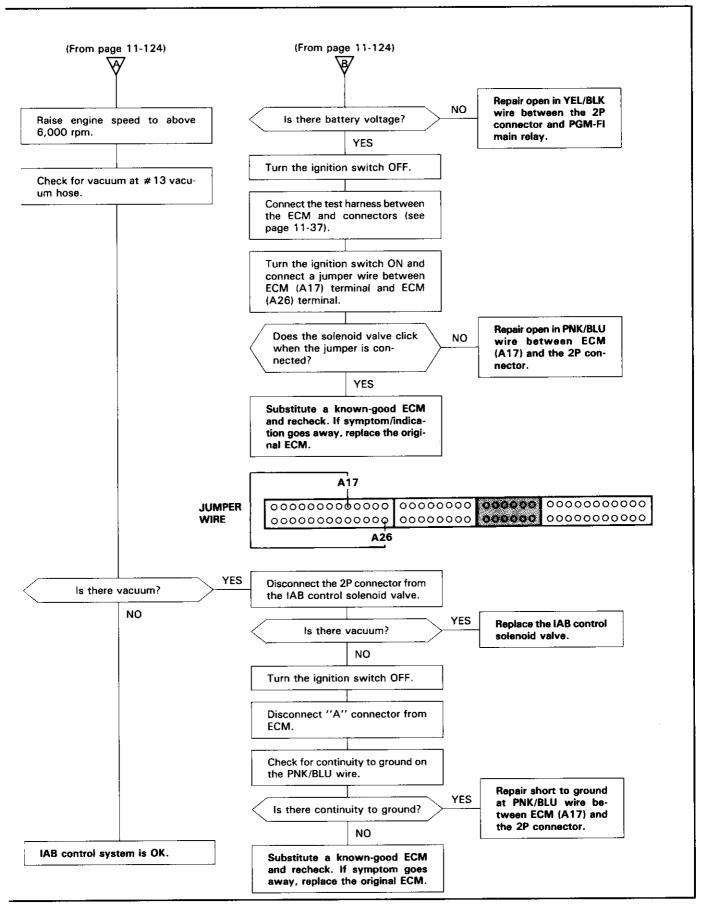




(cont'd)





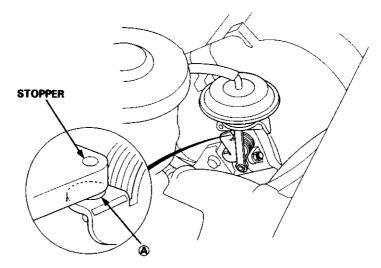


Intake Air Bypass (IAB) Control Valve [B18C1 engine] -

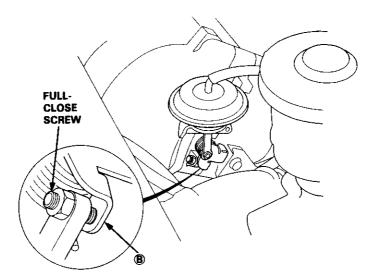
Testing

CAUTION: Do not adjust the IAB control valve full-close screw. It is preset at the factory.

- 1. Check the IAB control valve shaft for binding or sticking.
- 2. Check the IAB control valve for smooth movement.
- 3. With the engine at idle, check that (A) of the IAB control valve is in close contact with the stopper when vacuum hose is disconnected.



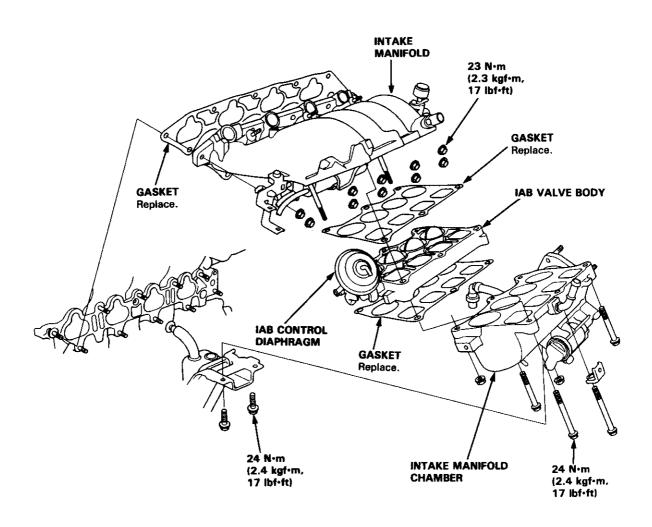
4. With the engine at idle, check that ® of the IAB control valve is in close contact with the full-close screw when the vacuum hose is connected.

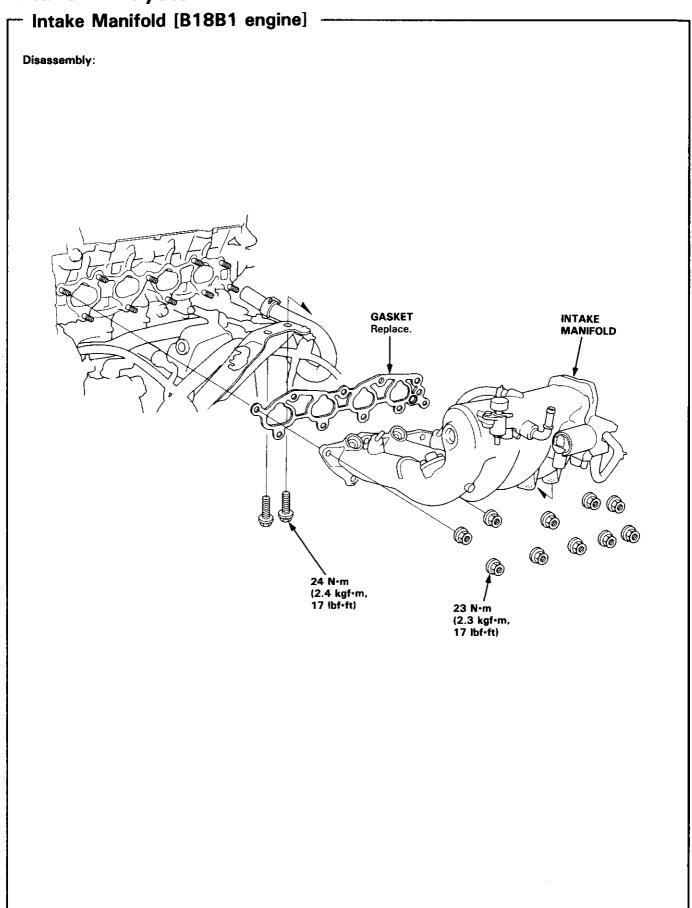


- If any fault is found, clean the linkage and shafts with carburetor cleaner.
- If the problem still exists after cleaning, disassemble the intake manifold and check the IAB valve body assembly.



Disassembly:





Emission Control System



System Troubleshooting Guide -

NOTE: Across each row in the chart, the sub-systems that could be sources of a symptom are ranked in the order they should be inspected starting with ①. Find the symptom in the left column, read across to the most likely source, then refer to the page listed at the top of that column. If inspection shows the system is OK, try the next most likely system ②, etc.

| PAGE | SUB-SYSTEM | THREE WAY CATALYTIC CONVERTER | POSITIVE CRANKCASE VENTILATION SYSTEM | EVAPORATIVE EMISSION CONTROLS |
|--------------------|---------------------------|-------------------------------|--|-------------------------------------|
| SYMPTOM | | 11-132, 133 | 11-134 | 11-136 |
| ROUGH IDLE | | | ① | |
| POOR PERFORMANCE | FAILS EMISSION TEST | • | | 2 |
| FOOR FERFORIVIANCE | LOSS OF POWER | • | | |

Emission Control System

- System Description

The emission control system includes a Three Way Catalytic Converter (TWC), Positive Crankcase Ventilation (PCV) system and Evaporative Emission (EVAP) Control system. The emission control system is designed to meet federal and state emission standards.

Tailpipe Emission

Inspection

A WARNING Do not smoke during this procedure. Keep any open flame away from your work area.

- Start the engine. Hold the engine at 3,000 rpm with no load (A/T in N or P position, M/T in neutral) until the radiator fan comes on, then let it idle.
- 2. Connect a tachometer.
- 3. Check and adjust the idle speed, if necessary (see page 11-95).
- 4. Warm up and calibrate the CO meter according to the meter manufacturer's instructions.
- Check idle CO with the headlights, heater blower, rear window defogger, cooling fan, and air conditioner off.

NOTE: (Canada) Pull the parking brake lever up. Start the engine, then check that the headlights are off.

CO meter should indicate 0.1 % maximum.

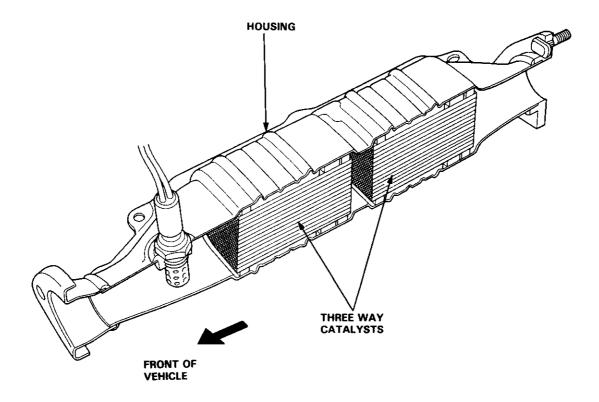


Three Way Catalytic Converter (TWC) -

Description

The Three Way Catalytic Converter (TWC) is used to convert hydrocarbons (HC), carbon monoxide (CO), and oxides of nitrogen (NOx) in the exhaust gas, to carbon dioxide (CO₂), dinitrogen (N₂) and water vapor.

The illustration shows the TWC for the B18C1 engine.



(cont'd)

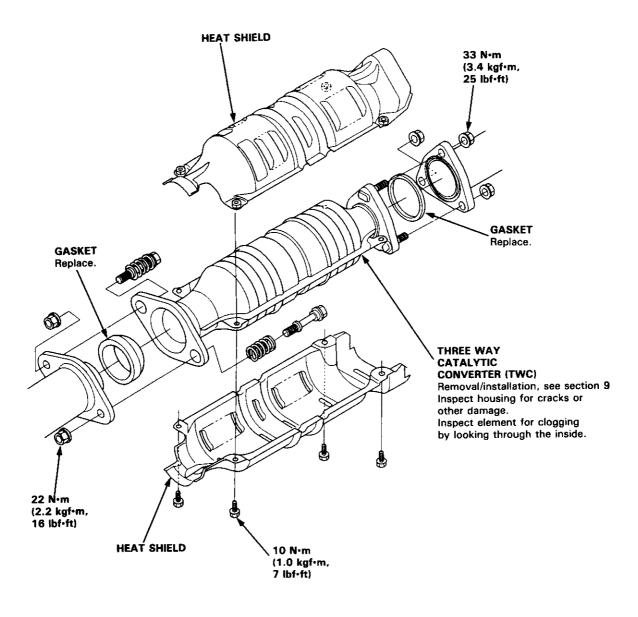
Emission Control System

Three Way Catalytic Converter (TWC) (cont'd) -

Inspection

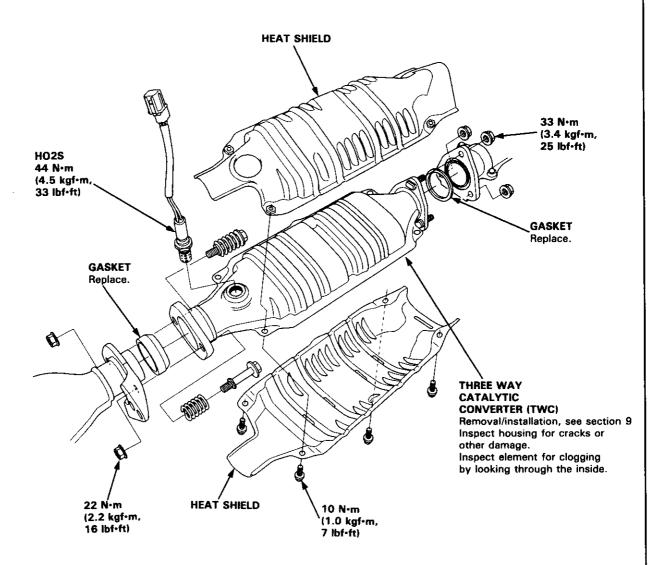
If excessive exhaust system back-pressure is suspected, remove the TWC from the car and make a visual check for plugging, melting or cracking of the catalyst. Replace the TWC if any of the visible area is damaged or plugged.

B18B1 engine:





B18C1 engine:

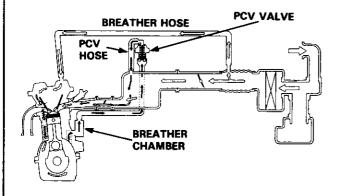


Emission Control System

Positive Crankcase Ventilation (PCV) System

Description

The Positive Crankcase Ventilation (PCV) system is designed to prevent blow-by gas from escaping to the atmosphere. The PCV valve contains a spring-loaded plunger. When the engine starts, the plunger in the PCV valve is lifted in proportion to intake manifold vacuum and the blow-by gas is drawn directly into the intake manifold.

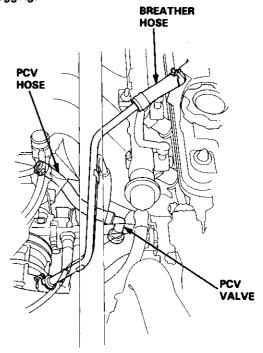


←: BLOW-BY VAPOR

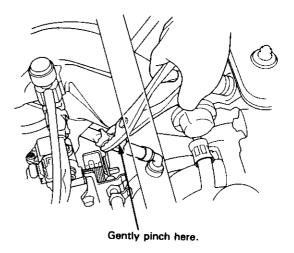
←: FRESH AIR

Inspection

 Check the PCV hoses and connections for leaks and clogging.



 At idle, make sure there is a clicking sound from the PCV valve when the hose between PCV valve and intake manifold in lightly pinched with your fingers or pliers.



 If there is no clicking sound, check the PCV valve grommet for cracks or damage. If the grommet is OK, replace the PCV valve and recheck.



Evaporative Emission (EVAP) Controls

Description

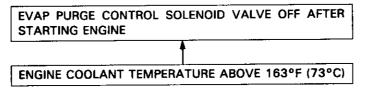
The evaporative emission controls are designed to minimize the amount of fuel vapor escaping to the atmosphere. The system consists of the following components:

A. Evaporative Emission (EVAP) Control Canister

An EVAP control canister is used for the temporary storage of fuel vapor until the fuel vapor can be purged from the EVAP control canister into the engine and burned.

B. Vapor Purge Control System

EVAP control canister purging is accomplished by drawing fresh air through the EVAP control canister and into a port on the throttle body. The purging vacuum is controlled by the EVAP purge control diaphragm valve and the EVAP purge control solenoid valve.



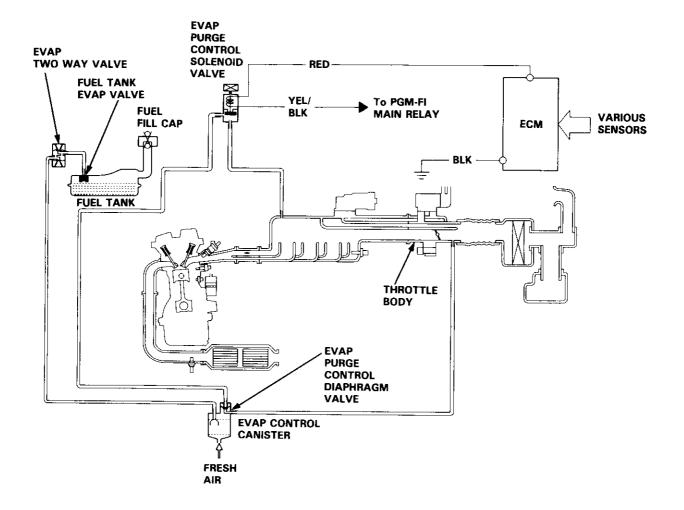
C. Fuel Tank Vapor Control System

When fuel vapor pressure in the fuel tank is higher than the set value of the EVAP two way valve, the valve opens and regulates the flow of fuel vapor to the EVAP control canister.

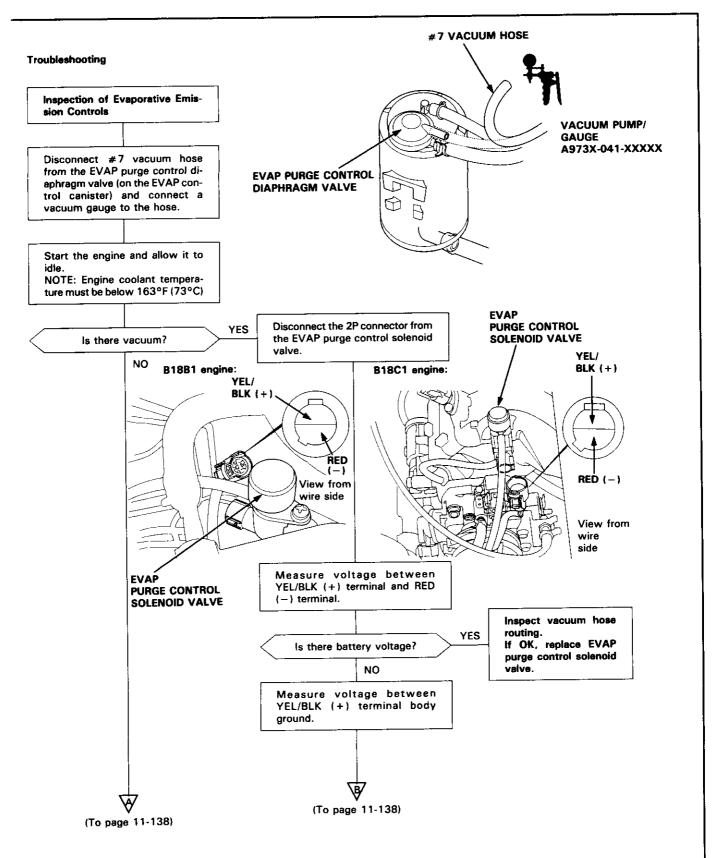
(cont'd)

Emission Control System

Evaporative Emission (EVAP) Control (cont'd)

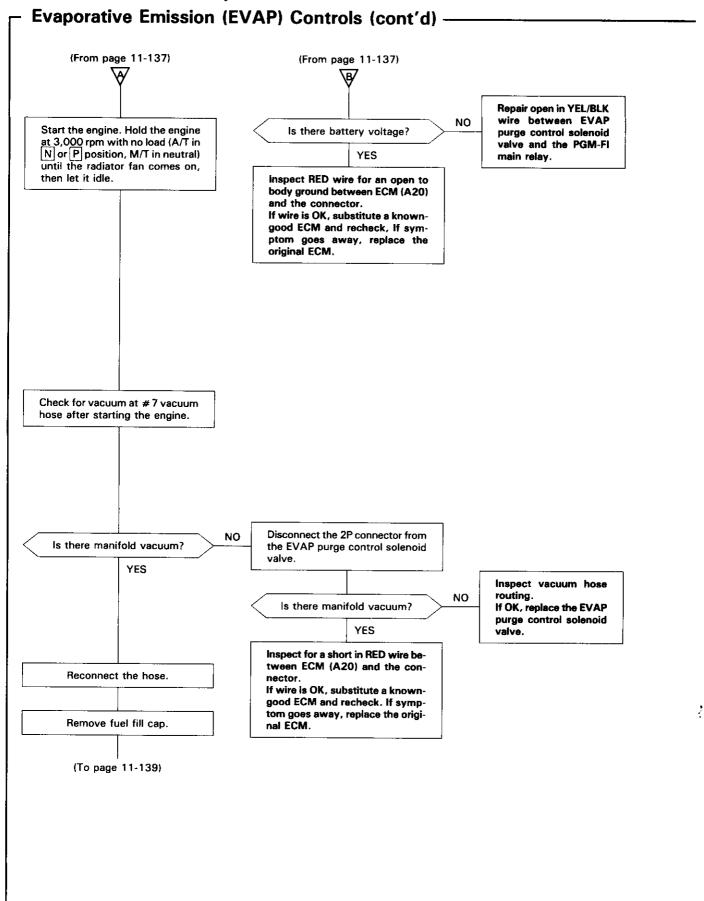




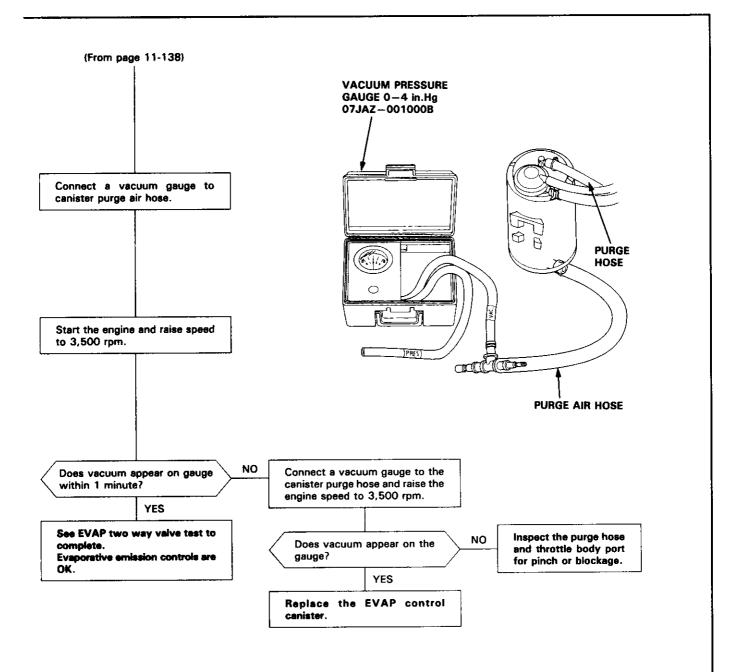


(cont'd)

Emission Control System







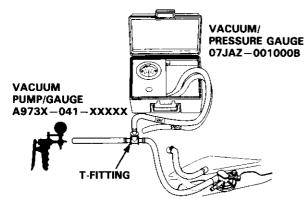
(cont'd)

Emission Control System

Evaporative Emission Controls (cont'd)

Evaporative Emission (EVAP) Two Way Valve Testing

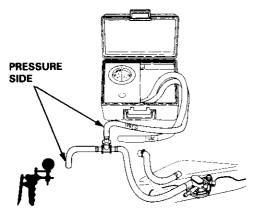
- 1. Remove the fuel fill cap.
- 2. Remove vapor line from the two way valve on the fuel tank and connect to T-fitting from vacuum gauge and vacuum pump as shown.



3. Apply vacuum slowly and continuously while watching the gauge.

Vacuum should stabilize momentarily at 5-15 mmHg (0.2-0.6 in.Hg).

- If vacuum stabilizes (valve opens) below 5 mmHg (0.2 in.Hg) or above 15 mmHg (0.6 in.Hg), install a new valve and retest.
- 4. Move vacuum pump hose from vacuum to pressure fitting, and move vacuum gauge hose from vacuum to pressure side as shown.



5. Slowly pressurize the vapor line while watching the gauge.

Pressure should stabilize at 10-35 mmHg (0.4-1.4 in Hg).

- If pressure momentarily stabilizes (valve opens) at 10-35 mmHg (0.4-1.4 in.Hg), the valve is OK.
- If pressure stabilizes below 10 mmHg (0.4 in.Hg) or above 35 mmHg (1.4 in.Hg), install a new valve and retest.

Transaxle

| Clutch | 12-1 |
|------------------------|-------|
| Manual Transmission | 13-1 |
| Automatic Transmission | 14-1 |
| Differential | |
| Manual Transmission | |
| B18B1 engine | 15-1 |
| B18C1 engine | 15-9 |
| Automatic Transmission | 15-19 |
| Driveshafts | 16-1 |

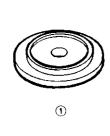


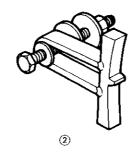
Clutch

| Special Tools | 12-2 |
|-----------------------------|-------|
| Illustrated Index | 12-3 |
| Clutch Pedal | |
| Adjustment | 12-4 |
| Clutch Master Cylinder | |
| Removal/Installation | 12-5 |
| Slave Cylinder | |
| Removal/Installation | 12-6 |
| Pressure Plate | |
| Removal/Inspection | 12-7 |
| Clutch Disc | |
| Inspection/Removal | 12-8 |
| Flywheel, Flywheel Bearing | |
| Inspection | 12-9 |
| Replacement | 12-9 |
| Clutch Disc, Pressure Plate | |
| Installation | 12-10 |
| Release Bearing | |
| Removal/Inspection | 12-11 |
| Installation | 12-12 |



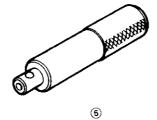
| Ref. No. | Tool Number | Description | Qty | Page Reference |
|------------|------------------|------------------------|-----|----------------|
| 1 | 07JAF-PM7011A | Clutch Alignment Disc | 1 | 12-7 |
| 2 | 07LAB-PV00100 or | Ring Gear Holder | 1 | 12-7, 8, 9, 10 |
| _ | 07924-PD20003 | | | |
| 3 | 07NAF-PR30100 | Clutch Alignment Shaft | 1 | 12-7, 8, 10 |
| <u>4</u> | 07746-0010100 | Attachment, 32 x 35 mm | 1 | 12-10 |
| <u>(5)</u> | 07749-0010000 | Driver | 1 | 12-10 |
| 6 | 07936-3710100 | Handle | 1 | 12-7, 8, 10 |











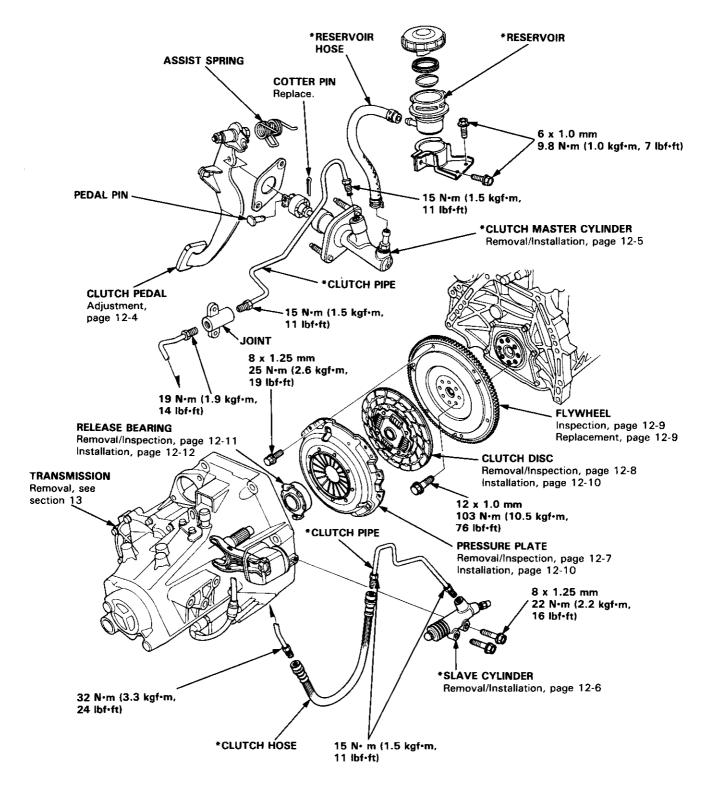


Illustrated Index



NOTE:

- Whenever the transmission is removed, clean and grease the release bearing sliding surface.
- If the parts marked * are removed, the clutch hydraulic system must be bled (see page 12-6).
- Inspect the hoses for damage, leaks, interference, and twisting.



Clutch Pedal

Adjustment

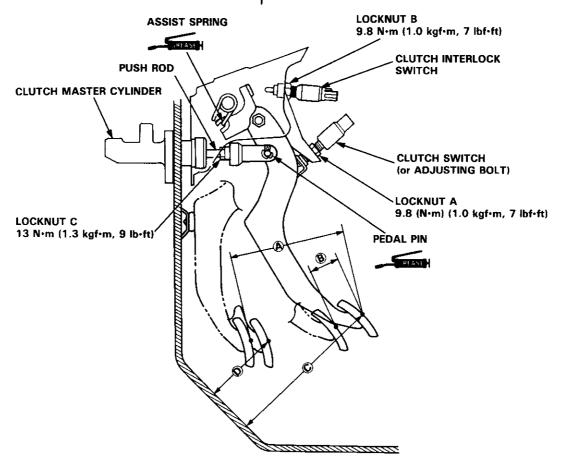
NOTE:

- To check the clutch interlock switch and clutch switch, see section 23.
- The clutch is self-adjusting to compensate for wear.

CAUTION: If there is no clearance between the master cylinder piston and push rod, the release bearing is held against the diaphragm spring, which can result in clutch slippage or other clutch problems.

- Loosen locknut A, and back off the clutch switch (or adjusting bolt) until it no longer touches the clutch pedal.
- 2. Loosen locknut C, and turn the push rod in or out to get the specified stroke (A) and height (C) at the clutch pedal.
- 3. Tighten locknut C.
- Turn the clutch switch (or adjusting bolt) until it contacts the clutch pedal.

- 5. Turn the clutch switch (or adjusting bolt) in 3/4 to 1 full turn further.
- 6. Tighten locknut A.
- 7. Loosen locknut B and the clutch interlock switch.
- 8. Measure the clearance between the floor board and clutch pedal with the clutch pedal fully depressed.
- Release the clutch pedal 15-20 mm (0.59-0.79 in) from the fully depressed position and hold it there.
 Adjust the position of the clutch interlock switch so that the engine will start with the clutch pedal in this position.
- 10. Turn clutch interlock switch 3/4 to 1 full turn further.
- 11. Tighten locknut B.



- (STROKE at PEDAL): 130-140 mm (5.12-5.51 in)
- ® (TOTAL CLUTCH PEDAL FREE PLAY): 12-21 mm (0.47-0.83 in) including the pedal play 1-10 mm (0.04-0.39 in)
- © (CLUTCH PEDAL HEIGHT): 164 mm (6.46 in) to the floor
- (CLUTCH PEDAL DISENGAGEMENT HEIGHT): 83 mm (3.27 in) minimum to the floor

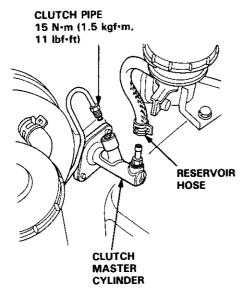
Clutch Master Cylinder

\odot

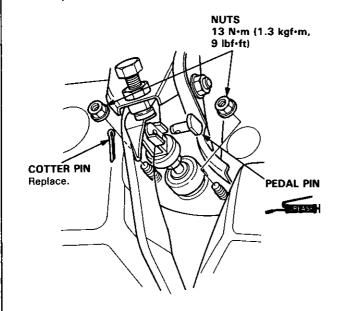
Removal/Installation

CAUTION:

- Do not spill brake fluid on the car; it may damage the paint; if brake fluid does contact the paint, wash it off immediately with water.
- Plug the end of the clutch pipe and reservoir hose with a shop towel to prevent brake fluid from coming out.
- 1. Remove the brake fluid from the clutch master cylinder reservoir with a syringe.
- 2. Disconnect the clutch pipe and reservoir hose from the clutch master cylinder.

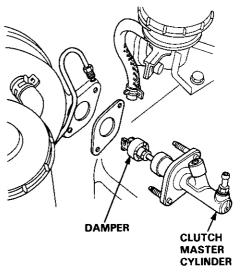


3. Pry out the cotter pin, and pull the pedal pin out of the yoke. Remove the nuts.



4. Remove the clutch master cylinder.

NOTE: Do not spill brake fluid on the clutch master cylinder damper.



Install the clutch master cylinder in the reverse order of removal.

NOTE: Bleed the clutch hydraulic system (see page 12-6).

Slave Cylinder

Removal/Installation

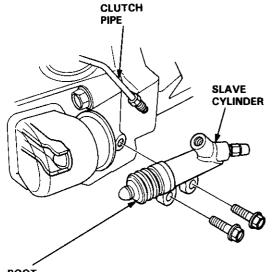
CAUTION:

- Do not spill brake fluid on the car, it may damage the paint; if brake fluid does contact the paint, wash it off immediately with water.
- Plug the end of the clutch pipe with a shop towel to prevent brake fluid from coming out.

Super High Temp Urea Grease (P/N 08798-9002).

GREASEN: Brake Assembly Lube or equivalent rubber grease.

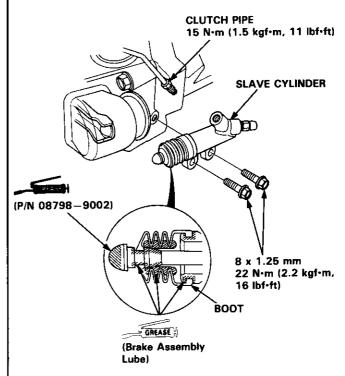
- 1. Disconnect the clutch pipe from the slave cylinder.
- 2. Remove the slave cylinder from the clutch housing.



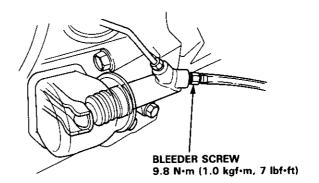
Remove and check for signs of leaking and deterioration.

Install the slave cylinder in the reverse order of removal.

NOTE: Make sure the boot is installed on the slave cylinder.



- 4. Bleed the clutch hydraulic system.
 - Attach a hose to the bleeder screw, and suspend the hose in a container of brake fluid.
 - Make sure there is an adequate supply of fluid at the clutch master cylinder, then slowly pump the clutch pedal until no more bubbles appear at the bleeder hose.
 - Refill the clutch master cylinder with fluid when done.
 - Use only DOT 3 or 4 brake fluid.



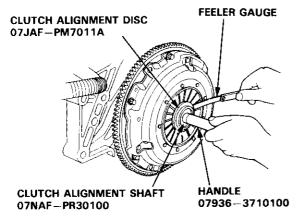
Pressure Plate

Removal/Inspection

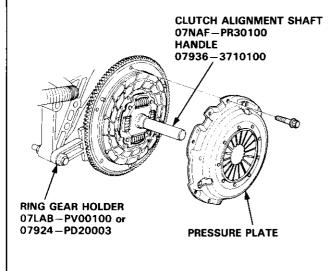


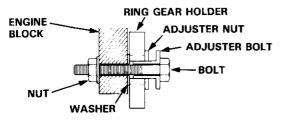
1. Check the diaphragm spring fingers for height using the special tools and a feeler gauge.

Standard (New): 0.6 mm (0.02 in) Max. Service Limit: 0.8 mm (0.03 in)

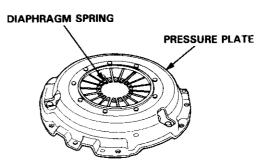


- If the height is more than the service limit, replace the pressure plate.
- 2. Install the special tools.
- 3. To prevent warping, unscrew the pressure plate mounting bolts in a crisscross pattern in several steps, then remove the pressure plate.





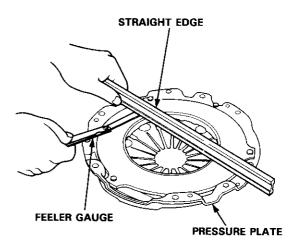
- 4. Inspect the pressure plate surface for wear, cracks, and burning.
- 5. Inspect the fingers of the diaphragm spring for wear at the release bearing contact area.



Inspect for warpage using a straight edge and feeler gauge.

NOTE: Measure across the pressure plate at three points.

Standard (New): 0.03 mm (0.001 in) Max. Service Limit: 0.15 mm (0.006 in)

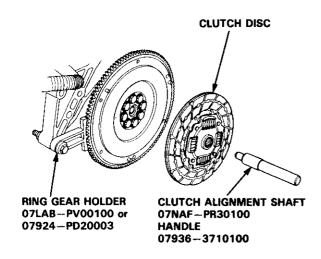


 If the warpage is more than the service limit, replace the pressure plate.

Clutch Disc

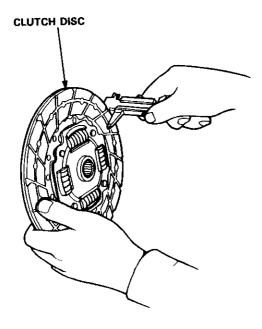
Removal/Inspection

- 1. Remove the clutch disc and special tools.
- Inspect the lining of the clutch disc for signs of slipping or oil. If it is burned black or oil soaked, replace it



3. Measure the clutch disc thickness.

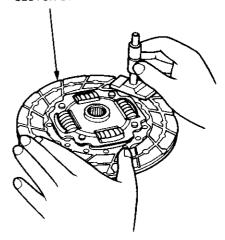
Standard (New): 8.4—9.1 mm (0.33—0.36 in) Service Limit: 6.0 mm (0.24 in)

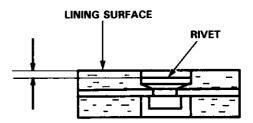


 If the thickness is less than the service limit, replace the clutch disc. 4. Measure the depth from the lining surface to the rivets, on both sides.

Standard (New): 1.3 mm (0.05 in) Min. Service Limit: 0.2 mm (0.008 in)







• If the rivet depth is less than the service limit, replace the clutch disc.

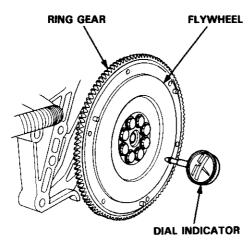
Flywheel, Flywheel Bearing

Inspection

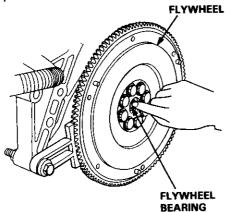
- 1. Inspect the ring gear teeth for wear and damage.
- Inspect the clutch disc mating surface on the flywheel for wear, cracks, and burning.
- Measure the flywheel runout using a dial indicator through at least two full turns. Push against the flywheel each time you turn it to take up the crankshaft thrust washer clearance.

NOTE: The runout can be measured with engine installed.

Standard (New): 0.05 mm (0.002 in) Max. Service Limit: 0.15 mm (0.006 in)



- If the runout is more than the service limit, replace the flywheel.
- 4. Turn the inner race of the flywheel bearing with your finger. The bearing should turn smoothly and quietly. Check that the bearing outer race fits tightly in the flywheel.

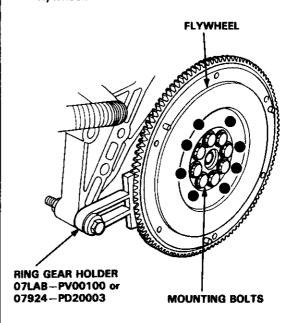


 If the race does not turn smoothly, quietly, or fit tight in the flywheel, replace the flywheel bearing.

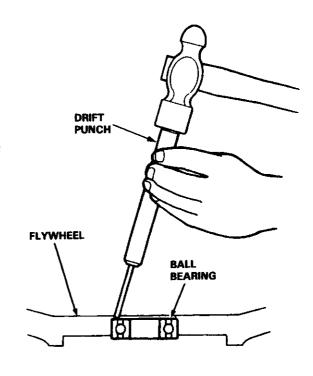


Replacement

- 1. Install the special tool.
- 2. Remove the flywheel mounting bolts in a crisscross pattern in several steps as shown, then remove the flywheel.



3. Remove the flywheel bearing from the flywheel.

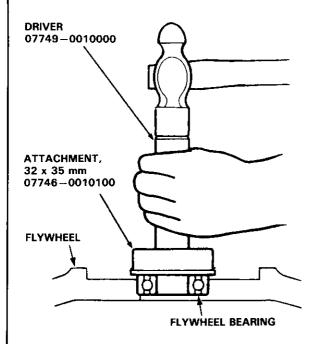


(cont'd)

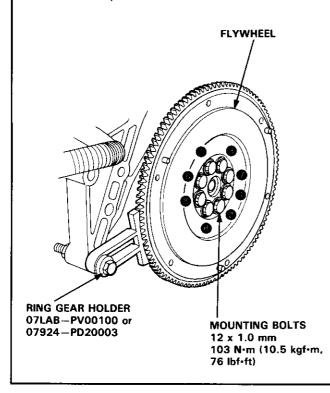
Flywheel, Flywheel Bearing

Replacement (cont'd) -

Drive the new flywheel bearing into the flywheel using the special tools as shown.



- 5. Align the hole in the flywheel with the crankshaft dowel pin and install the flywheel. Install the mounting bolts finger-tight.
- Install the special tool as shown, then torque the flywheel mounting bolts in a crisscross pattern in several steps as shown.

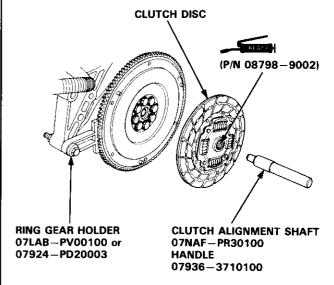


Clutch Disc, Pressure Plate

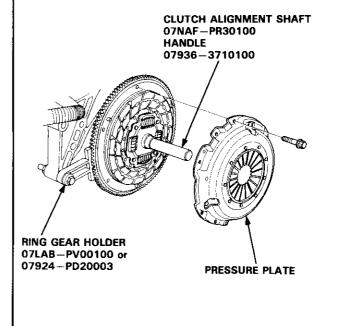
Installation -

- 1. Install the ring gear holder.
- Apply grease to the spline of the clutch disc, then install the clutch disc using the special tools as shown.

NOTE: Use only Super High Temp Urea Grease (P/N 08798 – 9002).



3. Install the pressure plate.

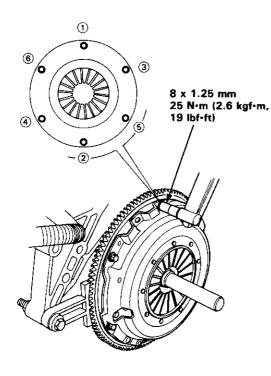


Release Bearing

Removal/Inspection

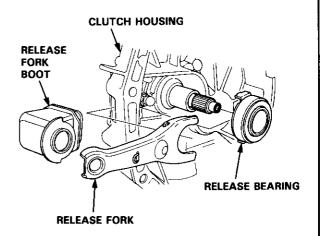
\odot

4. Torque the mounting bolts in a crisscross pattern as shown. Tighten the bolts in several steps to prevent warping the diaphragm spring.



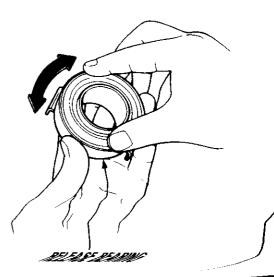
- 5. Remove the special tools.
- Recheck the diaphragm spring fingers for height (see page 12-7).

- 1. Remove the release fork boot from the clutch housing.
- Remove the release fork from the clutch housing by squeezing the release fork set spring with pliers. Remove the release bearing.



Check the release bearing for play by spinning it by hand.

CAUTION: The release bearing is packed with grease. Do not wash it in solvent.



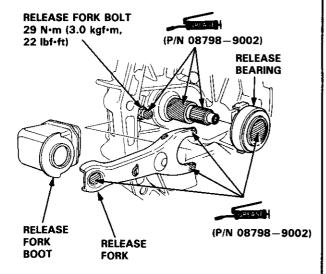
If there is excessive play, replace the release bearing with a new one.

Release Bearing

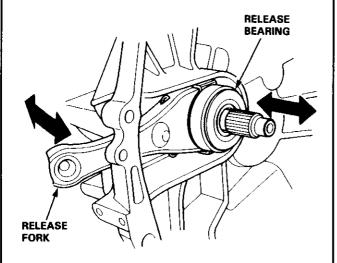
Installation

- With the release fork slid between the release bearing pawls, install the release bearing on the mainshaft while inserting the release fork through the hole in the clutch housing.
- Align the detent of the release fork with the release fork bolt, then press the release fork over the release fork bolt.

NOTE: Use only Super High Temp Urea Grease (P/N 08798 – 9002).



3. Move the release fork right and left to make sure that the fork fits properly against the release bearing, and that the release bearing slides smoothly.



4. Install the release fork boot.

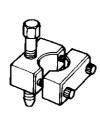
Manual Transmission

| Special Tools 13-2 | - |
|--|----|
| Maintenance | |
| Transmission Oil13-3 | } |
| Back-up Light Switch | |
| Replacement 13-3 | 3 |
| Transmission Assembly | |
| Removal 13-4 | ļ |
| Illustrated Index13-8 | 3 |
| Transmission Housing | |
| Removal 13-1 | 10 |
| Reverse Change Holder, Reverse Idler Gea | r |
| Clearance Inspection 13-1 | 11 |
| Removal 13-1 | 12 |
| Change Holder Assembly | |
| Clearance Inspection 13-1 | 13 |
| Removal 13-1 | 15 |
| Disassembly/Reassembly 13-1 | 16 |
| Mainshaft, Countershaft, Shift Fork | |
| Removal 13-1 | 17 |
| Shift Rod | |
| Removal 13-1 | 18 |
| Shift Fork Assembly | |
| Index 13-1 | |
| Clearance Inspection13-2 | 20 |

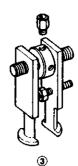


| Ref. No. | Tool Number | Description | Qty | Page Reference |
|-------------|------------------|---------------------------------------|-----|----------------|
| 1 | 07GAJ - PG20110 | Mainshaft Holder | 1 | 13 – 40 |
| 2 | 07GAJ - PG20130 | Mainshaft Base | 1 | 13 – 40 |
| 3 | *07736 - A01000A | Adjustable Bearing Puller, 25 – 40 mm | 1 | 13 – 36, 37 |
| 4 | 07746 - 0010300 | Attachment, 42 x 47 mm | 1 | 13 – 36 |
| (5) | 07746 - 0010400 | Attachment, 52 x 55 mm | 1 | 13 – 36, 37 |
| 6 | 07746 - 0030100 | Driver, 40 mm I.D. | 1 | 13 – 27, 33 |
| ⑦ | 07746 - 0030300 | Attachment, 30 mm I.D. | 1 | 13 – 27, 33 |
| 8 | 07746 - 0030400 | Attachment, 35 mm I.D. | 1 | 13 – 27, 33 |
| 9 | 07746 - 0041100 | Pilot, 28 mm | 1 | 13 – 36 |
| 10 | 07749 - 0010000 | Driver | 1 | 13 – 36, 37 |

^{*} Must be used with commercially available 3/8" - 16 Slide Hammer.







1



(2)



4

(5)





1

8

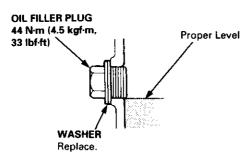
9

Maintenance

Transmission Oil

NOTE: Check the oil with the engine OFF, and the car on level ground.

 Remove the oil filler plug, then check the level and condition of the oil.



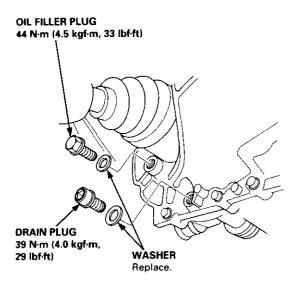
- The oil level must be up to the filler hole. If it is below the hole, add oil until it runs out, then reinstall the oil filler plug.
- If the transmission oil is dirty, remove the drain plug and drain the oil.
- Reinstall the drain plug with a new washer, and refill the transmission oil to the proper level.

NOTE: The drain plug washer should be replaced at every oil change.

5 Reinstall the oil filler plug with a new washer.

Oil Capacity 2.2 \(\ext{ (2.3 US.qt, 1.9 Imp.qt)} \) at oil change. 2.3 \(\ext{ (2.4 US.qt, 2.0 Imp.qt)} \) at overhaul.

Use only SAE 10 W - 30 or 10 W - 40, API Service SF or SG grade.



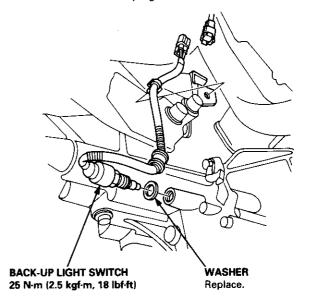
Back-up Light Switch



Replacement

NOTE: To check the back-up light switch, see section 23.

- Disconnect the connector, then remove the back-up light switch connector from the connector clamp.
- 2. Remove the back-up light switch.



- 3. Install the new washer and the back-up light switch.
- 4. Check the transmission oil level (see page 13-3).

Transmission Assembly

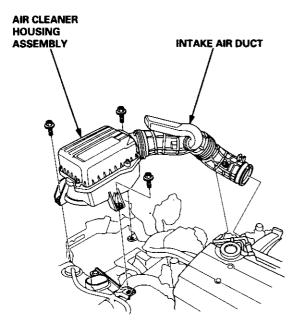
Removal

A WARNING

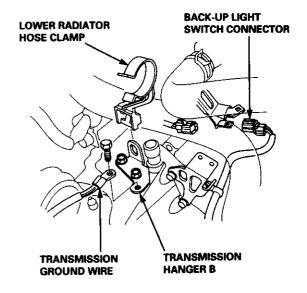
- Make sure jacks and safety stands are placed properly (see section 1).
- Apply parking brake and block rear wheels so car will not roll off stands and fall on you while working under it.

CAUTION: Use fender covers to avoid damaging painted surfaces.

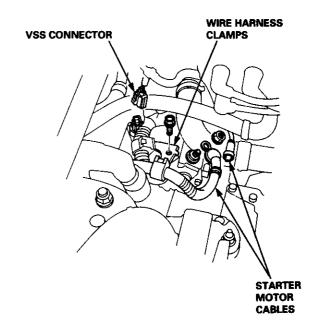
- 1. Disconnect the negative (-) cable from the battery, then the positive (+) cable.
- 2. Drain the transmission oil, then reinstall the drain plug with a new washer (see page 13-3).
- 3. Remove the intake air duct and the air cleaner housing assembly.



- Disconnect the back-up light switch connector and the transmission ground wire.
- 5. Remove the lower radiator hose clamp from the transmission hanger B.



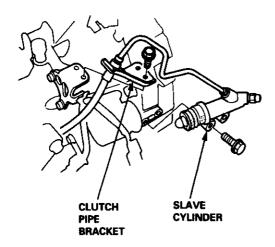
- 6. Remove the wire harness clamps.
- Disconnect the starter motor cables and the vehicle speed sensor (VSS) connector.



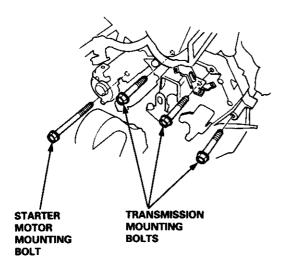


8. Remove the clutch pipe bracket and the slave cylinder

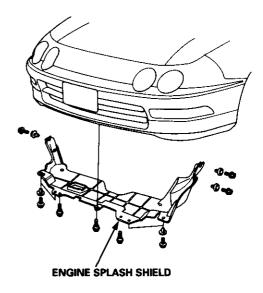
NOTE: Do not operate the clutch pedal once the slave cylinder has been removed.



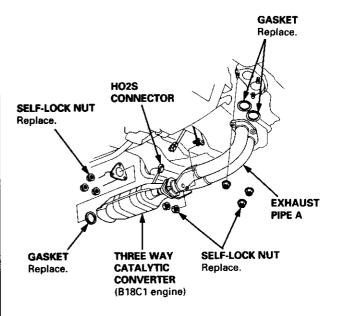
Remove the three upper transmission mounting bolts and lower starter motor mounting bolt.



10. Remove the engine splash shield.



11. Disconnect the heated oxygen sensor (HO2S) connector, then remove the exhaust pipe A, and the three way catalytic converter (B18C1 Engine).

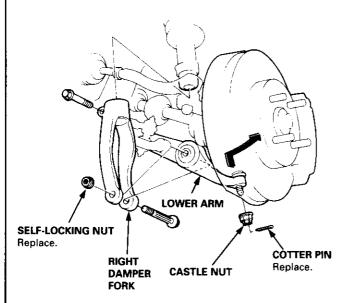


(cont'd)

Transmission Assembly

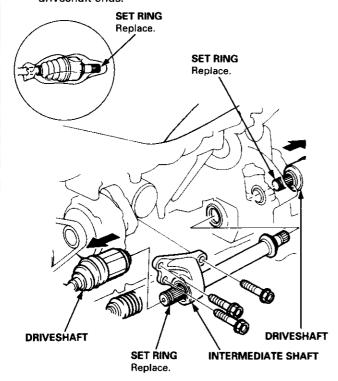
Removal (cont'd)

- 12. Remove the cotter pins and loosen the castle nuts, then separate the ball joints from the lower arm (see section 18).
- 13. Remove the right damper fork.

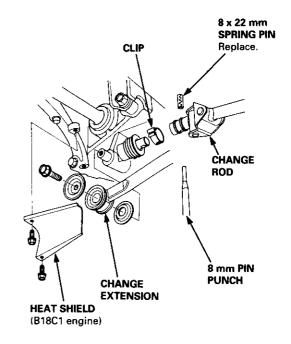


14. Remove the driveshafts and the intermediate shaft (see section 16).

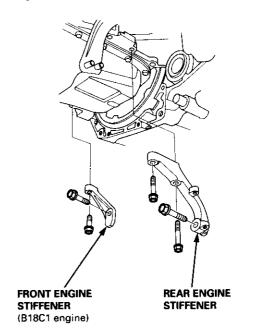
NOTE: Coat all precision finished surfaces with clean engine oil or grease. Tie plastic bags over the driveshaft ends.



- 15. Remove the heat shield (B18C1 engine).
- Remove the bolt, then disconnect the change extension.
- 17. Remove the clip and the spring pin, then disconnect the change rod.

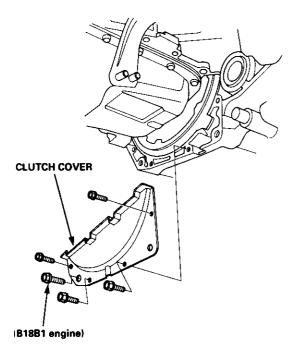


18. Remove the front (B18C1 engine) and the rear engine stiffeners.

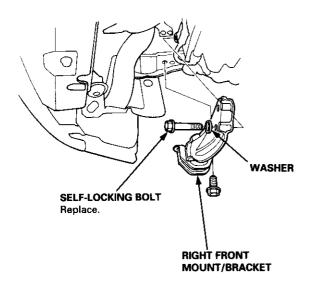




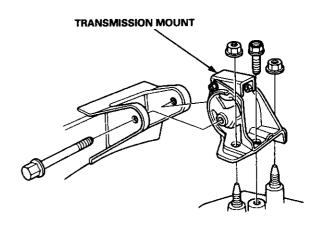
19. Remove the clutch cover.



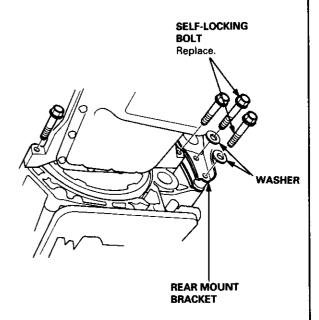
20. Remove the right front mount/bracket.



- 21. Place a transmission jack under the transmission and a jack stand under the engine.
- 22. Remove the transmission mount.



23. Remove the rear mount bracket bolts and the transmission mounting bolts.



24. Pull the transmission away from the engine until it clears the mainshaft, then lower it on the transmission jack.

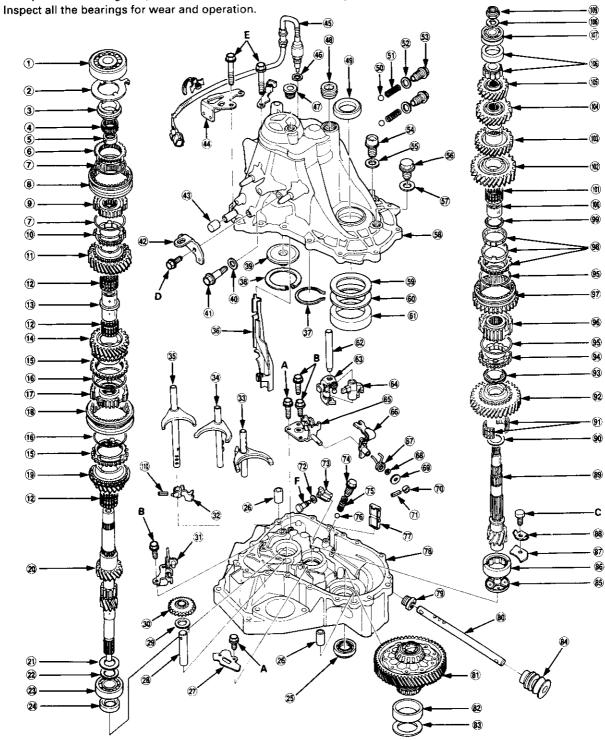
Illustrated Index

Refer to the drawing below for the transmission disassembly/reassembly. Clean all the parts thoroughly in solvent and dry with compressed air.

Lubricate all the parts with oil before reassembly.

NOTE:

- This transmission uses no gaskets between the major housings; use liquid gasket (P/N 08718-0001) (see page 13-43).
- Always clean the magnet 70 whenever the transmission housing is disassembled.



| | Bolt Size | Torque Value |
|---|-------------|-------------------------------|
| Α | 6 x 1.0 mm | 12 N·m (1.2 kgf·m, 9 lbf·ft) |
| В | 6 x 1.0 mm | 15 N·m (1.5 kgf·m, 11 lbf·ft) |
| С | 8 x 1.0 mm | 15 N·m (1.5 kgf·m, 11 lbf·ft) |
| D | 8 x 1.25 mm | 24 N·m (2.4 kgf·m, 17 lbf·ft) |
| Ε | 8 x 1.25 mm | 27 N·m (2.8 kgf·m, 20 lbf·ft) |
| F | 8 x 1.0 mm | 30 N·m (3.1 kgf·m, 22 lbf·ft) |

| |
|-------------------------------------|
| 1) BALL BEARING |
| O CTORRED DING |
| 2 STOPPER RING |
| 3 TAPER RING |
| NEEDLE BEARING |
| S SPACER |
| SYNCHRO RING |
| T SYNCHRO SPRING |
| 8 5TH/REVERSE SYNCHRO SLEEVE |
| © 51H/NEVERSE SYNCHRO SELEVE |
| 9 5TH/REVERSE SYNCHRO HUB |
| SYNCHRO RING |
| ① 5TH GEAR |
| 38 x 43 x 26 mm NEEDLE BEARING |
| 3 SPACER COLLAR |
| 4TH GEAR |
| SYNCHRO RING |
| |
| ® SYNCHRO SPRING |
| ① 3RD/4TH SYNCHRO HUB |
| ® 3RD/4TH SYNCHRO SLEEVE |
| ® 3RD GEAR |
| 20 MAINSHAFT |
| 2) WASHER |
| 2 SPRING WASHER |
| |
| BALL BEARING |
| 29 28 x 41 x 7 mm OIL SEAL Replace. |
| 25 35 x 56 x 8 mm OIL SEAL Replace. |
| 26 14 x 20 mm DOWEL PIN |
| ② OIL CHAMBER PLATE |
| 28 REVERSE IDLER GEAR SHAFT |
| 29 WASHER (*2) |
| |
| 30 REVERSE IDLER GEAR |
| ③ REVERSE CHANGE HOLDER |
| 32) 5TH/REVERSE SHIFT PIECE |
| 33 1ST/2ND SHIFT FORK |
| 34) 3RD/4TH SHIFT FORK |
| 35 5TH/REVERSE SHIFT FORK |
| 36 OIL GUTTER PLATE |
| SNAP RING |
| 38 72 mm THRUST SHIM |
| |
| 39 OIL GUIDE PLATE |
| 40 10 mm WASHER Replace. |
| REVERSE IDLER GEAR SHAFT BOLT |
| 54 N·m (5.5 kgf·m, 40 lbf·ft) |
| 42 TRANSMISSION HANGER B |
| 43 BREATHER CAP |
| TRANSMISSION HANGER A |
| BACK-UP LIGHT SWITCH |
| |
| 25 N·m (2.5 kgf·m, 18 lbf·ft) |
| 46 14 mm WASHER Replace. |
| 47 16 mm SEALING BOLT |
| 29 N·m (3.0 kgf·m, 22 lbf·ft) |
| 48 32 mm SEALING BOLT |
| 25 N·m (2.5 kgf·m, 18 lbf·ft) |
| 49 40 x 62 x 9 mm OIL SEAL Replace. |
| 50 STEEL BALL D. 5/16 in |
| |
| ⑤ SPRING L. 30 mm (1.2 in) |
| 52 12 mm WASHER Replace. |
| 53 SET SCREW |

WASHER Replace. TRANSMISSION HOUSING 80 mm SHIM (*1) 79.5 mm SHIM (*2) THRUST SHIM (*2) T. 2.0 mm (0.079 in) BEARING OUTER RACE (*2) SHIFT PIECE SHAFT INTERLOCK SHIFT PIECE SHIFT ARM HOLDER **SELECT ARM SELECT RETURN SPRING** 10 mm SHIM 10 mm WASHER 10 mm WASHER
10 LOCK COLLAR
10 3 x 16 mm SPRING PIN Replace.
10 8 mm SPRING WASHER
11 COLUMN SPRING PINCE TO CHANGE PIECE

SET SCREW SET SCREW 22 N·m (2.2 kgf·m, 16 lbf·ft) SPRING L. 25.6 mm (1.01 in) STEEL BALL D. 5/16 in MAGNET **CLUTCH HOUSING** 79 14 x 25 x 16 mm OIL SEAL Replace. SHIFT ROD **DIFFERENTIAL ASSEMBLY** See section 15 **82 BEARING OUTER RACE (*2)** THRUST SHIM (*2) T. 2.5 mm (0.098 in) (84) SHIFT ROD BOOT 85 OIL GUIDE PLATE 33 x 60 x 20 mm NEEDLE BEARING BEARING RETAINER PLATE B LOCK WASHER Replace. OUNTERSHAFT M THRUST SHIM 9 37 x 42 x 25 mm NEEDLE BEARING 1ST GEAR
FRICTION DAMPER **SYNCHRO RING** SYNCHRO SPRING 1ST/2ND SYNCHRO HUB **97 REVERSE GEAR** DOUBLE CONE SYNCHRO (*2) SYNCHRO RING (*1) FRICTION DAMPER ® SPACER (f) 42 x 47 x 24 mm NEEDLE BEARING (f) 2ND GEAR **3RD GEAR** 4TH GEAR **5TH GEAR** 🔞 NEEDLE BEARING **BALL BEARING** SPRING WASHER LOCKNUT Replace. 108 → 0 → 108 N·m (11.0 → 0 → 11.0 kgf·m, 80 → 0 → 80 lbf·ft) 10 5 x 22 mm SPRING PIN Replace.

22 N·m (2.2 kgf·m, 16 lbf·ft)

39 N·m (4.0 kgf·m, 29 lbf·ft) WASHER Replace.

44 N·m (4.5 kgf·m, 33 lbf·ft)

OIL DRAIN PLUG

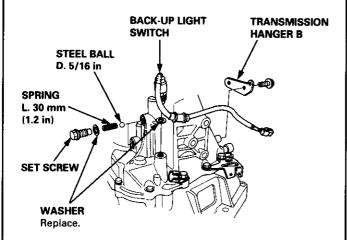
OIL FILLER PLUG

Transmission Housing

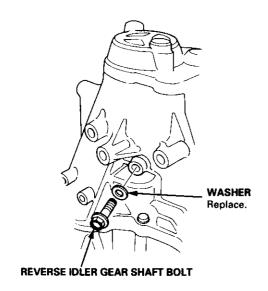
Removal -

NOTE:

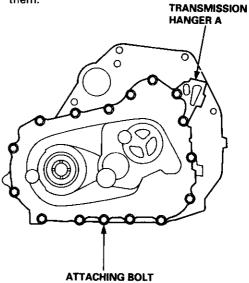
- If the transmission housing or clutch housing are replaced, the bearing preload must be adjusted (B18C1 engine).
- Place the clutch housing on two pieces of wood thick enough to keep the mainshaft from the hitting the workbench.
- 1. Remove the back-up light switch.
- 2. Remove the transmission hanger B.
- Remove the set screws, the springs, and the steel balls.



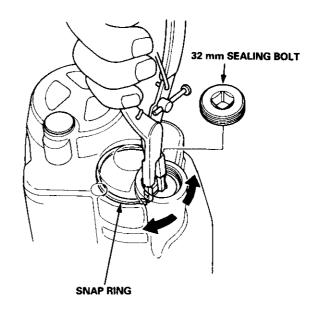
4. Remove the reverse idler gear shaft bolt.



 Loosen the transmission housing attaching bolts in a crisscross pattern in several steps, then remove them.



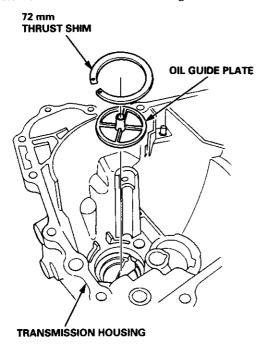
- 6. Remove the 32 mm sealing bolt.
- Expand the snap ring on the countershaft ball bearing and remove it from the groove using a pair of snap ring pliers.



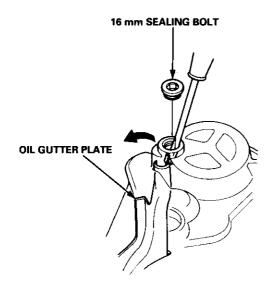
Reverse Change Holder, Reverse Idler Gear



- 8. Separate the transmission housing from the clutch housing, and wipe it clean of the sealant.
- Remove the 72 mm thrust shim and the oil guide plate from the transmission housing.



10. Remove the 16 mm sealing bolt and the oil gutter plate.



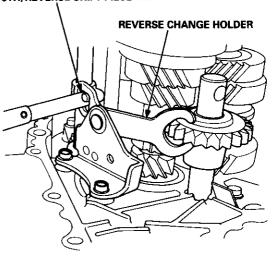
Clearance Inspection

1. Measure the clearance between the reverse change holder and the 5th/reverse shift piece pin.

Standard:

Reverse Side: 0.05 – 0.45 mm (0.002 – 0.018 in) 5th Side: 0.4 – 0.9 mm (0.02 – 0.04 in)

5TH/REVERSE SHIFT PIECE PIN

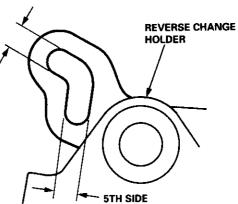


If the clearance are not within the standard, measure the width of the grooves in the reverse change holder.

Standard:

Reverse Side: 7.05 – 7.25 mm (0.278 – 0.285 in) 5th Side: 7.4 – 7.7 mm (0.29 – 0.30 in)

REVERSE SIDE



- If the width of the grooves are not within the standard, replace the reverse change holder with a new one
- If the width of the grooves are within the standard, replace the 5th/reverse shift piece with a new one.

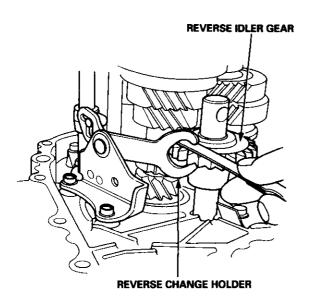
(cont'd)

Reverse Change Holder, Reverse Idler Gear

Clearance Inspection (cont'd) -

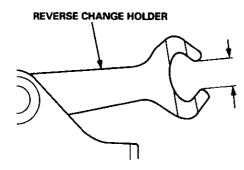
3. Measure the clearance between the reverse idler gear and the reverse change holder.

Standard: 0.5 - 1.1 mm (0.02 - 0.04 in) Service Limit: 1.8 mm (0.07 in)



4. If the clearance is more than the service limit, measure the width of the reverse change holder.

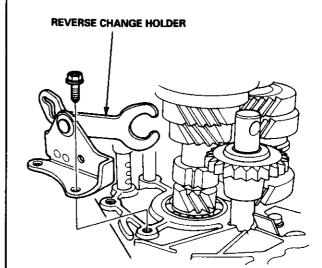
Standard: 13.0 - 13.3 mm (0.512 - 0.524 in)



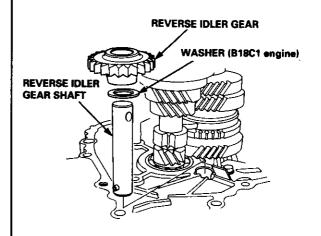
- If the width is not within the standard, replace the reverse change holder with a new one.
- If the width is within the standard, replace the reverse idler gear with a new one.

– Removal -

1. Remove the reverse change holder.



2. Remove the reverse idler gear, the reverse idler gear shaft, and the washer (B18C1 engine).



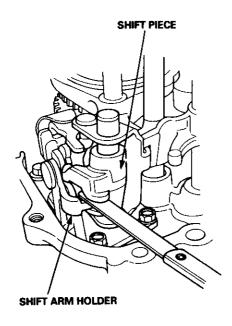
Change Holder Assembly

\odot

- Clearance Inspection -

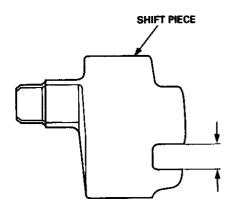
 Measure the clearance between the shift piece and the shift arm holder.

Standard: 0.1 - 0.3 mm (0.004 - 0.012 in) Service Limit: 0.6 mm (0.02 in)



2. If the clearance is more than the service limit, measure the width of the groove in the shift piece.

Standard: 8.1 - 8.2 mm (0.319 - 0.323 in)

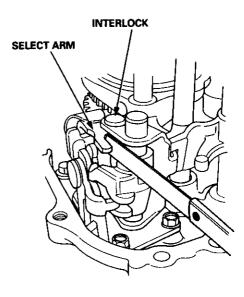


- If the width of the groove is not within the standard, replace the shift piece with a new one.
- If the width of the groove is within the standard, replace the shift arm holder with a new one.

Measure the clearance between the select arm and the interlock.

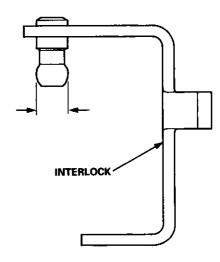
Standard: 0.05 - 0.25 (0.002 - 0.010 in)

Service Limit: 0.5 mm (0.02 in)



If the clearance is more than the service limit, measure the width of the interlock.

Standard: 9.9 - 10.0 mm (0.390 - 0.394 in)



- If the width is not within the standard, replace the interlock with a new one.
- If the width is within the standard, replace the select arm with a new one.

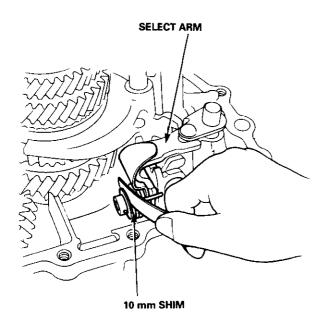
(cont'd)

Change Holder Assembly

Clearance Inspection (cont'd)

Measure the clearance between the select arm and the 10 mm shim.

Standard: 0.01 - 0.2 mm (0.0004 - 0.008 in)



 If the clearance is not within the standard, select and install the appropriate 10 mm shim for the correct clearance from the chart below.

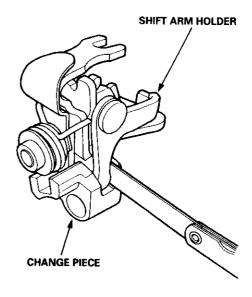
10 mm Shim

| | Part Number | Thickness |
|---|-------------------|-------------------|
| Α | 24435 - 689 - 000 | 0.8 mm (0.031 in) |
| В | 24436 - 689 - 000 | 1.0 mm (0.039 in) |
| С | 24437 - 689 - 000 | 1.2 mm (0.047 in) |
| D | 24438 - 689 - 000 | 1.4 mm (0.055 in) |
| E | 24439 - 689 - 000 | 1.6 mm (0.063 in) |

9. Measure the clearance between the shift arm holder and the change piece.

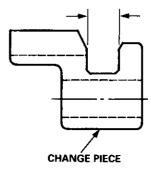
Standard: 0.05 - 0.35 (0.002 - 0.014 in)

Service Limit: 0.8 mm (0.03 in)



10. If the clearance is more than the service limit, measure the groove of the change piece.

Standard: 12.05 - 12.15 mm (0.4744 - 0.4783 in)

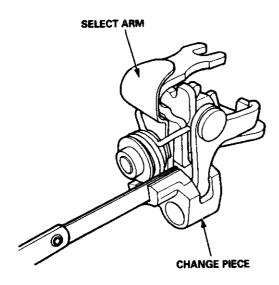


- If the groove is not within the standard, replace the change piece with a new one.
- If the groove is within the standard, replace the shift arm holder with a new one.



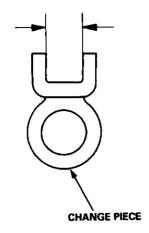
11. Measure the clearance between the select arm and the change piece.

Standard: 0.05 - 0.35 mm (0.002 - 0.014 in) Service Limit: 0.5 mm (0.02 in)



12. If the clearance is more than the service limit, measure the width of the change piece.

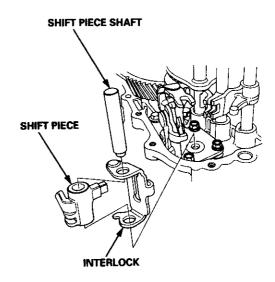
Standard: 12.05 - 12.15 mm (0.4744 - 0.4783 in)



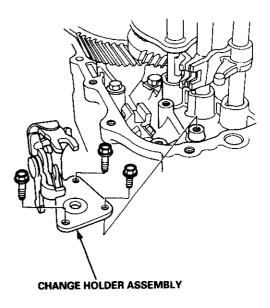
- If the width is not within the standard, replace the change piece with a new one.
- If the width is within the standard, replace the select arm with a new one.

Removal

1. Remove the shift piece shaft, then remove the shift piece and the interlock.



2. Remove the change holder assembly.

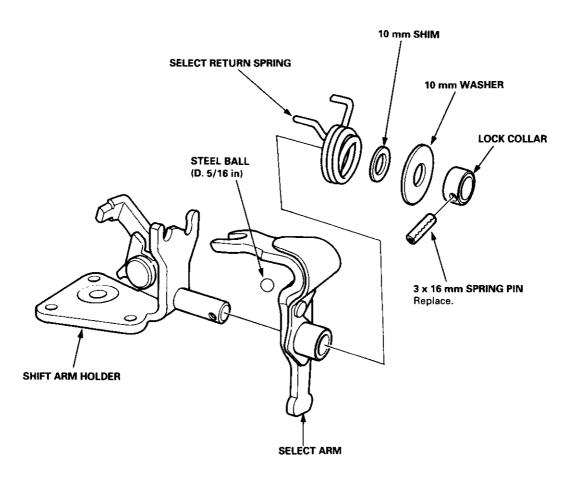


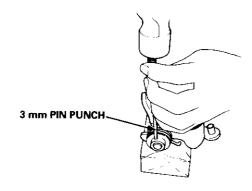
Change Holder Assembly

Disassembly/Reassembly

10

Prior to reassembling, clean all the parts in solvent, dry them and apply lubricant to any contact surfaces.





Mainshaft, Countershaft, Shift Fork

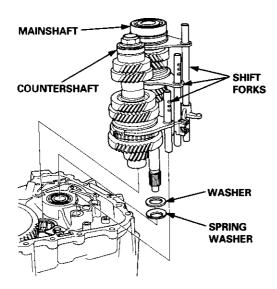


- Removal

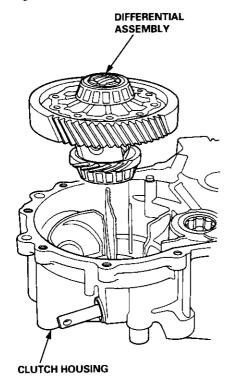
 Remove the mainshaft and the countershaft assemblies with the shift forks from the clutch housing.

NOTE: Tape the mainshaft spline before removing the mainshaft and the countershaft assemblies.

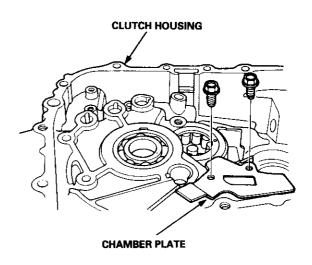
2 Remove the spring washer and the washer.



3. Remove the differential assembly from the clutch housing.



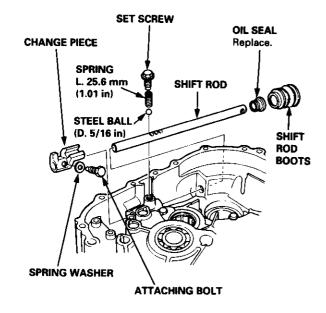
4. Remove the chamber plate.



Shift Rod

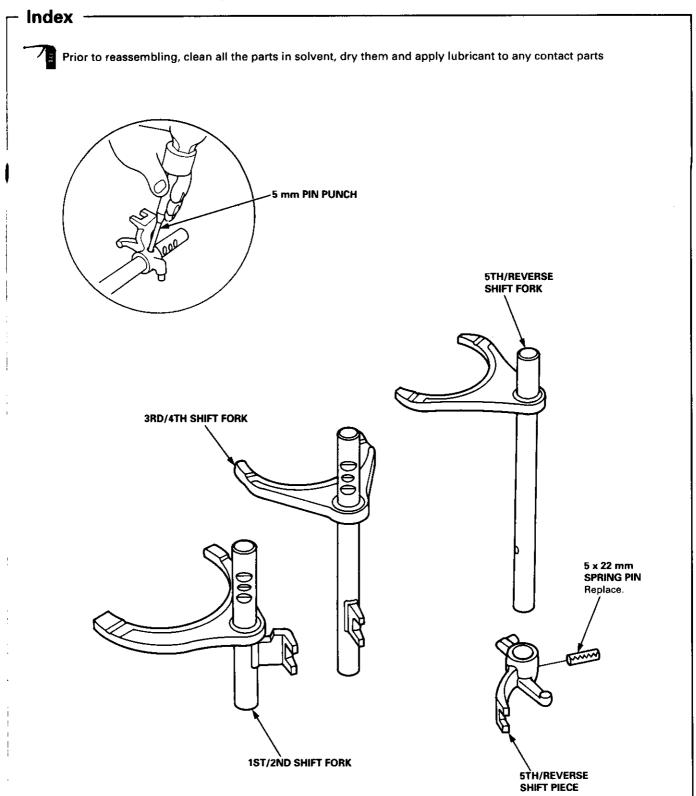
Removal

- Remove the shift rod boots.
- Remove the change piece attaching bolt and the spring washer.
- Remove the set screw, then remove the spring and the steel ball.
- Remove the shift rod, then remove the change piece.
- 5. Remove the oil seal.



Shift Fork Assembly





Shift Fork Assembly

Clearance Inspection

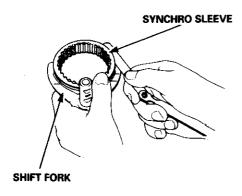
NOTE: The synchro sleeve and the synchro hub should be replaced as a set.

 Measure the clearance between each shift fork and its matching synchro sleeve.

Standard:

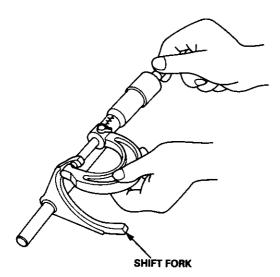
0.35 - 0.65 mm (0.014 - 0.026 in)

Service Limit: 1.0 mm (0.04 in)



If the clearance is more than the service limit, measure the thickness of the shift fork fingers.

Standard: 7.4 - 7.6 mm (0.291 - 0.299 in)



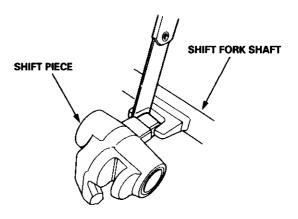
- If the thickness of the shift fork fingers is not within the standard, replace the shift fork with a new one.
- If the thickness of the shift fork fingers is within the standard, replace the synchro sleeve with a new one.

Measure the clearance between the shift piece and the shift fork shafts.

Standard:

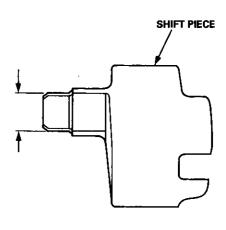
0.2 - 0.5 mm (0.008 - 0.02 in)

Service Limit: 0.8 mm (0.03 in)



4. If the clearance is more than the service limit, measure the width of the shift piece.

Standard: 11.9 - 12.0 mm (0.469 - 0.472 in)



- If the width of the shift piece is not within the standard, replace the shift piece with a new one.
- If the width of the shift piece is within the standard, replace the shift fork with a new one.

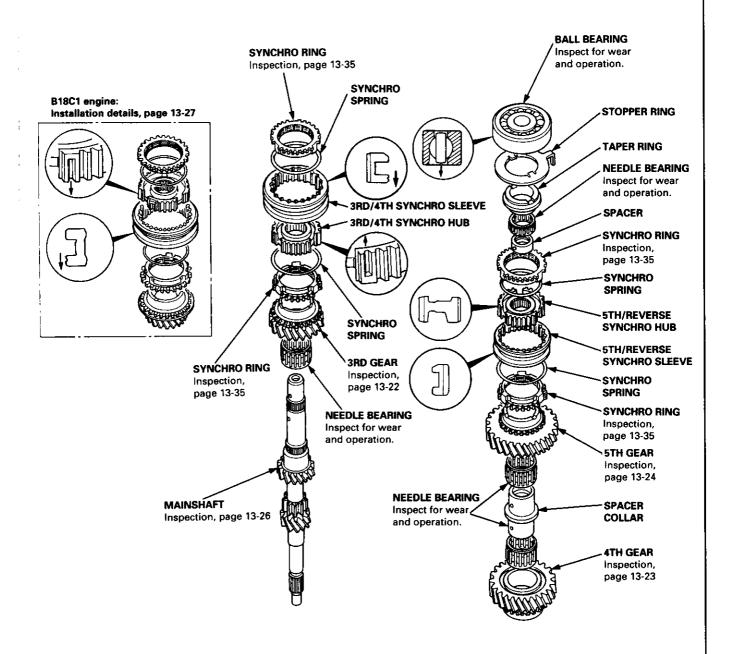
Mainshaft Assembly



Index

NOTE: The 3rd/4th and the 5th synchro hubs are installed with a press.

Prior to reassembling, clean all the parts in solvent, dry them and apply lubricant to any contact surfaces. The 3rd/4th and the 5th synchro hubs, however, should be installed with a press before lubricating them.



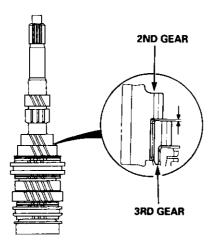
Mainshaft Assembly

- Clearance Inspection

NOTE: If replacement is required, always replace the synchro sleeve and the synchro hub as a set.

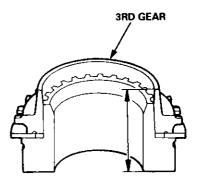
Measure the clearance between 2nd and 3rd gears.

Standard: 0.06 - 0.21 mm (0.002 - 0.008 in) Service Limit: 0.3 mm (0.01 in)



2. If the clearance is more than the service limit, measure the thickness of 3rd gear.

| Engine Type | B18C1 | B18B1 |
|---------------|--|--|
| Standard | 34.92 – 34.97 mm (1.375 – 1.377 in) | 34.42 – 34.47 mm (1.355 – 1.357 in) |
| Service Limit | 34.8 mm (1.370 in) | 34.3 mm (1.350 in) |

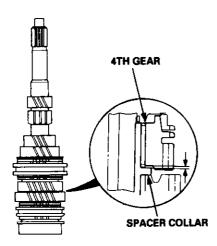


- If the thickness of 3rd gear is less than the service limit, replace 3rd gear with a new one.
- If the thickness of 3rd gear is within the service limit, replace the 3rd/4th synchro hub with a new one.



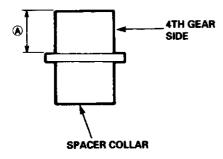
Measure the clearance between 4th gear and the spacer collar.

Standard: 0.06 - 0.21 mm (0.002 - 0.008 in) Service Limit: 0.3 mm (0.01 in)



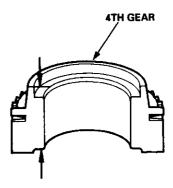
4. If the clearance is more than the service limit, measure distance (a) on the spacer collar.

Standard: 26.03 - 26.08 mm (1.025 - 1.027 in)



5. If distance (a) is not within the standard, replace the spacer collar with a new one. If distance (a) is within the standard, measure the thickness of 4th gear.

| Engine Type | B18C1 | B18B1 |
|---------------|--|--|
| Standard | 31.42 – 31.47 mm (1.237 – 1.239 in) | 30.92 – 30.97 mm (1.217 – 1.219 in) |
| Service Limit | 31.3 mm (1.232 in) | 30.8 mm (1.213 in) |



- If the thickness of 4th gear is less than the service limit, replace 4th gear with a new one.
- If the thickness of 4th gear is within the service limit, replace the 3rd/4th synchro hub with a new one.

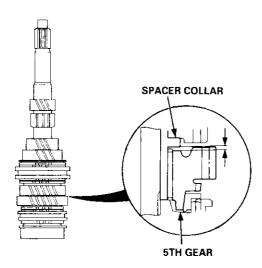
(cont'd)

Mainshaft Assembly

Clearance Inspection (cont'd)

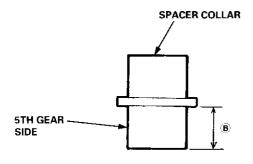
6. Measure the clearance between 5th gear and the spacer collar.

Standard: 0.06 - 0.21 mm (0.002 - 0.008 in) Service limit: 0.3 mm (0.012 in)



7. If the clearance is more than the service limit, measure distance (a) on the spacer collar.

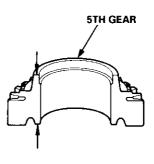
Standard: 26.03 - 26.08 mm (1.025 - 1.027 in)



8. If distance (B) is not within the standard, replace the spacer collar with a new one.

If distance (8) is within the standard, measure the thickness of 5th gear.

Standard: 31.42 - 31.47 mm (1.237 - 1.239 in) Service Limit: 31.3 mm (1.232 in)

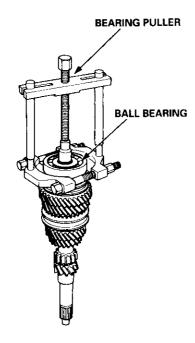


- If the thickness of 5th gear is less than the service limit, replace 5th gear with a new one.
- If the thickness of 5th gear is within the service limit, replace the 5th synchro hub with a new one.



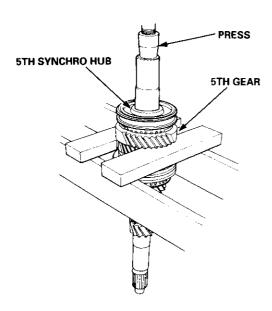
- Disassembly

* Remove the ball bearing using a bearing puller as shown.

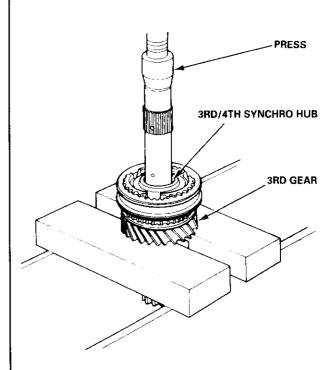


CAUTION: Remove the synchro hubs using a press and the steel blocks as shown. Use of a jaw-type puller can cause damage to the gear teeth.

2. Support 5th gear on steel blocks, and press the mainshaft out of the 5th synchro hub, as shown.



3. Support 3rd gear on steel blocks, and press the mainshaft out of the 3rd/4th synchro hub, as shown.



Mainshaft Assembly

Inspection -

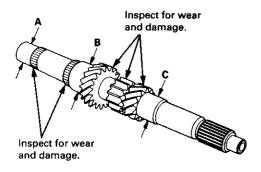
1. Inspect the gear surfaces and the bearing surfaces for wear and damage, then measure the mainshaft at points A, B, and C.

Standard:

A: 27.987 – 28.000 mm (1.1018 – 1.1024 in) B: 37.984 – 38.000 mm (1.4954 – 1.4960 in) C: 27.977 – 27.990 mm (1.1015 – 1.1020 in)

Service Limit:

A: 27.940 mm (1.1000 in) B: 37.930 mm (1.4933 in) C: 27.930 mm (1.0996 in)



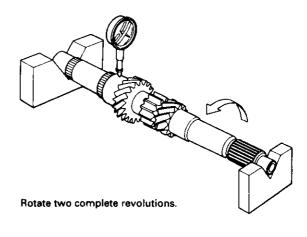
Inspect oil passages for clogging.

• If any parts of the mainshaft are less than the service limit, replace mainshaft with a new one.

2. Inspect for runout.

Standard: 0.02 mm (0.0008 in) Max. Service Limit: 0.05 mm (0.002 in)

NOTE: Support the mainshaft at both ends as shown.



 If the runout is more than the service limit, replace the mainshaft with a new one.



Reassembly

CAUTION:

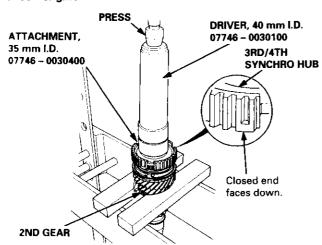
- Press the 3rd/4th and the 5th synchro hubs on the mainshaft without lubrication.
- When installing the 3rd/4th and the 5th synchro hubs, support the mainshaft on the steel blocks, and install synchro hubs using a press.
- Install the 3rd/4th and the 5th synchro hubs with a maximum pressure of 19.6 kN (2,000 kgf, 14,466 lbf).

NOTE: Refer to page 13-21 for reassembly sequence.

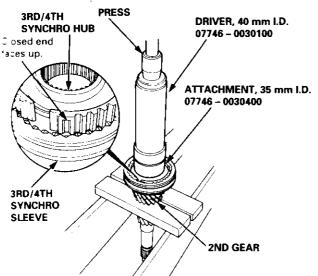
 Support 2nd gear on steel blocks, then install the 3rd/4th synchro hub using the special tools and a press, as shown.

NOTE: After installing, check the operation of the 3rd/4th synchro sleeve and hub.

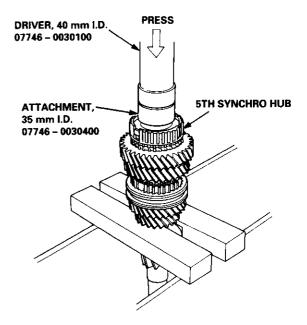
B18B1 engine:



B18C1 engine: Assemble the 3rd/4th synchro hub and sleeve together before installing them on the mainshaft.

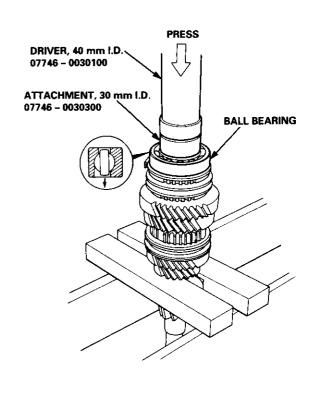


Install the 5th synchro hub using the special tools and a press as shown.



Install the ball bearing using the special tools and a press as shown.

NOTE: Install the ball bearing with the tapered end facing down.

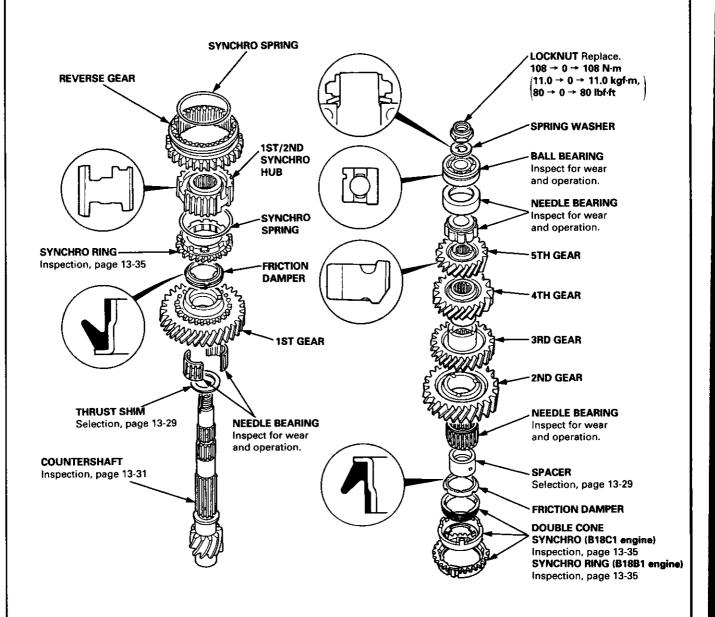


Countershaft Assembly

Index

NOTE: The 4th and 5th gears are installed with a press.

Prior to reassembling, clean all the parts in solvent, dry them and apply lubricant to any contact surfaces. The 4th and 5th gears, however, should be installed with a press before lubricating them.

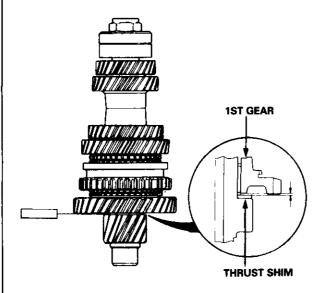




Clearance Inspection

 Measure the clearance between the thrust shim and 1st gear.

Standard: 0.04 - 0.12 mm (0.002 - 0.005 in) Service Limit: 0.18 mm (0.007 in)



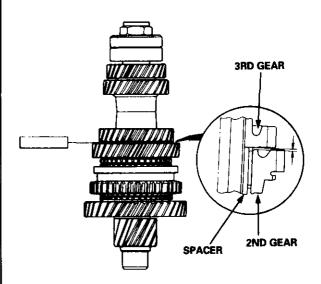
2. If the clearance is more than the service limit, select and install the appropriate thrust shim for the correct clearance from the chart below.

Thrust Shim

| | Part Number | Thickness |
|---|--------------------------|---------------------|
| Α | 23921 – PK5 – 900 | 1.95 mm (0.0768 in) |
| В | 23922 - PK5 - 900 | 1.96 mm (0.0772 in) |
| С | 23923 - PK5 - 900 | 1.97 mm (0.0776 in) |
| D | 23924 – PK5 – 900 | 1.98 mm (0.0780 in) |
| E | 23925 - PK5 - 900 | 1.99 mm (0.0783 in) |
| F | 23926 - PK5 - 900 | 2.00 mm (0.0787 in) |
| G | 23927 – PK5 – 900 | 2.01 mm (0.0791 in) |
| Н | 23928 - PK5 - 900 | 2.02 mm (0.0795 in) |
| I | 23929 - PK5 - 900 | 2.03 mm (0.0799 in) |
| J | 23930 - PK5 - 900 | 2.04 mm (0.0803 in) |
| К | 23931 – PK5 – 900 | 2.05 mm (0.0807 in) |
| L | 23932 - PK5 - 900 | 2.06 mm (0.0811 in) |
| М | 23933 - PK5 - 900 | 2.07 mm (0.0815 in) |
| N | 23934 - PK5 - 900 | 2.08 mm (0.0819 in) |
| 0 | 23935 – PK5 – 900 | 2.09 mm (0.0823 in) |
| P | 23936 - PK5 - 900 | 2.10 mm (0.0827 in) |

3. Measure the clearance between 2nd and 3rd gears.

Standard: 0.05 - 0.12 mm (0.002 - 0.005 in) Service Limit: 0.18 mm (0.007 in)



4. If the clearance is more than the service limit, select and install the appropriate spacer for the correct clearance from the chart below.

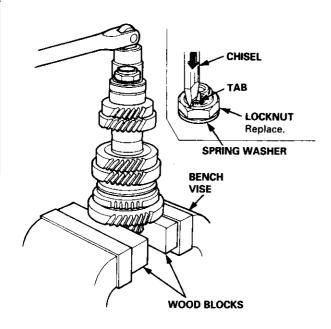
Spacer

| | Part Number | Thickness |
|---|-------------------|--|
| Α | 23917 - P21 - 010 | 29.02 – 29.04 mm (1.1425 – 1.1433 in) |
| В | 23918 – P21 – 010 | 29.07 – 29.09 mm (1.1445 – 1.1453 in) |

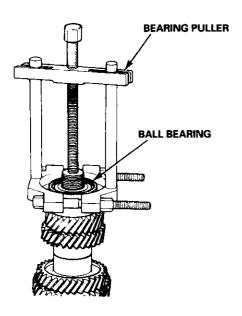
Countershaft Assembly

- Disassembly -

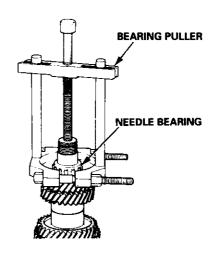
- Securely clamp the countershaft assembly in a bench vise with wood blocks.
- 2. Raise the locknut tab from the groove in the countershaft, then remove the locknut and the spring washer.



Remove the ball bearing using a bearing puller as shown.

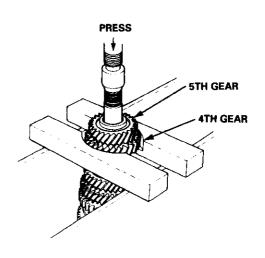


4. Remove the bearing outer race, then remove the needle bearing using a bearing puller as shown.



CAUTION: Remove the gears using a press and the steel blocks as shown. Use of a jaw-type puller can cause damage to the gear teeth.

Support 4th gear on steel blocks, and press the countershaft out of 5th and 4th gears, as shown.





Inspection

 Inspect the gear surfaces and the bearing surfaces for wear and damage, then measure the countershaft at points A, B, and C.

Standard:

A: 24.980 - 27.993 mm (0.9835 - 1.1021 in)

B: 36,984 - 37.000 mm (1.4561 - 1.4567 in)

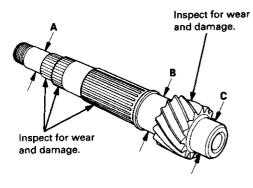
C: 33.000 - 33.015 mm (1.2992 - 1.2998 in)

Service Limit:

A: 24.930 mm (0.9815 in)

B: 36.930 mm (1.4539 in)

C: 32.950 mm (1.2972 in)



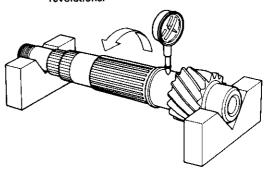
Inspect oil passage for clogging.

 If any parts of the countershaft are less than the service limit, replace countershaft with a new one. 2. Inspect for runout.

Standard: 0.02 mm (0.0008 in) Max. Service Limit: 0.05 mm (0.002 in)

NOTE: Support the countershaft at both ends as shown.

Rotate two complete revolutions.



 If the runout is more than the service limit, replace the countershaft with a new one.

Countershaft Assembly

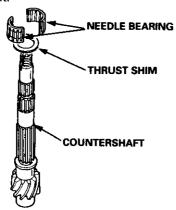
- Reassembly -

CAUTION:

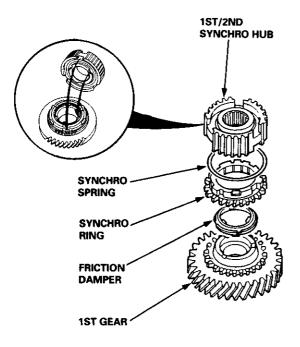
- Press 4th and 5th gears on the countershaft without lubrication.
- When installing 4th and 5th gears, support the shaft on steel blocks, and install the gears using a press.
- Install 4th and 5th gear with a maximum pressure of 25.5 kN (2,600 kgf, 18,806 lbf).

NOTE: Refer to page 13-28 for reassembly sequence.

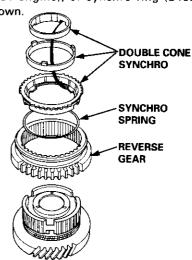
 Install the thrust shim and the needle bearings on the countershaft.



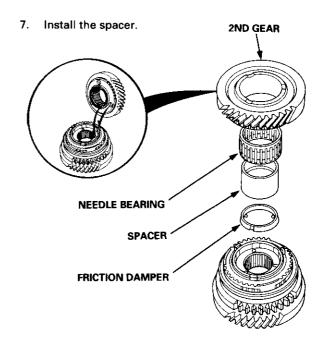
- 2. Install the friction damper, the synchro ring, and the synchro spring on 1st gear.
- Install the 1st/2nd synchro hub by aligning the fingers on the friction damper and the grooves in the 1st/2nd synchro hub, as shown.



- 4. Install the reverse gear.
- 5. Install the synchro spring, and the double cone synchro (B18C1 engine), or synchro ring (B18B1 engine), as shown.



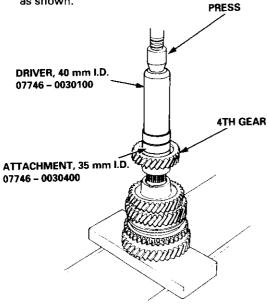
 Assemble the friction damper, the needle bearing, and 2nd gear, then install them by aligning the fingers on the friction damper and the grooves in the 1st/2nd synchro hub with the fingers of the double cone synchro and the grooves on 2nd gear, as shown.



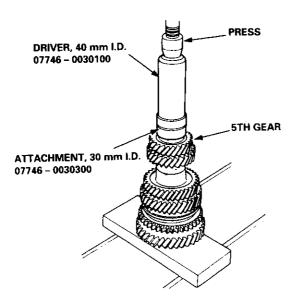
Install the parts assembled in steps 2 – 6 on the countershaft.



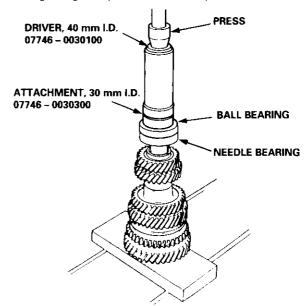
9. Support the countershaft on a steel block, and install 4th gear using the special tools and a press, as shown.



 Support the countershaft on a steel block, and install 5th gear using the special tools and a press, as shown.

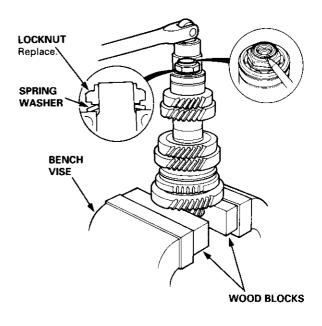


11. Install the needle bearing, then install the ball bearing using the special tools and a press as shown.



- 12. Securely clamp the countershaft assembly in a bench vise with wood blocks.
- 13. Install the spring washer, tighten the locknut, then stake the locknut tab into the groove.

LOCKNUT 108
$$\rightarrow$$
 0 \rightarrow 108 N·m (11.0 \rightarrow 0 \rightarrow 11.0 kgf·m, 80 \rightarrow 0 \rightarrow 80 lbf·ft)

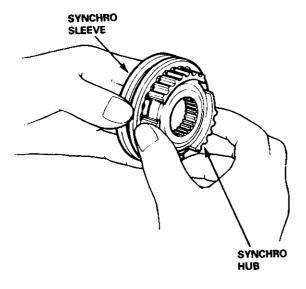


Synchro Sleeve, Synchro Hub

Inspection

- Inspect gear teeth on all synchro hubs and synchro sleeves for rounded off corners, which indicates wear.
- Install each synchro hub in its mating synchro sleeve and check for freedom of movement.

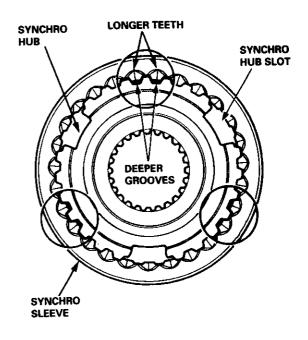
NOTE: If replacement is required, always replace the synchro sleeve and synchro hub as a set.



Installation

When assembling the synchro sleeve and synchro hub, be sure to match the three sets of longer teeth (120 degrees apart) on the synchro sleeve with the three sets of deeper grooves in the synchro hub.

CAUTION: Do not install the synchro sleeve with its longer teeth in the 1st/2nd synchro hub slots, because it will damage the spring ring.



Synchro Ring, Gear

Inspection

- Inspect the synchro ring and gear.
 - A: Inspect the inside of the synchro ring for wear.
 - B: Inspect the synchro sleeve teeth and matching teeth on the synchro ring for wear (rounded off).

GOOD WORN

C: Inspect the synchro sleeve teeth and matching teeth on the gear for wear (rounded off).

GOOD WORN

D: Inspect the gear hub thrust surface for wear.

E: Inspect the cone surface for wear and roughness.

- F: Inspect the teeth on all gears for uneven wear, scoring, galling, and cracks.
- Coat the cone surface of the gear with oil, and place the synchro ring on the matching gear. Rotate the ring, making sure that it does not slip.

Measure the clearance between the synchro ring and gear all the way around.

NOTE: Hold the synchro ring against the gear evenly while measuring the clearance.

Synchro Ring-to-Gear Clearance 0.85 - 1.10 mm Standard:

(0.033 - 0.043 in)

Service Limit: 0.4 mm (0.02 in)

Double Cone Synchro-to-Gear Clearance

(A): (Outer Synchro Ring to Synchro Cone)

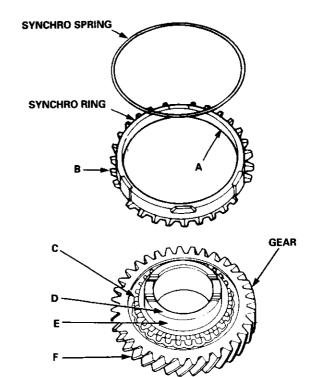
0.5 - 1.0 mm (0.02 - 0.04 in)

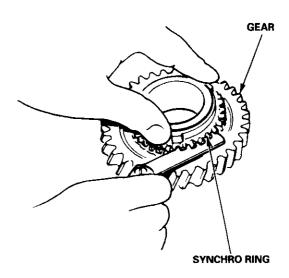
- B: (Synchro Cone to Gear)
- 0.5 1.0 mm (0.02 0.04 in) ©: (Outer Synchro Ring to Gear)
 - 0.95 1.68 mm (0.037 0.066 in)

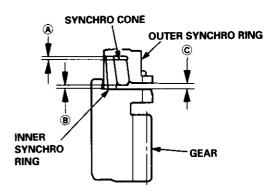
Service Limit:

- (A); 0.3 mm (0.01 in)
- B: 0.3 mm (0.01 in)
- ©: 0.6 mm (0.02 in)

If the clearance is less than the service limit, replace the synchro ring and synchro cone.





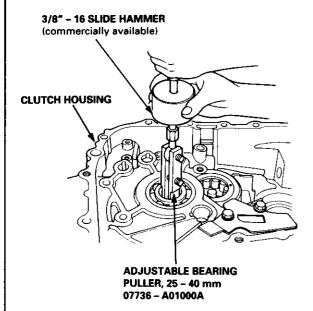


Clutch Housing Bearing

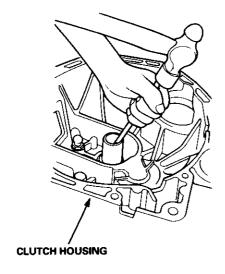
- Replacement

Mainshaft:

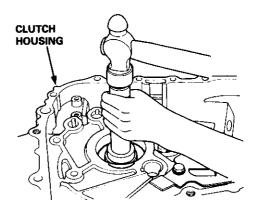
 Remove the ball bearing using the special tools as shown.

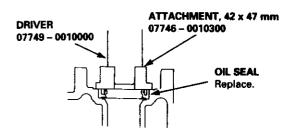


2. Remove the oil seal from the clutch housing.

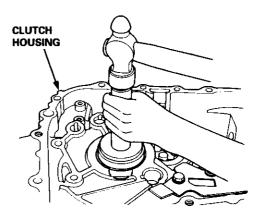


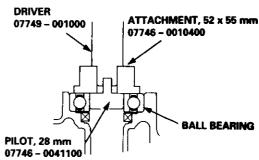
Drive the new oil seal into the clutch housing using the special tools as shown.





4. Drive the ball bearing into the clutch housing using the special tools as shown.

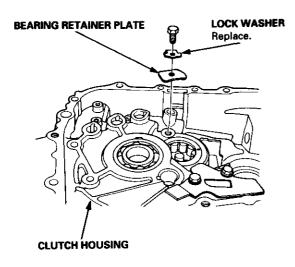




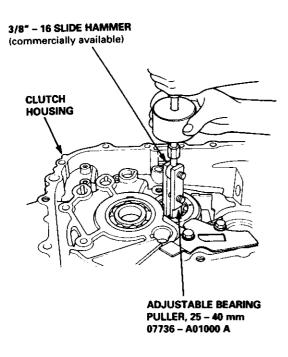


Countershaft:

 Bend the tab on the lock washer down, then remove the bolt and bearing retainer plate.

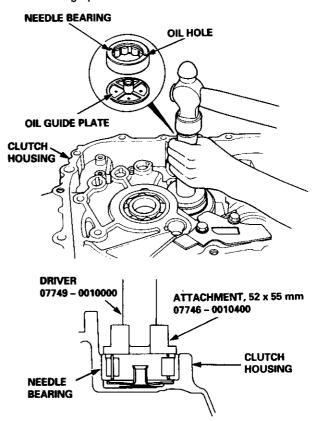


Remove the needle bearing using the special tools as shown, then remove the oil guide plate.

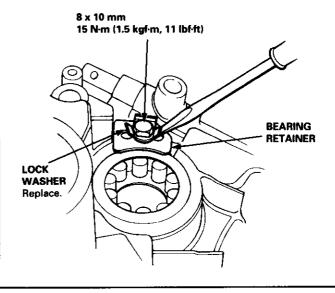


Position the oil guide plate and new needle bearing in the bore of the clutch housing, then drive in the needle bearing using the special tools as shown.

NOTE: Position the needle bearing with the oil hole facing up.



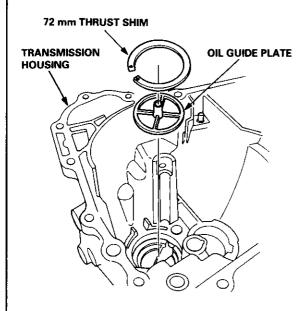
Install the bearing retainer plate and new lock washer, then bend the tab against the bolt head.



Mainshaft Thrust Clearance

- Adjustment -

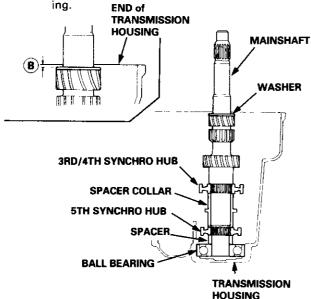
 Remove the 72 mm thrust shim and oil guide plate from the transmission housing.



- Install the 3rd/4th synchro hub, spacer collar, 5th synchro hub, spacer, and ball bearing on the mainshaft, then install the above assembly in the transmission housing.
- 3. Install the washer on the mainshaft.
- 4. Measure distance (B) between the end of the transmission housing and washer.

NOTE:

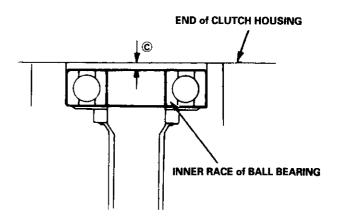
- Use a straight edge and vernier caliper.
- Measure at three locations and average the read-



5. Measure distance © between the end of the clutch housing and bearing inner race.

NOTE:

- Use a straight edge and depth gauge.
- Measure at three locations and average the readings.



6. Select the proper 72 mm thrust shim from the chart by using the formula below.

NOTE: Use only one 72 mm thrust shim.

Shim Selection Formula:

From the measurements you made in steps 4 and 5:

- -1. Add distance © (step 5) to distance ® (step 4).
- -2. From this number, subtract 0.93 (which is the midpoint of the flex range of the clutch housing bearing spring washer).
- -3. Take this number and compare it to the available shim sizes in the chart.

(For example)



Try the 1.68 mm (0.0661 in) shim.



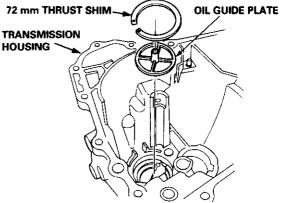
72 mm Thrust Shim

| | Part Number | Thickness |
|----|-------------------|---------------------|
| Α | 23931 - P21 - 000 | 0.60 mm (0.0236 in) |
| В | 23932 - P21 - 000 | 0.63 mm (0.0248 in) |
| С | 23933 - P21 - 000 | 0.66 mm (0.0260 in) |
| D | 23934 - P21 - 000 | 0.69 mm (0.0272 in) |
| E | 23935 - P21 - 000 | 0.72 mm (0.0283 in) |
| F | 23936 - P21 - 000 | 0.75 mm (0.0295 in) |
| G | 23937 - P21 - 000 | 0.78 mm (0.0307 in) |
| Н | 23938 - P21 - 000 | 0.81 mm (0.0319 in) |
| 1 | 23939 - P21 - 000 | 0.84 mm (0.0331 in) |
| J | 23940 - P21 - 000 | 0.87 mm (0.0343 in) |
| К | 23941 - P21 - 000 | 0.90 mm (0.0354 in) |
| L | 23942 - P21 - 000 | 0.93 mm (0.0366 in) |
| М | 23943 - P21 - 000 | 0.96 mm (0.0378 in) |
| N | 23944 P21 000 | 0.99 mm (0.0390 in) |
| 0 | 23945 - P21 - 000 | 1.02 mm (0.0402 in) |
| P | 23946 - P21 - 000 | 1.05 mm (0.0413 in) |
| Q | 23947 - P21 - 000 | 1.08 mm (0.0425 in) |
| R | 23948 - P21 - 000 | 1.11 mm (0.0437 in) |
| s | 23949 - P21 - 000 | 1.14 mm (0.0449 in) |
| T | 23950 - P21 - 000 | 1.17 mm (0.0461 in) |
| U | 23951 - P21 - 000 | 1.20 mm (0.0472 in) |
| V | 23952 - P21 - 000 | 1.23 mm (0.0484 in) |
| w | 23953 - P21 - 000 | 1.26 mm (0.0496 in) |
| X | 23954 - P21 - 000 | 1.29 mm (0.0508 in) |
| Υ | 23955 - P21 - 000 | 1.32 mm (0.0520 in) |
| Z | 23956 - P21 - 000 | 1.35 mm (0.0531 in) |
| AA | 23957 - P21 - 000 | 1.38 mm (0.0543 in) |
| AB | 23958 - P21 - 000 | 1.41 mm (0.0555 in) |
| AC | 23959 - P21 - 000 | 1.44 mm (0.0567 in) |
| AD | 23960 - P21 - 000 | 1.47 mm (0.0579 in) |
| AE | 23961 - P21 - 000 | 1.50 mm (0.0591 in) |
| AF | 23962 - P21 - 000 | 1.53 mm (0.0602 in) |
| AG | 23963 - P21 - 000 | 1.56 mm (0.0614 in) |
| AH | 23964 - P21 - 000 | 1.59 mm (0.0626 in) |
| AI | 23965 - P21 - 000 | 1.62 mm (0.0638 in) |
| AJ | 23966 - P21 - 000 | 1.65 mm (0.0650 in) |
| AK | 23967 - P21 - 000 | 1.68 mm (0.0661 in) |
| AL | 23968 - P21 - 000 | 1.71 mm (0.0673 in) |
| AM | 23969 - P21 - 000 | 1.74 mm (0.0685 in) |
| AN | 23970 - P21 - 000 | 1.77 mm (0.0697 in) |
| ΑO | 23971 - P21 - 000 | 1.80 mm (0.0709 in) |

 Check the thrust clearance in the manner described below.

NOTE: Carry out the measurement at normal room temperature.

 -1. Install the thrust shim selected and oil guide plate in the transmission housing.



 -2. Install the spring washer and washer on the ball bearing.

NOTE:

- Clean the spring washer, washer and thrust shim throughly before installation.
- Install the spring washer, washer and thrust shim properly.



- -3. Install the mainshaft in the clutch housing.
- Place the transmission housing over the mainshaft and onto the clutch housing.
- -5. Tighten the clutch and transmission housings with several 8 mm bolts.

NOTE: It is not necessary to use sealing agent between the housings.

8 x 1.25 mm 27 N·m (2.8 kgf·m, 20 lbf·ft)

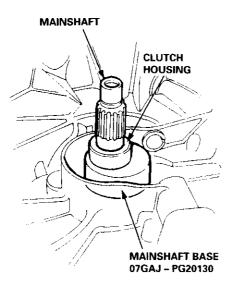
-6. Tap the mainshaft with a plastic hammer.

(cont'd)

Mainshaft Thrust Clearance

Adjustment (cont'd) -

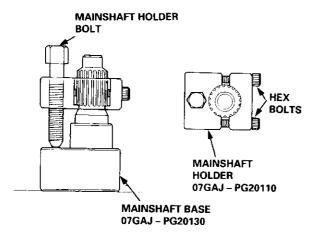
-7. Slide the mainshaft base over the mainshaft.



-8. Attach the mainshaft holder to the mainshaft as follows:

NOTE:

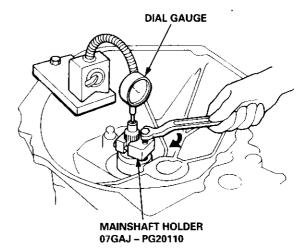
- Back-out the mainshaft holder bolt and loosen the two hex bolts.
- Fit the holder over the mainshaft so its lip is towards the transmission.
- Align the mainshaft holder's lip around the groove at the inside of the mainshaft splines, then tighten the hex bolts.



- -9. Seat the mainshaft fully by tapping its end with a plastic hammer.
- -10. Thread the mainshaft holder bolt in until it just contacts the wide surface of the mainshaft base.

- -11. Zero a dial gauge on the end of the mainshaft.
- -12. Turn the mainshaft holder bolt clockwise; stop turning when the dial gauge has reached its maximum movement. The reading on the dial gauge is the amount of mainshaft end play.

CAUTION: Turning the mainshaft holder bolt more than 60 degrees after the needle of the dial gauge stops moving may damage the transmission.



-13. If the reading is within the standard, the clearance is correct.

If the reading is not within the standard, recheck the shim thickness.

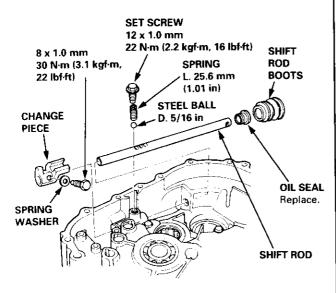
Standard: 0.11 - 0.18 mm (0.004 - 0.007 in)

Transmission

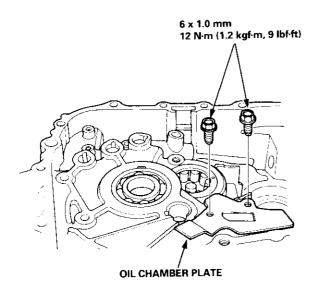
\odot

Reassembly

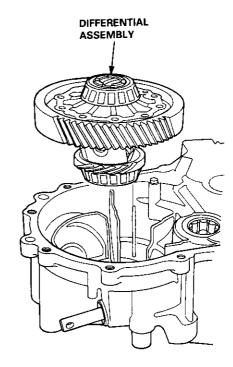
- 1. Install the new oil seal.
- 2. Set the change piece.
- 3. Install the shift rod.
- 4. Install the steel ball, the spring, and the set screw.
- 5. Install the change piece attaching bolt.
- 6. Install the shift rod boots.



Install the oil chamber plate.

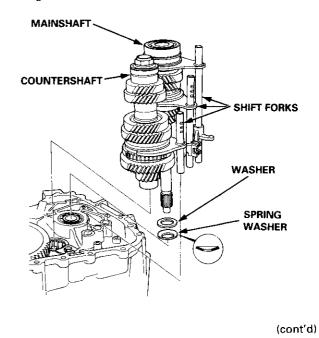


8. Install the differential assembly.



- 9. Set the spring washer and the washer.
- Install the mainshaft, the countershaft, and the shift fork assemblies.

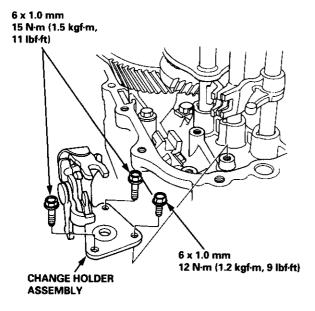
NOTE: Align the finger of the interlock with the groove in the shift fork shaft.



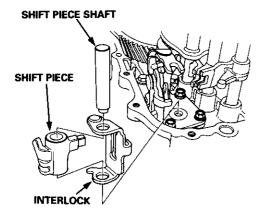
Transmission

Reassembly (cont'd)

11. Install the change holder assembly.

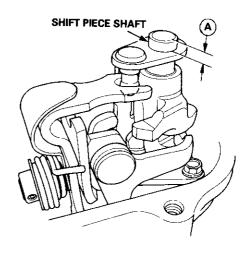


12. Install the shift piece and the interlock, then install the shift piece shaft.

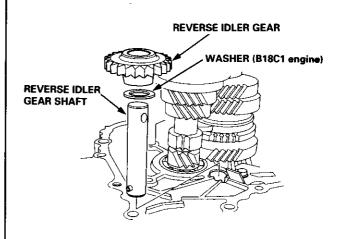


13. Measure the distance (a) after mounting the shift piece shaft. If it's incorrect, check the installation.

Distance (A): 11.9 - 12.3 mm (0.47 - 0.48 in)

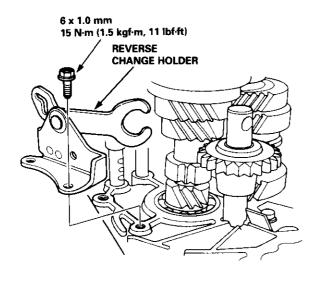


14. Install the washer (B18C1 engine), the reverse idler gear, and the reverse idler gear shaft.

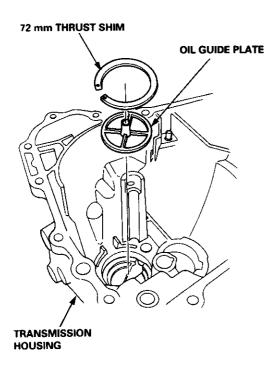




15. Install the reverse change holder.

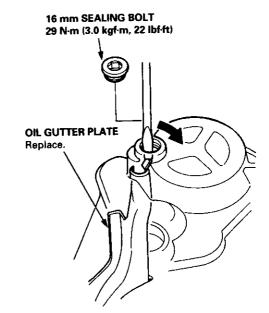


16. Install the oil guide plate and the 72 mm thrust shim into the transmission housing.



- 17. Install the oil gutter plate.
- 18. Bend the hook of the oil gutter plate, then install the 16 mm sealing bolt.

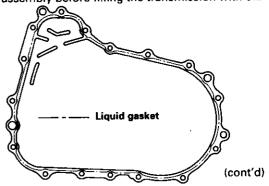
NOTE: Apply liquid gasket (P/N 08718 - 0001) to the threads.



19. Apply liquid gasket to the surface of the transmission housing as shown.

NOTE:

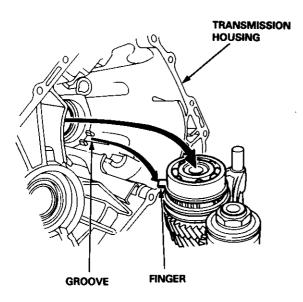
- Use liquid gasket (P/N 08718 0001).
- Remove the dirt and oil from the sealing surface.
- Seal the entire circumference of the bolt holes to prevent oil leakage.
- If 20 minutes have passed after applying liquid gasket, reapply it and assemble the housings, and allow it to cure at least 30 minutes after assembly before filling the transmission with oil.



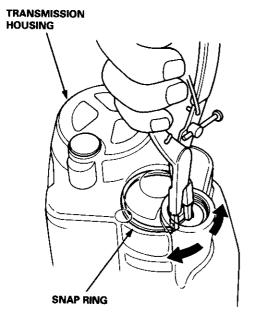
Transmission

- Reassembly (cont'd) -

- 20. Install the dowel pins.
- 21. Install the transmission housing by aligning the groove in the housing with finger on the stopper ring.

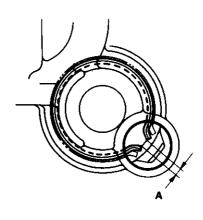


 Lower the transmission housing with the snap ring pliers and set the snap ring in the groove of the countershaft bearing.

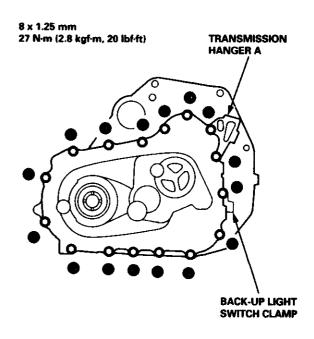


23. Check that the snap ring is securely seated in the groove of the countershaft bearing.

Dimension (A) as installed: 4.6 – 8.3 mm (0.181 – 0.327 in)



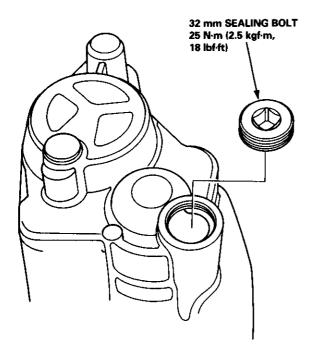
24. Install the transmission hanger A and back-up light switch clamp, then tighten the transmission housing attaching bolts in the numbered sequence shown below.



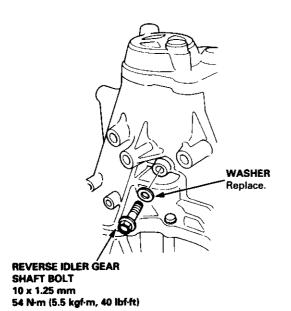


25. Install the 32 mm sealing bolt.

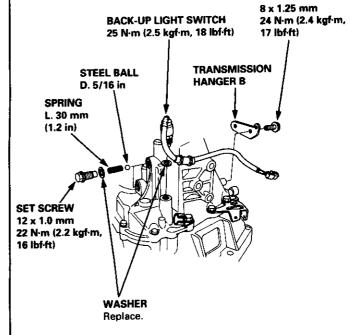
NOTE: Apply liquid gasket (P/N 08718 – 0001) to the threads.



26. Tighten the reverse idler gear shaft bolt.



- 27. Install the steel balls, the springs, and the set screws.
- 28. Install the back-up light switch and the transmission hanger B.



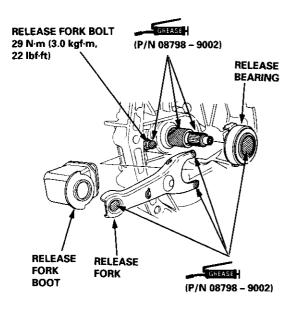
Transmission Assembly

- Installation

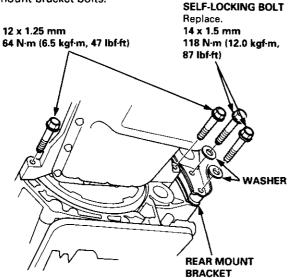
- 1. Install the dowel pins on the clutch housing.
- Apply grease to the parts as shown, then install the release fork and release bearing.

NOTE: Use only Super High Temp Urea Grease (P/N 08798 – 9002).

3. Install the release fork boot.



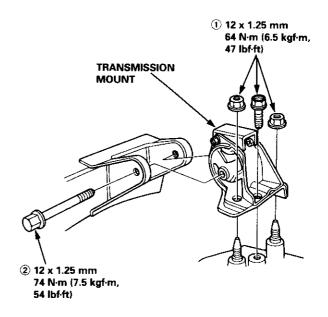
- 4. Place the transmission on the transmission jack, and raise it to the engine level.
- Install the transmission mounting bolts and the rear mount bracket bolts.



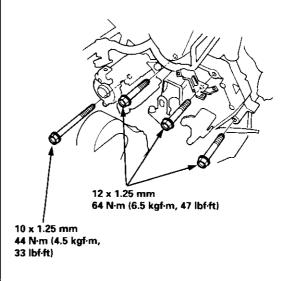
Raise the transmission, then install the transmission mount.

NOTE: Torque the mounting bolt and nuts in the sequence shown.

CAUTION: Check that the bushings are not twisted or offset.

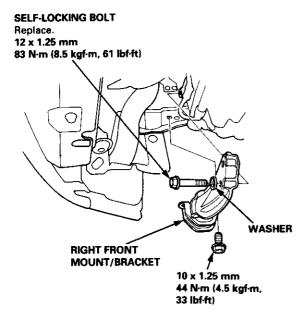


7. Install the three upper transmission mounting bolts and lower starter motor mounting bolt.

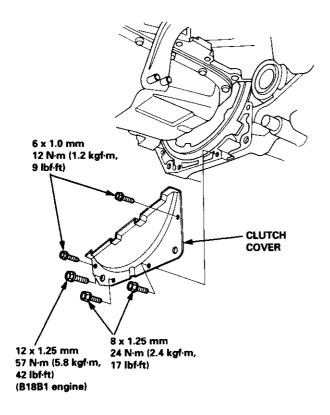




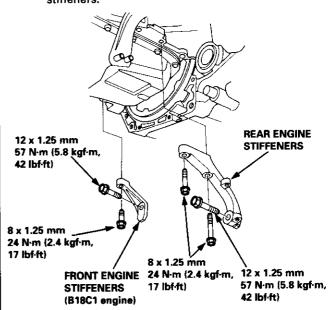
8. Install the right front mount/bracket.



9. Install the clutch cover.



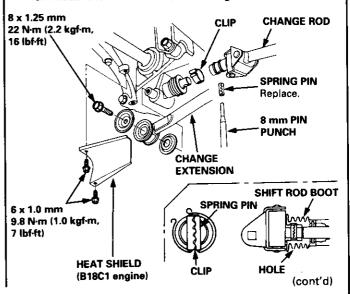
10. Install the front (B18C1 engine) and rear engine stiffeners.



11. Install the change rod, the spring pin, and the clip.

NOTE:

- Install the clip and the spring pin on the change joint as shown.
- Turn the shift rod boot so the hole is facing down as shown.
- Make sure the shift rod boot is installed on the change rod.
- 12. Install the change extension.
- 13. Install the heat shield (B18C1 engine).

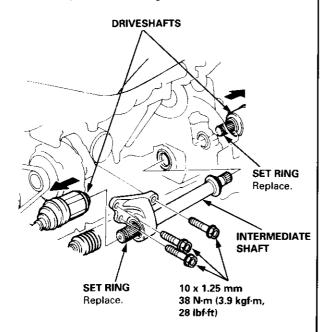


Transmission Assembly

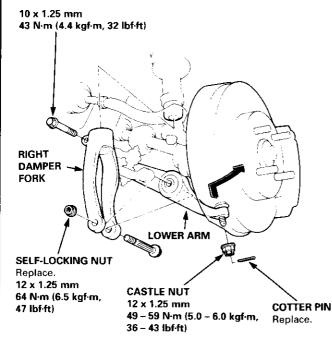
Installation (cont'd)

14. Install the intermediate shaft and the driveshafts (see section 16).

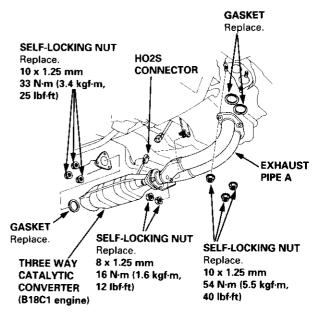
NOTE: Replace the set rings with new ones.



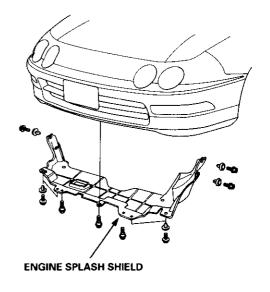
- 15. Install the ball joints onto the lower arm (see section 18).
- 16. Install the right damper fork (see section 18).



17. Install the exhaust pipe A, and the three way catalytic converter (B18C1 engine), and connect the heated oxygen sensor (HO2S) connector.



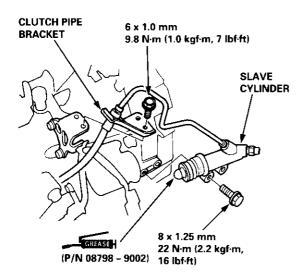
18. Install the engine splash shield.



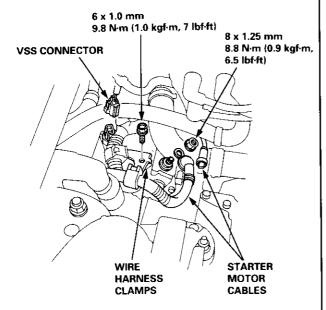


Install the slave cylinder, then install the clutch pipe bracket.

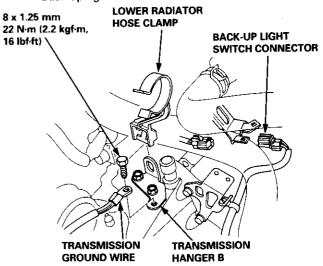
NOTE: Use only Super High Temp Urea Grease (P/N 08798 – 9002).



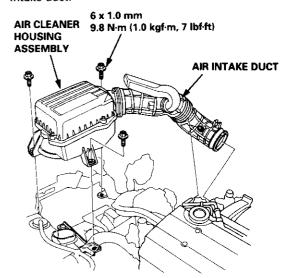
- 20. Connect the vehicle speed sensor (VSS) connector and the starter motor cables.
- 21. Install the wire harness clamps.



- Install the lower radiator hose clamp on the transmission hanger B.
- 23. Connect the transmission ground wire and the back-up light switch connector.



24. Install the air cleaner housing assembly and the air intake duct.



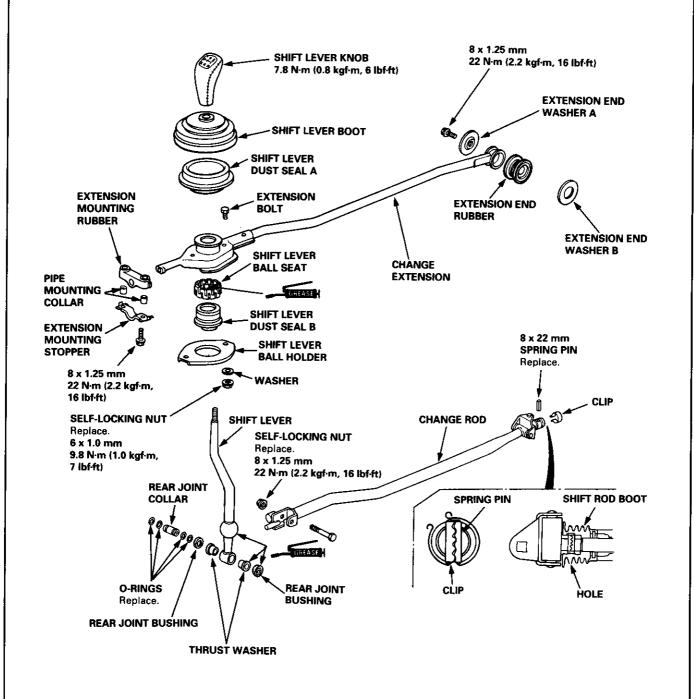
- 25. Refill the transmission with oil (see page 13-3).
- 26. Connect the positive (+) cable first, then connect the negative () cable to the battery.
- 27. Check the clutch operation.
- 28. Shift the transmission, and check for smooth operation.
- 29. Check the front wheel alignment (see section 18).

Gearshift Mechanism

Overhaul

NOTE:

- Inspect rubber parts for wear and damage when disassembling; replace any worn or damaged parts.
- Install the spring pin and the clip on the change joint as shown.
- Turn the shift rod boot so the hole is facing down as shown.
- Make sure the shift rod boot is installed on the change rod.



Automatic Transmission

| Special Tools 14-2 | Main Valve Body |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| Description 14-3 | Disassembly/Inspection/Reassembly 14-120 |
| Clutches 14-6 | Regulator Valve Body |
| Power Flow 14-8 | Disassembly/Inspection/Reassembly 14-122 |
| Electronic Control System 14-18 | Lock-up Valve Body |
| Hydraulic Control 14-23 | Disassembly/Inspection/Reassembly 14-123 |
| Hydraulic Flow 14-28 | Secondary Valve Body |
| Lock-up System 14-38 | Disassembly/Inspection/Reassembly 14-124 |
| Electrical System | Servo Body |
| Component Location 14-45 | Disassembly/Inspection/Reassembly 14-126 |
| Circuit Diagram | 1st-hold Accumulator/Right Side Cover |
| *Troubleshooting Procedures 14-48 | Disassembly/Inspection/Reassembly 14-128 |
| Symptom-to-Component Chart | Mainshaft |
| | Disassembly/Inspection/Reassembly 14-129 |
| Electrical System | Inspection 14-130 |
| Electrical Troubleshooting | Countershaft |
| Troubleshooting Flowchart | Disassembly/Inspection/Reassembly 14-132 |
| Lock-up Control Solenoid Valve A/B | Disassembly/Reassembly 14-133 |
| Test 14-82 | Inspection |
| Replacement 14-82 | One-way Clutch/Parking Gear |
| Shift Control Solenoid Valve A/B | Disassembly/Inspection 14-137 |
| Test 14-83 | |
| Replacement 14-83 | Sub-shaft |
| Transmission Control Module (TCM) | Disassembly/Inspection/Reassembly 14-138 |
| *Replacement 14-84 | Disassembly/Reassembly 14-139 |
| Mainshaft/Countershaft Speed Sensors | Sub-shaft Bearings |
| Replacement 14-85 | Replacement 14-140 |
| Hydraulic System | Clutch |
| Symptom-to-Component Chart | Illustrated Index 14-141 |
| Hydraulic System 14-86 | Disassembly 14-144 |
| Road Test | Reassembly 14-146 |
| Stall Speed | Torque Converter Housing Bearings |
| Test 14-92 | Mainshaft Bearing/Oil Seal |
| Fluid Level | Replacement |
| Checking/Changing 14-93 | Countershaft Bearing Replacement 14-151 |
| | Transmission Housing Bearings |
| Pressure Testing 14-94 | Mainshaft/Countershaft Bearing |
| Transmission | Replacement 14-152 |
| Transmission | Sub-shaft Bearing Replacement 14-153 |
| Removal 14-99 | Reverse Idler Gear |
| Illustrated Index | Installation 14-154 |
| Right Side Cover 14-104 | Parking Brake Stopper |
| Transmission Housing 14-106 | Inspection/Adjustment 14-154 |
| Torque Converter Housing/Valve | Transmission |
| Body 14-108 | Reassembly 14-156 |
| Right Side Cover | Torque Converter/Drive Plate 14-163 |
| Removal 14-110 | Transmission |
| Transmission Housing | Installation 14-164 |
| Removal 14-112 | Cooler Flushing 14-168 |
| Torque Converter Housing/Valve Body | *Shift Cable |
| Removal 14-114 | Removal/Installation 14-170 |
| Valve Caps | Adjustment 14-171 |
| Description 14-116 | *Gearshift Selector |
| Valve Body | Disassembly/Reassembly 14-172 |
| Repair 14-117 | *Shift Indicator Panel |
| Valve | Adjustment 14-173 |
| Assembly 14-118 | Throttle Control Cable |
| Oil Pump | Inspection 14-174 |
| Inspection 14-119 | Adjustment 14-176 |
| • | - |



| 1 | Tool Number | Description | Qty | Page Reference |
|-------------------|--------------------------------|--|-----|----------------------------|
| | 07GAB - PF50100 or | Mainshaft Holder | 1 | 14-111,160 |
| <u> </u> | 07GAB-PF50101 07GAE-PG40200 | Clutch Spring Compressor Bolt Assembly | 1 | 44 444 447 |
| >@@@@@@@@@@@@@ | 07HAC-PK4010A | Housing Puller | 1 | 14-144,147 |
| <u>(4)</u> | 07HAE-PL50100 | Clutch Spring Compressor Attachment | 1 | 14-113 |
| (5) | 07LAE-PX40100 | Clutch Spring Compressor Attachment | 1 1 | 14-144,147 14-144,147 |
| 6 | 07LAJ-PT3010A | Test Harness | 1 | 14-49,90 |
| (7) | 07MAJ-PY4011A | A/T Oil Pressure Hose, 2210 mm | 1 1 | 14-94 |
| (<u>8</u>) | 07MAJ-PY40120 | A/T Oil Pressure Adapter | 1 | 14-94 |
| <u>9</u> | 07PAZ-0010100 | SCS Short Connector | 1 | 14-48 |
| <u>(10)</u> | 07406-0020003 | A/T Oil Pressure Gauge Set w/panel | 1 | 14-94 |
| Ŏ | 07406-0070000 | A/T Low Pressure Gauge w/panel | i | 14-94 |
| (12) | 07736-A01000A | Adjustable Bearing Puller, 25-40 mm | 1 | 14-150,151 |
| (1 3) | 077460010100 | Attachment, 32 x 35 mm | i | 14-139,140 |
| 14) | 07746-0010500 | Attachment, 62 x 68 mm | 1 | 14-140,150,151,152,15 |
| 15) | 07746-0010600 | Attachment, 72 x 75 mm | 1 | 14-150,152 |
| 16 | 07746-0030100 | Driver, 40 mm I.D. | 1 | 14-134 |
| ① | 07749-0010000 | Driver | 1 | 14-139,140,150,151,15 |
| (18) | 07947-6340500 | Driver Attachment | 1 | 14-150 |
| <u> </u> | | | | |
| | 5 | 6 7 | | ® © |
| | (5) (9) | | | 8 |
| | | | | |

Description



The Automatic Transmission is a combination of a 3-element torque converter and triple-shaft electronically controlled automatic transmission which provides 4 speeds forward and 1 speed reverse. The entire unit is positioned in line with the engine.

Torque Converter, Gears and Clutches

The torque converter consists of a pump, turbine and stator assembly in a single unit. The torque converter is connected to the engine crankshaft so they turn together as a unit as the engine turns. Around the outside of the torque converter is a ring gear which meshes with the starter pinion when the engine is being started. The entire torque converter assembly serves as a flywheel while transmitting power to the transmission mainshaft.

The transmission has three parallel shafts, the mainshaft, countershaft and sub-shaft. The mainshaft is in line with the engine crankshaft.

The mainshaft includes the clutches for 1st, and 2nd/4th, and gears for 3rd, 2nd, 4th, reverse and 1st (3rd gear is integral with the mainshaft, while reverse gear is integral with the 4th gear).

The countershaft includes the 3rd clutch and gears for 3rd, 2nd, 4th, reverse, 1st and parking. Reverse and 4th gears can be locked to the countershaft at its center, providing 4th gear or reverse, depending on which way the selector is moved. The sub-shaft includes the 1st-hold clutch and gears for 1st and 4th.

The gears on the mainshaft are in constant mesh with those on the countershaft and sub-shaft. When certain combinations of gears in the transmission are engaged by the clutches, power is transmitted from the mainshaft to the countershaft via the sub-shaft to provide $\boxed{D_4}$, $\boxed{D_3}$, $\boxed{2}$, $\boxed{1}$ and \boxed{R} position.

Electronic Control

The electronic control system consists of the Transmission Control Module (TCM), sensors, and 4 solenoid valves. Shifting and lock-up are electronically controlled for comfortable driving under all conditions.

The TCM is located below the dashboard, behind the left side kick panel on the driver's side.

Hydraulic Control

The valve bodies include the main valve body, secondary valve body, regulator valve body, servo body, and lock-up valve body through the respective separator plates.

They are bolted on the torque converter housing.

The main valve body contains the manual valve, 1-2 shift valve, 2-3 shift valve, Clutch Pressure Control (CPC) valve, 4th exhaust valve, relief valve, and oil pump gears.

The secondary valve body contains the 4-3 kick-down valve, 3-2 kick-down valve, 2-3 orifice control valve, 3-4 shift valve, orifice control valve, modulator valve, and servo control valve.

The regulator valve body contains the pressure regulator valve, lock-up control valve, torque converter check valve, and cooler check valve.

The servo body contains the servo valve which is integrated with the reverse shift fork, throttle valve B, and accumulators. The lock-up valve body contains the lock-up shift valve and lock-up timing B valve, and is bolted on the secondary valve body.

Fluid from the regulator passes through the manual valve to the various control valves.

Shift Control Mechanism

Input to the TCM from various sensors located throughout the car determines which shift control solenoid valve should be activated.

Activating a shift control solenoid valve changes modulator pressure, causing a shift valve to move. This pressurizes a line to one of the clutches, engaging that clutch and its corresponding gear.

Lock-up Mechanism

In D4 position, in 2nd, 3rd and 4th, and D3 position in 3rd, pressurized fluid can be drained from the back of the torque converter through an oil passage, causing the lock-up piston to be held against the torque converter cover. As this takes place, the mainshaft rotates at the same speed as the engine crankshaft. Together with hydraulic control, the TCM optimizes the timing of the lock-up mechanism.

The lock-up valves control the range of lock-up according to lock-up control solenoid valves A and B, and throttle valve B. When lock-up control solenoid valves A and B activate, modulator pressure changes. Lock-up control solenoid valves A and B are mounted on the torque converter housing, and are controlled by the TCM.

(cont'd)

Description

(cont'd) -

Gear Selection

The selector lever has seven positions; \boxed{P} PARK, \boxed{R} REVERSE, \boxed{N} NEUTRAL, $\boxed{D_4}$ 1st through 4th positions, $\boxed{D_3}$ 1st through 3rd positions, $\boxed{2}$ 2nd gear and $\boxed{1}$ 1st gear.

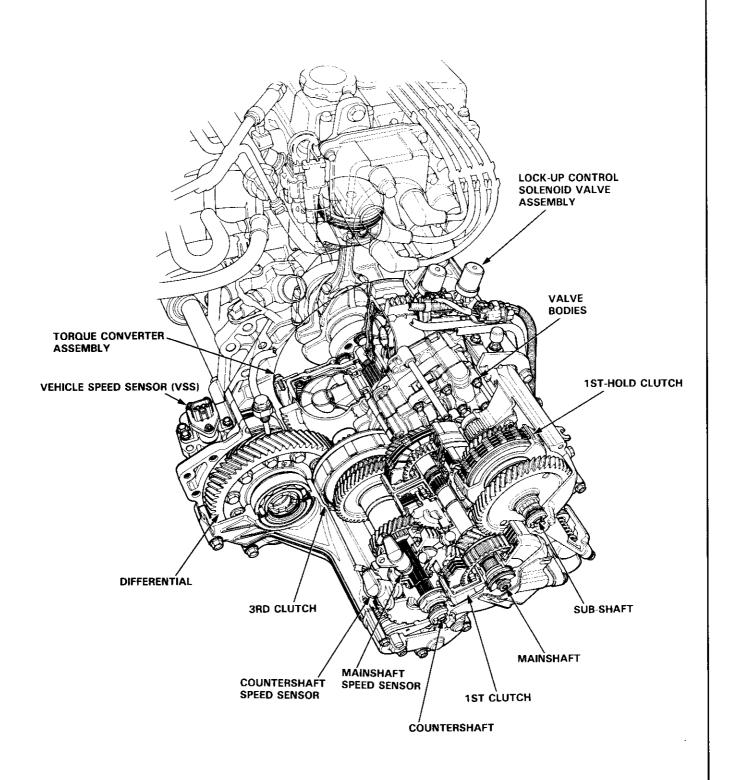
| Position | Description |
|--|---|
| P PARK | Front wheels locked; parking pawl engaged with parking gear on countershaft. All clutches released. |
| R REVERSE | Reverse; reverse selector engaged with countershaft reverse gear and 4th clutch locked. |
| N NEUTRAL | All clutches released. |
| D4 DRIVE (1st through 4th) | General driving; starts off in 1st, shifts automatically to 2nd, 3rd, then 4th, depending on vehicle speed and throttle position. Downshifts through 3rd, 2nd and 1st on deceleration to stop. The lock-up mechanism comes into operation in 2nd, 3rd and 4th when the transmission in D4 position. |
| D ₃ DRIVE (1st through 3rd) | For rapid acceleration at highway speeds and general driving; starts off in 1st, shifts automatically to 2nd then 3rd, depending on vehicle speed and throttle position. Downshifts through lower gears on deceleration to stop. The lock-up mechanism comes into operation in 3rd. |
| 2 SECOND | Driving in 2nd gear; stays in 2nd gear, does not shift up and down. For engine braking or better traction starting off on loose or slippery surfece. |
| 1 FIRST | Driving in 1st gear; stays in 1st gear, does not shift up. For engine braking. |

Starting is possible only in \boxed{P} and \boxed{N} position through use of a slide-type, neutral-safety switch.

Automatic Transaxle (A/T) Gear Position Indicator

A/T gear position indicator in the instrument panel shows what gear has been selected without having look down at the console.





Clutches

The four speed automatic transmission uses hydraulically actuated clutches to engage or disengage the transmission gears. When clutch pressure is introduced into the clutch drum, the clutch piston is applied. This presses the friction discs and steel plates together, locking them so they don't slip. Power is then transmitted through the engaged clutch pack to its hub-mounted gear.

Likewise, when clutch pressure is bled from the clutch pack, the piston releases the friction discs and steel plates, and they are free to slide past each other while disengaged. This allows the gear to spin independently on its shaft, transmitting no power.

1st Clutch

The 1st clutch engages/disengages 1st gear, and is located at the end of the mainshaft, just behind the right side cover. The 1st clutch is supplied clutch pressure by its oil feed pipe within the mainshaft.

1st-hold Clutch

The 1st-hold clutch engages/disengages 1st-hold or 1 position, and is located at the center of the sub-shaft. The 1st-hold clutch is supplied clutch pressure by its oil feed pipe within the sub-shaft.

2nd Clutch

The 2nd clutch engages/disengages 2nd gear, and is located at the center of the mainshaft. The 2nd clutch is joined back-to-back to the 4th clutch. The 2nd clutch is supplied clutch pressure through the mainshaft by a circuit connected to the regulator valve body.

3rd Clutch

The 3rd clutch engages/disengages 3rd gear, and is located at the end of the countershaft, opposite the right side cover. The 3rd clutch is supplied clutch pressure by its oil feed pipe within the countershaft.

4th Clutch

The 4th clutch engages/disengages 4th gear, as well as reverse gear, and is located at the center of the mainshaft. The 4th clutch is joined back-to-back to the 2nd clutch. The 4th clutch is supplied clutch pressure by its oil feed pipe within the mainshaft.

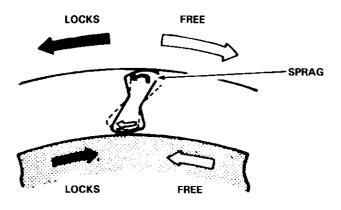
One-way Clutch

The one-way clutch is positioned between the parking gear and 1st gear, with the parking gear splined to the countershaft. The 1st gear provides the outer race, and the parking gear provides the inner race surface. The one-way clutch locks up when power is transmitted from the mainshaft 1st gear to the countershaft 1st gear. The 1st clutch and gears remain engaged in the 1st, 2nd, 3rd, and 4th gear ranges in the $\boxed{D_4}$, $\boxed{D_3}$ or $\boxed{2}$ position.

However, the one-way clutch disengages when the 2nd, 3rd, or 4th clutches/gears are applied in the $\boxed{D_4}$, $\boxed{D_3}$ or $\boxed{2}$ position.

This is because the increased rotational speed of the gears on the countershaft over-ride the locking "speed range" of the one-way clutch. Thereafter, the one-way clutch free-wheels with the 1st clutch still engaged.

COUNTERSHAFT 1ST GEAR

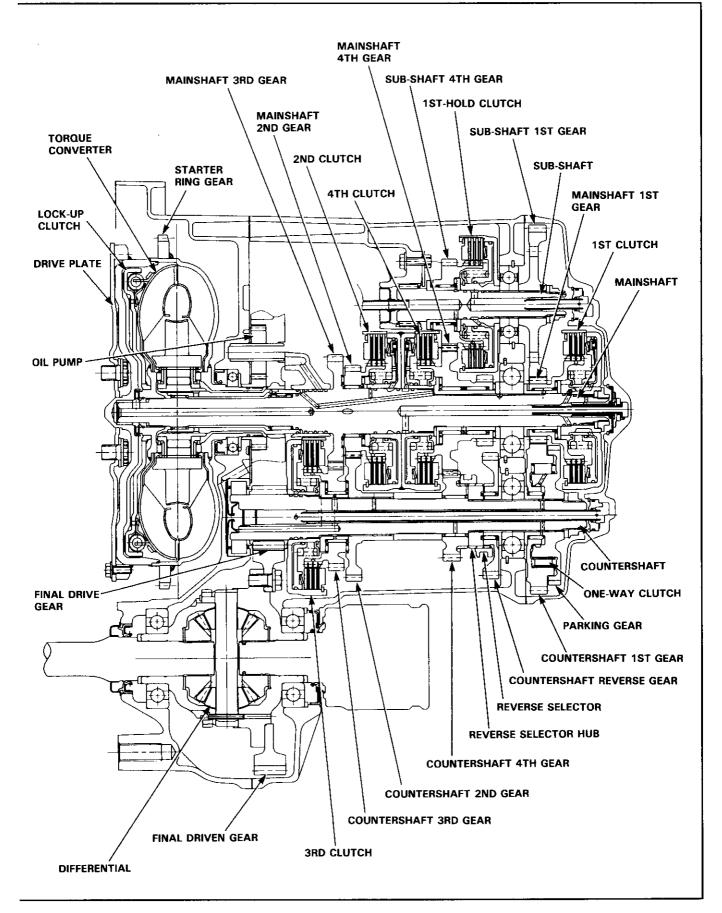


PARKING GEAR

NOTE:

View from right side cover side.





- Power Flow -

| PART | | TORQUE CON- | 1ST- HOLD | 1ST GEAR 1ST | 2ND GEAR 3RD GE | 3RD GEAR 3RD | 4TH | | REVERSE GEAR | PARKING GEAR |
|-----------------------|-----|----------------|--------------|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|------|--------|-----------------|-----------------|
| POSITION | | VERTER | CLUTCH | CLUTCH | CLUTCH | CLUTCH | GEAR | CLUTCH | Jan 1 | |
| P | | 0 | Х | Х | х | X | х | Х | Х | 0 |
| R | | 0 | Х | Х | Х | х | Х | 0 | 0 | Х |
| N | | 0 | X | Х | х | Х | X | Х | Х | X |
| D4 | 1ST | 0 | Х | 0 | Х | X | X | X | Х | X |
| | 2ND | 0 | х | *0 | 0 | х | Х | X | Х | X |
| | 3RD | 0 | х | *0 | х | 0 | Х | Х | X | Х |
| | 4TH | 0 | х | *0 | X | X | 0_ | 0 | Х | Х |
| D ₃ | 1ST | 0 | X | 0 | X | х | X | Х | X | Х |
| | 2ND | 0 | х | *0 | 0 | Х | X | X | Х | Х |
| | 3RD | 0 | Х | *0 | х | 0 | Х | х | Х | X |
| 2 | | 0 | Х | *0 | 0 | Х | Х | X | Х | Х |
| 1 | | 0 | 0 | 0 | Х | X | Х | X | Х | X |

O: Operates, X: Doesn't operate, *: Although the 1st clutch engages, driving power is not transmitted as the one-way clutch slips.

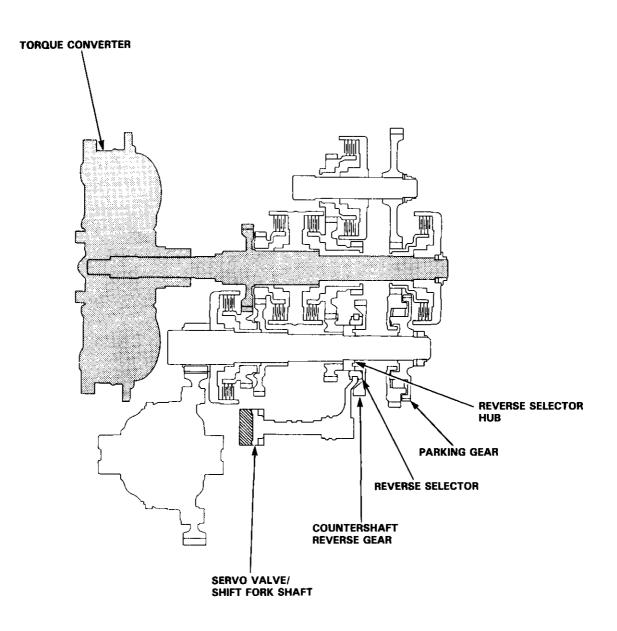


N Position

Hydraulic pressure is not applied to the clutches. Power is not transmitted to the countershaft.

P Position

Hydraulic pressure is not applied to the clutches. Power is not transmitted to the countershaft. The countershaft is locked by the parking pawl interlocking the parking gear.



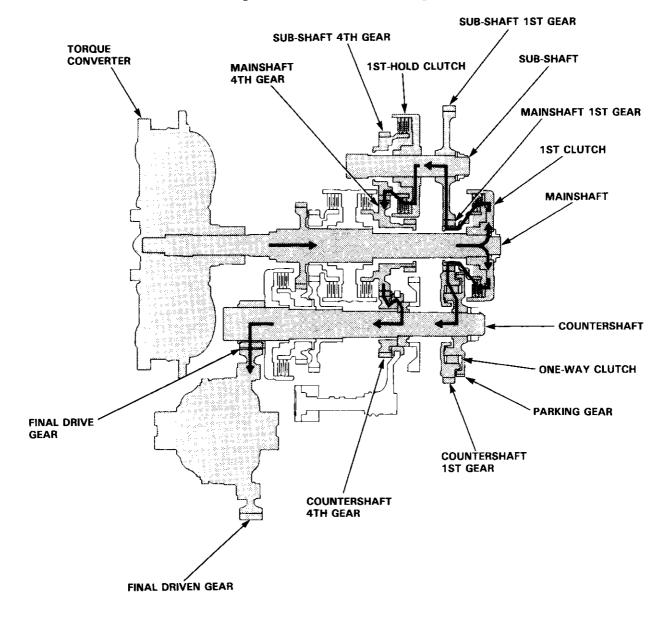
Power Flow (cont'd) -

1 Position Acceleration

In 1 position, hydraulic pressure is applied to the 1st clutch and 1st-hold clutch.

The power flow when accelerating is as follows:

- 1. Hydraulic pressure is applied to the 1st clutch on the mainshaft and power is transmitted via the 1st clutch to the mainshaft 1st gear.
- 2. Hydraulic pressure is also applied to the 1st-hold clutch on the sub-shaft. Power transmitted to the mainshaft 1st gear is conveyed via the countershaft 1st gear to the one-way clutch, and via the sub-shaft 1st gear to the 1st-hold clutch. The one-way clutch is used to drive the countershaft, and the 1st-hold clutch drives the countershaft via the 4th gears.
- 3. Power is transmitted to the final drive gear and drives the final driven gear.

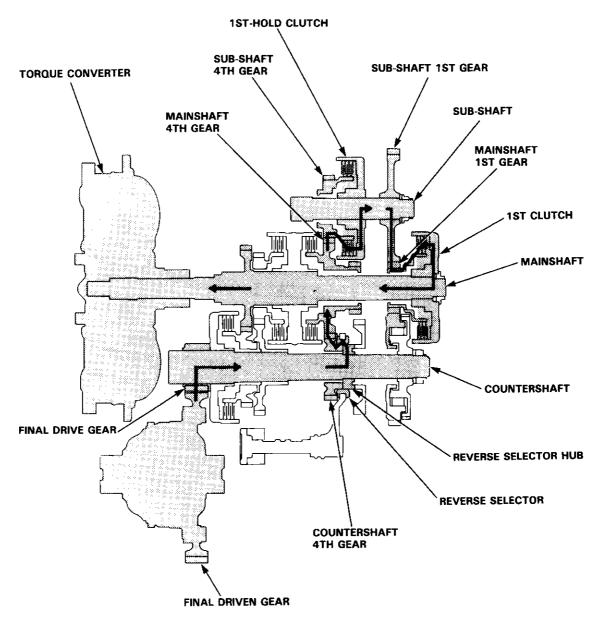




1 Position Deceleration

The power flow when decelerating is as follows;

- 1. Rolling resistance from the road surface goes through the front wheels to the final drive gear, then to the sub-shaft 1st gear via the 4th gear, and 1st-hold clutch which is applied during deceleration.
- 2. The one-way clutch becomes free at this time because torque reverses.
- 3. The counterforce conveyed to the countershaft 4th gear turns the sub-shaft 4th gear via the mainshaft 4th gear. At this time, since hydraulic pressure is also applied to the 1st clutch, counterforce is also transmitted to the mainshaft. As a result, engine braking can be obtained with 1st gear.

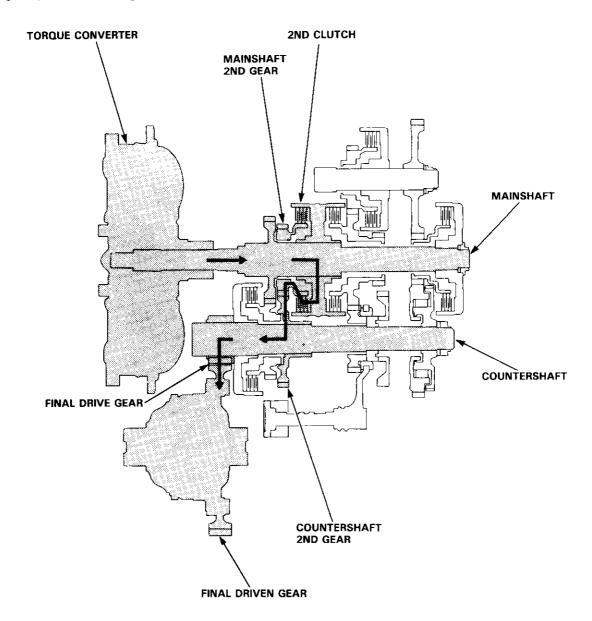


Power Flow (cont'd) —

- 2 Position
- 2 Position is provided to drive only 2nd speed.
- 1. Hydraulic pressure is applied to the 2nd clutch on the mainshaft and power is transmitted via the 2nd clutch to the mainshaft 2nd gear.
- 2. Power transmitted to the mainshaft 2nd gear is conveyed via the countershaft 2nd gear, and drives the countershaft.
- 3. Power is transmitted to the final drive gear and drives the final driven gear.

NOTE:

Hydraulic pressure is also applied to the 1st clutch, but since the rotation speed of the 2nd gear exceeds that of 1st gear, power from 1st gear is cut off at the one-way clutch.





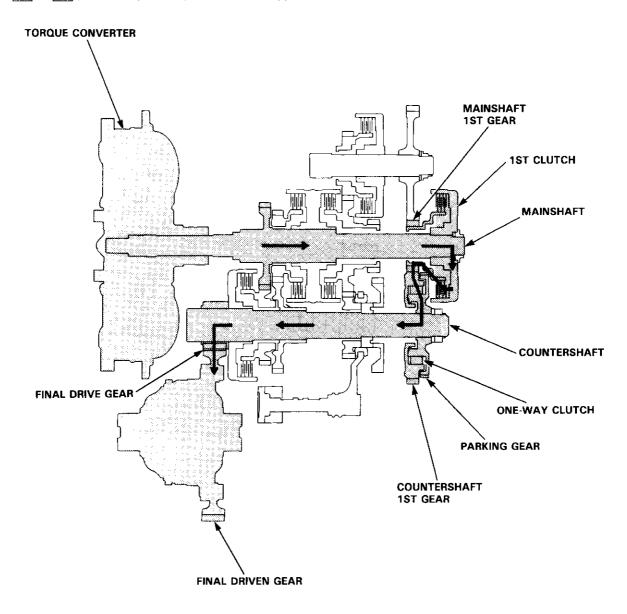
In $\boxed{D_4}$ or $\boxed{D_3}$ position, the optimum gear is automatically selected from 1st, 2nd, 3rd and 4th speeds, according to conditions such as the balance between throttle opening (engine load) and vehicle speed.

D₄ or D₃ Position, 1st speed

- 1. Hydraulic pressure is applied to the 1st clutch, which rotates together with the mainshaft, and the mainshaft 1st gear rotates.
- 2. Power is transmitted to the countershaft 1st gear, and drives the countershaft via the one-way clutch.
- 3. Power is transmitted to the final drive gear and drives the final driven gear.

NOTE:

In D4 or D3 position, hydraulic pressure is not applied to the 1st-hold clutch.



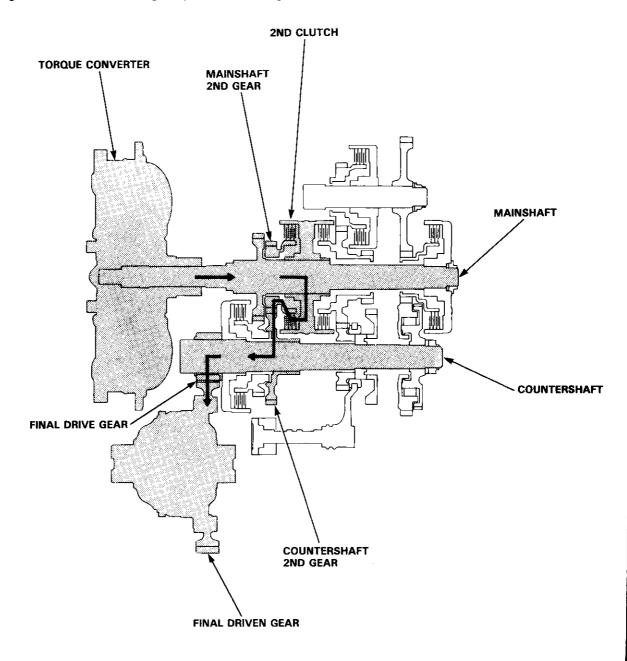
Power Flow (cont'd) -

D₄ or D₃ Position, 2nd speed

- 1. Hydraulic pressure is applied to the 2nd clutch, which rotates together with the mainshaft, and the mainshaft 2nd gear rotates.
- 2. Power is transmitted to the countershaft 2nd gear, and drives the countershaft.
- 3. Power is transmitted to the final drive gear and drives the final driven gear.

NOTE:

In $\boxed{D_4}$ or $\boxed{D_3}$ position, 2nd speed, hydraulic pressure is also applied to the 1st clutch, but since the rotation speed of 2nd gear exceeds that of 1st gear, power from 1st gear is cut off at the one-way clutch.



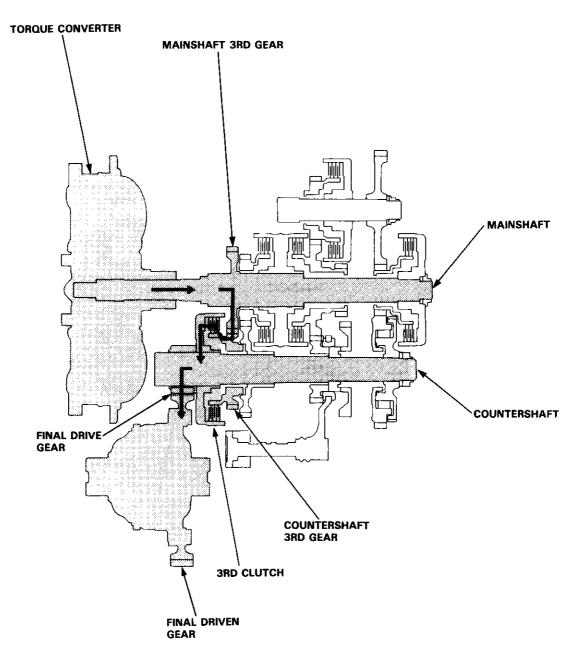


D₄ or D₃ Position, 3rd speed

- 1. Hydraulic pressure is applied to the 3rd clutch. Power from the mainshaft 3rd gear is transmitted to the countershaft 3rd gear.
- 2. Power is transmitted to the final drive gear and drives the final driven gear.

NOTE:

In $\boxed{D_4}$ or $\boxed{D_3}$ position, 3rd speed, hydraulic pressure is also applied to the 1st clutch, but since the rotation speed of 3rd gear exceeds that of 1st gear, power from 1st gear is cut off at the one-way clutch.



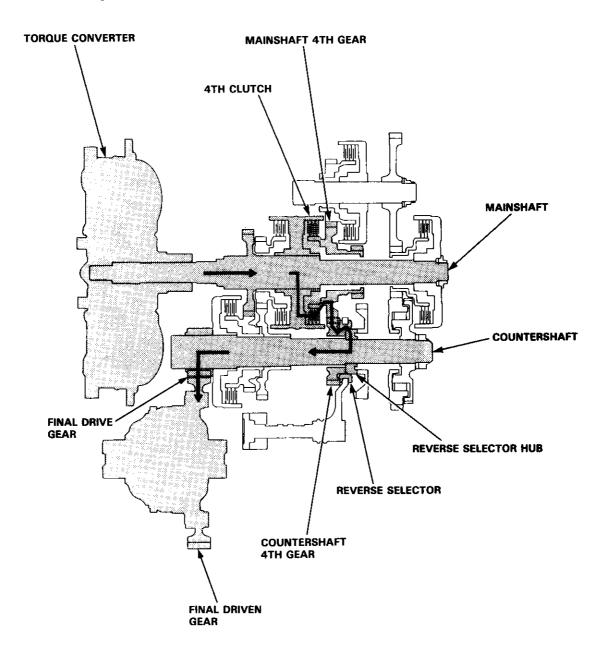
Power Flow (cont'd) —

D₄ Position, 4th speed

- 1. Hydraulic pressure is applied to the 4th clutch, which rotates together with the mainshaft, and the mainshaft 4th gear rotates.
- 2. Power is transmitted to the countershaft 4th gear, and drives the countershaft.
- 3. Power is transmitted to the final drive gear and drives the final driven gear.

NOTE:

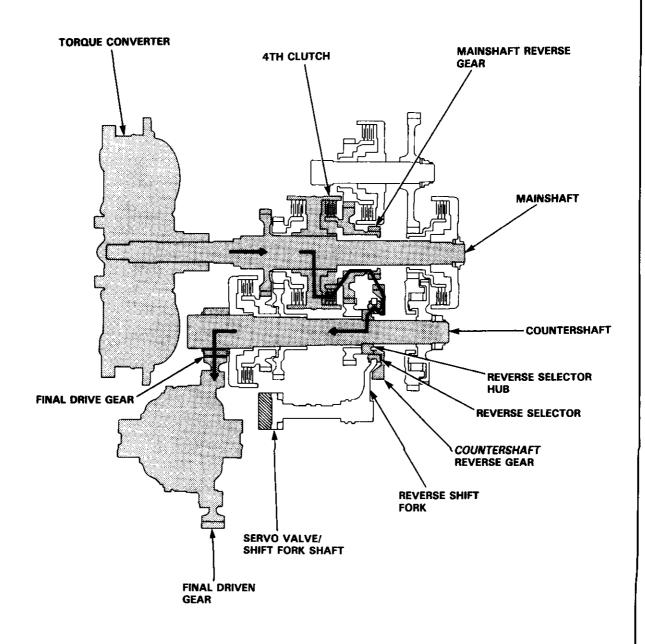
In D4 position, 4th speed, hydraulic pressure is also applied to the 1st clutch, but since the rotation speed of 4th gear exceeds that of 1st gear, power from 1st gear is cut off at the one-way clutch.





R Position

- 1. Hydraulic pressure is switched by the manual valve to the servo valve, which moves the reverse shift fork to the reverse position. The reverse shift fork engages with the reverse selector, reverse selector hub, and the countershaft reverse gear.
- 2. Hydraulic pressure is also applied to the 4th clutch. Power is transmitted from the mainshaft reverse gear via the reverse idler gear to the countershaft reverse gear.
- 3. Rotation direction of the countershaft reverse gear is changed via the reverse idler gear.
- 4. Power is transmitted to the final drive gear and drives the final driven gear.

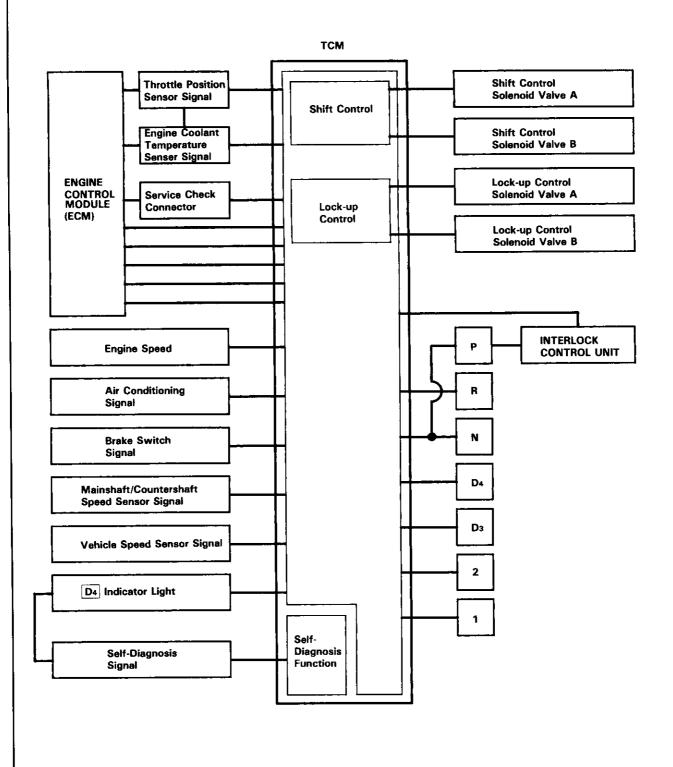


Electronic Control System

Electronic Control System

The electronic control system consists of the Transmission Control Module (TCM), sensors, and 4 solenoid valves. Shifting and lock-up are electronically controlled for comfortable driving under all conditions.

The TCM is located below the dashboard, behind the left side kick panel on the driver's side.





Lock-up Control

From sensor input signals, the TCM determines whether to turn the lock-up ON or OFF and activates lock-up control solenoid valve A and/or B accordingly.

The combination of driving signals to lock-up control solenoid valves A and B is shown in the table below.

| Lock-up control Solenoid valve Lock-up condition | Α | В |
|---|-----|--------------------------|
| Lock-up OFF | OFF | OFF |
| Lock-up, slight | ON | OFF |
| Lock-up, half | ON | ON |
| Lock-up, full | ON | ON |
| Lock-up during deceleration | ON | Duty operation OFF↔ON |

Shift Control

The TCM instantaneously determines which gear should be selected by various signals sent from sensors, and actuates the shift control solenoid valves A and B control shifting. Also, a Grade Logic Control System has been adopted to control shifting in $\boxed{D_4}$ position while the vehicle is ascending or descending a slope, or reducing speed.

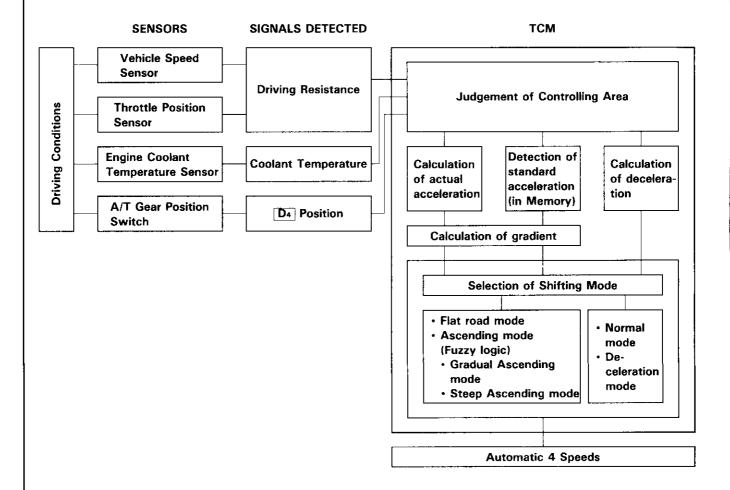
| Shift co | ontrol solenoid valve | А | В |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------|-----|-----|
| | (1st) | OFF | ON |
| D ₃ , D ₄ | (2nd) | ON | ON |
| | (3rd) | ON | OFF |
| D ₄ | (4th) | OFF | OFF |
| 2 | (2nd) | ON | ON |
| 1 | (1st) | ON | OFF |
| R | (Reverse) | ON | OFF |

Electronic Control System (cont'd)

GRADE LOGIC CONTROL SYSTEM

How it works:

The TCM compares actual driving conditions with driving conditions memorized in the TCM, based on the input from the vehicle speed sensor, throttle position sensor, engine coolant temperature sensor, brake switch signal and select lever position signal, to control shifting while a vehicle is ascending or descending a slope, or reducing speed.





· Ascending Control

When the TCM determines that the vehicle is climbing a hill in $\boxed{D_4}$ position, the system extends the engagement area of 3rd gear to prevent the transmission from frequently shifting between 3rd and 4th gears, so the vehicle can run smooth and have more power when needed.

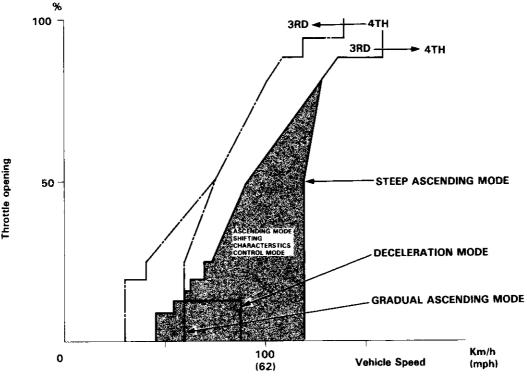
NOTE: Shift schedules between 3rd and 4th gear are stored in the TCM to enable the transmission to automatically select the most suitable gear according to the magnitude of a gradient by Fuzzy logic.

Descending Control

When the TCM determines that the vehicle is going down a hill in $\boxed{D4}$ position, the shift-up speed from 3rd to 4th gear when the throttle is closed becomes faster than the set speed for flat road driving to widen the 3rd gear driving area. This, in combination with engine brake from the deceleration lock-up, achieves smooth driving when the vehicle is descending.

There are two ascending modes with different 3rd gear driving areas according to the magnitude of a gradient stored in the TCM.

When the vehicle is in 4th gear, and you are decelerating on a gradual hill, or when you are applying the brakes on a steep hill, the transmission will downshift to 3rd gear. When you accelerate the transmission will then return to 4th gear.

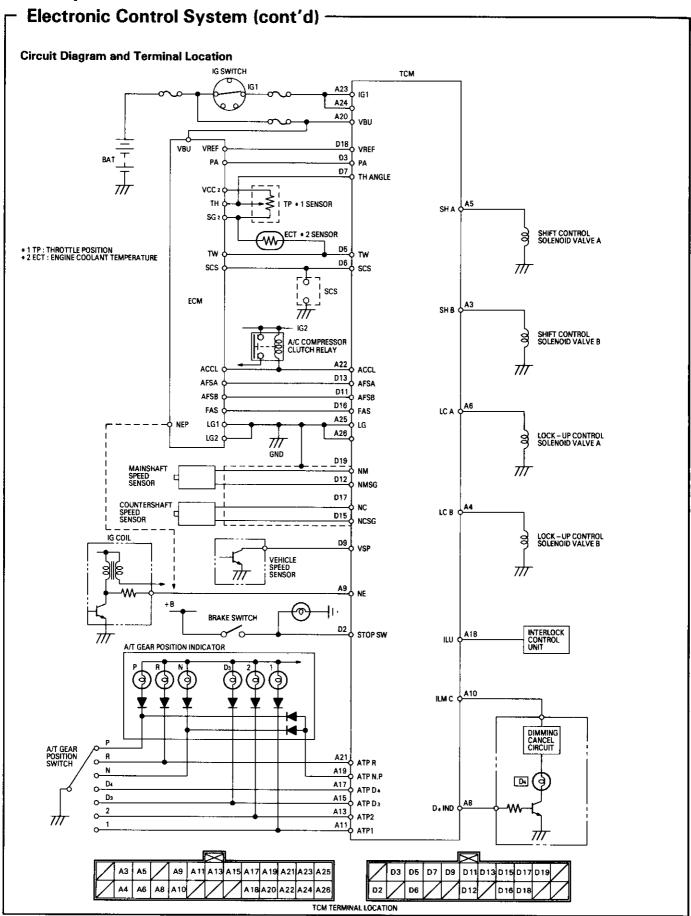


· Deceleration Control

When the vehicle goes around a corner, and needs to decelerate first and then accelerate, the TCM sets the data for deceleration control to reduce the number of times the transmission shifts to obtain smooth driving. When the vehicle is decelerating from speeds above 27 mph (43 km/h), the TCM shifts the transmission from 4th to 3rd earlier than normal to cope with upcoming acceleration to maintain smooth driving.

NOTE

Fuzzy Logic: Fuzzy logic is a from at artificial intelligence that lets computers respond to changing conditions much like a human mind would.

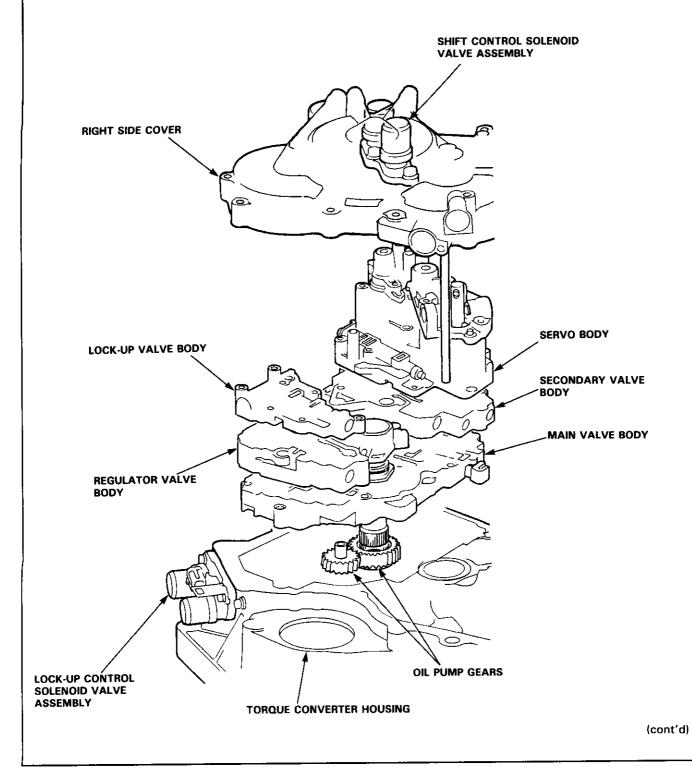




Hydraulic Control

The valve bodies include the main valve body, secondary valve body, regulator valve body, servo body and lock-up valve body.

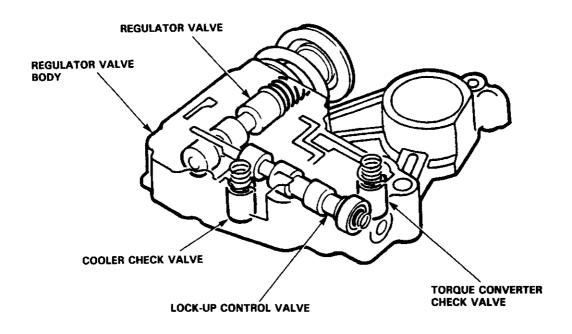
The oil pump is driven by splines behind the torque converter which is attached to the engine. Oil flows through the regulator valve to maintain specified pressure through the main valve body to the manual valve, directing pressure to each of the clutches.



- Hydraulic Control (cont'd) —————

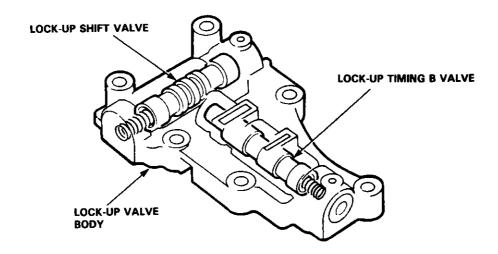
Regulator Valve Body

The regulator valve body is located on the main valve body. The regulator valve body consists of the regulator valve, torque converter check valve, cooler check valve, and lock-up control valve.



Lock-up Valve Body

The lock-up valve body with the lock-up shift valve and lock-up timing B valve is located on the regulator valve body.





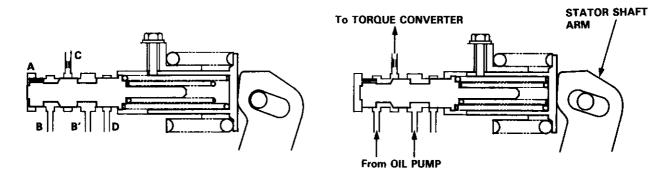
Regulator Valve

The regulator valve maintains a constant hydraulic pressure from the oil pump to the hydraulic control system, while also furnishing oil to the lubricating system and torque converter.

Oil flows through B and B'. The oil which enters through B flows through the valve orifice to A, pushing the regulator valve to the right. According to the level of hydraulic pressure through B, the position of the valve changes, and the amount of the oil through D from B' thus changes. This operation is continued, thus maintaining the line pressure.

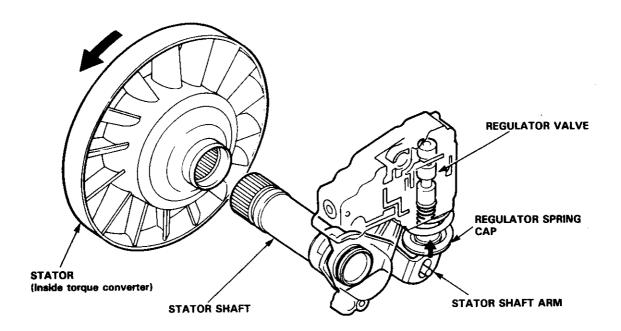
(ENGINE NOT RUNNING)

(ENGINE RUNNING)



Stator Reaction Hydraulic Pressure Control

Hydraulic pressure increase, according to torque, is performed by the regulator valve using stator torque reaction. The stator shaft is splined to the stator and its arm end contacts the regulator spring cap. When the car is accelerating or climbing (Torque Converter Range), stator torque reaction acts on the stator shaft and the stator shaft arm pushes the regulator spring cap in this → direction in proportion to the reaction. The spring compresses and the regulator valve moves to increase the regulated control pressure or line pressure. Line pressure is maximum when the stator reaction is maximum.

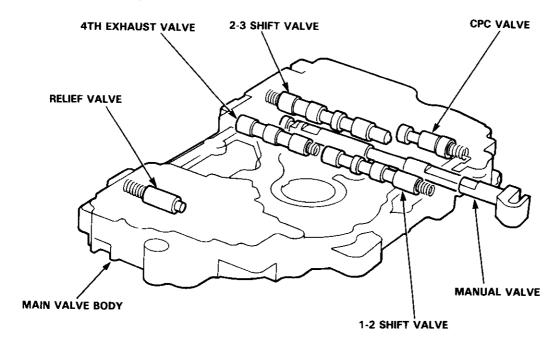


Hydraulic Control (cont'd) -

Main Valve Body

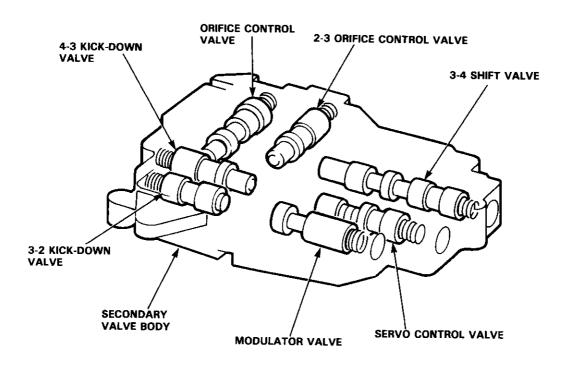
The manual valve, 1-2 shift valve, 2-3 shift valve, 4th exhaust valve, CPC valve, and relief valve are all assembled in the main valve body.

The primary function of this valve body is switching oil passages on and off and controlling the hydraulic pressure going to the hydraulic control system.



Secondary Valve Body

The secondary valve body is located on the main valve body. The 3-2 kick-down valve, 4-3 kick-down valve, 2-3 orifice control valve, orifice control valve, 3-4 shift valve, modulator valve, and servo control valve are assembled in the secondary valve body.

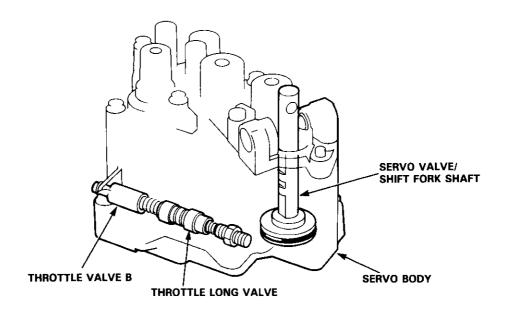




Servo Body

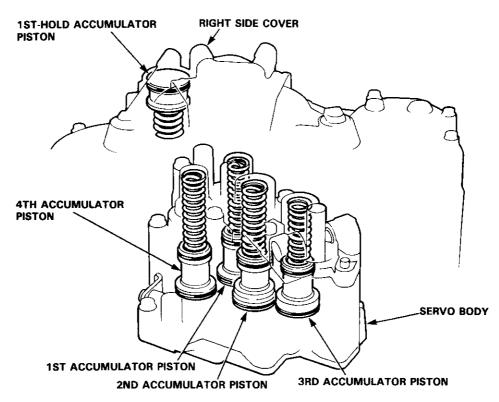
The servo body is located on the secondary valve body.

The servo valve is integrated with the shift fork shaft, throttle valve B, and accumulator pistons, which are all assembled in the servo body.



Accumulator Pistons

The accumulator pistons are assembled in the servo body and right side cover. The 1st-hold clutch accumulator piston is in the right side cover, and the 1st, 2nd 3rd, and 4th accumulator pistons are assembled in the servo body.



Hydraulic Flow

General Chart of Hydraulic Pressure

Oil Pump → Regulator Valve →

Line Pressure Torque Converter Pressure Lubrication Pressure

Distribution of Hydraulic Pressure

Regulator Valve

Line Pressure
Torque Converter Pressure
Lubrication Pressure

Manual Valve

→ To Select Line Pressure

Modulator Valve

Modulator Pressure

• 1-2 Shift Valve

• 2-3 Shift Valve

Clutch Pressure

• 3-4 Shift Vlave

Throttle Valve B

→ Throttle B Pressure

| NO. | DESCRIPTION OF PRESSURE | NO. | DESCRIPTION OF PRESSURE | NO. | DESCRIPTION OF PRESSURE |
|-----|---|-----|---|-----|-------------------------|
| 1 | LINE | 6C | MODULATOR (LOCK-UP CONTROL SOLENOID VALVE A) | 55 | THROTTLE B |
| 2 | LINE | 6D | MODULATOR (LOCK-UP CONTROL SOLENOID VALVE B) | 56 | THROTTLE B |
| 3 | LINE | 9 | LINE | 57 | THROTTLE B |
| 3′ | LINE | 10 | 1ST CLUTCH | 58 | THROTTLE B |
| 3'' | LINE | 15 | 1ST-HOLD CLUTCH | 90 | TORQUE CONVERTER |
| 4 | LINE | 16 | 1ST-HOLD CLUTCH | 91 | TORQUE CONVERTER |
| 4' | LINE | 18 | LINE | 92 | TORQUE CONVERTER |
| 5 | LINE | 20 | 2ND CLUTCH | 93 | OIL COOLER |
| 5′ | LINE | 21 | 2ND CLUTCH | 94 | TORQUE CONVERTER |
| 5′′ | LINE | 25 | LINE | 95 | LUBRICATION |
| 6 | MODULATOR | 30 | 3RD CLUTCH | 96 | TORQUE CONVERTER |
| 6′ | MODULATOR | 31 | 3RD CLUTCH | 97 | TORQUE CONVERTER |
| 6A | MODULATOR (SHIFT CONTROL SOLENOID VALVE A) | 40 | 4TH CLUTCH | 99 | SUCTION |
| 6B | MODULATOR (SHIFT CONTROL SOLENOID VALVE B) | 41 | 4TH CLUTCH | × | BLEED |



N Position

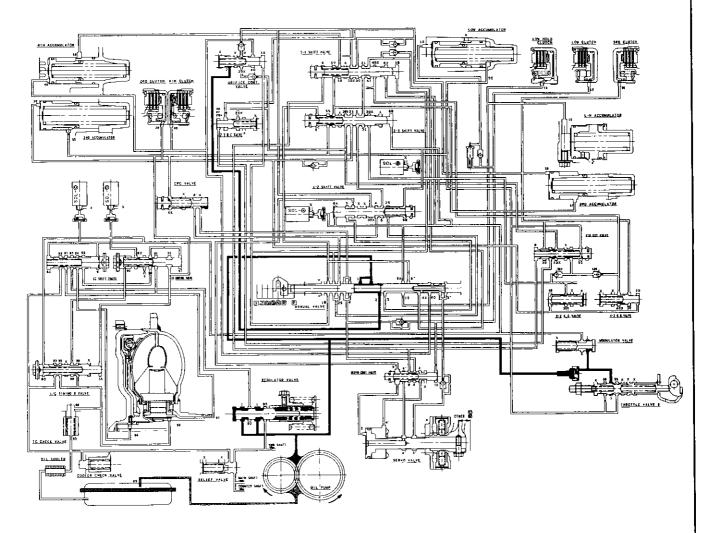
As the engine turns, the oil pump also starts to operate. Automatic transmission fluid (ATF) is drawn from (99) and discharged into (1). Then, ATF pressure is controlled by the regulator valve and becomes line pressure (1). The torque converter inlet pressure (92) enters (94) of torque converter through the orifice and discharges into (90).

The torque converter check valve prevents the torque converter pressure from rising.

Under this condition, the hydraulic pressure is not applied to the clutches.

NOTE:

- · When used, "left" or "right" indicates direction on the flowchart.
- SOL-A: Shift Control Salenoid Valve A
- SOL-B: Shift Control Solenoid Valve B
- SOL-C: Lock-up Control Solenoid Valve A
- SOL-①: Lock-up Control Solenoid Valve B



Hydraulic Flow (cont'd)

1 Position

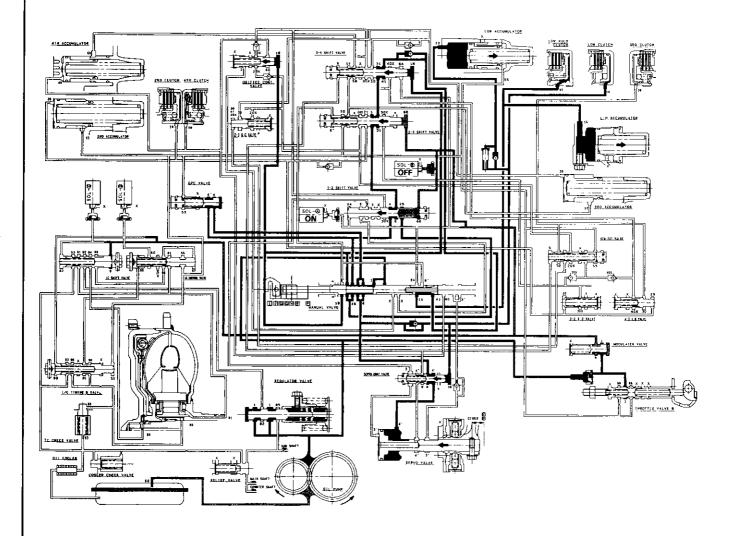
The line pressure (1) becomes line pressure (4) at the manual valve and passes to the 1st clutch and 1st accumulator. Then line pressure (4) flows through the 1st-hold clutch and 1st-hold accumulator.

Fluid flows by way of:

— Line Pressure (4) → 1-2 Shift Valve → 2-3 Shift Valve — 3rd Clutch Pressure (31) → 3-4 Shift Valve — 4th Clutch Pressure (41) → Manual Valve — 1st-hold Clutch Pressure (15) → 1st-hold Clutch

The modulator pressure (6) is supplied to the 1-2 and 2-3 shift valves. The line pressure (1) also flows to throttle valve B.

- · When used, "left" or "right" indicates direction on the flowchart.
- SOL-A: Shift Control Solenoid Valve A
- SOL-B: Shift Control Solenoid Valve B
- SOL-©: Lock-up Control Solenoid Valve A
- SOL-D: Lock-up Control Solenoid Valve B



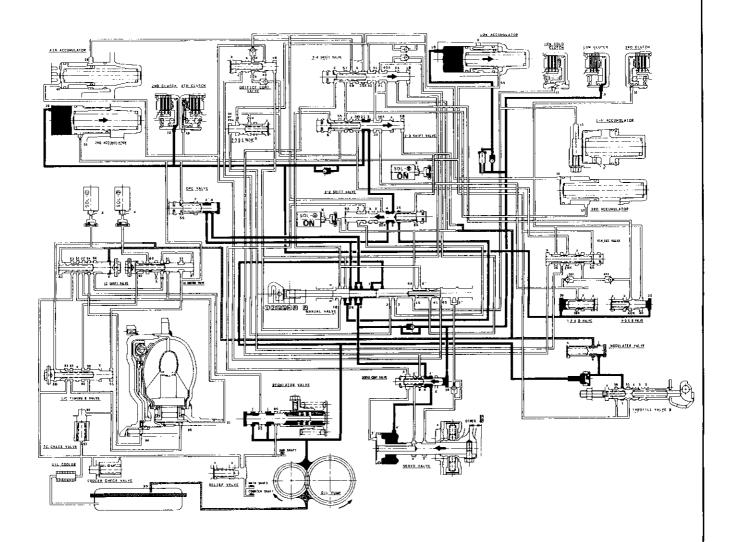


2 Position

The line pressure (1) becomes line pressure (4) as it passes through the manual valve. It then goes through line (20) to the 2nd clutch via the 1-2 and 2-3 shift valves. Also, line pressure (1) goes to the modulator valve through the filter and becomes the modulator pressure (6). Modulator pressure (6) is not supplied to the 1-2, 2-3 and 3-4 shift valves because the shift control solenoid valves A and B are turned on by the TCM.

NOTE:

- · When used, "left" or "right" indicates direction on the flowchart.
- · SOL-A: Shift Control Solenoid Valve A
- · SOL-B: Shift Control Solenoid Valve B
- · SOL-©: Lock-up Control Solenoid Valve A
- SOL-D: Lock-up Control Solenoid Valve B



Hydraulic Flow (cont'd) -

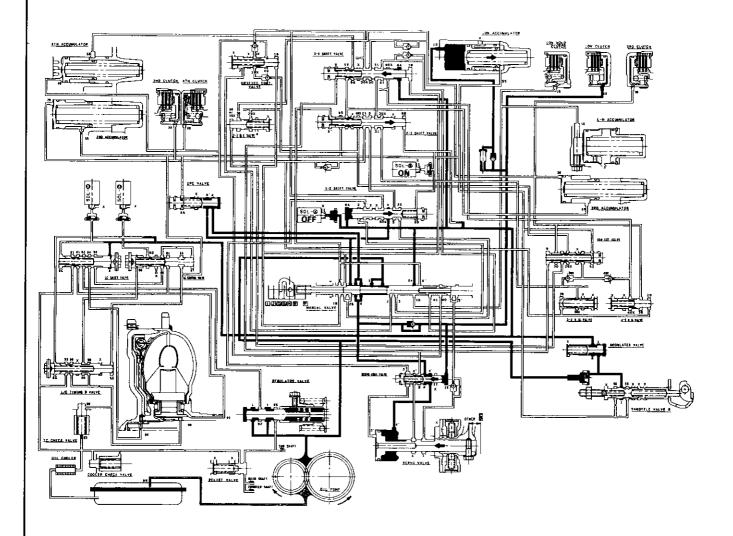
D₃ or D₄ Position

1. 1st Speed

The flow of fluid throuth the torque converter circuit is the same as in N position.

The line pressure (1) becomes line pressure (4) and it becomes the 1st clutch pressure (10). The 1st clutch pressure is applied to the 1st clutch and 1st accumulator; consequently, the vehicle will move as the engine power is transmitted. The line pressure (1) becomes the modulator pressure (6) by the modulator valve and travels to 1-2 and 3-4 shift valves. The 1-2 shift valve is moved to the right side because the shift control solenoid valve A is turned off and B is turned on by the TCM. This valve stops 2nd clutch pressure and power is not transmitted to the 2nd clutch. Line pressure (4) also flows to the servo valve and line pressure (1) also flows to throttle valve B.

- · When used, "left" or "right" indicates direction on the flowchart.
- · SOL-A: Shift Control Solenoid Valve A
- · SOL-(B): Shift Control Solenoid Valve B
- · SOL-©: Lock-up Control Solenoid Valve A
- SOL-①: Lock-up Control Solenoid Valve B





2. 2nd Speed

The flow of fluid up the 1-2 shift valve is the same as in 1st speed. As the speed of the car reaches the prescribed value, the solenoid valve A is turned on by means of the TCM. As a result, the 1-2 shift valve is moved to the left and uncovers the port leading to the 2nd clutch; the 2nd clutch is engaged.

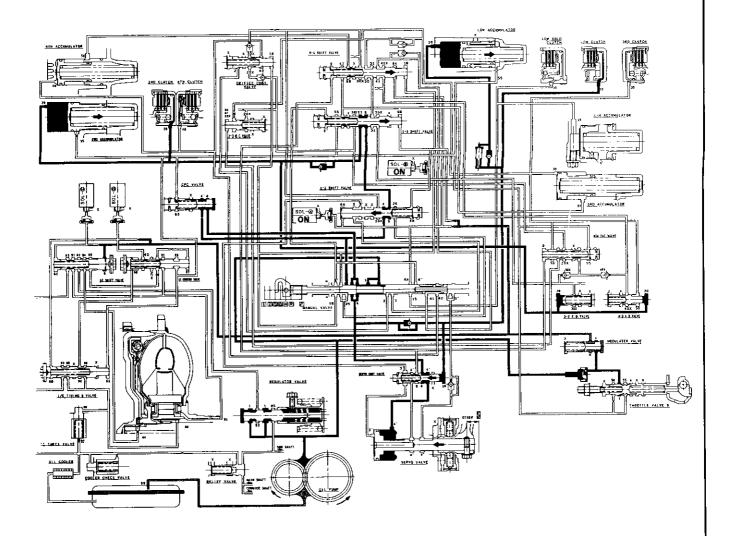
Fluid flows by way of:

- Line pressure (4) \rightarrow 1-2 Shift Valve - 2-3 Shift Valve - 2nd Clutch Pressure (21) \rightarrow 2nd Clutch

The hydraulic pressure also flows to the 1st clutch. However, no power is transmitted because of the one-way clutch.

NOTE:

- When used, "left" or "right" indicates direction on the flowchart.
- SOL-A: Shift Control Solenoid Valve A
- SOL-B: Shift Control Solenoid Valve B
- SOL-©: Lock-up Control Solenoid Valve A
- SOL-D: Lock-up Control Solenoid Valve B



Hydraulic Flow (cont'd)

3. 3rd Speed

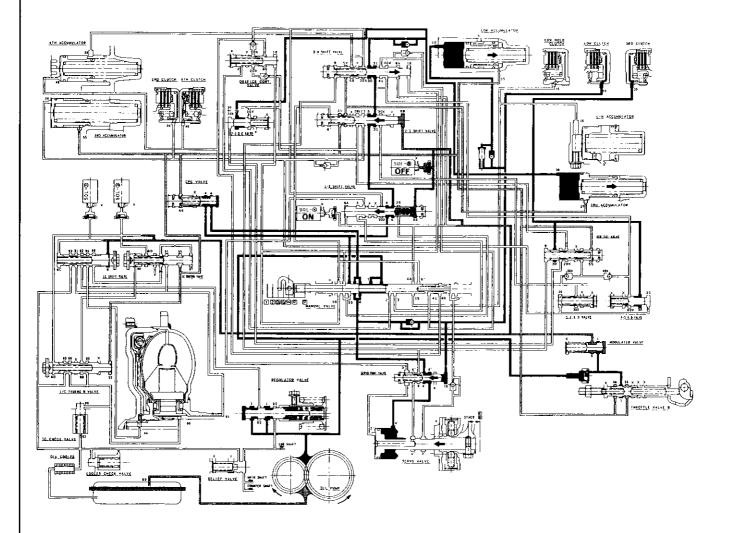
The flow of fluid up to the 1-2 and 2-3 shift valves is the same as in 2nd speed. As the speed of the car reaches the prescribed value, the shift control solenoid valve B is turned off (shift control solenoid valve A remains on). The 2-3 shift valve is then moved to the left, uncovering the oil port leading to the 3rd clutch. Since the 3-4 shift valve is moved to the right to cover the oil port to the 4th clutch, the 3rd clutch is turned on.

Fluid flows by way of:

- Line Pressure (4) \rightarrow 1-2 Shift Valve \rightarrow 2-3 Shift Valve - 3rd Clutch Pressure (31) \rightarrow 3-4 Shift Valve (not controlled) - 3rd Clutch Pressure (30) \rightarrow 3rd Clutch

The hydraulic pressure also flows to the 1st clutch. However, no power is transmitted because of the one-way clutch as in the 2nd speed.

- · When used, "left" or "right" indicates direction on the flowchart.
- · SOL-A: Shift Control Solenoid Valve A
- SOL-(B): Shift Control Solenoid Valve B
- SOL-©: Lock-up Control Solenoid Valve A
- SOL
 Control Solenoid Valve B





D₄ Position

4. 4th Speed

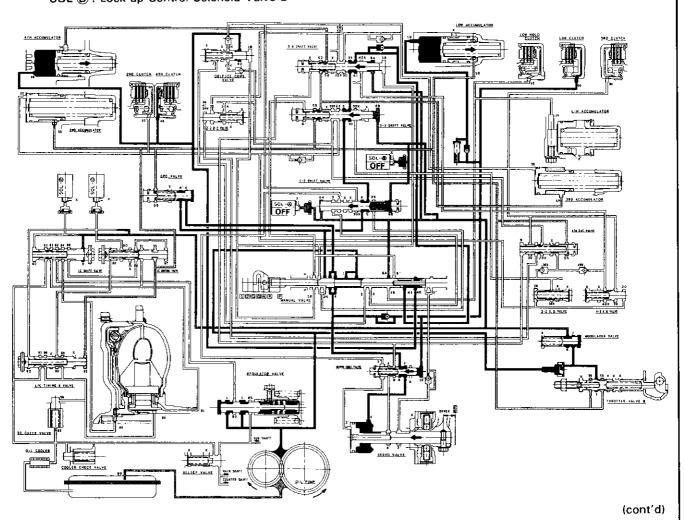
The flow of fluid up to the 1-2, 2-3 and 3-4 shift valves is the same as in 3rd speed. As the speed of the car reaches the prescribed value, the shift control solenoid valve A is turned off (shift control solenoid valve B remains off). As this takes place, 3-4 shift valve is moved to the left and uncovers the oil port leading to the 4th clutch. Since the 1-2 and 2-3 shift valves are kept on the left side, the fluid flows through the 4th clutch; the power is transmitted through the 4th clutch.

Fluid flows by way of:

— Line Pressure (4) \rightarrow 1-2 Shift Valve \rightarrow 2-3 Shift Valve — 3rd Clutch Pressure (31) \rightarrow 3-4 Shift Valve — 4th Clutch Pressure (40) \rightarrow 4th Clutch

The hydraulic pressure also flows to the 1st clutch. However, no power is transmitted because of the one-way clutch as in 2nd and 3rd speed.

- · When used, "left" or "right" indicates direction on the flowchart.
- SOL-A: Shift Control Solenoid Valve A
- SOL-®: Shift Control Solenoid Valve B
- SOL-©: Lock-up Control Solenoid Valve A
- SOL
 : Lock-up Control Solenoid Valve B



Hydraulic Flow (cont'd)

R Position

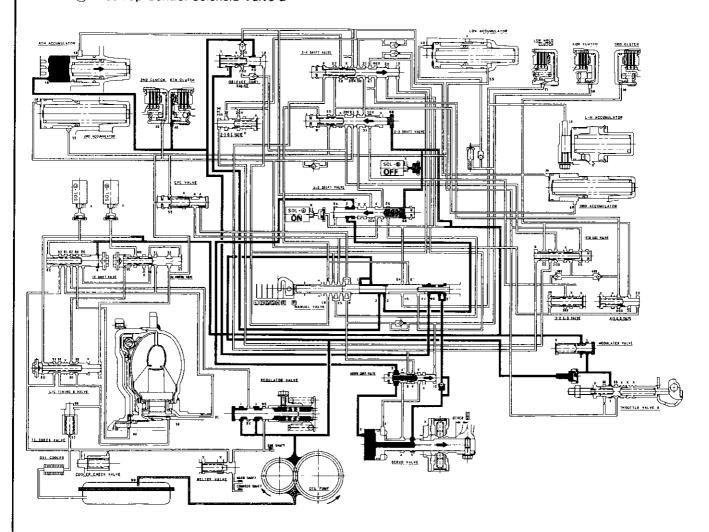
The flow of fluid through the torque converter circuit is the same as in $\boxed{\mathbb{N}}$ position. The fluid (1) from the oil pump flows through the manual valve and becomes line pressure (3). It then flows through the 1-2 shift valve to the servo valve via the servo control valve, causing the shift fork shaft to be moved in the reverse direction.

Under this condition, the shift control solenoid valve A is turned on whereas the valve B is turned off as in 3rd speed in $\boxed{D_4}$ or $\boxed{D_3}$ position. As a result, the 1-2 shift valve is also moved to the left. The fluid (3') will flow through the servo valve and manual valve to the 4th clutch; power is transmitted through the 4th clutch.

Reverse Inhibitor Control

When the R position is selected while the vehicle is moving forward at a speed over 6 mph (10 km/h), the TCM outputs 1st signal (A: OFF, B: ON), and the 1-2 shift valve is moved to the right side. The line pressure (3) is intercepted by the 1-2 shift valve; consequently, power is not transmitted as the 4th clutch and servo valve are not operated.

- · When used, "left" or "right" indicates direction on the flowchart.
- SOL-A: Shift Control Solenoid Valve A
- · SOL-®: Shift Control Solenoid Valve B
- SOL-©: Lock-up Control Solenoid Valve A
- · SOL-D: Lock-up Control Solenoid Valve B

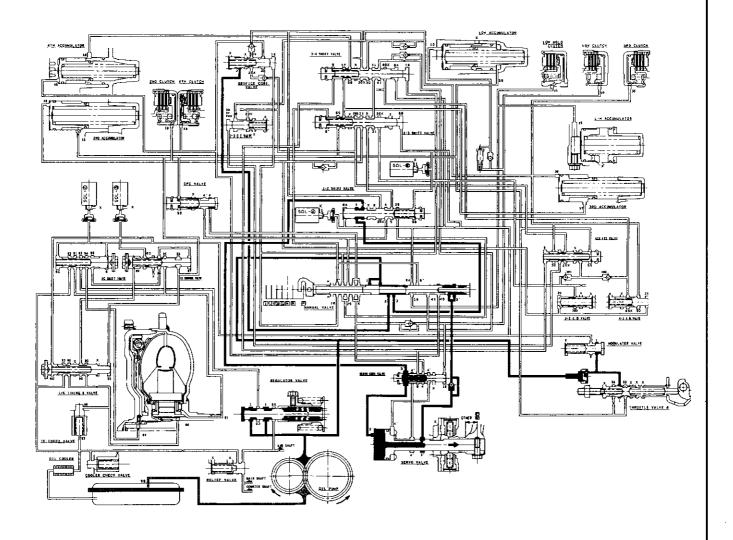




P Position

The flow of fluid through the torque converter circuit is the same as in \boxed{N} position. The line pressure (1) becomes line pressure (3) as it passes through the manual valve. Then line pressure (3) flows through the 1-2 shift valve to the servo valve via the servo control valve, causing the shift fork shaft to be moved to the reverse position as in \boxed{R} position. However, the hydraulic pressure is not supplied to the clutches. Power is not transmitted.

- · When used, "left" or "right" indicates direction on the flowchart.
- SOL-A: Shift Control Solenoid Valve A
- SOL-B: Shift Control Solenoid Valve B
- SOL-©: Lock-up Control Solenoid Valve A
- SOL-D: Lock-up Control Solenoid Valve B

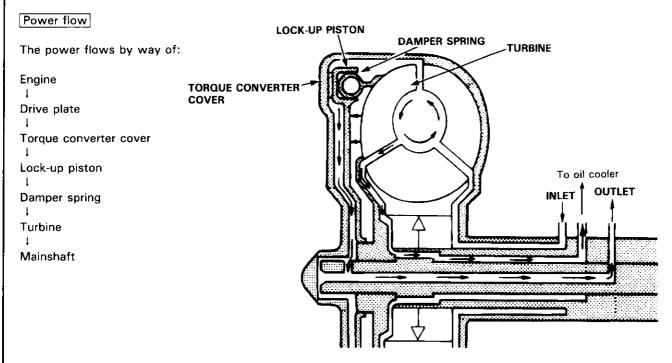


Lock-up System

Lock-up Clutch

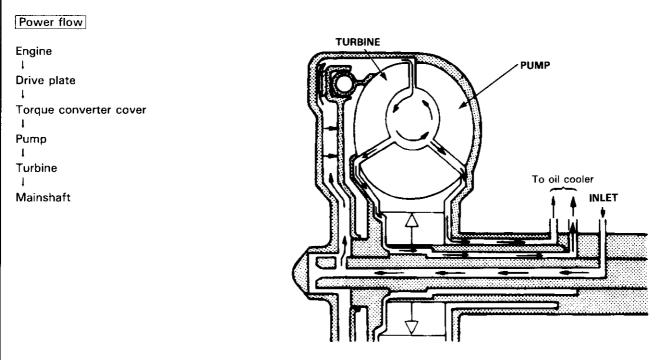
1. Operation (clutch on)

With the lock-up clutch on, the oil in the chamber between the torque converter cover and lock-up piston is discharged, and the converter oil exerts pressure through the piston against the converter cover. As a result, the converter turbine is locked on the converter cover firmly. The effect is to bypass the converter, thereby placing the car in direct drive.



2. Operation (clutch off)

With the lock-up clutch off, the oil flows in the reverse of CLUTCH ON. As a result, the lock-up piston is moved away from the converter cover; that is, the torque converter lock-up is released.



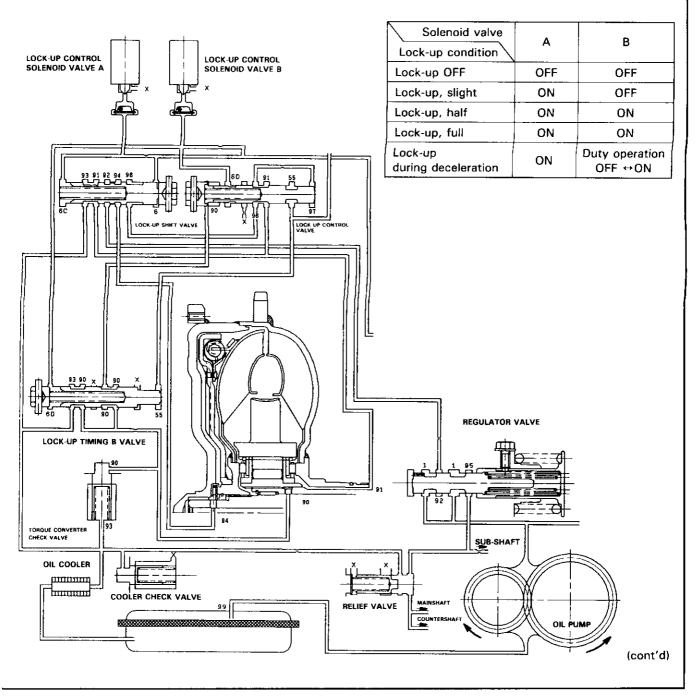


In $\boxed{D_4}$ position in 2nd, 3rd and 4th, and $\boxed{D_3}$ position in 3rd, pressurized fluid is drained from the back of the torque converter through an oil passage, causing the lock-up piston to be held against the torque converter cover. As this takes place, the mainshaft rotates at the same speed as the engine crankshaft. Together with hydraulic control, the TCM optimized the timing of the lock-up system. Under certain conditions, the lock-up clutch is applied during deceleration, in 3rd and 4th speed.

The lock-up system controls the range of lock-up according to lock-up control solenoid valves A and B, and throttle valve B. When lock-up control solenoid valves A and B activate, modulator pressure changes. Lock-up control solenoid valves A and B are mounted on the torque converter housing, and are controlled by the TCM.

NOTE:

When used, "left" or "right" indicates direction on the flowchart.

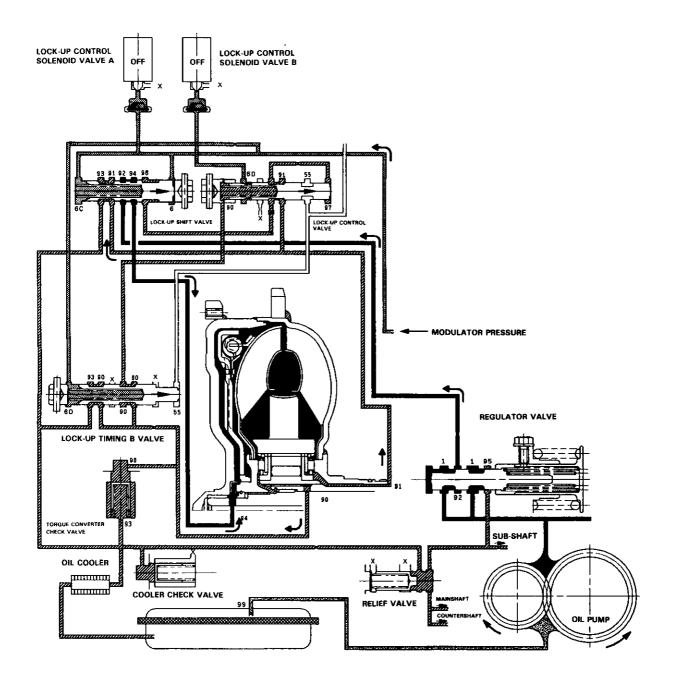


Lock-up System (cont'd)

No Lock-up

The pressurized fluid regulated by the modulator works on both ends of the lock-up shift valve and on the left side of the lock-up control valve. Under this condition, the pressures working on both ends of the lock-up shift valve are equal, the shift valve is moved to the right side by the tension of the valve spring alone. The fluid from the oil pump will flow through the left side of the lock-up clutch to the torque converter; i.e., the lock-up clutch is in OFF condition.

NOTE: When used, "left" or "right" indicates direction on the flowchart.





Partial Lock-up

Lock-up Control Solenoid Valve A: ON Lock-up Control Solenoid Valve B: OFF

The TCM switches the solenoid valve A on to release the modulator pressure in the left cavity of the lock-up shift valve. The modulator pressure in the right cavity of the lock-up shift valve overcomes the spring force, thus the lock-up shift valve is moved to the left side.

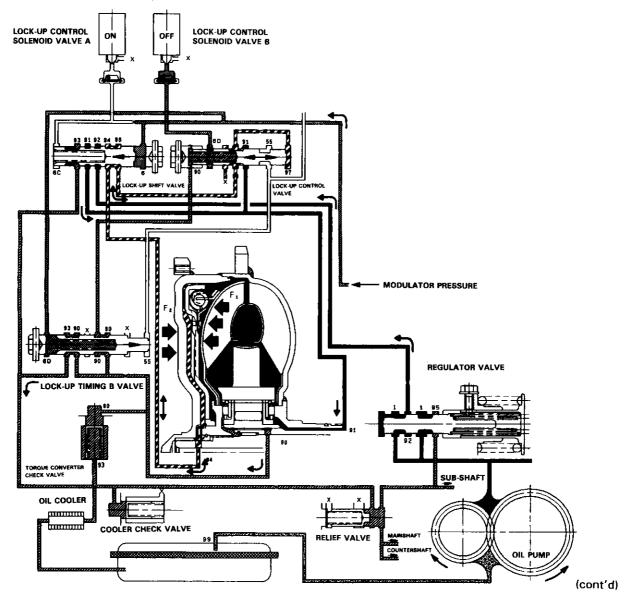
The modulator pressure is separated to the two passages:

F1: Torque Converter Inner Pressure: enters into right side-to engage lock-up clutch

F2: Torque Converter Back Pressure: enters into left side-to disengage lock-up clutch

The back pressure (F2) is regulated by the lock-up control valve whereas the position of the lock-up timing B valve is determined by the throttle B pressure, tension of the valve spring and pressure regulated by the modulator. Also the position of the lock-up control valve is determined by the back pressure of the lock-up control valve and torque converter pressure regulated by the check valve. With the lock-up control solenoid valve B kept off, the modulator pressure is maintained in the left end of the lock-up control valve; in other words, the lock-up control valve is moved slightly to the left side. This slight movement of the lock-up control valve causes the back pressure to be lowered slightly, resulting in partial lock-up.

NOTE: When used, "left" or "right" indicates direction on the flowchart.



Description

Lock-up System (cont'd) -

Half Lock-up

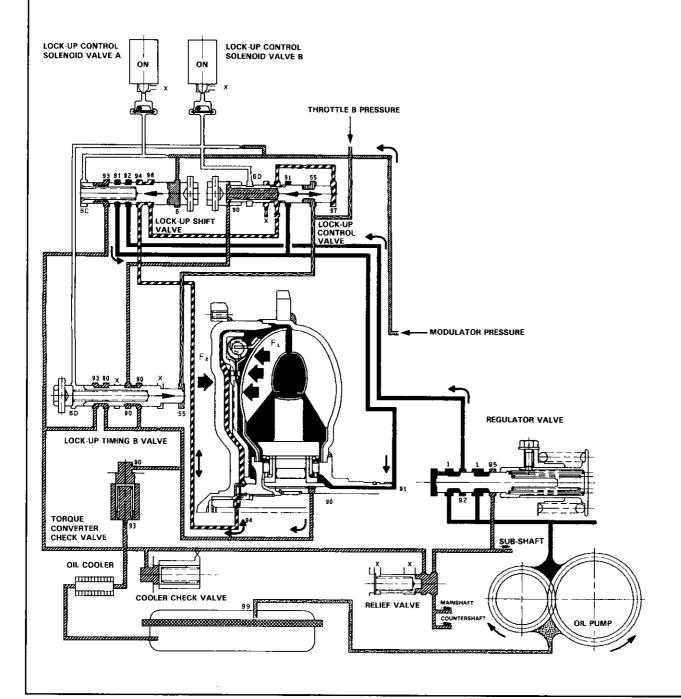
Lock-up Control Solenoid Valve A: ON Lock-up Control Solenoid Valve B: ON

The modulator pressure is released by the solenoid valve B, causing the modulator pressure in the left cavity of the lock-up control valve to lower.

Also the modulator pressure in the left cavity of the lock-up timing B valve is low. However the throttle B pressure is still low at this time; consequently, the lock-up timing B valve is kept on the right side by the spring force.

With the lock-up control solenoid valve B turned on, the lock-up control valve is moved somewhat to the left side, causing the back pressure (F2) to lower. This allows a greater amount of the fluid (F1) to work on the lock-up clutch so as to engage the clutch. The back pressure (F2) which still exists prevents the clutch from engaging fully.

NOTE: When used, "left" or "right" indicates direction on the flowchart.





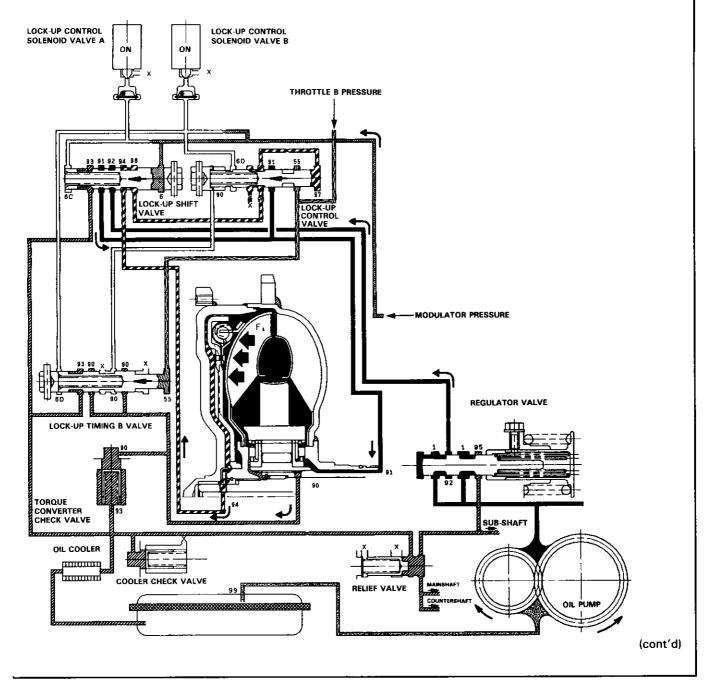
Full Lock-up

Lock-up Control Solenoid Valve A: ON Lock-up Control Solenoid Valve B: ON

When the vehicle speed further increases, the throttle B pressure is increased in accordance with the throttle opening. The lock-up timing B valve overcomes the spring force and moves to the left side. Also, this valve closes the oil port leading to the torque converter check valve.

Under this condition, the throttle B pressure working on the right end of the lock-up control valve becomes greater than that on the left end (modulator pressure in the left end has already been released by the solenoid valve B); i.e., the lock-up control valve is moved to the left. As this happens, the torque converter back pressure is released fully, causing the lock-up clutch to be engaged fully.

NOTE: When used, "left" or "right" indicates direction on the flowchart.



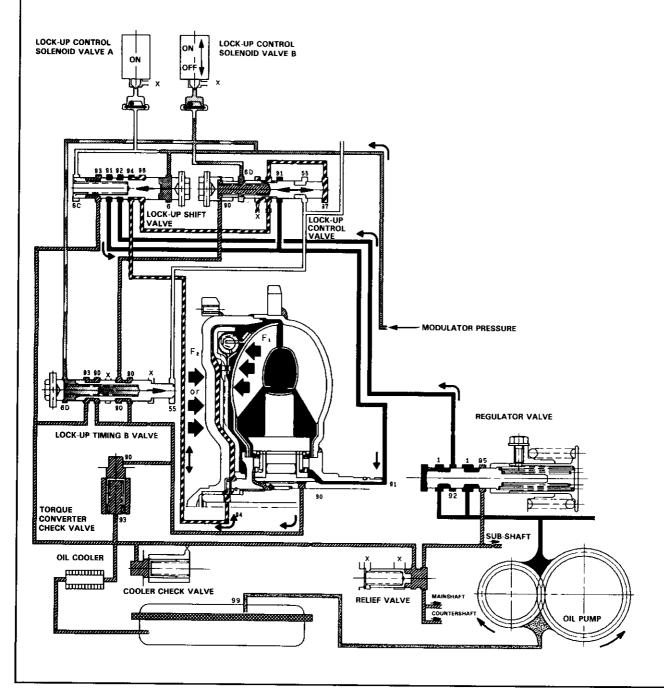
Description

Lock-up System (cont'd) -

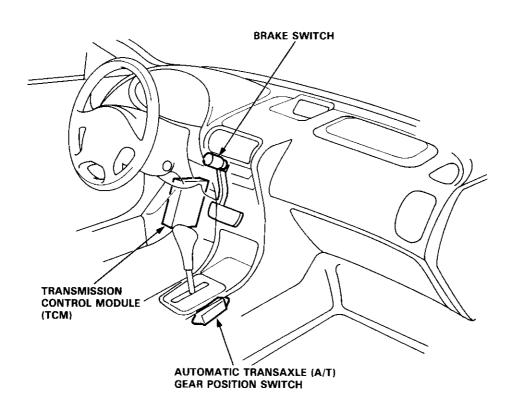
Deceleration Lock-up

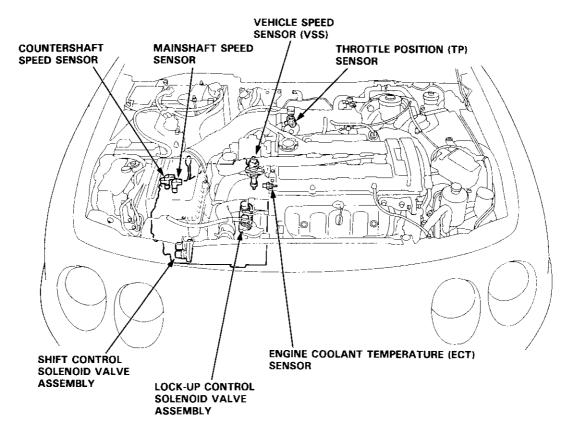
Lock-up Control Solenoid Valve A: ON Lock-up Control Solenoid Valve B: Duty Operation (ON ↔ OFF)
The TCM switches solenoid valve B on and off rapidly under certain conditions. The slight lock-up and half lock-up regions are maintained so as to lock the torque converter properly.

NOTE: When used, "left" or "right" indicates direction on the flowchart.

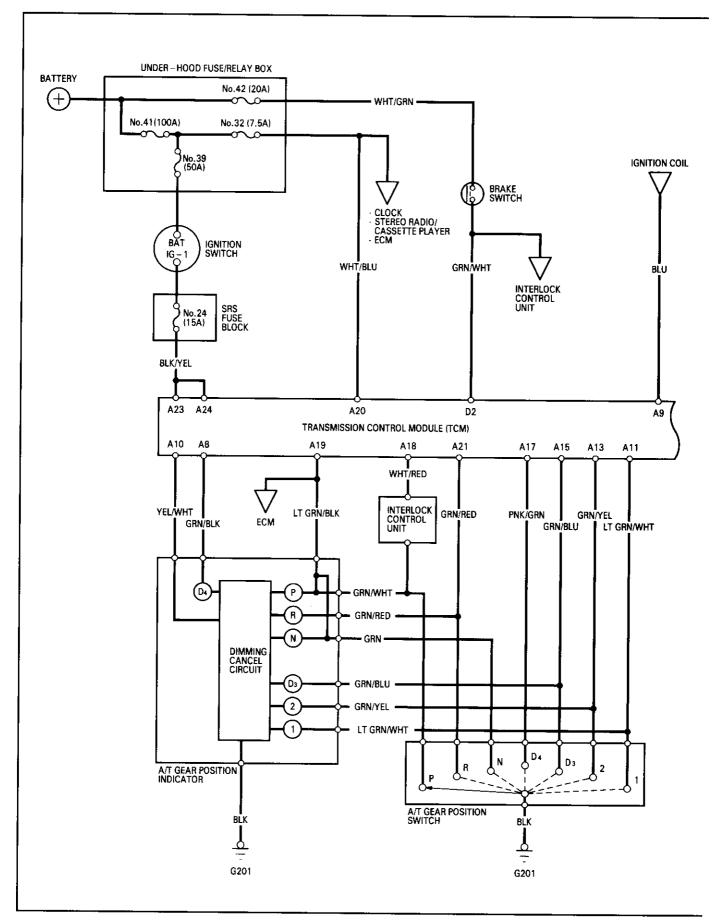




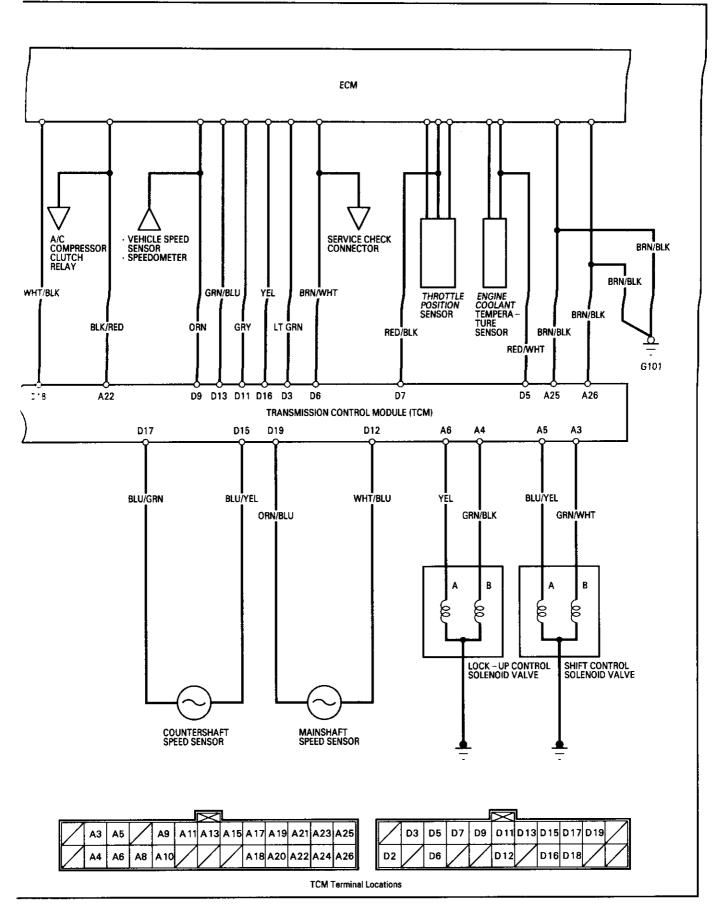




Circuit Diagram





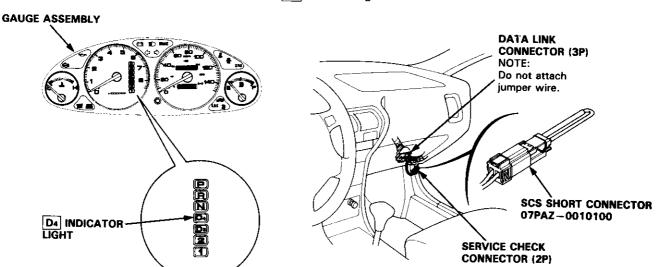


Troubleshooting Procedures

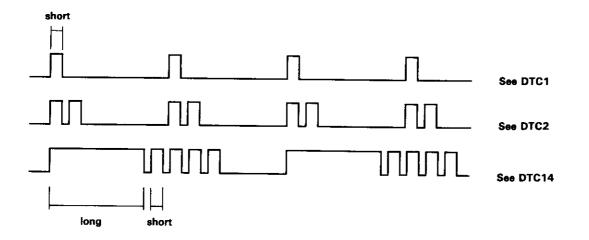
When the TCM senses an abnormality in the input or output systems, the $\boxed{D_4}$ indicator light in the gauge assembly will blink.

When the Service Check Connector (located under the dash on the passenger side) is connected with the special tool as shown, the $\boxed{D_4}$ indicator light will blink the Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) when the ignition switch is turned on.

When the $\boxed{D_4}$ indicator light has been reported on, connect the Service Check Connector with the special tool. Then turn on the ignition switch and observe the $\boxed{D_4}$ indicator light.



Codes 1 through 9 are indicated by individual short blinks, codes 10 through 15 are indicated by a series of long and short blinks. One long blink equals 10 short blinks. Add the long and short blinks together to determine the code. After determining the code, refer to the electrical system Symptom-to-Component Chart on pages 14-50 and 51.



Some PGM-FI problems will also make the $\boxed{D_4}$ indicator light come on. After repairing the PGM-FI system, disconnect the BACK UP fuse (7.5 A) in the under-hood fuse/relay box for more than 10 seconds to reset the TCM memory.

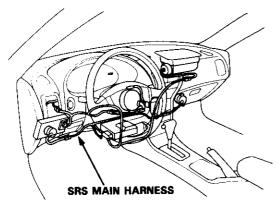
NOTE:

- PGM-FI system
 - The PGM-FI system on this model is a sequential multiport fuel injection system.
- Disconnecting the BACK UP fuse also cancels the radio anti-theft code, preset stations and the clock setting. Get
 the customer's code number and make note of the radio presets before removing the fuse so you can reset them.



CAUTION:

- All SRS electrical wiring harnesses are covered with yellow insulation.
- Before disconnecting any part of the SRS wire harness, connect the short connectors (see page 23-70).
- Replace the entire affected SRS harness assembly if it has an open circuit or damaged wiring.

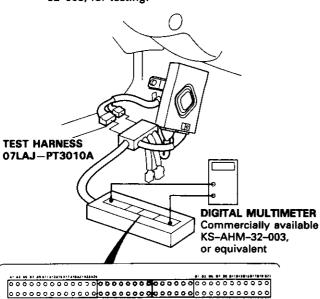


If the inspection for a particular failure code requires the use of Test Harness (O7LAJ-PT3010A):

- Remove the left side kick panel on the driver's side (see page 14-84).
- Connect the wire harness to the Test Harness, and/or connect the Test Harness to the TCM according to the troubleshooting flowchart.

NOTE:

- Only the A and D terminals of the Test Harness are used for A/T troubleshooting.
- Unless otherwise noted, use only the Digital Multimeter, commercially available or KS-AHM-32-003, for testing.

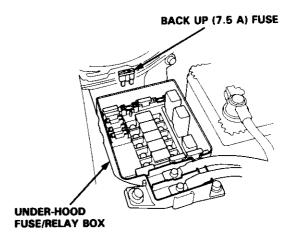


Terminal Locations

TCM Reset Procedure

- 1. Turn the ignition switch off.
- 2. Remove the No. 32 BACK UP fuse (7.5 A) from the under-hood fuse/relay box for 10 seconds to reset the TCM.

NOTE: Disconnecting the No. 32 BACK UP fuse also cancels the radio anti-theft code, preset stations and the clock setting. Get the customer's code number and make note of the radio presets before removing the fuse so you can reset them.



Final Procedure

NOTE: This procedure must be done after any troubleshooting.

- Remove the special tool from the Service Check Connector.
- 2. Reset the TCM.
- 3. Set the radio preset stations and clock setting.

Symptom-to-Component Chart

Electrical System —

| Number of D ₄ indicator light blinks while Service Check Connector is connected with the special tool. | D ₄ indicator light | Possible Cause | Symptom | Refer to page |
|---|--------------------------------|--|---|---------------|
| 1 | Blinks | Disconnected lock-up control solenoid valve A connector Short or open in lock-up control solenoid valve A wire Faulty lock-up control solenoid valve A | Lock-up clutch does not engage. Lock-up clutch does not disengage. Unstable idle speed. | 14-52 |
| 2 | Blinks | Disconnected lock-up control solenoid valve B connector Short or open in lock-up control solenoid valve B wire Faulty lock-up control solenoid valve B | Lock-up clutch does not engage. | 14-54 |
| 3 | Blinks or OFF | Disconnected throttle position (TP) sensor connector Short or open in TP sensor wire Faulty TP sensor | Lock-up clutch does not engage. | 14-56 |
| 4 | Blinks | Disconnected vehicle speed sensor (VSS) connector Short or open in VSS wire Faulty VSS | Lock-up clutch does not engage. | 14-57 |
| 5 | Blinks | Short in A/T gear position switch wire Faulty A/T gear position switch | Fails to shift other than 2nd ↔ 4th gears. Lock-up clutch does not engage. | 14-58 |
| 6 | OFF | Disconnected A/T gear position switch connector Open in A/T gear position switch wire Faulty A/T gear position switch | Fails to shift other than 2nd ↔ 4th gears. Lock-up clutch does not engage. Lock-up clutch engages and disengages alternately. | 14-60 |
| 7 | Blinks | Disconnected shift control solenoid valve A connector Short or open in shift control solenoid valve A wire Faulty shift control solenoid valve A | Fails to shift (between 1st ↔ 4th, 2nd ↔ 4th or 2nd ↔ 3rd gears only). Fails to shift (stuck in 4th gear). | 14-62 |
| 8 | Blinks | Disconnected shift control solenoid valve B connector Short or open in shift control solenoid valve B wire Faulty shift control solenoid valve B | Fails to shift (stuck in 1st or 4th gears). | 14-64 |
| 9 | Blinks | Disconnected countershaft speed sensor connector Short or open in the countershaft speed sensor wire Faulty countershaft speed sensor | Lock-up clutch does not engage. | 14-66 |



| Number of D4 indicator light blinks while Service Check Connector is connected with the special tool. | D ₄ indicator light | Possible Cause | Symptom | Refer to page |
|---|--------------------------------|---|---|---------------|
| 10 | Blinks | Disconnected engine coolant temperature (ECT) sensor connector Short or open in ECT sensor wire Faulty ECT sensor | Lock-up clutch does not engage. | 14-68 |
| 11 | OFF | Disconnected ignition coil connector Short or open in ignition coil wire Faulty ignition coil | Lock-up clutch does not engage. | 14-70 |
| 13 | Blinks | Short or open in LT GRN wire between the D3 terminal and ECM Faulty barometric pressure (BARO) sensor NOTE: The BARO sensor is built into the ECM | No specific symptom appears. | 14-71 |
| 14 | Blinks | Short or open in FAS (YEL) wire be- tween the D16 terminal and ECM Faulty ECM | Transmission jerks hard when shifting. | 14-73 |
| 15 | OFF | Disconnected mainshaft speed sensor connector Short or open in mainshaft speed sensor wire Faulty mainshaft speed sensor | Transmission jerks hard when shifting. | 14-75 |

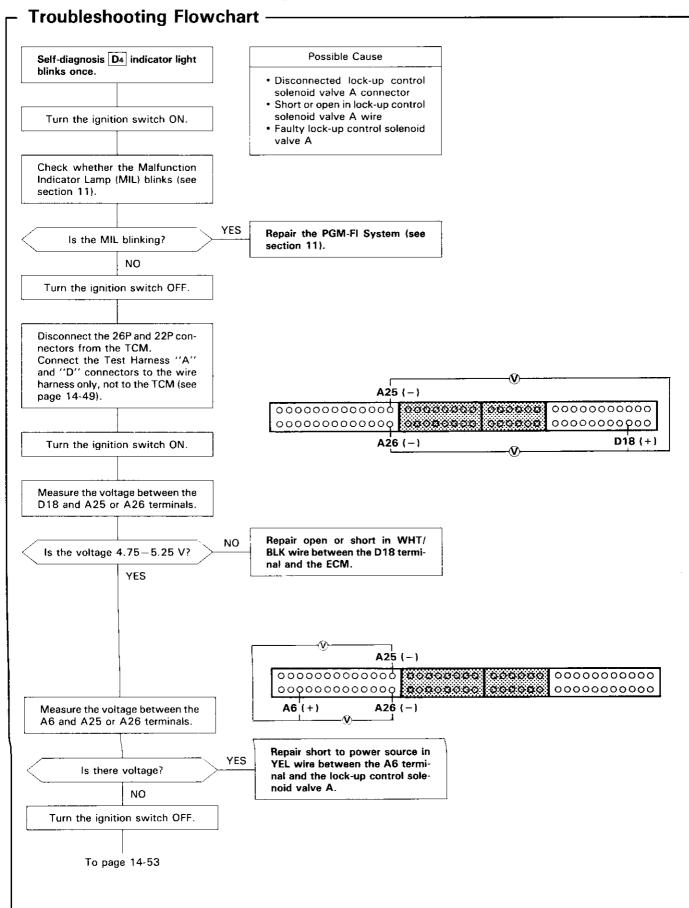
If the self-diagnosis D4 indicator light does not blink, perform an inspection according to the table below.

| Symptom | Probable Cause | Ref.page |
|--|-------------------------------|----------|
| D4 indicator light is on steady, not blinking whenever the ignition is on. | | 14-77 |
| D4 indicator light does not come on for 2 seconds after ignition is first turned on. | | 14-78 |
| Lock-up clutch does not have duty operation (ON↔OFF). | Check A/C signal with A/C on. | 14-80 |
| Lock-up clutch does not engage. | | |
| Shift lever cannot be moved from P position with the brake pedal depressed. | Check brake switch signal. | 14-81 |

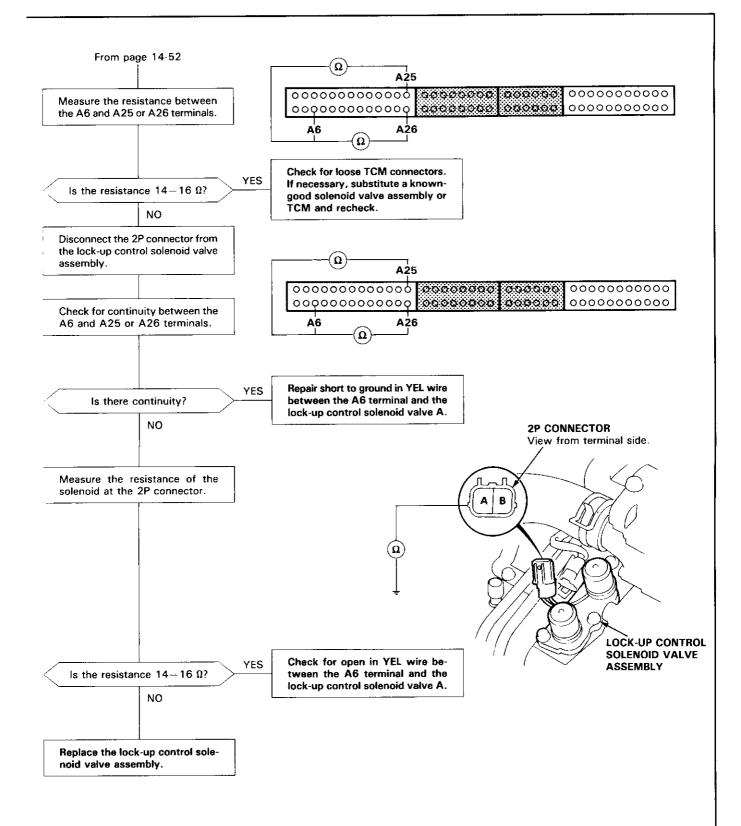
- If a customer describes the symptoms for codes 3, (yet the D₄ indicator light is not blinking), 6, 11 or 15, it will be necessary to recreate the symptom by test driving, and then checking the D₄ indicator light with the ignition still ON
- If the D4 indicator light displays codes other than those listed above or stays lit continuously, the TCM is faulty.
- Sometimes the D4 indicator light and the Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL)/Check Engine light may come on simultaneously. If so, check the PGM-FI system according to the number of blinks on the MIL/Check Engine light, then reset the memory by removing the BACK UP fuse in the under-hood fuse/relay box for more than 10 seconds. Drive the vehicle for several minutes at speed over 30 mph (50 km/h), then recheck the MIL/Check Engine light.

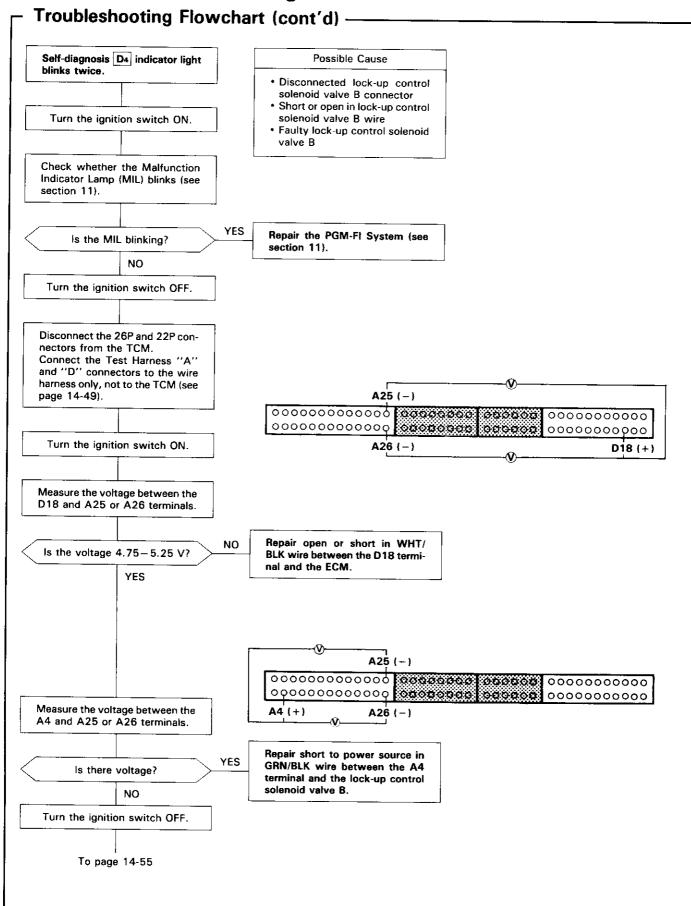
NOTE:

- PGM-FI system
 - The PGM-FI system on this model is a sequential multiport fuel injection system.
- Disconnecting the BACK UP fuse also cancels the radio anti-theft code, preset stations and the clock setting. Get
 the customer's code number and make note of the radio presets before removing the fuse so you can reset them.

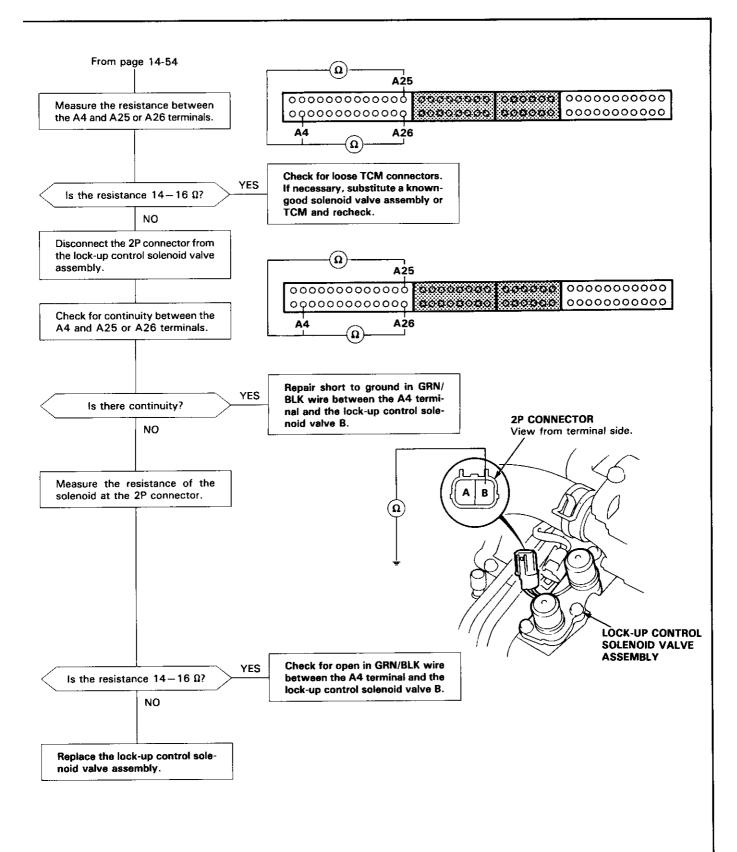


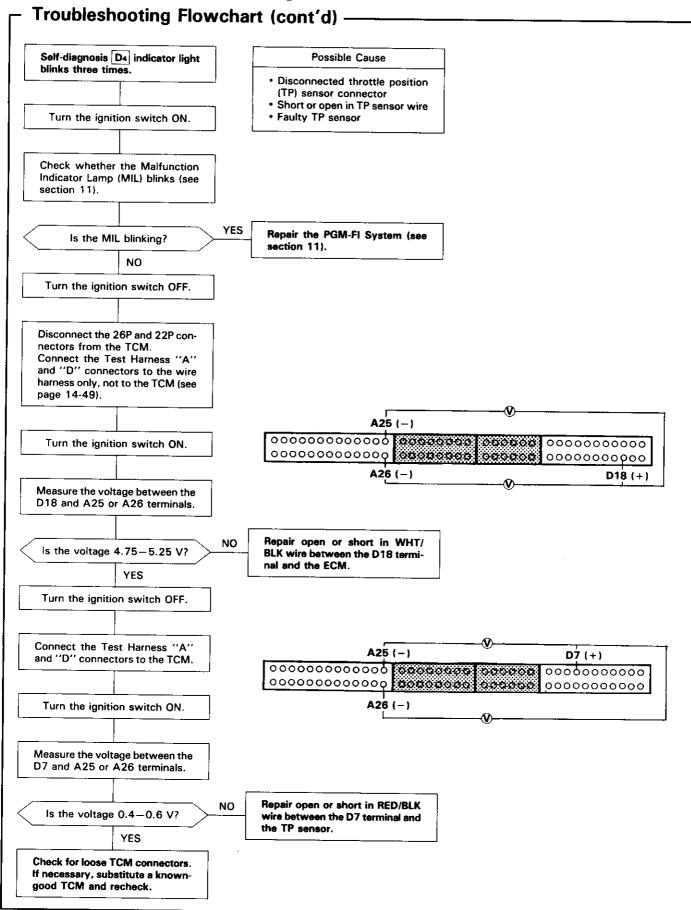




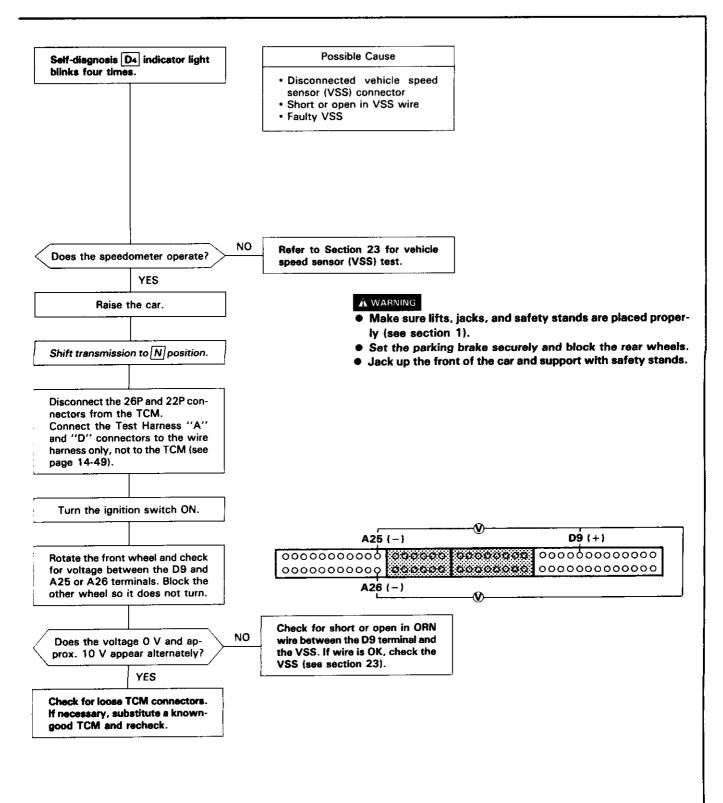


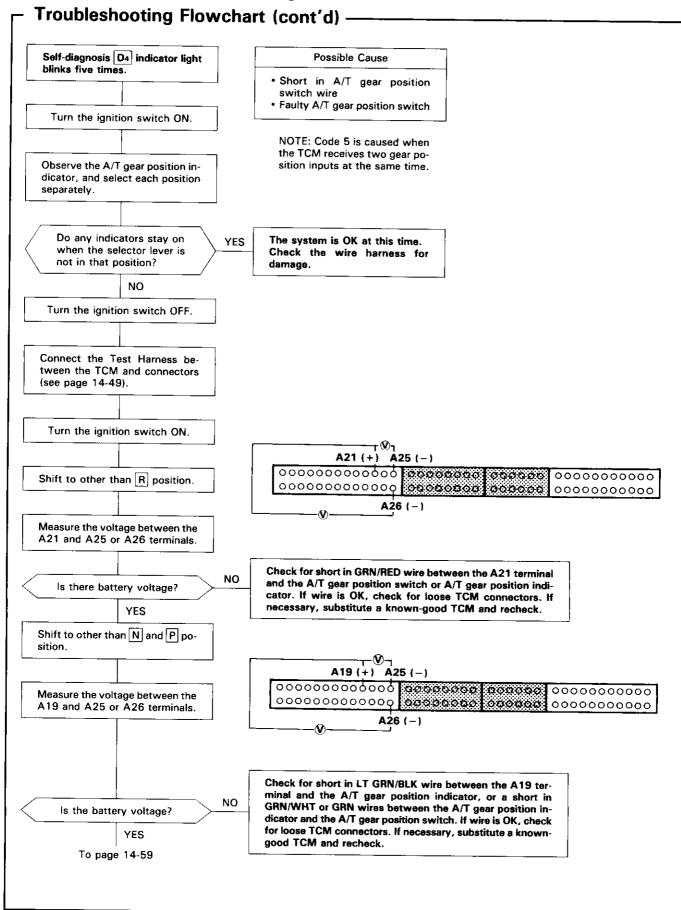




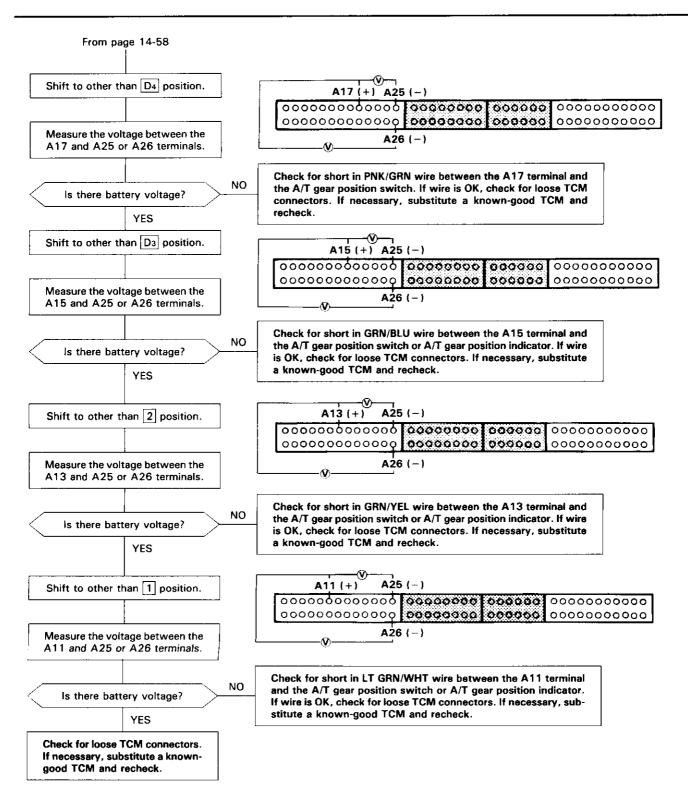


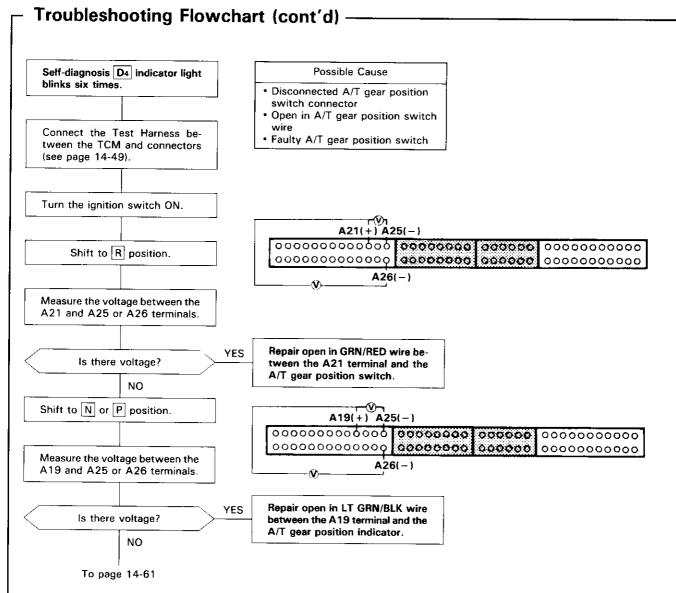




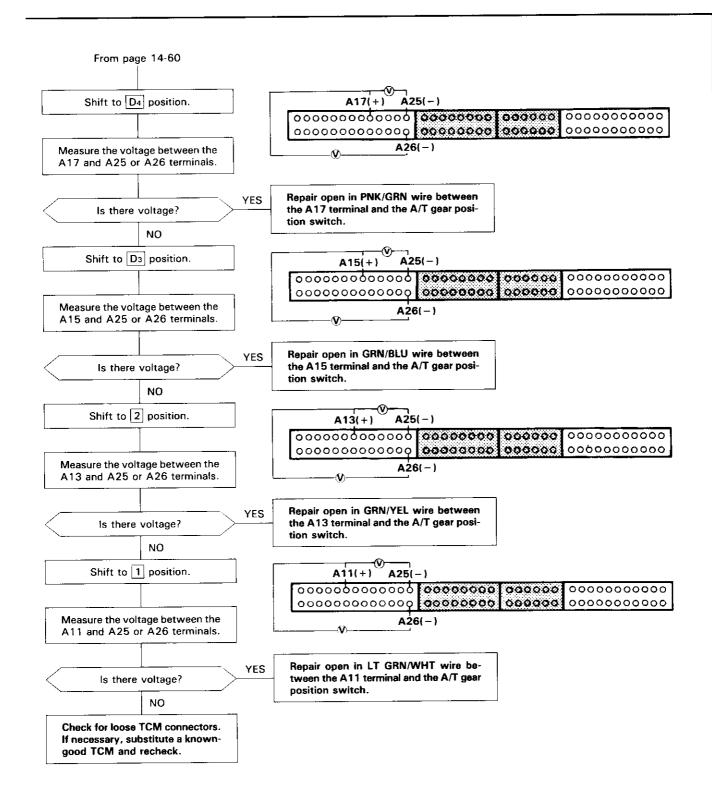


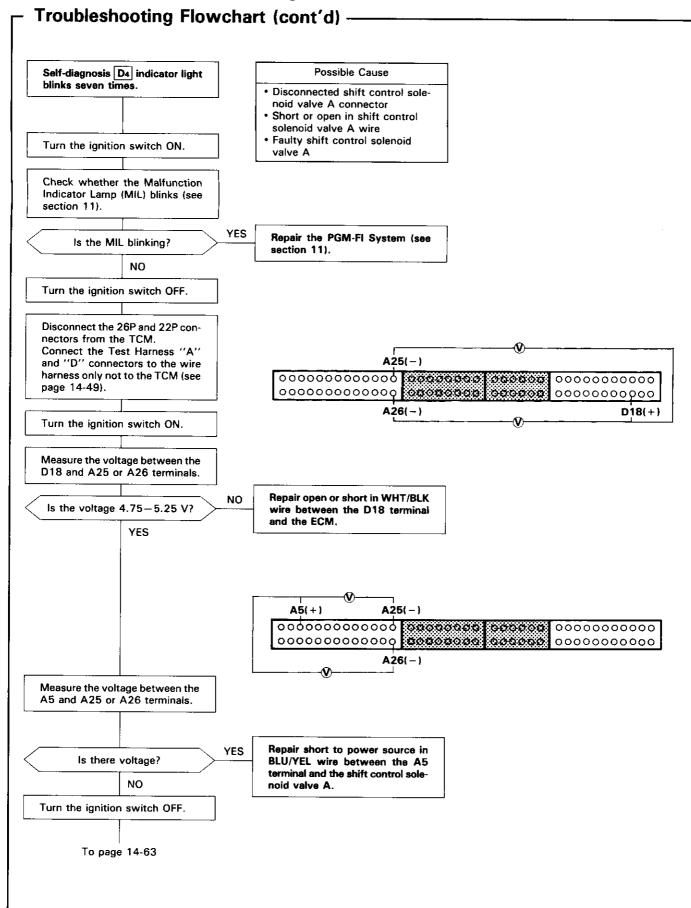




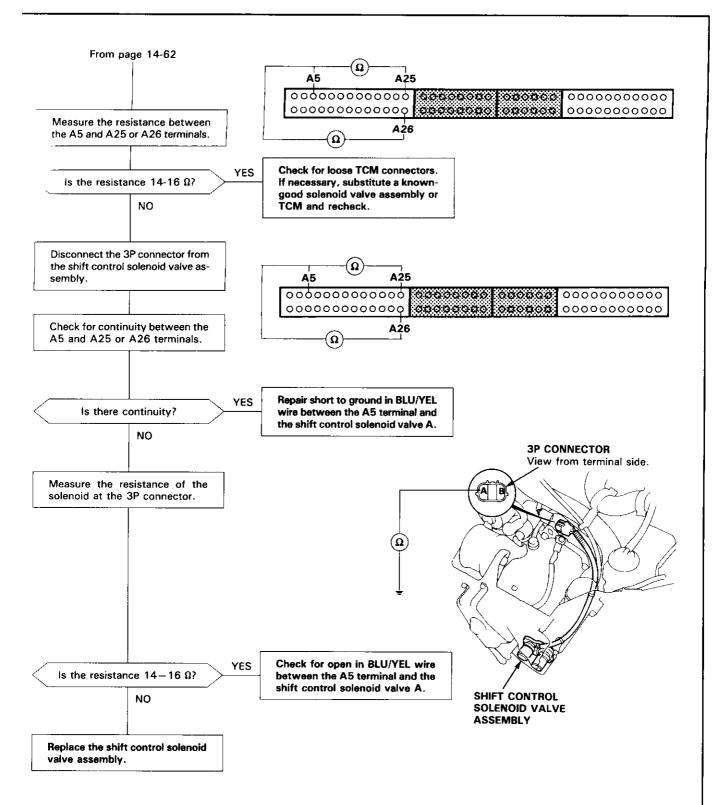


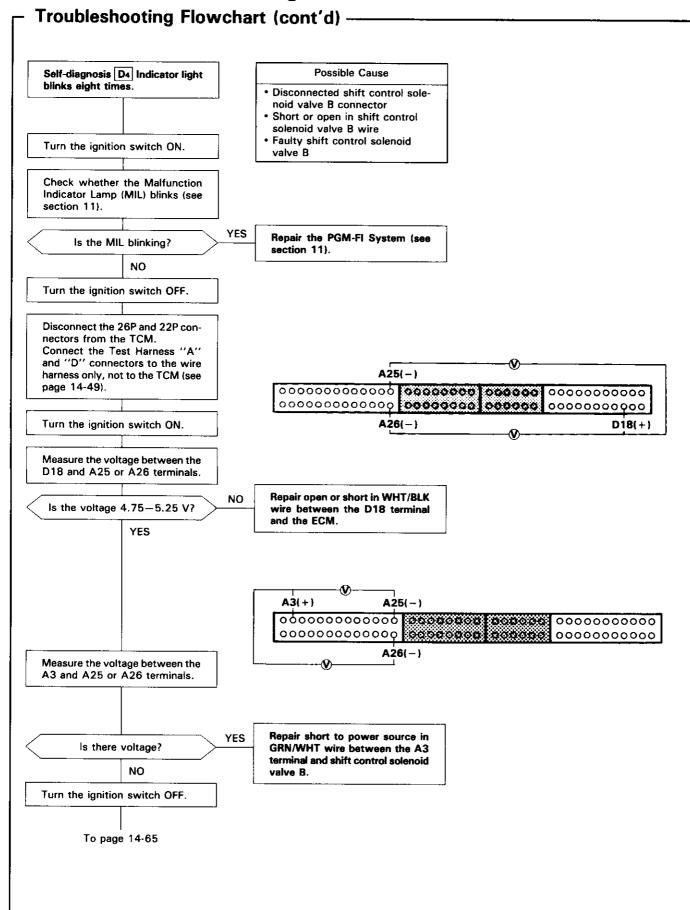




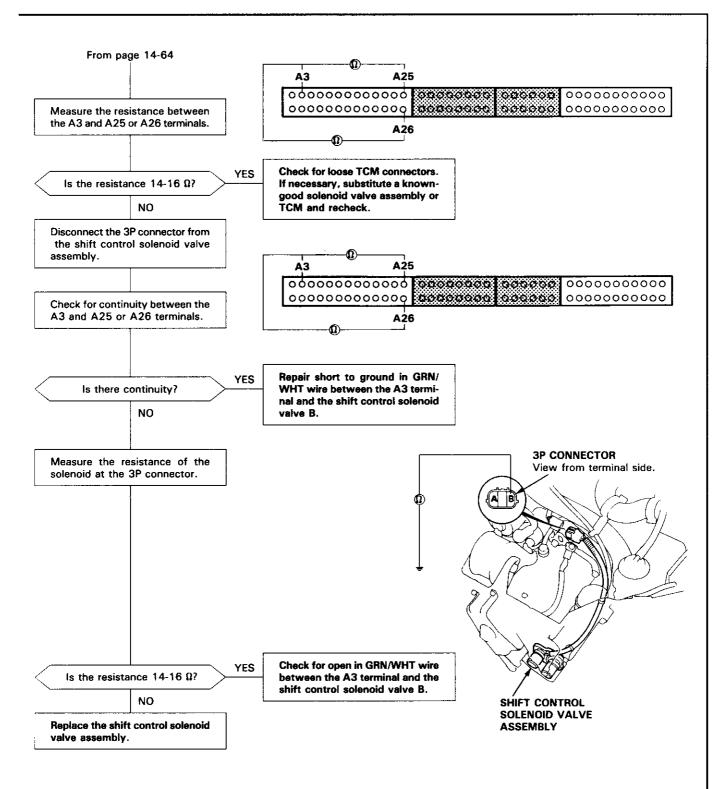


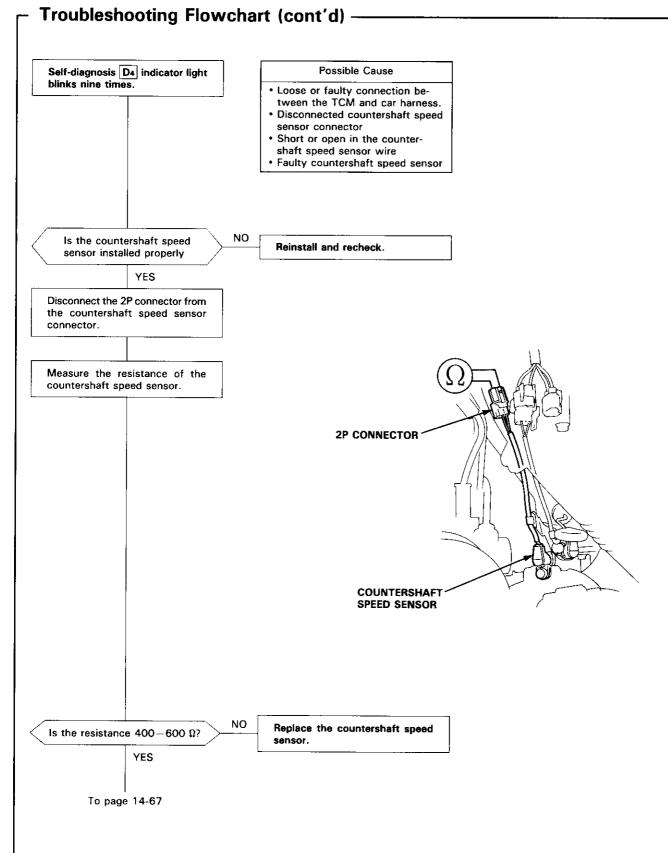




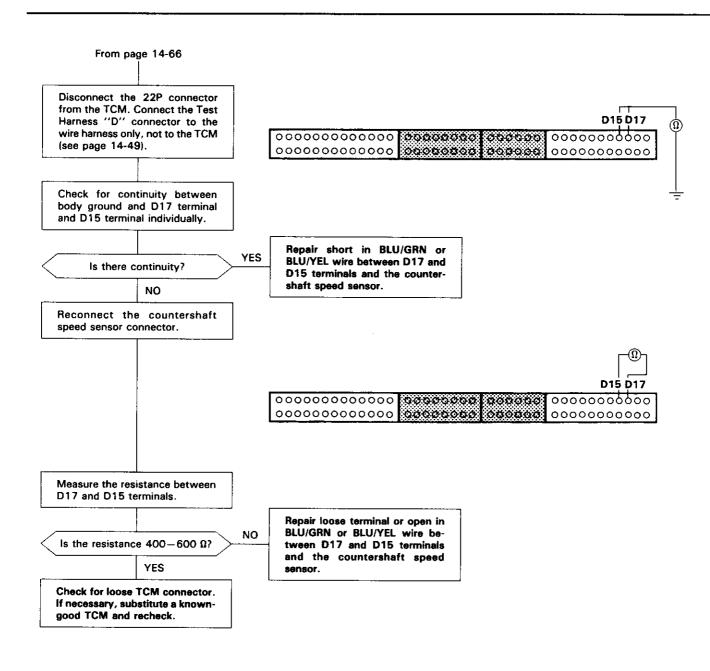


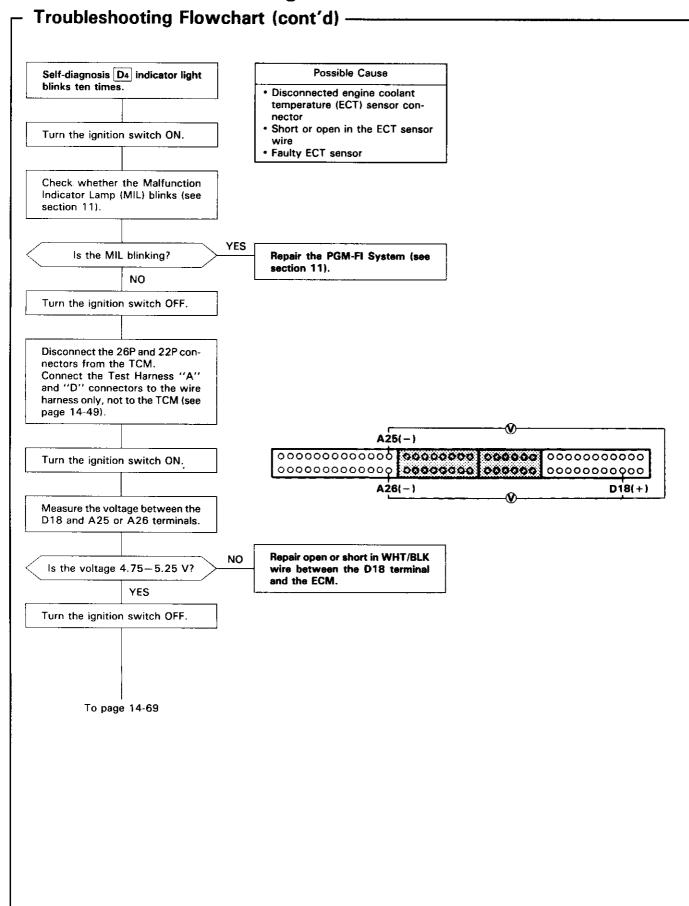




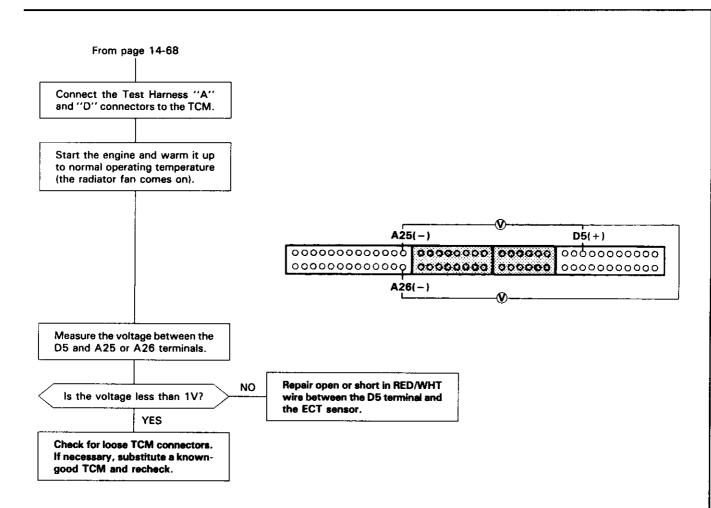






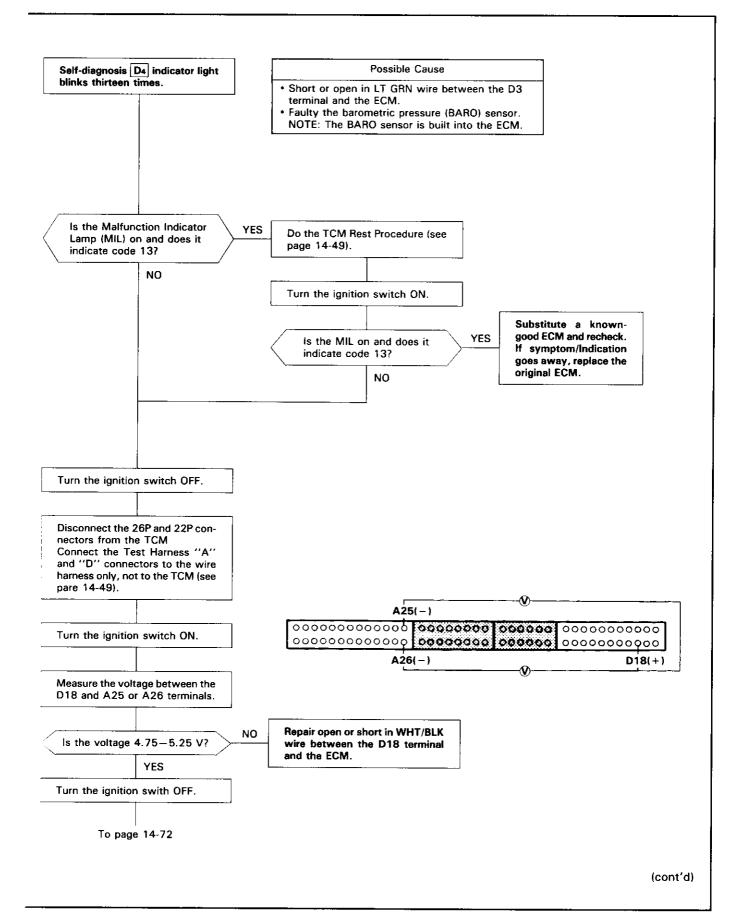


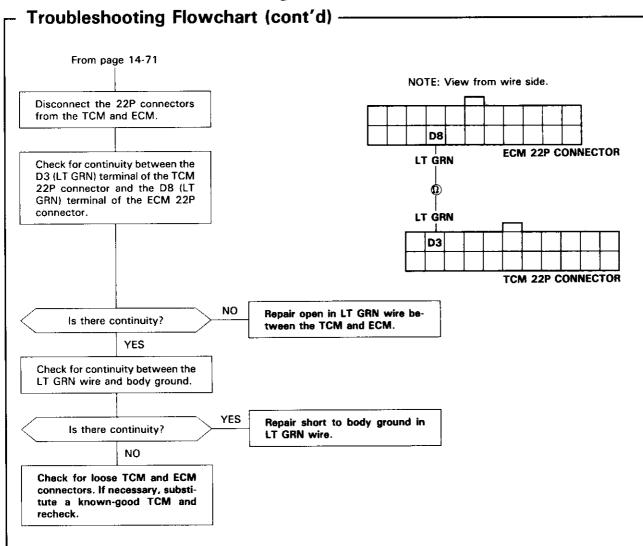




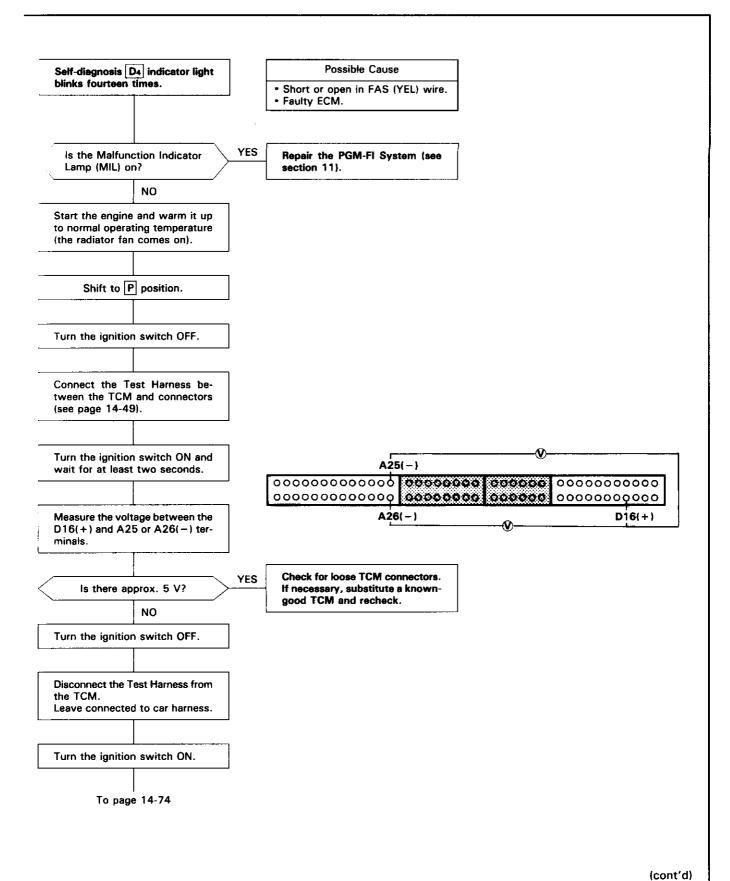
Troubleshooting Flowchart (cont'd) -Self-diagnosis D4 indicator light Possible Cause blinks eleven times. · Disconnected ignition coil con-· Short or open in ignition coil wire · Faulty ignition coil Disconnect the 26P connector from the TCM. (+) Turn the ignition switch ON. BLU A9 BRN/BLK -Measure the voltage between the BRN/BLK ~ A9 (BLU) and A25 (BRN/BLK) or A26 (BRN/BLK) terminals. NOTE: View from wire side. NO Is there battery voltage? Repair open or short in BLU wire between the A9 terminal and the YES ignition coil. Check for loose TCM connectors. If necessary, substitute a knowngood TCM and recheck.

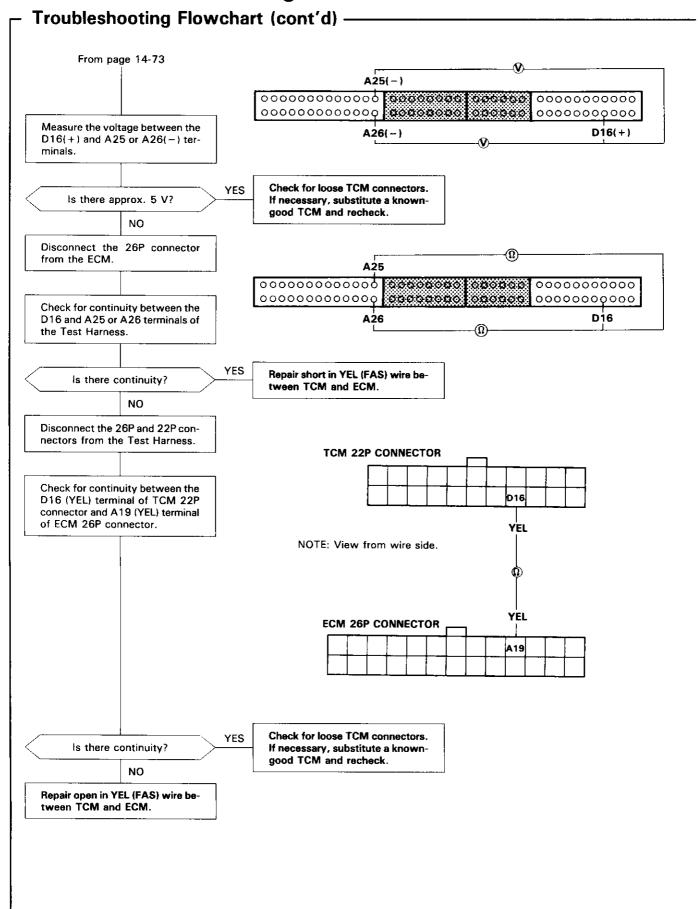




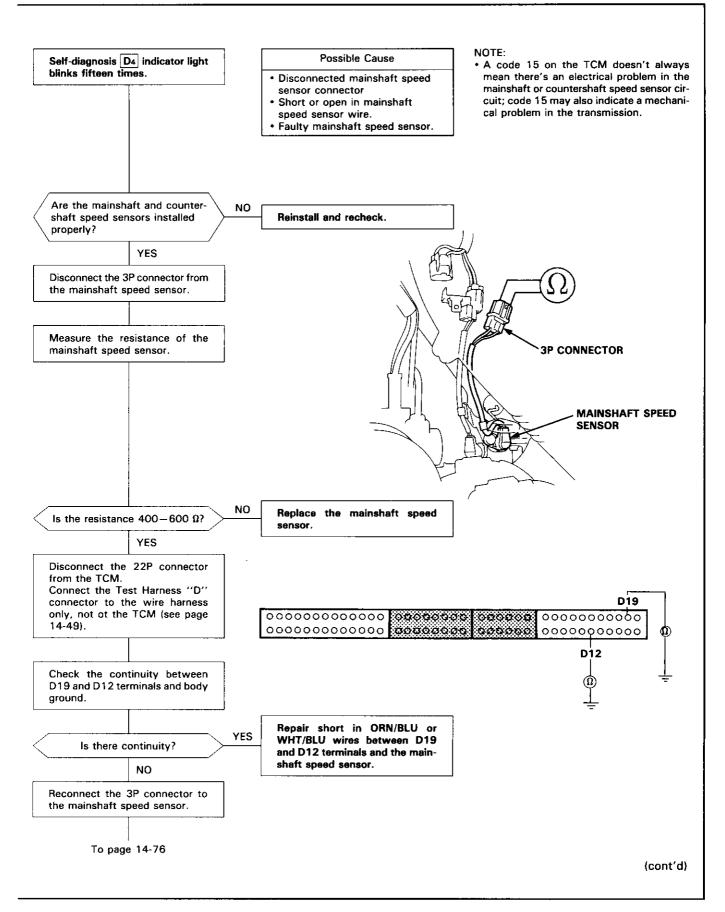


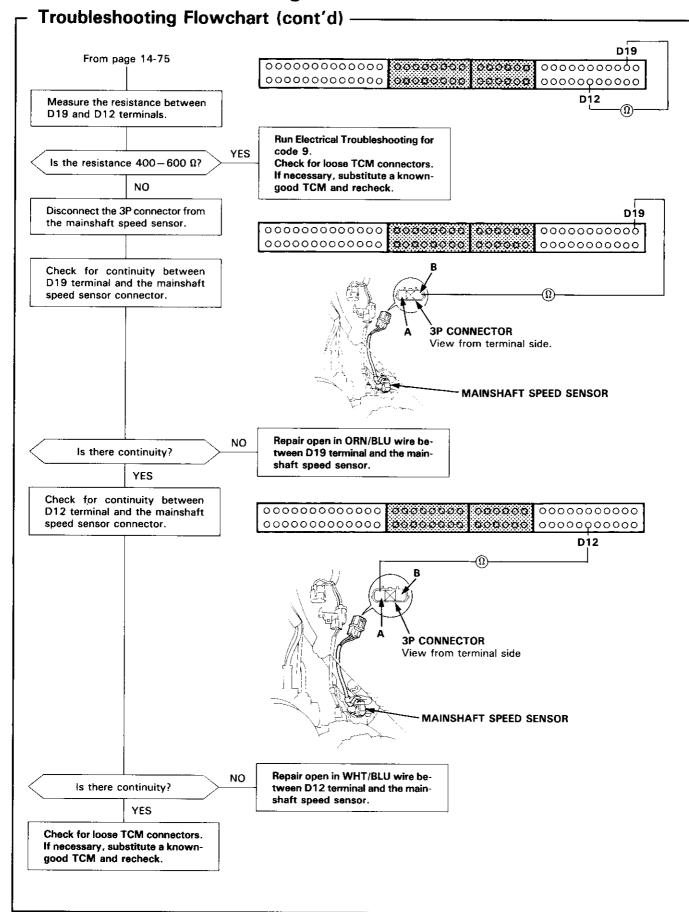




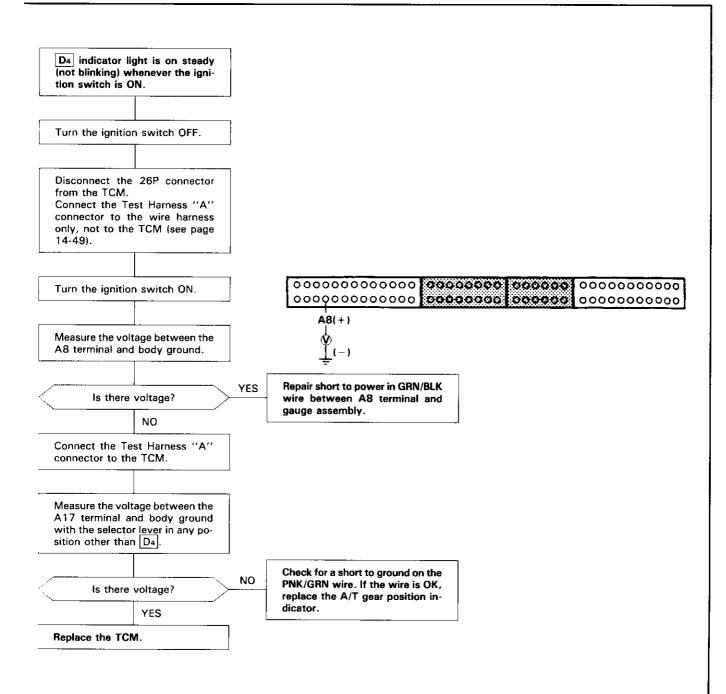




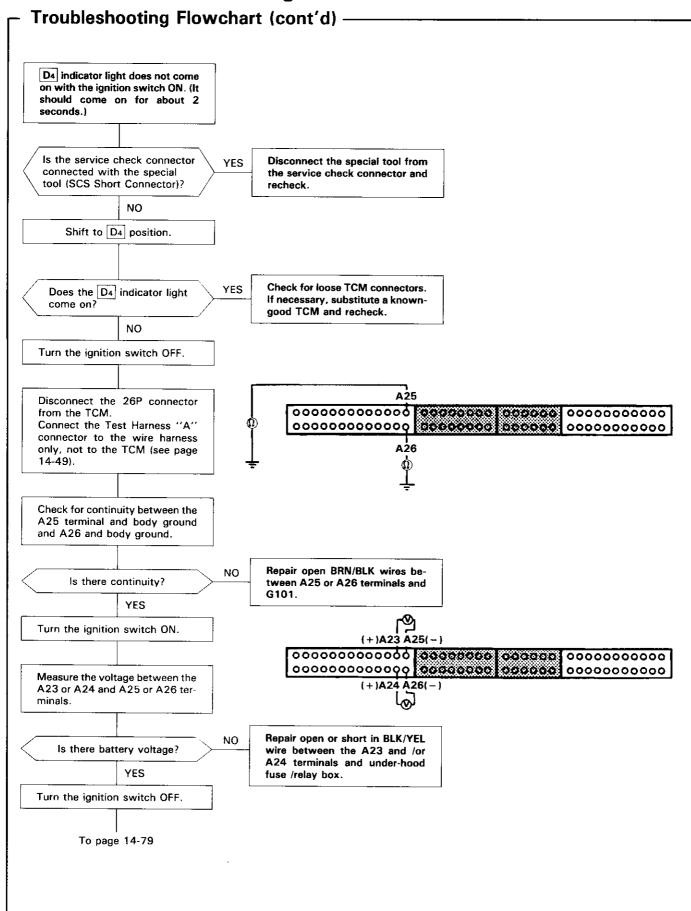




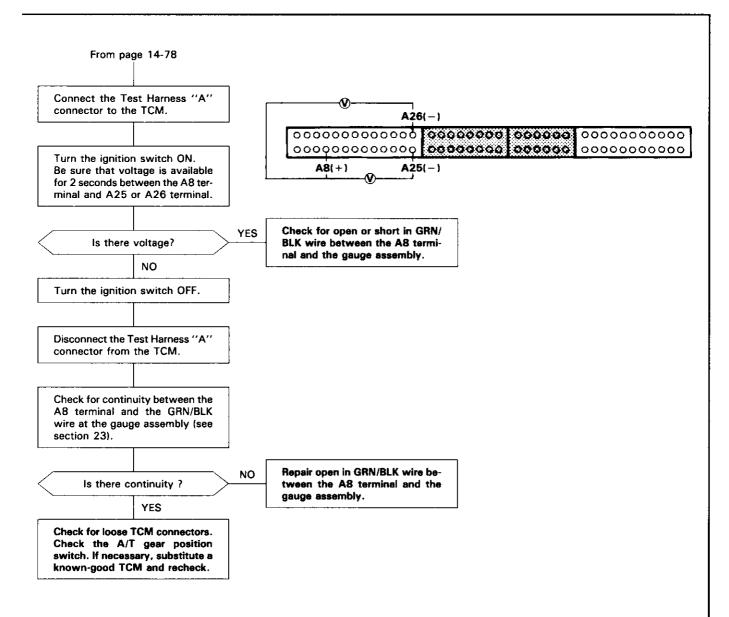




Electrical Troubleshooting

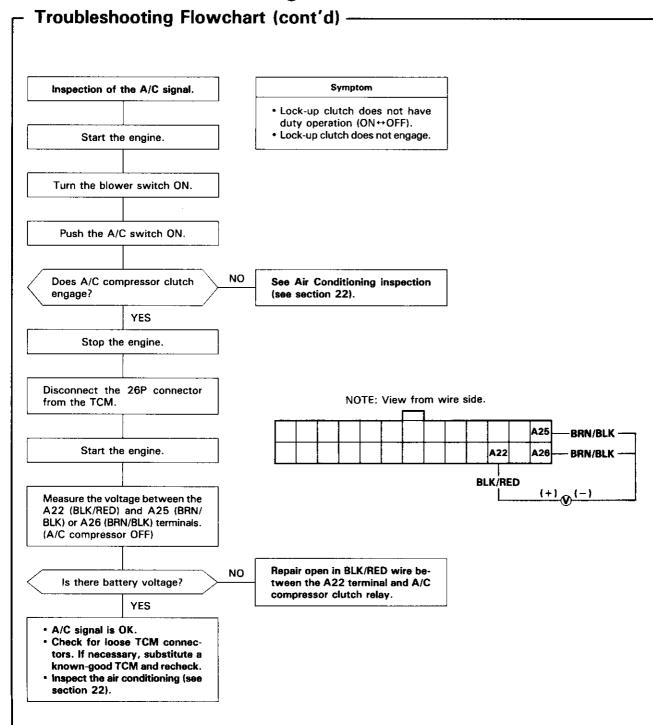




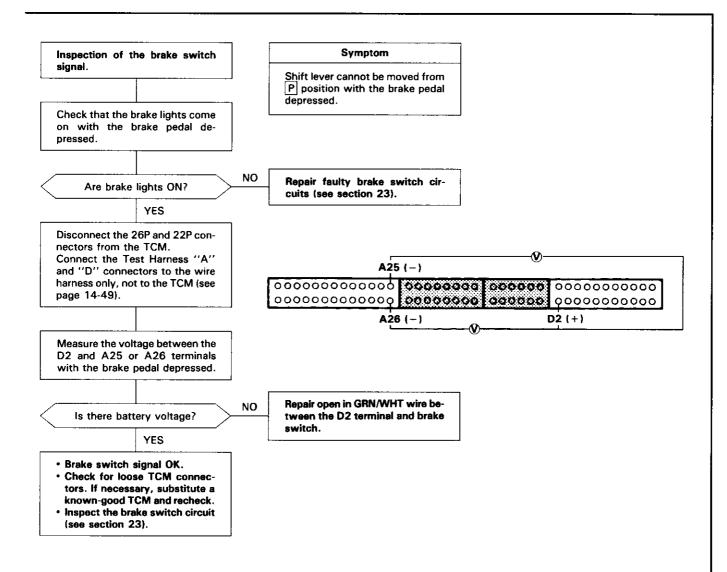


(cont'd)

Electrical Troubleshooting







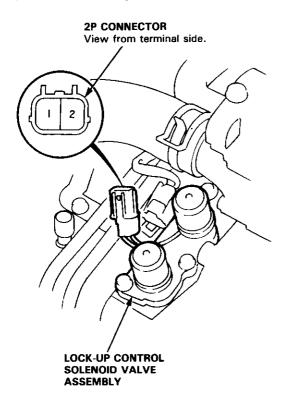
Lock-up Control Solenoid Valve A/B

- Test -

NOTE: Lock-up control solenoid valves A and B must be removed/replaced as an assembly.

- Disconnect 2P connector from the lock-up control solenoid valve A/B.
- Measure the resistance between the No. 1 terminal (solenoid valve A) of the lock-up control solenoid valve connector and body ground, and between the No. 2 terminal (solenoid valve B) and body ground.

STANDARD: $14-16 \Omega$



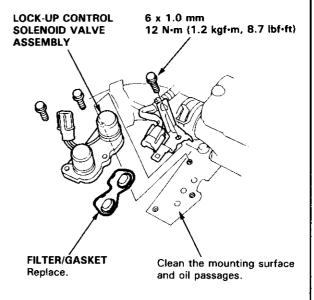
- Replace the lock-up control solenoid valve assembly if the resistance is out of specification.
- 4. If the resistance is within the standard, connect the No. 1 terminal of the lock-up control solenoid valve connector to the battery positive terminal. A clicking sound should be heard. Connect the No. 2 terminal to the battery positive terminal. A clicking sound should be heard. Replace the lock-up control solenoid valve assembly if no clicking sound is heard.

- Replacement -

 Remove the mounting bolts and lock-up control solenoid valve assembly.

NOTE: Be sure to remove or replace the lock-up control solenoid valves A and B as an assembly.

Check the lock-up control solenoid valve oil passages for dust or dirt, and replace as an assembly, if necessary.



- Clean the mounting surface and oil passages of the lock-up control solenoid valve assembly, and install a new filter/gasket.
- Check the connector for rust, dirt or oil and reconnect it securely.

Shift Control Solenoid Valve A/B

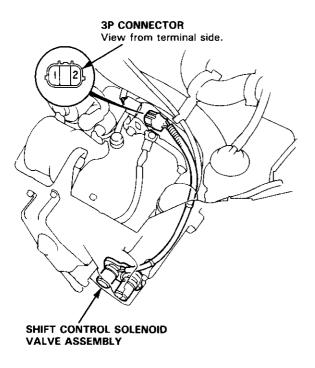


Test

NOTE: Shift control solenoid valves A and B must be removed/replaced as an assembly.

- Disconnect 3P connector from the shift control solenoid valve A/B.
- Measure the resistance between the No. 1 terminal (solenoid valve A) of the shift control solenoid valve connector and body ground, and between the No. 2 terminal (solenoid valve B) and body ground.

STANDARD: 14-16 Ω



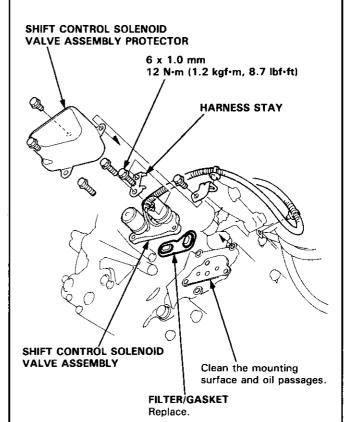
- 3. Replace the shift control solenoid valve assembly if the resistance is out of specification.
- 4. If the resistance is within the standard, connect the No. 1 terminal of the shift control solenoid valve connector to the battery positive terminal. A clicking sound should be heard. Connect the No. 2 terminal to the battery positive terminal. A clicking sound should be heard. Replace the shift control solenoid valve assembly if no clicking sound is heard.

Replacement -

- Remove the shift control solenoid valve assembly protector.
- Remove the mounting bolts and shift control solenoid valve assembly.

NOTE: Be sure to remove or replace the shift control solenoid valves A and B as an assembly.

Check the shift control solenoid valve oil passages for dust or dirt, and replace as an assembly, if necessary.



- Clean the mounting surface and oil passages of the shift control solenoid valve assembly, and install a new filter/gasket.
- 5. Check the connector for rust, dirt or oil, and reconnect it securely.

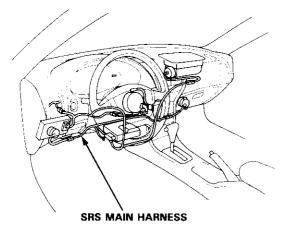
Transmission Control Module

Replacement -

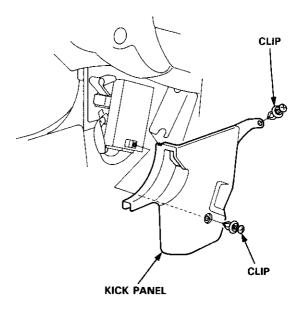
 The Transmission Control Module (TCM) is located below the dashboard, behind the left side kick panel on the driver's side.

CAUTION:

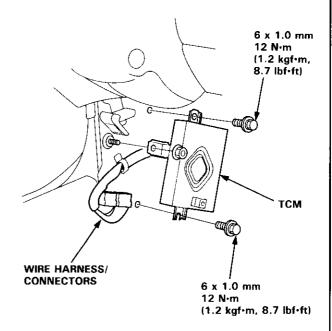
- All SRS electrical wiring harnesses are covered with yellow insulation.
- Before disconnecting any part of the SRS wire harness, connect the short connectors (see page 23-70).
- Replace the entire affected SRS harness assembly if it has an open circuit or damaged wiring.



Remove two clips securing the kick panel then remove it.



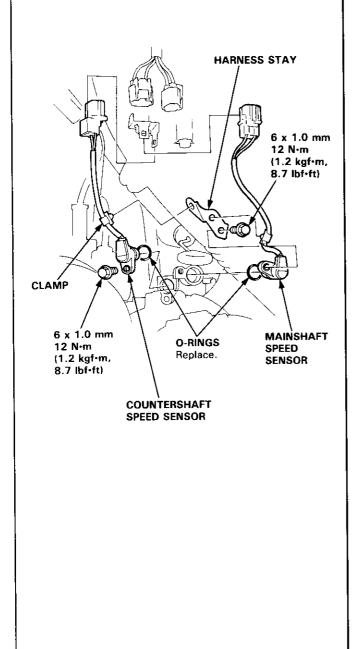
2. Disconnect the connectors and remove the TCM.



Mainshaft/Countershaft Speed Sensors

Replacement -

- Disconnect the speed sensor connectors, then remove the harness clamp on the countershaft speed sensor harness from the harness stay.
- 2. Remove the 6 mm bolts securing the mainshaft and countershaft speed sensors from the transmission housing.
- Remove the mainshaft and countershaft speed sensors.
- 4. Install the mainshaft and countershaft speed sensors in the reverse order of the removal.





Symptom-to-Component Chart

Hydraulic System —

| SYMPTOM | Check these items on the PROBABLE CAUSE List | Check these items on the NOTES List | |
|---|--|-------------------------------------|--|
| Engine runs, but car does not move in any gear. | 1, 6, 7, 16 | K, L, R, S | |
| Car moves in \boxed{R} and $\boxed{2}$, but not in $\boxed{D_3}$, $\boxed{D_4}$ or $\boxed{1}$ position. | 8, 29, 44, 48 | С, М, О | |
| Car moves in D ₃ , D ₄ , 1, R, but not in 2 position. | 9, 30, 49 | C, L | |
| Car moves in D ₃ , D ₄ , 2, 1, but not in R position. | 1, 11, 22, 34, 38, 39, 40 | C, L, Q | |
| Car moves in N position. | 1, 8, 9, 10, 11, 46, 47 | C, D | |
| Excessive idle vibration. | 5, 17 | B, K, L | |
| Slips in all gears. | 6, 7, 16 | C, L | |
| No engine braking in 1 position. | 12 | C, D, L | |
| Slips in 1st gear. | 8, 29, 44, 48 | C, N, O | |
| Slips in 2nd gear. | 9, 20, 23, 30, 49 | C, L | |
| Slips in 3rd gear. | 10, 21, 23, 31, 49 | C, L | |
| Slips in 4th gear. | 11, 23, 32, 44 | C, L, N | |
| Slips in reverse gear. | 11, 32, 34, 44 | C, N | |
| Flares on 1-2 upshift. | 3, 15, 23 | E, L, V | |
| Flares on 2-3 upshift. | 3, 15, 23, 24, 49 | E, L, V | |
| Flares on 3-4 upshift. | 3, 15, 23, 25, 49 | E, L, N, V | |
| No upshift; transmission stays in 1st gear. | 14, 19, 23 | G, L | |
| No downshift to 1st gear. | 12, 19 | G, L | |
| Late upshift. | 14 | L, V | |
| Erratic shifting. | 2, 14, 26 | V | |
| Harsh shift (up and down shifting). | 2, 4, 15, 23, 24, 25, 26, 27, 47 | A, E, H, I, L, V | |
| Harsh shift (1-2). | 2, 9, 15, 23 | C, D, E, V | |
| Harsh shift (2-3). | 2, 10, 15, 23, 24 | C, D, E, H, L, V | |
| Harsh shift (3-4). | 2, 11, 15, 23, 25 | C, D, E, I, L, V | |
| Harsh kick-down shifts. | 2, 15, 23, 26, 27, 28 | E, L, Q, V | |
| Harsh kick-down shift (2-1). | 48 | 0 | |
| Harsh downshift at closed throttle. | 2, 15, 23 | E, T | |
| Harsh shift when manually shifting to 1 position. | 33 | L | |
| Axle(s) slips out of transmission on turns. | 43, 50 | L, P, Q | |
| Axle(s) stuck in transmission. | 43 | L, Q | |
| Ratcheting noise when shifting into R position. | 6, 7, 38, 39, 40 | K, L, Q | |
| Loud popping noise when taking off in R position. | 38, 39, 40 | L, Q | |
| Ratcheting noise when shifting from R to P position or from R to N position. | 38, 39, 40, 45 | L, Q | |
| Noise from transmission in all selector lever positions. | 6, 17 | K, L, Q | |
| Noise from transmission only when wheels are rolling. | 39, 42 | L, Q | |
| Gear whine, rpm related (pitch changes with shifts). | 8, 13, 41 | K, L, Q | |
| Gear whine, speed related (pitch changes with speed). | 38, 42 | L, Q | |
| Transmission will not shift into 4th gear in D4 position | 1, 21, 28, 32 | L | |
| Lock-up clutch does not lock-up smoothly. | 17, 36, 37 | L | |
| Lock-up clutch does not operate properly. | 2, 3, 14, 15, 18, 35, 36, 37 | E, L, V | |
| Transmission has multitude of problems shifting. At disassembly, large particles of metal are found on magnet. | 43 | L, Q | |



| | PROBABLE CAUSE |
|-----|--|
| 1. | Shift cable broken/out of adjustment. |
| 2. | Throttle cable too short. |
| 3. | Throttle cable too long. |
| 4. | Wrong type ATF. |
| 5. | Idle rpm too low/high. |
| 6. | Oil pump worn or binding. |
| 7. | Pressure regulator stuck. |
| 8. | 1st clutch defective. |
| 9. | 2nd clutch defective. |
| 10. | 3rd clutch defective. |
| 11. | 4th clutch defective. |
| 12. | 1st-hold clutch defective. |
| 13. | Mainshaft worn/damaged. |
| 14. | Modulator valve stuck. |
| 15. | Throttle valve B stuck. |
| 16. | ATF strainer clogged. |
| 17. | Torque converter defective. |
| 18. | Torque converter check valve stuck. |
| 19. | 1-2 shift valve stuck. |
| 20. | 2—3 shift valve stuck. |
| 21. | 3-4 shift valve stuck. |
| 22. | Servo control valve stuck. |
| 23. | Clutch pressure control (CPC) valve stuck. |
| 24. | 2—3 orifice control valve stuck. |
| 25. | Orifice control valve stuck. |
| 26. | 3-2 kick-down valve stuck. |
| 27. | 4-3 kick-down valve stuck. |
| 28. | 4th exhaust valve stuck. |
| 29. | 1st accumulator defective. |
| 30. | 2nd accumulator defective. |
| 31. | 3rd accumulator defective. |
| 32. | 4th accumulator defective. |
| 33. | 1st-hold accumulator defective. |
| 34. | Servo valve stuck. |
| 35. | Lock-up timing B valve stuck. |
| 36. | Lock-up shift valve stuck. |
| 37. | Lock-up control valve stuck. |
| 38. | Shift fork bent. |
| 39. | Reverse gears worn/damaged (3 gears). |
| 40. | Reverse selector worn. |
| 41. | 3rd gears worn/damaged (2 gears). |
| 42. | Final gears worn/damaged (2 gears). |
| 43. | Differential pinion shaft worn. |
| 44. | Feedpipe O-ring broken. |
| 45. | 4th gears worn/damaged (2 gears). |
| 46. | Gear clearance incorrect. |
| 47. | Clutch clearance incorrect. |
| 48. | One-way (sprag) clutch defective. |
| 49. | Sealing rings/guide worn. |
| | Axle-inboard joint clip missing. |

(cont'd)

Symptom-to-Component Chart

- Hydraulic System (cont'd) –

| The following symptoms can be caused by improper repair or assembly | Check these items on the PROBABLE CAUSE DUE TO IMPROPER REPAIR List | Items on the NOTES List |
|---|---|----------------------------|
| Car creeps in N position. | R1, R2 | |
| Car does not move in D ₃ or D ₄ position. | R4 | |
| Transmission locks up in R position. | R3, R12 | |
| Excessive drag in transmission. | R6 | K, R |
| Excessive vibration, rpm related. | R7 | |
| Noise with wheels moving only | R5 | |
| Main seal pops out. | R8 | S |
| Various shifting problems. | R9, R10 | |
| Harsh upshifts. | R11 | |

| | PROBABLE CAUSE DUE TO IMPROPER REPAIR |
|------|--|
| R1. | Improper clutch clearance. |
| R2. | Improper gear clearance. |
| R3. | Parking brake lever installed upside down. |
| R4. | One-way (sprag) clutch installed upside down. |
| R5. | Reverse selector hub installed upside down. |
| R6. | Oil pump binding. |
| R7. | Torque converter not fully seated in oil pump. |
| R8. | Main seal improperly installed. |
| R9. | Springs improperly installed. |
| R10. | Valves improperly installed. |
| R11. | Ball check valves not installed. |
| R12. | Shift fork bolt not installed. |



| | NOTES |
|------------|--|
| Α. | See flushing procedure, page 14-168 and 169. |
| В. | Set idle rpm in gear to specified idle speed. If still no good, adjust motor mounts as outlined in engine section of service manual. |
| C. | If the large clutch piston O-ring is broken, inspect the piston groove for rough machining. |
| D. | If the clutch pack is seized or is excessively worn, inspect the other clutches for wear, and check the orifice control valves and throttle valves for free movement. |
| E. | If throttle valve B is stuck, inspect the clutches for wear. |
| G. | If the $1-2$ shift valve is stuck closed, the transmission will not upshift. If stuck open, the transmission has no 1st gear. |
| H. | If the 2-3 orifice control valve is stuck, inspect the 2nd and 3rd clutch packs for wear. |
| 1. | If the orifice control valve is stuck, inspect the 3rd and 4th clutch packs for wear. |
| J. | If the clutch pressure control valve is stuck closed, the transmission will not shift out of 1st gear |
| K. | Improper alignment or main valve body and torque converter housing may cause oil pump seizure. The symptoms are mostly an rpm-related ticking noise or a high-pitched squeak. |
| L. | If the ATF strainer is clogged with particles of steel or aluminum, inspect the oil pump and differential pinion shaft. If both are OK and no cause for the contamination is found, replace the torque converted |
| М. | If the 1st clutch feedpipe guide in the right side cover is scored by the mainshaft, inspect the ball bearing for excessive movement in the transmission housing. If OK, replace the right side cover as it is dented. The O-ring under the guide is probably worn. |
| N. | Replace the mainshaft if the bushing for the 4th feedpipe is loose or damaged. If the 4th feedpipe is damaged or out of round, replace the right side cover. Replace the sub-shaft if the bushing for the 1st-hold feedpipe is loose or damaged. If the 1st-hold feedpipe is damaged or out of round, replace it. Replace the mainshaft if the bushing for the 1st feedpipe is loose or damaged. If the 1st feedpipe is damaged or out of round, replace it. |
| 0. | A worn or damaged sprag clutch is mostly a result of shifting the transmission in D ₃ or D ₄ position while the wheels rotate in reverse, such as rocking the car in snow. |
| P. | Inspect the frame for collision damage. |
| Q . | Inspect for damage or wear: 1. Reverse selector gear teeth chamfers. 2. Engagement teeth chamfers of countershaft 4th and reverse gear. 3. Shift fork for scuff marks in center. 4. Differential pinion shaft for wear under pinion gears. 5. Bottom of 3rd clutch for swirl marks. Replace items 1, 2, 3 and 4 if worn or damaged. If transmission makes clicking, grinding or whirrin noise, also replace mainshaft 4th gear and reverse idler gear and countershaft 4th gear in addition 1, 2, 3 or 4. If differential pinion shaft is worn, overhaul differential assembly, and replace ATF strainer, and thorough clean transmission, flush torque converter, cooler and lines. If bottom of 3rd clutch is swirled and transmission makes gear noise, replace the countershaft and fin driven gear. |
| R. | Be very careful not to damage the torque converter housing when replacing the main ball bearing. You may also damage the oil pump when you torque down the main valve body. This will result in oil pum seizure if not detected. Use proper tools. |
| S. | Install the main seal flush with the torque converter housing. If you push it into the torque convert housing until it bottoms out, it will block the oil return passage and result in damage. |
| Т. | Harsh downshifts when coasting to a stop with zero throttle may be caused by a bent-in throttle value retainer/cam stopper. Throttle cable adjustment may clear this problem. |
| V. | Throttle cable adjustment is essential for proper operation of the transmission. Not only does it affe the shift points if misadjusted, but also the shift quality and lock-up clutch operation. A cable adjusted too long will result in throttle pressure being too low for the amount of engine torquinput into the transmission and may cause clutch slippage. A cable adjusted too short will result in to high throttle pressure which may cause harsh shifts, erratic shifts and torque converter hunting. |

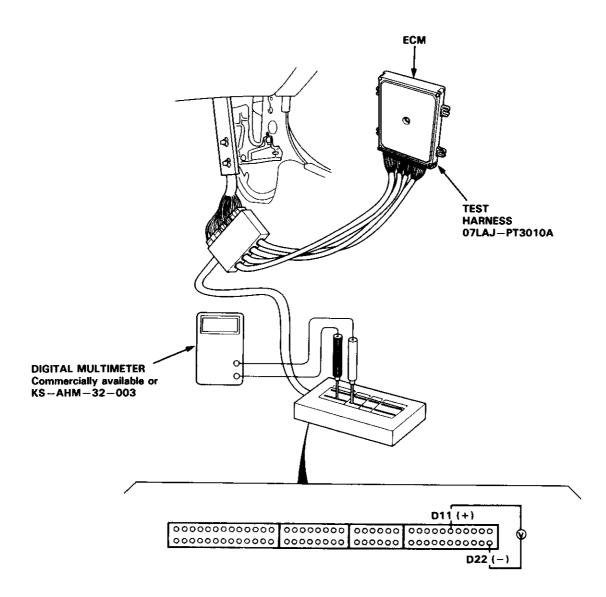
Road Test

NOTE: Warm up the engine to operating temperature (the cooling fan comes on).

- Apply parking brake and block the wheels. Start the engine, them move the selector lever to D₄ position while depressing the brake pedal. Depress the accelerator pedal, and release it suddenly. The engine should not stall.
- Repeat same test in D₃ position.
- 3. Shift the selector lever to D₄ position, and check that the shift points occur at approximate speeds shown. Also check for abnormal noise and clutch slippage.

NOTE: Throttle position sensor voltage represents the throttle opening.

- -1. Connect the Test Harness between the ECM and connector (see section 11).
- -2. Set the digital multimeter to check voltage between D11 (+) terminal and D22 (-) terminal for the throttle position sensor.





D₄ or D₃ Position

Upshift

| Throttle Opening | Unit of speed | 1st→2nd | 2nd → 3rd | 3rd→4th |
|--------------------------|---------------|-----------|------------|-------------|
| Throttle position sensor | mph | 11-12 | 20-22 | 27-30 |
| voltage: 0.75 V | Km/h | 17.0-19.0 | 32.5-35.5 | 43.5-48.5 |
| Throttle position sensor | mph | 21-23 | 35-39 | 55-59 |
| voltage: 2.5 V | Km/h | 33.5-36.5 | 57.0-63.0 | 89.0-95.0 |
| Full-opened throttle | mph | 30-34 | 62-65 | 98-101 |
| • | Km/h | 49.0-55.0 | 99.0-105.0 | 157.0-163.0 |

Downshift

| Throttle Opening | Unit of speed | 4th→3rd | 3rd→2nd | 2nd → 1st |
|----------------------|---------------|-------------|-------------------|-----------|
| Full-closed throttle | mph | 18-21 | 6-9 (3rd→1st) | |
| | Km/h | 29.0-33.0 | 10-14 (3rd → 1st) | |
| Full-opened throttle | mph | 85-89 | 54-58 | 23-27 |
| · | Km/h | 137.0-143.0 | 87.0-93.0 | 37.0-43.0 |

Lock-up

| | | D ₄ P | D ₄ Position | | |
|--------------------------|---------------|---|-------------------------|--|--|
| Throttle Opening | Unit of speed | Lock-up control solenoid valve A ON Valve B ON 13-16 17-20 | | | |
| Throttle position sensor | mph | 13-16 | 17-20 | | |
| voltage: 2.5 V | km/h | 21.0-25.0 | 28.0-32.0 | | |
| Full-opened throttle | mph | 92-96 | 92-96 | | |
| · | km/h | 148.0-154.0 | 148.0-154.0 | | |

| | | D ₃ Position | | |
|--------------------------|---------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|--|
| Throttle Opening | Unit of speed | Lock-up control solenoid valve A ON | Lock-up control solenoid valve B ON | |
| Throttle position sensor | mph | 61-63 | 61-63 | |
| voltage: 1.0 V | km/h | 98-102 | 98-102 | |
| Full-opened throttle | mph | 85-89 | 85-89 | |
| , | km/h | 137-143 | 137-143 | |

4. Accelerate to about 35 mph (57 km/h) so the transmission is in 4th, then shift from D₄ position to 2 position. The car should immediately begin slowing down from engine braking.

CAUTION: Do not shift from $\boxed{D_4}$ or $\boxed{D_3}$ position to $\boxed{2}$ or $\boxed{1}$ position at speeds over 100 mph (160 km/h); you may damage the transmission.

- 5. Check for abnormal noise and clutch slippage in the following positions.
 - 1 (1st Gear) Position
 - -1. Accelerate from a stop at full throttle. Check that there is no abnormal noise or clutch slippage.
 - -2. Upshifts should not occur with the selector in this position.
 - 2 (2nd Gear) Position.
 - $\overline{-1}$. Accelerate from a stop at full throttle. Check that there is no abnormal noise or clutch slippage.
 - -2. Upshifts and downshifts should not occur with the selector in this position.
 - R (Reverse) Position

Accelerate from a stop at full throttle, and check for abnormal noise and clutch slippage.

6. Test in P (Parking) Position
Park car on slope (approx. 16°), apply the parking brake, and shift into P position. Release the brake; the car should not move.

Stall Speed

Test -

CAUTION:

- To prevent transmission damage, do not test stall speed for more than 10 seconds at a time.
- Do not shift the lever while raising the engine speed.
- Be sure to remove the pressure gauge before testing stall speed.
- 1. Engage the parking brake and block all four wheels.
- 2. Connect the tachometer, and start the engine.
- 3. Make sure the A/C switch is OFF.
- 4. After the engine has warmed up to normal operating temperature (the cooling fan comes on), shift into 2 position.
- 5. Fully depress the brake pedal and accelerator for 6 to 8 seconds, and note engine speed.
- 6. Allow 2 minutes for cooling, then repeat the test in $\boxed{1}$, $\boxed{D_4}$ and \boxed{R} positions.

NOTE:

- Stall speed tests should be used for diagnostic purposes only.
- Stall speed should be the same in D₄, 2, 1 and R positions.

Stall Speed RPM: rpm Specification: 2,400 rpm

Service Limit: 2,200-2,600 rpm

| TROUBLE | PROBABLE CAUSE |
|---|--|
| Stall rpm high in D4, 2, 1 and R position | Low fluid level or oil pump output Clogged ATF strainer Pressure regulator valve stuck closed Slipping clutch |
| Stall rpm high in 1 position | Slippage of 1st clutch, 1st-hold clutch or 1st gear one-way clutch |
| Stall rpm high in 2 position | Slippage of 2nd clutch |
| Stall rpm high in D4 position | Slippage of 1st clutch, 1st gear one-way clutch |
| Stall rpm high in R position | Slippage of 4th clutch |
| Stall rpm low in D ₄ , 2, 1 and R position | Engine output low Torque converter one-way clutch slipping |

Fluid Level

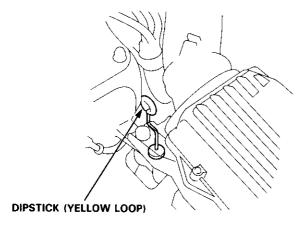
Checking/Changing



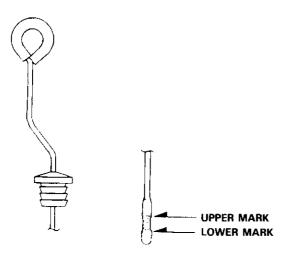
Checking

NOTE: Check the fluid level with the engine at normal operating temperature (the cooling fan comes on).

- 1. Park the car on level ground. Shut off the engine.
- 2. Remove the dipstick (yellow loop) from the transmission, and wipe it with a clean cloth.
- 3. Insert the dipstick into the transmission.



4. Remove the dipstick and check the fluid level. It should be between the upper and lower marks.



- 5. If the level is below the lower mark, add fluid into the tube to bring it to the upper mark. Use Honda Premium Formula Automatic Transmission Fluid or an equivalent DEXRON® II Automatic Transmission Fluid (ATF) only.
- 6. Insert the dipstick back into the transmission.

Changing

1. Bring the transmission up to operating temperature by driving the car. Park the car on level ground, turn the engine off, then remove drain plug.

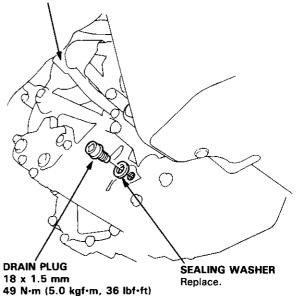
NOTE: If a cooler flusher is to be used, see page 14-168 and 169.

2. Reinstall the drain plug with a new sealing washer, then refill the transmission to the upper mark on the dipstick.

Automatic Transmission Fluid Capacity:

2.7 ℓ (2.9 US qt, 2.4 Imp qt) at change 5.9 ℓ (6.2 US qt, 5.2 Imp qt) at overhaul

TRANSMISSION RIGHT SIDE COVER



Pressure Testing

A WARNING

- While testing, be careful of the rotating front wheels.
- Make sure lifts, jacks, and safety stands are placed properly (see section 1).

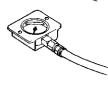
CAUTION: Before testing, be sure the transmission fluid is filled to the proper level.

- 1. Raise the car (see section 1).
- 2. Warm up the engine (the cooling fan comes on), then stop the engine and connect a tachometer.
- 3. Connect the oil pressure gauge to each inspection hole(s).

TORQUE: 18 N·m (1.8 kgf·m, 13 lbf·ft)

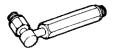
CAUTION: Connect the oil pressure gauge securely; be sure not to allow dust and other foreign particles to enter the inspection hole.

A/T OIL PRESSURE GAUGE SET W/PANEL 07406 – 0020400



A/T LOW PRESSURE GAUGE W/PANEL 07406-0070300

A/T OIL PRESSURE HOSE, 2210 mm 07MAJ—PY4011A (4 Required)



A/T OIL PRESSURE HOSE ADAPTER 07MAJ-PY40120 (4 Required)

NOTE: Use the A/T Oil Pressure Gauge Set (07406—0020003) or A/T Low Pressure Gauge (07406—0070000), and the oil pressure gauge hoses and adapters shown above.

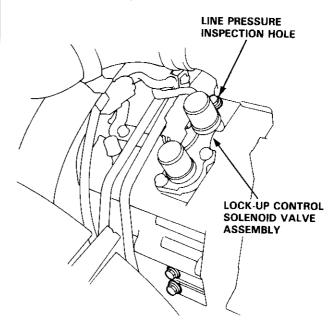
- Start the engine, and measure the respective pressure as follows.
 - Line Pressure
 - Clutch Pressure
 - Clutch Low/High Pressure
 - Throttle B Pressure
- Install a new washer and the sealing bolt in the inspection hole and tighten to the specified torque.

TORQUE: 18 N·m (1.8 kgf·m, 13 lbf·ft)

NOTE: Do not reuse old aluminum washers.

• Line Pressure Measurement

- Set the parking brake and block both rear wheels securely.
- -2. Run the engine at 2,000 rpm.
- -3. Shift the select lever to \boxed{N} or \boxed{P} position.
- 4. Measure line pressure.



| PRESSURE | SELECTOR | SYMPTOM | PROBABLE CAUSE | FLUID PRESSURE | |
|----------|----------|------------------------------|--|--|-----------------------------------|
| | POSITION | | I NOBABLE CAUSE | Standard | Service Limit |
| Line | N or P | No (or low) line pressure | Torque converter, oil pump, pressure regulator, torque converter check valve | 830-880 kPa (8.5-9.0 kgf/cm², 120-130 psi) | 780 kPa (8.0 kgf/cm², 110 psi) |

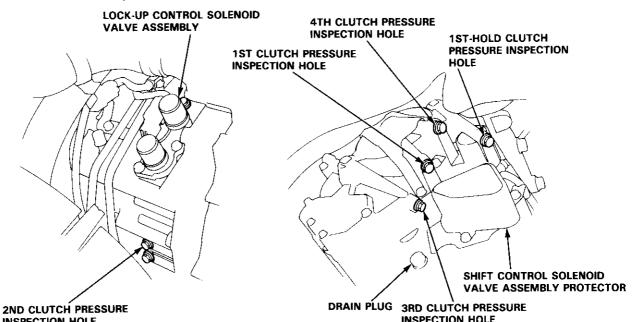
NOTE: Higher pressures may be indicated if measurements are made in selector positions other than N or P position.



Clutch Pressure Measurement

A WARNING While testing, be careful of the rotating front wheels.

- -1. Set the parking brake and block both rear wheels securely.
- -2. Raise the front of the car and support with safety stands.
- -3. Allow the front wheels to rotate freely.
- -4. Run the engine at 2,000 rpm.
- -5. Measure each clutch pressure.



| INSPECTI | ON HOLE | INSPECTION HOLE | | | | |
|--------------------|--------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|------------------------------|---|---|--|
| | SELECTOR | DODANI S CALICE | FLUID PRESSURE | | | |
| PRESSURE | SURE POSITION SYMPTOM PROBABLE CAUSE | Standard | Service Limit | | | |
| 1st Clutch | 1 or D ₄ | No or low 1st pressure | 1st Clutch | 830-880 kPa (8.5-9.0 kgf/cm², 120-130 psi) | 780 kPa (8.0 kgf/cm², 110 psi) | |
| 1st-hold Clutch | 1 | No or low 1st-hold pressure | 1st-hold Clutch | | | |
| 2nd Clutch | 2 | No or low 2nd pressure | 2nd Clutch | | | |
| 2nd Clutch | D4 | No or low 2nd pressure | 2nd Clutch | 460 kPa (4.7 kgf/cm², 67 psi) throttle control lever fully closed 830-880 kPa (8.5-9.0 kgf/cm², 120-130 psi) throttle control lever more than 3/16 opened | 410 kPa (4.2 kgf/cm², 60 psi) | |
| 3rd Clutch | | No or low 3rd pressure | 3rd Clutch | | throttle control lever fully closed 780 kPa | |
| 4th Clutch | | No or low 4th pressure | 4th Clutch | | (8.0 kgf/cm², 110 psi) throttle control lever more than 3/16 opened | |
| | R | | Servo Valve or 4th Clutch | 830-880 kPa (8.5-9.0 kgf/cm², 120-130 psi) | 780 kPa (8.0 kgf/cm², 110 psi) | |

(cont'd)

Pressure Testing

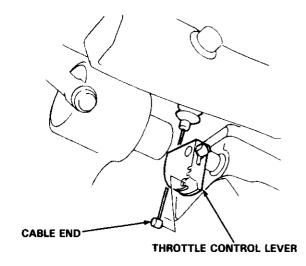
(cont'd) -

Clutch Low/High Pressure Measurement

A WARNING While testing, be careful of the rotating front wheels.

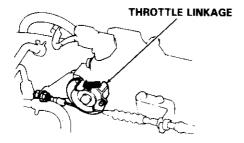
- -1. Allow the front wheels to rotate freely.
- -2. Remove the cable end of the throttle control cable from the throttle control lever.

NOTE: Do not loosen the locknuts, simply unhook the cable end.

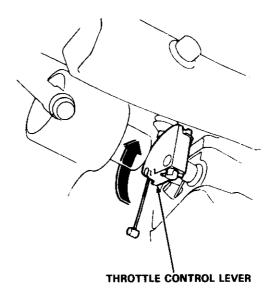


- -3. Start the engine and let it idle.
- -4. Shift the select lever to $\boxed{D_4}$ position.
- Slowly move the throttle linkage to increase engine rpm until pressure is indicated on the oil pressure gauge.

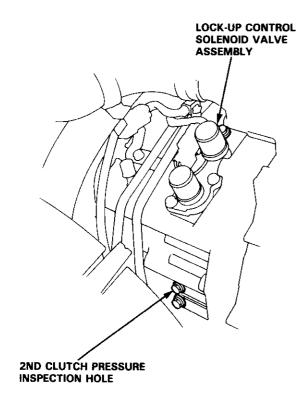
Then release the throttle linkage, allowing the engine to return to an idle, and measure the pressure reading.

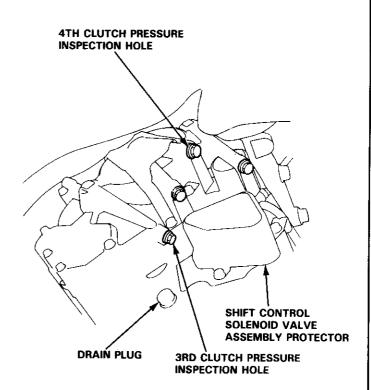


- —6. With the engine idling, lift the throttle control lever up approximately 1/2 of its possible travel and increase the engine rpm until pressure is indicated on the gauge, then measure the highest pressure reading obtained.
- 7. Repeat steps 5 and 6 for each clutch pressure being inspected.









| PRESSURE | SELECTOR POSITION | SYMPTOM | PROBABLE CAUSE | FLUID PRESSURE | |
|------------|----------------------|---------------------------|----------------|--|---|
| | | | | Standard | Service Limit |
| 2nd Clutch | D4 | No or low 2nd pressure | 2nd Clutch | 460-880 kPa (4.7-9.0 kgf/cm², 67-130 psi) varies with throttle opening | 410 kPa {4.2 kgf/cm², 60 psi} with throttle control lever released 780 kPa {8.0 kgf/cm², 110 psi} with throttle control lever more than 3/16 opened |
| 3rd Clutch | | No or low 3rd pressure | 3rd Clutch | | |
| 4th Clutch | | No or low 4th pressure | 4th Clutch | | |

(cont'd)

Pressure Testing

– (cont'd) —

CABLE

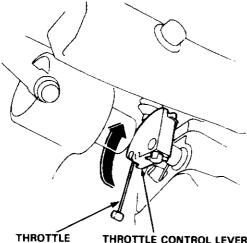
Throttle B Pressure Measurement

A WARNING While testing, be careful of the rotating front wheels.

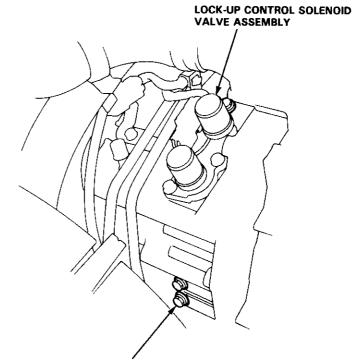
- -1. Allow the front wheels to rotate freely.
- -2. Remove the cable end of the throttle control cable from the throttle control lever.

NOTE: Do not loosen the locknuts, simply unhook the cable end.

- -3. Shift the selector lever to $\boxed{D_4}$ or $\boxed{D_3}$ position.
- -4. Run the engine at 1,000 rpm.
- -5. Measure full-closed throttle B pressure.
- -6. Move the throttle control lever to full-opened throttle position.
- -7. Measure full-opened throttle B pressure.



THROTTLE CONTROL LEVER CONTROL



THROTTLE B PRESSURE INSPECTION HOLE

| PRESSURE | SELECTOR POSITION | SYMPTOM | PROBABLE CAUSE | FLUID PRESSURE | |
|------------|----------------------------------|-------------------------------------|------------------|--|---|
| | | | | Standard | Service Limit |
| Throttle B | D ₄ or D ₃ | Pressure too high | Throttle Valve B | 0-15 kPa (0-0.15 kgf/cm², 0-2.1 psi) throttle control lever fully closed | |
| | | No or low Throttle B pressure | | 830-880 kPa (8.5-9.0 kgf/cm², 120-130 psi) throttle control lever fully closed | 780 kPa (8.0 kgf/cm², 110 psi) throttle control lever fully closed |

Transmission



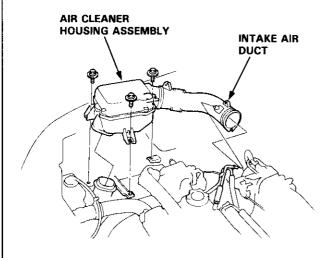
- Removal -

A WARNING

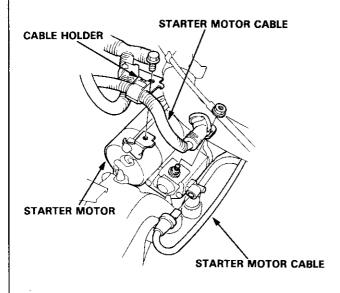
- Make sure lifts, jacks and safety stands are placed properly, and hoist brackets are attached to the correct position on the engine (see section1).
- Apply parking brake and block rear wheels, so car will not roll off stands and fall on you while working under it

CAUTION: Use fender covers to avoid damaging painted surfaces.

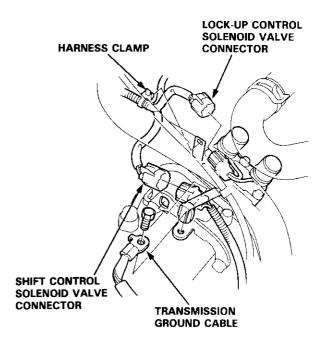
- Disconnect the battery negative (-) and positive (+) cables from the battery.
- Remove the intake air duct and air cleaner housing assembly.



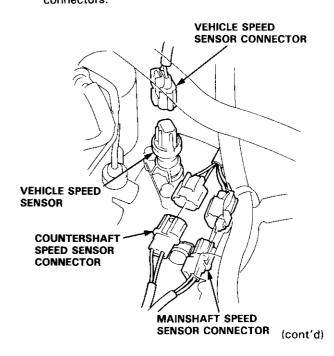
Remove the starter motor cables and cable holder from the starter motor.



- Remove the transmission ground cable from the transmission hanger.
- Disconnect the lock-up control solenoid valve connector and the shift control solenoid valve connector, then remove the harness clamp on the lock-up control solenoid harness from the harness stay.



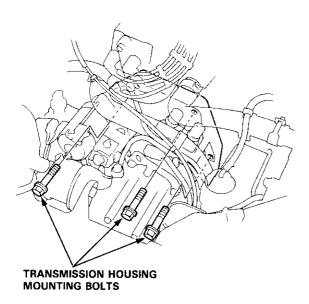
Disconnect the vehicle speed sensor (VSS), mainshaft speed sensor and countershaft speed sensor connectors.



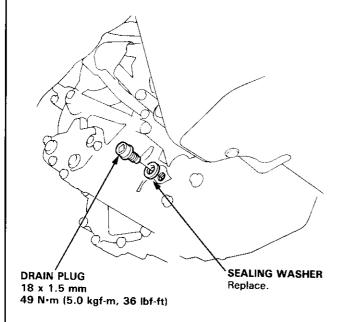
Transmission

Removal (cont'd) -

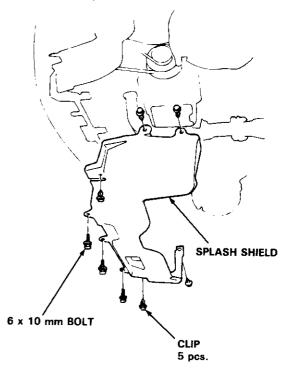
7. Remove the transmission housing mounting bolts.



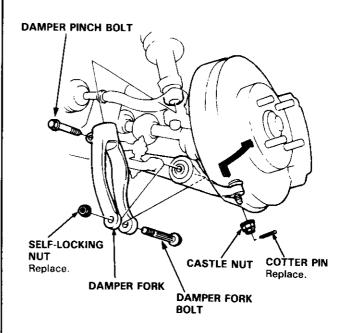
Remove the drain plug and drain the automatic transmission fluid (ATF). Reinstall the drain plug with a new sealing washer (see page 14-93).



9. Remove the splash shield.



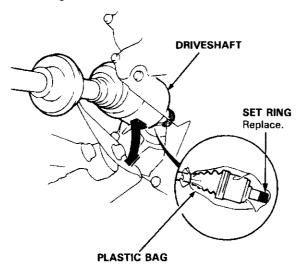
- Remove the cotter pins and castle nuts, then separate the ball joints from the lower arm (see section 18).
- 11. Remove the right damper fork bolt, then separate right damper fork and damper.



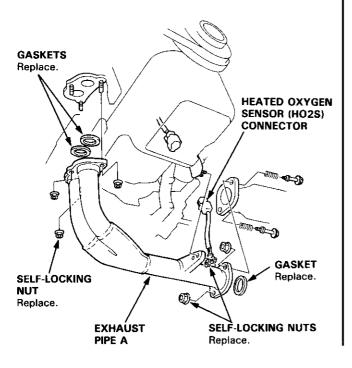


- 12. Pry the right driveshaft out of the differential and pry the left driveshaft out of the intermediate shaft.
- 13. Pull on the inboard joint and remove the right and left driveshafts (see section 16).
- 14. Tie plastic bags over the driveshaft ends.

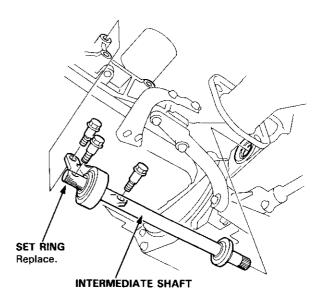
NOTE: Coat all precision finished surfaces with clean engine oil.



- Disconnect the heated oxygen sensor (HO2S) connector.
- 16. Remove the exhaust pipe A.

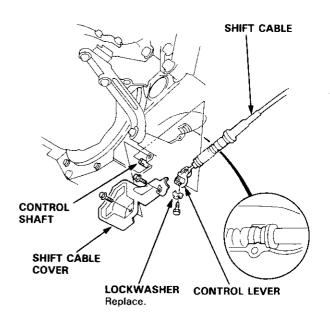


17. Remove the intermediate shaft.



18. Remove the shift cable cover, then remove the shift cable by removing the control lever.

CAUTION: Take care not to bend the shift control cable while removing it.



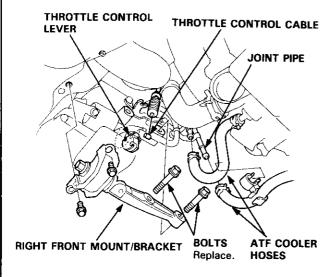
(cont'd)

Transmission

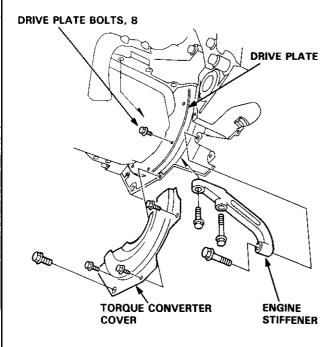
Removal (cont'd) -

- Remove the right front mount/bracket, then remove the end of the throttle control cable from the throttle control lever.
- 20. Remove the ATF cooler hoses at the joint pipes. Turn the ends of the cooler hoses up to prevent ATF from flowing out, then plug the joint pipes.

NOTE: Check for any sign of leakage at the hose joints.



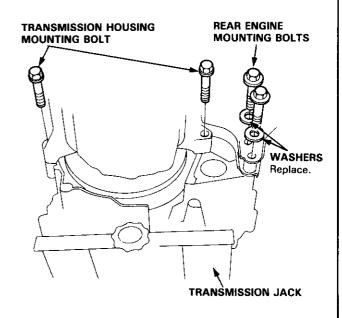
- 21. Remove the engine stiffener and torque converter cover.
- 22. Remove the eight drive plate bolts one at at time while rotating the crankshaft pulley.

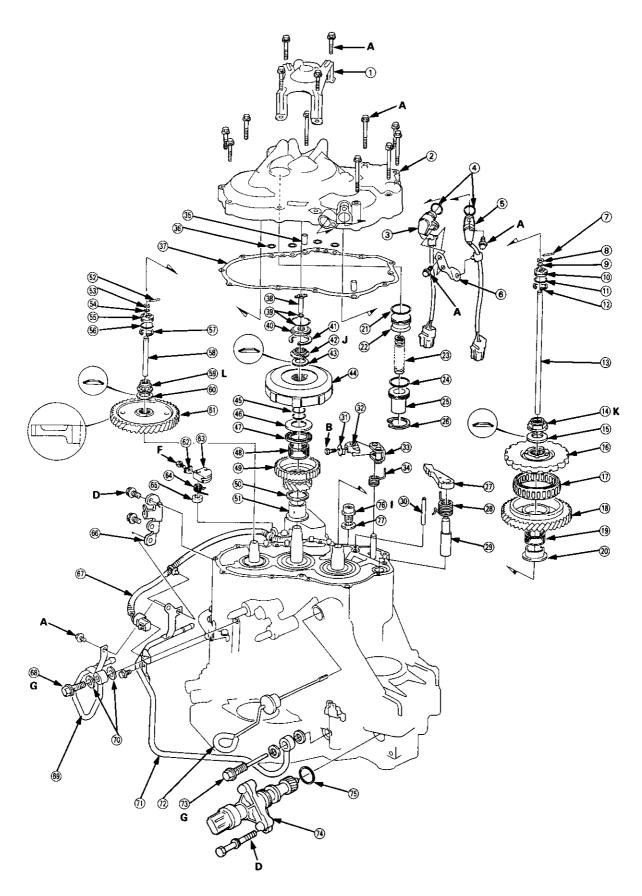


23. Place a jack under the transmission, raise the transmission just enough to take weight off of the mounts, then remove the transmission mount.



- 24. Remove the transmission housing mounting bolts and rear engine mounting bolts.
- 25. Pull the transmission away from the engine until it clears the 14 mm dowel pins, then lower it on the transmission jack.





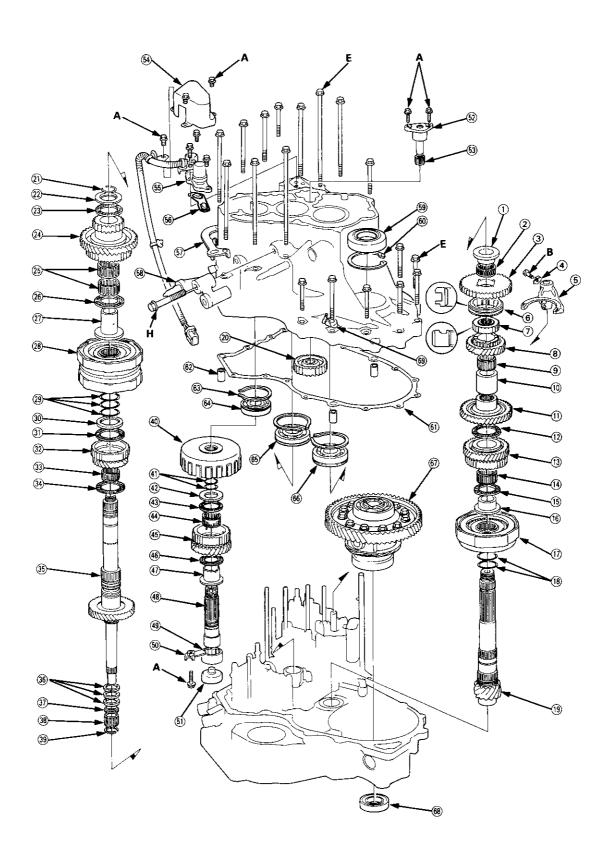


- **1 RIGHT SIDE COVER PROTECTOR**
- 2 RIGHT SIDE COVER
- **3 MAINSHAFT SPEED SENSOR**
- 4 O-RING Replace.
- **5 COUNTERSHAFT SPEED SENSOR**
- **6 HARNESS STAY**
- **7** ROLLER
- **8 COLLAR**
- O-RING Replace.
- 10 FEED PIPE FLANGE
- ① O-RING
- **12 SNAP RING**
- **13 3RD CLUTCH FEED PIPE**
- (4) COUNTERSHAFT LOCKNUT (FLANGE NUT) Replace.
- (I) COUNTERSHAFT CONICAL SPRING WASHER Replace.
- **16 PARKING GEAR**
- **17 ONE-WAY CLUTCH**
- **18 COUNTERSHAFT 1ST GEAR**
- (19) NEEDLE BEARING
- **20 COUNTERSHAFT 1ST GEAR COLLAR**
- ②1 O-RING Replace.
- **② 1ST-HOLD ACCUMULATOR PISTON**
- **3 1ST-HOLD ACCUMULATOR SPRING**
- ② O-RING Replace.
- **(3) 1ST-HOLD ACCUMULATOR COVER**
- **26 SNAP RING**
- **(7) PARKING BRAKE PAWL**
- **28 PARKING BRAKE PAWL SPRING**
- **29 PARKING BRAKE PAWL SHAFT**
- **30 PARKING BRAKE PAWL STOPPER**
- ① LOCK WASHER Replace.
- **32 PARKING BRAKE STOPPER**
- **39 PARKING BRAKE LEVER**
- **3** PARKING BRAKE LEVER SPRING
- **35 DOWEL PIN**
- 36 O-RING Replace.
- ③ RIGHT SIDE COVER GASKET Replace.
- **38 1ST CLUTCH FEED PIPE**
- 39 O-RING Replace.

- (4) FEED PIPE GUIDE
- (1) SNAP RING
- **(2) MAINSHAFT LOCKNUT (FLANGE NUT) Replace.**
- 49 MAINSHAFT CONICAL SPRING WASHER Replace.
- **44 1ST CLUTCH ASSEMBLY**
- 45 O-RING Replace.
- **(48) THRUST WASHER**
- **47) THRUST NEEDLE BEARING**
- **48 NEEDLE BEARING**
- **49 MAINSHAFT 1ST GEAR**
- **90 THRUST WASHER**
- **51 MAINSHAFT 1ST GEAR COLLAR**
- **62 ROLLER**
- **3** COLLAR
- O-RING Replace.
- **55 FEED PIPE FLANGE**
- 6 O-RING Replace.
- **50 SNAP RING**
- **99 1ST-HOLD CLUTCH FEED PIPE**
- (9) SUB-SHAFT LOCKNUT (FLANGE NUT) Replace.
- **® SUB-SHAFT CONICAL SPRING WASHER Replace.**
- (1) SUB-SHAFT 1ST GEAR
- **(2)** LOCK WASHER Replace.
- **®** THROTTLE CONTROL LEVER
- (6) THROTTLE CONTROL LEVER SPRING
- 65 OIL SEAL Replace.
- **66 THROTTLE CONTROL CABLE STAY**
- **(f)** SHIFT CONTROL SOLENOID HARNESS
- **®** JOINT BOLT
- (8) ATF COOLER PIPE
- **M SEALING WASHERS** Replace.
- **(1)** ATF COOLER PIPE
- **72 ATF LEVEL GAUGE**
- **3 JOINT BOLT**
- **W** VEHICLE SPEED SENSOR
- ® O-RING Replace.
- **76 DRAIN PLUG**
- SEALING WASHER Replace.

TORQUE SPECIFICATIONS

| Ref No. | Torque Value | Bolt Size | Remarks |
|---------|--------------------------------------|--------------|---|
| Α | 12 N·m (1.2 kgf·m, 8.7 lbf·ft) | 6 x 1.0 mm | |
| В | 14 N·m (1.4 kgf·m, 10 lbf·ft) | 6 x 1.0 mm | Special bolt |
| D | 22 N·m (2.2 kgf·m, 16 lbf·ft) | 8 x 1.25 mm | opena, borr |
| F | 8 N·m (0.8 kgf·m, 6 lbf·ft) | 5 x 0.8 mm | |
| G | 28 N·m (2.9 kgf·m, 21 lbf·ft) | 12 x 1.25 mm | ATF cooler pipe joint bott |
| 1 | 49 N·m (5.0 kgf·m, 36 lbf·ft) | 18 x 1.5 mm | Drain plug |
| J | 93 N-m (9.5 kgf-m, 69 lbf-ft) | 19 x 1.25 mm | Mainshaft locknut (flange nut): Left-hand threads |
| К | 103 N·m (10.5 kgf·m, 75.9 lbf·ft)→0→ | 23 x 1.25 mm | Countershaft locknut |
| | 103 N·m (10.5 kgf·m, 75.9 lbf·ft) | | (flange nut) Left-hand threads |
| L | 93 N·m (9.5 kg-m, 69 lb-ft) | 19 x 1.25 mm | Sub-shaft locknut (flange nut) |



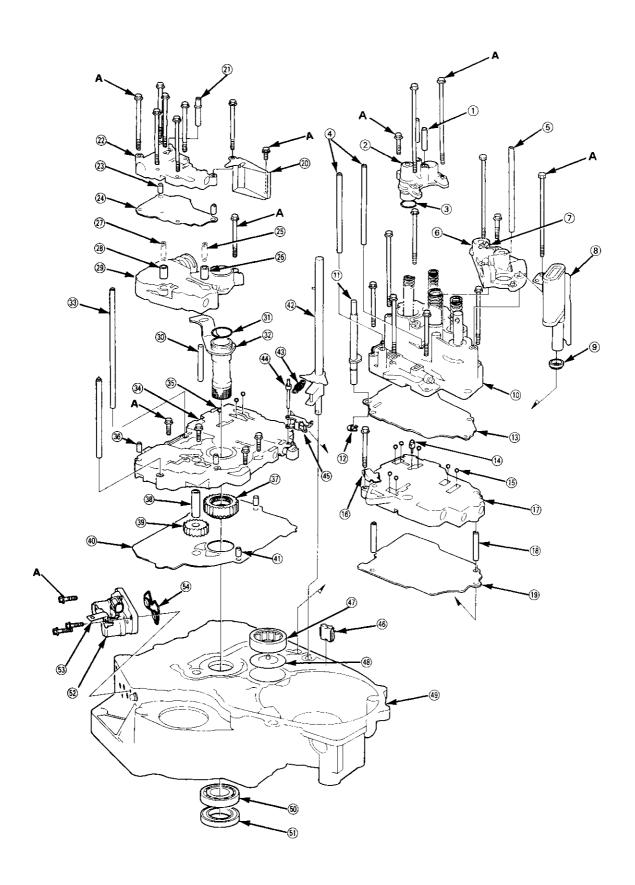


- **① COUNTERSHAFT REVERSE GEAR COLLAR**
- **② NEEDLE BEARING**
- **③ COUNTERSHAFT REVERSE GEAR**
- 4 LOCK WASHER Replace.
- **5 REVERSE SHIFT FORK**
- **6 REVERSE SELECTOR**
- **7 REVERSE SELECTOR HUB**
- **8 COUNTERSHAFT 4TH GEAR**
- **9 NEEDLE BEARING**
- 10 DISTANCE COLLAR, 28 mm Selective part.
- **(1) COUNTERSHAFT 2ND GEAR**
- 12 THRUST NEEDLE BEARING
- **(3) COUNTERSHAFT 3RD GEAR**
- (4) NEEDLE BEARING
- **(15) THRUST NEEDLE BEARING**
- **16 COUNTERSHAFT 3RD GEAR COLLAR**
- (1) 3RD CLUTCH ASSEMBLY
- (8) O-RINGS Replace.
- (9) COUNTERSHAFT
- **② REVERSE IDLER GEAR**
- **② SNAP RING**
- **② THRUST WASHER**
- (3) THRUST NEEDLE BEARING
- **(4) MAINSHAFT 4TH GEAR**
- **(25) NEEDLE BEARINGS**
- 26 THRUST NEEDLE BEARING
- ② MAINSHAFT 4TH GEAR COLLAR
- 28 2ND/4TH CLUTCH ASSEMBLY
- 29 O-RINGS Replace.
- 30 THRUST WASHER, 36.5 x 55 mm Selective part.
- 31 THRUST NEEDLE BEARING
- **(3) MAINSHAFT 2ND GEAR**
- **3 NEEDLE BEARING**
- **34 THRUST NEEDLE BEARING**
- **35 MAINSHAFT**

- 36 SEALING RINGS, 35 mm
- ③ SEALING RING, 29 mm
- **38 NEEDLE BEARING**
- 39 SET RING
- **40 1ST-HOLD CLUTCH**
- (1) O-RING Replace.
- **42) THRUST WASHER**
- **43 THRUST NEEDLE BEARING**
- **(4) NEEDLE BEARING**
- **45 SUB-SHAFT 4TH GEAR**
- **46 THRUST NEEDLE BEARING**
- (47) SUB-SHAFT 4TH GEAR COLLAR
- 48 SUB-SHAFT
- **49 SUB-SHAFT NEEDLE BEARING**
- **(9) NEEDLE BEARING STOPPER**
- (5) OIL GUIDE CAP Replace.
- **52) REVERSE IDLER GEAR SHAFT/HOLDER**
- (3) NEEDLE BEARING
- SHIFT CONTROL SOLENOID VALVE ASSEMBLY
 PROTECTOR
- (5) SHIFT CONTROL SOLENOID VALVE A/B
- SHIFT CONTROL SOLENOID VALVE A/B FILTER/GASKET Replace.
- **57 TRANSMISSION HANGER**
- **® TRANSMISSION MOUNT BRACKET**
- 69 OIL SEAL Replace.
- ® SET RING Replace.
- (i) TRANSMISSION HOUSING GASKET Replace.
- **(2) DOWEL PIN**
- **63 SNAP RING**
- (4) SUB-SHAFT TRANSMISSION HOUSING BEARING
- **65 MAINSHAFT TRANSMISSION HOUSING BEARING**
- **60 COUNTERSHAFT TRANSMISSION HOUSING BEARING**
- (i) DIFFERENTIAL ASSEMBLY
- (8) OIL SEAL Replace.
- **69 CONNECTOR STAY**

TORQUE SPECIFICATIONS

| Ref No. | Torque Value | Bolt Size | Remarks |
|---------|--------------------------------|--------------|--------------|
| Α | 12 N·m (1.2 kgf·m, 8.7 lbf·ft) | 6 x 1.0 mm | |
| В | 14 N·m (1.4 kgf·m, 10 lbf·ft) | 6 x 1.0 mm | Special bolt |
| E | 44 N·m (4.5 kgf·m, 33 lbf·ft) | 10 x 1.25 mm | |
| Н | 64 N·m (6.5 kgf·m, 47 lbf·ft) | 12 x 1.25 mm | |





- 1 OIL FEED PIPE
- **2 ACCUMULATOR COVER**
- 3 O-RING Replace.
- 4 OIL FEED PIPE
- 5 OIL FEED PIPE
- **6 SERVO DETENT BASE**
- LOCK WASHER Replace.
- **5 ATF STRAINER**
- 9 SUCTION PIPE COLLAR
- SERVO BODY
- THROTTLE CONTROL SHAFT
- : E RING
- SERVO SEPARATOR PLATE
- 1ST ACCUMULATOR CHOKE
- : CHECK BALL
- * STOPPER SHAFT STAY
- SECONDARY VALVE BODY
- **DOWEL PIN**
- SECONDARY SEPARATOR PLATE
- **UBRICATOR PLATE**
- : OIL FEED PIPE
- ∴ LOCK-UP VALVE BODY
- □ DOWEL PIN
- **34 LOCK-UP SEPARATOR PLATE**
- **TORQUE CONVERTER CHECK VALVE SPRING**
- **33 TORQUE CONVERTER CHECK VALVE**
- : COOLER CHECK VALVE SPRING
- **COOLER CHECK VALVE**

- **29 REGULATOR VALVE BODY**
- **30 STOPPER SHAFT**
- 3 O-RING Replace.
- **32 STATOR SHAFT**
- **33 OIL FEED PIPE**
- **34 MAIN VALVE BODY**
- **35 CHECK BALL**
- 36 DOWEL PIN
- **③ OIL PUMP DRIVE GEAR**
- **38 OIL PUMP DRIVEN GEAR SHAFT**
- **39 OIL PUMP DRIVEN GEAR**
- MAIN SEPARATOR PLATE
- (41) DOWEL PIN
- **42 CONTROL SHAFT**
- **43 DETENT SPRING**
- **44 DETENT ARM SHAFT**
- (45) DETENT ARM
- **46) ATF MAGNET**
- COUNTERSHAFT TORQUE CONVERTER HOUSING NEEDLE BEARING
- **(48) OIL GUIDE PLATE**
- **49 TORQUE CONVERTER HOUSING**
- **MAINSHAFT TORQUE CONVERTER HOUSING BEARING**
- (5) OIL SEAL Replace.
- **(2) LOCK-UP CONTROL SOLENOID VALVE A/B**
- **53 CONNECTOR STAY**
- (A) LOCK-UP CONTROL SOLENOID VALVE A/B FILTER/GASKET Replace.

TORQUE SPECIFICATIONS

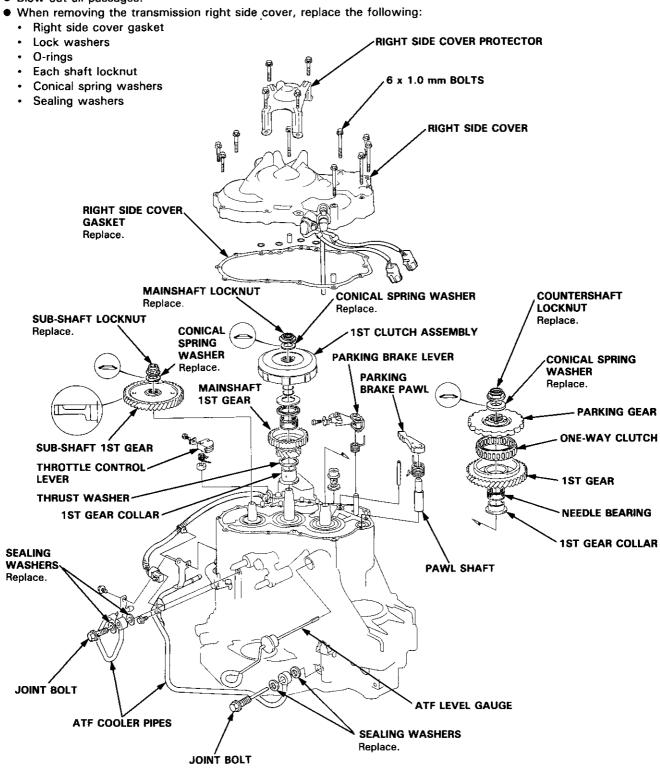
| F | Ref No. | Torque Value | Bolt Size | Remarks | |
|---|---------|--------------------------------|------------|---------|--|
| | Α | 12 N·m (1.2 kgf·m, 8.7 lbf·ft) | 6 x 1.0 mm | | |

Right Side Cover

Removal

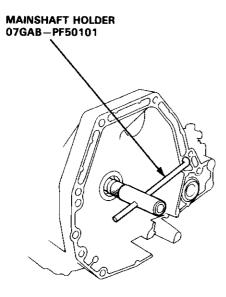
NOTE:

- Clean all parts thoroughly in solvent or carburetor cleaner, and dry with compressed air.
- Blow out all passages.

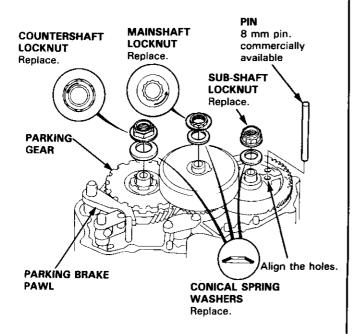




- 1. Remove the 13 bolts securing the right side cover and right side cover protector, then remove them.
- 2. Slip the special tool onto the mainshaft as shown.



- 3. Engage the parking brake pawl with the parking gear.
- Align the hole of the sub-shaft 1st gear with the hole of the transmission housing, then insert a pin to lock the sub-shaft while removing the sub-shaft locknut.



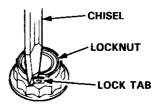
- 5. Pry the lock tab of the mainshaft locknut.
- Cut the lock tabs of the countershaft and sub-shaft locknuts using a chisel as shown. Then remove the locknut from each shaft.

NOTE:

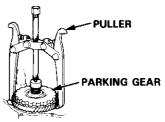
- Mainshaft and countershaft locknuts have lefthand threads.
- Clean the old countershaft locknut, it is used to install the parking gear on the countershaft.
- Always wear safety glasses.

CAUTION:

Keep all of the chiseled particles out of the transmission.

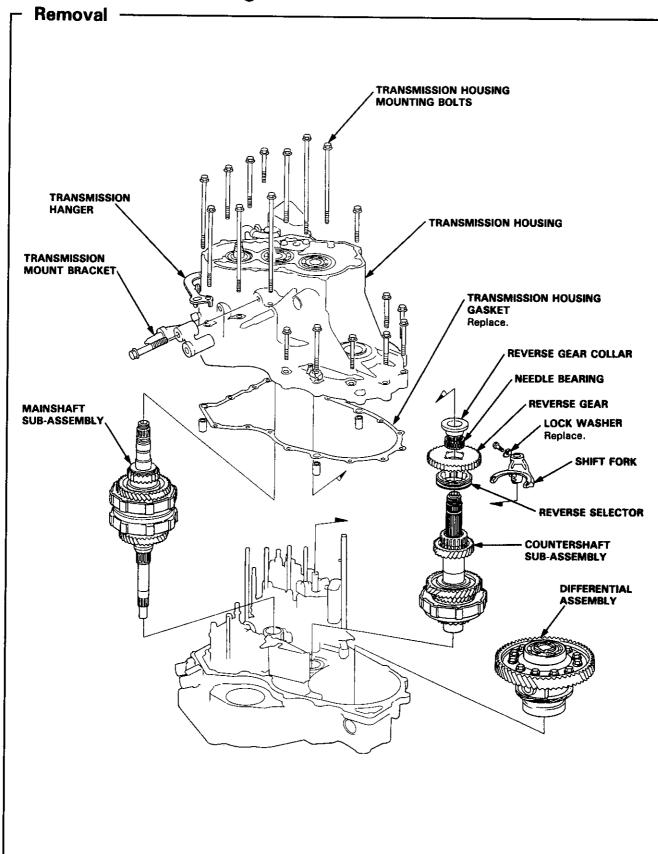


- Remove the lock pin that was installed to hold the sub-shaft.
- 8. Remove the special tool from the mainshaft after removing the locknut.
- 9. Remove the 1st clutch and mainshaft 1st gear assembly from the mainshaft.
- 10. Remove the sub-shaft 1st gear.
- 11. Remove the parking brake pawl.
- Using a universal two jaw puller, remove the parking gear, one-way clutch and countershaft 1st gear assembly.



- Remove the parking brake lever from the control shaft.
- Remove the throttle control lever from the throttle control shaft.
- 15. Remove the ATF cooler pipes.
- 16. Remove the ATF level gauge.

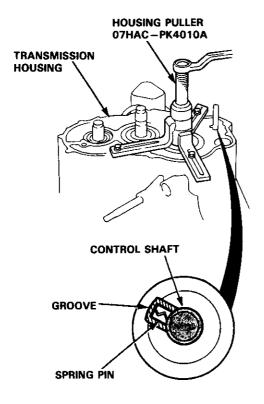
Transmission Housing



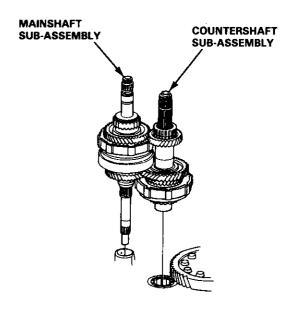


NOTE:

- Clean all parts thoroughly in solvent or carburetor cleaner and dry with compressed air.
- Blow out all passages.
- When removing the transmission housing, replace the following:
 - Transmission housing gasket
 - · Lock washer
- 1. Remove the transmission mount bracket.
- 2. Remove the transmission housing mounting bolts and hanger.
- Align the spring pin of the control shaft with the transmission housing groove by turning the control shaft.
- 4. Install the special tool on the transmission housing, then remove the housing as shown.

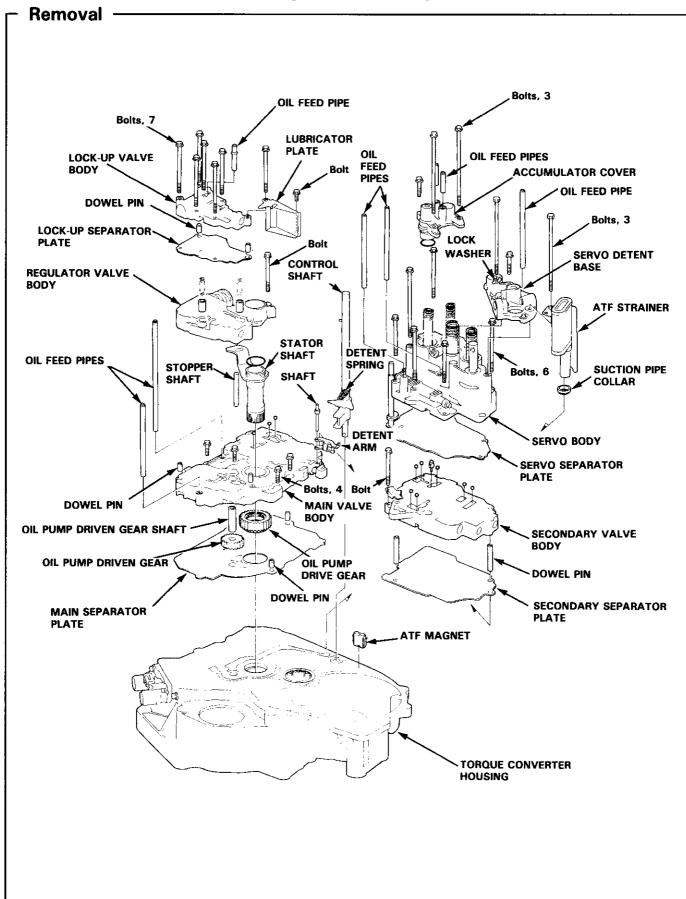


- Remove the countershaft reverse gear with the collar and needle bearing.
- Remove the lock bolt securing the shift fork, then remove the fork with the reverse selector from the countershaft.
- 7. Remove the countershaft and mainshaft subassembly together.



8. Remove the differential assembly.

Torque Converter Housing/Valve Body

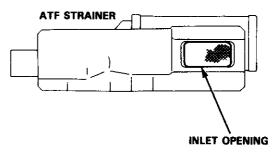




NOTE:

- Clean all parts thoroughly in solvent or carbuetor cleaner and dry with compressed air.
- Blow out all passages.
- When removing the valve body replace the following:
 - O-rings
 - Lock washers
- Remove the oil feed pipes from the servo body, servo detent base, accumulator cover, lock-up valve body and main valve body.
- 2. Remove the three bolts securing the ATF strainer and servo detent base, then remove them.
- Remove the three bolts securing the accumulator cover, then remove the accumulator cover.
- 4. Remove the six bolts securing the servo body, then remove the servo body and separator plate.
- Remove the bolt securing the secondary valve body, then remove the secondary valve body and separator plate.
- Remove the eight bolts securing the lubricator plate and lock-up valve body, then remove the lubricator plate, lock-up valve body and separator plate.
- 7. Remove the bolt securing the regulator valve body, then remove the regulator valve body.
- 8. Remove the stator shaft and stopper shaft.
- Remove the detent spring from the detent arm, then remove the control shaft from the torque converter housing.
- Remove the detent arm and detent arm shaft from the main valve body.
- Remove the four bolts securing the main valve body, then remove the main valve body.
- Remove the oil pump driven gear shaft, then remove the oil pump gears.
- Remove the main separator plate with two dowel pins.
- 14. Remove and clean the ATF magnet.

15. Clean the inlet opening of the ATF strainer thoroughly with compressed air, then check that it is in good condition, and the inlet opening is not clogged.



16. Replace the ATF strainer if it is clogged or damaged.

NOTE: The ATF strainer can be reused if it is not clogged.

Valve Caps

Description

- Caps with one projected tip and one flat end are installed with the flat end toward the inside of the valve body.
- Caps with a projected tip on each end are installed with the smaller tip toward the inside of the valve body. The small tip is a spring guide.

Toward outside of valve body.





Toward inside of valve body.

 Caps with one projected tip and hollow end are installed with the tip toward the inside of the valve body.
 The tip is a spring guide.

Toward outside of valve body.



Toward inside of valve body.

- Caps with hollow ends are installed with the hollow end away from the inside of the valve body.
- Caps with notched ends are installed with the notch toward the inside of the valve body.
- Caps with flat ends and a hole through the center are installed with the smaller hole toward the inside of the valve body.

Toward outside of valve body.





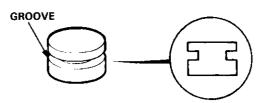




Toward inside of valve body.

 Caps with flat ends and a groove around the cap are installed with the grooved side toward the outside of the valve body.

Toward outside of valve body.



Sectional view.

Toward inside of valve body.

Valve Body



Repair

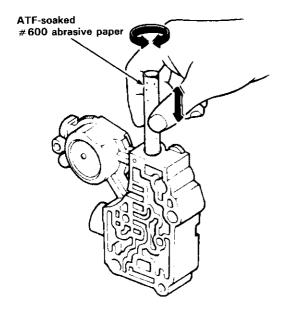
NOTE: This repair is only necessary if one or more of the valves in a valve body do not slide smoothly in their bores. You may use this procedure to free the valves in the valve bodies.

- Soak a sheet of #600 abrasive paper in ATF for about 30 minutes.
- 2. Carefully tap the valve body so the sticking valve drops out of its bore.

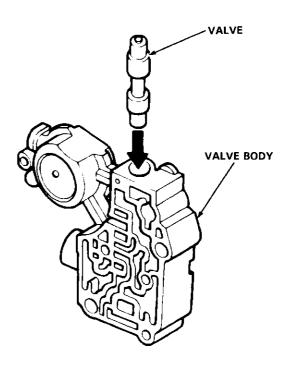
CAUTION: It may be necessary to use a small screwdriver to pry the the valve free. Be careful not to scratch the bore with the screwdriver.

- Inspect the valve for any scuff marks. Use the ATFsoaked #600 pagper to polish off any burrs that are on the valve, than wash the valve in solvent and dry it with compressed air.
- 4. Roll up half a sheet of ATF-soaked paper and insert it in the valve bore of the sticking valve. Twist the paper slightly, so that it unrolls and fits the bore tightly, then polish the bore by twisting the paper as you push it in and out.

CAUTION: The valve body is aluminum and doesn't require much polishing to remove any burrs.



- Remove the #600 paper and thoroughly wash the entire valve body in solvent, then dry with comperssed air.
- Coat the valve with ATF then drop it into its bore. It should drop to the bottom of the bore under its own weight. If not, repeat step 4 then retest.



 Remove the valve and thoroughly clean it and the valve body with solvent. Dry all parts with compressed air, then reassemble using ATF as a lubricant.

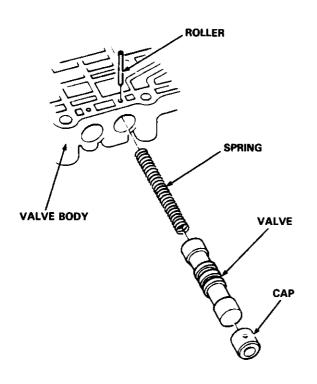
Valve

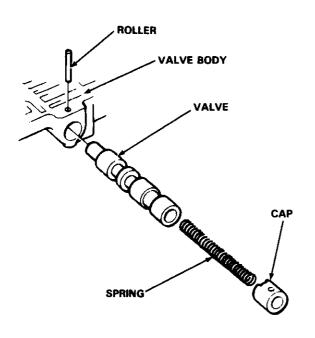
Assembly -

NOTE:

Coat all parts with ATF before assembly.

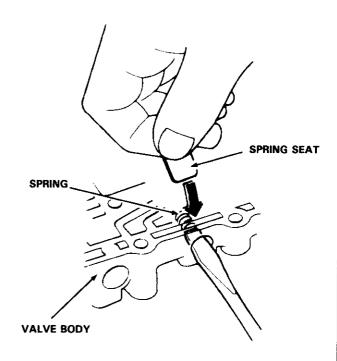
 Install the valve, valve spring and cap in the valve body and secure with the roller.



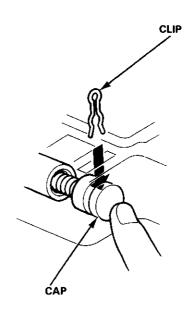


 Set the spring in the valve and install it in the valve body.

Push the spring in with a screwdriver, then install the spring seat.



Install the valve, spring and cap in the valve body.
 Push the cap, then install the clip.

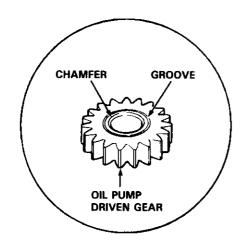


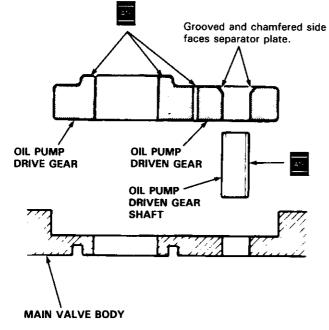
Oil Pump

\odot

Inspection

 Install the oil pump gears and oil pump driven gear shaft in the main valve body.





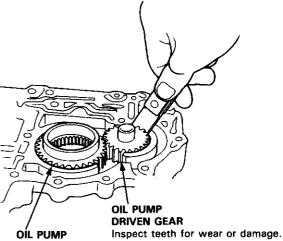
2. Measure the side clearance of the oil pump drive and driven gears.

Oil Pump Gears Side (Radial) Clearance: Standard (New): Drive gear

0.210-0.265 mm (0.0083-0.0104 in)

Driven gear

0.070-0.125 mm (0.0028-0.0049 in)



DRIVE GEAR

Inspect teeth for wear or damaage.

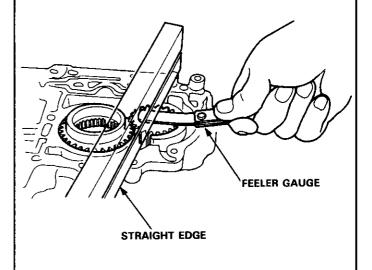
Remove the oil pump driven gear shaft, and measure the thrust clearance of the oil pump driven gearto-main valve body.

Oil pump Drive/Driven Gear thrust (Axial) Clearance: Standard (New):

0.03-0.05 mm (0.001-0.002 in)

Service Limit:

0.07 mm (0.003 in)



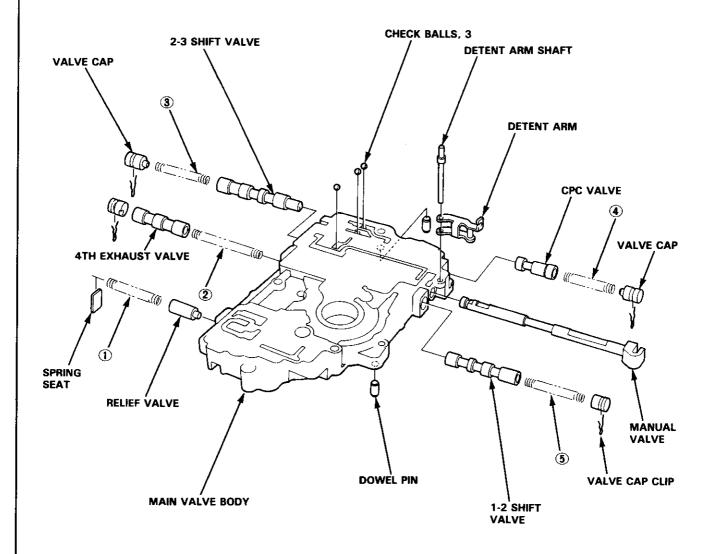
Main Valve Body

Disassembly/Inspection/Reassembly

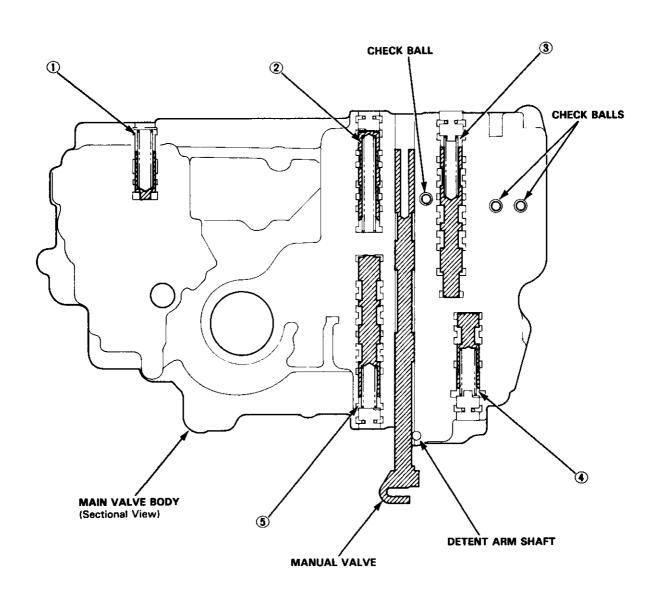
NOTE:

- Clean all parts thoroughly in solvent or carburetor cleaner and dry with compressed air.
- Blow out all passages.
- Replace valve body as an assembly if any parts are worn or damaged.
- Check all valves for free movement. If any fail to slide freely, see Valve Body Repair on page 14-117.

CAUTION: Do not use a magnet to remove the check balls; it may magnetize the balls.







SPRING SPECIFICATIONS

| . | | Standard (New) | | | | |
|------------|--------------------------|----------------|-------------|--------------|--------------|--|
| No. | Spring | Wire Dia. | O.D. | Free Length | No. of Coils | |
| ① | Relief valve spring | 1.1 (0.043) | 8.6 (0.339) | 37.1 (1.461) | 13.4 | |
| 2 | 4th exhaust valve spring | 1.0 (0.039) | 7.1 (0.280) | 60.3 (2.374) | 18.5 | |
| <u>3</u> | 2-3 shift valve spring | 0.9 (0.035) | 7.6 (0.299) | 57.0 (2.244) | 26.8 | |
| <u>(4)</u> | CPC valve spring | 1.3 (0.051) | 9.4 (0.370) | 35.3 (1.390) | 12.4 | |
| <u>Š</u> | 1-2 shift valve spring | 0.9 (0.035) | 8.6 (0.339) | 40.4 (1.591) | 14.5 | |

Regulator Valve Body

Disassembly/Inspection/Reassembly

NOTE:

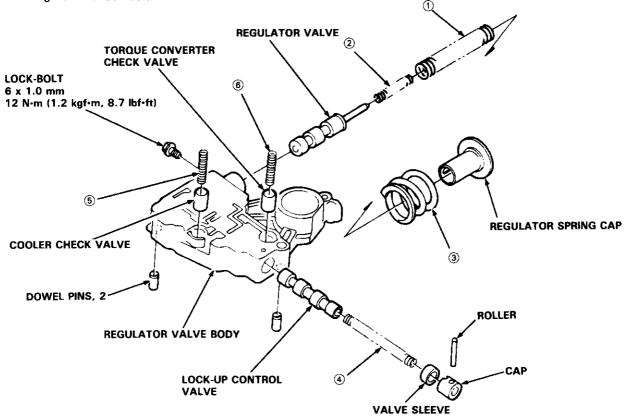
- Clean all parts thoroughly in solvent or carburetor cleaner, and dry with compressed air.
- Blow out all passages.
- Replace valve body as an assembly if any parts are worn or damaged.
- Check all valves for free movement. If any fail to slide freely, see Valve Body Repair on page 14-117.
- 1. Hold the regulator spring cap in place while removing the lock bolt. Once the bolt is removed, release the spring cap slowly.

CAUTION: The regulator spring cap can pop out when the lock bolt is removed.

2. Reassembly is in the reverse order of the disassembly procedure.

NOTE:

- Coat all parts with ATF.
- Align the hole in the regulator spring cap with the hole in the valve body, press the spring cap into the body and tighten the lock bolt.



SPRING SPECIFICATIONS

| | | Standard (New) | | | | |
|------------|-------------------------------------|----------------|----------------|---------------|--------------|--|
| No. | Spring | Wire Dia. | O.D. | Free Length | No. of Coils | |
| ① | Regulator valve spring A | 1.80 (0.071) | 14.70 (0.579) | 88.60 (3.488) | 16.5 | |
| 2 | Regulator valve spring B | 1.80 (0.071) | 9.60 (0.378) | 44.00 (1.732) | 7.5 | |
| <u>3</u> | Stator reaction spring | 5.50 (0.217) | *26.40 (1.039) | 30.30 (1.193) | 2.1 | |
| <u>ā</u> | Lock-up control valve spring | 0.80 (0.031) | 6.60 (0.260) | 39.50 (1.555) | 25.0 | |
| <u>(5)</u> | Cooler check valve spring | 1.10 (0.043) | 8.40 (0.331) | 33.80 (1.331) | 12.5 | |
| 6 | Torque converter check valve spring | 1.10 (0.043) | 8.40 (0.331) | 33.80 (1.331) | 12.5 | |

^{*:} Inside Diameter

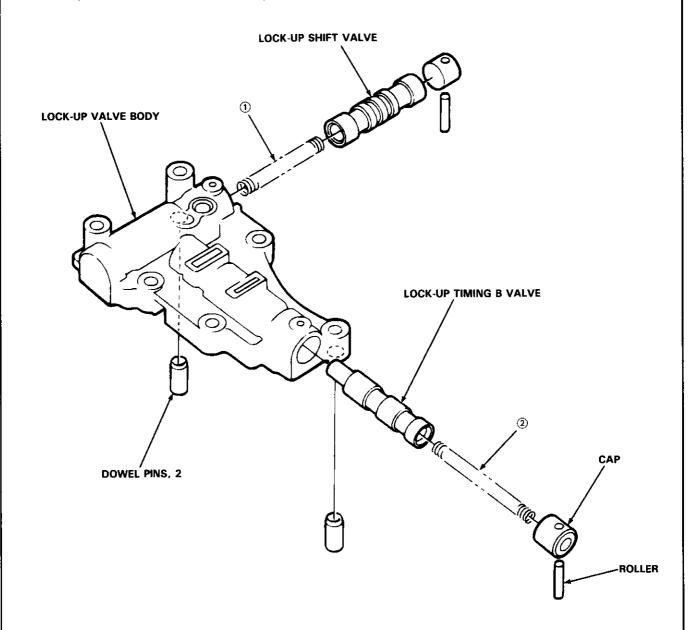
Lock-up Valve Body



Disassembly/Inspection/Reassembly

NOTE:

- Clean all parts thoroughly in solvent or carburetor cleaner, and dry with compressed air.
- Blow out all passages.
- Replace valve body as an assembly if any parts are worn or damaged.
- Check all valves for free movement. If any fail to slide freely, see Valve Body Repair on page 14-117.
- Coat all parts with ATF before reassembly.



SPRING SPECIFICATIONS

| | 0 | Standard (New) | | | |
|--------|---|------------------------------|------------------------------|--------------------------------|--------------|
| No. | Spring | Wire Dia. | O.D. | Free Length | No. of Coils |
| ① ② | Lock-up shift valve spring Lock-up timing B valve spring | 0.90 (0.035) 0.80 (0.031) | 7.60 (0.299) 6.60 (0.260) | 73.70 (2.902) 60.80 (2.394) | 32.0 22.1 |

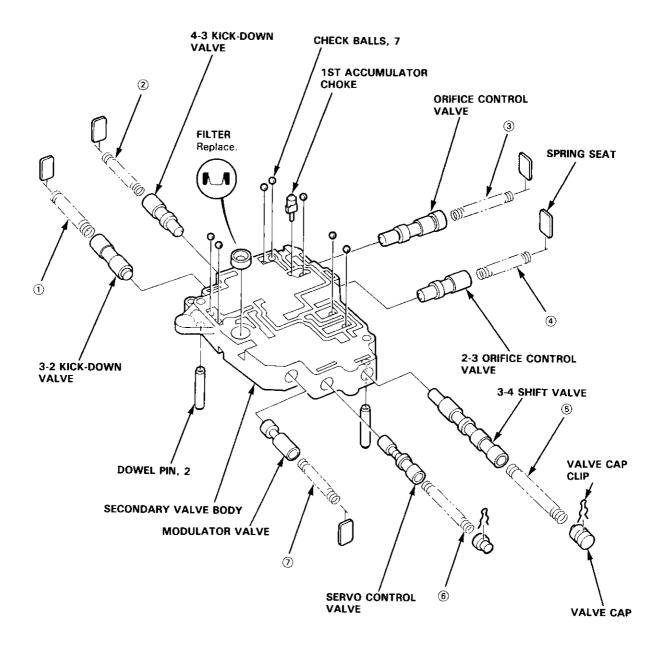
Secondary Valve Body

Disassembly/Inspection/Reassembly

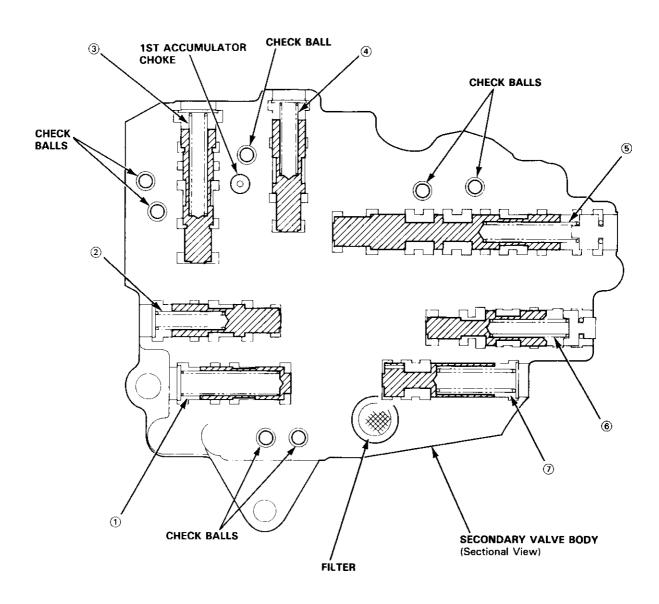
NOTE:

- Clean all parts thoroughly in solvent or carburetor cleaner, and dry with compressed air.
- Blow out all passages.
- Replace valve body as an assembly if any parts are worn or damaged.
- Check all valves for free movement. If any fail to slide freely, see Valve Body Repair on page 14-117.
- Coat all parts with ATF before reassembly.

CAUTION: Do not use a magnet to remove the check balls; it may magnetize the balls.







SPRING SPECIFICATIONS

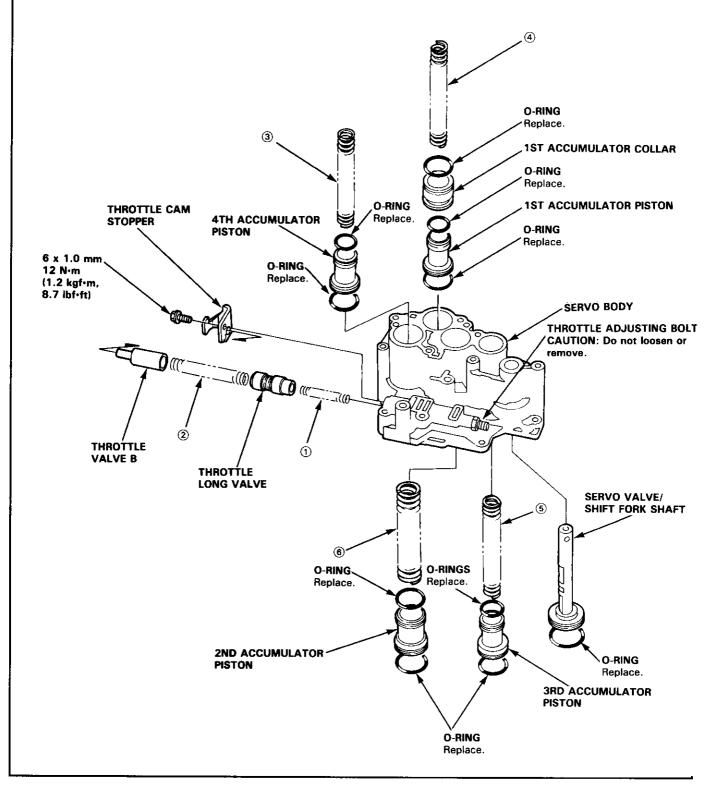
| | | Standard (New) | | | | |
|------------|----------------------------------|----------------|-------------|--------------|--------------|--|
| No. | Spring | Wire Dia. | O.D. | Free Length | No. of Coils | |
| 1 | 3-2 kick-down valve spring | 1.3 (0.051) | 8.6 (0.339) | 45.6 (1.795) | 17.0 | |
| 2 | 4-3 kick-down valve spring | 1.0 (0.039) | 6.6 (0.260) | 28.5 (1.122) | 14.7 | |
| <u>3</u> | Orifice control valve spring | 0.8 (0.031) | 6.6 (0.260) | 48.2 (1.898) | 33.0 | |
| <u>(4)</u> | 2-3 orifice control valve spring | 0.9 (0.035) | 6.6 (0.260) | 33.0 (1.299) | 14.9 | |
| <u>(5)</u> | 3-4 shift valve spring | 0.9 (0.035) | 7.6 (0.299) | 52.0 (2.047) | 26.8 | |
| <u>6</u> | Servo control valve spring | 0.9 (0.035) | 6.4 (0.252) | 34.1 (1.343) | 17.5 | |
| Ŏ | Modulator valve spring | 1.3 (0.051) | 9.4 (0.370) | 37.3 (1.469) | 12.4 | |

Servo Body

Disassembly/Inspection/Reassembly

NOTE:

- Clean all parts thoroughly in solvent or carburetor cleaner, and dry with compressed air.
- Blow out all passages.
- Replace valve body as an assembly if any parts are worn or damaged.
- Coat all parts with ATF before reassembly.
- Replace the O-rings.





SPRING SPECIFICATIONS

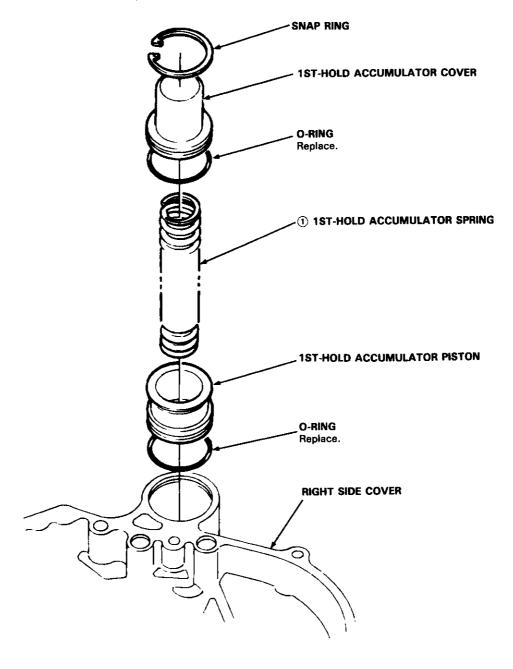
| | | Standard (New) | | | | |
|----------|-----------------------------------|----------------|--------------|---------------|--------------|--|
| No. | Spring | Wire Dia. | O.D. | Free Length | No. of Coils | |
| 1 | Throttle valve B adjusting spring | 0.7 (0.028) | 6.2 (0.244) | 34.0 (1.339) | 15.2 | |
| 2 | Throttle valve B spring | 1.4 (0.055) | 8.5 (0.335) | 41.5 (1.634) | 10.5 | |
| 2 | Throttle valve B spring | 1.4 (0.055) | 8.5 (0.335) | 41.5 (1.634) | 11.2 | |
| 2 | Throttle valve B spring | 1.4 (0.055) | 8.5 (0.335) | 41.6 (1.638) | 12,4 | |
| 3 | 4th accumulator spring | 2.6 (0.102) | 16.3 (0.642) | 103.3 (4.067) | 21.2 | |
| 4 | 1st accumulator spring | 2.5 (0.098) | 16.3 (0.642) | 105.4 (4.150) | 16 + 8.6 | |
| (5) | 3rd accumulator spring | 2.8 (0.110) | 17.5 (0.689) | 105.2 (4.142) | 19.1 | |
| 6 | 2nd accumulator spring | 3.6 (0.142) | 22.0 (0.866) | 108.9 (4.287) | 15.2 | |

1st-hold Accumulator/Right Side Cover

Disassembly/Inspection/Reassembly

NOTE:

- Clean all parts thoroughly in solvent or carburetor cleaner, and dry with compressed air.
- Blow out all passages.
- Coat all parts with ATF before reassembly.



SPRING SPECIFICATIONS

| | | Standard (New) | | | |
|-----|-----------------------------|----------------|---------------|---------------|--------------|
| No. | Spring | Wire Dia. | O.D. | Free Length | No. of Coils |
| 1 | 1st-hold accumulator spring | 4.00 (0.157) | 21.50 (0.846) | 71.70 (2.823) | 8.3 |

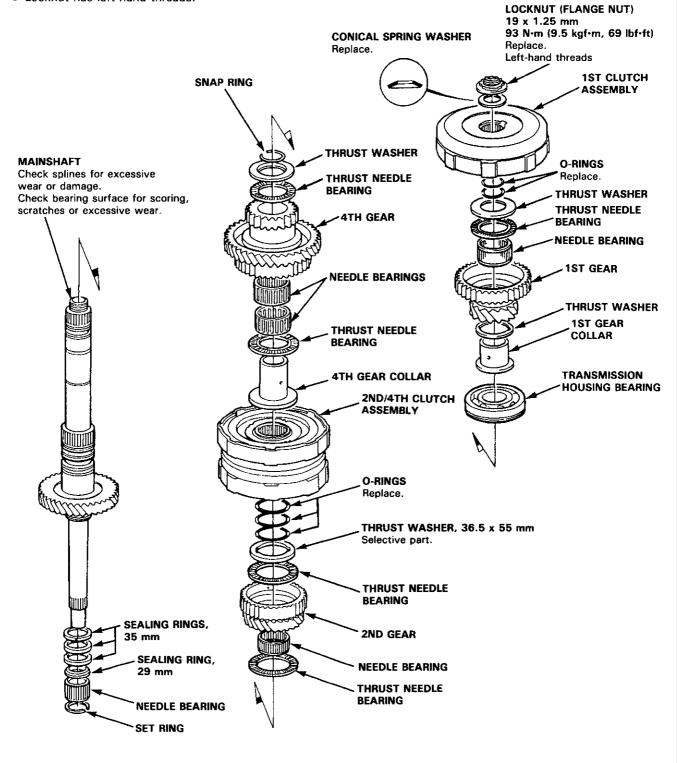
Mainshaft



Disassembly/Inspection/Reassembly

NOTE:

- Lubricate all parts with ATF during reassembly.
- Install the thrust needle bearings with unrolled edge of bearing retainer facing washer.
- Inspect the thrust needle bearings and the needle bearings for galling and rough movement.
- Before installing the O-rings, wrap the shaft splines with tape to prevent damaging the O-rings.
- Locknut has left-hand threads.



Mainshaft

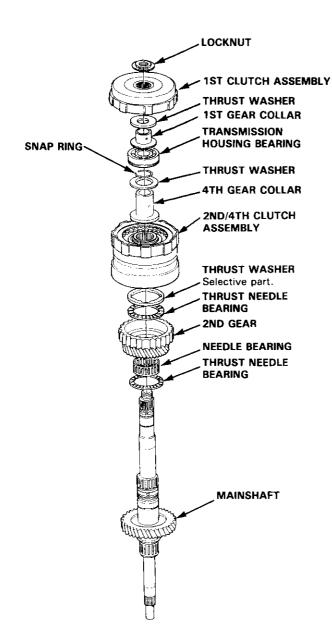
Inspection

• Clearance Measurement

NOTE: Lubricate all parts with ATF during assembly.

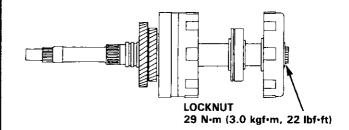
- Remove the mainshaft bearing from the transmission housing (see page 14-152).
- 2. Assemble the parts below on the mainshaft.

NOTE: Do not assemble the O-rings while inspecting.



3. Torque the mainshaft locknut to 29 N·m (3.0 kgf·m, 22 lbf·ft).

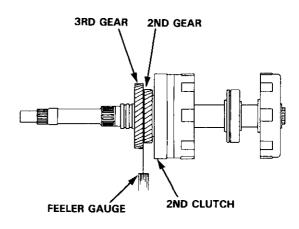
NOTE: Mainshaft locknut has left-hand threads.

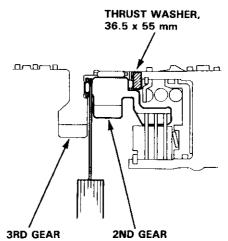


4. Hold 2nd gear against the 2nd clutch, then measure the clearance between 2nd gear and 3rd gear with a feeler gauge.

NOTE: Take measurements in at least three places and take the average as the actual clearance.

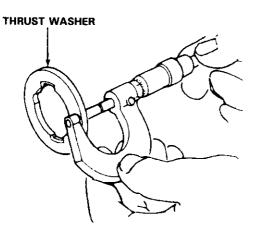
STANDARD: 0.05-0.13 mm (0.002-0.005 in)







5. If the clearance is out of tolerance, remove the thrust washer and measure the thickness.



6. Select and install a new washer then recheck.

THRUST WASHER 36.5 x 55 mm

| No. | Part Number | Thickness |
|-----|---------------|--------------------|
| 1 | 90441-PG4-010 | 4.00 mm (0.157 in) |
| 2 | 90442-PG4-010 | 4.05 mm (0.159 in) |
| 3 | 90443-PG4-010 | 4.10 mm (0.161 in) |
| 4 | 90444-PG4-010 | 4.15 mm (0.163 in) |
| 5 | 90445-PG4-010 | 4.20 mm (0.165 in) |
| 6 | 90446-PG4-010 | 4.25 mm (0.167 in) |
| 7 | 90447-PG4-010 | 4.30 mm (0.169 in) |
| 8 | 90448-PG4-010 | 4.35 mm (0.171 in) |
| 9 | 90449-PG4-010 | 4.40 mm (0.173 in) |

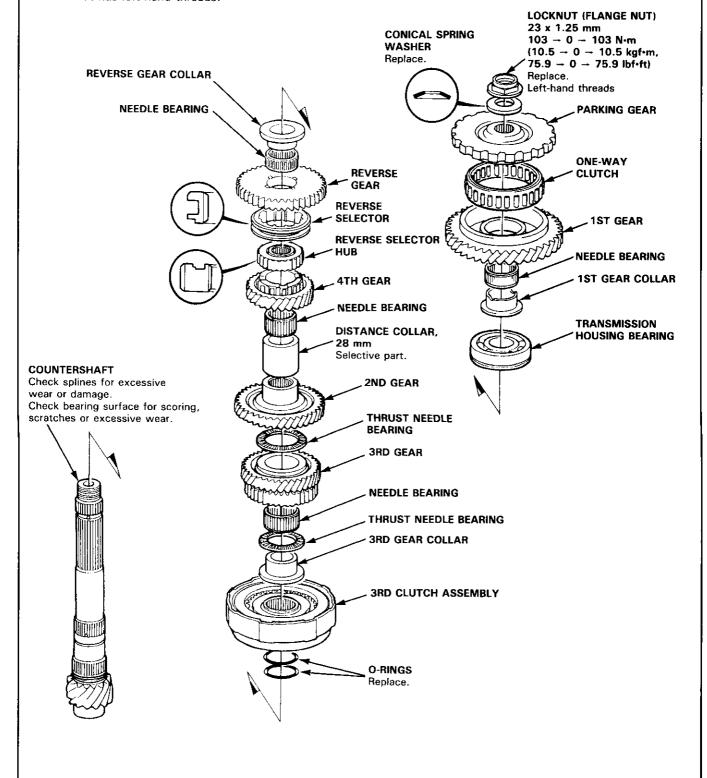
7. After replacing the thrust washer, make sure the clearance is within tolerance.

Countershaft

Disassembly/Inspection/Reassembly

NOTE:

- Lubricate all parts with ATF before reassembly.
- Install the thrust needle bearings with unrolled edge of bearing retainer facing washer.
- Inspect the thrust needle bearings and the needle bearings for galling and rough movement.
- Before installing the O-rings, wrap the shaft splines with tape to prevent damaging the O-rings.
- Locknut has left-hand threads.



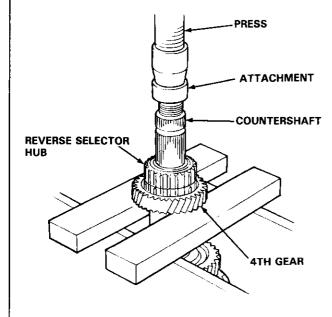


Disassembly/Reassembly

 Using a hydraulic press, press out the countershaft while supporting 4th gear.

NOTE: Place an attachment between the press and the countershaft to prevent damage to the shaft.

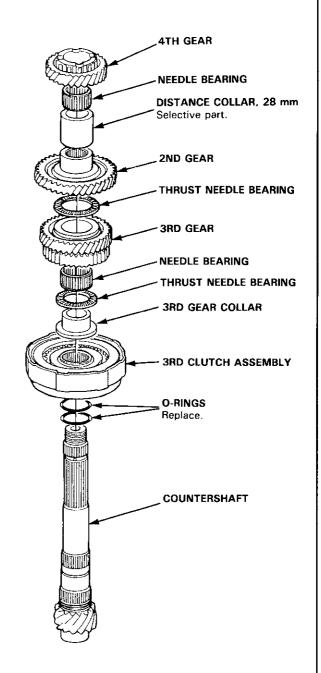
CAUTION: Do not allow the countershaft to fall and hit the ground.



Assemble the parts on the countershaft as shown below.

NOTE:

- Lubricate all parts with ATF during assembling.
- Before installing the O-rings, wrap the shaft splines with tape to prevent damaging the O-rings.

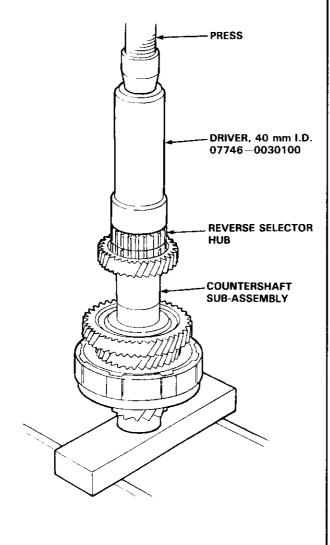


(cont'd)

Countershaft

Disassembly/Reassembly (cont'd)

Install the reverse selector hub on the countershaft sub-assembly, and then press the reverse selector hub using the special tool and a press as shown.



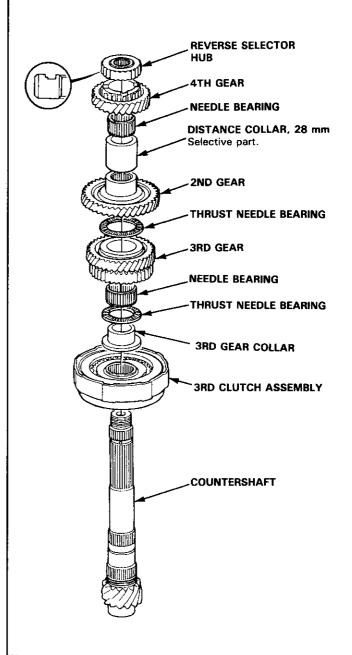
Inspection

Clearance Measurement

NOTE: Lubricate all parts with ATF during assembly.

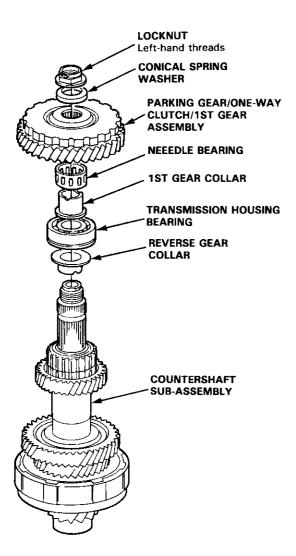
- Remove the countershaft bearing from the transmission housing (see page 14-152).
- 2. Install the parts below on the countershaft using the special tool and a press as described on this page.

NOTE: Do not assemble the O-rings while inspecting.





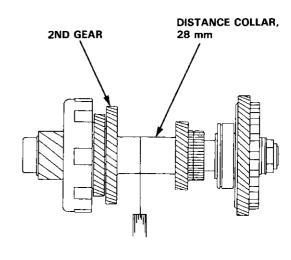
 Install the parts below on the countershaft subassembly, then torque the locknut to 29 N·m (3.0 kgf·m, 22 lbf·ft).

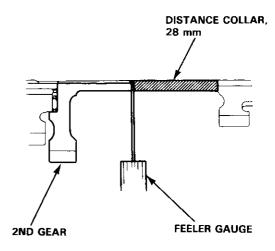


4. Measure the clearance between the 2nd gear and the distance collar, 28 mm with a feeler gauge.

NOTE: Take measurements in at least three places, and take the average as the actual clearance.

STANDARD: 0.05-0.13 mm (0.002-0.005 in)





(cont'd)

Countershaft

Inspection (cont'd) -

- 5. If the clearance is out of tolerance, remove the distance collar, 28 mm and measure the width.
- 6. Select and install a new distance collar, then recheck.

DISTANCE COLLAR, 28 mm

| No. | Part Number | Width |
|-----|---------------|---------------------|
| 1 | 90503-PC9-000 | 39.00 mm (1.535 in) |
| 2 | 90504-PC9-000 | 39.10 mm (1.539 in) |
| 3 | 90505-PC9-000 | 39.20 mm (1.543 in) |
| 4 | 90507-PC9-000 | 39.30 mm (1.547 in) |
| 5 | 90508-PC9-000 | 39.05 mm (1.537 in) |
| 6 | 90509-PC9-000 | 39.15 mm (1.541 in) |
| 7 | 90510-PC9-000 | 39.25 mm (1.545 in) |
| 8 | 90511-PC9-000 | 38.90 mm (1.531 in) |
| 9 | 90512-PC9-000 | 38.95 mm (1.533 in) |

7. After selecting a new distance collar, recheck the clearance and make sure it is within tolerance.

One-way Clutch/Parking Gear

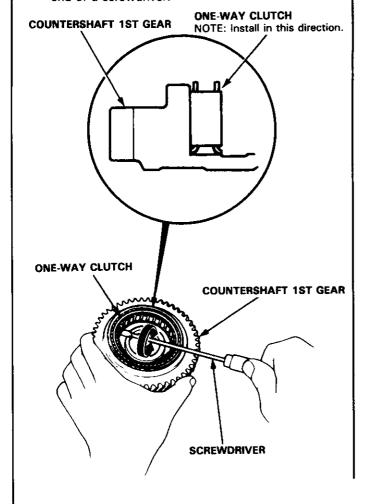


Disassembly/Inspection -

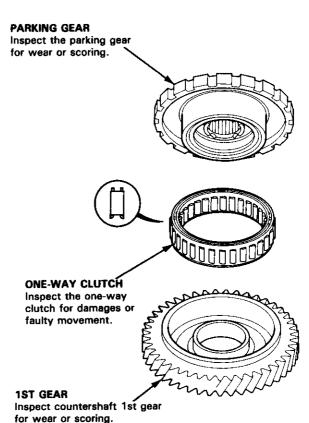
1. Separate countershaft 1st gear from the parking gear by turning the parking gear in the direction shown.



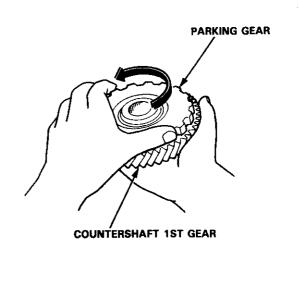
2. Remove the one-way clutch by prying it up with the end of a screwdriver.



Inspect the parts as follows:



 After the parts are assembled, hold countershaft 1st gear and turn the parking gear in the direction shown to be sure it turns freely.

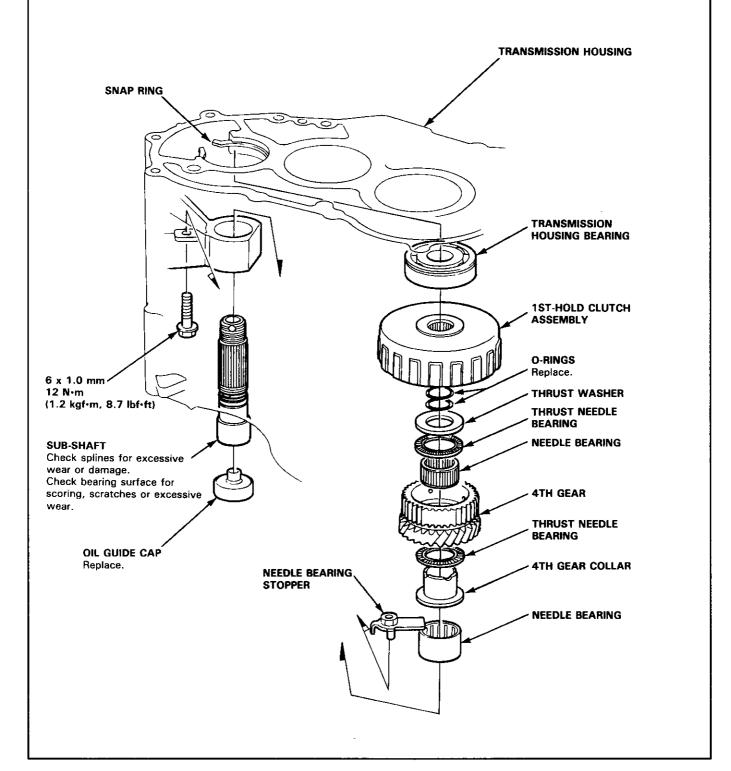


Sub-shaft

Disassembly/Inspection/Reassembly

NOTE:

- Lubricate all parts with ATF during reassembly.
- Install the thrust needle bearings with unrolled edge of bearing retainer facing washer.
- Inspect the thrust needle bearings and the needle bearings for galling and rough movement.
- Before installing the O-rings, wrap the shaft splines with tape to prevent damaging the O-rings.



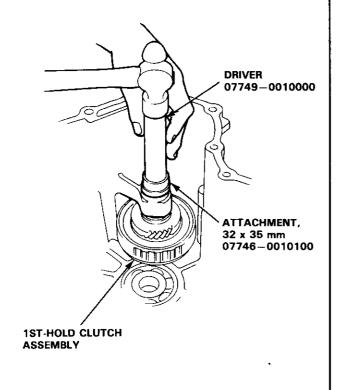


Disassembly/Reassembly -

- 1. Remove the oil guide cap by pushing the sub-shaft inside the transmission housing.
- 2. Remove the 1st-hold clutch assembly by pulling the sub-shaft, then remove the sub-shaft.
- 3. Install new O-rings on the sub-shaft.

NOTE: Wrap the shaft splines with tape to prevent damaging the O-rings.

- 4. Place the sub-shaft in the transmission housing and install the 1st-hold clutch assembly.
- Install new oil guide cap using the special tools as shown.

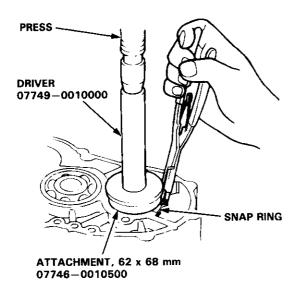


Sub-shaft Bearings

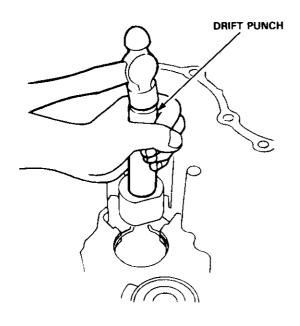
Replacement

NOTE: Lubricate all parts with ATF before reassembly.

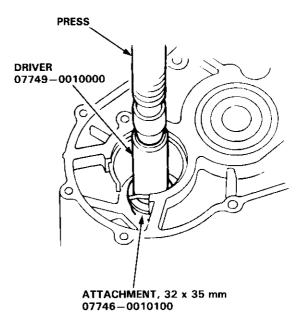
 To remove the sub-shaft ball bearing from the transmission housing, expand the snap ring with snap ring pliers, then push the bearing out using the special tools and a press as shown.



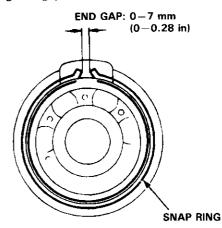
- 2. Remove the needle bearing stopper.
- 3. Remove the needle bearing from the transmission housing using a drift punch.



4. Install the new needle bearing in the transmission housing using the special tools and a press as shown.



- Expand the snap ring with snap ring pliers, then insert the ball bearing part-way into the housing using the special tools and a press as described in step 1. Install the bearing with the groove facing outside the housing.
- Release the pliers, then push the bearing down into the housing until the snap ring snaps in place around it
- 7. After installing the ball bearing, verify the following:
 - The snap ring is seated in the bearing and housing grooves.
 - The snap ring operates properly.
 - The ring end gap is correct.

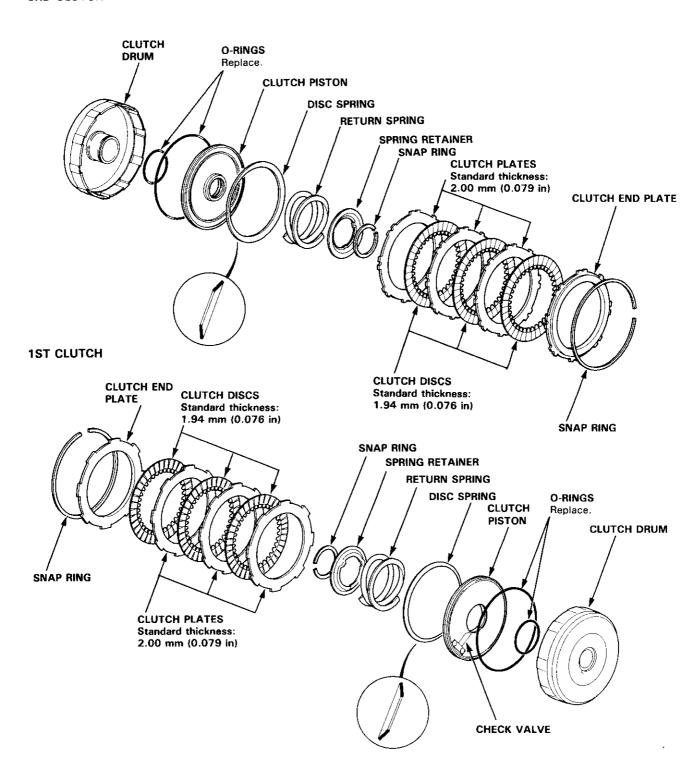


Clutch

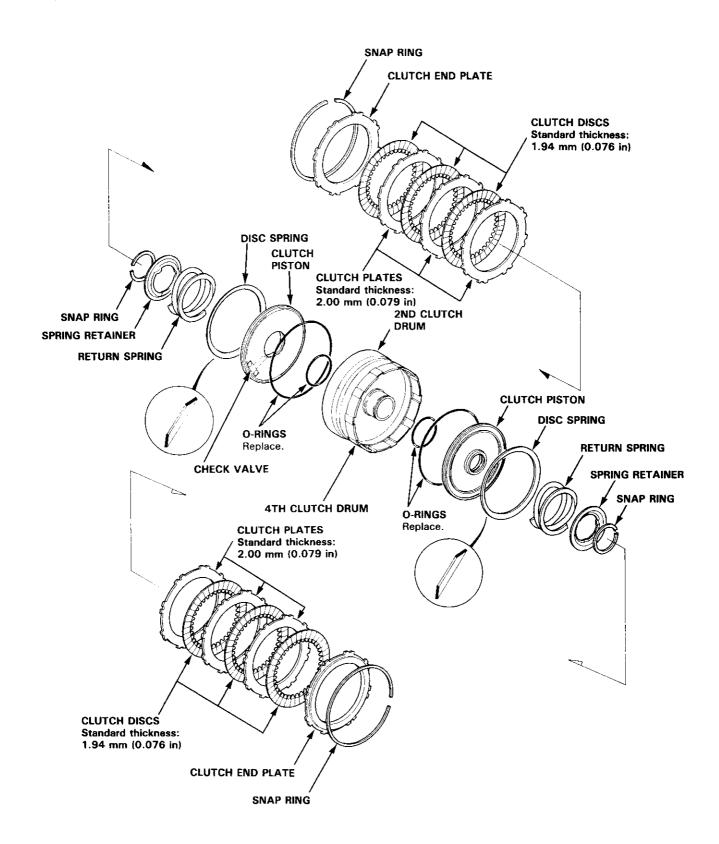
00

Illustrated Index

3RD CLUTCH

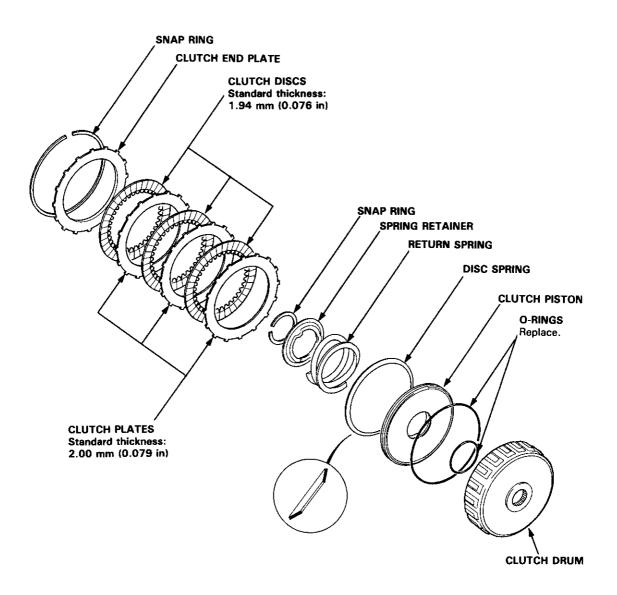


2ND/4TH CLUTCH





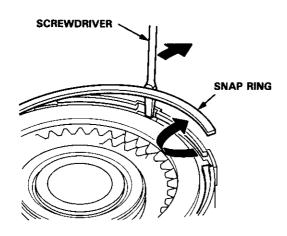
1ST-HOLD CLUTCH



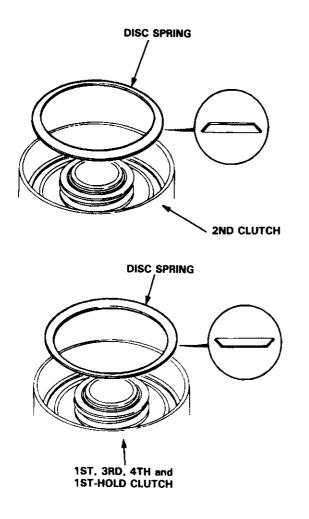
Clutch

Disassembly

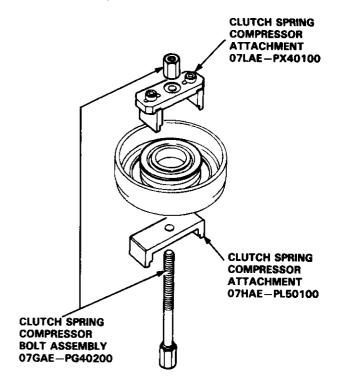
 Remove the snap ring, then remove the clutch end plate, clutch discs and plates.

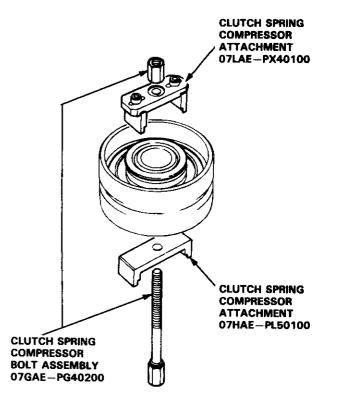


2. Remove the disc spring.



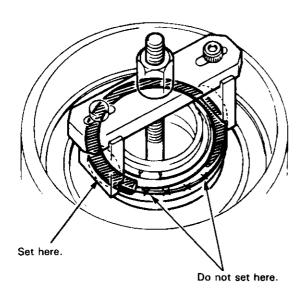
3. Install the special tools as shown.



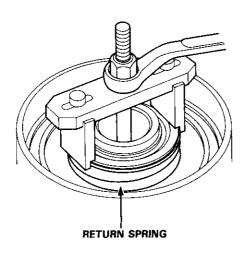




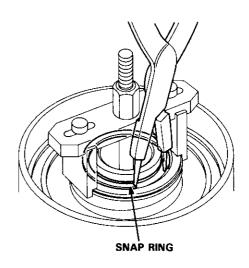
CAUTION: If either end of the compressor attachment is set over an area of the spring retainer which is unsupported by the return spring, the retainer may be damaged.



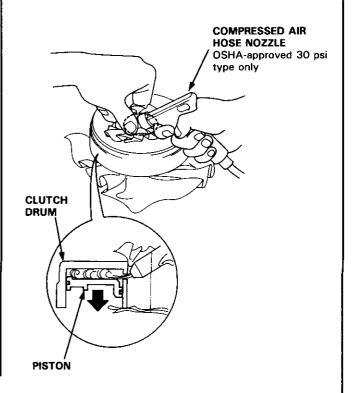
4. Compress the return spring.



5. Remove the snap ring. Then remove the special tools, spring retainer and return spring.



Wrap a shop towel around the clutch drum and apply air pressure to the oil passage to remove the piston. Place a finger tip on the other end while applying air pressure.



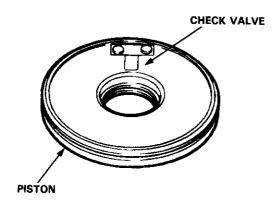
Clutch

Reassembly

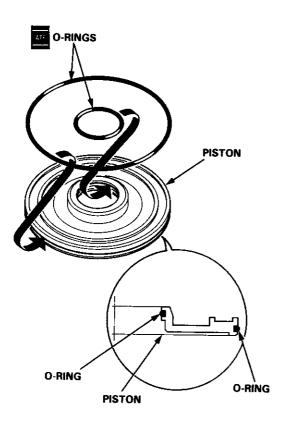
NOTE:

- Clean all parts thoroughly in solvent or carburetor cleaner, and dry them with compressed air.
- Blow out all passages.
- Lubricate all parts with ATF before reassembly.
- 1. Inspect the check valve; if it's loose, replace the piston.

NOTE: Except 1st-hold clutch.



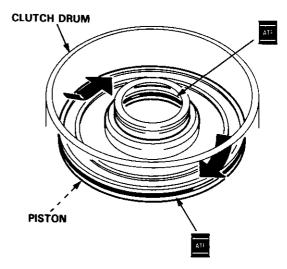
2. Install new O-rings on the clutch piston.



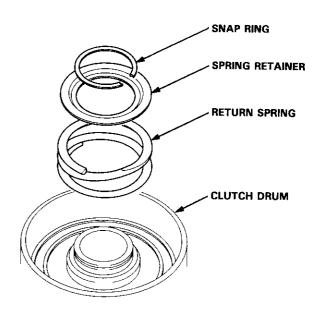
3. Install the piston in the clutch drum. Apply pressure and rotate to ensure proper seating.

NOTE: Lubricate the piston O-ring with ATF before installing.

CAUTION: Do not pinch the O-ring by installing the piston with too much force.

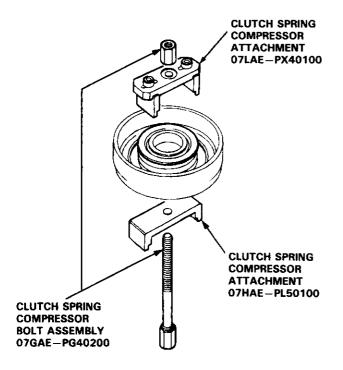


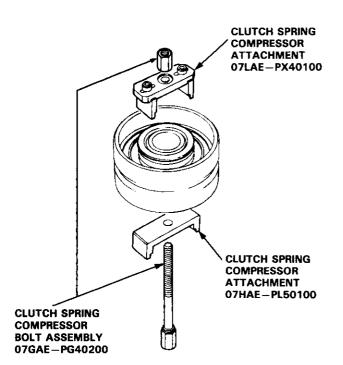
4. Install the return spring and spring retainer, and position the snap ring on the retainer.



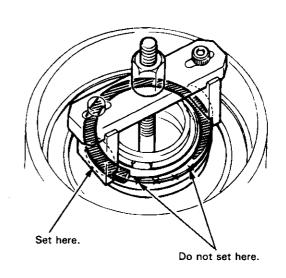


5. Install the special tools as shown.

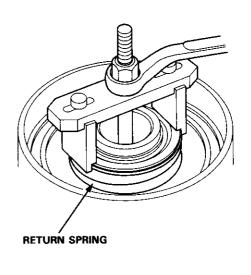




CAUTION: If either end of the compressor attachment is set over an area of the spring retainer which is unsupported by the return spring, the retainer may be damaged.



6. Compress the return spring.

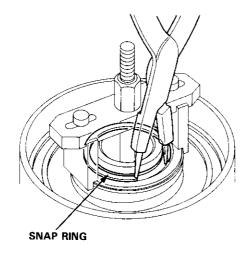


(cont'd)

Clutch

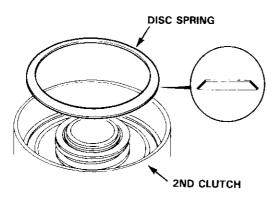
Reassembly (cont'd) -

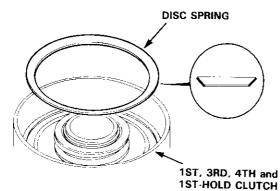
7. Install the snap ring.



- 8. Remove the special tools.
- 9. Install the disc spring.

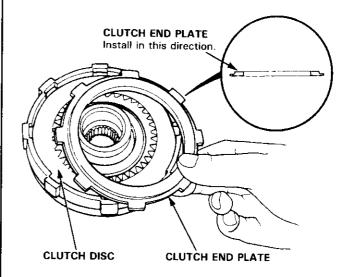
NOTE: Install the disc spring in the direction shown.



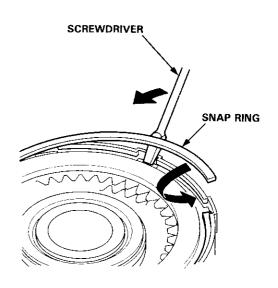


- 10. Soak the clutch discs thoroughly in ATF for a minimum of 30 minutes.
- Starting with a clutch plate, alternately install the clutch plates and discs. Install the clutch end plate with flat side toward the disc.

NOTE: Before installing the plates and discs, make sure the inside of the clutch drum is free of dirt or other foreign matter.



12. Install the snap ring.



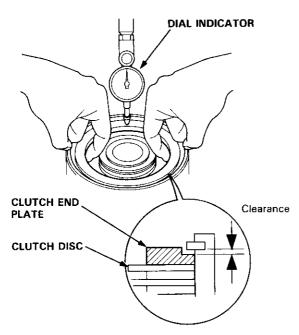


13. Measure the clearance between the clutch end plate and top disc with a dial indicator. Zero the dial indicator with the clutch end plate lowered and lift it up to the snap ring. The distance that the clutch end plate moves is the clearance between the clutch end plate and top disc.

NOTE: Measure at three locations.

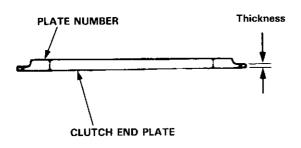
Clutch End Plate-to-Top Disc Clearance:

| Clutch | Service Limit |
|----------|-------------------------------|
| 1st | 0.65-0.85 mm (0.026-0.033 in) |
| 2nd | 0.65-0.85 mm (0.026-0.033 in) |
| 3rd | 0.40-0.60 mm (0.016-0.024 in) |
| 4th | 0.40-0.60 mm (0.016-0.024 in) |
| 1st-hold | 0.50-0.80 mm (0.020-0.031 in) |



14. If the clearance is not within the service limits, select a new clutch end plate from the following table.

NOTE: If the thickest clutch end plate is installed, but the clearance is still over the standard, replace the clutch discs and clutch plates.



1ST CLUTCH END PLATE

| Plate No. | Part Number | Thickness |
|-----------|---------------|-------------------|
| 1 | 22551-PF4-000 | 2.1 mm (0.083 in) |
| 2 | 22552-PF4-000 | 2.2 mm (0.087 in) |
| 3 | 22553-PF4-000 | 2.3 mm (0.091 in) |
| 4 | 22554PF4000 | 2.4 mm (0.094 in) |
| 5 | 22555-PF4-000 | 2.5 mm (0.098 in) |
| 6 | 22556-PF4-000 | 2.6 mm (0.102 in) |
| 7 | 22557-PF4-000 | 2.7 mm (0.106 in) |
| 8 | 22558-PF4-000 | 2.8 mm (0.110 in) |
| 9 | 22559-PF4-000 | 2.9 mm (0.114 in) |
| 10 | 22560-PF4-000 | 3.0 mm (0.118 in) |
| 11 | 22561-PF4-000 | 3.1 mm (0.122 in) |
| 12 | 22562-PF4-000 | 3.2 mm (0.126 in) |
| 13 | 22563-PF4-000 | 3.3 mm (0.130 in) |
| 14 | 22564-PF4-000 | 3.4 mm (0.134 in) |

2ND, 3RD and 4TH CLUTCH END PLATE

| Plate No. | Part Number | Thickness |
|-----------|---------------|-------------------|
| 1 | 22551-P56-N00 | 2.1 mm (0.083 in) |
| 2. | 22552-P56-N00 | 2.2 mm (0.087 in) |
| 3 | 22553-P56-N00 | 2.3 mm (0.091 in) |
| 4 | 22554-P56-N00 | 2.4 mm (0.094 in) |
| 5 | 22555-P56-N00 | 2.5 mm (0.098 in) |
| 6 | 22556-P56-N00 | 2.6 mm (0.102 in) |
| 7 | 22557-P56-N00 | 2.7 mm (0.106 in) |
| 8 | 22558-P56-N00 | 2.8 mm (0.110 in) |
| 9 | 22559-P56-N00 | 2.9 mm (0.114 in) |
| 10 | 22560-P56-N00 | 3.0 mm (0.118 in) |

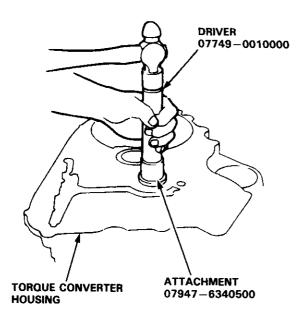
1ST-HOLD CLUTCH END PLATE

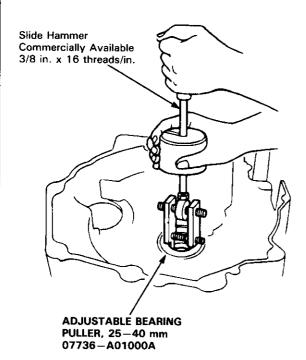
| Plate No. | Part Number | Thickness |
|-------------|---------------|--------------------|
| 1 | 22551-PS5-003 | 2.10 mm (0.083 in) |
| 2 | 22552-PS5-003 | 2.20 mm (0.087 in) |
| 3 | 22553-PS5-003 | 2.30 mm (0.091 in) |
| 4 | 22554-PS5-003 | 2.40 mm (0.094 in) |
| 5 (No mark) | 22555-PS5-003 | 2.50 mm (0.098 in) |
| 6 | 22556-PS5-003 | 2.60 mm (0.102 in) |
| 7 | 22557-PS5-003 | 2.70 mm (0.106 in) |

Torque Converter Housing Bearings

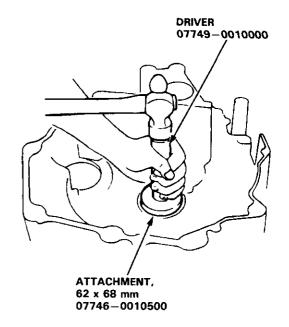
- Mainshaft Bearing/Oil Seal Replacement -

 Drive out or pull up the mainshaft bearing and oil seal, using the special tools as shown.

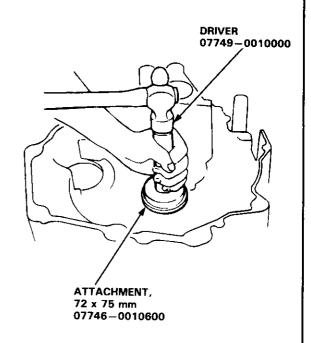




2. Drive in the new mainshaft bearing until it bottoms in the housing, using the special tools as shown.



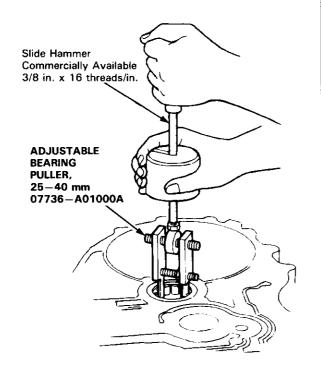
3. Install the new oil seal flush with the housing using the special tools as shown.



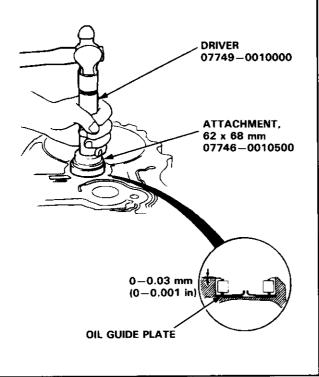


Countershaft Bearing Replacement 7

1. Remove the countershaft bearing using the special tools as shown.



- 2. Install the oil guide plate.
- Drive the new bearing into the housing using the special tools as shown.

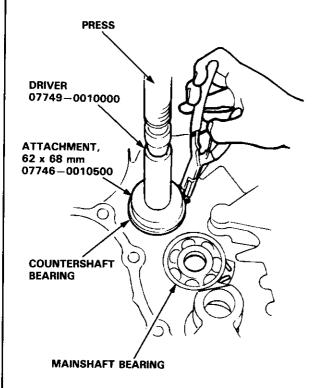


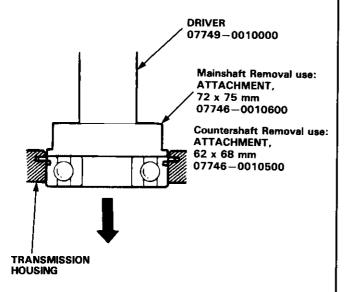
Transmission Housing Bearings

Mainshaft/Countershaft Bearing Replacement

 To remove the mainshaft and countershaft bearings from the transmission housing, expand each snap ring with snap ring pliers, then push the bearing out using the special tools and a press as shown.

NOTE: Do not remove the snap rings unless it's necessary to clean the grooves in the housing.

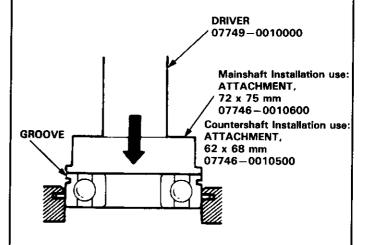




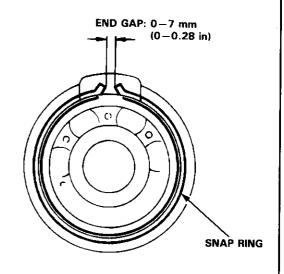
Expand each snap ring with snap ring pliers, insert the new bearing part-way into the housing using the special tools and a press as shown. Install the bearing with the groove facing outside the housing.

NOTE: Coat all parts with ATF.

Release the pliers, then push the bearing down into the housing until the ring snaps in place around it.



- 4. After installing the bearing verify the following:
 - The snap ring is seated in the bearing and housing grooves.
 - The snap ring operates properly.
 - The ring end gap is correct.

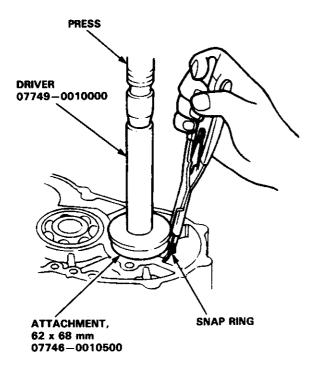


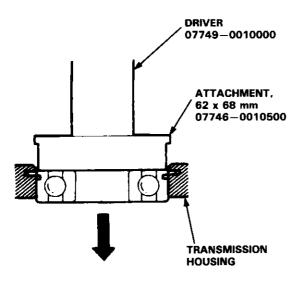


Sub-shaft Bearing Replacement

To remove the sub-shaft bearing from the transmission housing, expand the snap ring with snap ring pliers, then push the bearing out using the special tools and a press as shown.

NOTE: Do not remove the snap ring unless it's necessary to clean the groove in the housing.

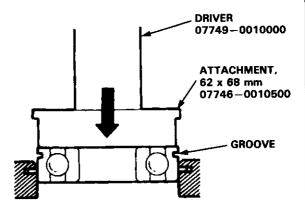




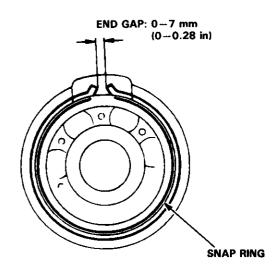
Expand the snap ring with snap ring pliers, insert the new bearing part-way into the housing using the special tools and a press as shown. Install the bearing with the groove facing outside the housing.

NOTE: Coat all parts with ATF.

3. Release the pliers, then push the bearing down into the housing until the ring snaps in place around it, using the special tools as shown.



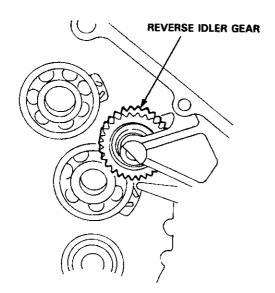
- 4. After installing the bearing verify the following:
 - The snap ring is seated in the bearing and housing grooves.
 - The snap ring operates properly.
 - The ring end gap is correct.



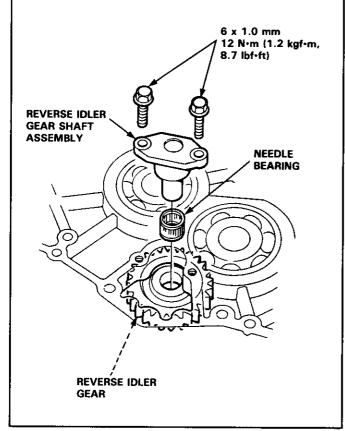
Reverse Idler Gear

- Installation -

1. Install the reverse idler gear.



2. Install the reverse idler gear shaft holder and needle bearing into the transmission housing, then tighten the bolts.

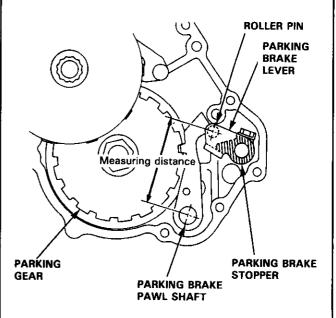


Parking Brake Stopper

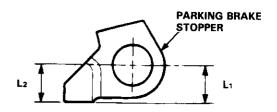
Inspection/Adjustment -

- 1. Set the parking brake lever in the P position.
- Measure the distance between the parking brake pawl shaft and the parking brake lever roller pin as shown.

STANDARD: 72.9-73.9 mm (2.87-2.91 in)



If the measurement is out of tolerance, select and install the appropriate parking brake stopper from the table below.



PARKING BRAKE STOPPER

| Mark | Part Number | L ₁ | L ₂ |
|------|---------------|------------------------|------------------------|
| 1 | 24537-PA9-003 | 11.00 mm (0.433 in) | 11.00 mm (0.433 in) |
| 2 | 24538-PA9-003 | 10.80 mm (0.425 in) | 10.65 mm (0.419 in) |
| 3 | 24539-PA9-003 | 10.60 mm (0.417 in) | 10.30 mm (0.406 in) |

 After replacing the parking brake stopper, make sure the distance is within tolerance.

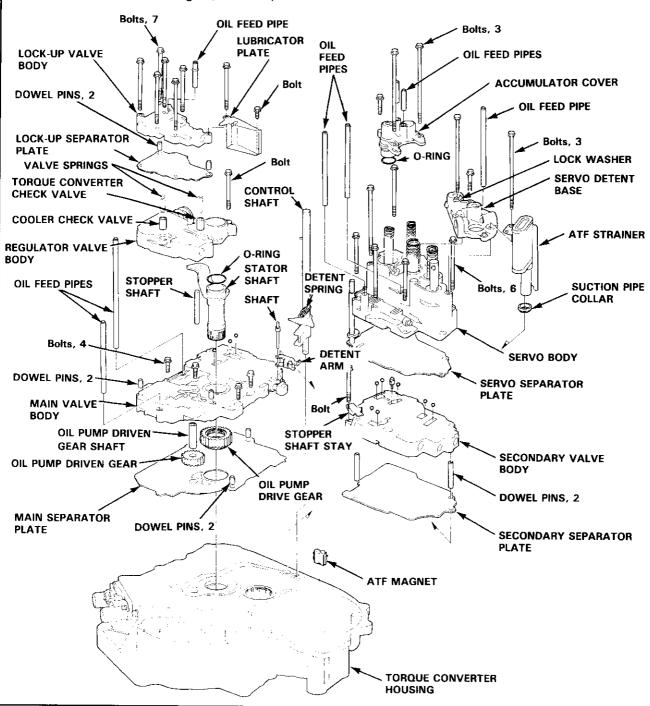
Transmission

- Reassembly

NOTE:

- Coat all parts with ATF.
- Replace the parts below:
 - · O-rings
 - Lock washers
 - Gaskets
 - Locknuts
 - Conical spring washers
 - · Sealing washers

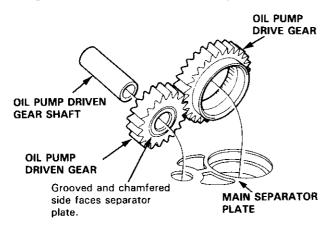
TORQUE: 12 N·m (1.2 kgf·m, 8.7 lbf·ft)



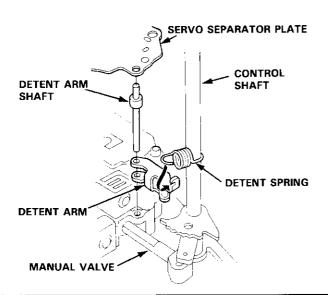


- Install the ATF magnet and suction pipe collar in the torque converter housing.
- Install the main separator plate with two dowel pins on the torque converter housing. Then install the oil pump drive gear, driven gear and driven gear shaft.

NOTE: Install the oil pump driven gear with its grooved and chamfered side facing down.



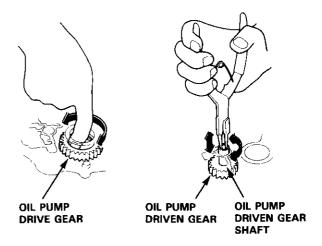
- Loosely install the main valve body with four bolts.
 Make sure the oil pump drive gear rotates smoothly
 in the normal operating direction and the oil pump
 driven gear shaft moves smoothly in the axial and
 normal operating directions.
- 4. Install the secondary valve body, separator plate and two dowel pins on the main valve body.
- Install the control shaft in the housing, with the control shaft and manual valve together.
- 6. Install the detent arm and arm shaft in the main valve body, then hook the detent spring to the detent arm.



- Install the servo body and separator plate with six bolts.
- 8. Install the accumulator cover with three bolts.
- Install the servo detent base and ATF strainer with three bolts and new lock washers.
- 10. Tighten the four bolts to 12 N·m (1.2 kgf·m, 8.7 lbf·ft) on the main valve body. Make sure the oil pump drive gear and oil pump driven gear shaft move smoothly same as in the step 2
- 11. If the oil pump drive gear and oil pump driven gear shaft do not move freely, loosen the four bolts on the main valve body and disassemble the valve bodies.

Realign the oil pump driven gear shaft and reassemble the valve bodies, then retighten the bolts to the specified torque.

CAUTION: Failure to align the oil pump driven gear shaft correctly will result in a seized oil pump drive gear or oil pump driven gear shaft.



- 12. Install the stator shaft and stopper shaft.
- 13. Install the stopper shaft stay on the secondary valve body with the bolt.
- 14. Install the regulator valve body with the bolt.
- Install the torque converter check valve, cooler check valve and valve springs in the regulator valve body.
- Install the lock-up valve body, separator plate, two dowel pins and lubricator plate with the eight bolts.
- 17. Install the oil feed pipes.

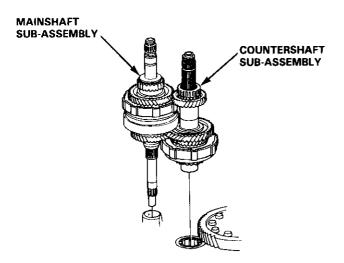
(cont'd)

Transmission

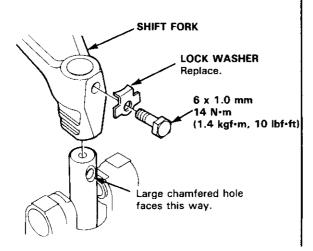
- Reassembly (cont'd) TRANSMISSION HOUSING MOUNTING BOLTS, 18 10 x 1.25 mm 44 N·m (4.5 kgf·m, 33 lbf·ft) **TRANSMISSION** HANGER TRANSMISSION HOUSING **TRANSMISSION** MOUNT BRACKET 12 x 1.25 mm 64 N·m (6.5 kgf·m, TRANSMISSION HOUSING 47 lbf·ft) **GASKET** Replace. **REVERSE GEAR COLLAR CONNECTOR STAY NEEDLE BEARING REVERSE GEAR MAINSHAFT** SUB-ASSEMBLY LOCK WASHER Replace. SHIFT FORK REVERSE SELECTOR **DOWEL PINS, 3** COUNTERSHAFT SUB-ASSEMBLY DIFFERENTIAL **ASSEMBLY** TORQUE CONVERTER HOUSING



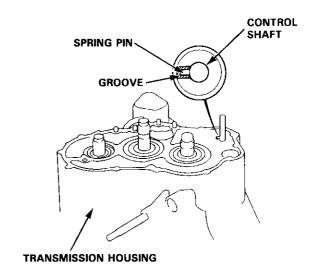
- 18. Install the sub-shaft assembly in the transmission housing (see page 14-138).
- 19. Install the reverse idler gear and gear shaft holder (see page 14-154).
- Install the differential assembly in the torque converter housing.
- 21. Install the mainshaft and countershaft sub-assembly together in the torque converter housing.



22. Turn the shift fork so the large chamfered hole is facing the fork bolt hole, then install the shift fork with the reverse selector and torque the lock bolt. Bend the lock tab against the bolt head.

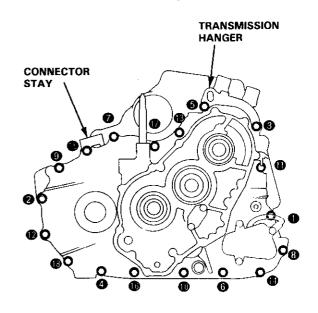


- 23. Install the reverse gear with the collar and needle bearing on the countershaft.
- Align the spring pin of the control shaft with the transmission housing groove by turning the control shaft.
- 25. Place the transmission housing on the torque converter housing with a new gasket and the dowel pins.



26. Install the transmission housing bolts along with the transmission hanger and the connector stay, then torque the bolts in two or more steps in the sequence shown.

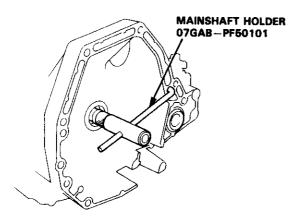
TORQUE: 44 N·m (4.5 kgf·m, 33 lbf·ft)



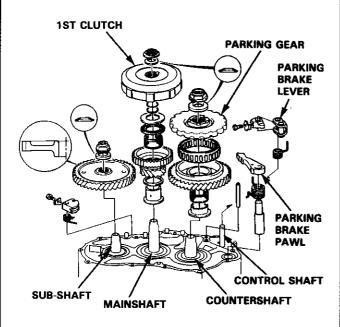
Transmission

- Reassembly (cont'd)

27. Slip the special tool onto the mainshaft as shown.



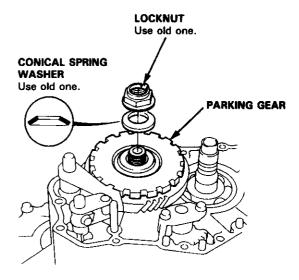
- 28. Install the parking brake lever on the control shaft.
- Install the mainshaft 1st gear collar and thrust washer on the mainshaft.
- Install the countershaft 1st gear collar and needle bearing, then install the countershaft 1st gear/oneway clutch/parking gear assembly on the countershaft.
- 31. Install the parking brake pawl in the transmission housing, then engage it with the parking gear.



32. Use the old locknut and old conical spring washer to tighten the parking gear to the specified torque, then loosen the locknut.

TORQUE: 103 N·m (10.5 kgf·m, 75.9 lbf·ft)

NOTE: Locknut has left-hand threads.



- 33. Install the sub-shaft 1st gear on the sub-shaft.
- 34. Install new O-rings on the mainshaft.

NOTE: Wrap the shaft splines with tape to prevent damage to the O-rings.

35. Assemble the thrust washer, thrust needle bearing, needle bearing and mainshaft 1st gear on the 1st clutch assembly, then install them on the mainshaft.



- 36. Align the hole of the sub-shaft 1st gear with the hole of the transmission housing, then insert a pin to lock the sub-shaft while tightening the sub-shaft locknut.
- 37. Install new conical spring washers and new locknuts on each shaft.

CAUTION: Install the conical spring washers in the direction shown.

38. Tighten the locknuts to the specified torque.

TORQUE:

MAINSHAFT

93 N·m (9.5 kgf·m, 69 lbf·ft)

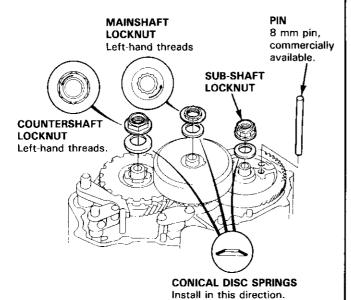
COUNTERSHAFT 103 N·m

(10.5 kgf·m, 75.9 lbf·ft)

SUB-SHAFT

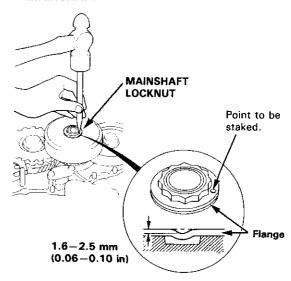
93 N·m (9.5 kgf·m, 69 lbf·ft)

NOTE: Mainshaft and countershaft locknuts have left-hand threads.

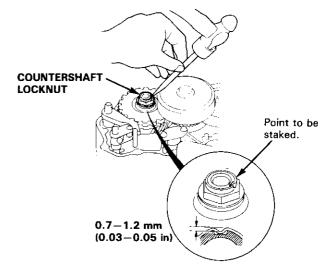


39. Stake each locknut using a 3.5 mm punch.

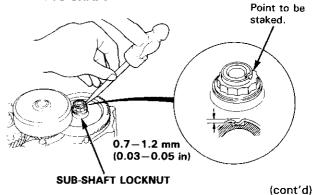
MAINSHAFT



COUNTERSHAFT



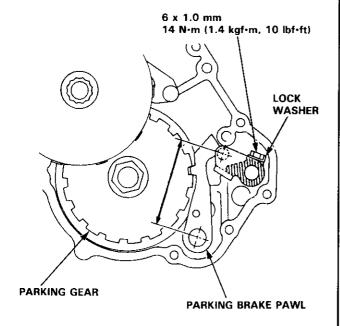
· SUB-SHAFT



Transmission

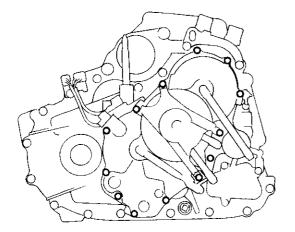
Reassembly (cont'd) -

- 40. Set the parking brake lever in the P position, then verify that the parking brake pawl engages the parking gear.
- 41. If the pawl does not engage fully, check the parking brake pawl stopper clearance as described on page 14-154.
- 42. Tighten the lock bolt and bend the lock tab.



43. Install the right side cover and right side cover protector.

TORQUE: 12 N·m (1.2 kgf·m, 8.7 lbf·ft)



44. Install the throttle control lever with the lever spring on the throttle control shaft.

TORQUE: 7.8 N·m (0.8 kgf·m, 5.8 lbf·ft)

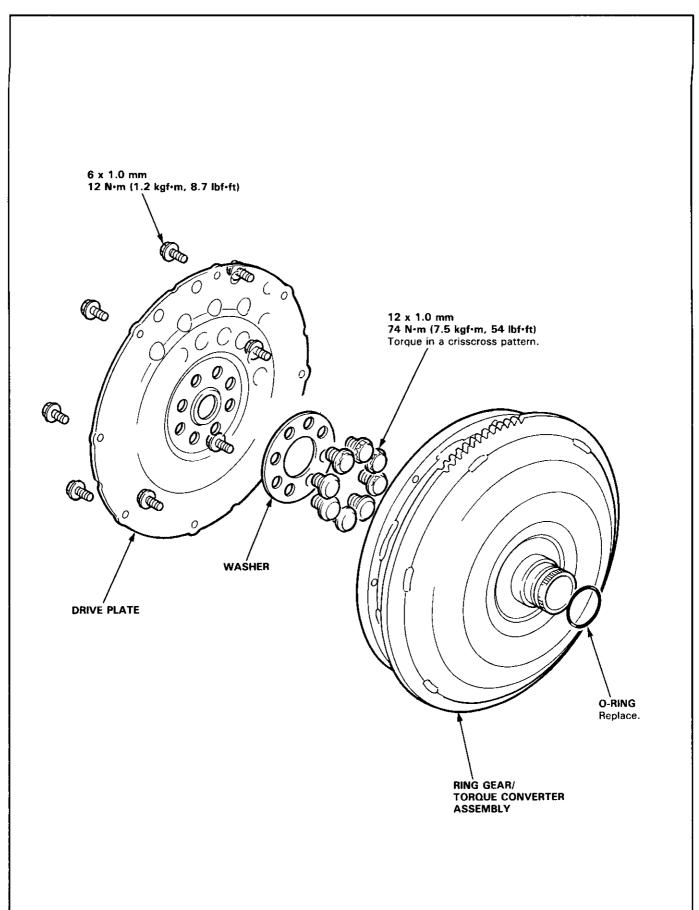
45. Install the tramsmission mount bracket.

TORQUE: 64 N·m (6.5 kgf·m, 47 lbf·ft)

46. Install the ATF cooler pipes and ATF level gauge.

Torque Converter/Drive Plate

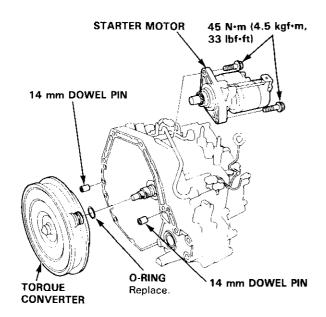




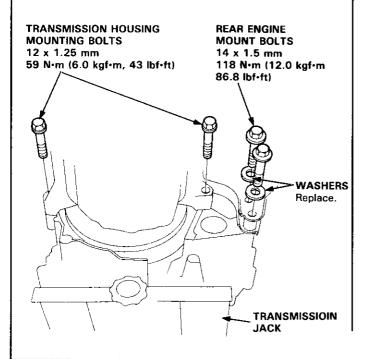
Transmission

- Installation

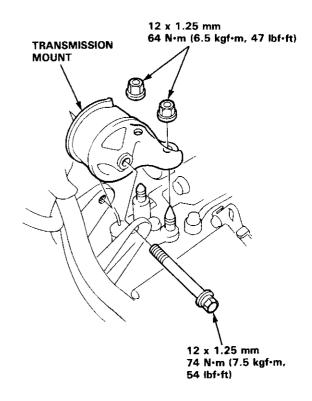
- Flush the ATF cooler as described on pages 14-168 thru 169.
- Install the starter motor on the transmission housing, then install the 14 mm dowel pins in the torque converter housing.



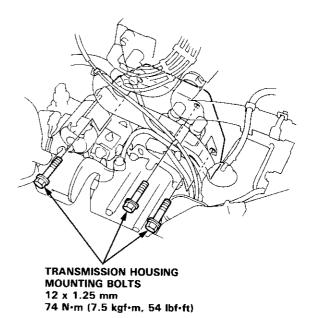
- 3. Place the transmission on a transmission jack, and raise to the engine level.
- 4. Attach the transmission to the engine, then install the transmission housing mounting bolts and two rear engine mounting bolts with new washers.



5. Install the transmission mount.



6. Install the transmission housing mounting bolts.





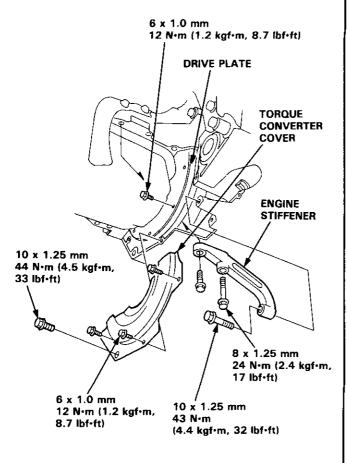
- 7. Remove the transmission jack.
- 8. Attach the torque converter to the drive plate with eight bolts and torque:

Rotate the crankshaft as necessary to tighten the bolts to 1/2 of the specified torque, then to the final torque, in a crisscross pattern.

After tighten the last bolts, check that the crankshaft rotates freely.

TORQUE: 12 N·m (1.2 kgf·m, 8.7 lbf·ft)

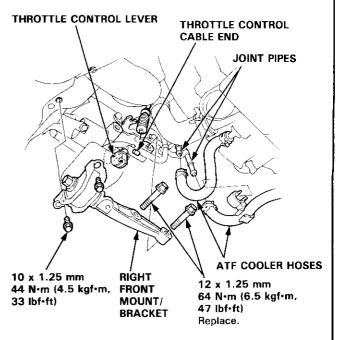
Install the torque converter cover and engine stiffener.



10. Tighten the crankshaft pulley bolt to specified torque.

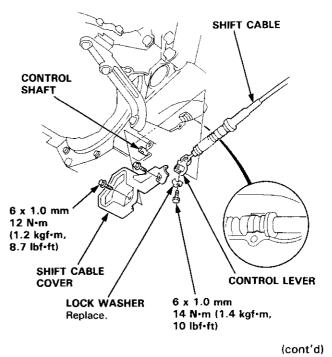
TORQUE: 177 N·m (18.0 kgf·m, 130 lbf·ft)

- 11. Connect the ATF cooler hoses to the joint pipes.
- Connect the throttle control cable to the throttle control lever and install the right front mount/bracket.



Install the control lever with a new lock washer to the control shaft, then install the shift cable cover.

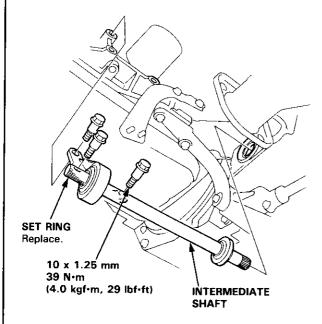
CAUTION: Take care not to bend the shift cable.



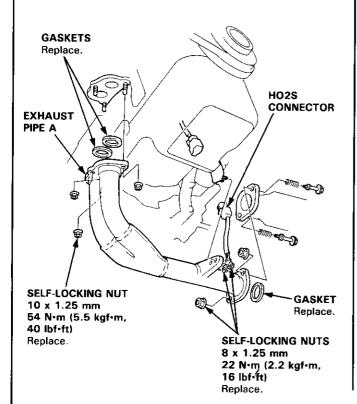
Transmission

- Installation (cont'd) -

- Install new set rings on the end of the intermediate shaft and the driveshaft.
- 15. Install the intermediate shaft.



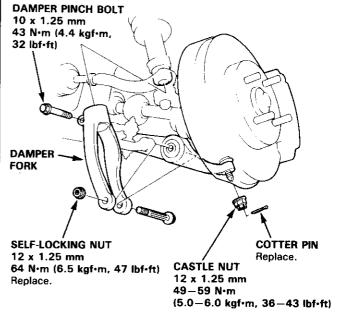
16. Install exhaust pipe A, and connect the heated oxygen sensor (HO2S) connector.



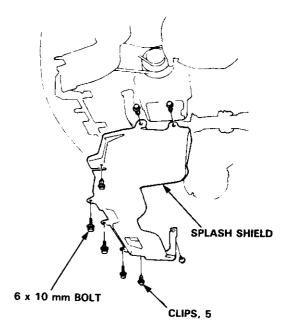
17. Install the right and left drivershafts (see section 16).

NOTE: Turn the right and left steering knuckle fully outward, and slide the right driveshaft into the differential until you feel its spring clip engages the side gear. Slide the left driveshaft into the intermediate shaft until you feel the spring clip of the intermediate shaft engage the driveshaft.

18. Install right damper fork, then install the right and left ball joints to each lower arm with the castle nuts and new cotter pins.

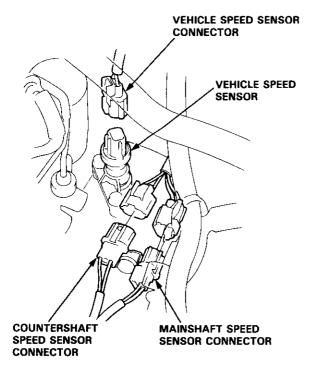


19. Install the splash shield.

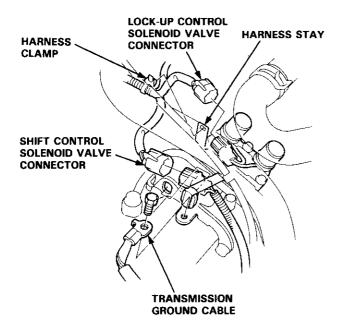




 Connect the vehicle speed sensor (VSS), mainshaft speed sensor and countershaft speed sensor connectors.

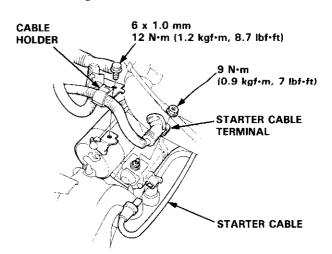


- Connect the lock-up control solenoid valve connector tor and shift control solenoid valve connector, then clamp the lock-up control solenoid harness with the harness stay.
- 22. Connect the transmission ground cable.

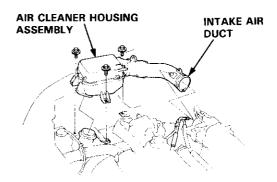


23. Connect the starter cable to the starter motor, and install the cable holder.

NOTE: When installing the starter motor cable, make sure that the crimped side of the ring terminal is facing out (see section 23).



24. Install the air cleaner housing assembly and intake air duct.



- 25. Refill the transmission with ATF(see page 14-93).
- 26. Connect the battery positive (+) and negative (-) cables to the battery.
- 27. Start the engine. Set the parking brake, and shift the transmission through all gears three times.
- 28. Check shift cable adjustment as described on page 14-171.
- 29. Check that front wheel alignment (see section 18).
- 30. Let the engine reach operating temperature (the cooling fan comes on) with the transmission in \overline{N} or \overline{P} position, then turn it off and check the fluid level.
- 31. Road test as described on page 14-90 and 91.

Transmission

- Cooler Flushing -

A WARNING To prevent injury to face and eyes, always wear safety glasses or a face shield when using the transmission flusher.

NOTE: This procedure should be performed before reinstalling the transmission.

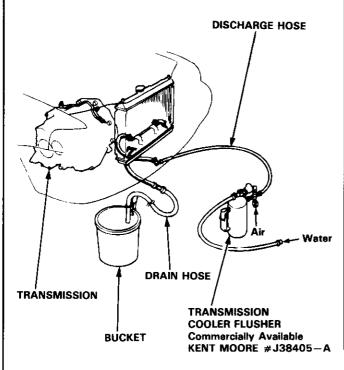
- Check tool and hoses for wear or cracks before using.
 - If wear or cracks are found, replace the hoses before using.
- Using the measuring cup, fill the tank with 21 ounces (approximately 2/3 full) of biodegradable flushing fluid (J35944-20). Do not substitute with any other fluid.

Follow the handling procedure on the fluid container.

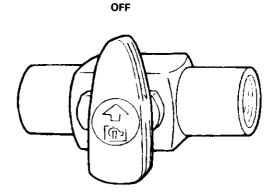
 Secure the flusher filler cap and pressurize the tank with compressed air to between 550-829 kPa (5.6-8.45 kgf/cm², 80-120 psi).

NOTE: The air line should be equipped with a water trap to ensure a dry air system.

- 4. Hang the tool under the vehicle.
- 5. Attach the discharge hose of the tank to the return line of the transmission cooler using a clamp.
- Connect the drain hose to the inlet line of the transmission cooler using a clamp. Securely clamp the opposite end of the drain hose to a bucket or floor drain.



7. With the water and air valves off, attach the water and air supplies to the flusher. (Hot water if available.)



- Turn on the flusher water valve so water will flow through the oil cooler for 10 seconds. If water does not flow through the oil cooler it is completely plugged, cannot be flushed, and must be replaced.
- Depress the trigger to mix the flushing fluid into the water flow. Use the wire clip to hold the trigger down.
- 10. While flushing with the water and flushing fluid for 2 minutes, turn the air valve on for 5 seconds every 15-20 seconds to create a surging action.

AIR PRESSURE: MAX 829 kPa (8.45 kgf/cm², 120 psi)

- 11. Turn the water valve off. Release the trigger, then reverse the hoses to the cooler so you can flush in the opposite direction. Repeat steps 8 through 10.
- Release the trigger and allow water only to rinse the cooler with water for one minute.
- Turn the water valve off and turn off the water supply.
- 14. Turn the air valve on to dry the system out with air for two full minutes or until no moisture is visible leaving the drain hose.

CAUTION: Residual moisture in the oil cooler or pipes can damage the transmission.

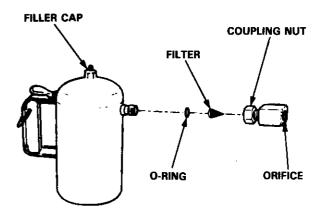
- Remove the flusher from the cooler line. Attach the drain hose to a oil container.
- 16. Install the transmission and leave the drain hose attached to the cooler line.



- 17. Make sure the transmission is in P position.
 Then fill the transmission with ATF and run the engine for 30 seconds or until approximately one quart is discharged.
- 18. Remove the drain hose and reconnect the cooler return hose to the transmission.
- 19. Refill the transmission with ATF to the proper level.

TOOL MAINTENANCE

- 1. Empty and rinse after each use. Fill the can with water and pressurize the can. Flush the discharge line to ensure that the unit is clean.
- If discharge liquid does not foam, the orifice may be blocked.
- 3. To clean, disconnect the plumbing from the tank at the large coupling nut.
- 4. Remove the in-line filter from the discharge side and clean if necessary.
- The fluid orifice is located behind the filter.
 Clean it with the pick stored in the bottom of the tank handle or blow it clean with air. Securely reassemble all parts.

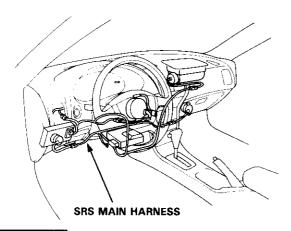


Shift Cable

- Removal/Installation

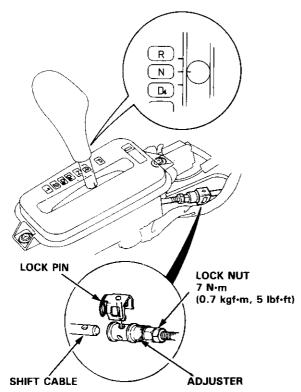
CAUTION:

- All SRS electrical wiring harnesses are covered with yellow insulation.
- Before disconnecting any part of the SRS wire harness, connect the short connectors (see page 23-70).
- Replace the entire affected SRS harness assembly if it has an open circuit or damaged wiring.

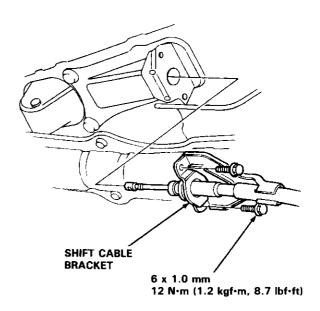


A WARNING Make sure lifts are placed properly (see section 1).

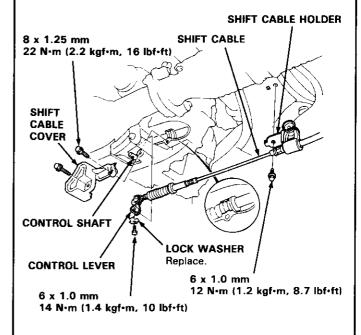
- 1. Remove the center console (see section 20).
- 2. Shift to N position, then remove the lock pin from the cable adjuster.



3. Remove the shift cable bracket.



- 4. Remove the shift cable holder.
- 5. Remove the shift cable cover.
- 6. Remove the control lever from the control shaft, then remove the shift cable. Take care not to bend the cable when removing/installing it.



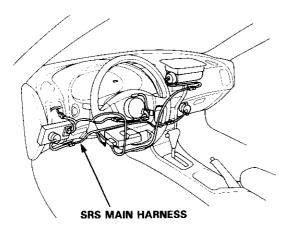
- 7. Install the shift cable in the reverse order of removal.
- Check the cable adjustment on reassembly, on page 14-171.



Adjustment

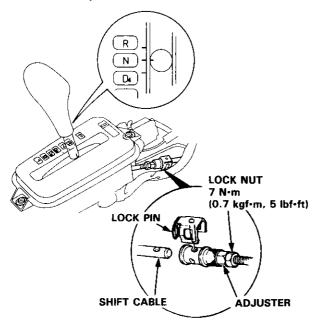
CAUTION:

- All SRS electrical wiring harnesses are covered with yellow insulation.
- Before disconnecting any part of the SRS wire harness, connect the short connectors (see page 23-70).
- Replace the entire affected SRS harness assembly if it has an open circuit or damaged wiring.

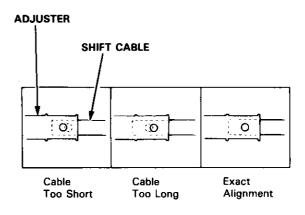


À WARNING Make sure lifts are placed properly (see section 1).

- 1. Start the engine. Shift to P position to see if the reverse gear engages. If so, refer to troubleshooting on page 14-86 thru 89.
- 2. With the engine off, remove the center console (see section 20).
- 3. Shift to N position, then remove the lock pin from the cable adjuster.



4. Check that the hole in the adjuster in perfectly aligned with the hole in the shift cable. There are two holes in the end of the shift cable. They are positioned 90° apart to allow cable adjustment in 1/4 turn increments.



- If not perfectly aligned, loosen the locknut on the shift cable and adjust as required.
- 6. Tighten the locknut to 7 N·m (0.7 kgf·m, 5 lbf·ft).
- Install the lock pin on the adjuster. If you feel the lock pin binding as you reinstall it, the cable is still out of adjustment and must be readjusted.
- Move the selector to each gear and verify that the automatic transaxle gear position indicator follows the automatic transaxle gear position switch.
- Start the engine and check the shift lever in all gears.
 If any gear does not work properly, refer to troubleshooting on page 14-86 thru 89.
- Insert the ignition key into the key cylinder on the shift indicator panel, verify that the shift lock lever is released.

Gearshift Selector

- Disassembly/Reassembly **CAUTION:** • All SRS electrical wiring harnesses are covered with yellow insulation. • Before disconnecting any part of the SRS wire harness, connect the short connectors (see page 23-70). • Replace the entire affected SRS harness assembly if it has an open circuit or damaged wiring. **SRS MAIN HARNESS PUSH KNOB SELECT LEVER KNOB** GREASE Apply non-hardening 9.8 N·m (1.0 kgf·m, 7.2 lbf·ft) thread lock sealant. SHIFT INDICATOR **PANEL** LOCK PIN **ADJUSTER** 9.8 N·m (1.0 kgf·m, 7.2 lbf·ft) GREASE SHIFT LOCK SOLENOID LEVER COVER SILICONE GREASE GREASE SILICONE GREASE **CONTROL BRACKET LOCK PIN ROD** 5 N·m (0.5 kgf·m, 4 lbf·ft) 9.8 N·m (1.0 kgf·m, **AUTOMATIC TRANSAXLE** 7.2 lbf·ft) GEAR POSITION SWITCH SELECT LEVER BRACKET Testing, see Section 23 **CONTROL SEAL** 12 N·m (1.2 kgf·m, 8.7 lbf·ft) 9.8 N·m (1.0 kgf·m, 7.2 lbf·ft)

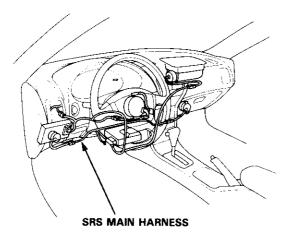
Shift Indicator Panel



- Adjustmet -

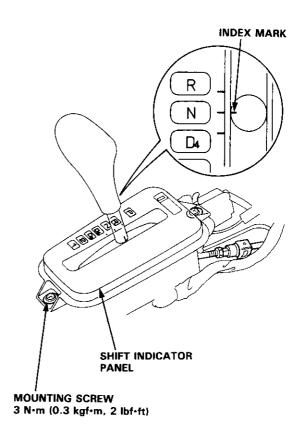
CAUTION:

- All SRS electrical wiring harnesses are covered with yellow insulation.
- Before disconnecting any part of the SRS wire harness, connect the short connectors (see page 23-70).
- Replace the entire affected SRS harness assembly if it has an open circuit or damaged wiring.



- 1. Check that the index mark on the indicator aligns with the N mark on the shift indicator panel when the transmission in NEUTRAL.
- If not aligned, remove the center console (see section 20).
- 3. Remove the shift indicator panel mounting screws and adjust by moving the panel.

NOTE: Whenever the shift indicator panel is removed, reinstall the panel as described above.

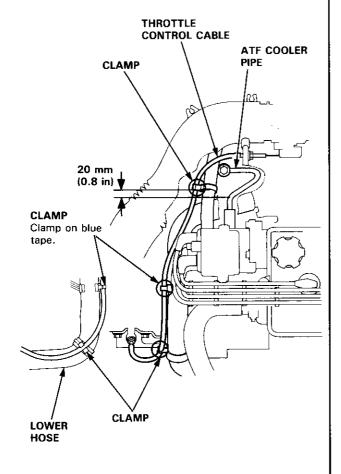


Throttle Control Cable

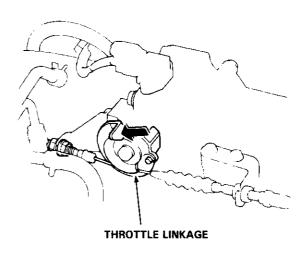
Inspection -

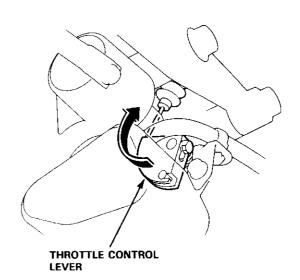
NOTE: Before inspecting the throttle control cable, make sure:

- Throttle cable free play is correct (see section 11).
- Idle speed is correct (see section 11).
- To warm up the engine to normal operating temperature (the cooling fan comes on).
- Verify that the throttle control cable is clamped correctly with three positions.



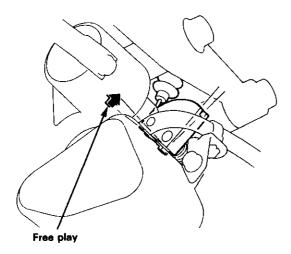
- Verify that the throttle control level is synchronized with the throttle linkage while depressing and releasing the accelerator pedal.
- If the throttle control lever is not synchronized with the throttle linkage, adjust the throttle control cable.



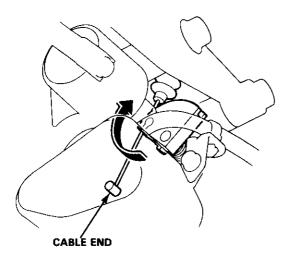




 Check that there is play in the throttle control lever while depressing the accelerator pedal to the full throttle position.



- 5. Remove the cable end of the throttle control cable from the throttle control lever.
- 6. Check that the throttle control lever moves smoothly.

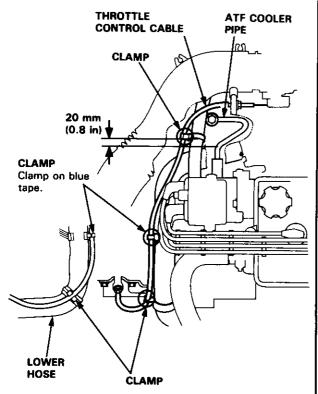


Throttle Control Cable

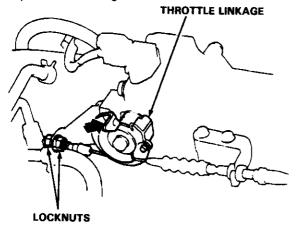
Adjustment -

NOTE: Before adjusting the throttle control cable, make sure:

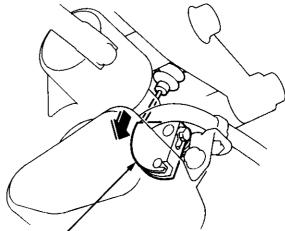
- Throttle cable free play is correct (see section 11).
- Idle speed is correct (see section 11).
- To warm up the engine to normal operating temperature (the cooling fan comes on).
- Verify that the throttle control cable is clamped correctly with three positions.



- 2. Verify that the throttle linkage is in the full-closed position.
- 3. Loosen the locknut of the throttle control cable at the throttle linkage.

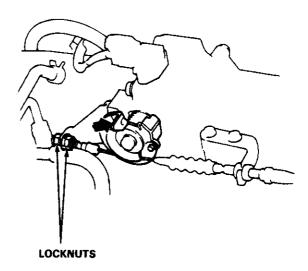


4. Remove the free play of the throttle control cable with the locknut, while pushing the throttle control lever to the full-closed potision as shown.



THROTTLÉ CONTROL LEVER Push in this direction.

5. Tighten the locknuts.



After tightening the locknuts, inspect the synchronization and throttle control lever movement.

Differential

| Manual Transmis | sion | |
|------------------|---------|-------|
| B18B1 engine | ••••• | 15-1 |
| B18C1 engine | | 15-9 |
| Automatic Transi | mission | 15_10 |



Differential (B18B1 engine)

| Special Tools | 15-2 |
|-------------------------------|------|
| Differential | |
| Illustrated Index | 15-3 |
| Backlash Inspection | 15-4 |
| Final Driven Gear Replacement | 15-4 |
| Bearing Replacement | 15-5 |
| Oil Seal Removal | 15-5 |
| Side Clearance Adjustment | 15-6 |
| Oil Seal Installation | 15-8 |



| Ref. No. | Tool Number | Description | Qty | Page Reference |
|------------|---------------|------------------------|-----|----------------|
| 1 | 07JAD-PH80101 | Seal Driver Attachment | 1 | 15-8 |
| 2 | 07746-0030100 | Driver, 40 mm I.D. | 1 | 15-5, 6 |
| 3 | 07749-0010000 | Driver | 1 | 15-8 |
| <u>(4)</u> | 07947-SD90200 | Seal Driver Attachment | 1 | 15-8 |





Differential (B18B1 engine)

- Illustrated Index -



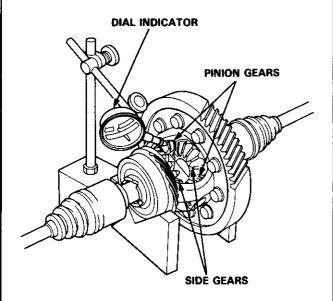
OIL SEAL Replace. Removal, page 15-5 Installation, page 15-8 **FINAL DRIVEN GEAR** Inspect for wear and damage. Replacement, page 15-4 **DIFFERENTIAL CARRIER** Inspection, page 15-4 **BALL BEARING** Inspect for wear and operation. Replacement, page 15-5 BALL BEARING Inspect for wear and operation. Replacement, page 15-5 10 x 1.Ó mm 101 N·m (10.3 kgf·m, 74.5 lbf·ft) Left-hand threads 80 mm SHIM Selection, page 15-6 OIL SEAL Replace. Removal, page 15-5 Installation, page 15-8

Differential (B18B1 engine)

Backlash Inspection

- Place differential assembly on V-blocks and install both axles.
- 2. Measure the backlash of both pinion gears.

Standard (New): 0.05-0.15 mm (0.002-0.006 in)



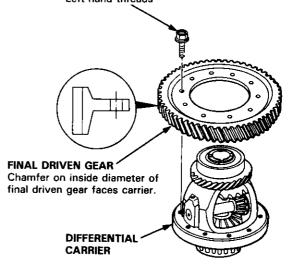
3. If the backlash is not within the standard, replace the differential carrier.

Final Driven Gear Replacement

 Remove the bolts in a crisscross pattern in several steps, and remove the final driven gear from the differential carrier.

NOTE: The final driven gear bolts have left-hand threads.

10 x 1.0 mm 101 N·m (10.3 kgf·m, 74.5 lbf·ft) Left-hand threads



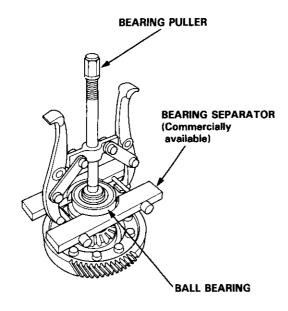
2. Install the final driven gear by tightening the bolts in a crisscross pattern in several steps.



Bearing Replacement

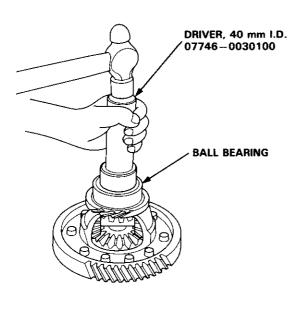
NOTE: Check the ball bearings for wear and rough rotation. If bearings are OK, removal is not necessary.

 Remove the ball bearings using a standard bearing puller and bearing separator as shown.



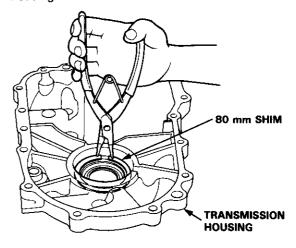
2. Install new ball bearings using the special tool as shown.

NOTE: Drive the bearings squarely until they bottom against the carrier.

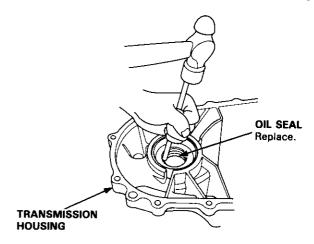


Oil Seal Removal

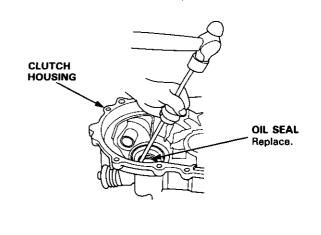
- 1. Remove the differential assembly.
- Remove the 80 mm shim from the transmission housing.



3. Remove the oil seal from the transmission housing.



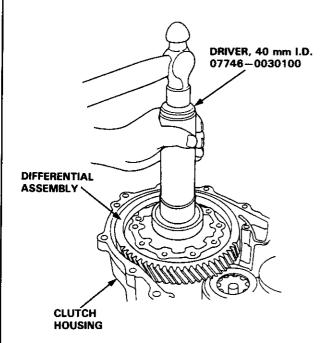
4. Remove the oil seal from the clutch housing.



Differential (B18B1 engine)

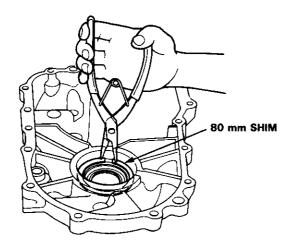
Side Clearance Adjustment

 Install the differential assembly, making sure it bottoms in the clutch housing, using the special tool as shown.



2. Install the 80 mm shim.

NOTE: Install the 80 mm shim that was removed.



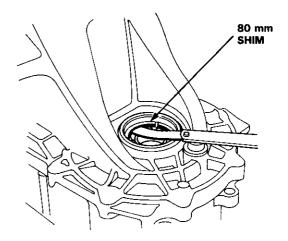
3. Install the transmission housing (see section 13).

NOTE: Do not apply liquid gasket to the mating surface of the clutch housing.

4. Tighten the transmission housing attaching bolts (see section 13).

8 x 1.25 mm 27 N·m (2.8 kgf·m, 20 lbf·ft)

- 5. Use the special tool to bottom the differential assembly in the clutch housing.
- Measure clearance between the 80 mm shim and bearing outer race in the transmission housing.





7. If the clearance is not within the standard, select a new 80 mm shim from the following table.

Standard: 0-0.10 mm (0.004 in)

80 mm Shim

| | Part Number | Thickness |
|---|---------------|---------------------|
| Α | 41441-PL3-B00 | 1.0 mm (0.0394 in) |
| В | 41442-PL3-B00 | 1.1 mm (0.0433 in) |
| С | 41443-PL3-B00 | 1.2 mm (0.0472 in) |
| D | 41444-PL3-B00 | 1.3 mm (0.0512 in) |
| Ε | 41445-PL3-B00 | 1.4 mm (0.0551 in) |
| F | 41446-PL3-B00 | 1.5 mm (0.0591 in) |
| G | 41447-PL3-B00 | 1.6 mm (0.0630 in) |
| Н | 41448-PL3-B00 | 1.7 mm (0.0669 in) |
| J | 41449-PL3-B00 | 1.8 mm (0.0709 in) |
| Κ | 41450-PL3-B00 | 1.05 mm (0.0413 in) |
| Ļ | 41451-PL3-B00 | 1.15 mm (0.0453 in) |
| М | 41452-PL3-B00 | 1.25 mm (0.0492 in) |
| N | 41453-PL3-B00 | 1.35 mm (0.0532 in) |
| Р | 41454-PL3-B00 | 1.45 mm (0.0571 in) |
| Q | 41455-PL3-B00 | 1.55 mm (0.0610 in) |
| R | 41456-PL3-B00 | 1.65 mm (0.0650 in) |
| S | 41457-PL3-B00 | 1.75 mm (0.0689 in) |
| T | 41441-P21-000 | 1.85 mm (0.0728 in) |
| U | 41442-P21-000 | 1.90 mm (0.0748 in) |
| V | 41443-P21-000 | 1.95 mm (0.0768 in) |

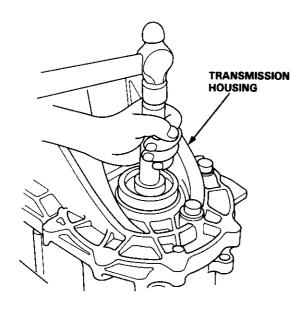
NOTE: If the clearance measured in step 6 is within the standard, it is not necessary to go to step 9.

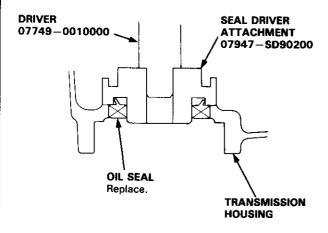
- 8. Remove the bolts and transmission housing.
- 9. Replace the 80 mm shim selected in step 7, then recheck the clearance.
- 10. Reassemble the transmission and install the transmission housing (see section 13).

Differential (B18B1 engine)

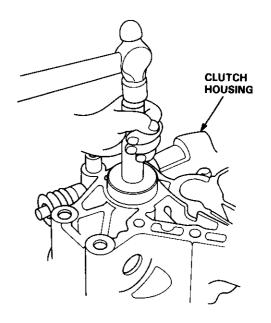
Oil Seal Installation

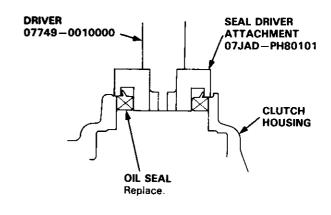
1. Install the oil seal into the transmission housing using the special tools as shown.





2. Install the oil seal into the clutch housing using the special tools as shown.



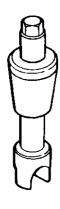


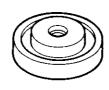
Differential (B18C1 engine)

| Special Tools | 15-10 |
|-------------------------------------|-------|
| Differential | |
| Illustrated Index | 15-11 |
| Backlash Inspection | 15-12 |
| Final Driven Gear Replacement | 15-12 |
| Tapered Roller Bearing Replacement. | 15-13 |
| Oil Seal Removal | 15-13 |
| Bearing Outer Race Replacement | 15-14 |
| Tapered Roller Bearing Preload | |
| Adjustment | 15-15 |
| Oil Seal Installation | 15-17 |



| Ref. No. | Tool Number | Description | Qty | Page Reference |
|----------|---------------|-------------------------|-----|----------------|
| 1 | 07HAJ-PK40201 | Preload Inspection Tool | 1 | 15-15 |
| 2 | 07JAD-PH80101 | Seal Driver Attachment | 1 1 | 15-14, 17 |
| 3 | 07NAD-PX40100 | Driver Attachment | 1 | 15-14 |
| 4 | 07746-0030100 | Driver, 40 mm I.D. | 1 | 15-13, 14 |
| (5) | 07749-0010000 | Driver | 1 1 | 15-14, 17 |
| 6 | 07947-SD90200 | Seal Driver Attachment | i | 15-17 |



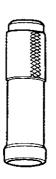




1

2

3



The summer of the second



4

(5)

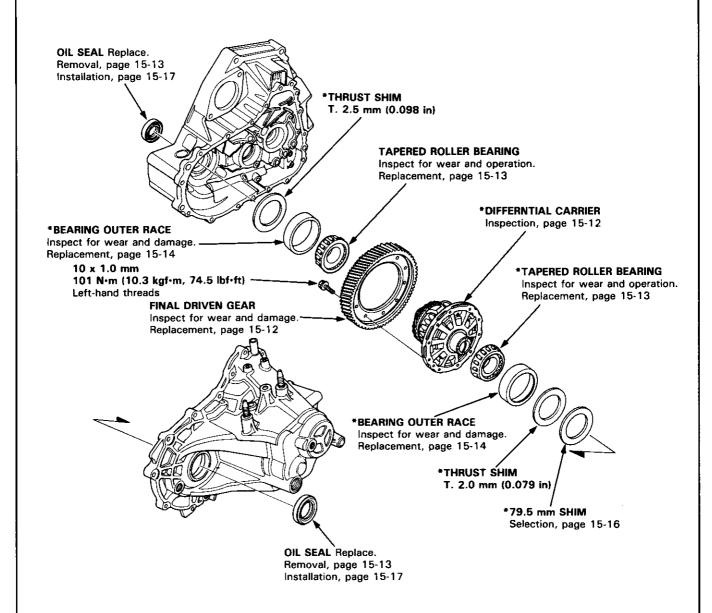
6

Differential (B18C1 engine)



Illustrated Index -

NOTE: If the * mark parts were replaced, the tapered roller bearing preload must be adjusted (see page 15-15).

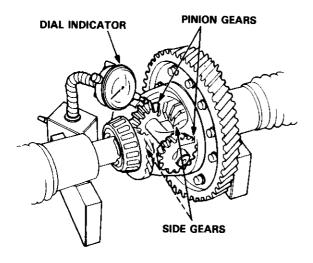


Differential (B18C1 engine)

- Backlash Inspection -

- Place differential assembly on V-blocks and install both axles.
- 2. Measure the backlash of both pinion gears.

Standard (New): 0.05-0.15 mm (0.002-0.006 in)



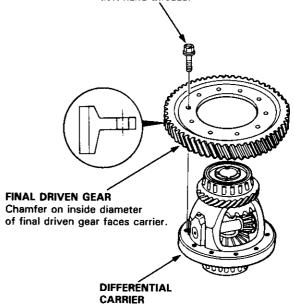
3. If the backlash is not within the standard, replace the differential carrier.

Final Driven Gear Replacement

 Remove the bolts in a crisscross pattern in several steps, and remove the final driven gear from the differential carrier.

NOTE: The final driven gear bolts have left-hand threads.

10 x 1.0 mm 101 N·m (10.3 kgf·m, 74.5 lbf·ft) Left-hand threads.



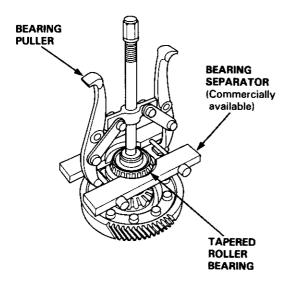
Install the final driven gear by tightening the bolts in a crisscross pattern in several steps.



Tapered Roller Bearing Replacement

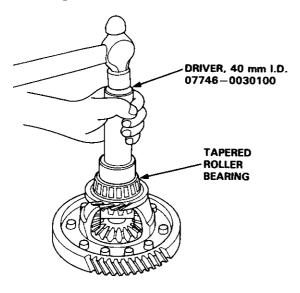
NOTE:

- The tapered roller bearing and bearing outer race should be replaced as a set.
- Inspect and adjust the tapered roller bearing preload whenever the tapered roller bearing is replaced.
- Check the tapered roller bearings for wear and rough rotation. If tapered roller bearings are OK, removal is not necessary.
- Remove the tapered roller bearings using a bearing puller and bearing separator as shown.



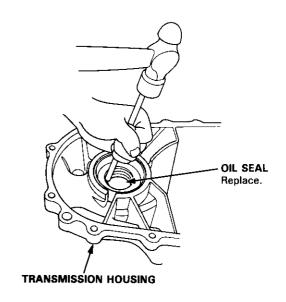
2. Install new tapered roller bearings using the special tool as shown.

NOTE: Drive the tapered roller bearings on until they bottom against the differential carrier.

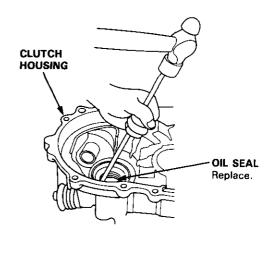


Oil Seal Removal

- 1. Remove the differential assembly.
- 2. Remove the oil seal from the transmission housing.



3. Remove the oil seal from the clutch housing.



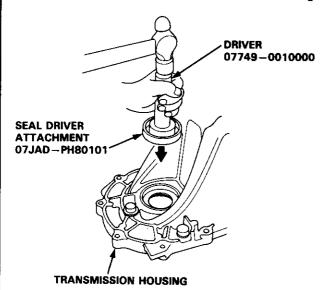
Differential (B18C1 engine)

- Bearing Outer Race Replacement

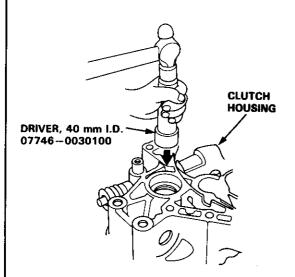
CAUTION: Do not reuse the thrust shim and the 79.5 mm shim if the outer race was driven out.

NOTE:

- The bearing outer race and tapered roller bearing should be replaced as a set.
- Inspect and adjust the tapered roller bearing preload whenever the tapered roller bearing is replaced.
- Remove the oil seals from the transmission housing and clutch housing (see page 15-13).
- 2. Remove the bearing outer race, the thrust shim, and the 79.5 mm shim from the transmission housing.



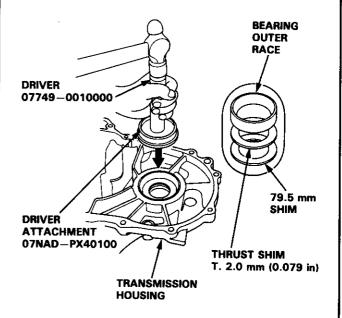
3. Remove the bearing outer race and thrust shim from the clutch housing.

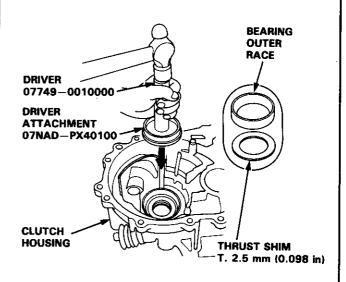


4. Install the new thrust shim and 79.5 mm shim, then drive the bearing outer races in the both housings using the special tools as shown.

NOTE:

- Install the bearing outer race squarely.
- Check that there is no clearance between the bearing outer race, thrust shim, and transmission housing.





5. Install the oil seal (see page 15-17).



Tapered Roller Bearing Preload Adjustment

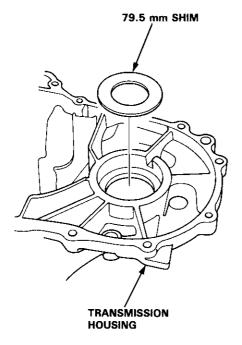
NOTE: If any of the items listed below were replaced, the tapered roller bearing preload must be adjusted.

- Transmission housing
- Clutch housing
- Differential carrier
- Tapered roller bearing and bearing outer race
- Thrust shim
- 1. Remove the bearing outer race, the thrust shim, and the 79.5 mm shim from the transmission housing (see page 15-14).

CAUTION: Do not reuse the thrust shim if the bearing outer race was driven out.

First try the same size 79.5 mm shim that was removed.

CAUTION: Do not use more than two shims.



3. Install the thrust shim and 79.5 mm shim, then drive the bearing outer race in the transmission housing (see page 15-14).

NOTE:

- Install the bearing outer race squarely.
- Check that there is no clearance between the bearing outer race, thrust shim and transmission housing.
- 4. With the mainshaft and countershaft removed, install the differential assembly, and torque the clutch housing and transmission housing.

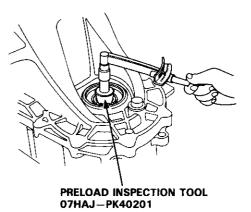
8 x 1.25 mm 27 N·m (2.8 kgf·m, 20 lbf·ft)

NOTE: It is not necessary to use sealing agent between the housings.

- 5. Rotate the differential assembly in both directions to seat the tapered roller bearings.
- Measure the starting torque of the differential assembly with the special tool and a torque wrench.

NOTE: Measure the tapered roller bearing preload in both directions.

STANDARD: 2.11-3.04 N·m (21.5-31.0 kgf·cm, 18.7-26.9 lbf·in)



(cont'd)

Differential (B18C1 engine)

Tapered Roller Bearing Preload Adjustment (cont'd)

 If the tapered roller bearing preload is not within the standard, select the 79.5 mm shim from the following table which will give the tapered roller bearing preload closest to the standard mean value of 2.50 N·m (25.5 kgf·cm, 22 lbf·in).

NOTE: Changing the 79.5 mm shim to the next size will increase or decrease tapered roller bearing preload about $0.3-0.4~\text{N} \cdot \text{m}$ (3-4 kgf·cm, $2.6-3.5~\text{lbf} \cdot \text{in}$).

79.5 mm SHIM

| | Part Number | Thickness | | | |
|----|---------------|---------------------|--|--|--|
| AA | 41460-PY4-000 | 0.66 mm (0.0260 in) | | | |
| АВ | 41461-PY4-000 | 1.17 mm (0.0461 in) | | | |
| AC | 41462-PY4-000 | 1.20 mm (0.0472 in) | | | |
| ΑD | 41463-PY4-000 | 1.23 mm (0.0484 in) | | | |
| ΑE | 41464-PY4-000 | 1.26 mm (0.0496 in) | | | |
| AF | 41465-PY4-000 | 1.29 mm (0.0508 in) | | | |
| AG | 41466-PY4-000 | 1.32 mm (0.0520 in) | | | |
| ΑH | 41467-PY4-000 | 1.35 mm (0.0531 in) | | | |
| ΑI | 41468-PY4-000 | 1.38 mm (0.0543 in) | | | |
| ΑJ | 41469-PY4-000 | 1.41 mm (0.0555 in) | | | |
| AK | 41470-PY4-000 | 1.44 mm (0.0567 in) | | | |
| AL | 41471-PY4-000 | 1.47 mm (0.0579 in) | | | |
| АМ | 41472-PY4-000 | 1.50 mm (0.0591 in) | | | |
| AN | 41473-PY4-000 | 1.53 mm (0.0602 in) | | | |
| AO | 41474-PY4-000 | 1.56 mm (0.0614 in) | | | |
| AP | 41475-PY4-000 | 1.59 mm (0.0626 in) | | | |
| ΩA | 41476-PY4-000 | 1.62 mm (0.0638 in) | | | |
| AR | 41477-PY4-000 | 1.65 mm (0.0650 in) | | | |
| AS | 41478-PY4-000 | 1.68 mm (0.0661 in) | | | |
| ΑT | 41479-PY4-000 | 1.71 mm (0.0673 in) | | | |
| ΑU | 41480-PY4-000 | 1.74 mm (0.0685 in) | | | |
| ΑV | 41481-PY4-000 | 1.77 mm (0.0697 in) | | | |
| ΑW | 41482-PY4-000 | 1.80 mm (0.0709 in) | | | |
| ΑX | 41483-PY4-000 | 1.83 mm (0.0720 in) | | | |

- 8. Recheck the tapered roller bearing preload.
- 9. How to select the correct 79.5 mm shim:
 - —1) Compare the tapered roller bearing preload you get with the 79.5 mm shim that was removed with the specified mean preload of 2.50 N-m (25.5 kgf-cm, 22 lbf-in).
 - —2) If your measured tapered roller bearing preload is less than specified, subtract your's from the specified.

If your's is more than specified, subtract the specified from your measurement.

For example with a 1.38 mm (0.0543 in) shim:

A specified 2.50 N·m (25.5 kgf-cm, 22 lbf-in)
 you measure 0.54 N·m (5.5 kgf-cm, 5 lbf-in)
 2.0 N·m (20 kgf-cm, 18 lbf-in) less

Byou measure 3.29 N·m (33.5 kgf·cm, 29 lbf·in) - specified 2.50 N·m (25.5 kgf·cm, 22 lbf·in)

0.8 N·m (8 kgf·cm, 7 lbf·in) more

- —3) Each shim size up or down from standard makes about 0.3—0.4 N·m (3—4 kgf·cm, 2.6—3.5 lbf·in) difference in tapered roller bearing preload.
 - In example (A), your measured tapered roller bearing preload was 2.0 N·m (20 kgf·cm, 18 lbf·in) less than standard so you need a 79.5 mm shim five sizes thicker than standard (try the 1.53 mm (0.0602 in) shim and recheck).
 - In example (B) your's was 0.8 N·m (8 kgf·cm, 7 lbf·in) more than standard, so you need a thrust shim two sizes thinner (try the 1.32 mm (0.0520 in) shim and recheck).
- 10. After adjusting the tapered roller bearing preload, assemble the transmission, and install the transmission housing (see section 13).

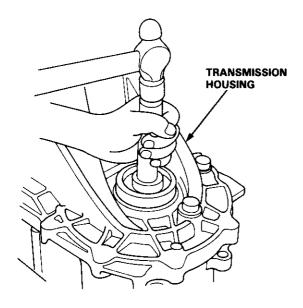
8 x 1.25 mm 27 N·m (2.8 kgf·m, 20 lbf·ft)

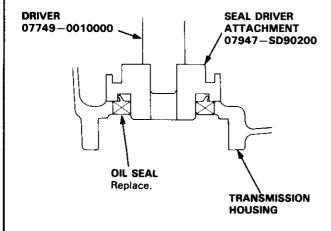
11. Rotate the differential assembly in both directions to seat the tapered roller bearings.



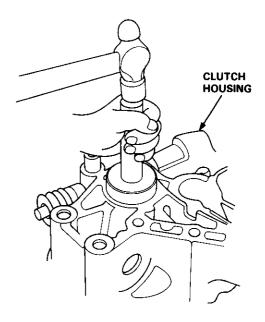
Oil Seal Installation

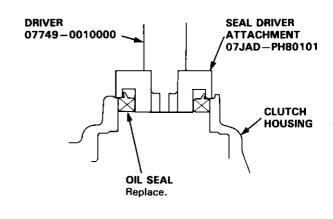
 Install the oil seal into the transmission housing using the special tools as shown.





Install the new oil seal into the clutch housing using the special tools as shown.





Differential (Automatic Transmission)

| Special Tools | 15-20 |
|---------------------------------------|-------|
| Differential (Automatic Transmission) | |
| Illustrated Index | 15-21 |
| Backlash Inspection | 15-22 |
| Bearing Replacement | 15-22 |
| Differential Carrier Replacement | 15-23 |
| Oil Seal Removal | 15-24 |
| Oil Seal Installation/ | |
| Side Clearance | 15-24 |



| Ref. No. | Tool Number | Description | Qty | Page Reference |
|----------|---------------|--------------------|-----|----------------|
| 1 | 07JAD-PH80200 | Pilot, 26 x 30 mm | 1 | 15-26 |
| 2 | 07NAD-P200100 | Driver, 52 x 55 mm | 1 | 15-26 |
| 3 | 07746-0030100 | Driver, 40 mm I.D. | 1 | 15-22, 24, 25 |
| 4 | 07749-0010000 | Driver | 1 | 15-26 |
| (5) | 07947-SD90200 | Driver Attachment | 1 | 15-26 |



1



2



3



4

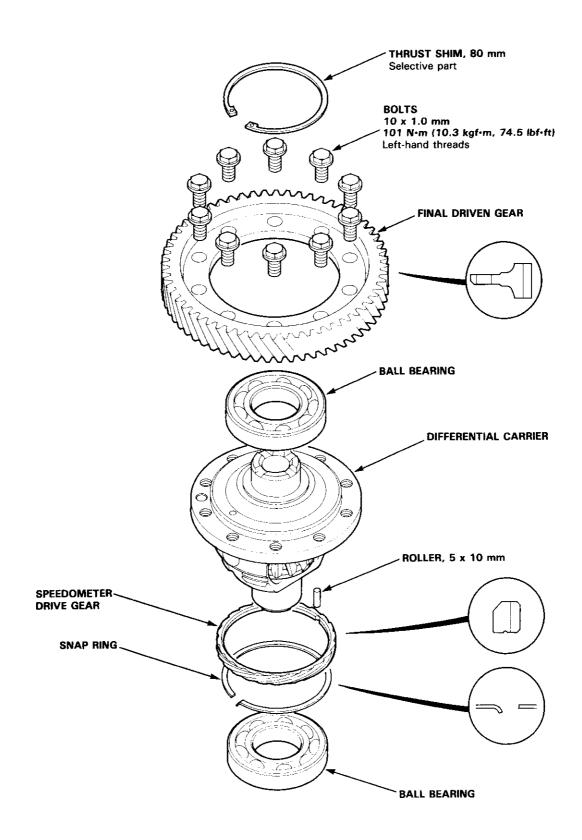


(5)

Differential (Automatic Transmission)



Illustrated Index -

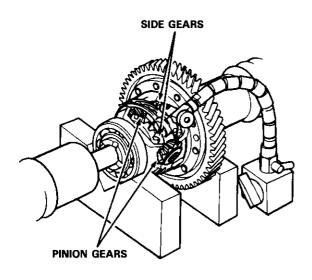


Differential (Automatic Transmission)

- Backlash Inspection -

- 1. Place the differential assembly on V-blocks and install both axles.
- 2. Check backlash of both pinion gears.

Standard (New): 0.05-0.15 mm (0.002-0.006 in)

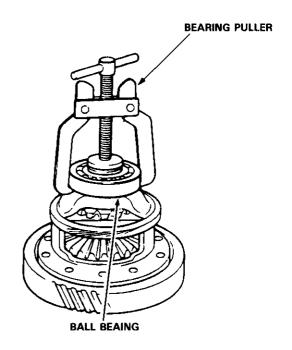


If backlash is out of tolerance, replace the differential carrier.

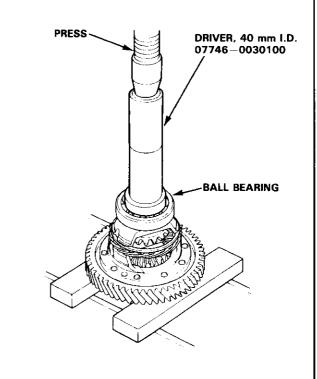
Bearing Replacement -

NOTE: Check the bearings for wear and rough rotation. If the bearings are OK, removal is not necessary.

1. Remove the ball bearings using a bearing puller.



Install the new ball bearings using the special tool with a press as shown.



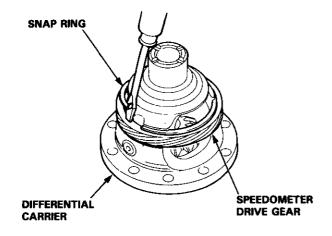


Differential Carrier Replacement

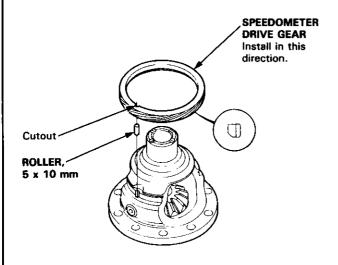
 Remove the final driven gear from the differential carrier.

NOTE: The final driven gear bolts have left-hand threads.

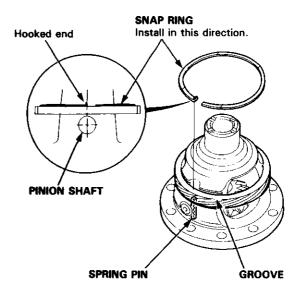
2. Pry the snap ring off differential carrier, then remove the speedometer drive gear and 5 x 10 mm roller.



- 3. Install the 5×10 mm roller in the differential carrier.
- Install the speedometer drive gear with its chamfered side facing the carrier. Align the cutout on the bore of the speedometer drive gear with the 5 x 10 mm roller.



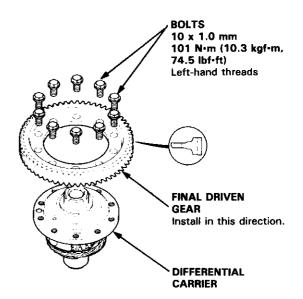
 Align the hooked end of the snap ring with the pinion shaft as shown, then install the snap ring in the differential carrier groove.



6. Install the final driven gear, then tighten the bolts to the specified torque.

TORQUE: 101 N-m (10.3 kgf·m, 74.5 lbf·ft)

NOTE: The final driven gear bolts have left-hand threads.

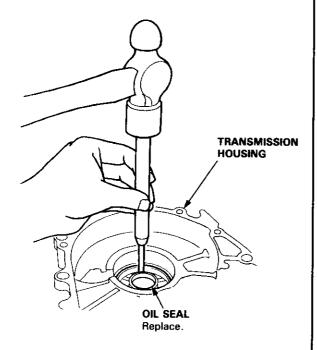


7. Install the ball bearings (see page 15-22).

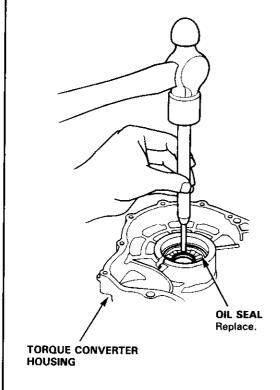
Differential (Automatic Transmission)

- Oil Seal Removal -

- 1. Remove the differential assembly.
- 2. Remove the oil seal from the transmission housing.



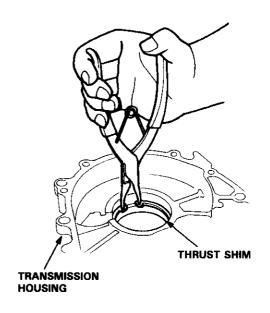
3. Remove the oil seal from the torque converter housing.



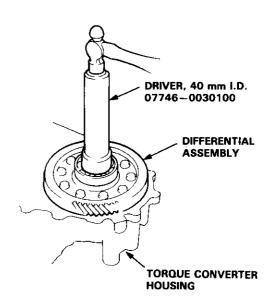
- Oil Seal Installation/Side Clearance -

 Install a 2.50 mm (0.098 in) thrust shim in the transmission housing.

NOTE: Do not install the oil seal yet.



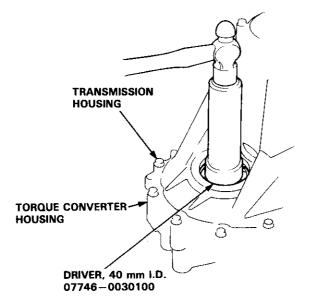
2. Install the differential assembly into the torque converter housing using the special tool as shown.



3. Assemble the transmission (see section 14). Install the transmission housing and tighten the bolts (see section 14).

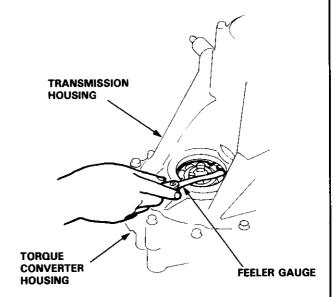


 Tap on the transmission housing side of the differential assembly with the special tool to seat the differential assembly in the torque converter housing.



Measure the clearance between the thrust shim and outer race of the ball bearing in the transmission housing.

STANDARD: 0-0.15 mm (0-0.006 in)



6. If out of limits, select a new thrust shim from the following table:

THRUST SHIM, 80 mm

| Part Number | Thickness |
|---------------|----------------------|
| 90414-689-000 | 2.50 mm (0.09843 in) |
| 90415-689-000 | 2.60 mm (0.10236 in) |
| 90416-689-000 | 2.70 mm (0.10630 in) |
| 90417-689-000 | 2.80 mm (0.11024 in) |
| 90418-689-000 | 2.90 mm (0.11416 in) |
| 90419-PH8-000 | 3.00 mm (0.11811 in) |

NOTE: If the thrust shim-to-ball bearing outer race clearance measured in step 5 is less than the specification, it is not necessary to perform steps 7 and 8.

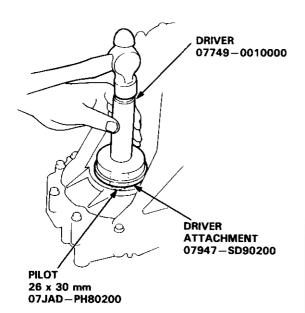
- 7. Remove the transmission housing.
- 8. Replace the 2.50 mm (0.098 in) thrust shim with the one of the correct thickness selected in step 6.
- 9. Install the transmission housing (see section 14).

(cont'd)

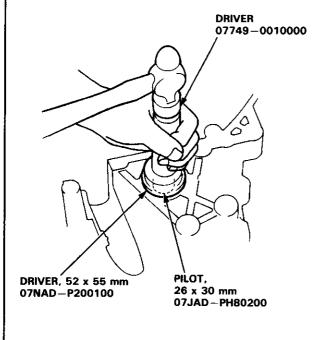
Differential (Automatic Transmission)

Oil Seal Installation/Side Clearance (cont'd)

9. Install the oil seal in the transmission housing using the special tools as shown.



10. Install the oil seal in the torque converter housing using the special tools as shown.



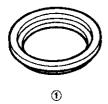
Driveshafts

| Special Tools | 16-2 |
|--------------------|-------|
| Driveshafts | |
| Inspection | 16-3 |
| Removal | 16-3 |
| Disassembly | 16-5 |
| Reassembly | 16-7 |
| Installation | 16-10 |
| Intermediate Shaft | |
| Removal | 16-12 |
| Disassembly | 16-12 |
| Reassembly | 16-13 |
| Installation | |



Special Tools

| Ref. No. | Tool Number | Description | Qty | Page Reference |
|----------|-----------------|-----------------------------|-----|----------------|
| ① | 07JAF - SH20400 | Support Base Attachment | 1 | 16-13 |
| 2 | 07LAD - PW50601 | Attachment, 40 x 50 mm l.D. | 1 | 16-14 |
| 3 | 07MAC - SL00200 | Ball Joint Remover, 28 mm | 1 | 16-4 |
| ④ | 07746 - 0010300 | Attachment, 42 x 47 mm | 1 | 16-13 |
| <u> </u> | 07746 - 0010400 | Attachment, 52 x 55 mm | 1 | 16-14 |
| 6 | 07746 - 0030400 | Attachment, 35 mm I.D. | 1 | 16-14 |
| ② | 07749 - 0010000 | Driver | 1 | 16-13, 14 |
| <u>®</u> | 07965 - SD90100 | Support Base | 1 | 16-13 |



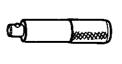




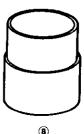








•



16-2

Driveshafts

\odot

Inspection

Driveshaft Boot

Check the boots on the driveshaft for cracks, damage, leaking grease or loose boot bands.

If any damage is found, replace the boot and boot bands.

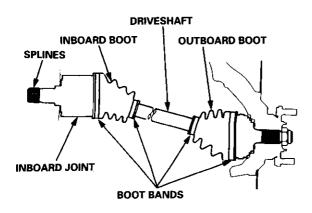
Loose Splines

Turn the driveshaft by hand and make sure the splines and joint are not excessively loose.

If damage is found, replace the inboard joint.

Twisted or Cracked

Make sure the driveshaft is not twisted or cracked. Replace it if necessary.

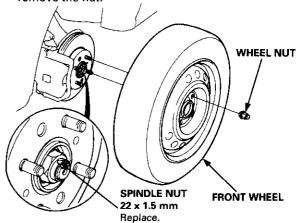


Removal

- 1. Loosen the wheel nuts slightly.
- Raise the front of car and support it with safety stands in the proper locations (see section 1).
- 3. Remove the wheel nuts and front wheels.
- Drain the transmission oil or fluid (see section 13 or 14).

NOTE: It is not necessary to drain the differential oil when the left driveshaft is removed.

Raise the locking tab on the spindle nut, then remove the nut.

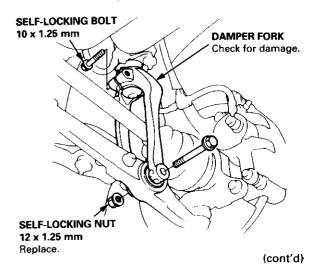


6. Remove the self-locking nut and self-locking bolt.

CAUTION: Replace the self-locking bolts if you can easily thread a non-self-locking nut past their nylon locking inserts.

(If should require 1 N·m (0.1 kgf·m, 0.7 lbf·ft) of torque to turn the nut on the bolt).

7. Remove the damper fork.



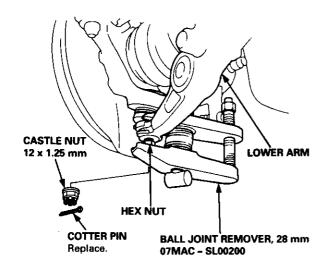
Driveshafts

Removal (cont'd)

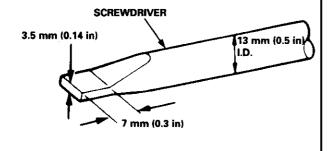
- 8. Remove the cotter pin from the lower arm ball joint castle nut, and remove the nut.
- Install a 12 mm hex nut on the ball joint. Be sure that the hex nut is flush with the ball joint pin end, or the threaded section of the ball joint pin might be damaged by the ball joint remover.
- Use the ball joint remover, 28 mm, as shown on page 18-11, to separate the ball joint and lower arm.

CAUTION: Be careful not to damage the ball joint boot.

NOTE: If necessary, apply penetrating type lubricant to loosen the ball joint.



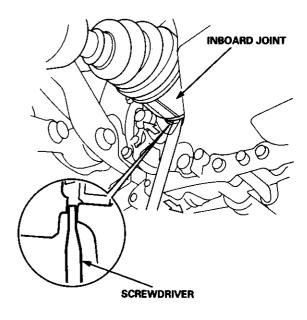
11. Pry the driveshaft assembly with a screwdriver, as shown, to force the set ring at the driveshaft end past the groove.



12. Pull the inboard joint, and remove the right driveshaft from the differential case as an assembly.

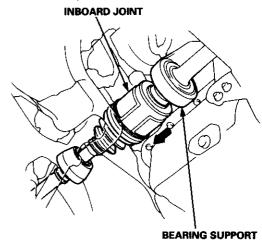
CAUTION:

- Do not pull on the driveshaft, as the inboard joint may come apart.
- Use care when prying out the assembly, and pull it straight to avoid damaging the differential oil seal or the intermediate shaft outer seal.



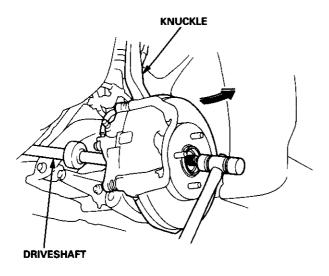
- Left Driveshaft:

Remove the left driveshaft from the bearing support by tapping the inboard joint of the driveshaft with a plastic hammer.





 Pull the knuckle outward, and remove the driveshaft outboard joint from the front wheel hub using a plastic hammer.

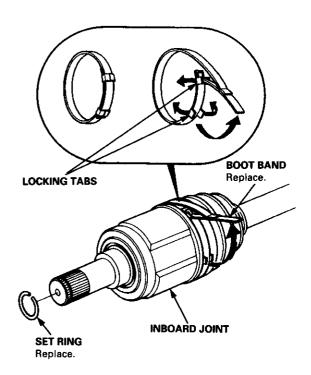


-Disassembly

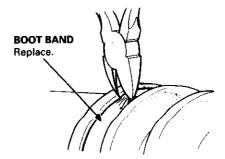
- 1. Remove the set ring from the inboard joint.
- 2. To remove the boot band, pry up the locking tabs with a screwdriver and raise the end of the band.

CAUTION: Take care not to damage the boot.

NOTE: Carefully clamp the driveshaft in a vise with soft jaws.



 If the boot band is the welded type, cut it off as shown.



(cont'd)

Driveshafts

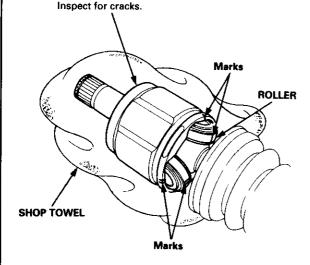
Disassembly (cont'd) -

 Mark each roller and inboard joint to identify the locations of rollers and grooves in the inboard joint.
 Then remove the inboard joint on the shop towel.

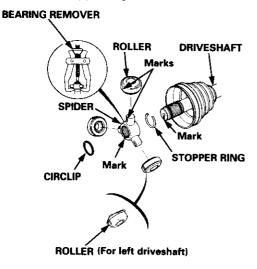
NOTE: Be careful not to drop the rollers when separating them from the inboard joint.

INBOARD JOINT

Check splines for wear or damage. Check inside bore for wear.



- Mark the rollers and spider to identify the locations of rollers on the spider. Then remove the rollers.
- Remove the circlip.
- Mark the spider and driveshaft to identify the position of the spider on the shaft.
- Remove the spider using a commercially available bearing remover.
- 8. Remove the stopper ring.



- 9. Wrap the splines on the driveshaft with vinyl tape to prevent damage to the boots and dynamic damper.
- 10. Remove the boot band and inboad boot.

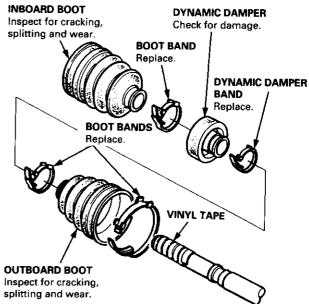
CAUTION: Take care not to damage the boot.

Remove the dynamic damper band and dynamic damper.

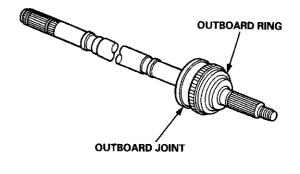
CAUTION: Take care not to damage the dynamic damper.

12. Remove the boot bands and outboard boot, then remove the vinyl tape.

CAUTION: Take care not to damage the boot.



- 13. Inspect the outboard joint for faulty movement and wear. If any roughness or excess play is felt, replace the outboard joint.
- 14. Check the outboard ring for damage.





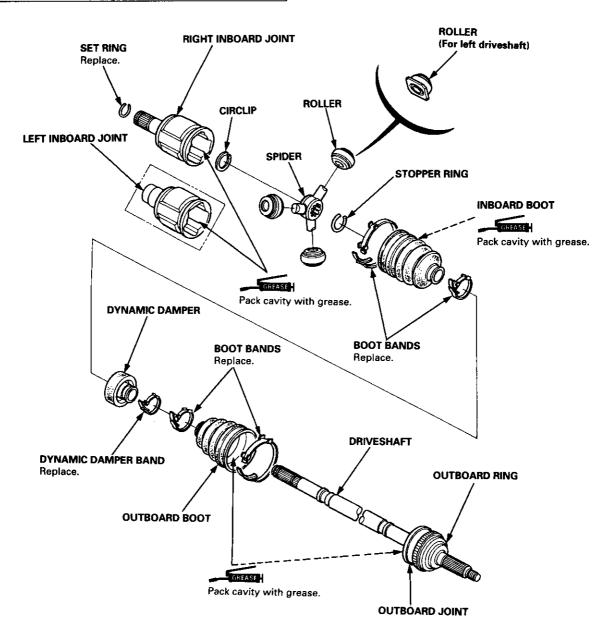
Reassembly

NOTE:

- Clean the disassembled parts with solvent, and dry them throughly with compressed air. Do not wash the rubber parts with solvent.
- Thoroughly pack the inboard joint and both joint boots with the joint grease included in the new driveshaft set.

Grease quantity:

| Inboard Joint | 120 – 130 g (4.2 – 4.6 oz) | | |
|----------------|----------------------------|--|--|
| Outboard Joint | 90 – 100 g (3.2 – 3.5 oz) | | |

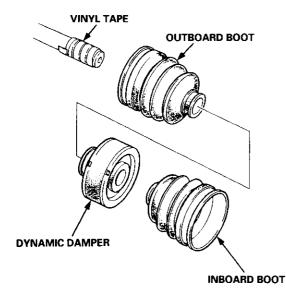


(cont'd)

Reassembly (cont'd)

- Wrap the splines with vinyl tape to prevent damage to the boots and dynamic damper.
- Install the outboard boot, dynamic damper and inboard boot to the driveshaft, then remove the vinyl tape.

CAUTION: Take care not to damage the boots and dynamic damper.

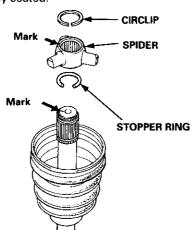


3. Install the stopper ring into the driveshaft groove.

NOTE: Always rotate the stopper ring in its groove to be sure it is fully seated.

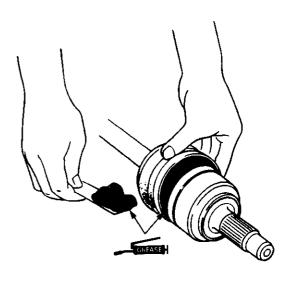
- Install the spider on the driveshaft by aligning the marks on the spider and end of the driveshaft.
- 5. Fit the circlip into the driveshaft groove.

NOTE: Always rotate the circlip in its groove to be sure it is fully seated.



Pack the outboard joint with the joint grease included in the new driveshaft set.

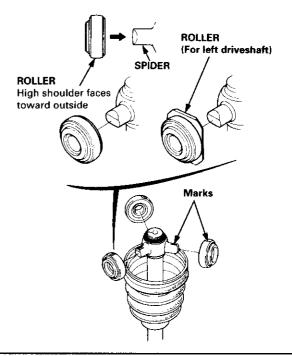
Grease quantity: 90 - 100 g (3.2 - 3.5 oz)



7. Fit the rollers to the spider with their high shoulders facing outward.

NOTE:

- Reinstall the rollers in their original positions on the spider by aligning the marks.
- Hold the driveshaft pointed up to prevent the rollers from falling off.





 Pack the inboard joint with the joint grease included in the new driveshaft set.

Grease quantity: 120 - 130 g (4.2 - 4.6 oz)



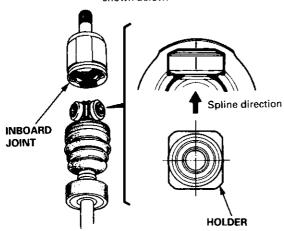
Fit the inboard joint onto the driveshaft.

NOTE:

- Reinstall the inboard joint onto the driveshaft by aligning the marks on the inboard joint and the rollers.
- Hold the driveshaft so the inboard joint points up to prevent it from falling off.

Left driveshaft:

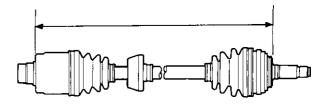
Align the holder direction of the rollers toward the slot of inboard joint as shown below.



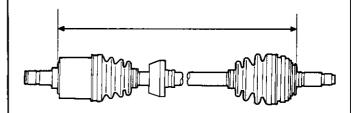
10. Adjust the length of the driveshafts to the figure below, then adjust the boots to halfway between full compression and full extension.

NOTE: The ends of boots seat in the groove of the driveshaft and joint.

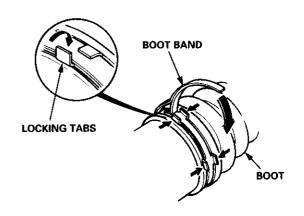
Left: 475 - 480 mm (18.7 - 18.9 in)



Right: 475 - 480 mm (18.7 - 18.9 in)



- 11. Install new boot bands on the boots, and bend both sets of locking tabs.
- 12. Lightly tap on the doubled-over portions to reduce their height.



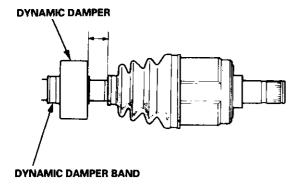
(cont'd)

Driveshafts

Reassembly (cont'd) -

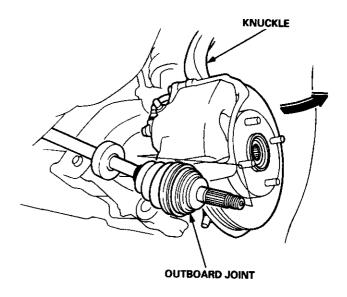
- 13. Position the dynamic damper as shown below.
 - Install a new dynamic damper band, and bend down both sets of locking tabs.
 - Lightly tap on the doubled-over portion of the band to reduce its height,

Left/Right: 29 \pm 2 mm (1.1 \pm 0.1 in)



Installation

1. Install the outboard joint into the knuckle.

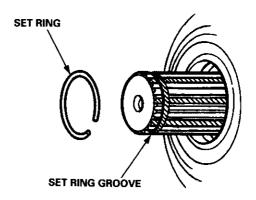


 Apply 1.0 – 1.5 g (0.04 – 0.05 oz) of specified grease to the whole splined surface of the intermediate shaft.

NOTE: After applying grease, remove the grease from the splined grooves at intervals of 2 – 3 splines and from the set ring groove so air can bleed from the inboard joint.

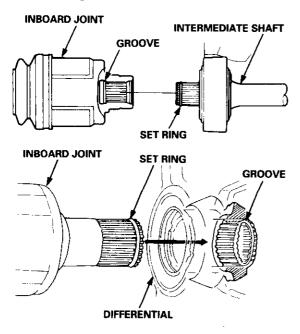
Install the new set ring onto the driveshaft or intermediate shaft groove.

CAUTION: Always use a new set ring whenever the driveshaft is being installed.



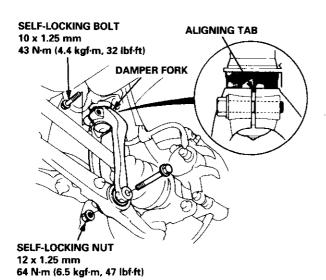


4. Insert the inboard end of the driveshaft into the differential or intermediate shaft until the set ring locks in the groove.



- Install the damper fork over the driveshaft and onto the lower arm. Install the damper in the damper fork so the aligning tab is aligned with the slot in the damper fork.
- 6. Loosely install the self-locking bolt and the new self-locking nut.

NOTE: The bolts and nut should be tightened with the vehicle's weight on the damper.

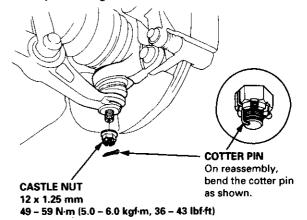


7. Install the knuckle on the lower arm, then tighten the castle nut and install a new cotter pin.

NOTE: Wipe off the grease before tightening the nut at the ball joint.

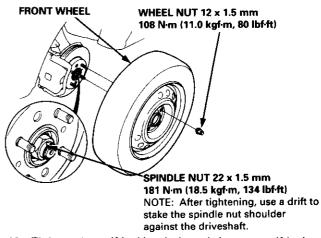
CAUTION:

- Be careful not to damage the ball joint boot.
- Torque the castle nut to the lower torque specification, then tighten it only far enough to align the slot with the pin hole. Do not align the nut by loosening.



- 8. Install a new spindle nut, then tighten the nut.
- 9. Install the front wheel with the wheel nuts.

NOTE: Before installing the wheel, clean the mating surfaces of the brake disc and the wheel.

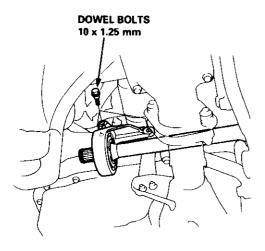


- 10. Tighten the self-locking bolt and the new self-locking nut with the vehicle's weight on the damper.
- 11. Refill the transmission with recommended oil or fluid (see section 13 or 14).
- 12. Check the front wheel alignment and adjust if necessary (see page 18-4).

Intermediate shaft

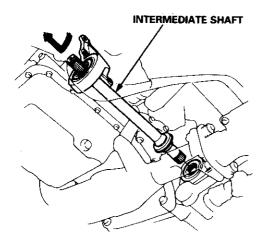
- Removal -

- Drain the transmission oil or fluid (see section 13 or 14).
- 2. Remove the left driveshaft (see page 16-3).
- 3. Remove the three dowel bolts.



4. Remove the intermediate shaft from the differential.

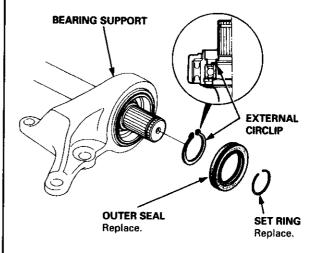
CAUTION: Hold the intermediate shaft horizontal until it is clear of the differential to prevent damage to the differential oil seal.



Disassembly

NOTE: Be careful not to damage the metal rings on the intermediate shaft during disassembly.

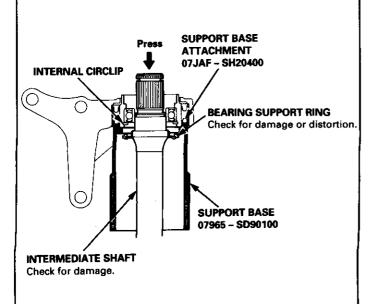
- 1. Remove the set ring.
- Remove the intermediate shaft outer seal from the bearing support.
- 3. Remove the external circlip.



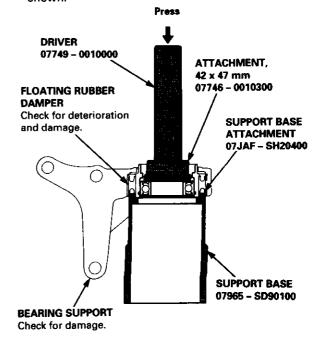


Disassembly

- Press the intermediate shaft out of the shaft bearing using the special tools and a press as shown.
- 5. Remove the internal circlip.



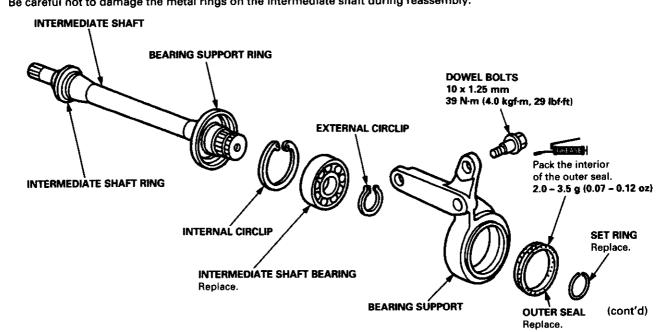
Press the intermediate shaft bearing out of the bearing support using the special tools and a press as shown.



Reassembly

NOTE:

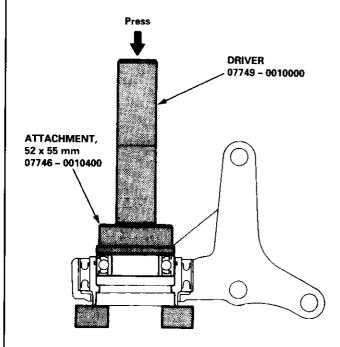
- Clean the disassembled parts with solvent, and dry them thoroughly with compressed air. Do not wash the rubber parts with solvent.
- Be careful not to damage the metal rings on the intermediate shaft during reassembly.



Intermediate Shaft

- Reassembly (cont'd)

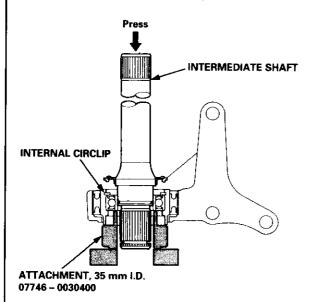
 Press the intermediate shaft bearing into the bearing support using the special tools and a press as shown.



Seat the internal circlip in the groove of the bearing support.

CAUTION: Install the circlip with the tapered end facing out.

Press the intermediate shaft into the shaft bearing using the special tools and a press.

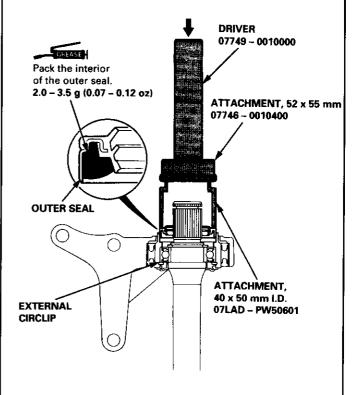


 Seat the external circlip in the groove of the intermediate shaft.

NOTE: Install the circlip with the tapered end facing out.

5. Install the outer seal into the bearing support using the special tools as shown.

NOTE: Install the seal flush with the bearing support.



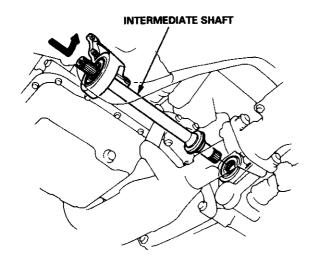
Install the new set ring in the intermediate shaft groove.



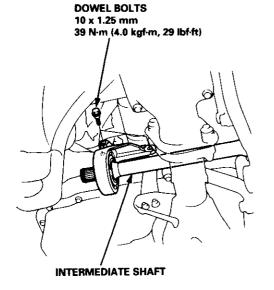
- Installation

 Insert the intermediate shaft assembly into the differential.

CAUTION: Hold the intermediate shaft horizontal to prevent damage to the differential oil seal.



2. Install the three dowel bolts, then tighten them.



Steering

| Special Tools 17-2 | |
|------------------------------------|---|
| Component Location | |
| Index 17-3 | |
| System Description | |
| Fluid Flow Diagram 17-4 | |
| Steering Pump 17-5 | |
| Steering Gearbox 17-7 | |
| Troubleshooting | |
| General Troubleshooting 17-10 |) |
| Noise and Vibration 17-14 | |
| Fluid Leaks 17-16 | į |
| Inspection and Adjustment | |
| Steering Operation 17-18 | ì |
| Power Assist Check | |
| with Car Parked 17-18 | • |
| Steering Linkage and Gearbox 17-19 | į |
| Pump Belt 17-20 | , |
| Rack Guide Adjustment 17-21 | |
| Fluid Replacement 17-21 | |
| Pump Pressure Check 17-22 | |
| Fluid Leakage Inspection 17-23 | , |
| Steering Wheel | |
| Removal 17-24 | |
| Disassembly/Reassembly 17-25 | , |
| Installation 17-26 | |

| *Steering Column | |
|-----------------------------|-------|
| Removal | 17-28 |
| Inspection | 17-30 |
| Installation | 17-31 |
| Power Steering Hoses, Pipes | |
| Replacement | 17-34 |
| Power Steering Pump | |
| Removal | 17-35 |
| Disassembly | 17-35 |
| Reassembly | 17-40 |
| Installation | 17-44 |
| Steering Gearbox | |
| Removal | 17-45 |
| Disassembly | 17-48 |
| Reassembly | 17-53 |
| Installation | |
| Ball Joint Boot Replacement | 17-65 |

SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM (SRS)

The Integra SRS includes a driver's airbag, located in the steering wheel hub. In addition, all models except the RS model for Canada have a front passenger's airbag located in the dashboard above the glove box. Information necessary to safely service the SRS is included in this Service Manual. Items marked with an asterisk (*) on the contents page include, or are located near, SRS components. Servicing, disassembling or replacing these items will require special precautions and tools, and should therefore be done by an authorized Acura dealer.

AWARNING

- To avoid rendering the SRS inoperative, which could lead to personal injury or death in the event of a severe frontal collision, all SRS service work must be performed by an authorized Acura dealer.
- Improper service procedures, including incorrect removal and installation of the SRS, could lead to personal injury caused by unintentional activation of the airbags.
- All SRS electrical wiring harnesses are covered with yellow insulation. Related components are located in the steering column, front console, dashboard, and dashboard lower panel, and in the dashboard above the glove box. Do not use electrical test equipment on these circuits.

NOTE: The original radio has a coded theft protection circuit. Be sure to get the customer's code number before — disconnecting the battery.

- removing the No. 32 (7.5 A) fuse from the under-hood fuse/relay box.
- removing the radio.

After service, reconnect power to the radio and turn it on. When the word "CODE" is displayed, enter the customer's 5-digit code to restore radio operation.

| Ref. No. | Tool Number | Description | 0'4 | Baga Bafarana |
|----------------------|-----------------|--------------------------------------|-------------|----------------|
| | | Description | Q'ty | Page Reference |
| ① | 07GAF - PH70100 | Pilot Collar | 1 | 17-52 |
| 2 | 07GAF - SD40700 | Hub Dis/Assembly Base | 1 | 17-39 |
| 3 | 07GAG - SD40100 | Piston Seal Ring Guide | 1 | 17-57 |
| 4 5 | 07GAG - SD40200 | Piston Seal Ring Sizing Tool | 1 | 17-57 |
| <u> </u> | 07GAG - SD40400 | Cylinder End Seal Guide | 1 | 17-59 |
| 6 | 07JGG - 001010A | Belt Tension Gauge | 1 | 17-20 |
| ② | 07MAC - SL00200 | Ball Joint Remover, 28 mm | 1 | 17-45 |
| 8 | 07MAG - SL00100 | Ball Joint Boot Clip Guide | 1 | 17-55, 65 |
| 9 | 07NAD - SR30200 | Cylinder End Seal Remover Attachment | t 1 | 17-50 |
| <u>@</u> | 07NAG - SR30900 | Valve Seal Ring Sizing Tool | 1 | 17-54 |
| 00 | 07NAK - SR3011A | P/S Joint Adapter (Pump) | 1 | 17-22 |
| 12 | 07NAK SR3012A | P/S Joint Adapter (Hose) | 1 | 17-22 |
| <u>(13</u> | 07406 – 0010001 | P/S Pressure Gauge | 1 | 17-22 |
| <u>(</u> 3)⋅1 | 07406 - 0010300 | Pressure Control Valve | 1 | 17-22 |
| (13)-2 | 07405 – 0010400 | Pressure Gauge | 1 | 17-22 |
| (4) | 07725 – 0030000 | Universal Holder | 1 1 | 17-35, 53 |
| 15 | 07746 – 0010100 | Attachment, 32 x 35 mm | 1 | 17-55, 56 |
| 16 | 07746 – 0010200 | Attachment, 37 x 40 mm | 1 | 17-41 |
| 17 | 00749 – 0010000 | Driver | 1 | 17-55 |
| 18 | 07916 - SA50001 | Locknut Wrench, 40 mm | 1 | 17-21 |
| 19 | 07947 – 6340500 | Driver Attachment | 1 | 17-41 |
| 20 | 07974 – 6890801 | Cylinder End Seal Slider | 1 | 17-57, 58 |
| 20 | 07974 – SA50200 | Sleeve Seal Ring Sizing Tool | 1 | 17-55 |
| | | 3 0 5 | | |
| e e | | | | |
| | ③ | 9 | 110 | |
| | | (B) (B)-1 | 3 -2 | 0 |
| | | | | |
| | (§ (§ | 18 19 | 20 | ② |

Component Location



Index

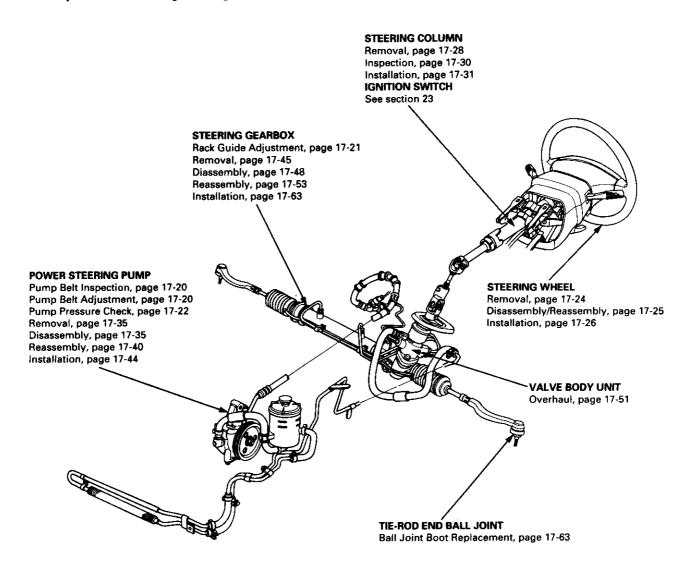
Power Steering:

NOTE:

- If an intact airbag assembly has been removed from a scrapped car or has been found defective or damaged during transit, storage or service, it should be deployed (see section 23).
- Before removing the gearbox, remove the ignition key to keep the steering shaft from turning.
- After installing the gearbox, check the wheel alignment and adjust if necessary.

CAUTION:

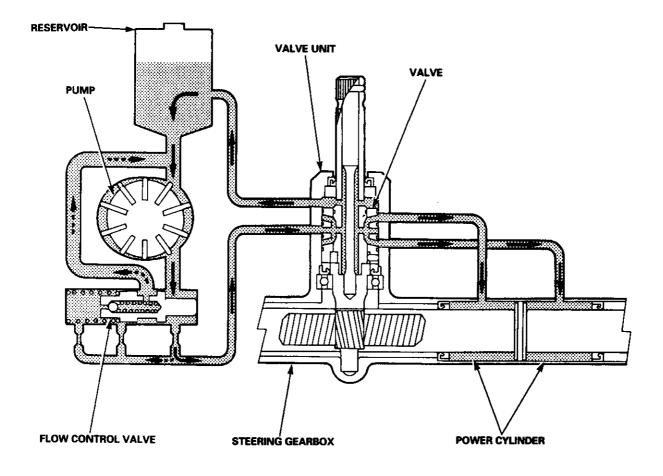
- All SRS electrical wiring harnesses are covered with yellow insulation.
- Before disconnecting any part of the SRS wire harness, connect the short connector(s).
- Replace the entire affected SRS harness assembly if it has an open circuit or damaged wiring.



System Description

- Fluid Flow Diagram

The system is a compact rotary-valve-type power steering, connected to the steering gearbox. The fluid pressure is provided by a vane-type pump which is driven by the engine crank pulley. The amount of fluid and pressure is regulated by the flow control valve built into the pump. The fluid pressure from the pump is delivered to the valve unit around the pinion of the steering gearbox. The valve inside the valve unit controls the hydraulic pressure and changes the direction of the flow. The fluid then flows to the power cylinder, where rack thrust is generated. Fluid returning from the power cylinder flows back to the reservoir, where the fluid is "filtered" and supplied to the pump again.

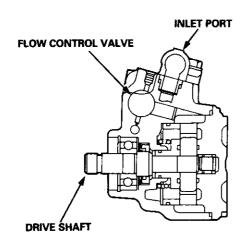


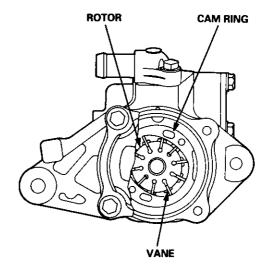


Steering Pump

Construction

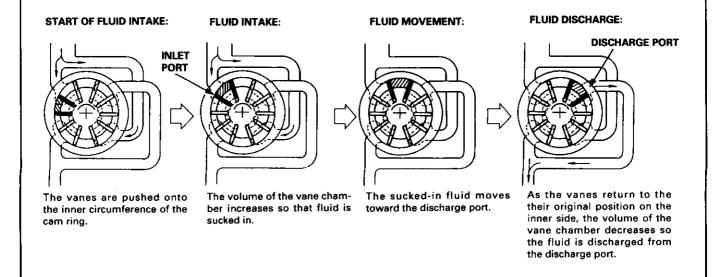
The pump is a vane-type incorporating a flow control valve (with an integrated relief valve) and is driven by a V-belt from the crank pulley. The pump features 10 vanes. Each vane performs two intake/discharge operations for every rotation of the rotor. This means that the hydraulic fluid pressure pulse becomes extremely small during discharge.





Operation

The belt-driven pulley rotates the rotor through the drive shaft. As the rotor rotates, the hydraulic pressure is applied to the vane chamber of the rotor and the vanes will rotate while being pushed onto the inner circumference of the cam ring. The inner circumference of the cam ring has an extended portion with respect to the center of the shaft, so the rollers move downward in the axial direction as the carrier rotates. As a result of this roller movement, the internal volume of the vane chamber will change, resulting in fluid intake and discharge.



(cont'd)

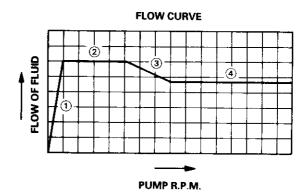
System Description

Steering Pump (cont'd)

Flow Control

The flow control valve in the pump performs the following steps ① through ④ to control the flow of fluid, i.e. to increase the discharge volume when engine speed is low and to decrease it when the engine speed increases. The assistance thrust of the steering gearbox changes in compliance with the change in the discharge volume.

- When the engine starts, fluid discharged from the discharge port starts to run through the metering orifice in the pump. The discharge volume increases as the engine speed increases.
- As the flow has already been regulated by the metering orifice when the engine speed is at or near the idle speed, a constant and regulated amount of fluid is discharged until the engine speed reaches the middle speed range. As the engine speed increases, the pressure difference between the ends of the metering orifice increases. A pressure difference is created between the top and bottom ends of the flow control valve, too, pushing the flow control valve to open the by-pass passage. This allows the excess fluid to return to the inlet port preventing pressure at the discharge port from rising excessively.
- 3 As the engine speed continues to increase, the flow control valve is pushed back further. When the engine speed reaches a given speed, the return passage outside the metering orifice is connected to the inlet port, and the opening to the inlet port widens in proportion to the increase in engine speed. This makes part of the fluid regulated by the metering orifice return to the inlet port of the pump; there by discharged fluid from the pump is decreased slowly by this amount.
- The orifice in the return passage regulates and maintains the flow of fluid discharged from the pump at a given level until the engine speed reaches the high speed range.

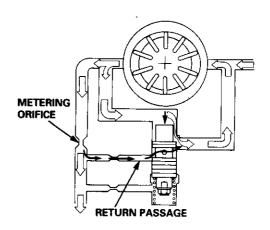


DISCHARGE PORT

PUMP

BY-PASS
PASSAGE

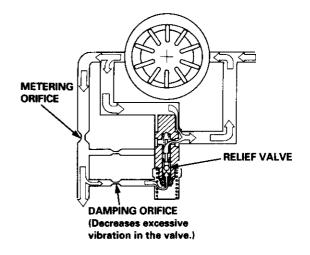
PLOW CONTROL
VALVE





Pressure Relief

Pressure outside of the metering orifice is directed to the bottom of the flow control valve. When the pressure builds up, the relief valve in the flow control valve opens to relieve the pressure. As the flow control valve is pushed back by the pressure difference this time, the flow of fluid in the bypass passage increases, controlling the pressure outside the metering orifice. The above operations are repeated to provide constant discharge pressure from the pump.

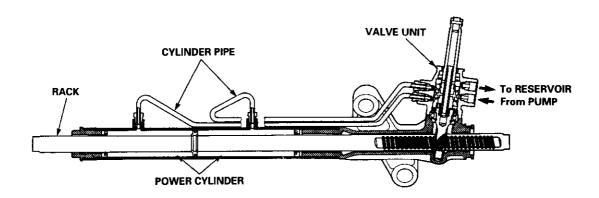


(cont'd)

System Description

Steering Gearbox

The rack-and-pinion type steering gearbox has a valve unit incorporated with the pinion to control the steering fluid pressure. Steering fluid from the pump is regulated by a rotary valve in the valve unit and is sent through the cylinder pipe to the power cylinder, where hydraulic pressure is applied. The steering fluid in the other side of the power cylinder returns through the cylinder pipe and valve unit to the reservoir.



Valve Unit

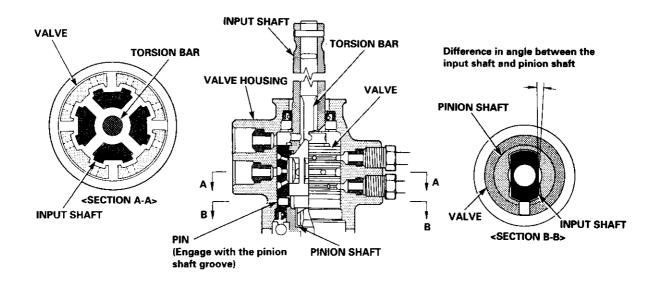
Inside the valve unit is the valve, which is coaxial with the pinion shaft, and controls the steering fluid pressure. The valve housing is connected with the fluid pipe from the pump, return pipe to the pump, and the two cylinder pipes from the respective power cylinder.

The pinion shaft is double – structured with the input shaft connected to the pinion gear, both of which are interconnected with the torsion bar.

The pin inserted in the valve and the pinion shaft groove engage; this allows the pinion shaft to rotate together with the valve.

Because of this construction, the difference in angle in the circumferential direction between the input shaft and the valve becomes larger according to the torsional strength of the pinion or steering resistance. However, maximum torsion between the shafts is regulated by the engaged splines of the shafts at the pin engagement section to hold the torsion bar within the set value.

This allows the steering system to function as an ordinary rack-and-pinion type steering if the steering fluid is not pressurized because of a faulty pump.

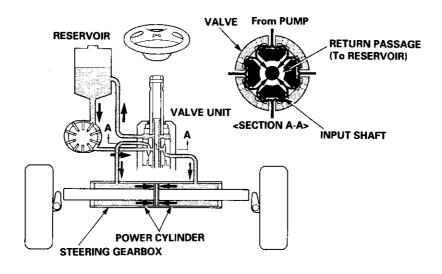




Pressure Control

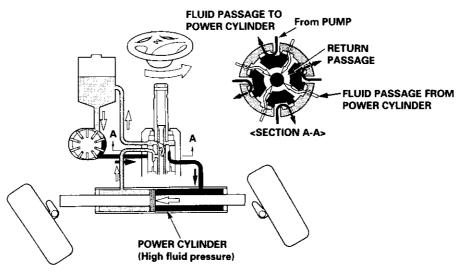
Low assist at higher speeds:

When steering resistance is low, such as when driving at high speeds, or when driving straight ahead, the input shaft is near or in the neutral position, so there is little or no flow to any of the power cylinder orifices. Most of the feed pressure from the pump is bypassed to the reservoir. Because of this, the pressure stays the same in both sides of the power cylinder, resulting in low or no assist.



High assist at lower speeds:

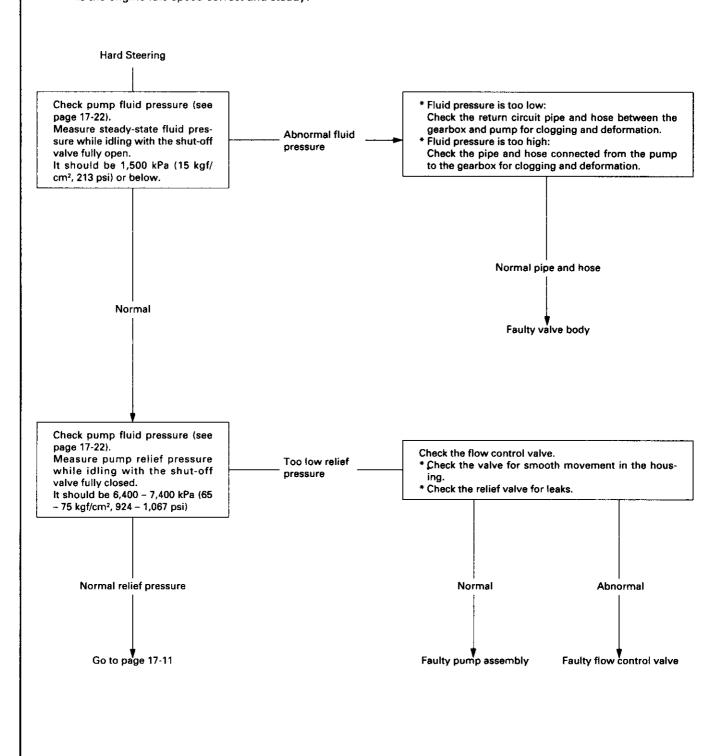
When steering resistance is high, such as when driving at low speed, or when turning the wheel with the car stopped, the difference in angle created between the input shaft and the valve opens the fluid passage on one side, and closes the fluid passage on the other side, at each pair of orifices. The fluid pressure increases in the side of the power cylinder fed by the larger fluid passage. This increased pressure pushes on the rack piston, allowing the steering wheel to be turned with light effort. On the other side of the power cylinder, the return passage opens allowing the steering fluid to return through the input shaft to the reservoir. The fluid passages to the power cylinder automatically change in size, increasing as the steering resistance increases. In other words, the passages become larger and power assist increases when the steering effort would normally be high, (for example, when parking or making low speed turns), and the passages become smaller and power assist decreases when the steering effort would normally be low, (for example, when driving at high speeds or straight ahead).



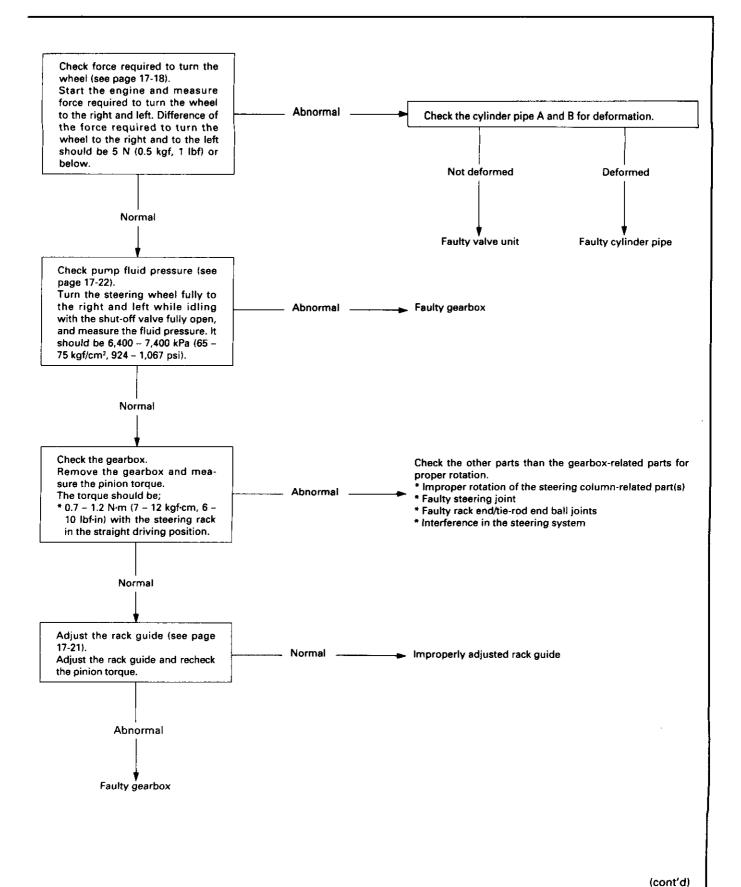
General Troubleshooting

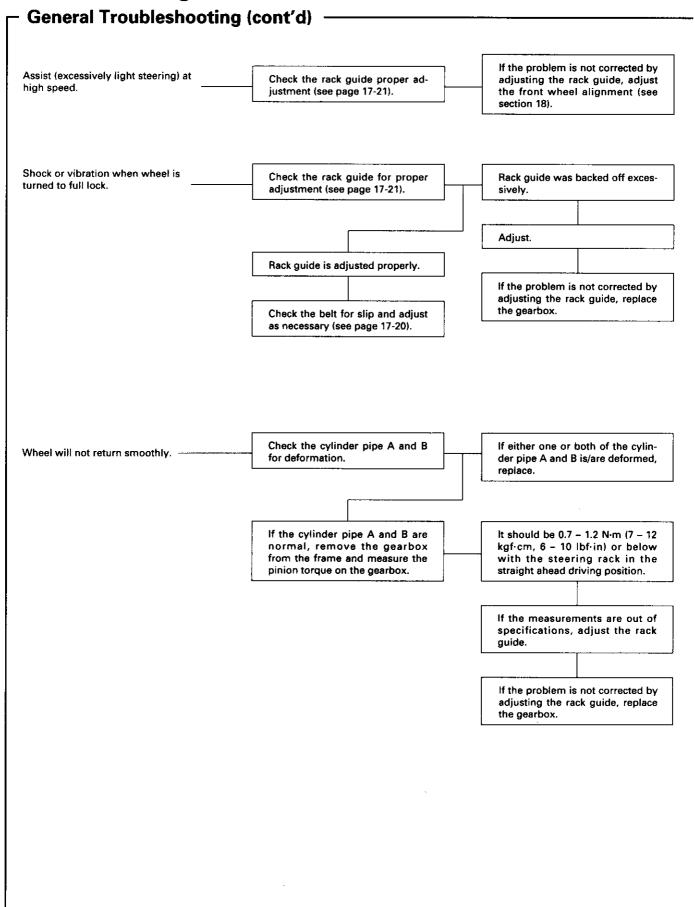
Check the following before you begin:

- Has the suspension been modified in a way that would affect steering?
- Are tire sizes and air pressure correct?
- . Is the steering wheel original equipment or equivalent?
- Is the power steering pump belt properly adjusted?
- Is steering fluid reservoir filled to proper level?
- Is the engine idle speed correct and steady?

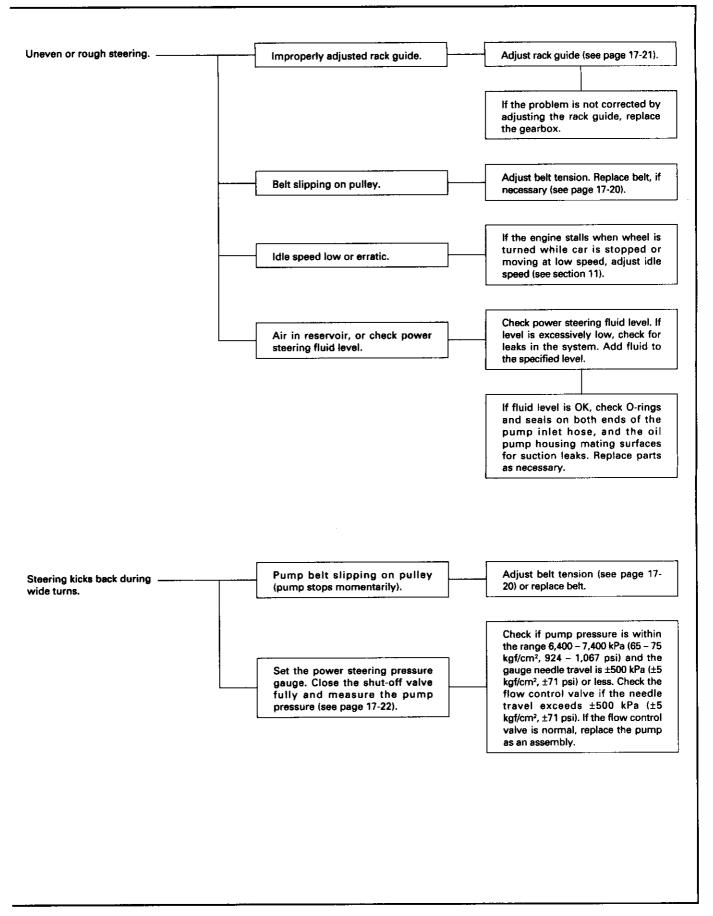




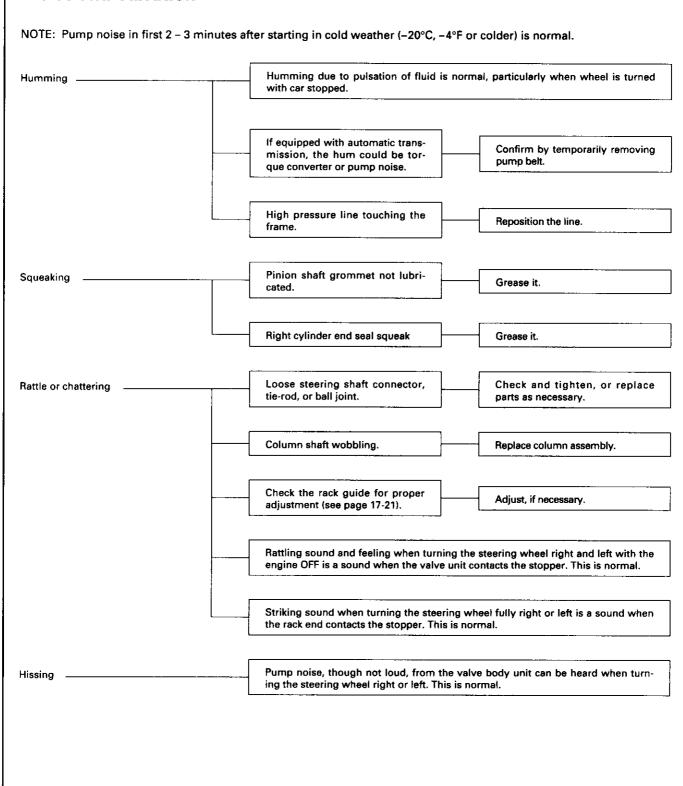








Noise and Vibration

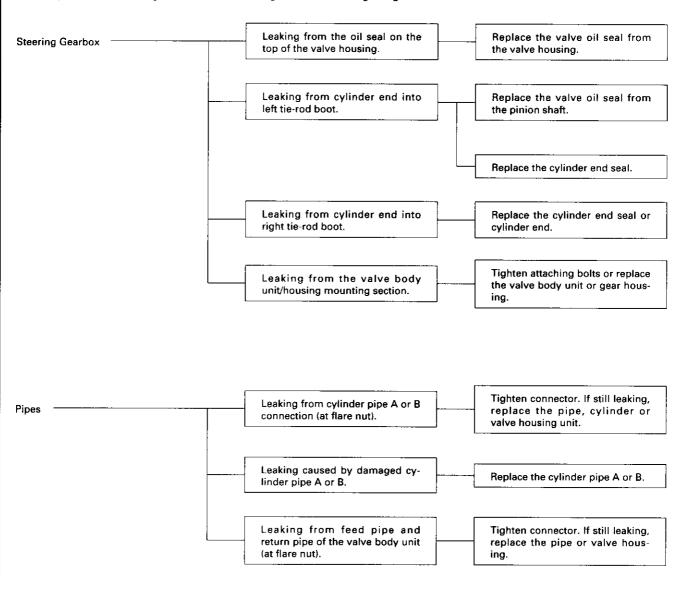




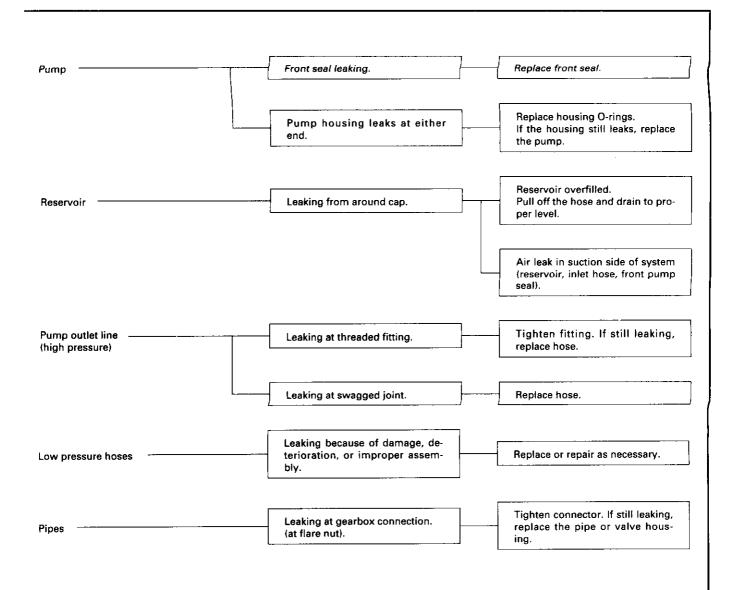
Check fluid level. Cavitation caused by air bubbles If low, fill reservoir to proper Grating noise from pump in fluid. level, and check for leaks. Tighten or replace as necessary. Check for crushed suction hose or a loose hose clamp allowing air into the system. Tighten or replace as necessary. NOTE: Pump noise up to 2 - 3 minutes after starting in cold If pump noise is abnormally loud, weather (-20°C, -4°F or colder) is check the pump ball bearing and Pump gear noise normal. any parts (see page 17-35). Compare pump noise at operating temperature to another car.

- Fluid Leaks

• Check the gearbox assembly for oil leaks carefully. Oil can leak out of various points, depending on location of the faulty oil seals/seal rings. Check the following before removing the gearbox from the frame.







Inspection and Adjustment

Steering Operation

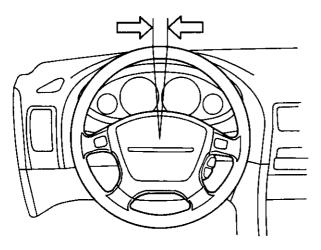
Place the front wheels in the straight ahead position and measure the distance the steering wheel can be turned without moving the front wheels.

ROTATIONAL PLAY: 0 - 10 mm (0 - 0.39 in)

If the play exceeds the service limit, perform rack guide adjustment (see page 17-21).

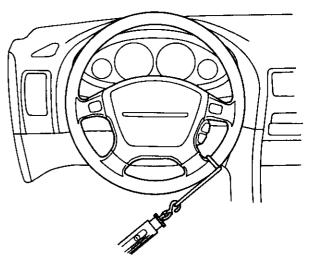
If the play is still excessive after rack guide adjustment, inspect the steering linkage and gearbox as described on the next page.

ROTATIONAL PLAY



Power Assist Check with Car Parked

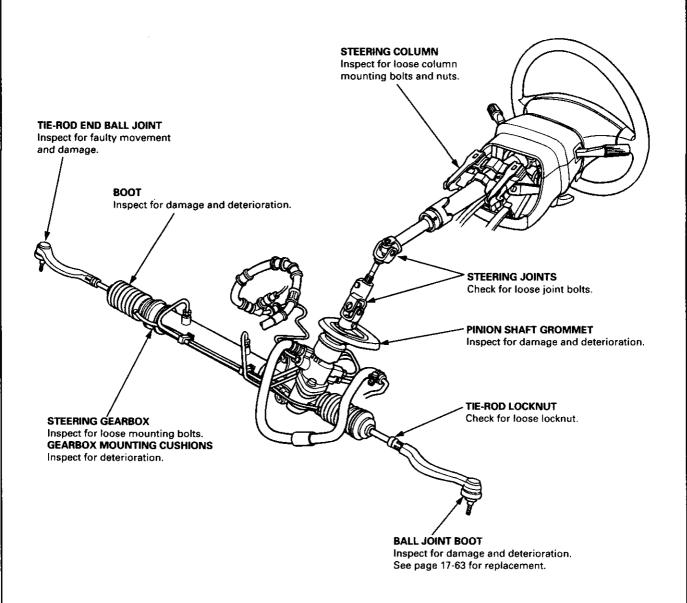
- 1. Check the power steering fluid level (see page 17-21) and pump belt tension (see page 17-20).
- Start the engine, allow it to idle, and turn the steering wheel from lock-to-lock several times to warm up the fluid.
- Attach a spring scale to the steering wheel. With the engine idling and the car on a clean, dry floor, pull the scale as shown and read it as soon as the tires begin to turn.



 The scale should read no more than 33 N (3.4 kgf, 7.5 lbf). If it reads more or less, check the gearbox and pump.



Steering Linkage and Gearbox



Inspection and Adjustment

- Pump Belt -

NOTE: When using a new belt, first adjust the deflection or tension to the values for the new belt, then readjust the deflection or tension to the values for the used belt after running engine for five minutes.

Inspection

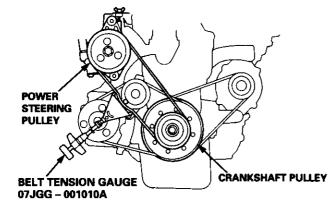
Attach the belt tension gauge to the belt and measure the tension of the belt.

Tension:

Used Belt: 390 - 540 N (40 - 55 kgf, 88 - 120 lbf) New Belt: 740 - 880 N (75 - 90 kgf, 170 - 200 lbf)

NOTE:

- If there are cracks or any damage evident on the belt, replace it with a new one.
- Follow the manufacturer's instructions for the tension gauge.



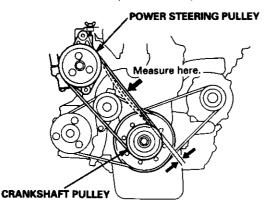
Inspect the pump belt for cracks or any damage. Replace the belt with a new one if necessary.

Measurement without Belt Tension Gauge:

Apply a force of 98 N (10 kgf, 22 lbf) and measure the deflection between the power steering pump and the crankshaft pulleys.

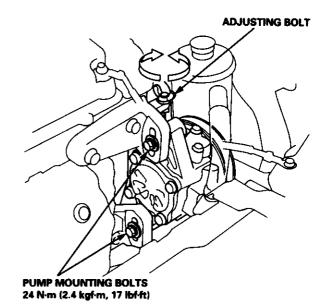
Deflection:

Used Belt: 11.5 - 13.5 mm (0.45 - 0.53 in) New Belt: 8.0 - 10.0 mm (0.31 - 0.39 in)



Adjustment

- 1. Loosen the power steering pump mounting bolts.
- 2. Turn the adjusting bolt to get the proper belt tension, then retighten the bolts.
- Start the engine and turn the steering wheel from lock-to-lock several times, then stop the engine and recheck the deflection of the belt.



17-20



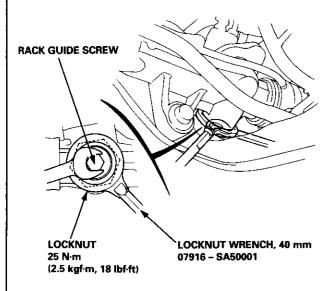
Rack Guide Adjustment

NOTE: Perform rack guide adjustment with the wheels in the straight ahead position.

- Loosen the rack guide screw locknut with the special tool, then loosen the rack guide screw.
- Tighten the rack guide screw until it compresses the spring and seats against the rack guide, then loosen it.
- Retighten the rack guide screw to 3.9 N·m (0.4 kgf·m, 2.9 lbf·ft), then back it off to specified angle.

Specified Return Angle: $20 \pm 5^{\circ}$

Tighten the locknut while holding the rack guide screw.



- 5. Check for tight or loose steering through the complete turning travel.
- 6. Perform following inspections:
 - Steering operation (see page 17-18).
 - · Power assist with car parked.

- Fluid Replacement

Check the reservoir at regular intervals, and add fluid as necessary.

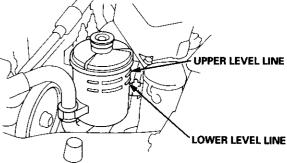
CAUTION: Use only Genuine Honda Power Steering Fluid-V. Using other fluids such as ATF or other manufacturer's power steering fluid will damage the system.

SYSTEM CAPACITY:

1.06 liter (1.12 US. qt, 0.93 imp.qt) at disassembly

RESERVOIR CAPACITY:

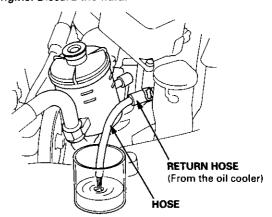
0.79 liter (0.83 US. qt, 0.70 lmp.qt)



- Raise the reservoir and disconnect the return hose that goes to the oil cooler.
- Connect a hose of suitable diameter to the disconnected return hose and put the hose end in a suitable container.

CAUTION: Take care not to spill the fluid on the body and parts. Wipe off the spilled fluid at once.

 Start the engine, let it run at idle, and turn the steering wheel from lock-to-lock several times. When fluid stops running out of the hose, shut off the engine. Discard the fluid.



- 4. Refit the return hose on the reservoir.
- Fill the reservoir to the upper level line.
- Start the engine and run it at fast idle, then turn the steering from lock-to-lock several times to bleed air from the system.
- 7. Recheck the fluid level and add some if necessary.

CAUTION: Do not fill the reservoir beyond the upper level line.

Inspection and Adjustment

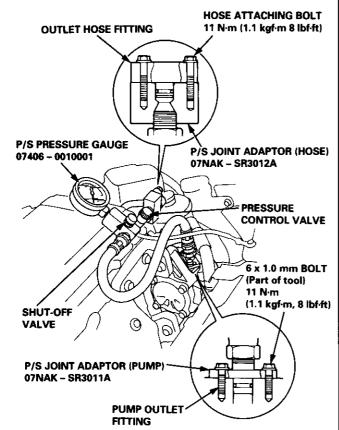
- Pump Pressure Check

Check the fluid pressure as follows to determine whether the trouble is in the pump or gearbox.

NOTE: First check the power steering fluid level and pump belt tension.

CAUTION: Disconnect the high pressure hose with care so as not to spill the power steering fluid on the frame and other parts.

- Disconnect the outlet hose from the pump outlet fitting, and install the pump joint adapter on the pump outlet.
- Connect the hose joint adapter to the power steering pressure gauge, then connect the outlet hose to the adaptor.
- Install the power steering pressure gauge to the pump joint adaptor as shown.



- 4. Open the shut-off valve fully.
- Open the pressure control valve fully.

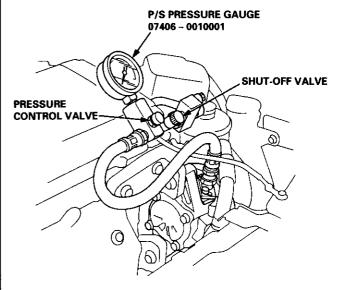
- 6. Start the engine and let it idle.
- 7. Turn the steering wheel from lock-to-lock several times to warm the fluid to operating temperature.
- Measure steady-state fluid pressure while idling with the shut-off valve fully open. If the pump is in good condition, the gauge should read less than 1500 kpa (15 kgf/cm², 213 psi).
 If it reads high, check the feed line or valve body

If it reads high, check the feed line or valve body unit (see General Troubleshooting 17-10).

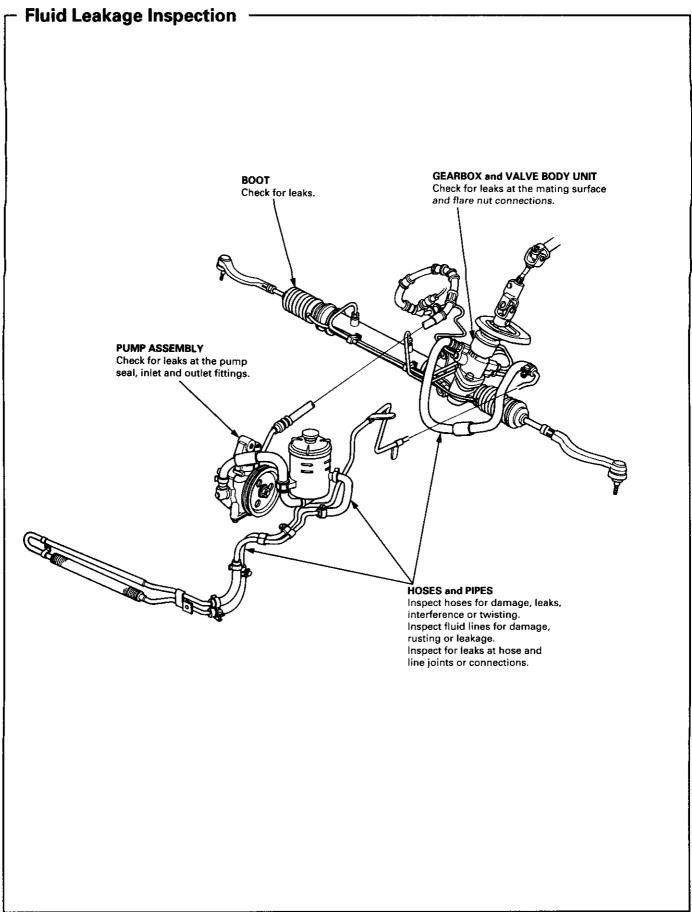
- Close the shut-off valve, then close the pressure control valve gradually until the pressure gauge needle is stable. Read the pressure.
- 10. Immediately open the shut-off valve fully.

CAUTION: Do not keep the shut-off valve closed more then 5 seconds or the pump could be damaged by over-heating.

If the pump is in good condition, the gauge should read at least 6,400 – 7,400 kpa (65 – 75 kgf/cm², 924 – 1,067 psi). A low reading means pump output is too low for full assist. Repair or replace the pump.







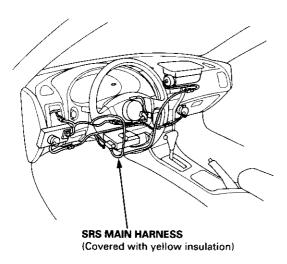
Steering Wheel

- Removal

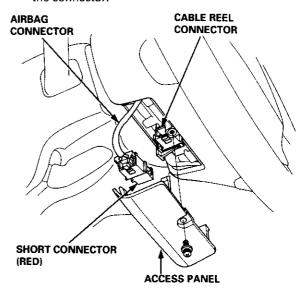
Airbag Removal

CAUTION:

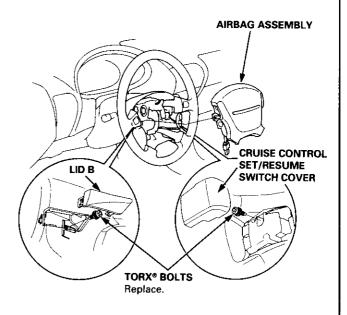
- All SRS electrical wiring harnesses are covered with yellow insulation.
- Before disconnecting any part of the SRS wire harness, connect the short connector(s).
- Replace the entire affected SRS harness assembly if it has an open circuit or damaged wiring.



- 1. Disconnect the negative and positive cable from the battery.
- Remove the access panel from the steering wheel lower cover, then remove the short connector.
- Disconnect the connector between the airbag and cable reel.
- Connect the short connector to the airbag side of the connector.



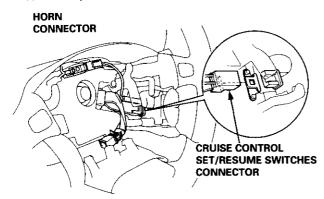
- Remove the lid B and cruise control set/resume switch cover.
- Remove the TORX® T30 bit bolts then remove the airbag assembly.





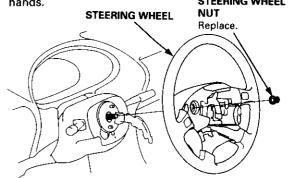
Removal

 Disconnect the connectors from the horn and cruise control set/resume switches.



- 8. Remove the steering wheel nut.
- Remove the steering wheel by rocking it slightly from side-to-side as you pull steadily with both hands.

 STEERING WHEEL



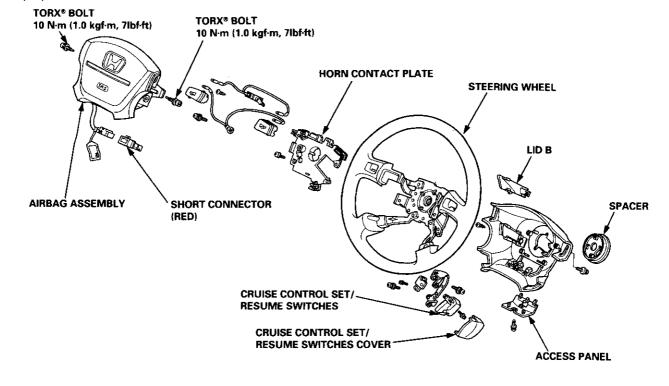
Disassembly/Reassembly

AWARNING Store a removed airbag assembly with the pad surface up. If the airbag is improperly stored face down, accidental deployment could propel the unit with enough force to cause serious injury.

NOTE: If an intact airbag assembly has been removed from a scrapped car or has been found defective or damaged during transit, storage or service, it should be deployed (see section 23).

CAUTION:

- Carefully inspect the airbag assembly before installing. Do not install an airbag assembly that shows signs of being dropped or improperly handled, such as dents, cracks or deformation.
- Always keep the short connector on the airbag connector when the harness is disconnected.
- Do not disassemble or tamper with the airbag assembly.



Steering Wheel

Installation

Airbag installation

CAUTION:

- Before installing the steering wheel, align the front wheels straight ahead.
- Be sure to install the harness wires so that they are not pinched or interfering with other car parts.
- Do not replace the original steering wheel with any other design, since it will make it impossible to properly install the airbag. (Only use genuine HONDA replacement parts)
- After reassembly, confirm that the wheels are still straight ahead and that steering wheel spoke angle is correct. If minor spoke angle adjustment is necessary, do so only by adjustment of the tie-rods, not by removing and repositioning the steering wheel.

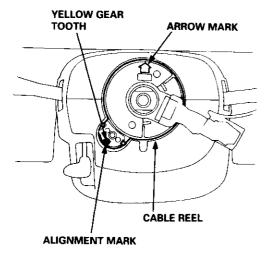
AWARNING Confirm that the airbag assembly is securely attached to the steering wheel; otherwise, severe personal injury could result during airbag deployment.

 Before installing the steering wheel, center the cable reel.

Do this by first rotating the cable reel clockwise until it stops.

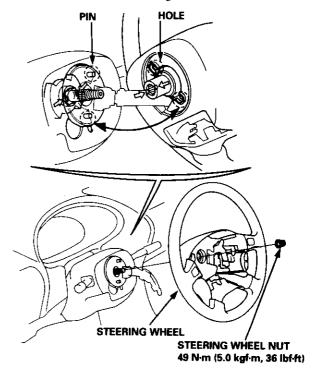
Then rotate it counterclockwise (approximately two turns) until:

- The yellow gear tooth lines up with the mark on the cover.
- The arrow on the cable reel label points straight up.

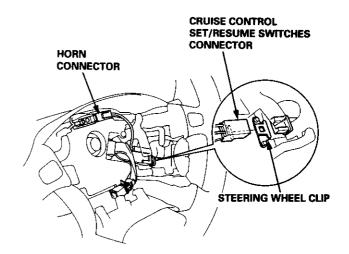


2. Install the steering wheel.

NOTE: Be sure the steering wheel shaft engages the cable reel and canceling sleeve.

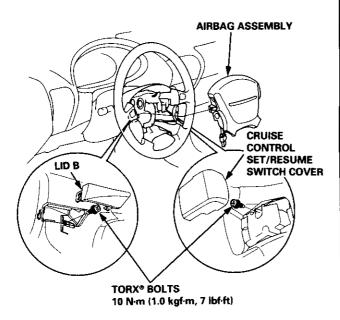


- Attach the cruise control set/resume switches connector to the steering wheel clip.
- 4. Connect the horn connector.

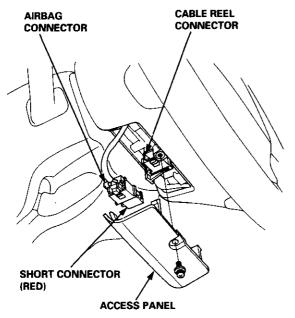




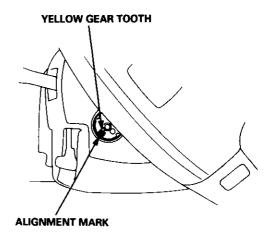
5. Install the airbag assembly with new TORX® bolts.



- 6. Disconnect the short connector from the airbag connector.
- Connect the airbag 3-P connector and cable reel 3-P connector.
- Attach the short connector on the access panel, and install the access panel on the steering lower cover.



- 9. Connect the battery positive terminal and then connect the negative terminal.
- 10. After installing the airbag assembly, confirm proper system operation:
 - Turn the ignition to II: the instrument panel SRS indicator light should come on for about 6 seconds and then go off.
 - Confirm operation of horn buttons.
 - Confirm operation of cruise control set/resume switches.
 - Turn the steering wheel counterclockwise and make sure the yellow gear tooth still lines up with the alignment mark.

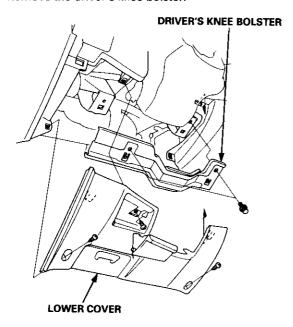


Steering Column

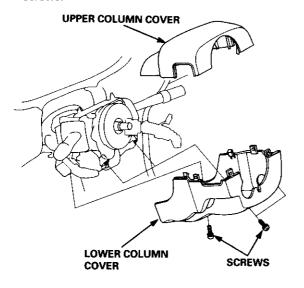
- Removal ·

CAUTION:

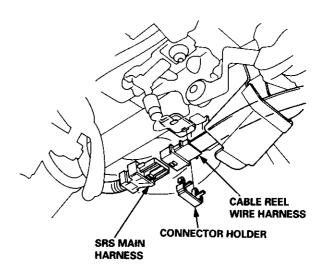
- All SRS electrical wiring harnesses are covered with yellow insulation.
- Before disconnecting any part of the SRS wire harness, connect the short connector (s).
- Replace the entire affected SRS harness assembly if it has an open circuit or damaged wiring.
- Remove the airbag assembly and steering wheel (see page 17-25).
- 2. Remove the lower cover.
- 3. Remove the driver's knee bolster.



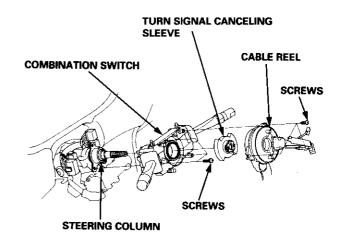
Remove the column covers by removing the screws.



5. Remove the connector holder and disconnect the SRS main harness from the cable reel wire harness at the under side of the column bracket.

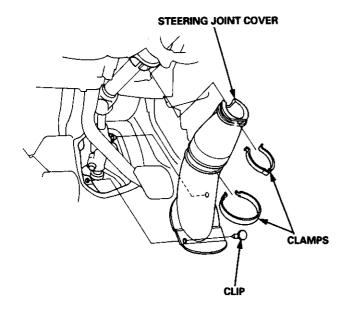


- 6. Remove the cable reel and turn signal canceling sleeve.
- Remove the combination switch from the steering column by disconnecting the connectors.

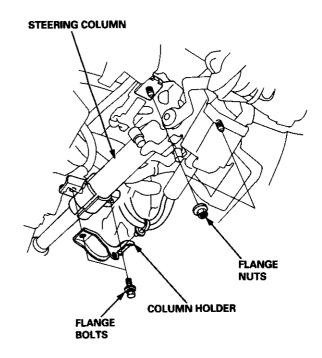




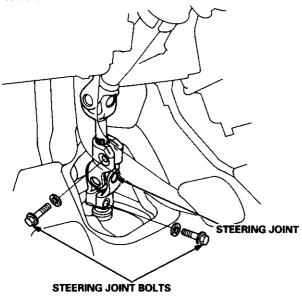
8. Remove the steering joint cover.



- 10. Disconnect the ignition switch connectors from the under-dash fuse/relay box.
- 11. Remove the steering column by removing the attaching nuts and bolts.



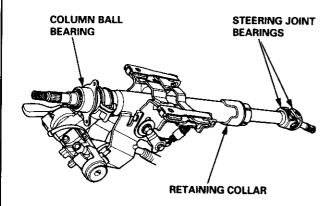
9. Remove the steering joint bolts, and move the joint toward the column.



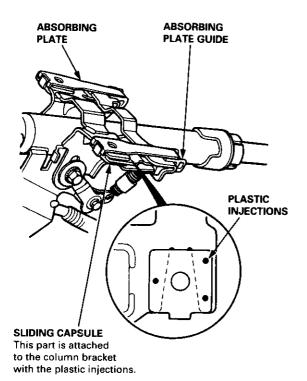
Steering Column

- Inspection

- Check the steering column ball bearing and steering joint bearings for play and proper movement.
 If there is noise or excessive play, replace the joint or column assembly.
- Check the retaining collar for damage.
 If it is damaged, replace the retaining collar.



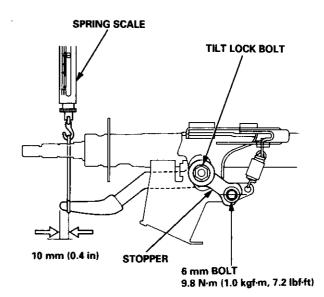
 Check the absorbing plates, absorbing plate guides and sliding capsules for distortion or breakage.
 Replace them as an assembly if they are distorted or broken.



- Check the tilt mechanism for proper movement and damage.
 - Attach a spring scale to the knob of the tilt lever.
 Measure the preload required to move the lever.

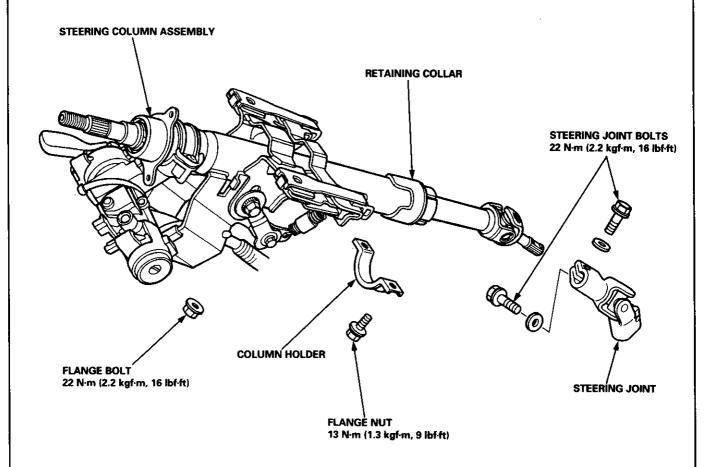
Preload: 70 - 90 N (7 - 9 kgf, 15 - 20 lbf)

- If the preload measured is not within the specification, remove the 6 mm bolt and stopper.
 Adjust the preload by retightening the tilt lock bolt until the correct force can be obtained.
- Reinstall the stopper and 6 mm bolt and recheck the preload.





- Installation -



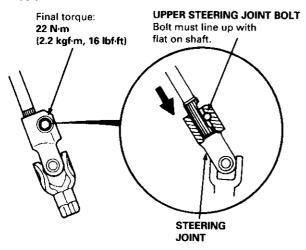
(cont'd)

Steering Column

Installation (cont'd)

CAUTION:

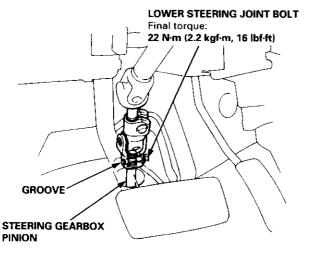
- All SRS electrical wiring harnesses are covered with yellow insulation.
- When disconnecting the SRS wire harness, install the short connector on the airbag, then disconnect the wire harness.
- Replace the entire affected SRS harness assembly if there is an open circuit or damage to the wiring.
- Slip the upper end of the steering joint onto the column shaft (line up the bolt hole with the flat on the shaft), and loosely install the upper steering joint bolt.



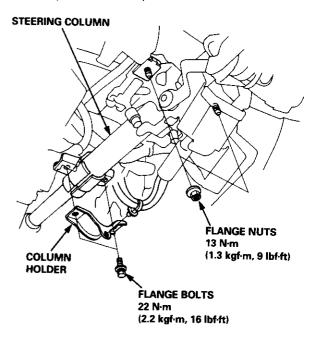
Slip the lower end of the steering joint onto the pinion shaft. Line up the bolt hole with the groove around the shaft) and loosely install the lower bolt.

NOTE:

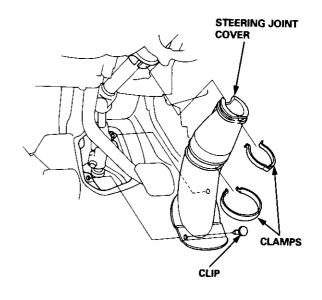
- Be sure that the lower steering joint bolt, is securely in the groove in the steering gearbox pinion.
- Before tightening the steering joint bolts, pull on the steering joint to make sure that the steering joint is fully seated.



- Install the steering column with the flange nuts, then install the column holder and flange bolts.
- Tighten the upper and lower steering joint bolts loosely installed in step 2.



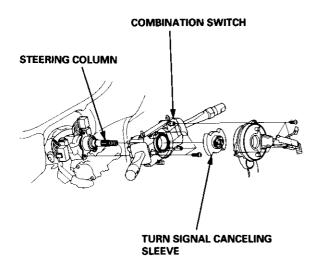
Install the steering joint cover with the clamps and clip.





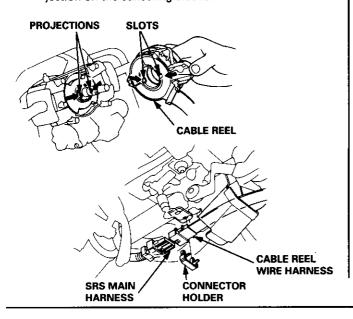
- Connect the ignition switch wire connectors to the under-dash fuse/relay box.
- Install the combination switch and turn signal canceling sleeve onto the steering column.

NOTE: Be sure the wires are not caught or pinched by any parts when installing the combination switch.

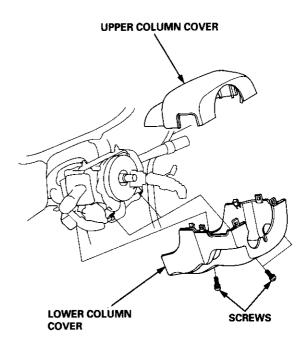


 Install the cable reel onto the steering column, then connect the SRS main harness and cable reel wire harness and install the connector holder.

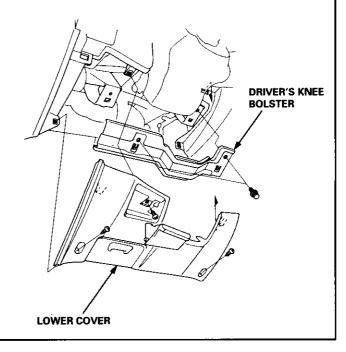
NOTE: Align the slot in the cable reel with the projection on the canceling sleeve.



9. Install the column covers.



- 10. Install the driver's knee bolster.
- 11. Install the lower cover.
- 12. Install the steering wheel (see page 17-26).



Power Steering Hoses, Pipes

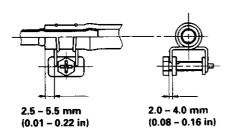
- Replacement

NOTE:

- Connect each hose to the corresponding pipe securely until it stops at the stopper on the pipe.
 Install the clamp or adjustable clamp at the specified distance from the hose end as shown in the drawing.
- Add the power steering fluid to the specified level on the reservoir and check for leaks (see page 17-23).

<ADJUSTABLE HOSE CLAMP:>

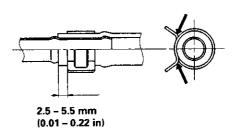
Put over the pipe until the hose stops at the stopper.

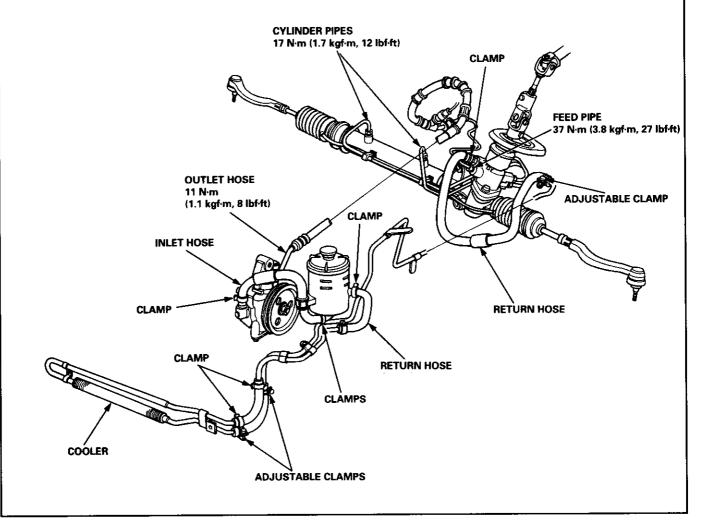


CAUTION: Check all clamps for deterioration and deformation, and replace with new ones if necessary.

<HOSE CLAMP:>

Put over the pipe until the hose stops at the stopper.





Power Steering Pump

Removal

NOTE: Before disconnecting the hoses from the pump, place a suitable container under the car.

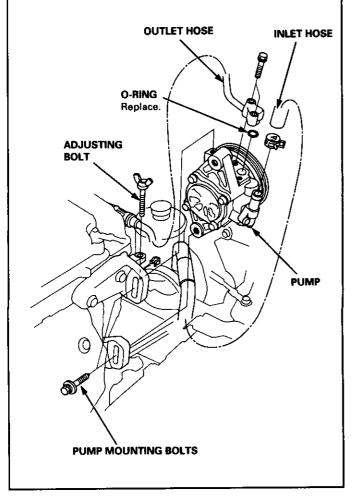
- 1. Drain the power steering fluid from the reservoir.
- 2. Remove the belt by loosening the pump adjusting bolt and mounting bolts.
- 3. Disconnect the injet and outlet hoses from the pump and plug the hoses.

NOTE: Take care not to spill the fluid on the body or parts. Wipe off spilled fluid at once.

4. Remove the pump mounting bolt, then remove the pump.

NOTE: Do not turn the steering wheel with the pump removed

 Wrap the opening of the pump with a piece of tape to prevent any foreign material. See page 17-44 for pump installation.



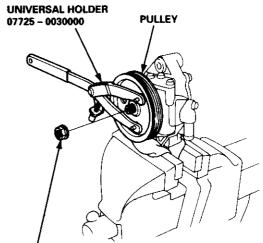
Disassembly

Pulley Removal

- 1. Drain the fluid from the pump.
- Hold the steering pump in a vise with soft jaws, and hold the pulley with the special tool and remove the pulley nut and pulley.

CAUTION: Be careful not to damage the pump housing with the jaws of the vise.

NOTE: Pulley nut has left-hand threads.



PULLEY NUT (Left-hand thread)

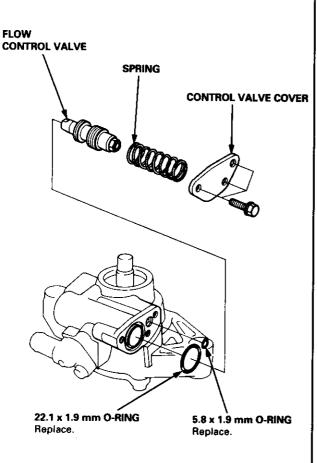
(cont'd)

Power Steering Pump

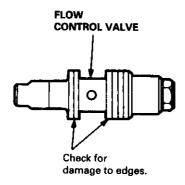
Disassembly (cont'd)

Flow Control Valve Removal/Inspection

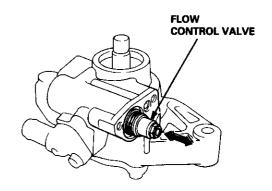
- Remove the control valve cover by removing the three flange boits.
- 2. Remove the spring, flow control valve and O-rings.



Check the flow control valve for wear, burrs, and other damage to the edges of the grooves in the valve.

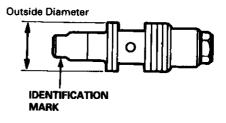


- Inspect the bore for the flow control valve for scratches or wear.
- Slip the valve back in the pump and check that it moves in and out smoothly.



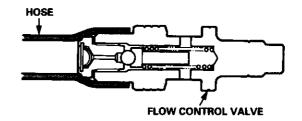
 If OK, go on step 6, if not replace the valve and recheck the valve movement.

NOTE: The original valve was selected for a precise fit in the pump housing bore, so make sure the new one has the same identification mark.



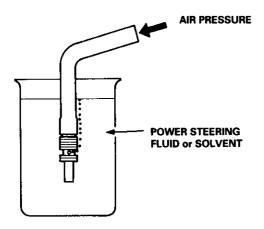
| Mark | Part Name | Outside Diameter mm (in) |
|------|-------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| Α | FLOW CONTROL VALVE A | 17.991 – 17.996 (0.7083 – 0.7085) |
| В | FLOW CONTROL VALVE B | 17.996 – 18.001 (0.7085 – 0.7087) |

- If the valve movement still incorrect, replace the pump as an assembly.
- 6. Attach a hose to the end of the valve as shown.

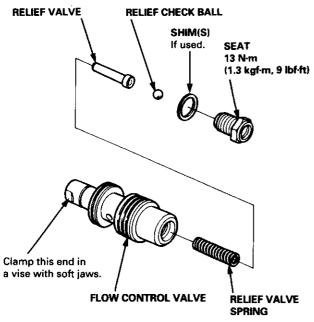




Submerge the valve in a container of power steering fluid or solvent, and blow in the hose. If air bubbles leak through the valve at less than 100 kPa (1.0 kgf/cm², 14.2 psi), replace or repair it as follows.



- 8. Hold the bottom end of the valve with a open end wrench.
- Unscrew the seat in the top end of the valve, and remove any shims, the relief check ball, relief valve and relief valve spring.



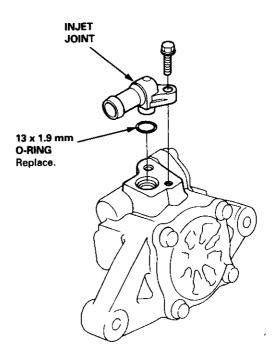
10. Clean all the parts in solvent, dry them off, then reassemble and retest the valve. See page 17-43 for flow control valve installation.

NOTE: If necessary, relief pressure is adjusted at the factory by adding shims under the check ball seat. If you found shims in your valve, be sure you reinstall as many as you took out.

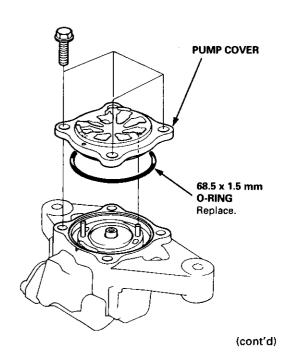
Pump Rotor Removal

CAUTION: The pump components are made of aluminum. Be careful not to damage them when servicing.

1. Remove the inlet joint and O-ring.



2. Remove the pump cover and O-ring.

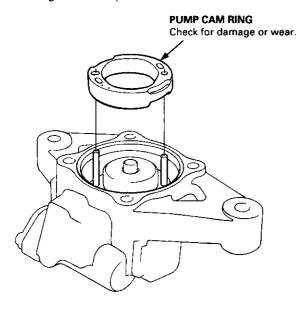


Power Steering Pump

Disassembly (cont'd) -

Remove the pump cam ring from the pump housing.

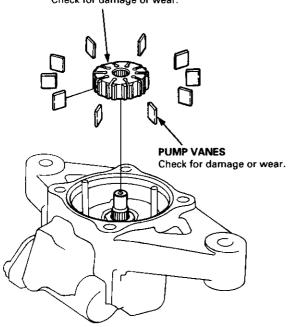
NOTE: Replace the pump as an assembly, if the cam ring must be replaced.



4. Remove the pump rotor and vanes.

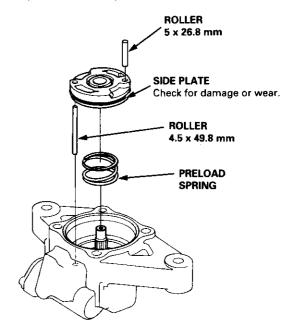
NOTE: Replace the pump as an assembly, if the pump rotor or vanes must be replaced.

PUMP ROTORCheck for damage or wear.

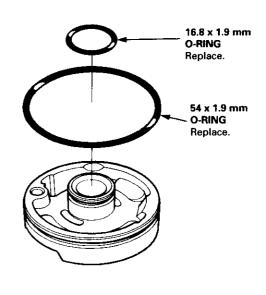


- 5. Remove the two rollers from the side plate.
- 6. Remove the side plate and preload spring.

NOTE: Replace the pump as an assembly, if the side plate must be replaced.

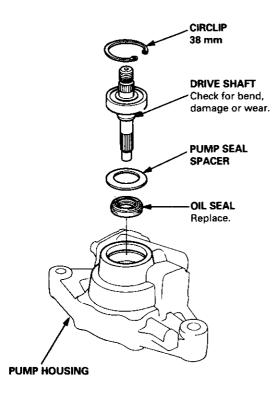


7. Remove the O-rings from the side plate.





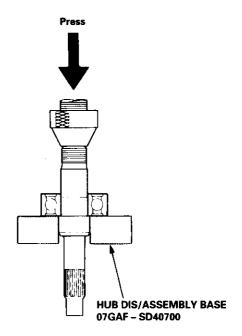
- Remove the circlip, then remove the drive shaft assembly from the pump housing using a plastic hammer.
- 9. Remove the seal spacer and oil seal.
- 10. Inspect the pump housing for damage on the sealing surfaces.



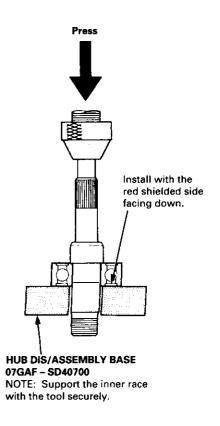
 Inspect the bearing by rotating the outer race slowly. If any play or roughness is felt, replace the bearing.



Remove and discard the bearing using the special tool and a press.



13. Install the new bearing using the special tool and a press.



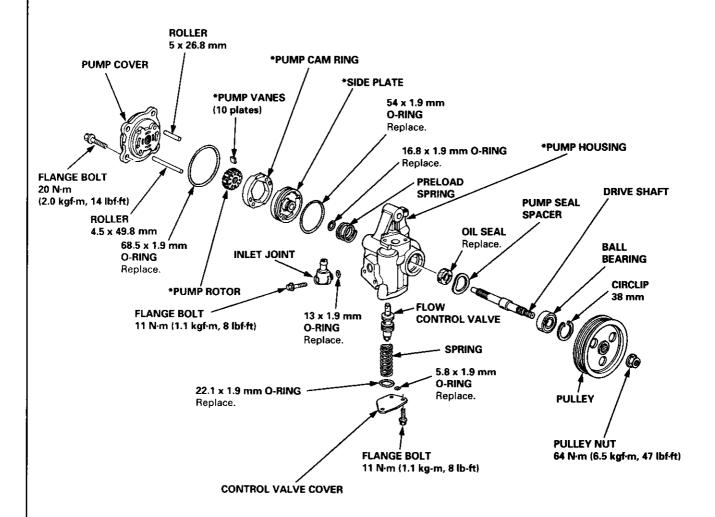
Power Steering Pump

Reassembly

CAUTION: The power steering components are made of aluminum. Avoid damaging the components during assembly.

NOTE:

- Clean the disassembled parts with a solvent and dry them with compressed air. Do not dip the rubber parts in a solvent.
- Always replace the O-rings and rubber seals with new ones before assembly.
- Apply recommended power steering fluid or steering grease (Honda P/N: 08733 B070E) to the parts indicated in the assembly procedures.
- Do not allow dust, dirt, or other foreign materials to enter the power steering system.
- Replace the pump as an assembly if the parts indicated with asterisk (*) are worn or damaged.



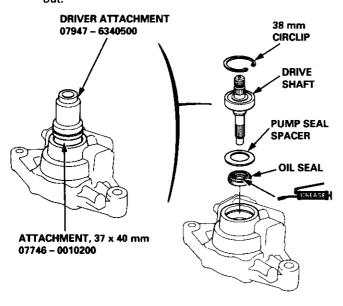


Pump Rotor Installation

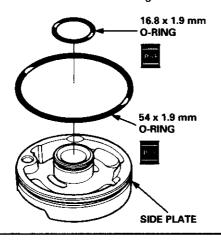
- Coat the lip of the new oil seal with steering grease (Honda P/N 08733 – B070E).
- Install the new oil seal in the pump housing by hand, then install the pump seal spacer.

NOTE: Insert the oil seal with its grooved side facing in.

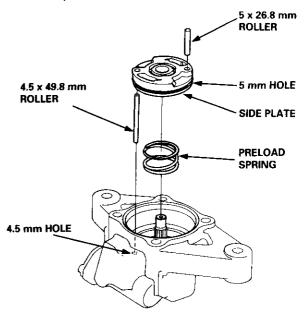
- Install the pump drive shaft assembly with the special tool.
- 4. Install the 38 mm circlip with its tapered side facing



 Coat the side plate grooves with the recommended power steering fluid, then position the 16.8 x 1.9 mm and 54 x 1.9 mm O-rings on the side plate.

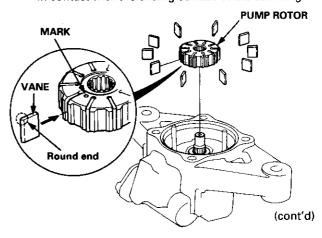


- 6. Install the preload spring in the pump housing.
- 7. Set the 4.5 x 49.8 mm roller in the 4.5 mm hole in the pump housing.
- 8. Set the side plate over the roller and install it on the pump housing.
- 9. Set the 5 x 26.8 mm roller in the 5 mm hole in the side plate.



- 10. Assemble pump rotor to the drive shaft with the "o" mark on the rotor facing upward.
- 11. Set the 10 vanes in the grooves in the rotor.

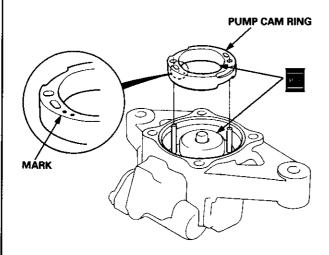
NOTE: Be sure that the round ends of the vanes are in contact with the sliding surface of the cam ring.



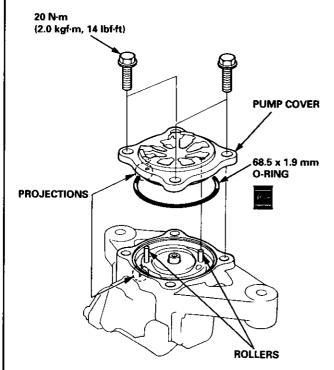
Power Steering Pump

Reassembly (cont'd) -

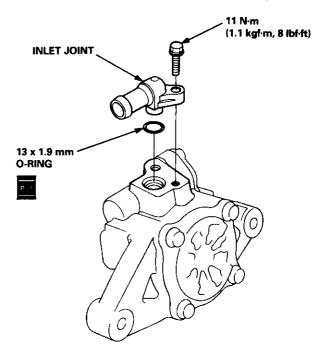
- 12. Set the pump cam ring over the two rollers with the "8" mark on the cam ring upward.
- Apply clean power steering fluid to the vanes and cam ring.



- 14. Install the 68.5 x 1.9 mm O-ring on the pump cover.
- Align the roller set holes in the pump cover with the rollers.
- 16. Align the projection on the pump housing and the projection on the pump cover, and tighten the four bolts.



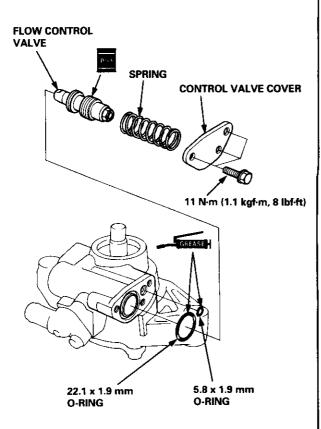
- 17. Set the 13 x 1.9 mm O-ring on the inlet joint.
- 18. Install the inlet joint on the pump housing.





Flow Control Valve Installation

- 1. Apply steering grease (Honda P/N 08733 B070E) to new O-rings.
- 2. Coat the flow control valve with clean power steering fluid.
- 3. Install the flow control valve, spring and control valve cover on the pump housing.
- Tighten the three control cover bolts.

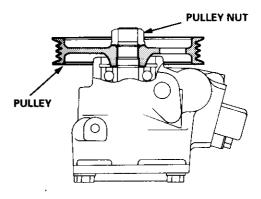


Pulley Installation

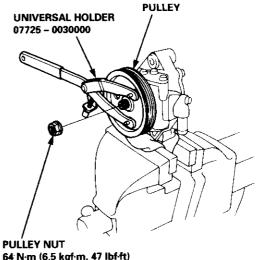
1. Hold the steering pump in a vise with soft jaws.

CAUTION: Be careful not to damage the pump housing with the jaws of the vise.

2. Install the pump pulley as shown. Then install the pulley nut.



Hold the pulley with the special tool and tighten the pulley nut.



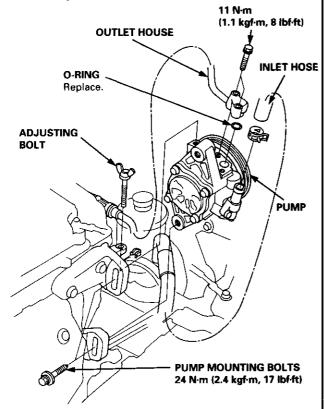
64 N-m (6.5 kgf·m, 47 lbf-ft)

Check that the pump turns smoothly by turning the pulley.

Power Steering Pump

- Installation -

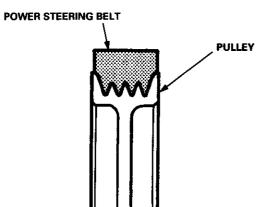
- 1. Connect the inlet and outlet hoses. Tighten the pump fittings securely.
- Loosely install the pump in the pump bracket with mounting bolts.



3. Install the pump belt.

CAUTION:

- Make sure that the power steering belt is securely on the grooves of the pulleys.
- Do not get power steering fluid or grease in the power steering belt or pulley faces. Clean off any fluid or grease before installation.



- 4. Adjust the pump belt (see page 17-20).
- 5. Fill the reservoir to the upper level line.

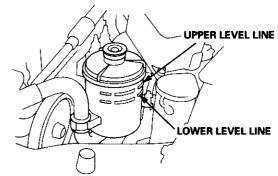
NOTE: Take care not to spill the fluid on the body and parts. Wipe off the spilled fluid at once.

CAUTION: Use only Genuine Honda Power Steering Fluid-V. Using other fluids such as ATF or other manufacturer's power steering fluid will damage the system.

SYSTEM CAPACITY:

1.06 liter (1.12 US.qt, 0.93 Imp.qt) RESERVOIR CAPACITY:

0.79 liter (0.83 US.qt, 0.70 Imp.qt)



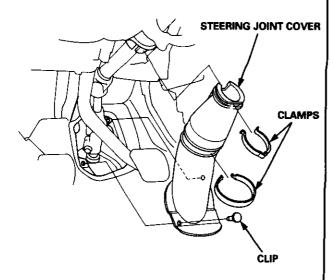
- Start the engine, let it run at idle, then turn the steering wheel lock-to-lock several times to bleed air from the system.
- Recheck the fluid level and add some if necessary.

CAUTION: Do not fill the reservoir beyond the upper level line.

Removal

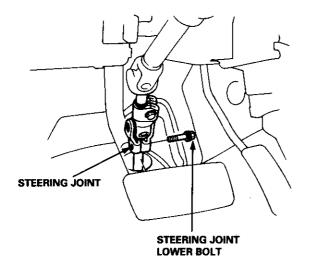
NOTE: Using solvent and a brush, wash any oil and dirt off the valve body unit, its lines, and the end if the gearbox. Blow dry with compressed air.

- Drain the power steering fluid as described on page 17-21.
- 2. Raise the front of car, and support on safety stands in the proper locations (see section 1).
- Remove the front wheels.
- 4. Remove the steering joint cover.



Remove the steering joint lower bolt, and move the joint toward the column.

NOTE: Lock the steering shaft with the ignition key to retain the steering shaft position.

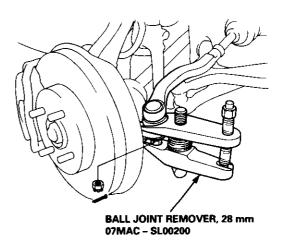


- 6. Remove the cotter pin from the castle nut and remove the nut.
- Install the 10 mm hex nut on the ball joint.
 Be sure that the 10 mm hex nut is flush with the ball joint pin end, or the threaded section of the ball joint pin might be damaged by the ball joint remover.

NOTE: Remove the ball joint using the Ball Joint Remover, 28 mm (07MAC – SL00200). Refer to page 18-11 for how to use the ball joint remover.

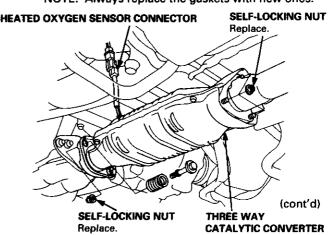
Separate the tie-rod ball joint and knuckle using the special tool.

CAUTION: Avoid damaging the ball joint boot.



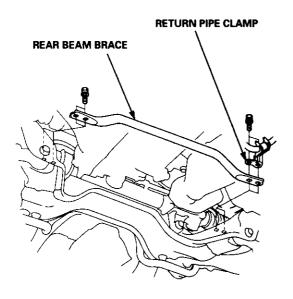
- 9. Disconnect the shift linkage (M/T model: see section 13, A/T model: see section 14).
- Disconnect the heated oxygen sensor (H02S) connector, and separate the three way catalytic converter by removing the self-locking nuts.

NOTE: Always replace the gaskets with new ones.

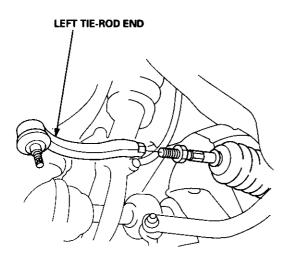


- Removal (cont'd) -

- 11. Remove the return pipe clamp from the left side of the rear beam, and move the return pipe above the steering gearbox.
- 12. Remove the rear beam brace.



13. Remove the left tie-rod end, then slide the rack all the way to the right.

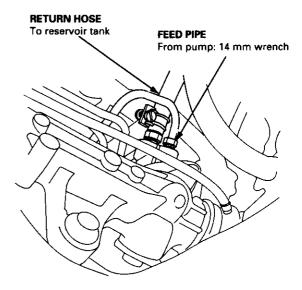


14. Disconnect the two lines from the valve body unit on the steering gearbox.

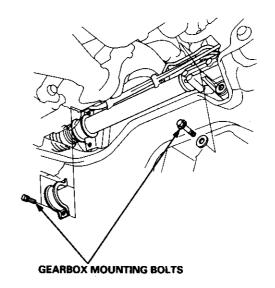
CAUTION: After disconnecting the hose and pipe, plug or seal the hose and pipe with a piece of tape or equivalent to prevent foreign materials from entering the valve body unit.

NOTE:

- Place the pipe disconnected in the previous step at the rear side of the gearbox so that they do not hinder in the gearbox removal.
- Do not loosen the cylinder pipes A and B between the valve body unit and cylinder.

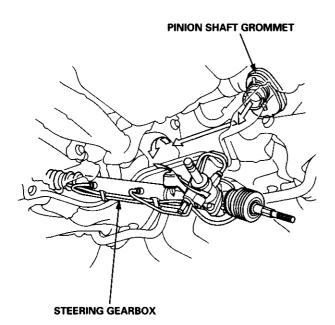


15. Remove the steering gearbox mounting bolts.





- Pull the steering gearbox all the way down to clear the pinion shaft from the bulkhead, and remove the pinion shaft grommet.
- 17. Move the steering gearbox to the right so the left rack end clears the rear beam.
- 18. Hold the steering gearbox and slide the rack all the way to the left, then place the left rack end below the rear beam.
- 19. Move the steering gearbox to the left, and tilt the left side down to remove it from the car.

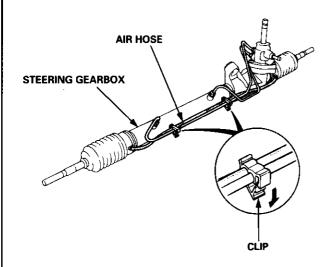


Disassembly -

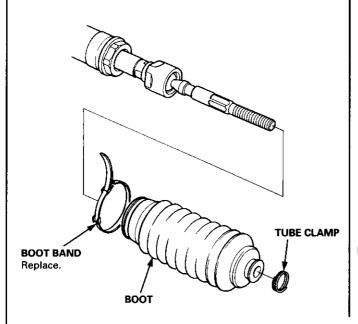
Steering Rack Disassembly

NOTE

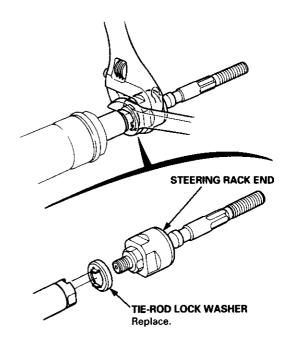
- Before disassembling the gearbox, wash it off with solvent and a brush.
- Do not dip seals and O-rings in solvent.
- Remove the steering gearbox (see page 17-45).
- 2. Remove the air hose and clips.
- 3. Remove the tie-rod end and locknut.



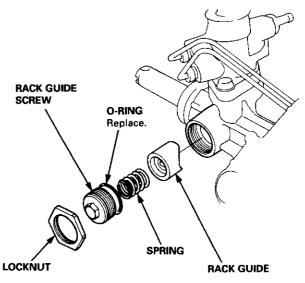
 Remove the boot bands and tube clamps. Pull the boots away from the ends of the gearbox.



Hold the steering rack with a wrench and unscrew the rack end with a wrench.

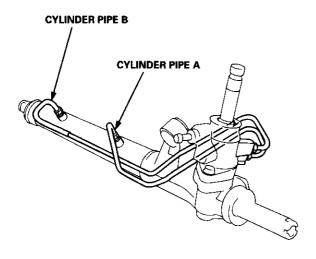


- Loosen the locknut and remove the rack guide screw.
- 7. Remove the spring and rack guide from the gear housing.

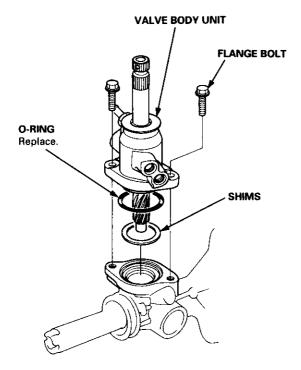




- Remove the cylinder pipe A and B from the gearbox.
- 9. Drain the fluid from the cylinder fittings by moving the steering rack back and forth.

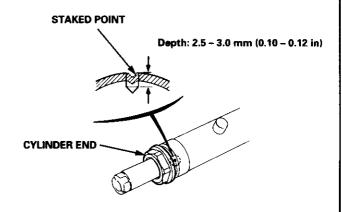


 Remove the two flange bolts, then remove the valve body unit from the gearbox. (See page 17-51 for valve body unit disassembly.)



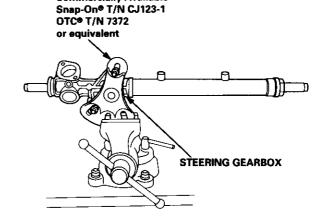
11. Drill a 3 mm (0.12 in) diameter hole approximately 2.5 – 3.5 mm (0.10 – 0.14 in) in depth in the staked-point on the cylinder.

NOTE: Do not allow metal shavings to enter the cylinder housing.



12. Install a puller yoke to the steering gearbox. Clamp the puller yoke in a vise with soft jaws as shown, then loosen and remove the cylinder end.

PULLER YOKE: Commercially Available

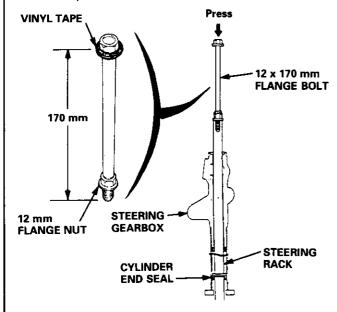


(cont'd)

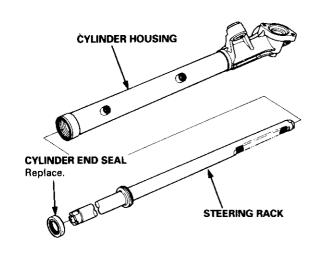
Disassembly (cont'd)

- Set the gearbox in a press so the gear housing points upward.
- 14. Install the flange bolt into the end of the steering rack until it bottoms in the hole, then back the flange bolt out 1/4 turn. Hold the flange bolt and tighten the flange nut against the rack by hand.
- Press the cylinder end seal and steering rack out of the gearbox.

NOTE: Hold the steering rack to keep it from falling when pressed clear.



 Remove the special tool and cylinder end seal from the steering rack.



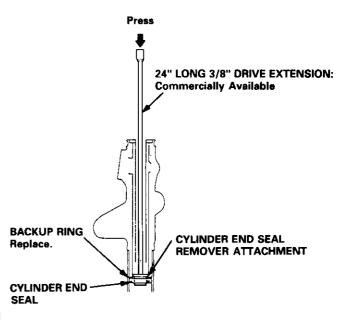
17. Remove the 12 mm bolt and nut from the steering rack, then install a 24" long, 3/8" drive extension, and the special tool into the cylinder from the gearbox side.

CAUTION: Be careful not to damage the inside surface of the housing with the tools.

 Set the gearbox in a press, then press out the cylinder end seal and backup ring from the gearbox.

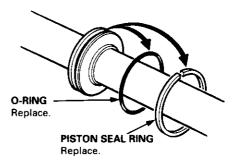
CAUTION:

- Keep the tool straight to avoid damaging the cylinder wall. Check the tool angle, and correct if necessary, when removing the cylinder end seal.
- Use a press to remove the cylinder end seal. Do not try to remove the seal by striking the tool. It will break the backup ring and the cylinder end seal will remain in the gearbox.



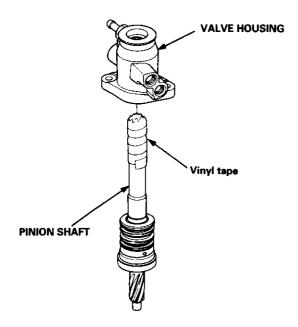
 Carefully pry the piston seal ring and O-ring off the piston of the rack.

CAUTION: Be careful not to damage the inside of seal ring groove when removing the seal ring.





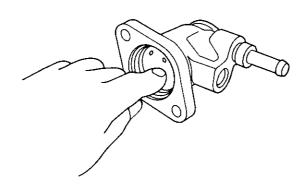
- 20. Apply vinyl tape to the pinion shaft.
- Separate the valve housing from the pinion shaft/ valve using a press.



22. Check the inner wall of the valve housing where the seal ring slides with your finger. If there is a step in the wall, the valve housing is worn. Replace the valve housing.

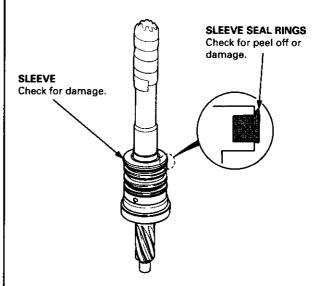
NOTE:

- There may be the sliding marks from the seal ring on the wall of the valve housing. Replace the valve housing only the wall is stepped.
- When the valve housing is replaced, install new 32 mm shim(s) on the bearing surface of the housing to adjust the thickness.

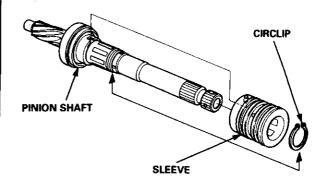


23. Check for wear, burrs and other damage to the edges of the grooves in the sleeve.

NOTE: The pinion shaft and sleeve are a precision matched set. If either the pinion shaft or sleeve must be replaced, replace the both parts as a set.



24. Remove the circlip and pinion shaft sleeve from the pinion shaft.

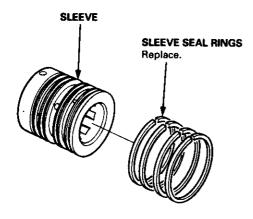


(cont'd)

Disassembly (cont'd)

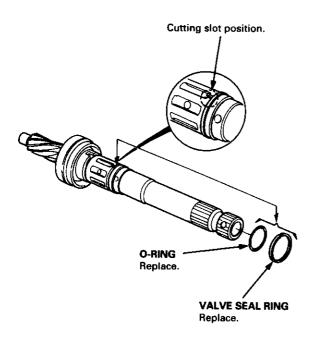
25. Using a cutter or an equivalent tool, cut and remove the four seal rings from the sleeve.

CAUTION: Be careful not to damage the edges of the sleeve grooves when removing the seal rings and O-ring.



 Using a cutter or an equivalent tool, cut the valve seal ring and O-ring at the groove the pinion shaft.
 Remove the valve seal ring and O-ring.

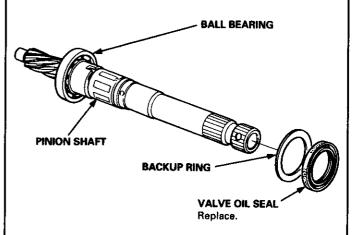
CAUTION: Be careful not to damage the edges of the pinion shaft groove when removing the valve seal ring and O-ring.



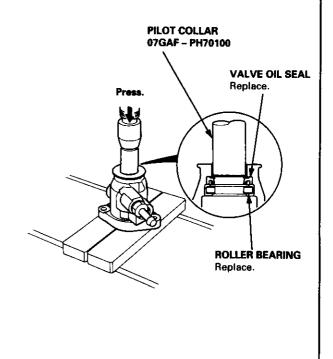
 Remove the valve oil seal and backup ring from the pinion shaft.

NOTE:

- Inspect the ball bearing by rotating the outer race slowly. If there is excessive play, replace the pinion shaft and sleeve as an assembly.
- The pinion shaft and sleeve are a precise fit; do not intermix old and new pinion shafts and sleeves.



28. Press the valve oil seal and roller bearing out of the valve housing using a hydraulic press and special tool shown below.





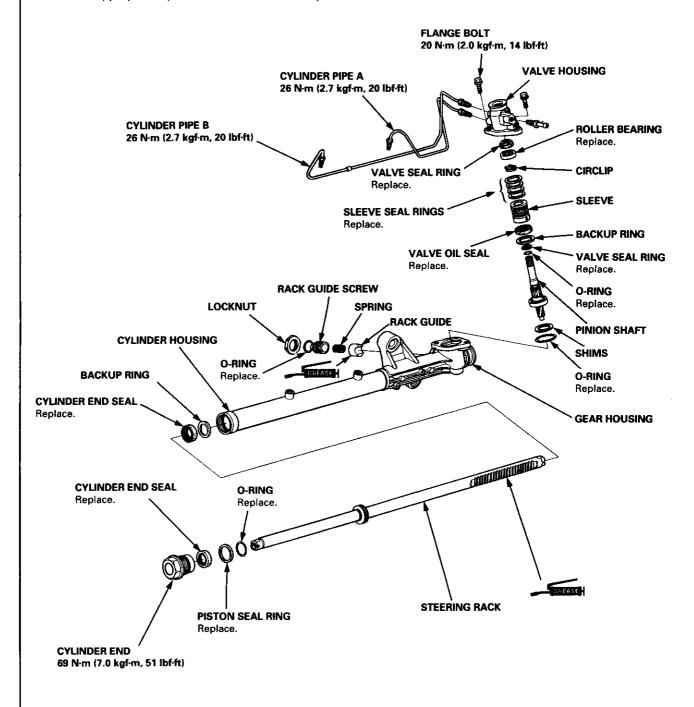
Reassembly

NOTE:

٦e

AL

- Clean the disassembled parts with a solvent and dry them with compressed air. Do not dip the rubber parts in a solvent.
- Always replace the O-rings and rubber seals with new ones before assembly.
- Apply power steering fluid or steering grease (HONDA P/N: 08733 B070E) to the parts indicated in the assembly procedures.
- Do not allow dust, dirt, or other foreign materials to enter the power steering system.
- Use the appropriate special tools where necessary.



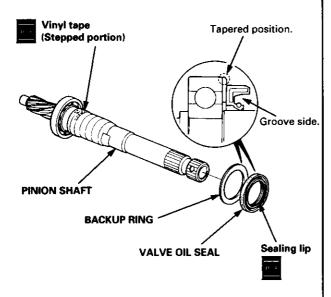
(cont'd)

- Reassembly (cont'd)

Valve Body Reassembly

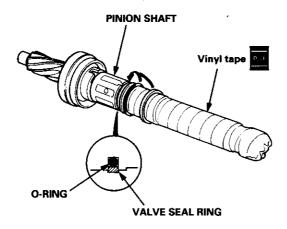
- Apply vinyl tape to the stepped portion of the pinion shaft, and coat the surface of the vinyl tape with the power steering fluid.
- Install the backup ring with its tapered side as shown below.
- Coat the inside surface of the new valve oil seal with power steering fluid.
- Slide the valve oil seal over the pinion shaft, being careful not to damage the sealing lip.

CAUTION: Install the valve oil seal with its grooved side facing opposite the bearing.

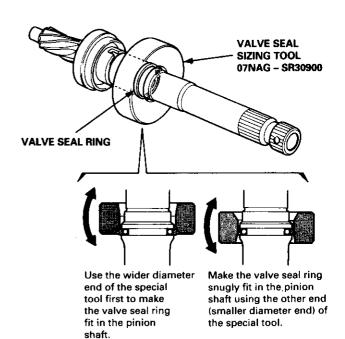


- Fit the new O-ring in the groove of the pinion shaft.
 Then slide the new valve seal ring over the shaft and groove in on the pinion shaft.
- 6. Remove the vinyl tape from the pinion shaft.

NOTE: Do not over - expand the valve seal ring.



- Apply power steering fluid to the surface of the valve seal ring that was installed on the pinion shaft.
- Apply power steering fluid to the inside of the special tool. Set the larger diameter end of the special tool over the valve seal ring.
- Move the special tool up and down several times to make the valve seal ring fit in the pinion shaft.
- 10. Remove the special tool.
- 11. Turn the special tool over and set the smaller diameter end of the special tool over the valve seal ring. Move the special tool up and down several times to make the valve seal ring snugly fit in the pinion shaft.



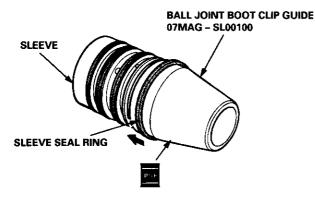


12. Apply power steering fluid to the surface of the special tool. Set the new seal rings over the special tool from the smaller diameter end of the tool, and expand the seal rings. Do two rings at a time from each end of the sleeve.

NOTE:

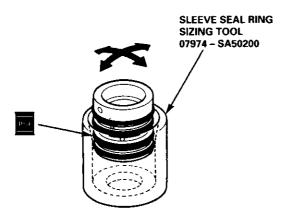
- Do not over-expand the seal ring. Install the resin seal rings with care so as not to damage them.
 After installation, be sure to contract the seal rings using the special tool (sizing tool).
- There are two types of sleeve seal rings: black and brown. Do not mix the different types of sleeve seal rings as they are not compatible.
- Set the special tool in the grooves in the sleeve, and set each ring in each groove securely.

NOTE: After installation, compress the seal rings with your fingers temporarily.



- Apply power steering fluid to the seal rings on the sleeve and to the entire inside surface of the special tool
- 15. Insert the sleeve into the special tool slowly.
- Move the sleeve each direction several times to make the seal rings snugly fit in the sleeve.

NOTE: Be sure that the seal rings are not turned up.

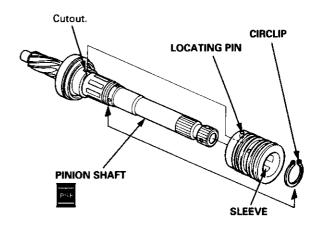


17. Apply power steering fluid to the surface of the pinion shaft, then assemble the sleeve over the pinion shaft, aligning the locating pin on the inside of the sleeve with the cutout in the shaft.

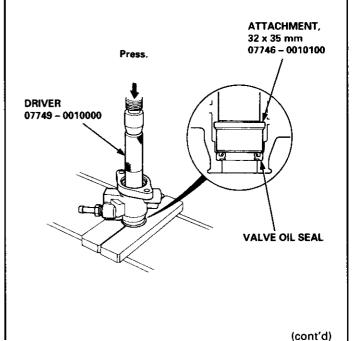
NOTE: Be careful not to damage the valve seal ring when inserting the sleeve.

18. Install the circlip securely in the pinion shaft groove.

NOTE: Install the circlip with its tapered side facing out.



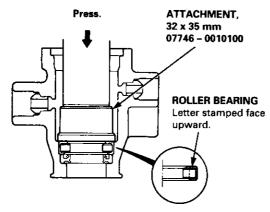
19. Apply power steering fluid to the seal ring lip of the valve oil seal. Then install the seal in the valve housing using a hydraulic press and special tools as shown.



Reassembly (cont'd)

20. Press the new roller bearing into the valve housing using a hydraulic press and special tool as shown.

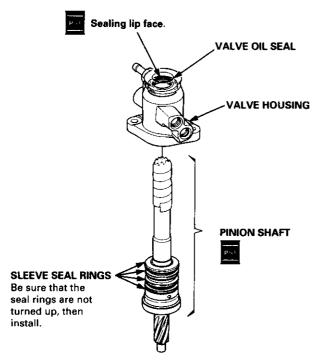
NOTE: Place the roller bearing on the valve housing with its letter stamped facing up towards the valve side.



- 21. Apply vinyl tape to the pinion shaft, then coat the vinyl tape with power steering fluid.
- 22. Insert the pinion shaft into the valve housing.

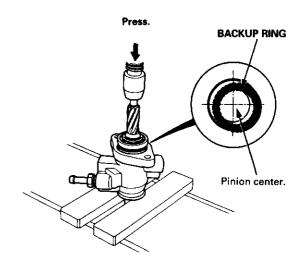
CAUTION: Be careful not to damage the valve seal rings.

23. Remove the vinyl tape from the pinion shaft.



24. Press the pinion shaft/sleeve using a hydraulic press as shown.

CAUTION: Before inserting the pinion shaft, be sure that the backup ring is centered with the pinion shaft bearing.

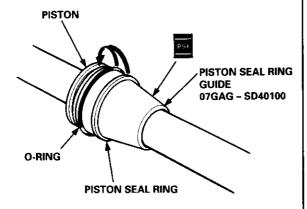




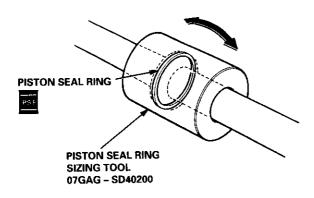
- 25. Coat the piston seal ring guide with power steering fluid, and slide it onto the rack, big end first.
- Position the new O-ring and new piston seal ring on the special tool, then slide them down towards big end of the tool.

NOTE:

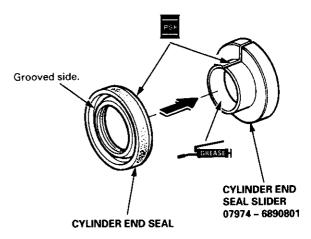
- Do not over expand resin seal rings. Install the resin seal ring with care so as not to damage them. After installation, be sure to contract the seal ring using the special tool (sizing tool).
- Replace piston's O-ring and seal ring as a set.
- 27. Pull the O-ring off into the piston groove, then pull the piston seal ring off into the piston groove on top of the O-ring.



- 28. Coat the piston seal ring and inside of the special tool with power steering fluid.
- Carefully slide the tool onto the rack and over the piston seal ring.
- 30. Move the special tool back and forth several times to make the piston seal ring fit snugly in the piston.

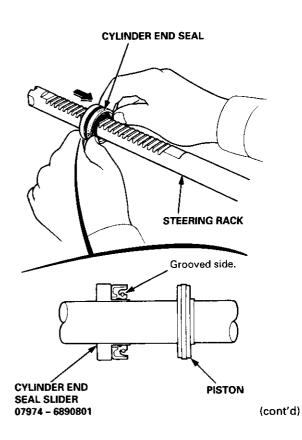


- 31. Coat the sliding surface of the special tool and new cylinder end seal with power steering fluid.
- 32. Place the seal on the special tool with its grooved side facing opposite the special tool.



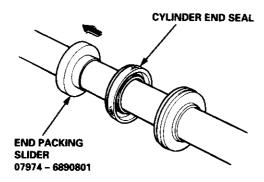
 Apply a thin coat of grease to the inside of the special tool, and install it on the steering rack.

CAUTION: Make sure the rack teeth do not face the slot in the special tool.

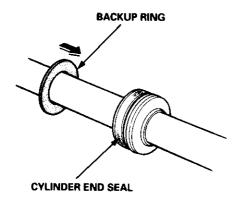


Reassembly (cont'd)

34. Separate the cylinder end seal from the special tool, then remove the tool from the steering rack.

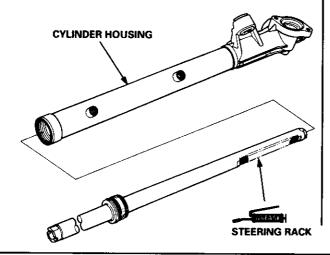


35. Install the backup ring on the steering rack, then place the cylinder end seal to piston.



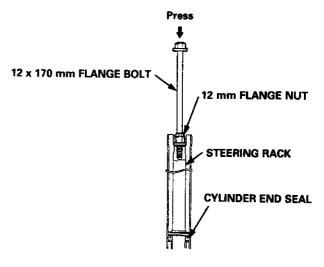
36. Grease the steering rack teeth, then insert the steering rack into the gear housing.

CAUTION: Be careful not to damage to inner surface of the gear housing with the rack edges.



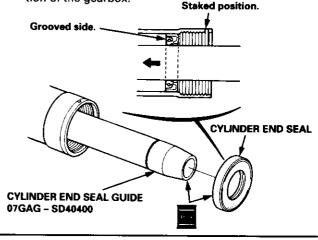
- 37. Set the gearbox in a press with the cylinder housing facing upward.
- 38. Install the flange bolt into the end of the steering rack until it bottoms in the hole, then back the flange bolt out 1/4 turn. Hold the flange bolt and tighten the flange nut against the rack by hand.
- Install the cylinder end seal into the bottom of the cylinder by pressing on the bolt with a press as shown.

CAUTION: Do not push on the bolt with excessive force; as it may damage the cylinder end seal.



- 40. Remove the flange bolt and center the steering rack.
- Install the special tool or vinyl tape onto the end of the steering rack, then coat the special tool or vinyl tape with power steering fluid.
- 42. Coat the inside surface of the new cylinder end seal with power steering fluid.
- 43. Install the cylinder end seal onto the steering rack with its grooved side toward the piston.
- 44. Remove the special tool. Push in the cylinder end seal with finger.

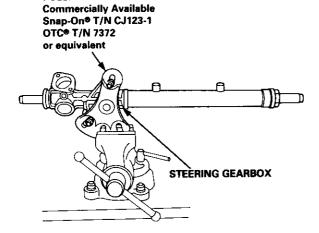
NOTE: Take care not to damage the cylinder end seal with the threads and burrs at the staked position of the gearbox.





45. Install a puller yoke to the steering gearbox, then clamp the puller yoke in a vise with soft jaws as shown.

PULLER YOKE:



- 46. Grease the inside surface of the cylinder end, then install the cylinder end by screwing it into the cylinder housing.
- 47. After tightening the cylinder end, stake the point of the cylinder housing shown below. NOTE: Stake in the cylinder in the position opposite from where the stake was removed during disassembly.

Stake point. Depth: 1.0 mm (0.04 in)

CYLINDER HOUSING

CYLINDER END

CYLINDER END
69 N·m (7.0 kgf·m, 51 lbf·ft)

48. Select the 32 mm shim(s).

NOTE: Only reinstall the original 32 mm shim(s) when the steering gearbox is reassembled without replacing the pinion shaft, valve housing, and gearbox housing with new ones.

If the pinion shaft, valve housing, and gearbox

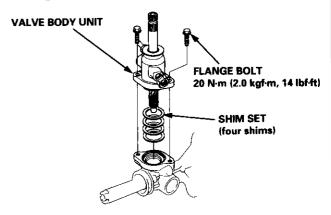
If the pinion shaft, valve housing, and gearbox housing are replaced, select the new shim(s) as follows

Shim selection:

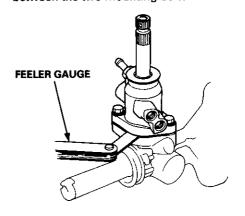
-1. Set the four 32 mm shims on the bearing surface of the gearbox housing. Total thickness of the four shims should equal no more than 0.70 mm. Shim set: four 32 mm shims (Thickness: 0.10 mm, 0.15 mm, 0.20, 0.25 mm respectively)

CAUTION: The four 32 mm shims do not have thickness identification marks. Measure the thickness of each shim using a micrometer, and mark the shim for identification.

 -2. Install the valve body unit on the gearbox, and tighten the flange bolts to the specified torque.



-3. Measure the clearance between the gearbox and valve body unit using a feeler gauge as shown. NOTE: Measure the clearance at the point midway between the two mounting bolts.



(cont'd)

Reassembly (cont'd)

-4. Determine the required thickness of the 32 mm shims by subtracting the clearance obtained in the step -3 from the total thickness of the four shims. (Total thickness of the 4 shims) - (Clearance) = Required thickness of the shims

NOTE: Select the shims so that the total thickness is close to, but less than the required thickness.

Example:

Measurement is 0.28 mm (0.011 in): 0.70 - 0.28 = 0.42 mm (0.028 - 0.011 = 0.017 in)

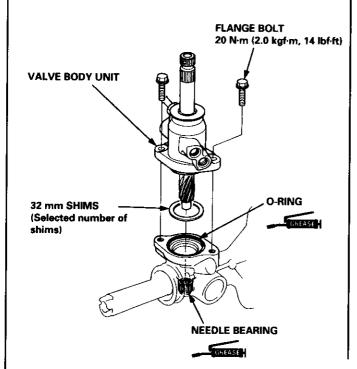
The selected shims should be 0.25 mm (0.010 in) and 0.15 mm (0.006 in) in thickness.

If the required shim thickness is 0.10 mm or less, no shims are necessary.

- 49. Set the selected 32 mm shims on the bearing surface of the gearbox housing.
- Coat the new O-ring with grease and install it in the groove in the gearbox housing.
- Apply grease to the needle bearing in the gearbox housing.
- 52. Install the valve body unit on the gearbox housing by engaging the gears.

NOTE: Note the valve body unit installation position (direction of pipe connection).

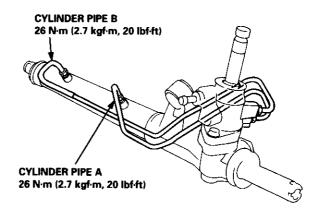
53. Tighten the flange bolts to the specified torque.



54. Install the cylinder pipes A and B.

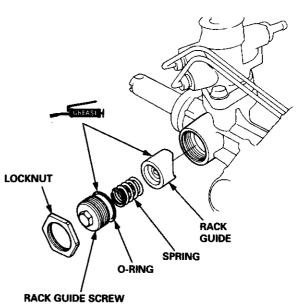
NOTE:

- Clean the joints of the cylinder pipe A and B thoroughly. The joints must be free of foreign material.
- Install the cylinder pipe A and B by tighting the flare nuts by hand first, then tighten the flare nuts to the specified torque starting with the cylinder side nuts.



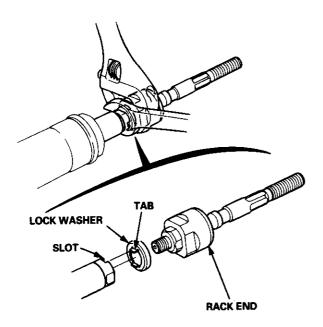
- 55. Grease the sliding surface of the rack guide and install it onto the gear housing.
- 56. Apply a thin coat of grease to the new O-ring and install it on the rack guide screw.
- 57. Install the spring, rack guide screw and locknut on the gear housing.
- 58. Adjust the rack guide screw (see page 17-21).

NOTE: After adjusting, check that the rack moves smoothly by sliding to rack right and left.

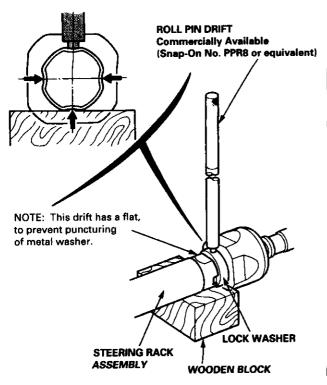




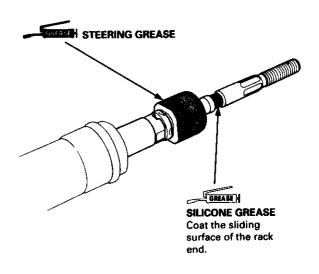
- 59. Install the new lock washer in the groove in the steering rack.
- 60. Hold the steering rack with a wrench and tighten the rack end.



61. After tightening the rack end, stake the four sections of lock washer with a commercially available roll pin drift and a mallet.

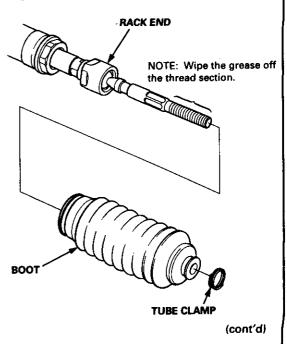


- 62. Apply steering grease to the circumference of the rack end housing.
- 63. Coat the rack end groove and inside of the boot with silicone grease.



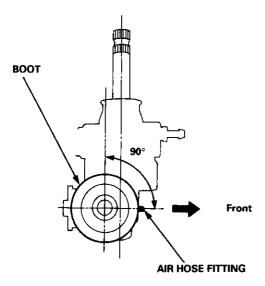
64. Install the boots in the rack end with the tube clamps.

NOTE: Install the boots with the rack in the straight ahead position (i.e. right and left tie-rods are equal in length).

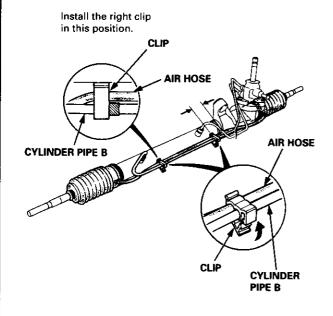


Reassembly (cont'd)

65. Adjust the air hose fitting position of the boots by turning it as shown below.

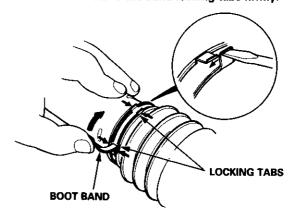


66. Connect the air hose between the right and left boot, then install the clips on the cylinder pipe B as shown.



- 67. Install new boot bands on the boot and bend both sets of locking tabs.
- 68. Lightly tap on the doubled-over portions to reduce their height.

CAUTION: Stake the band locking tabs firmly.



- 69. Slide the rack right and left to be certain that the boots are not deformed or twisted.
- Install the right and left tie-rod ends on the rack ends.

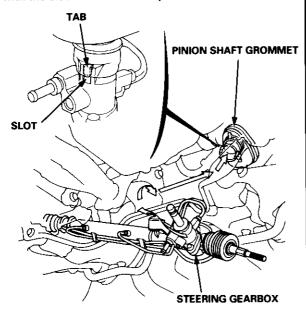


Installation

CAUTION: Be careful not to bend or damage the piping when installing the gearbox.

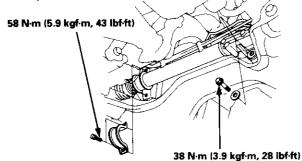
- Before installing the gearbox, slide the rack all the way to right.
- Pass the right side of the steering gearbox above and through the right side of the rear beam.
- Hold the steering gearbox and slide the rack all the way to the left.
- Raise the left side of the steering gearbox above and through the left side of the rear beam.
- Install the pinion shaft grommet and insert the pinion shaft up through the bulkhead.

NOTE: Align the tab on the pinion shaft grommet with the slot in the valve body.



6. Install and tighten the gearbox mounting bolts.

NOTE: After installing the gearbox, check the air hose connections for interference with adjacent parts.



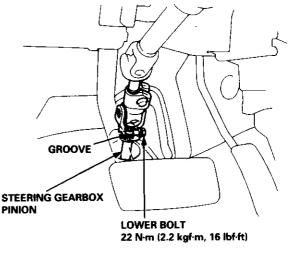
- 7. Center the steering rack within its stroke.
- 8. Make sure that the cable reel of the SRS is centered as follows:
 - Turn the steering wheel left approx. 150 degrees, to check the cable reel position with indicator.
 - If the cable reel is centered, the yellow gear tooth lines up with the alignment mark on the cover.
 - Return the steering wheel right approx. 150 degrees to position the steering wheel in the straight ahead position.



 Slip the lower end of the steering joint onto the pinion shaft (line up the bolt hole with the groove around the shaft), and tighten the lower bolt.

NOTE:

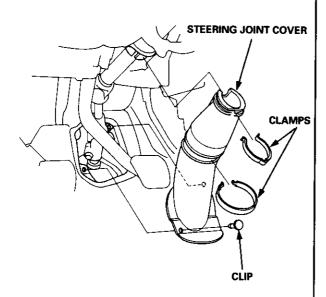
- Connect the steering shaft and pinion with the cable reel and steering rack centered.
- Be sure that the lower steering joint bolt is securely in the groove in the steering gearbox pinion.
- If the steering wheel and rack are not centered, reposition the serrations at lower end of the steering joint.



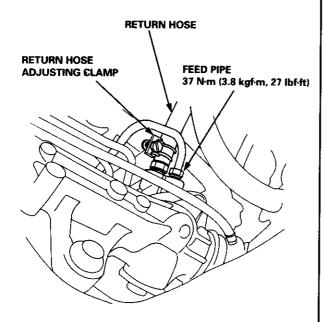
(cont'd)

- Installation (cont'd)

10. Install the steering joint cover with the clamps and clips.

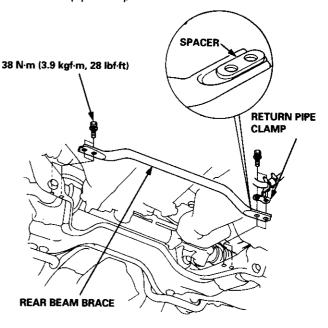


11. Connect the fluid lines to the valve body unit.



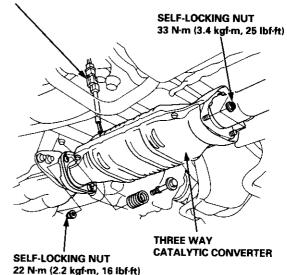
12. Install the rear beam brace rod and return pipe clamp on the rear beam.

NOTE: Install the rear beam brace toward the return pipe clamp.



13. Install the three way catalytic converter with the new gaskets and new self-locking nuts, and connect the heated oxygen sensor (HO2S) connector.

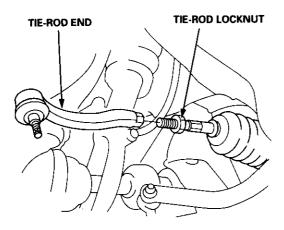
HEATED OXYGEN SENSOR CONNECTOR



14. Connect the shift linkage (M/T model: see section 13, A/T model: see section 14).

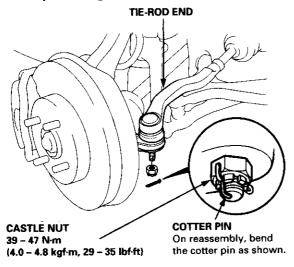


15. Thread the right and left tie-rod ends onto the rack an equal number of turns.



16. Reconnect the tie-rod ends to the steering knuckles, tighten the castle nut to the specified torque, and install new cotter pins.

CAUTION: Torque the castle nut to the lower torque specification, then tighten it only far enough to align the slot with the pin hole. Do not align the nut by loosening.



- 17. Install the front wheels.
- 18. Fill the system with power steering fluid and bleed air from the system (see page 17-21).
- 19. After installation, perform the following checks.
 - Check the gearbox for leaks (see page 17-23).
 - · Adjust the front toe (see section 18).
 - Check the steering wheel spoke angle. Adjust by turning the right and left tie-rods, if necessary.

NOTE: Turn the right and left tie-rods equally.

Ball Joint Boot Replacement

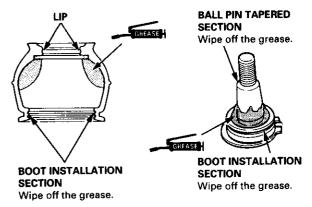
1. Remove the boot set ring and the boot.

CAUTION: Do not contaminate the boot installation section with grease.

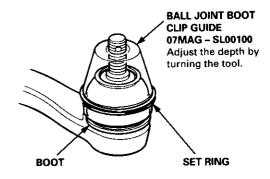
- 2. Pack the interior of the boot and lip with grease.
- 3. Wipe the grease off the sliding surface of the ball pin, then pack the lower area with fresh grease.

CAUTION:

- Keep grease off the boot installation section and the tapered section of the ball pin.
- Do not allow dust, dirt, or other foreign materials to enter the boot.



4. Install the boot in the groove of the boot installation section securely, then bleed air.



Insert the special tool into the threads in the ball pin and align the end of the tool with the groove in the boot.

Slide the clip over the tool and into position.

CAUTION: After installing the boot, check the ball pin tapered section for grease contamination and wipe it if necessary.

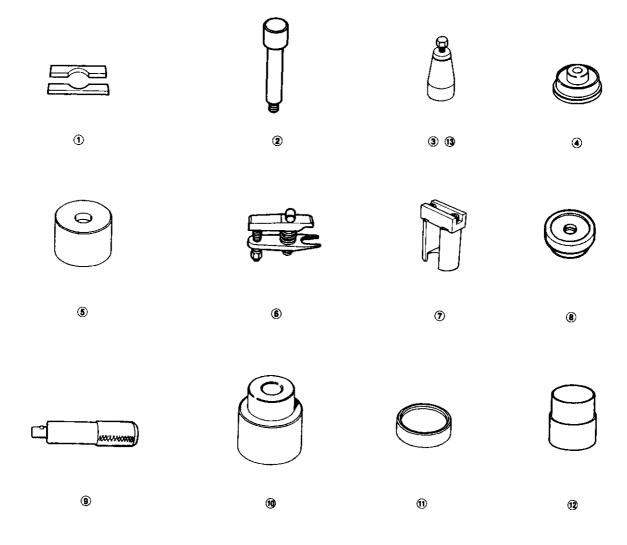
Suspension

| Special Tools1 | 18-2 |
|------------------------------|-------|
| Component Location | |
| Index 1 | 18-3 |
| Wheel Alignment | |
| Caster 1 | 18-4 |
| Camber 1 | 18-4 |
| Front Toe Inspection/ | |
| Adjustment | 18-5 |
| Rear Toe Inspection/ | |
| Adjustment | |
| Turning Angle Inspection | 18-6 |
| Wheel/Hub Inspection | |
| Bearing End Play | 18-7 |
| Wheel Runout | 18-7 |
| Front Suspension | |
| Torque Specifications | 18-8 |
| Knuckle/Hub | |
| Illustrated Index | 18-9 |
| Knuckle Removal | 18-10 |
| Wheel Bearing Replacement | 18-13 |
| Knuckle Installation | 18-15 |
| Lower Ball Joint Replacement | 18-17 |
| Ball Joint Boot Replacement | 18-18 |
| Suspension Arms | |
| Removal/Inspection | 18-19 |
| Installation | |
| Lower Arm Bushing | |
| Replacement | 18-21 |

| ront Damper | |
|-------------------------|------|
| Removal 1 | 8-22 |
| Disassembly/Inspection1 | 8-22 |
| Reassembly1 | 8-24 |
| Installation 1 | |
| Rear Suspension | |
| Torque Specifications 1 | 8-26 |
| Hub Bearing Unit | |
| Illustrated Index1 | 8-27 |
| Removal 1 | 8-28 |
| Installation 1 | 8-29 |
| Suspension Arms | |
| Removal/Inspection 1 | 8-31 |
| Installation 1 | |
| Lower Arm Bushing | |
| Replacement1 | 8-33 |
| Rear Damper | |
| Removal 1 | 8-34 |
| Disassembly/Inspection1 | 8-39 |
| Reassembly1 | 8-37 |
| Installation 1 | 8-38 |



| Ref. No. | Tool Number | Description | Qty | Page Reference |
|---------------|-----------------|------------------------------|-----|----------------|
| ① | 07GAF - SD40700 | Hub Dis/Assembly Base | 2 | 18-13 |
| 2 3 | 07GAF SE00100 | Hub Dis/Assembly Tool | 1 | 18-13, 14 |
| 3 | 07GAG - SD40700 | Ball Joint Boot Clip Guide | 1 | 18-18 |
| 4 | 07HAD - SF10100 | Driver Attachment | 1 | 18-14 |
| ⑤ | 07JAF - SH20200 | Ball Joint Remover Base | 1 | 18-17 |
| 6 | 07MAC - SL00200 | Ball Joint Remover, 28 mm | 1 | 18-11, 12 |
| ⑦ | 07NAD - SS00101 | Bushing Driver | 1 1 | 18-21, 33 |
| | or | _ | | , |
| | 07NAD - SS00100 | | | |
| 8 | 07746 - 0010500 | Attachment, 62 x 68 mm | 1 | 18-13, 15 |
| 9 | 07749 - 0010000 | Driver | 1 | 18-13, 14, 15 |
| 10 | 07965 - SB00100 | Ball Joint Remover/Installer | 1 | 18-17 |
| 10 | 07965 - SB00200 | Ball Joint Installer Base | 1 1 | 18-17 |
| 12 | 07965 - SD90100 | Support Base | 1 | 18-14, 15 |
| (13) | 07974 - SA50700 | Ball Joint Boot Clip Guide | 1 | 18-17, 18 |

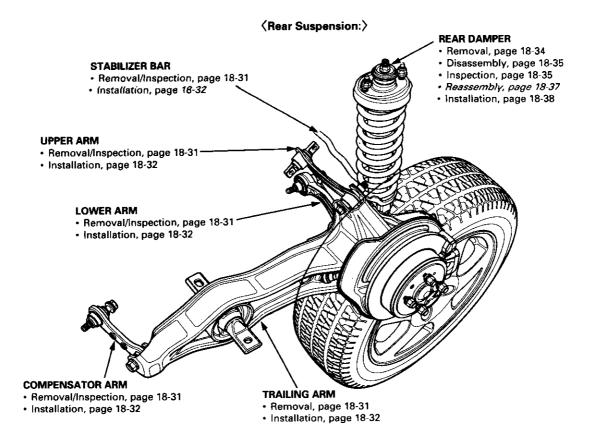


Component Location



Index

Wheel Alignment, page 18-4 **⟨Front Suspension:⟩** FRONT DAMPER • Removal, page 18-22 Disassembly, page 18-22 **UPPER ARM** Inspection, page 18-22 · Reassembly, page 18-24 Removal/Inspection, page 18-19 • Installation, page 18-25 Installation, page 18-20 KNUCKLE/HUB · Knuckle Removal, page 18-10 • Wheel Bearing Replacement, page 18-13-• Knuckle Installation, page 18-15 • Lower Ball Joint Replacement, page 18-17 **LOWER ARM** Removal/Inspection, page 18-19 • Installation, page 18-20 STABILIZER BAR Removal/Inspection, page 18-19 • Installation, page 18-20

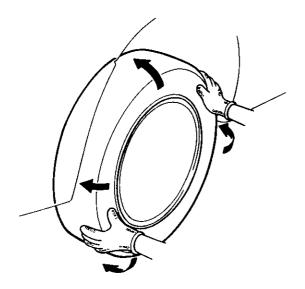


Wheel Alignment

Caster

NOTE: For proper inspection/adjustment of the wheel alignment check and adjust the following before checking the alignment.

- Check that the suspension is not modified.
- Check the tire size and tire pressure.
- Check the runout of the wheels and tires.
- Check the suspension ball joints. (Hold a wheel with your hands and move it up and down and right and left to check for wobbling.)



Inspection

NOTE: Use commercially available computerized four wheel alignment equipment to measure wheel alignment (i.e., caster, camber, toe, and/or turning angle). Follow the equipment manufacturer's instructions.

1. Check the caster angle.

Caster angle: 1°10′ ± 1°

2. If out of specification, check for bent or damaged suspension components.

Camber

Inspection

NOTE: Use commercially available computerized four wheel alignment equipment to measure wheel alignment (i.e., caster, camber, toe, and/or turning angle). Follow the equipment manufacturer's instructions.

1. Check the camber angle.

Camber angle:

Front: $-0^{\circ}10' \pm 1^{\circ}$ Rear: $-0^{\circ}45' {}_{-1^{\circ}15'}^{+0^{\circ}45'}$

2. If out of specification, check for bent or damaged suspension components.



Front Toe Inspection/Adjustment — — Rear Toe Inspection/Adjustment

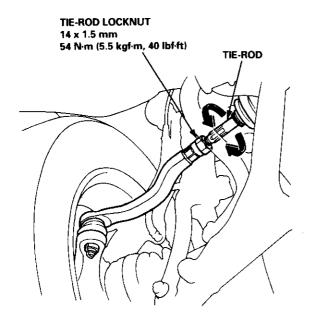
NOTE: Use commercially available computerized four wheel alignment equipment to measure wheel alignment (i.e., caster, camber, toe, and/or turning angle). Follow the equipment manufacturer's instructions.

- Check the tire pressure.
- Center steering wheel spokes.
- Check the toe with the wheels pointed straight ahead.

Front toe: $0 \pm 2 \text{ mm} (0 \pm 0.08 \text{ in})$

- If adjustment is required, go on to step 4.
- If no adjustment is required, remove alignment equipment.
- Loosen the tie-rod locknuts and turn both tie-rods in the same direction until the front wheels are in straight ahead position.
- Turn both tie-rods equally until the toe reading on the turning radius gauge is correct.
- After adjusting, tighten the tie-rod locknuts.

NOTE: Reposition the tie-rod boot if it is twisted or displaced.



NOTE: Use commercially available computerized four wheel alignment equipment to measure wheel alignment (i.e., caster, camber, toe, and/or turning angle). Follow the equipment manufacturer's instructions.

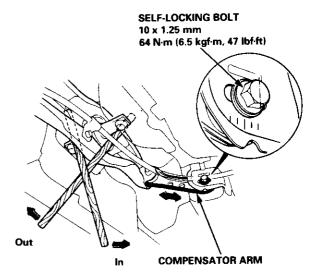
1. Release parking brake.

NOTE:

- Measure difference in toe measurements with the wheels pointed straight ahead.
- If the parking brake is engaged, you may get an incorrect reading.

Rear toe-in: 3⁺² mm (0.12^{+0.08}_{-0.04} in)

- If adjustment is required, go to step 2.
- If no adjustment is required, remove alignment equipment.
- 2. Before adjustment, note the locations of self-locking bolts on the right and left compensator arms.
- Loosen the self-locking bolts and slide the compensator arm in or out as shown, to adjust the toe.
- Tighten the self-locking bolts.



- Example:
 - After the rear toe inspection, the wheel is 2 mm (0.08 in) out of the specification.
- Move the arm so the adjusting bolt moves 2 mm (0.08 in) inward from the position recorded before the adjustment.
- The distance the adjusting bolt is moved should be equal to the amount out-of-specification.

Wheel Alignment

- Turning Angle Inspection

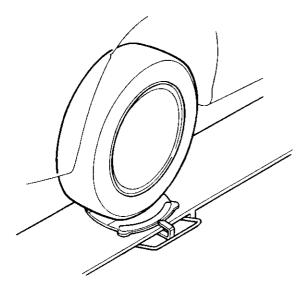
NOTE: Use commercially available computerized four wheel alignment equipment to measure wheel alignment (i.e., caster, camber, toe, and/or turning angle). Follow the equipment manufacturer's instructions.

 Turn the wheel right and left while applying the brake, and measure the turning angle of both wheels.

Turning angle:

Inward wheel: 36°00'

Outward wheel: 30°30'(reference)



If the turning angle is not within the specifications, check for bent or damaged suspension components.

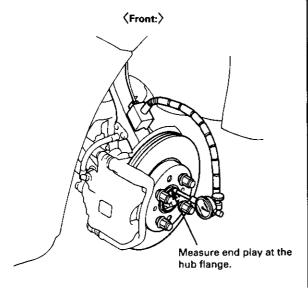
Wheel/Hub Inspection

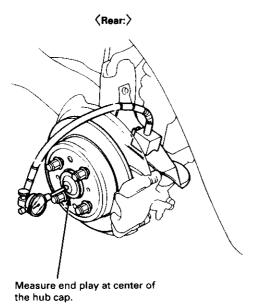
Bearing End Play -

- 1. Raise the car off the ground, and support it with safety stands in the proper locations (see section 1).
- Remove the wheels, then reinstall the wheel nuts.
- Attach the dial gauge as shown.
- Measure the bearing end play by moving the disc in or outward.

Front/Rear:

Standard: 0 - 0.05 mm (0 - 0.002 in)





If the bearing end play measurement is more than the standard, replace the wheel bearing.

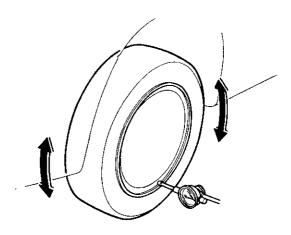
- Wheel Runout

- Raise the car off the ground, and support it with safety stands in the proper locations (see section 1).
- 2. Check for bent or deformed wheels.
- 3. Attach the dial gauge as shown.
- Measure the wheel runout by turning the wheel.

Front and Rear Wheel Axial Runout:

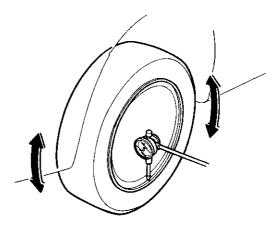
Standard:

0 - 1.0 mm (0 - 0.04 in) Steel Wheel: Aluminum Wheel: 0 - 0.7 mm (0 + 0.03 in) 2.0 mm (0.08 in) Service Limit:



Front and Rear Wheel Radial Runout: Standard:

0 - 1.0 mm (0 - 0.04 in) Steel Wheel: Aluminum Wheel: 0 - 0.7 mm (0 - 0.03 in) 1.5 mm (0.06 in) Service Limit:



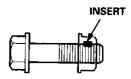
If the wheel runout is more than the service limit, replace the wheel.

Front Suspension

Torque Specifications

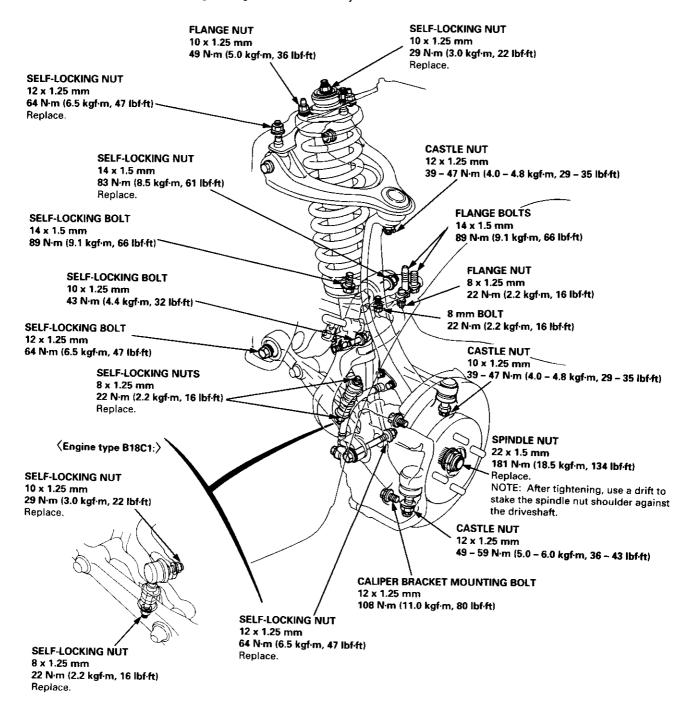
CAUTION:

- Replace the self-locking nuts after removal.
- Replace the self-locking bolts if you can easily thread a non-self-locking nut past their nylon locking inserts. (It should require 1 N·m (0.1 kgf·m, 0.7 lbf·ft) of torque to turn the nut on the bolt).



- The vehicle should be on the ground before any bolts or nuts connected to rubber mounts or bushings are tightened.
- Torque the castle nut to the lower torque specification, then tighten it only far enough to align the slot with the pin hole. Do not align the nut by loosening.

NOTE: Wipe off the grease before tightening the nut at the ball joint.



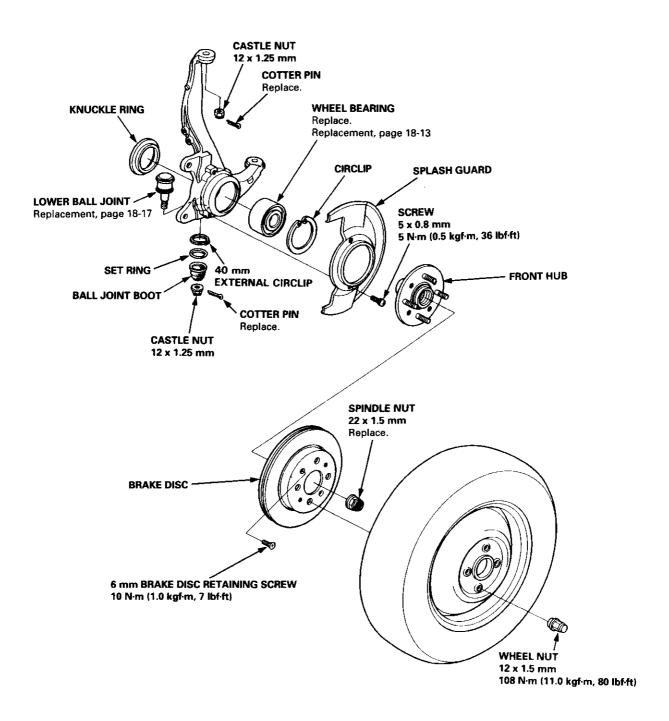


Knuckle/Hub

Illustrated Index

NOTE:

- Use only genuine Honda wheel weights for aluminum wheels. Non-genuine wheel weights may corrode and damage the aluminum wheels.
- On the aluminum wheels, remove the center cap from the inside of the wheel after removing the wheel.
- Before installing the brake disc, clean the mating surfaces of the front hub and the brake disc.
- Before installing the wheel, clean the mating surfaces of the brake disc and the wheel.

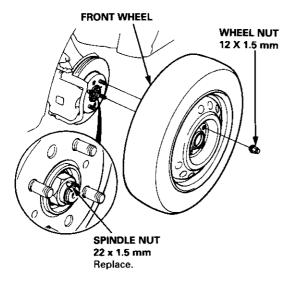


Front Suspension

Knuckle/Hub

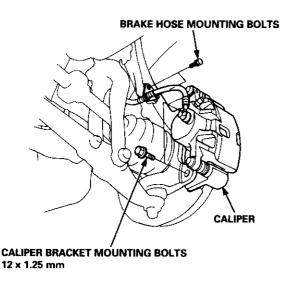
Knuckle Removal

- 1. Loosen the wheel nuts slightly.
- 2. Raise the front of car, and support it with safety stands in the proper locations (see section 1).
- 3. Remove the wheel nuts and front wheel.
- Raise the locking tab on the spindle nut, then remove the nut.



- Remove the brake hose mounting bolts.
- Remove the caliper bracket mounting bolts, and hang the caliper to one side.

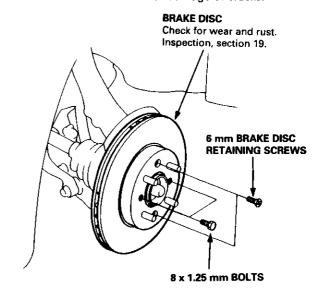
CAUTION: To prevent accidental damage to the caliper or brake hose, use a short piece of wire to hang the caliper from the undercarriage.



- 7. Remove the 6 mm brake disc retaining screws.
- 8. Screw the two 8 x 1.25 mm bolts into the disc to push it away from the hub.

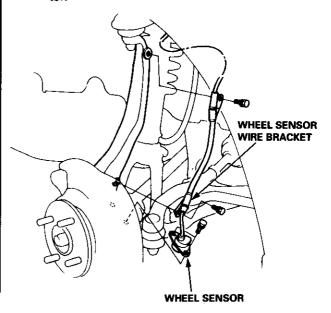
NOTE: Turn each bolt two turns at a time to prevent cocking the disc excessively.

- 9. Remove the brake disc from the knuckle.
- 10. Check the front hub for damage or cracks.



 Remove the wheel sensor wire bracket, then remove the wheel sensor from the knuckle (for cars with ABS).

NOTE: Do not disconnect the wheel sensor connector.

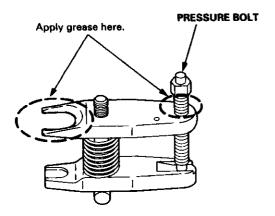




NOTE: Use ball joint remover, 28 mm, to separate the ball joints from the suspension or tie-rod end.

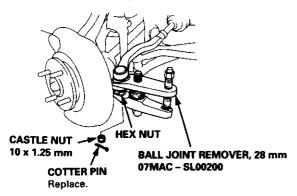
CAUTION: Be careful not to damage the ball joint boot.

- 12. Clean any dirt or grease off the ball joint.
- Remove the cotter pin from the tie-rod end ball joint castle nut, and remove the nut.
- 14. Apply grease to the special tool on the areas shown. This will ease installation of the tool and prevent damage to the pressure bolt threads.

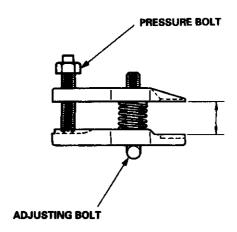


- 15. Install a 10 mm hex nut on the ball joint. Be sure that the hex nut is flush with the ball joint pin end to prevent damage to the threaded end of the ball joint.
- Use the ball joint remover, 28 mm, as shown.
 Insert the jaws carefully, making sure you do not damage the ball joint boot.
- 17. Adjust the jaw spacing by turning the pressure bolt.

NOTE: If necessary, apply penetrating type lubricant to loosen the ball joint.



18. Once the tool is in place, turn the adjusting bolt as necessary to make the jaws parallel. Then handtighten the pressure bolt and recheck the jaws to make sure they are still parallel.



19. With a wrench, tighten the pressure bolt until the ball joint shaft pops loose from the steering arm.

A WARNING Wear eye protection. The ball joint can break loose suddenly and scatter dirt or other debris in your eyes.

20. Remove the tool, then remove the nut from the end of the ball joint and pull the ball joint out of the steering/suspension arm. Inspect the ball joint boot and replace it if damaged.

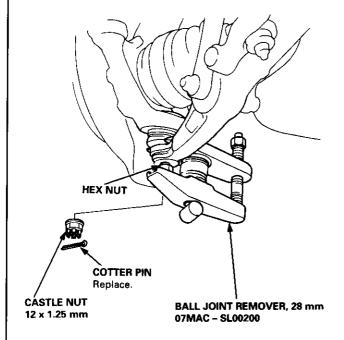
(cont'd)

Front Suspension

Knuckle/Hub (cont'd)

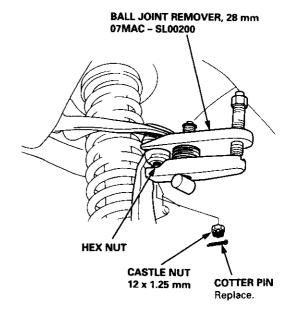
- Remove the cotter pin from the lower arm ball joint castle nut, and remove the nut.
- 22. Install a 12 mm hex nut on the ball joint. Be sure that the hex nut is flush with the ball joint pin end, or the threaded section of the ball joint pin might be damaged by the ball joint remover.
- 23. Use the ball joint remover, 28 mm as shown on page 18-11 to separate the ball joint and lower arm.

NOTE: If necessary, apply penetrating type lubricant to loosen the ball joint.

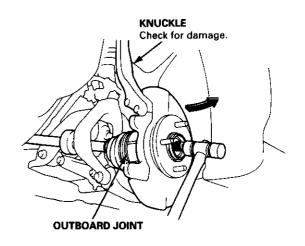


- 24. Remove the cotter pin from the upper ball joint castle nut, and remove the nut.
- 25. Install the 12 mm hex nut on the ball joint.
 Be sure that the hex nut is flush with the ball joint pin end, or the threaded section of the ball joint pin might be damaged by the ball joint remover.
- 26. Use the ball joint remover, 28 mm as shown on page 18-11 to separate the ball joint and knuckle.

NOTE: If necessary, apply penetrating type lubricant to loosen the ball joint.



 Pull the knuckle outward and remove the driveshaft outboard joint from the knuckle using a plastic hammer, then remove the knuckle.





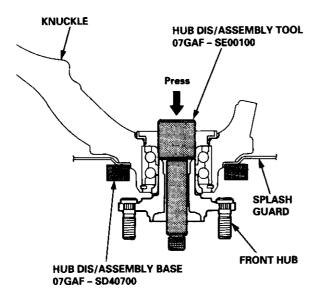
Wheel Bearing Replacement

NOTE: Replace the bearing with a new one after removal.

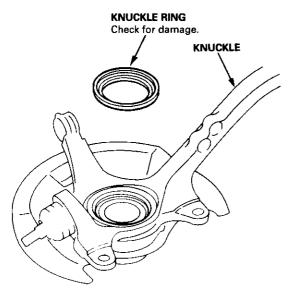
 Separate the front hub from the knuckle using the special tools and a press as shown.

CAUTION:

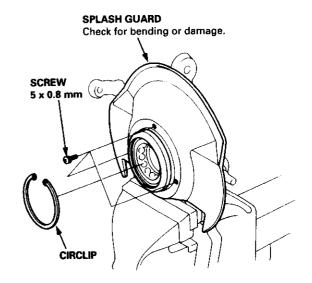
- Take care not to distort the splash guard.
- Hold onto the hub to keep it from falling when pressed clear.



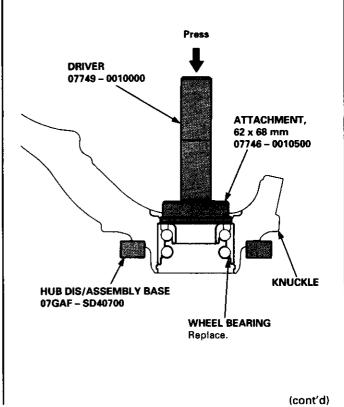
2. Remove the knuckle ring from the knuckle.



Remove the circlip and the splash guard from the knuckle.



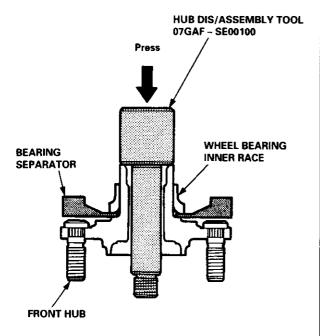
 Press the wheel bearing out of the knuckle using the special tools and a press as shown.



Front Suspension

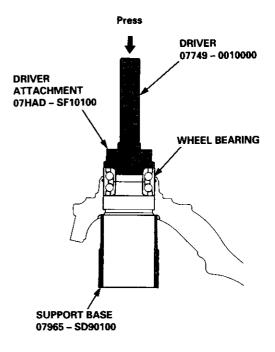
Knuckle/Hub (cont'd)

Remove the wheel bearing inner race from the front hub using the special tool and a commercially available bearing separator as shown.

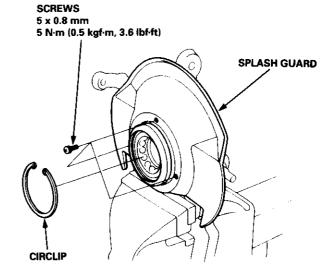


NOTE: Wash the knuckle and hub thoroughly in high flash point solvent before reassembly.

6. Press a new wheel bearing into the knuckle using the special tools and a press as shown.



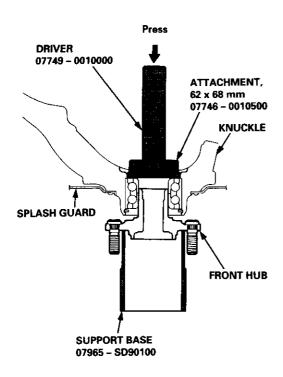
- 7. Install the circlip securely in the knuckle groove.
- 8. Install the splash guard and tighten the screws.



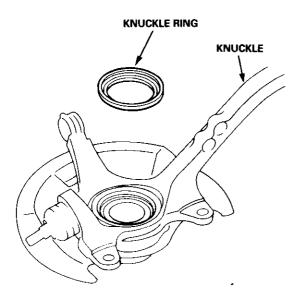


9. Install the front hub on the knuckle using the special tools and a press as shown.

CAUTION: Take care not to distort the splash guard.



10. Install the knuckle ring on the knuckle.



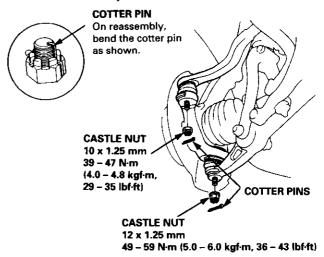
Knuckle Installation

- 1. Install the knuckle on the driveshaft.
- Install the knuckle on the lower arm and the tie-rod, then tighten the castle nuts and install new cotter pins.

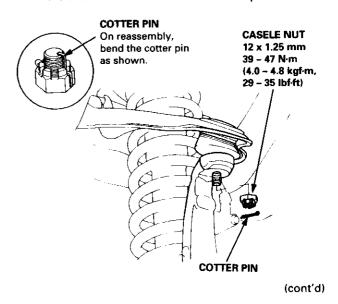
CAUTION:

- Be careful not to damage the ball joint boot.
- Torque the castle nut to the lower torque specification, then tighten it only far enough to align the slot with the pin hole. Do not align the nut by loosening.

NOTE: Wipe off the grease before tightening the nut at the ball joint.



Install the knuckle on the upper arm, then tighten the castle nut and install a new cotter pin.

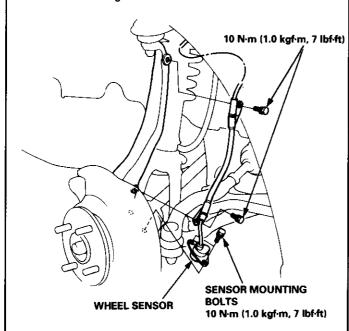


Front Suspension

Knuckle/Hub (cont'd)

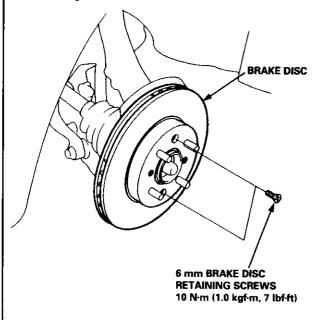
- Install the wheel sensor with the sensor mounting bolts (for cars with ABS).
- Install the sensor wire with the two bolts (for cars with ABS).

NOTE: Be careful when installing the sensors to avoid twisting wires.



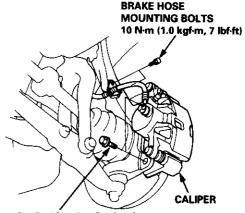
6. Install the brake disc with the 6 mm brake disc retaining screws.

NOTE: Before installing the brake disc, clean the mating surfaces of the front hub and the brake disc.



- Install the brake caliper with the caliper bracket mounting bolts.
- Install the brake hose with the brake hose mounting bolts.

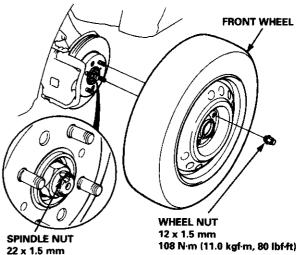
CAUTION: Be careful not to twist the hose more than necessary.



CALIPER BRACKET MOUNTING BOLTS 12 x 1.25 mm 108 N·m (11.0 kgf·m, 80 lbf·ft)

- 9. Install a new spindle nut, then tighten the nut.
- 10. Install the wheel with the wheel nuts.

NOTE: Before installing the wheel, clean the mating surfaces of the brake disc and the wheel.



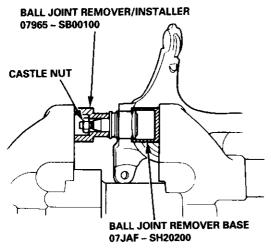
22 x 1.5 mm
181 N·m (18.5 kgf·m, 134 lbf·ft)
NOTE: After tightening, use a drift to stake the spindle nut shoulder against the driveshaft.

11. Check the front wheel alignment and adjust if necessary (see page 18-4).

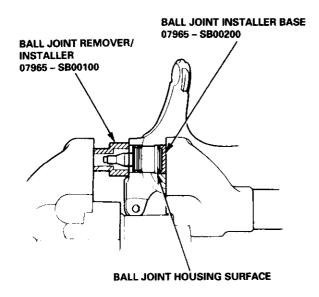


Lower Ball Joint Replacement

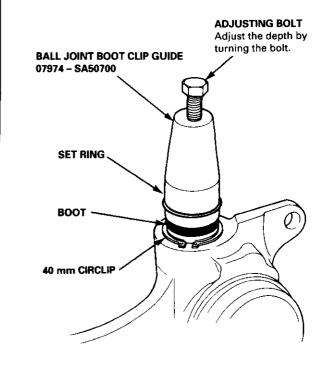
- 1. Remove the knuckle (see page 18-10).
- 2. Remove the boot by prying the set ring off.
- Check the boot for deterioration and damage, replace if it is necessary.
- 4. Remove the 40 mm circlip.
- Install the special tools on the ball joint and tighten the castle nut.
- Position the special tools over the ball joint as shown, then set the assembly in a vise. Press the ball joint out of the knuckle.



- 7. Place the ball joint in position by hand.
- Install the special tools over the ball joint as shown, then press the ball joint in.



- 9. Install the 40 mm circlip.
- 10. Install the ball joint boot and set ring using the special tool (see page 18-18).



- 11. Install the knuckle (see page 18-15).
- 12. Check the front wheel alignment and adjust if necessary (see page 18-4).

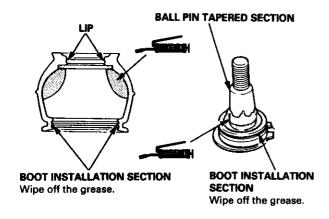
Front Suspension

Ball Joint Boot Replacement

1. Remove the boot set ring.

CAUTION: Do not contaminate the boot installation section with grease.

Pack the interior of the boot and lip with grease.



3. Wipe the grease off the sliding surface of the ball pin and pack with fresh grease.

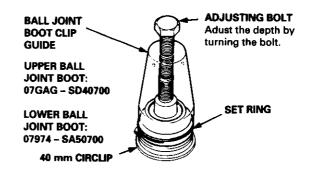
CAUTION:

- Keep grease off the boot installation section and the tapered section of the ball pin.
- Do not allow dust, dirt, or other foreign materials to enter the boot.
- 4. Install the boot in the groove of the boot installation section securely, then bleed air.

5. Install the upper and lower ball joint boot set rings using the special tools as follows:

Lower ball joint: Adjust the special tool with the adjusting bolt until the end of the tool aligns with the groove on the boot. Slide the set ring over the tool and into position.

Upper ball joint: Hold the tool over the ball joint, then slide the set ring over the tool and into position.



CAUTION: After installing the boot, check the ball pin tapered section for grease contamination and wipe it if necessary.

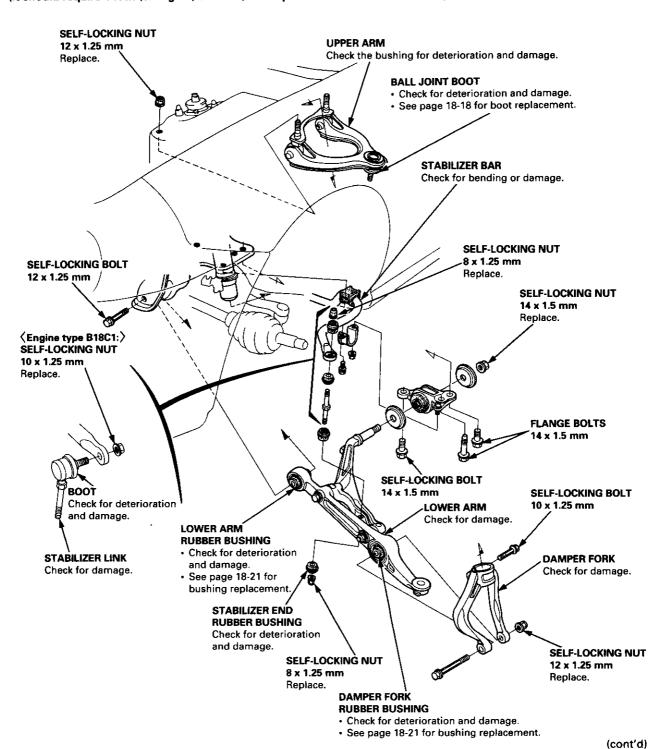


Suspension Arms

Removal/Inspection

CAUTION:

- Replace the self-locking nuts after removal.
- Replace the self-locking bolts if you can easily thread a non-self-locking nut past their nylon locking inserts. (It should require 1 N·m (0.1 kgf·m, 0.7 lbf·ft) of torque to turn the nut on the bolt).



Front Suspension

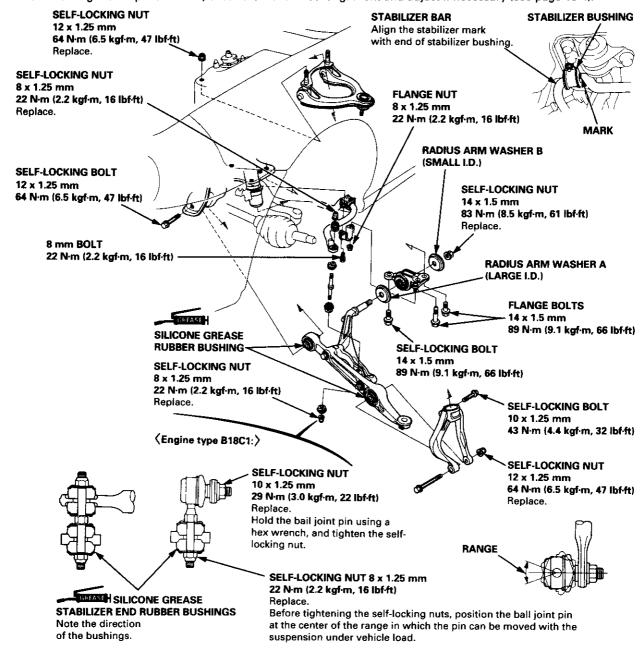
Suspension Arms (cont'd)

Installation

CAUTION: The vehicle should be on the ground before any bolts or nuts connected to rubber mounts or bushings are tightened.

NOTE:

- Wipe off the dirt, oil or grease on the threads before tightening the fasteners.
- The right and left damper forks are not interchangeable. The left damper fork is marked with "VL" while the right damper fork is marked with "VR".
- The right and left upper arms are not interchangeable. The left upper arm is marked with "SRZ-L" while the right arm is marked with "SRZ-R".
- Before tightening the upper and lower mounting nuts on the stabilizer link, adjust the location of the link with the suspension under vehicle load.
- When installing the radius arm washers, the "FR" mark faces the front of the car.
- After installing the suspension arm, check the front wheel alignment and adjust if necessary (see page 18-4).



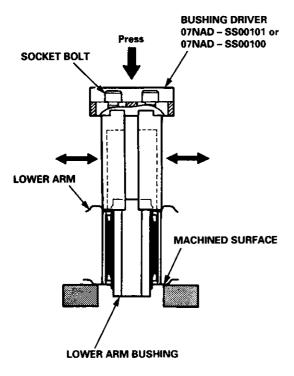


Lower Arm Bushing Replacement

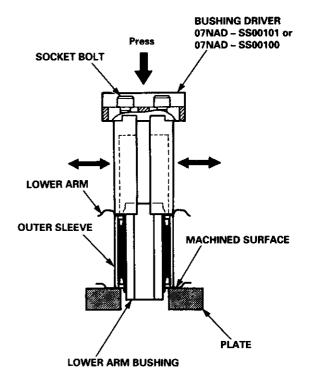
- Position the lower arm on the press with the machined surface facing down.
- Adjust the bushing driver so that it matches the inner diameter of the bushing hole, then tighten the socket bolt securely.
- Position the bushing driver on the bushing.
- 4. Remove the bushing by pressing on the bushing driver with a press as shown.

CAUTION:

- Support the lower arm at machined surface as shown.
- Be careful not to damage the inside of the bushing hole while pressing on the bushing.



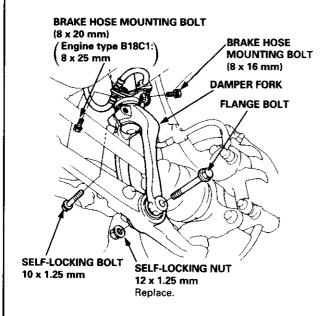
- Position the lower arm on the press with the machined surface facing down.
- Adjust the bushing driver so that it matches the inner diameter of the bushing hole, then tighten the socket bolt securely.
- Position the bushing driver on the outer sleeve of the bushing.
- 8. Press the bushing into the lower arm using the bushing driver and a press until the edge of the bushing reaches on the plate as shown.



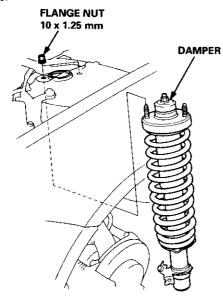
Front Damper

Removal

- Remove the front wheels (see page 18-10).
- Remove the brake hose mounting bolts from the damper.
- 3. Remove the self-locking bolt.
- 4. Remove the flange bolt and self-locking nut, then remove the damper fork.



Remove the damper by removing the two flange nuts.

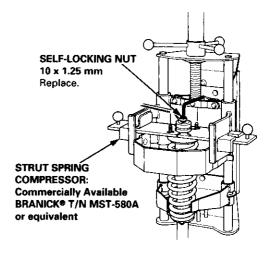


Disassembly/Inspection

Disassembly

 Compress the damper spring with the spring compressor according to the manufacturer's instructions, then remove the self-locking nut.

CAUTION: Do not compress the spring more than necessary to remove the nut.

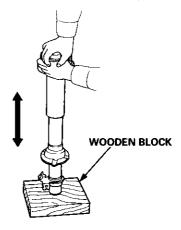


Remove the spring compressor, then disassemble the damper as shown on the next page.

Inspection

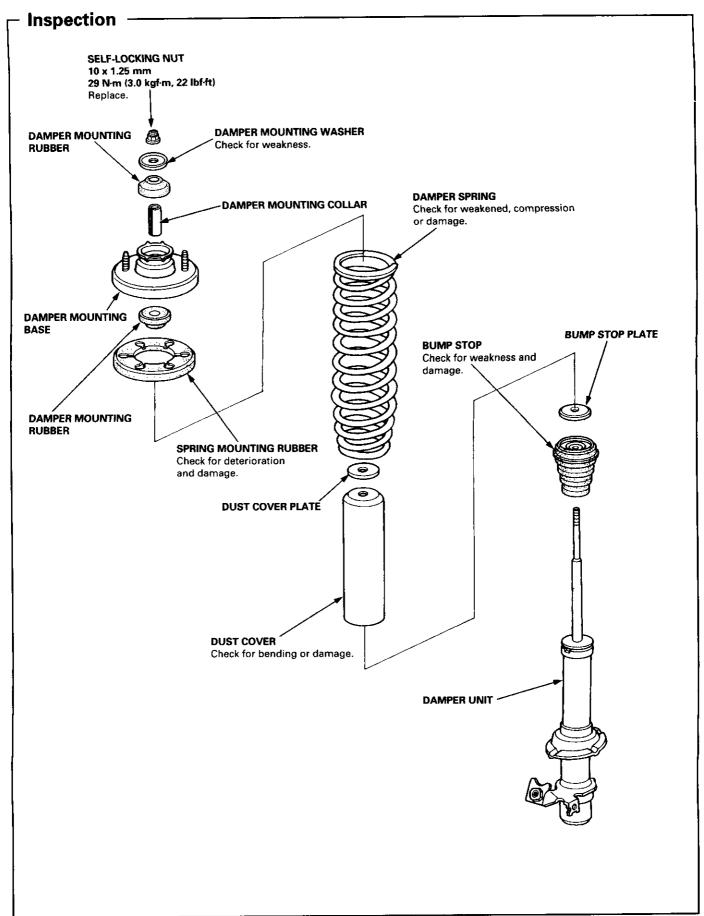
- 1. Reassemble all parts, except the spring.
- 2. Push on the damper as shown.
- Check for smooth operation through a full stroke, both compression and extension.

NOTE: The damper should move smoothly. If it does not (no compression or no extension), the gas is leaking, and the damper should be replaced.



 Check for oil leaks, abnormal noises or binding during these tests.





Front Damper

- Reassembly

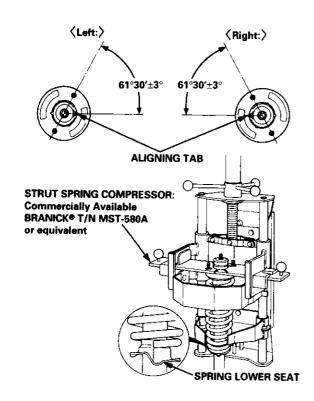
1. Install the damper unit on a spring compressor.

NOTE: Follow the manufacturer's instructions.

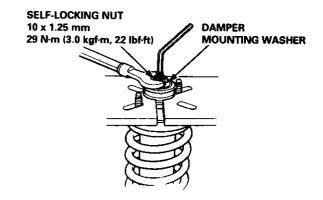
Assemble the damper in reverse order of disassembly except the damper mounting washer and self locking nut.

NOTE: Align the bottom of damper spring and spring lower seat as shown.

Position the damper mounting base on the damper unit as shown.



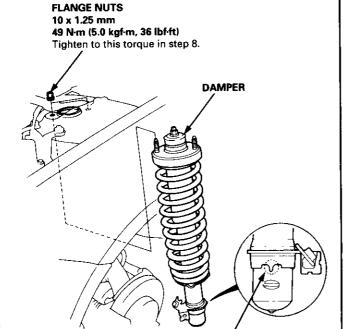
- Compress the damper spring with the spring compressor.
- 5. Install the damper mounting washer, and loosely install a new self-locking nut.
- 6. Hold the damper shaft with a hex wrench and tighten the self-locking nut.





Installation-

 Loosely install the damper on the frame with the aligning tab facing inside, then loosely install the two flange nuts.

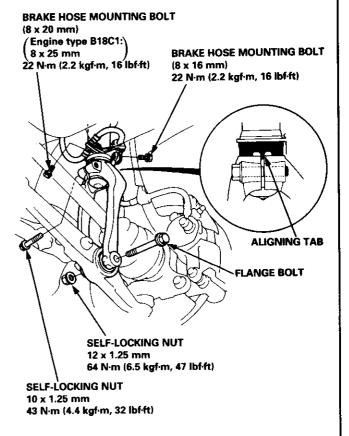


ALIGNING TAB

- Install the damper fork over the driveshaft and onto the lower arm. Install the front damper in the damper fork so the aligning tab is aligned with the slot in the damper fork.
- 3. Loosely install the self-locking bolt.
- 4. Loosely install a new self-locking nut with the flange bolt.
- 5. Raise the knuckle with a floor jack until the car just lifts off the safety stand.

A WARNING The floor jack must be securely positioned or personal injury may result.

- 6. Tighten the self-locking bolt.
- 7. Tighten the self-locking nut.
- 8. Tighten the flange nuts on the top of the damper to the specified torque.
- Install the brake hose mounts with the brake hose mounting bolts.

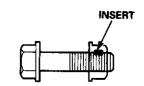


Rear Suspension

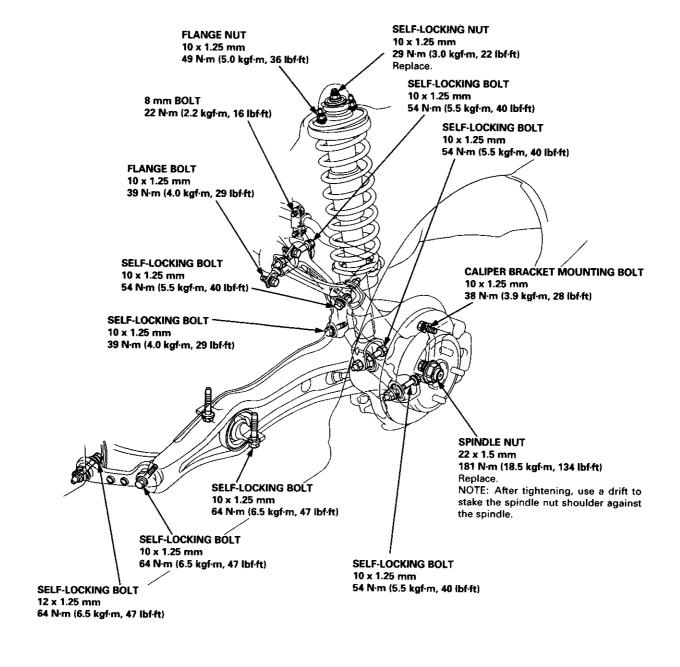
Torque Specifications

CAUTION:

- Replace the self-locking nut after removal.
- Replace the self-locking bolts if you can easily thread a non-self-locking nut
 past their nylon locking inserts. (It should require 1 N·m (0.1 kgf·m, 0.7 lbf·ft)
 of torque to turn the nut on the bolt).



The vehicle should be on the ground before any bolts or nuts connected to rubber mounts or bushings are tightened.



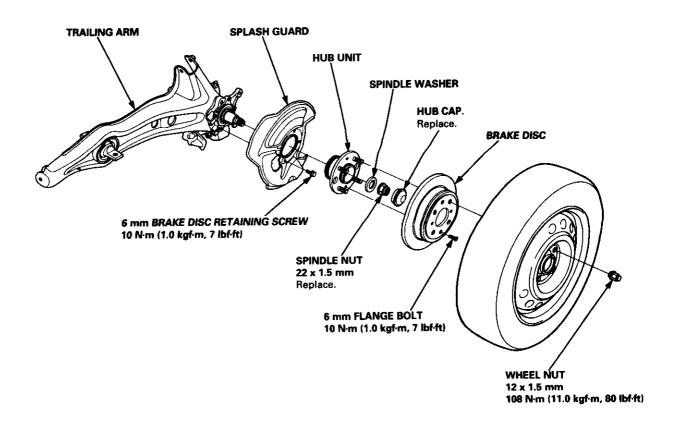


Hub Bearing Unit

Illustrated Index

NOTE:

- Use only genuine Honda wheel weights for aluminum wheels. Non-genuine wheel weights may corrode and damage the aluminum wheels.
- On the aluminum wheels, remove the center cap from the inside of the wheel after removing the wheel.
- Before installing the brake disc, clean the mating surfaces of the rear hub and the brake disc.
- Before installing the wheel, clean the mating surfaces of the brake disc and the wheel.

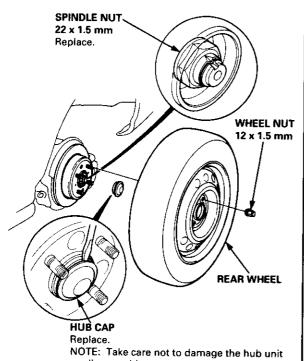


Rear Suspension

Hub Bearing Unit

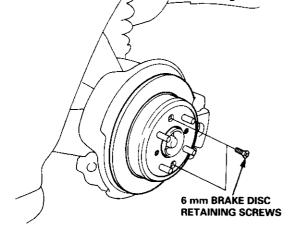
Removal

- 1. Loosen the wheel nuts slightly.
- 2. Raise the rear of car, and support it with safety stands in the proper locations (see section 1).
- 3. Remove the wheel nuts and rear wheel.
- 4. Pull the parking brake lever up.
- 5. Remove the hub cap.
- 6. Raise the locking tab on the spindle nut, then remove the nut.

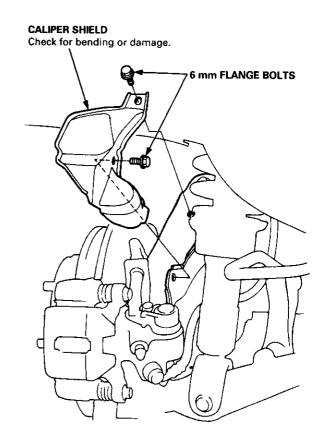


Remove the 6 mm brake disc retaining screws.

on disassembly.



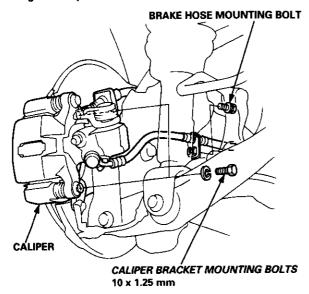
- 8. Release the parking brake lever.
- Remove the 6 mm flange bolts and caliper shield.





- 10. Remove the brake hose mounting bolt.
- 11. Remove the caliper bracket mounting bolts and hang the caliper to one side.

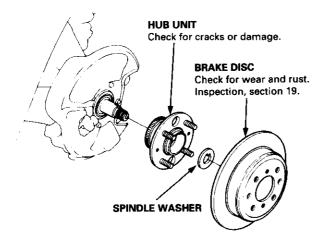
CAUTION: To prevent accidental damage to the caliper or brake hose, use a short piece of wire to hang the caliper from the undercarriage.



12. Screw two 8 x 1.25 mm bolts into the disc to push it away from the hub.

NOTE: Turn each bolt two turns at a time to prevent cocking the disc excessively.

- 13. Remove the brake disc.
- 14. Remove the hub unit from the knuckle.

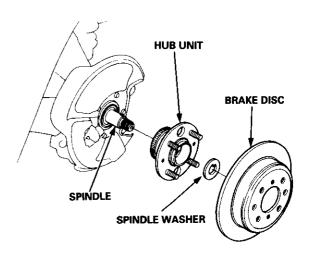


Installation

1. Install the hub unit, spindle washer and brake disc.

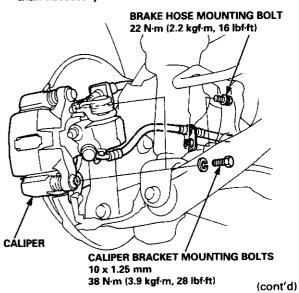
NOTE:

- Wash the bearing and spindle thoroughly in high flash point solvent before reassembly.
- Before installing the brake disc, clean the mating surfaces of the rear hub and the brake disc.



- Install the brake caliper with the caliper bracket mounting bolts.
- Install the brake hose with the brake hose mounting bolt.

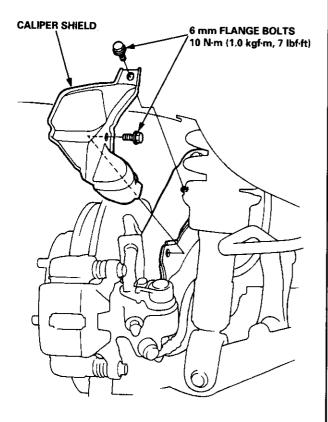
CAUTION: Be careful not to twist the hose more than necessary.



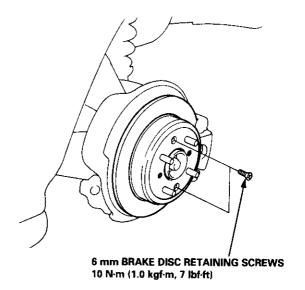
Rear Suspension

Hub Bearing Unit (cont'd)

4. Install the caliper shield with the 6 mm flange bolts.

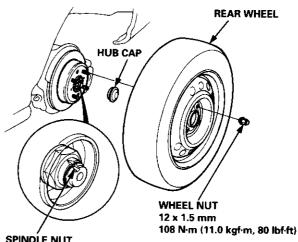


5. Tighten the 6 mm brake disc retaining screws.



- 6. Install a new spindle nut, then tighten the nut.
- 7. Install a new hub cap.
- 8. Install the rear wheel with the wheel nuts.

NOTE: Before installing the wheel, clean the mating surfaces of the brake disc and the wheel.



SPINDLE NUT 22 x 1.5 mm

181 N·m (18.5 kgf·m, 134 lbf·ft)

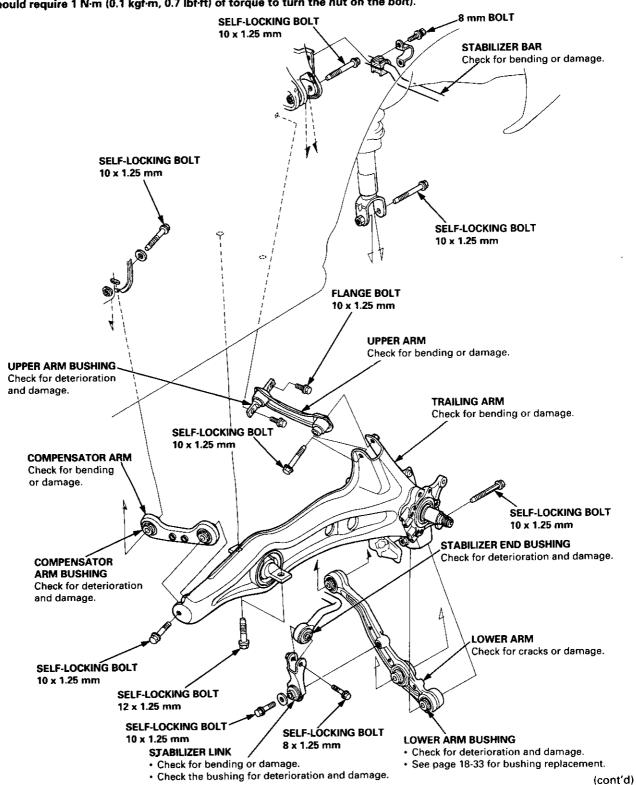
NOTE: After tightening, use a drift to stake the spindle nut shoulder against the spindle.



Suspension Arms

Removal/Inspection

CAUTION: Replace the self-locking bolts if you can easily thread a non-self-locking nut past their nylon locking inserts. (It should require 1 N·m (0.1 kgf·m, 0.7 lbf·ft) of torque to turn the nut on the bolt).



Rear Suspension

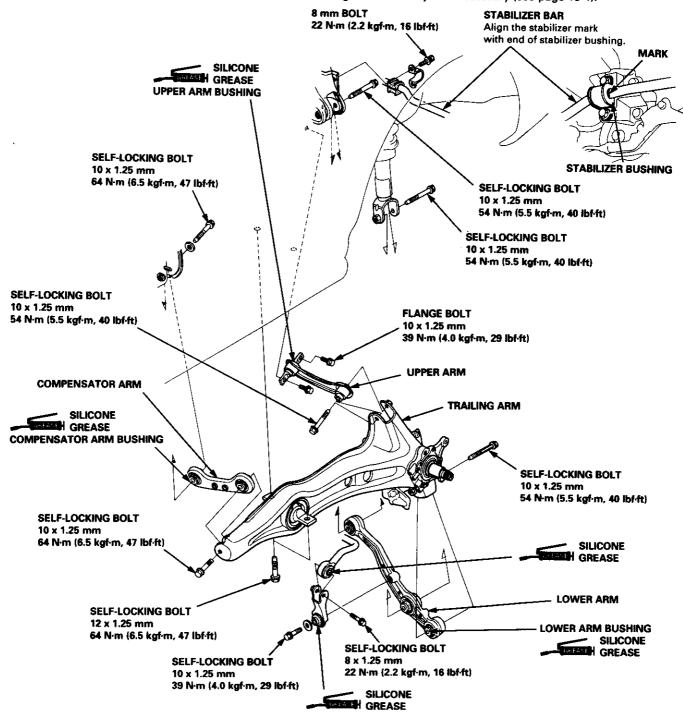
Suspension Arms (cont'd)

Installation

CAUTION: The vehicle should be on the ground before any bolts or nuts connected to rubber mounts or bushings are tightened.

NOTE:

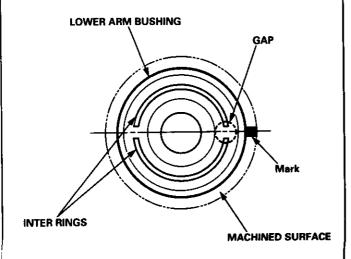
- Make sure the self-locking bolts on the compensator arms are installed in the same direction.
- "LV" is stamped on the left lower arm and "RV" on the right lower arm.
- "t UP LSR" is stamped on the left upper arm and "t UP RSR" on the right upper arm.
- The right and left compensator arm are symmetrical. Install so the "t UP" mark stamped side faces forward.
- After installing the suspension arm, check the rear wheel alignment and adjust if necessary (see page 18-4).





Lower Arm Bushing Replacement

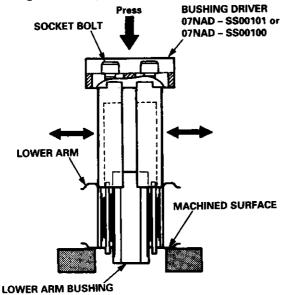
 Mark on the machined surface of the lower arm so that they are in line with the gaps on the inter ring.



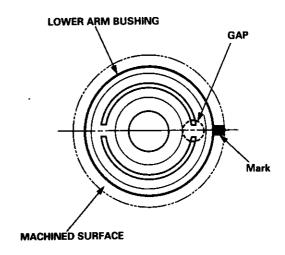
- Position the lower arm on the press with the machined surface facing down.
- Adjust the bushing driver so that it matches the inner diameter of the bushing hole, then tighten the socket bolt securely.
- 4. Position the bushing driver on the bushing.
- Remove the bushing by pressing on the bushing driver with a press as shown.

CAUTION:

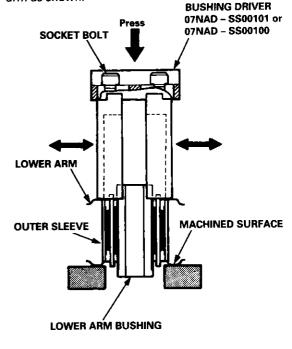
- Support the lower arm at machined surface as shown.
- Be careful not to damage the inside of the bushing hole while pressing on the bushing.



6. Position the lower arm bushing by aligning the gap on the bushing with the mark on the lower arm when viewed from the top.



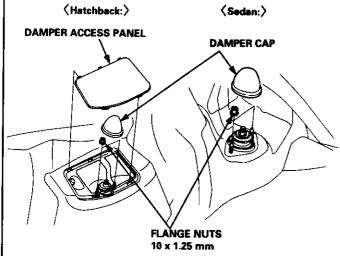
- 7. Adjust the bushing driver so that it matches with the outer diameter of the bushing.
- 8. Position the bushing driver on the outer sleeve of the bushing.
- Press the bushing into the lower arm using the bushing driver and a press until the edge of the bushing aligns with machined surface on the lower arm as shown.



Rear Damper

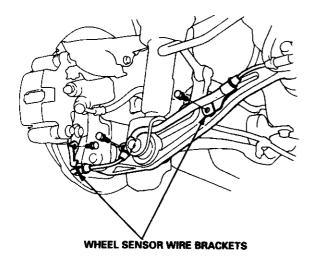
- Removal

- 1. Remove the rear wheels (see page 18-28).
- 2. Remove the damper access panel.
 - Sedan only: Remove the trunk side panel (see section 20).
- 3. Remove the damper cap.
- 4. Remove the two flange nuts.

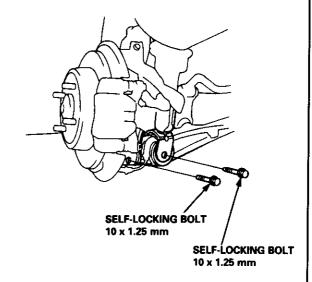


5. Remove the wheel sensor wire brackets (for cars with ABS).

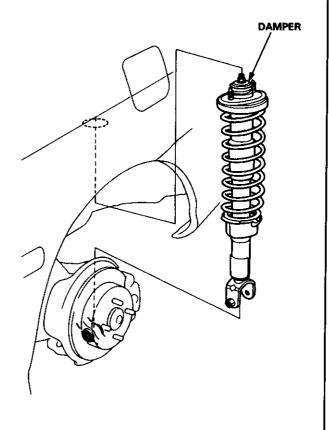
NOTE: Do not disconnect the wheel sensor connector.



- 6. Remove the self-locking bolt on the damper.
- 7. Remove the self-locking bolt that connects the lower arm to the trailing arm.



8. Lower the rear suspension and remove the damper.



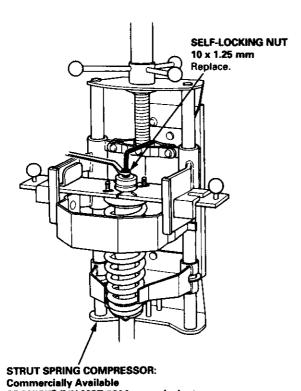


Disassembly/Inspection

Disassembly

 Compress the damper spring with the spring compressor according to the manufacturer's instructions, then remove the self-locking nut.

CAUTION: Do not compress the spring more than necessary to remove the self-locking nut.



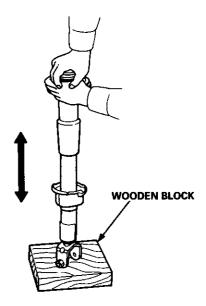
2. Remove the spring compressor, then disassemble the damper as shown on the next page.

BRANICK® T/N MST-580A or equivalent

Inspection

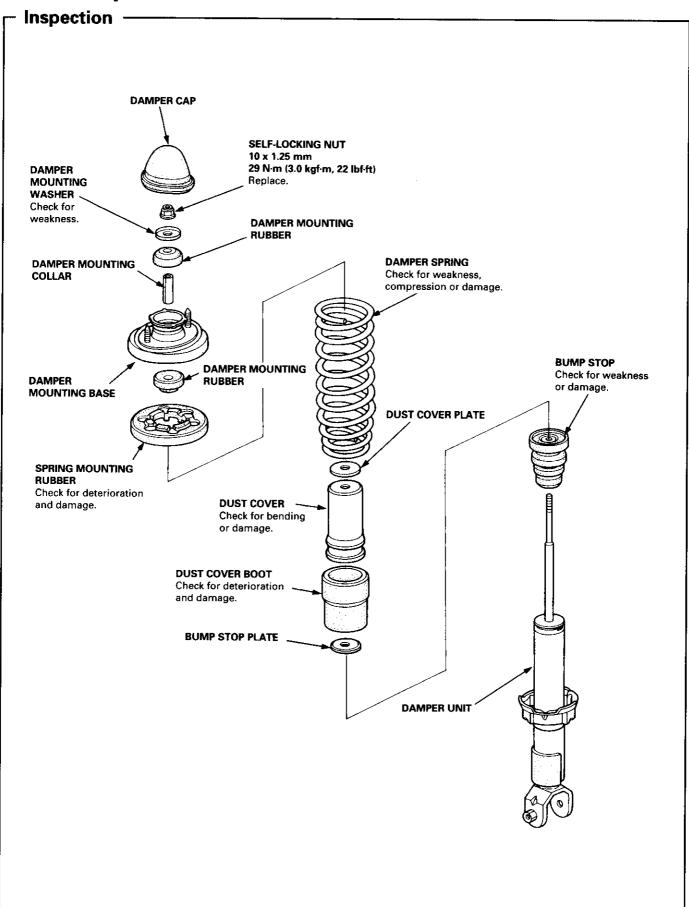
- 1. Reassemble all parts, except the spring.
- 2. Push on the damper as shown.
- Check for smooth operation through a full stroke, both compression and extension.

NOTE: The damper should move smoothly. If it does not (no compression or no extension), the gas is leaking, and the damper should be replaced.



 Check for oil leaks, abnormal noises or binding during these tests.

Rear Damper





Reassembly

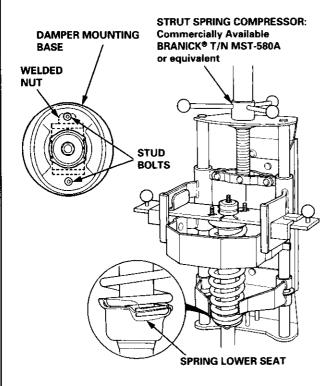
1. Install the damper unit on a spring compressor.

NOTE: Follow the manufacturer's instructions.

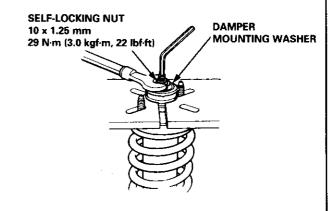
 Assemble the damper in reverse order of disassembly except the damper mounting washer and selflocking nut.

NOTE: Align the bottom of damper spring and spring lower seat as shown.

Position the damper mounting base on the damper unit as shown.



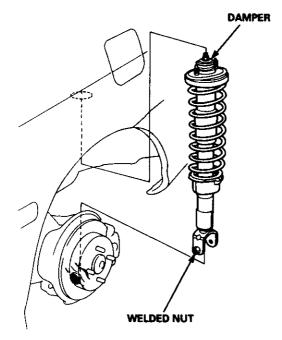
- Compress the damper spring with the spring compressor.
- 5. Install the damper mounting washer, and loosely install a new self-locking nut.
- 6. Hold the damper shaft with a hex wrench and tighten the self-locking nut.



Rear Damper

- Installation

 Lower the rear suspension and position the damper with the welded nut pointed toward the front of the car.



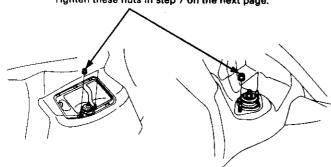
2. Loosely install the two flange nuts.

(Hatchback:)

⟨Sedan:⟩

FLANGE NUTS 10 x 1.25 mm

Tighten these nuts in step 7 on the next page.



3. Install the wheel sensor wire bracket.

NOTE: Be careful when installing the sensors to avoid twisting wires.

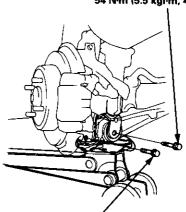
 Raise the rear suspension with a floor jack until the car just lifts off the safety stand.

A WARNING The floor jack must be securely positioned or personal injury may result.

Install the damper mounting bolt and the selflocking bolt, then tighten the bolts.

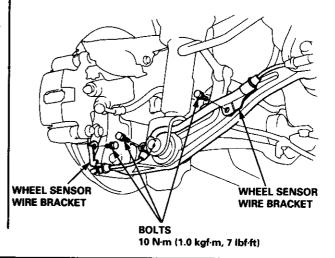
NOTE: The damper mounting bolt and the selflocking bolt should be tightened with the damper under vehicle load.

> SELF-LOCKING BOLT 10 x 1.25 mm 54 N·m (5.5 kgf·m, 40 lbf·ft)



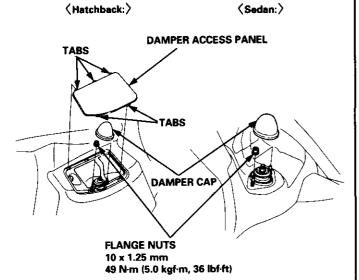
SELF-LOCKING BOLT 10 x 1.25 mm 54 N·m (5.5 kgf·m, 40 lbf·ft)

Tighten the three wheel sensor wire bracket bolts (for cars with ABS).





- 7. Tighten the two flange nuts on top of the damper to the specified torque.
- 8. Install the damper cap.
- 9. Install the damper access panel by aligning the tabs on the panel.
- Sedan only: Install the trunk side panel (see section 20).



11. Install the rear wheels (see page 18-30).

Brakes

| Conventional Brakes | 19-1 |
|------------------------------|-------|
| Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) | 19-31 |

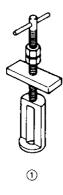


Brakes

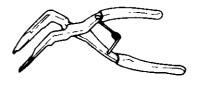
| Special Tools 19-2 | Brake Booster |
|------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| Component Location | Inspection 19-15 |
| Index 19-3 | Replacement 19-16 |
| Inspection and Adjustment | Rear Brake Pads |
| Brake Pedal 19-4 | Inspection and Replacement 19-16 |
| Parking Brake19-5 | Rear Brake Disc |
| Bleeding 19-6 | Disc Runout Inspection 19-19 |
| Front Brake Pads | Disc Thickness and Parallelism |
| Inspection and Replacement 19-7 | Inspection 19-19 |
| Front Brake Disc | Rear Brake Caliper |
| Disc Runout Inspection 19-9 | Disassembly 19-20 |
| Disc Thickness and Parallelism | Reassembly 19-23 |
| Inspection 19-9 | Brake Hoses/Pipes |
| Front Brake Caliper | Inspection 19-27 |
| Disassembly 19-10 | Hose Replacement 19-28 |
| Reassembly 19-11 | Parking Brake |
| Master Cylinder | Inspection and Replacement 19-29 |
| Removal 19-13 | |
| Inspection/Disassembly 19-13 | |
| Pushrod Clearance Adjustment 19-14 | |
| Installation 19-15 | |



| Ref. No. | Tool Number | Description | Qty | Page Reference |
|----------|---------------|--------------------------|-----|----------------|
| ① | 07HAE-SG00100 | Brake Spring Compressor | 1 | 19-21, 25 |
| 2 | 07JAG-SD40100 | Pushrod Adjustment Gauge | 1 | 19-14 |
| 3 | 07914-SA50000 | Snap Ring Pliers | 1 | 19-21, 25 |
| 4 | 07916-6390001 | Locknut Wrench | 1 | 19-20, 25 |







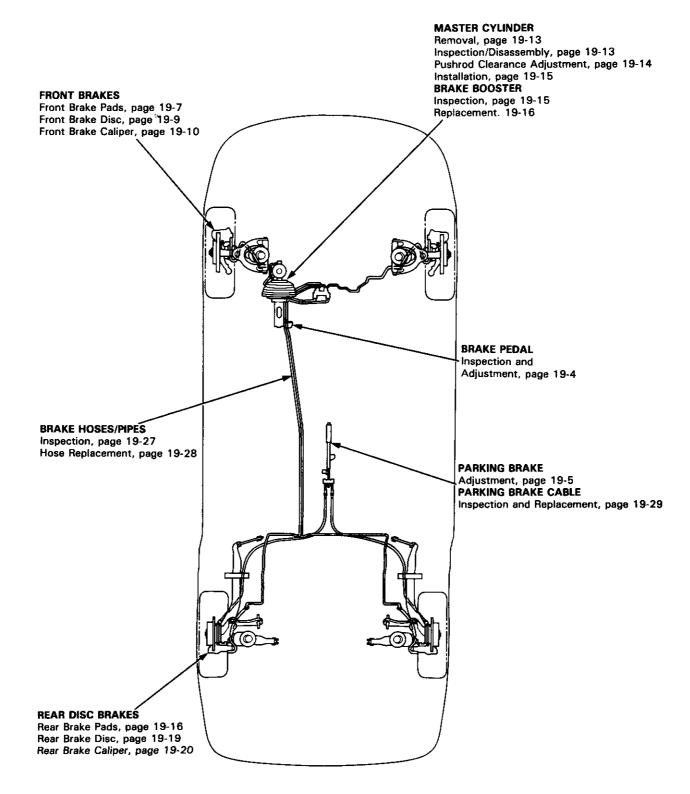
2





4



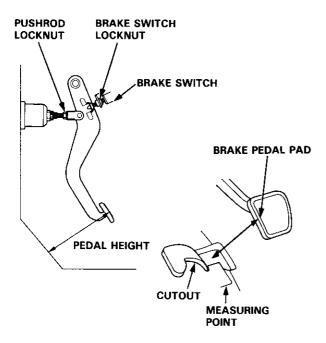


Inspection and Adjustment

Brake Pedal

Pedal Height

- Disconnect the brake switch connector, loosen the brake switch locknut and back off the brake switch until it is no longer touching the brake pedal.
- Turn up the floor mat and measure the pedal height from the left side center of the pedal pad.

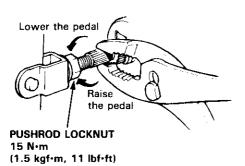


Standard Pedal Height (with floor mat removed):

M/T: 160 mm (6.3 in) max. A/T: 165 mm (6.5 in) max.

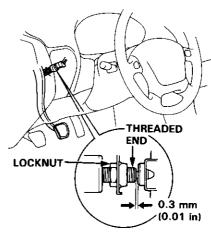
3. Loosen the pushrod locknut and screw the pushrod in or out with pliers until the standard pedal height from the floor is reached. After adjustment, tighten the locknut firmly.

NOTE: Do not adjust the pedal height with the pushrod depressed.



4. Screw in the brake switch until its plunger is fully depressed (threaded end touching the pad on the pedal arm). Then back off the switch 1/4 turn to make 0.3 mm (0.01 in) of clearance between the threaded end and pad. Tighten the locknut firmly. Connect the brake switch connector.

CAUTION: Make sure that the brake lights go off when the pedal is released.



5. Check the brake pedal free play as described below.

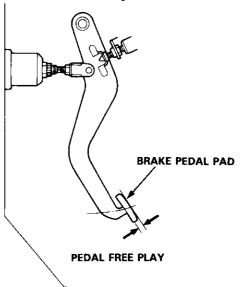
Pedal Free Play

1. Stop the engine and inspect the play on the pedal pad by pushing the pedal by hand.

Free Play: 1-5 mm (1/16-13/64 in)

2. If the pedal free play is out of specification, adjust the brake switch.

CAUTION: If the pedal free play is insufficient, it may result in brake drag.





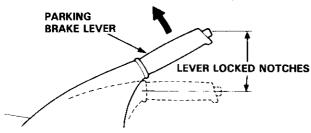
Parking Brake

Inspection

 Pull the parking brake lever with 200 N (20 kgf, 44 lbf) force to fully applied the parking brake. The parking brake lever should be locked within the specified notches.

Lever Locked Notches: 6-10

Pulled up with 200 N (20 kgf, 44 lbf)



2. Adjust the parking brake if the lever notches are out of specification.

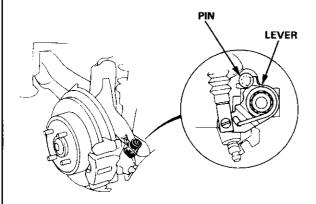
Adjustment

NOTE: After rear brake caliper servicing, loosen the parking brake adjusting nut, start the engine and depress the brake pedal several times to set the self-adjusting brake before adjusting the parking brake.

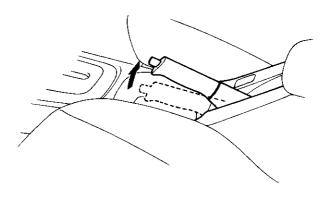
 Raise the rear wheels off the ground and support on safety stands.

A WARNING Block the front wheels before jacking up the rear of the car.

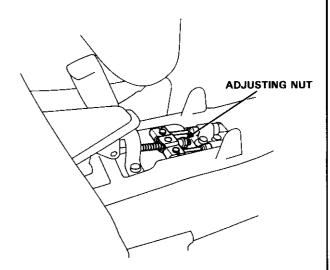
Make sure the parking brake arm on the rear brake caliper contacts the brake caliper pin.



3. Pull the parking brake lever up on notch.



- 4. Remove the rear console (see section 20).
- 5. Tighten the adjusting nut until the rear wheels drag slightly when turned.



- Release the parking brake lever fully, and check that the rear wheels do not drag when turned. Readjust if necessary.
- 7. Make sure that the parking brakes are fully applied with the parking brake lever is pulled up fully.
- 8. Install the cap onto the parking brake cable end, and reinstall the rear console.

Inspection and Adjustment

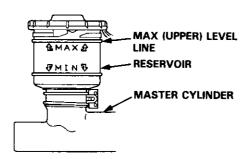
- Bleeding -

CAUTION:

- Use only clean DOT 3 or 4 brake fluid.
- Make sure no dirt or other foreign matter is allowed to contaminate the brake fluid.
- Do not mix different brands of brake fluid as they may not be compatible.
- Do not spill brake fluid on the car, it may damage the paint; if brake fluid does contact the paint, wash it off immediately with water.

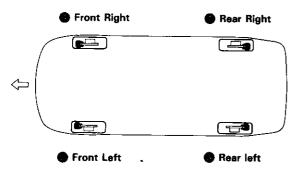
NOTE: The reservoir on the master cylinder must be at the MAX (upper) level mark at the start of bleeding procedure, and checked after bleeding each brake caliper. Add fluid as required. Use only clean DOT 3 or 4 brake fluid.

 Make sure the brake fluid level in the reservoir is at the MAX (upper) level line.

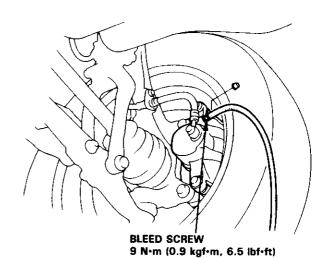


- 2. Have someone slowly pump the brake pedal several times, then apply steady pressure.
- Loosen the brake bleed screw to allow air to escape from the system. Then tighten the bleed screw securely.
- Repeat the procedure for each wheel in the sequence shown below, until air bubbles no longer appear in the fluid.
- 5. Refill the reservoir of master cylinder to the MAX (upper) level line.

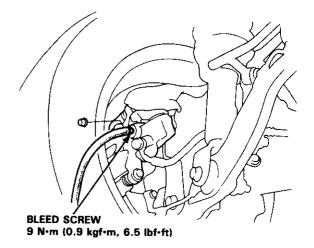
<BLEEDING SEQUENCE;>



<FRONT:>



<REAR:>



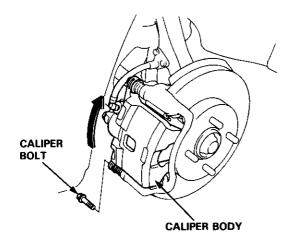
Front Brake Pads

•

Inspection and Replacement -

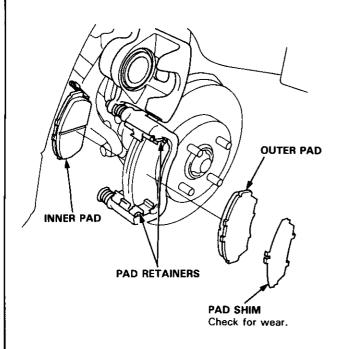
A WARNING

- Never use and air hose or dry brush to clean brake assembiles.
- Use an OSHA-approved vacuum cleaner to avoid breathing brake dust.
- 1. Loosen the front wheel nuts slightly, then raise the car and support on safety stands.
- 2. Remove the caliper bolt, and pivot the caliper up out of the way.



NOTE: Check the hoses and pin boots for damage or deterioration.

3. Remove the pad shim, pad retainers and pads.

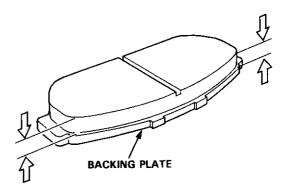


4. Using vernier calipers, measure the thickness of each brake pad lining.

Brake Pad Thickness:

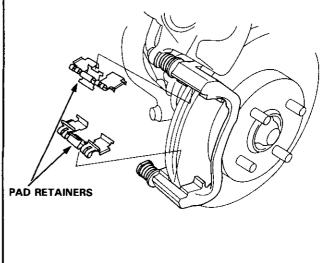
Standard: 9.5-10.5 mm (0.37-0.41 in)

Service Limit: 1.6 mm (0.06 in)



NOTE: Measurement does not include pad backing plate thickness.

- 5. If the brake pad thickness is less than service limit, replace the front pads as a set.
- Clean the caliper thoroughly; remove any rust, and check for grooves or cracks.
- 7. Check the brake disc for damage or cracks.
- 8. Install the pad retainers.



Front Brake Pads

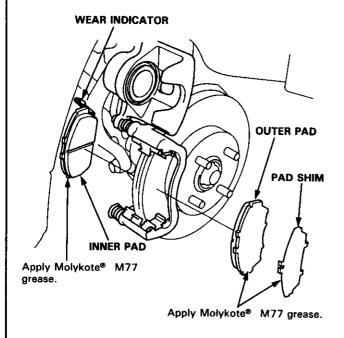
Inspection and Replacement (cont'd) -

- Apply Molykote® M77 grease to the inner side of the pad shim and the back of the pads. Wipe excess grease off the shim.
- 10. Install the brake pads and pad shim correctly.

A WARNING

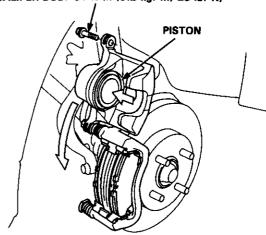
- When reusing the pads, always reinstall the brake pads in their original positions to prevent loss of braking efficiency.
- Contaminated brake discs or pads reduce stopping ability. Keep grease off the discs and pads.

NOTE: Install the pad with the wear indicator on the inside.



- 11. Push in the piston so that the caliper will fit over the pads. Make sure that the piston boot is in position to prevent damaging it when pivoting the caliper down.
- 12. Pivot the caliper down into position, then install caliper bolt and tighten it.

CALIPER BOLT 31 N·m (3.2 kgf·m, 23 lbf·ft)



13. Depress the brake pedal several times to make sure the brakes work, then road-test.

NOTE: Engagement of the brake may require a greater pedal stroke immediately after the brake pads have been replaced as a set. Several applications of the brake pedal will restore the normal pedal stroke.

 After installation, check for leaks at hose and line joints or connections, and retighten if necessary.

Front Brake Disc

•

Disc Runout Inspection

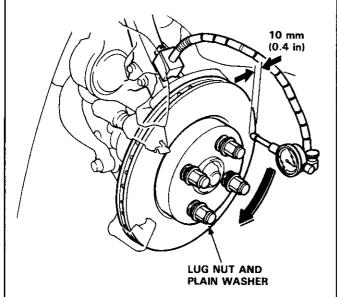
- Loosen the front wheel nuts slightly, then raise the car and support on safety stands. Remove the front wheels.
- 2. Remove the brake pads (see page 19-7).
- Inspect the disc surface for damage or cracks. Clean the disc thoroughly and remove all rust.
- 4. Use wheel nuts and suitable plain washers to hold the disc securely against the hub, then mount a dial indicator as shown, and measure the runout at 10 mm (0.4 in) from the out edge of the disc.

Brake Disc Runout:

Service Limit: 0.10 mm (0.004 in)

5. If the disc is beyond the service limit, refinish the brake disc with an on-car brake lathe. The Kwik-Lathe produced by Kwik-way manufacturing Co. and the "Front Brake Disc Lathe" offered by Snap-on Tools Co. are approved for this operation.

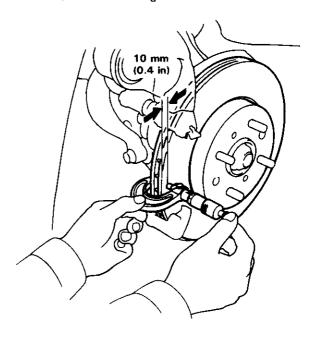
Max. Refinish Limit: 19.0 mm (0.75 in)



NOTE: A new disc should be refinished if its runout is greater than 0.10 mm (0.004 in)

Disc Thickness and Parallelism Inspection

- Loosen the front wheel nuts slightly, then raise the car and support on safety stands. Remove the front wheels.
- 2. Remove the brake pads (see page 19-7).
- Using a micrometer, measure disc tickness at eight points, approximately 45° apart and 10 mm (0.4 in) in from the outer edge of the disc.



Brake Disc Thickness:

Standard:

20.9-21.1 mm

(0.82 - 0.83 in)

Max. Refinishing Limit: 19.0 mm (0.75 in)

NOTE: Replace the brake disc if the smallest measurement is less than the max, refinishing limit.

Brake Disc Parallelism: 0.015 mm (0.0006 in) max.

NOTE: This is the maximum allowable difference between the thickness measurements.

4. If the disc is beyond the service limit for parallelism, refinish the brake disc with an on-car brake lathe. The Kwik-Lathe produced by Kwik-Way Manufacturing Co. and the "Front Brake Disc Lathe" offered by Snap-on Tools Co. are approved for this operation.

NOTE: See page 18-10 for brake disc replacement.

Front Brake Caliper

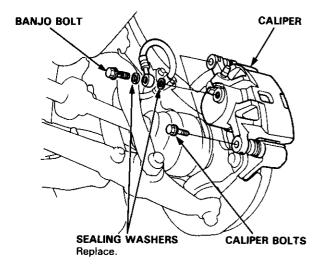
Disassembly -

A WARNING

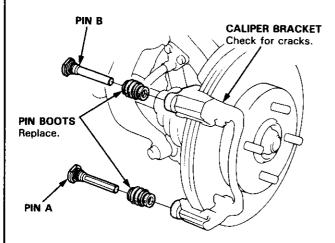
- Never use an air hose or dry brush to clean brake assemblies.
- Use an OSHA-approved vacuum cleaner to avoid breathing brake dust.

CAUTION:

- Do not spill brake fluid on the car; it may damage the paint; if brake fluid does contact the paint, wash it off immediately with water.
- To prevent spills, cover the hose joints with rags or shop towels.
- Clean all parts in brake fluid and air dry; blow out all passages with compressed air.
- Remove the banjo bolt and disconnect the brake hose from the caliper.
- Remove the caliper bolts, then remove the caliper from the bracket.



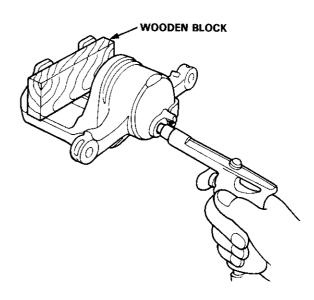
Remove the pins and pin boots from the caliper bracket.



 If necessary, apply compressed air to the caliper fluid inlet to get the piston out. Place a shop rag or wooden block as shown to cushion the piston when it is expelled. Use low pressure air in short spurts.

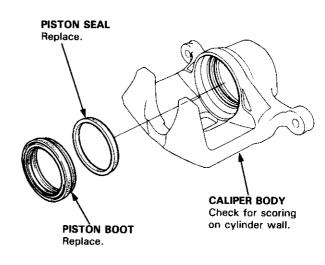
A WARNING

- Do not place your fingers in front of the piston.
- Do not use high air pressure; use an OSHAapproved 30 PSI nozzle.



- 5. Remove the piston from the caliper, and check the piston for scoring on surface.
- 6. Remove the piston boot and piston seal.

CAUTION: Take care not to damage the cylinder bore.





Reassembly

A WARNING

- Never use an air hose or dry brush to clean brake assemblies.
- Use an OSHA-approved vacuum cleaner to avoid breathing brake dust.
- Contaminated brake discs or pads reduce stopping ability.
- When reusing the pads, always reinstall the brake pads in their original positions to prevent loss of braking efficiency.

CAUTION:

- Do not spill brake fluid on the car; it may damage the paint; if brake fluid does contact the paint, wash it off immediately with water.
- Clean all parts in brake fluid and air dry; blow out all passages with compressed air.
- Before reassembling, check that all parts are free of dust and other foreign particles.
- Replace parts with new ones whenever specified to do so.
- Make sure no dirt or other foreign matter is allowed to contaminate the brake fluid.
- Do not mix different brands of brake fluid as they may not be compatible.
- Do not reuse the drained fluid. Use only clean DOT 3 or 4 brake fluid.

NOTE:

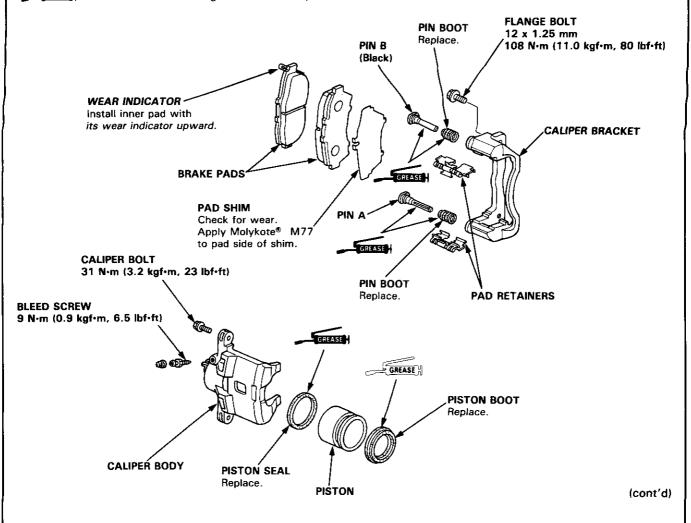
- Coat piston, piston seal, and caliper bore with clean brake fluid.
- Replace all rubber parts with new ones whenever disassembled.



: Brake cylinder grease (P/N: 08733-B020E) or equivalent rubber grease.



: Use recommended grease in the caliper seal set.

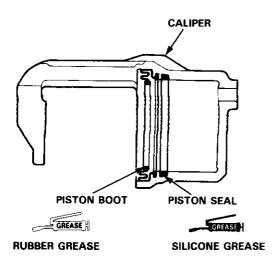


Front Brake Caliper

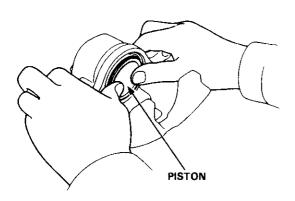
- Reassembly (cont'd) -

- Clean the piston and caliper bore with brake fluid and inspect for wear or damage.
- Coat a new piston seal with the recommended grease in the caliper seal set, and install the seal in the cylinder groove.
- Apply brake cylinder grease (P/N: 08733—B020E) or equivalent rubber grease to the sealing lips and inside of a new piston boot, and install the boot in the cylinder groove.

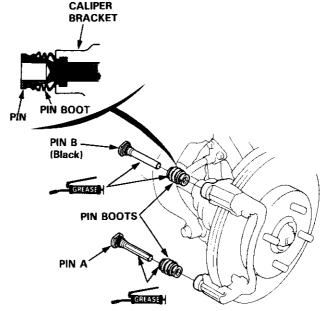
CAUTION: Be careful not to damage the caliper cylinder wall.



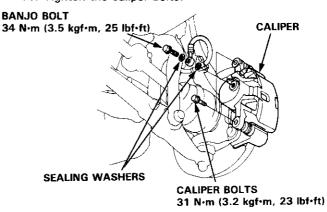
4. Lubricate the caliper cylinder and piston with brake fluid, then install the piston in the cylinder with the dished end facing in.



- Apply the recommended grease in the caliper seal set to sliding surface of the pins and inside of the new pin boots.
- Install the pin boots into the groove in the caliper bracket properly.
- 7. Insert the pin A and pin B into the caliper bracket.
- 8. Install the pin boots into the groove in pins properly.
- Install the brake pads in their original positions (see page 19-8).



- 10. Connect the brake hose to the caliper with new sealing washers, and tighten the banjo bolt.
- 11. Tighten the caliper bolts.



- 12. Fill the brake reservoir and bleed the brake system (see page 19-6).
- 13. After installation, check for leaks at hose and line joints or connections, and retighten if necessary.

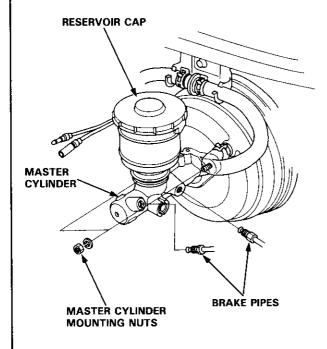
Master Cylinder



- Removal -

CAUTION:

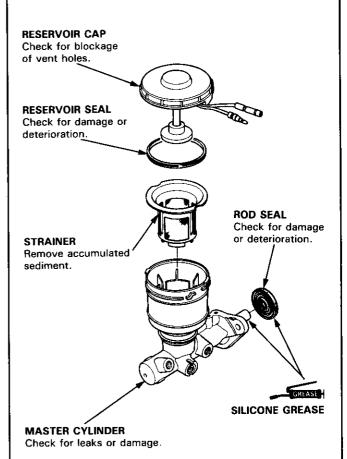
- Be careful not to bend or damage the brake pipes when removing the master cylinder.
- Do not spill brake fluid on the car; it may damage the paint; if brake fluid does contact the paint, wash it off immediately with water.
- To prevent spills, cover the hose joints with rags or shop towels.
- 1. Disconnect the brake fluid level switch connectors.
- 2. Remove the reservoir cap from the master cylinder.
- The brake fluid may be sucked out through the top of the master cylinder reservoir.
- 4. Disconnect the brake pipes from the master cylinder.
- Remove the master cylinder mounting nuts and the master cylinder from the brake booster.



Inspection/Disassembly -

CAUTION:

- Do not spill brake fluid on the car; it may damage the paint; if brake fluid does contact the paint, wash it off immediately with water.
- Before reassembling, check that all parts are free of dust and other foreign particles.
- Do not try to disassemble the master cylinder assembly. Replace the master cylinder assembly with a new part if necessary.
- Make sure no dirt or other foreign matter is allowed to contaminate the brake fluid.

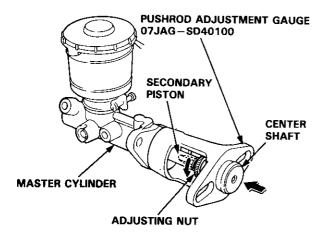


Master Cylinder

Pushrod Clearance Adjustment

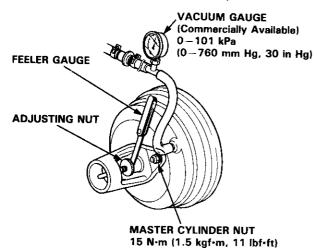
NOTE: Master cylinder pushrod-to piston clearance must be checked and adjustments made, if necessary, before installing master cylinder.

 Set the special tool on the master cylinder body; push in the center shaft until the top of it contacts the end of the secondary piston by turning the adjusting nut.



- 2. Without disturbing the center shaft's position, install the special tool upside down on the booster.
- Install the master cylinder nuts and tighten to the specified torque.
- Connect the booster in-line with a vacuum gauge 0-101 kPa (0-760 mmHg, 30 in Hg) to the booster's engine vacuum supply, and maintain a engine speed that will deliver 66 kPa (500 mmHg, 20 in Hg) vacuum.
- With a feeler gauge, measure the clearance between the gauge body and the adjusting nut as shown.

Clearance: 0-0.4 mm (0-0.02 in)

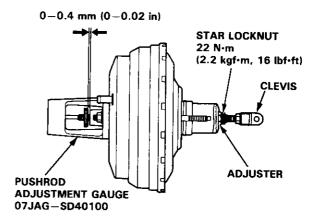


NOTE: If the clearance between the gauge body and adjusting nut is 0.4 mm (0.02 in), the pushrod-to-piston clearance is 0 mm. However, if the clearance between the gauge body and adjusting nut is 0 mm, the pushrod-to-piston clearance is 0.4 mm (0.02 in) or more. Therefore, it must be adjusted and rechecked.

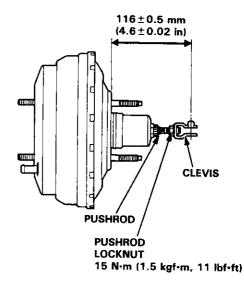
6. If clearance is incorrect, loosen the star locknut and turn the adjuster in or out to adjust.

NOTE:

- Adjust the clearance while the specified vacuum is applied to the booster.
- Hold the clevis while adjusting.
- 7. Tighten the star locknut securely.
- 8. Remove the special tool.



Adjust the pushrod length as shown if the booster is removed.



10. Install the master cylinder (see page 19-15).

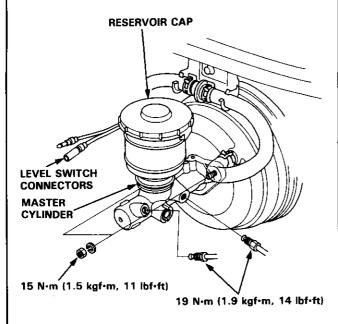
Installation -

CAUTION:

- When connecting the brake pipes, make sure that there is no interference between the brake pipes and other parts.
- Be careful not to bend or damage the brake pipes when installing the master cylinder.

NOTE: If replacing the master cylinder or brake booster, check and adjust the pushrod clearance before installing the master cylinder. (see page 19-14).

- Install the master cylinder on the brake booster with the mounting nuts.
- 2. Connect the brake pipes to the master cylinder.
- 3. Fill the master cylinder reservoir and bleed the brake system (see page 19-6).
- Install the reservoir cap, and connect the brake fluid level switch connectors.



- 5. After installation, perform the following inspections and adjust if necessary.
 - Brake pedal height (see page 19-4)
 - Brake pedal free play (see page 19-4)

Brake Booster



Functional Test

Inspection -

- With the engine stopped, depress the brake pedal several times, then depress the pedal hard and hold that pressure for 15 seconds. If the pedal sinks, the master cylinder, brake line or a brake caliper is faulty.
- Start the engine with the pedal depressed. If the pedal sinks slightly, the vacuum booster is working.
 If the pedal height does not vary, the booster or check valve is faulty.

Leak Test

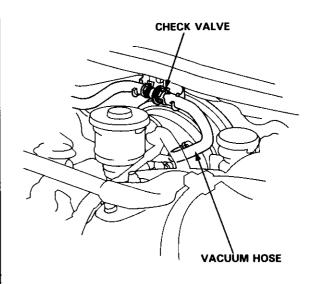
 Depress the brake pedal with the engine running, then stop the engine. If the pedal height does not vary while depressed for 30 seconds, the vacuum booster is OK. If the pedal rises, the booster is faulty.

CAUTION: Do not try to disassemble the booster. Replace the booster assembly with a new one.

 With the engine stopped, depress the brake pedal several times using normal pressure. When the pedal is first depressed, it should be low. On consecutive applications, pedal height should gradually rise. If the pedal position does not vary, check the booster check valve.

Check Valve Test

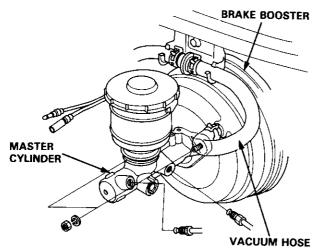
- Disconnect the brake booster vacuum hose at the booster.
- Start the engine and let it idle. There should be vacuum available. If no vacuum is available, the check valve is not working correctly.
 Replace the check valve and retest.



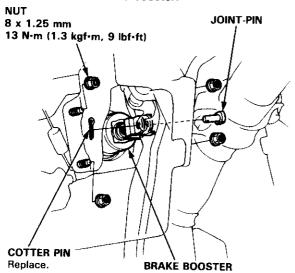
Brake Booster

Replacement -

- 1. Remove the master cylinder (see page 19-13).
- 2. Disconnect the vacuum hose from the brake booster.



- 3. Remove the cotter pin and the joint-pin.
- 4. Remove the brake booster mounting nuts.
- 5. Remove the brake booster.



NOTE: Adjust the pushrod length before installing the booster (see page 19-14).

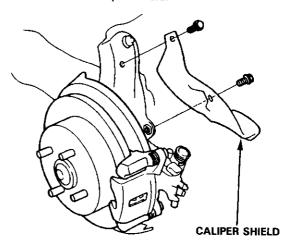
- Install the brake booster in the reverse order of removal.
- 7. Install the master cylinder (see page 19-15).
- After installation, perform the following inspections and adjust if necessary.
 - Brake pedal height (see page 19-4)
 - Brake pedal free play (see page 19-4)

Rear Brake Pads

Inspection and Replacement -

A WARNING

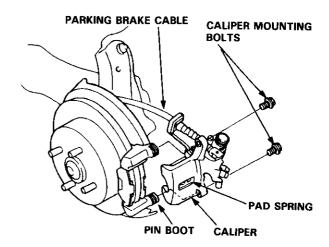
- Never use an air hose or dry brush to clean brake assemblies.
- Use an OSHA-approved vacuum cleaner to avoid breathing brake dust.
- Block the front wheels, loosen the rear wheel nuts slightly, support the rear of car on safety stands, then remove the rear wheels.
 Release the parking brake.
- 2. Remove the caliper shield.



Remove the two caliper mounting bolts and the caliper from the bracket.

CAUTION:

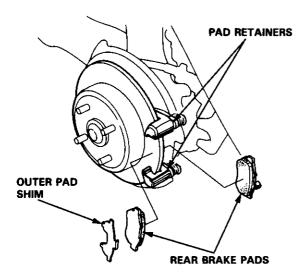
- Thoroughly clean the outside of the caliper to prevent dust and dirt from entering inside.
- Support the caliper with a piece of wire so that it does not hang from the brake hose.



NOTE: Check the hoses and pin boots for damage or deterioration.



4. Remove the outer pad shim, pads and pad retainer.

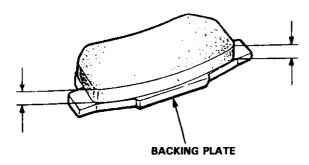


5. Using vernier calipers, measure the thickness of each brake pad lining.

Brake Pad Thickness:

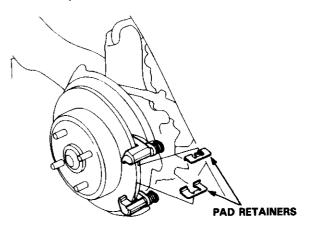
Standard: 7.0-8.0 mm (0.27-0.31 in)

Service Limit: 1.6 mm (0.06 in)



NOTE: Measurement does not include pad backing plate thickness.

- 6. Clean the caliper thoroughly; remove any rust, and check for grooves or cracks.
- 7. Check the brake disc for damage or cracks.
- Make sure that the pad retainers are installed in the correct positions.

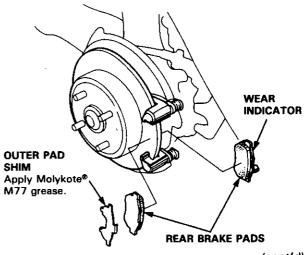


- 9 Apply Molykote® M77 to the pad side of the shims. Wipe excess grease off the shims.
- Install the brake pads and outer pad shim on caliper bracket.

A WARNING

- When reusing the pads, always reinstall the brake pads in their original positions to prevent loss of braking efficiency.
- Contaminated brake discs or pads reduce stopping ability. Keep grease off the discs and pads.

NOTE: Install the inner pad with its wear indicator facing downward.



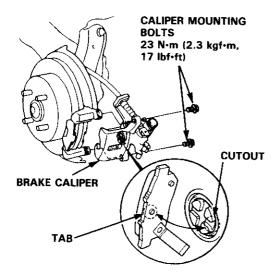
Rear Brake Pads

Inspection and Replacement (cont'd)

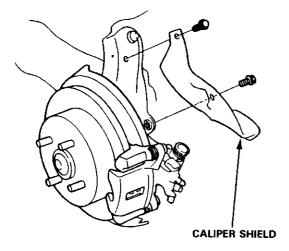
11. Rotate the caliper piston clockwise into place in the cylinder, then align the cutout in the piston with the tab on the inner pad by turning the piston back.

CAUTION: Lubricate the boot with rubber grease to avoid twisting the piston boot. If piston boot is twisted, back it out so it sits properly.

- 12. Install the brake caliper.
- 13. Install and tighten the caliper mounting bolts.



14. Install the caliper shield.



- After installation, check for leaks at hose and line joints or connections, and retighten if necessary.
- 16. Depress the brake pedal several times to make sure the brakes work, then road-test.

NOTE: Engagement of the brake may require a greater pedal stroke immediately after the brake pads have been replaced as a set. Several applications of the brake pedal will restore the normal pedal stroke.

Rear Brake Disc

- Disc Runout Inspection -

- Loosen the rear wheel nuts slightly, then raise the car and support on safety stands. Remove the rear wheels.
- 2. Remove the brake pads (see page 19-16).
- 3. Inspect the disc surface for damage or cracks. Clean the disc thoroughly and remove all rust.
- 4. Use wheel nuts and suitable plain washers to hold the disc securely against the hub, then mount a dial indicator as shown, and measure the runout at 10 mm (0.4 in) from the outer edge of the disc.

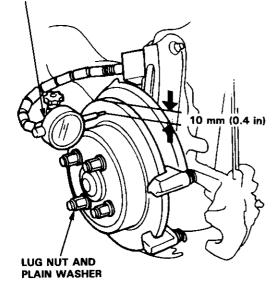
Brake Disc Runout:

Service Limit: 0.10 mm (0.004 in) max.

If the disc is beyond the service limit, refinish the brake disc.

Max. Refinishing Limit: 8.0 mm (0.32 in)

DIAL INDICATOR

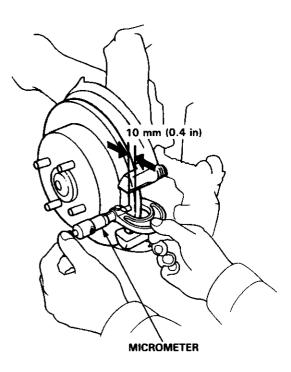


NOTE: A new disc should be refinished if its runout is greater than 0.10 mm (0.004 in).

(6)

- Thickness and Parallelism Inspection

- Loosen the rear wheel lug nuts slightly, then raise the car and support on safety stands. Remove the rear wheels.
- 2. Remove the brake pads (see page 19-16).
- Using a micrometer, measure disc thickness at eight points, approximately 45° apart and 10 mm (0.4 in) in from the outer edge of the disc.



Brake Disc Thickness:

Standard:

8.9-9.1 mm

(0.35-0.36 in)

Max. Refinishing Limit: 8.0 mm (0.31 in)

NOTE: Replace the brake disc if the smallest measurement is less than the max. refinishing limit.

Brake Disc Parallelism: 0.015 mm

(0.0006 in) max.

NOTE: This is the maximum allowable difference between the thickness measurement.

 If the disc is beyond the service limit for parallelism, refinish the brake disc.

NOTE: See page 18-29 for brake disc replacement.

Rear Brake Caliper

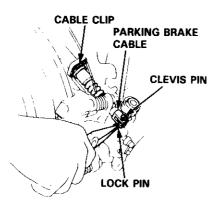
- Disassembly -

A WARNING

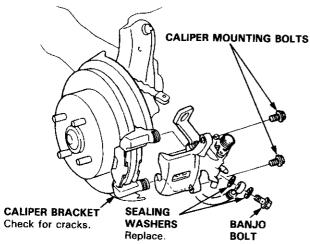
- Never use an air hose or dry brush to clean brake assemblies.
- Use an OSHA-approved vacuum cleaner to avoid breathing brake dust.
- Contaminated brake discs or pads reduce stopping ability.

CAUTION:

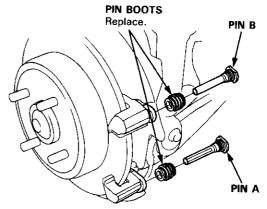
- Do not spill brake fluid on the car; it may damage the paint; if brake fluid does contact the paint, wash it off immediately with water.
- To prevent spills, cover the hose joints with rags or shop towels.
- Clean all parts in brake fluid and air dry; blow out all passages with compressed air.
- 1. Remove the caliper shield (see page 19-16).
- Remove the lock pin and clevis pin.
 Remove the cable clip, and disconnect the cable from the arm.



- 3. Remove the banjo bolt and two sealing washers.
- Remove the two caliper mounting bolts and caliper body from the bracket.

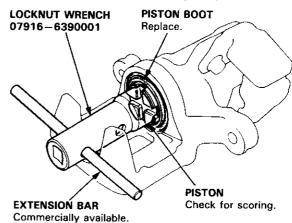


5. Remove the pins and pin boots from the caliper bracket.



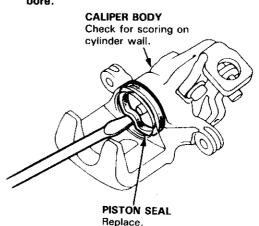
- 6. Remove the pad spring from the caliper body.
- Remove the piston by rotating the piston counterclockwise with the special tool, and remove the piston boot.

CAUTION: Avoid damaging the piston.



8. Remove the piston seal.

CAUTION: Take care not to damage the cylinder bore.

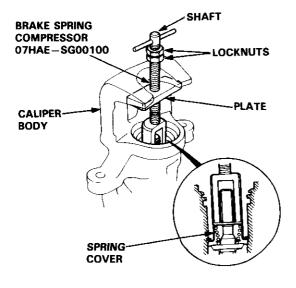




 Install the special tool between the caliper body and spring cover, then position the locknuts as shown.
 Turn the shaft until the plate just contacts the caliper body.

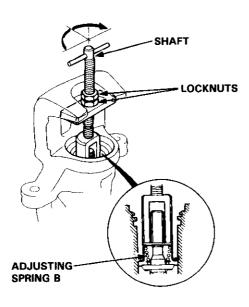
CAUTION: Be careful not to damage the inside of the caliper cylinder during caliper disassembly.

NOTE: Do not compress the spring under the spring cover.



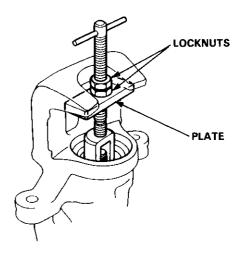
10. Turn the shaft clockwise 1/4-1/2 turn to compress the adjusting spring B in the caliper body.

CAUTION: To prevent damage to the inner components, do not turn the shaft more than 1/2 turn.

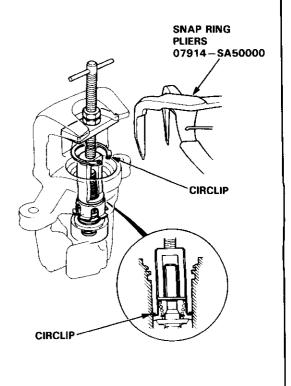


11. Lower the locknuts fully, and tighten the locknuts securely.

NOTE: Keep the locknuts in this position until you reinstall the circlip.



12. Remove the circlip with snap ring pliers.

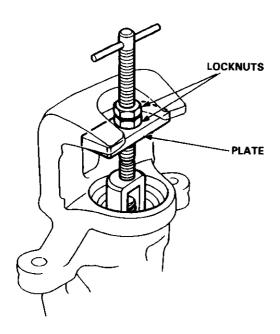


(cont'd)

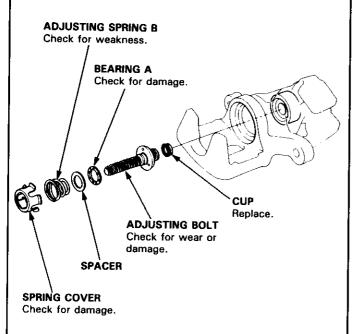
Rear Brake Caliper

Disassembly (cont'd)

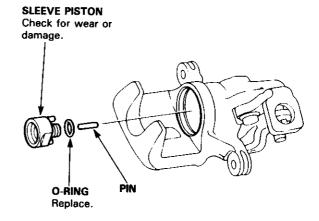
 Hold the plate with your fingers and turn the shaft counterclockwise. Remove the special tool from the caliper.



- 14. Remove the adjusting bolt.
- Remove the spring cover, adjusting spring B, spacer, bearing A and cup from the adjusting bolt.



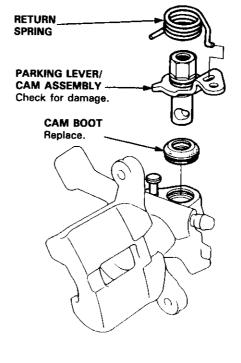
Remove the sleeve piston, and remove the pin from the cam.



- 17. Remove the return spring.
- 18. Remove the parking lever and cam as an assembly from the caliper body.

CAUTION: Do not loosen the parking nut with the cam installed in the caliper body. If the lever and shaft must be separated, hold the lever in a vise and loosen the parking nut.

19. Remove the cam boot.





19-23

Reassembly

A WARNING

- Never use an air hose or dry brush to clean brake assemblies.
- Use an OSHA-approved vacuum cleaner to avoid breathing brake dust.
- Contaminated brake discs or pads reduce stopping ability.
- When reusing the pads, install them in their original positions to prevent loss of braking efficiency.

CAUTION:

- Do not spill brake fluid on the car; it may damage the paint; if brake fluid does contact the paint, wash it off immediately with water.
- Clean all parts in brake fluid and air dry; blow out all passage with compressed air.
- Before reassembling, check that all parts are free of dust and other foreign particles.
- Replace parts with new ones whenever specified to do so.
- Make sure no dirt or other foreign matter is allowed to contaminate the brake fluid.
- Do not mix different brands of brake fluid as they may not be compatible.
- Do not reuse the drained fluid. Use only clean DOT 3 or 4 brake fluid.

NOTE:

- Coat piston, piston seal, and caliper bore with clean brake fluid.
- Replace all rubber parts with new ones whenever disassembled.

GREASE : Brake cylinder grease (P/N: 08733-B020E) or equivalent rubber grease. GHEASE : Use the recommended grease in the caliper seal set. **RETURN SPRING** 8 mm FLANGE BOLT **PARKING NUT** 23 N·m (2.3 kgf·m, 17 lbf·ft) 10 x 1.25 mm 27 N·m (2.8 kgf·m, 20 lbf·ft) **BLEED SCREW** SPRING WASHER 9 N·m (0.9 kgf·m, 6.5 lbf·ft) CAM BOOT **BEARING A SLEEVE PISTON** GREASE ARM **SPACER INNER PAD SHIM ADJUSTING BOLT ADJUSTING** Apply Molykote® M77 to CAM SPRING B pad side of shim. CIRCLIP RETAINER GREASE **CALIPER BODY** PISTON BOOT PAD SPRING GREASE O-RING GREASE GREASE CUP PIN B SPRING COVER GREASE GREASE PIN BOOTS **PISTON SEAL OUTER PAD SHIM** Apply Molykote® M77 to pad side of shim. **PISTON BRAKË PADS** GREASE PIN A PIN BOOT 8 mm FLANGE BOLT 23 N·m (2.3 kgf·m, 17 lbf·ft) CALIPER BRACKET 10 x 1.25 mm (cont'd) 38 N·m (3.9 kgf·m, 28 lbf·ft)

Rear Brake Caliper

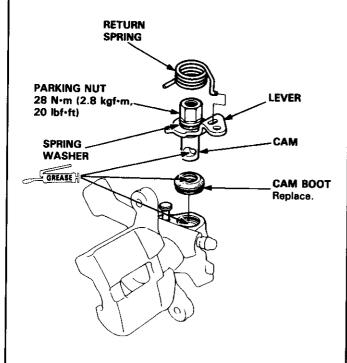
Reassembly (cont'd)

- 1. Pack all cavities of the needle bearing with the recommended grease.
- Coat the new cam boot with the recommended grease, and install it in the caliper body.
- Apply the recommended grease to the pin contacting area of the cam, and install the cam and lever assembly into the caliper body.
- 4. Install the return spring.

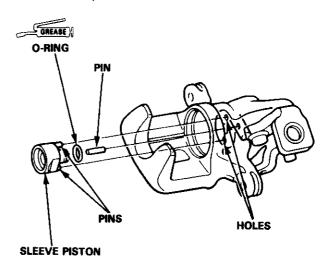
CAUTION:

- When the cam and lever were separated, be sure to assemble them before installing the cam in the caliper body. Install the lever and spring washer, apply locking agent to the threads, and tighten the parking nut while holding the lever with a vise.
- Avoid damaging the cam boot since it must be installed before the cam.
- When installing the cam, do not allow the cam boot lips to turn outside in.

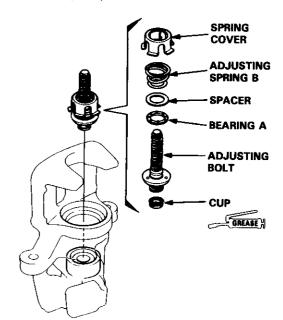
GREASE : Brake cylinder grease (P/N: 08733 – B020E) or equivalent rubber grease.



- 5. Install the pin in the cam.
- Apply the recommended grease to the new O-ring, and install it on the sleeve piston.
- Install the sleeve piston so the hole in the bottom
 of the piston is aligned with the pin in the cam, and
 the two pins on the piston are aligned with the holes
 in the caliper.

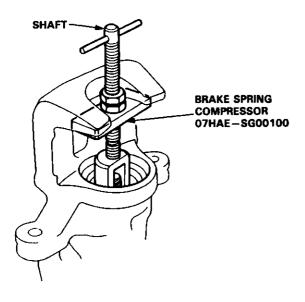


- Coat a new cup with recommended grease, and install it with its groove facing the bearing A side of the adjusting bolt.
- Fit the bearing A, spacer, adjusting spring B and spring cover on the adjusting bolt, and install them in the caliper cylinder.



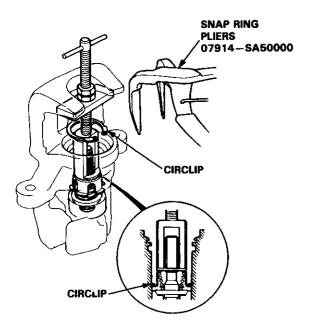


 Install the special tool on the spring cover, and turn the shaft until the locknut contacts the plate.

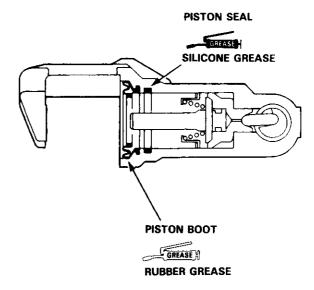


- 11. Check that the flared end of the spring cover is below the circlip groove.
- 12. Install the circlip in the groove, then remove the special tool.

NOTE: Check that the circlip is seated in the groove properly.

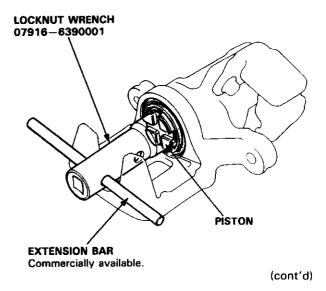


- Coat a new piston seal with silicone grease, and install it in the caliper.
- 14. Apply brake cylinder grease (P/N: 08733-B020E) or equivalent rubber grease to the sealing lips and inside of a new piston boot, and install it in the caliper.



15. Coat the outside of the piston with brake fluid, and install it on the adjusting bolt while rotating it clockwise with the special tool.

CAUTION: Avoid damaging the piston and piston boot.



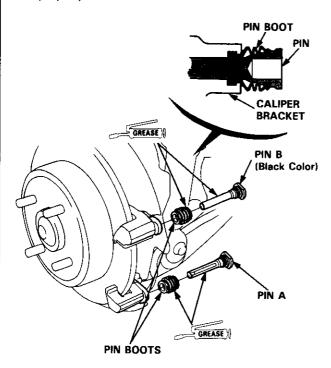
Rear Brake Caliper

Reassembly (cont'd)

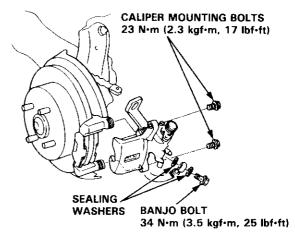
16. Install the pad spring on the caliper.



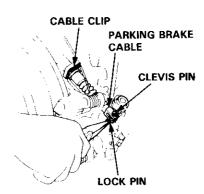
- 17. Apply the recommended grease in the caliper seal set to the sliding surface of the pins and inside the new pin boots.
- 18. Install the pin boots into the groove in the caliper bracket properly.
- 19. Insert the pin A and pin B into the caliper bracket.
- Install the pin boots into the grooves in the pins properly.



- 21. Install the brake pad retainers and brake pads (see page 19-17).
- 22. Align the cutout in the piston with the tab on the inner pad (see page 19-18).
- 23. Install the caliper on the caliper bracket, and tighten the caliper mounting bolts.
- 24. Connect the brake hose to the caliper with new sealing washers, and tighten the banjo bolt.



25. Insert the cable through the arm, and connect the cable to the lever with the clevis pin and lock pin. Install the cable clip securely.



- 26. Fill the brake reservoir and bleed the brake system (see page 19-6).
- 27. Operate the brake pedal several times, then adjust the parking brake (see page 19-5).
- 28. After installation, perform the following checks.
 - Check for leaks at hose and line joints or connections, and retighten if necessary.
 - Check the parking brake lever for operation, and adjust it if necessary.

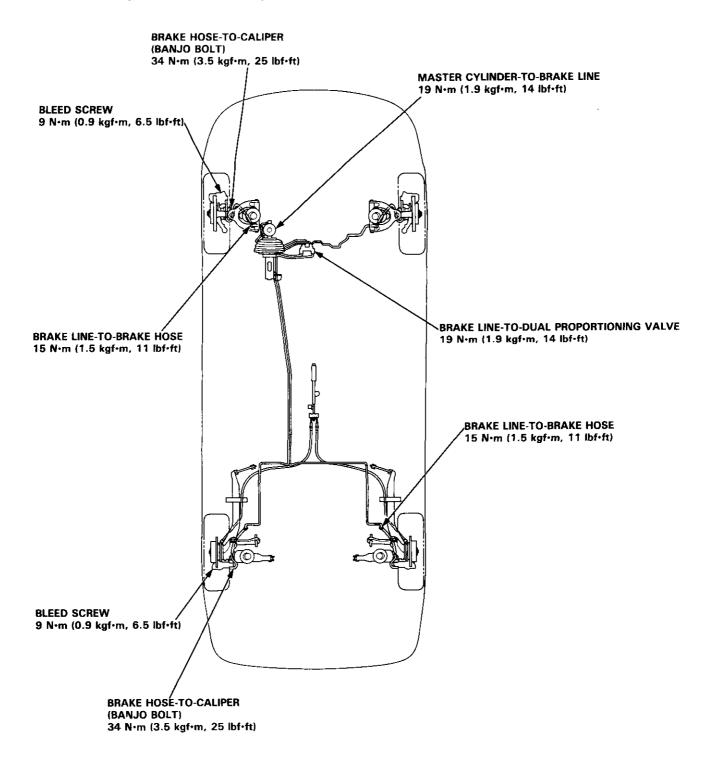
Brake Hoses/Pipes



Inspection

- 1. Inspect the brake hoses for damage, deterioration, leaks, interference or twisting.
- 2. Check the brake lines for damage, rusting or leakage. Also check for bent brake lines.
- 3. Check for leaks at hose and line joints or connections, and retighten if necessary.

CAUTION: Replace the brake hose clip whenever the brake hose is serviced.

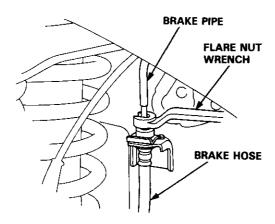


Brake Hoses/Pipes

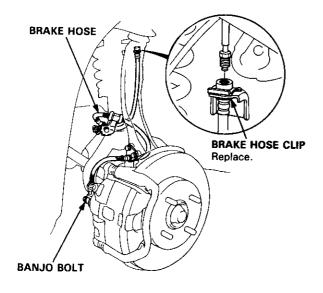
Hose Replacement

CAUTION:

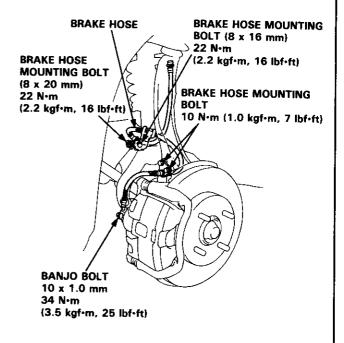
- Before reassembling, check that all parts are free of dust and other foreign particles.
- Replace parts with new ones whenever specified to do so.
- Do not spill brake fluid on the car; it may damage the paint; if brake fluid does contact the paint, wash it off immediately with water.
- Replace the brake hose if the hose is twisted, cracked, or if it leaks.
- 2. Disconnect the brake hose from the brake pipe using a 10 mm flare nut wrench.



- 3. Remove and discard the brake hose clip from the brake hose.
- 4. Remove the banjo bolt, and disconnect the brake hose from the caliper.

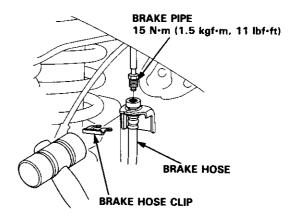


 Install the brake hose on the knuckle and damper first, then connect the brake hose to the caliper with the banjo bolt and new sealing washers.



CAUTION: Do not twist the brake hose excessively.

- 6. Install a new brake hose clip on the brake hose.
- 7. Connect the brake pipe to the brake hose.



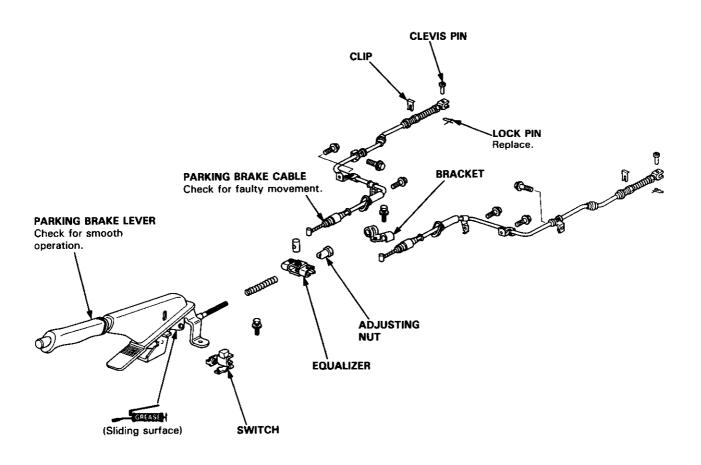
- 8. After installing the brake hose, bleed the brake system (see page 19-6).
- 9. Perform the following checks.
 - Check the brake hose and line joint for leaks, and tighten if necessary.
 - Check the brake hoses for interference or twisting.

Parking Brake Cable

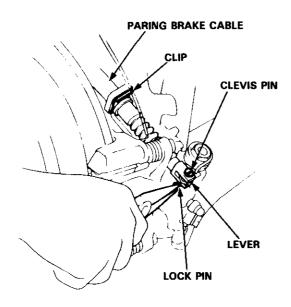


Inspection and Replacement

CAUTION: The parking brake cables must not be bent or distorted. This will lead to stiff operation and premature cable failure.



Disconnect the parking brake cable from the lever on the caliper by removing the lock pin and clevis pin, and remove the cable from the arm by removing the clip.



Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)

| Special Tools | |
|--|----------|
| Illustrated Index | 19-33 |
| Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) | |
| Features/Construction | 19-34 |
| Operation | 19-40 |
| Components Location | |
| Wiring/Connector Location | 19-46 |
| Circuit Diagram | 19-50 |
| ABS Control Unit Terminal Arrangement | 19-52 |
| Oscilloscope Waveform | 19-54 |
| Troubleshooting Procedure | 19-55 |
| Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) Indication | 19-56 |
| Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) | |
| Symptom-to-System Chart | 19-58 |
| Troubleshooting | |
| ABS Indicator Light Does Not Come On | 19-62 |
| ABS Indicator Light Does Not Go Off | |
| ABS Pump Motor Over-run | 19-71 |
| ABS Pump Motor | 19-74 |
| High Pressure Leakage | |
| Pressure Switch | 19-83 |
| High Pressure System | |
| Parking Brake | |
| Pulser/Different Diameter Tire | |
| Right-Front Wheel Sensor | 19-93 |
| Left-Front Wheel Sensor | |
| Right-Rear Wheel Sensor | |
| Left-Rear Wheel Sensor | |
| Rear Wheel Lock | |
| Front and Rear Fail-safe Relays | |
| Front Fail-safe Relay | |
| Rear Fail-safe Relay | |
| Right-Front Solenoid | . 19-125 |
| Left-Front Solenoid | |
| Rear Solenoid | |
| ABS Function | |
| ABS Control Unit | |
| BS Function Test | . 19-149 |
| | |

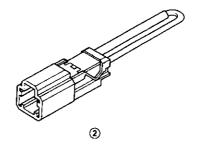
| Modulator Unit | |
|------------------------------|--------|
| Relieving System Pressure | 19-152 |
| Brake Fluid Replacement | 19-152 |
| Removal/Installation | 19-154 |
| Wire Harness Replacement | 19-155 |
| Pump Motor Replacement | 19-156 |
| Disposal | 19-156 |
| Electronic Components | |
| ABS Control Unit Replacement | 19-157 |
| Relay Inspection | 19-157 |
| Pulsers/Wheel Sensors | |
| Inspection | 19-158 |
| Wheel Sensor Replacement | 19-159 |
| | |



| Ref. No. | Tool Number | Description | Qty | Page Reference |
|----------|-------------------|---------------------|-----|----------------|
| 1 | *07HAJ-SG0010A or | ALB Checker | 1 | |
| | 07HAJ-SG0010B | | | |
| 2 | 07PAZ-0010100 | SCS Short Connector | 1 | |

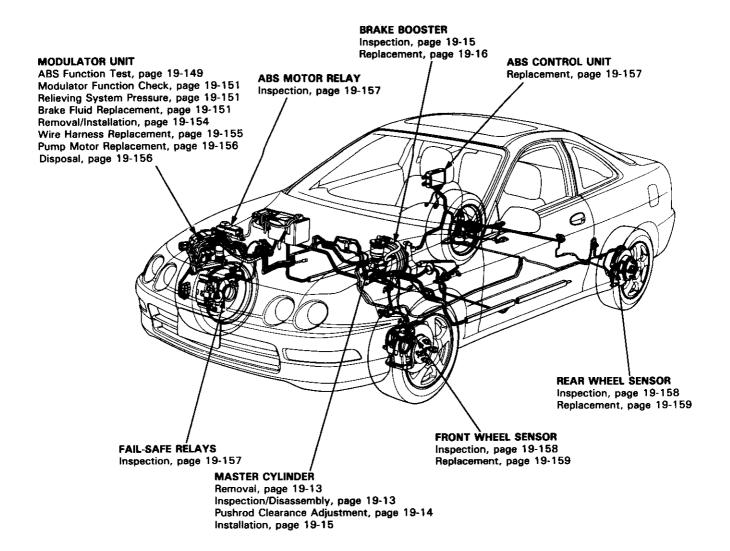
^{*:} The ALB checker 07HAJ-SG00XXX can be used. (XXX: unspecified number)







A WARNING. The accumulator contains high pressure nitrogen gas, do not puncture, expose to flame, or attempt to disassemble the accumulator, or it may explode; severe personal injury may result.



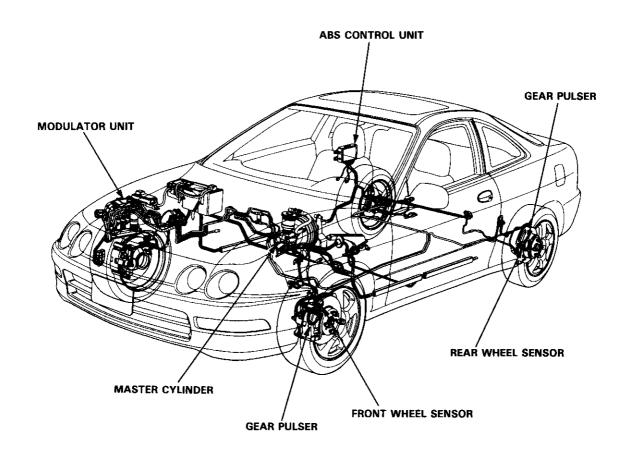
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)

Features/Construction

In a conventional brake system, if the brake pedal is depressed very hard, the wheels can lock before the vehicle comes to a stop. In such a case, the stability of the vehicle is reduced if the rear wheels are locked, and maneuverability of the vehicle is reduced if the front wheels are locked, creating an extremely unstable condition.

The Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) modulates the pressure of the brake fluid applied to each front caliper or both rear calipers, thereby preventing the locking of the wheels, whenever the wheels are likely to be locked due to hard braking. It then restores normal hydraulic pressure when there is no longer any possibility of wheel locking.

The ABS equipped on this car is compact, with its hydraulic control system incorporated into one modulator unit. It is a 3-channel anti-lock brake system that has individual control of the front wheels and common control ("Select Low") for the rear wheels. "Select Low" means that the rear wheel that would lock first (the one with the lowest resistance to lock-up) determines anti-lock brake system activation for both rear wheels.



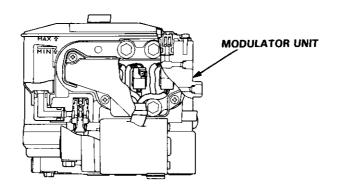
| PART NAME | MAJOR FUNCTION | | |
|------------------|--|--|--|
| Gear pulser | Attached to the rotating part of the wheel and detects the wheel speed together with the wheel sensor. | | |
| Wheel sensor | Generates pulse signal corresponding to the revolution of the gear pulser. | | |
| ABS control unit | Controls the working of the anti-lock brake system by performing calculations based on signals from the individual wheel sensors and the individual switches. | | |
| Modulator unit | * Adjusts the hydraulic pressure applied to each caliper on the basis of the signals received from the ABS control unit. * Pump, accumulator, solenoid valves and pistons are integrated in the modulator unit. | | |
| Motor Relay | Controls the ABS pump motor's power supply according to the signal from the ABS control unit. | | |
| Fail-safe-relay | Cuts off the solenoid valve ground circuit when the fail-safe device is at work. | | |



Modulator Unit:

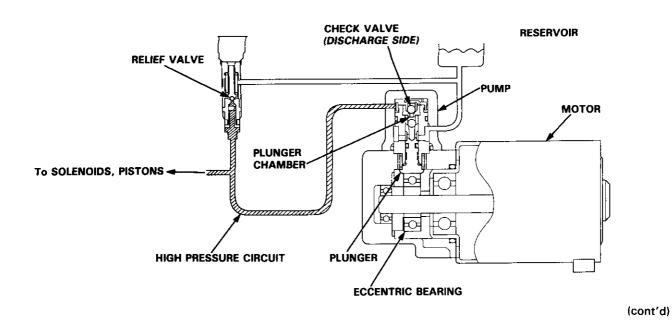
The modulator unit consists of the following sub-units. It adjusts the hydraulic pressure applied to each caliper on the basis of the signals received from the ABS control unit.

- ABS pump and motor: Supply high-pressure brake fluid to control the ABS operation.
- Accumulator: Stores high-pressure brake fluid in it.
- Pressure switch: Detects the pressure in the accumulator and transmits signals to the ABS control unit.
- Solenoid valves: Switches the ABS high-pressure passage according to the signals from the ABS control unit.
- Pistons and related parts: Receive the high-pressure brake fluid, and control pressure to the calipers accordingly.



Motor and pump:

As the motor rotates, it drives the plunger-type ABS pump and raises the brake fluid pressure to approximately 25 MPa (250 kgf/cm², 3,600 psi). The eccentric bearing is attached to the motor shaft end, it contacts the plunger of the pump plunger. The motor shaft's rotational motion is transmitted to the reciprocating motion of the pump plunger. When the plunger is pushed, the brake fluid in the plunger chamber is pressured and fed to the accumulator, solenoid, and piston, via the check valve. When the pressure in the accumulator exceeds 34 MPa (350 kgf/cm², 5,000 psi), the relief valve opens to release the excess brake fluid pressure to the reservoir, and thereby protect the system.



Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)

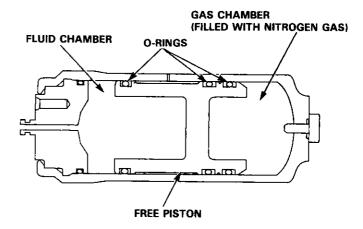
Features/Construction/Operation (cont'd)

Accumulator:

The high-pressure brake fluid discharged from the pump is fed to the solenoids and pistons, but the passages to the solenoids and pistons are normally closed. Consequently, the high-pressure brake fluid accumulates in the accumulator.

The accumulator consists of two chambers separated by a free piston; that is, the fluid chamber where the brake fluid is accumulated, and the chamber filled with high-pressure nitrogen gas to maintain the fluid at a given pressure.

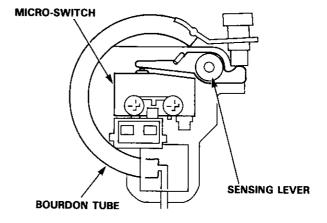
When the ABS operates, the constant high-pressure brake fluid in the accumulator is supplied to the piston.



Pressure switch:

The pressure switch monitors the pressure accumulation in the accumulator. When the pressure in the accumulator rises, the Bourdon tube in the pressure switch deforms outward, which in turn activates the micro-switch by the force of the spring attached to the sensing lever. When the pressure in the accumulator drops due to ABS operation, the Bourdon tube moves in the opposite direction, and the micro-switch is eventually turned off.

The ABS control unit detects the fluid pressure in the accumulator by the ON/OFF signals from the pressure switch.



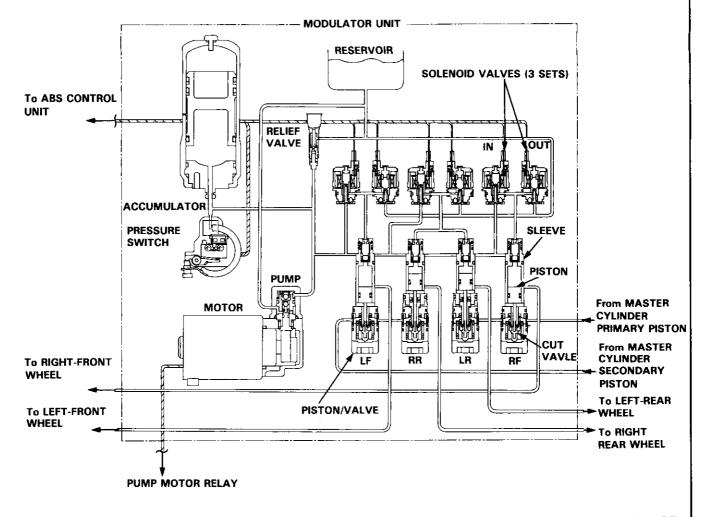


Piston/valve:

The piston/valve assembly consists of the piston, cut valve, and sleeve. There are four piston/valve assemblies in the modulator unit to control the brake fluid pressure to each caliper. The piston/valve assemblies for the rear brakes also serve as proportioning control valves to prevent the rear wheels from locking if the ABS malfunctions or when the ABS is not activated.

Solenoid valve:

The modulator unit opens and closes the inlet and outlet solenoid valves, and shifts the ABS high-pressure passage according to the signals from the ABS control unit. There are three solenoid valve assemblies, each containing an inlet and outlet valve, in the modulator unit; one for each front wheel, and one for both rear wheels. The inlet valves are normally open (open when there is no continuity to the coil), while the outlet valves are normally closed.



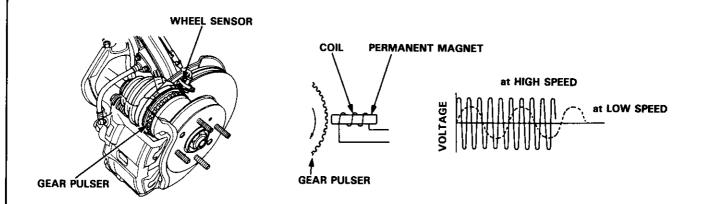
(cont'd)

Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)

Features/Construction/Operation (cont'd)

Wheel sensor:

The wheel sensor is a contactless type that detects the rotating speed of a wheel. It consists of a permanent magnet and coil. When the gear pulsers attached to the rotating parts of each wheel turn, the magnetic flux around the coil in the wheel sensor alternates, generating voltages with frequency in proportion to wheel rotating speed. These pulses are sent to the ABS control unit, and the ABS control unit identifies the wheel speed.

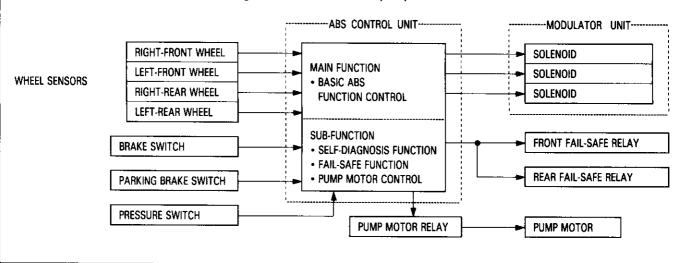


ABS control unit:

The ABS control unit consists of a main function, which controls the operation of the anti-lock brake system, and subfunction, which controls the pump motor and "self-diagnosis"

For safety, the main function consists of two systems, and the ABS control unit activates the solenoid valve only when the outputs of the two systems agree with each other.

- The main function section of the ABS control unit performs calculations on the basis of the signals from each wheel sensor, and controls the operation of the anti-lock brake system by activating the solenoid valves in the modulator unit for each front brake and for the two rear brakes. The ABS has individual control of the front wheels and common control ("Select Low") for the rear wheels. "Select Low" means that the rear wheel that would lock first (the one with the lowest resistance to lock-up) determines the ABS activation for both rear wheels.
- The sub-function section has the fail-safe function that monitors the system operation by inputting the brake switch, parking brake switch and pressure switch signals, and stops the anti-lock brake system when it detects an abnormality in the system. It also has a self-diagnosis function and the pump motor control function.





Pump motor control:

The ABS control unit monitors the brake fluid pressure in the accumulator by the pressure switch ON/OFF signals. The ABS control unit turns the pump on when the pressure in the accumulator drops, and stops the pump when the pressure rises to the specified value.

If the pressure does not reach the specified value after the motor has operated continuously for a specified period, the ABS control unit stops the motor and activates the ABS indicator light.

Self-diagnosis function:

The self-diagnosis function, provided in the sub-function of the ABS control unit, monitors the main system functions by constantly transmitting the data between the two Central Processing Units (CPUs). When an abnormality is detected, the ABS control unit turns the ABS indicator light on and stops the ABS, although the basic brake system continues to operate normally.

When the ABS control unit detects an abnormality with the ABS and turns the ABS indicator light on, the diagnostic trouble code (DTC), which shows the problem part or unit, is recorded in the control unit. The DTC can be read by the blinking frequency of the ABS indicator light.

Fail-safe function:

When an abnormality is detected in the ABS control system self-diagnosis, the solenoid operations are suspended by turning off the two fail-safe relays. This disconnects the ground circuits of all the solenoid valves to prevent ABS operation.

Under these conditions, the braking system functions just as an ordinary one.

Fail-safe relay:

The fail-safe relay's terminal side contact is normally open. When there is continuity at the relay coil, the fail-safe relay is closed, thereby connecting the ground circuit to the solenoid valve.

ABS CONTROL UNIT d s t SOLENOID VALVE BAT REAR FAIL-SAFE RELAY FRONT FAIL-SAFE RELAY

ABS indicator light:

The ABS control unit turns the ABS indicator light on when one or more of the following abnormalities are detected. This is only a partial list.

- When the operating time of the motor in the power unit exceeds the specified period.
- When vehicle running time exceeds 30 seconds without releasing the parking brake.
- When absence of speed signals from any of the four wheel sensor is detected.
- When the activation time of all solenoids exceeds a given time, or an open circuit is detected in the solenoid system.
- When solenoid output is not detected in the simulated ABS operation when the engine is started or the vehicle is driven.

To check the indicator light bulb, the light is activated when the ignition switch is first turned on. The light goes off after the engine is started if there is no abnormality in the system.

Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)

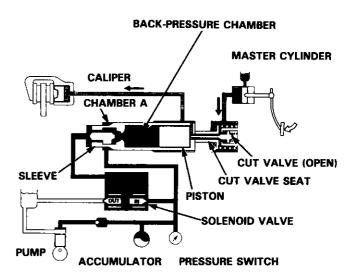
Operation -

The following description of ABS operation is for one of the front wheels. The ABS operation for the remaining wheels is the same.

Ordinary braking function:

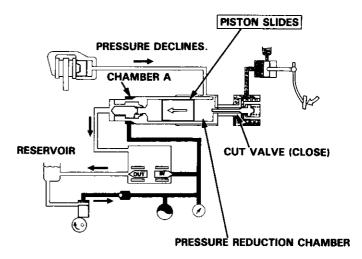
In ordinary brake operations when the ABS is not functioning, the solenoid outlet valve is closed and the inlet valve is open, the brake fluid pressure is transmitted to the back-pressure chamber between the sleeve and piston, and the cut valve is pushed by the piston. As the high-pressure is also transmitted the chamber A between the sleeve and cylinder, the sleeve pushes the cut valve seat toward the cut valve, too.

Under there conditions, the cut valve is kept open and the hydraulic pressure from the master cylinder is transmitted to the caliper just like an ordinary brake system.



When ABS is functioning:

 Control by reducing caliper fluid pressure: When brake inputs (force exerted on brake pedal) are excessively large, and a possibility of wheel locking occurs, the control unit operates the solenoid valve, closing the inlet valve and opening the outlet valve. As a result, high pressure in the back-pressure chamber is released to the reservoir, and the piston is pushed by the caliper fluid pressure toward the backpressure chamber. However, the cut valve seat is kept in the pushed position because high pressure is transmitted to chamber A. As the piston moves, the cut valve moves and shuts the flow from the master cylinder to the caliper, the volume of the pressure reduction chamber connected to the caliper increases, and the fluid pressure in the caliper declines, relieving the braking force. The wheel speed is therefore restored, preventing the wheel from locking.



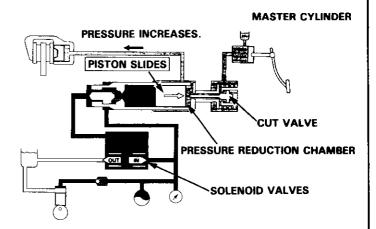


• Control by increasing caliper fluid pressure:

When the ABS control unit senses that the caliper fluid pressure declined, and the wheel speed is restored, it signals the solenoid inlet valve to open and the solenoid outlet valve to close.

As a result, the high pressure of the brake fluid is transmitted to the back-pressure chamber, and the piston is pushed toward the pressure reduction chamber, increasing the caliper fluid pressure, and thereby the braking force again.

When the master cylinder side's fluid pressure is low, the cut valve is slightly opened as the piston moves, and the caliper fluid pressure is transmitted to the master cylinder. The kickback is felt on the brake pedal this time. When the force depressing the brake pedal is relieved while the ABS is functioning, the cut valve is opened and the pressure in the pressure reduction chamber is returned to the master cylinder side. As a result, the caliper fluid pressure is relieved.

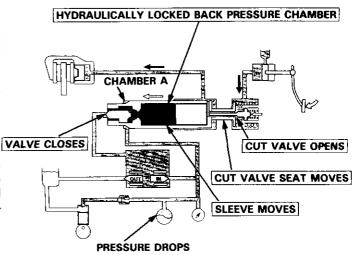


When high-pressure declines:

The ABS control unit monitors the pressure in the highpressure passage by means of the pressure switch signals. The ABS control unit turns the ABS indicator light on and stops the ABS when it detects an excessive drop in pressure in the high-pressure passage.

When the pressure declined due to, leakage from the passage, for example, the pressure in chamber A declines, too, and the cut valve seat and sleeve return toward chamber A.

As a result, the valve at the sleeve end closes, which VALVE CLOSES hydraulically locks the back-pressure chamber and blocks the piston movement. Because the cut valve opens as the cut valve seat moves, this connects the brake fluid passage between the master cylinder and caliper for ordinary brake operation.



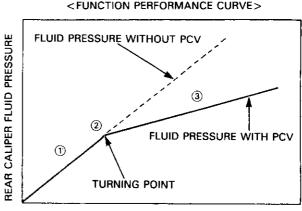
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)

Operation

Proportioning Control Valve Function:

The modulators for the rear brakes serve as proportioning control valves to prevent the rear wheels from locking if the ABS malfunctions or when the ABS is not activated. When this function is not provided, the hydraulic pressure from the master cylinder and the hydraulic pressure to the rear brake system are equal. If the fluid pressure is transmitted to the rear brakes at the same rate as the front brakes, the rear wheels will lock first because the rear axle load becomes lighter when the brakes are applied.

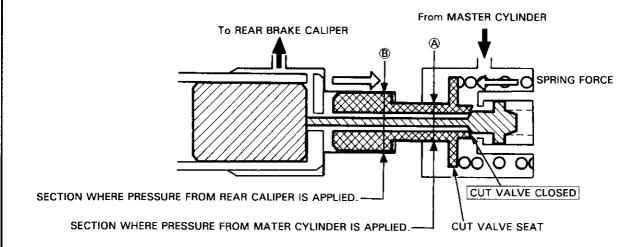
To prevent the rear wheels from locking, the proportioning control valve function changes the distribution rate of the fluid pressure to the rear wheels when the pressure in the rear brake system exceeds the given value of the fluid pressure from the master cylinder. The fluid pressure point where the distribution rate changes is called the turning point.



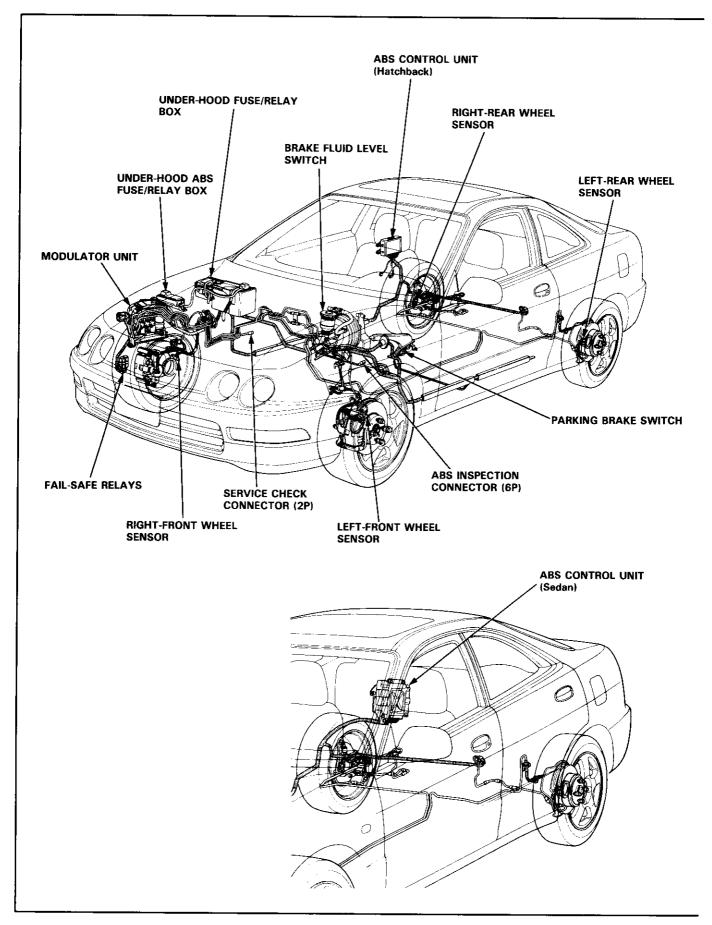
MASTER CYLINDER FLUID PRESSURE

The cut valve seat in the rear brake system has a shoulder between sections A and B. Section A, where pressure from the master cylinder is applied, has a smaller diameter than section B, where pressure from the rear brake caliper is applied. This design provides the proportioning control valve function as follows.

- 1. When the fluid pressure from the master clyinder is below the turning point, the cut valve seat is pushed by the spring force and the cut valve is open. Therefore, the fluid pressure from the master cylinder is transmitted to the rear brake caliper side. Under these conditions, fluid pressure from the master cylinder is equal to the pressure to the rear brake caliper, but because of the diameter difference between sections A and B, the force on the cut valve overcomes the spring force, moving the cut valve seat toward the cut valve slowly.
- 2. When the fluid pressure to the rear brake caliper reaches the turning point, the cut valve is closed by the cut valve seat, blocking the fluid passage between the master cylinder side and rear wheel cylinder side.
- 3. When the fluid from the master cylinder exceeds the turning point, the fluid pressure from the master cylinder rises, while the pressure to the rear brake caliper remains at the turning point value. As a result, the cut valve seat moves away from the cut valve and the cut valve opens. The passage between the master cylinder and caliper opens momentarily, but it is blocked again because the fluid pressure to the brake caliper rises, and the cut valve seat moves to close the cut valve. As described above, when the pressure in the master cylinder is above the turning point, the cut valve seat reduces the pressure in the rear brake caliper to the prescribed amount by repeating this process.



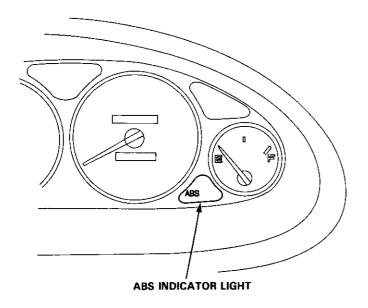
Components Location

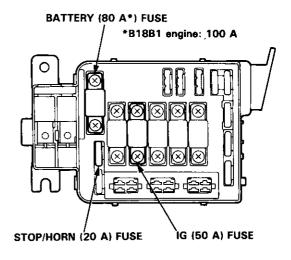




GAUGE ASSEMBLY

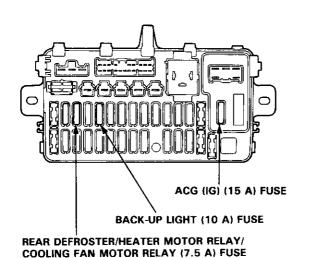
UNDER-HOOD FUSE/RELAY BOX

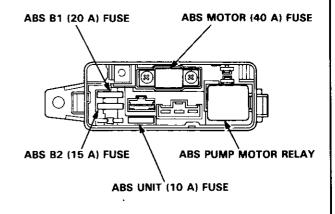




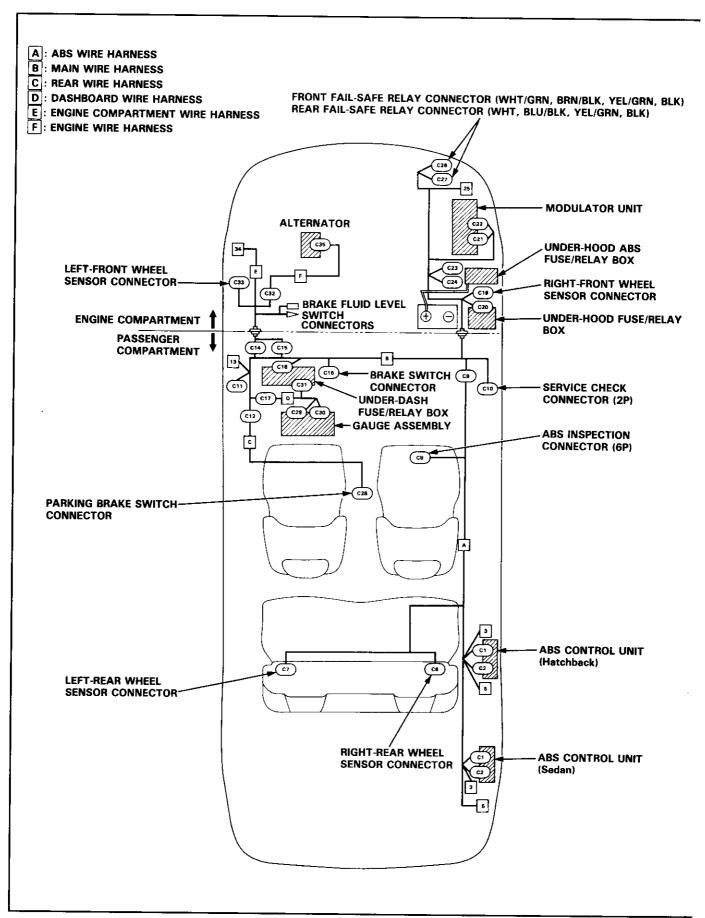
UNDER-DASH FUSE/RELAY BOX

UNDER-HOOD ABS FUSE/RELAY BOX





Wiring/Connector Locations





Connector List

NOTE: The single outline indicates the connector which has female terminals, and its terminal numbers are viewed from the wire side. The double outline indicates the connector which has male terminals, and its terminal numbers are viewed from the terminal side.

| No. | Wire har- ness | Number of ter- minals | Color | Description | Location |
|------------|----------------------|-----------------------------|----------|--|--|
| ©1 | A | 22P | ORN | ABS control unit 1 2 3 4 5 10111 connector 12 13 14 15 16 18 20 21 22 | Connected to ABS control unit behind the |
| C2 | Α | 26P | ORN | ABS control unit | quarter panel (Sedan: on right side of trunk) |
| 3 | A | Ground | | ABS control unit logic ground | Connected to body under ABS control unit (Sedan: to the ABS control unit bracket |
| 5 | A | Ground | <u> </u> | ABS control unit solenoid ground | Connected to body under ABS control unit |
| C6 | A | 2P | ORN | Right-rear wheel sensor connector | Behind right side of rear seat |
| ©7 | A | 2P | ORN | Left-rear wheel sensor connector | Behind left side or rear seat |
| C8 | A | 6P | ORN | ABS inspection connector | Under passenger's seat |
| C9 | В | 22P | ORN | Relay connector: ABS wire harness-to- main wire harness 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 17 18 19 20 21 22 | Behind right kick panel |
| C10 | В | 2P | BLU | Service check connector | Under right side of glove box |
| ©11 | В | 8P | GRY | Daytime running lights control unit connector (Canada model only) | Connected to daytime running lights control unit behind left kick panel |
| C12 | В | 14P | GRY | Relay connector: Main wire harness-to-rear wire harness 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 10 11 12 13 14 | Behind left kick panel |
| 13 | В | 10P Ground | GRY | Service check | Connected to body under left side of dash |

Wiring/Connector Locations

Connector List

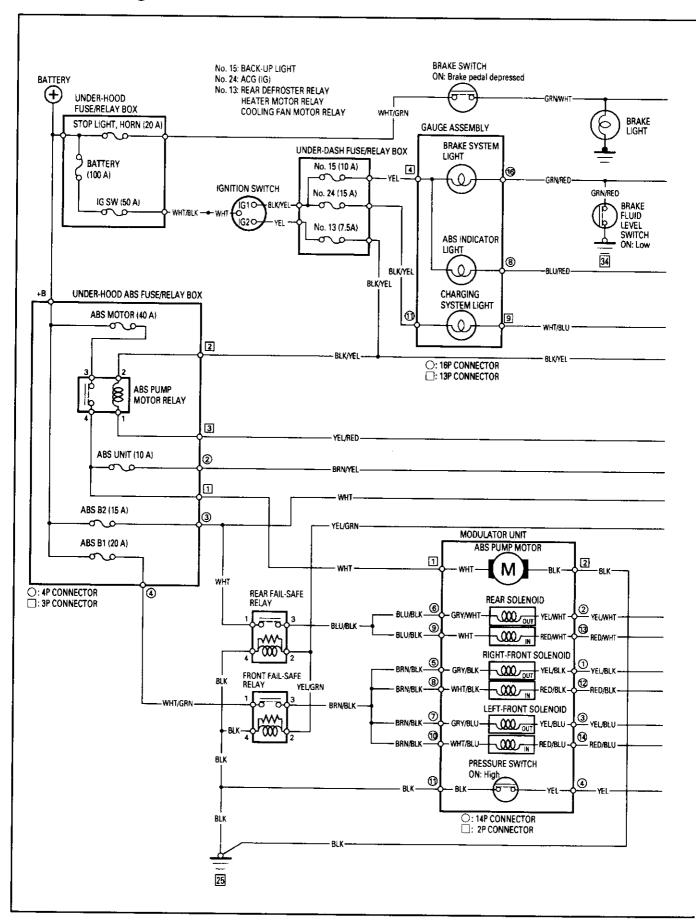
NOTE: The single outline indicates the connector which has female terminals, and its terminal numbers are viewed from the wire side. The double outline indicates the connector which has male terminals, and its terminal numbers are viewed from the terminal side.

| No. | Wire har- ness | Number of ter- minals | Color | Description | Location |
|--------------|----------------------|-----------------------------|-------|---|---|
| C14 | E | 20P | GRY | Relay connector: Main wire harness-to-engine compartment wire harness 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 15 15 15 15 15 15 15 1 | lladar lafe side of deet |
| C15 | E | 20P | BRN | Relay connector: Main wire harness-to-engine compartment wire harness 1 2 3 4 5 6 9 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 | Under left side of dash |
| C16 | В | 4P | BLU | Brake switch connector 1 2 3 4 | Connected to brake switch above brake pedal |
| C17 | D | 16P | GRY | Relay connector: Main wire harness-to-dashboard wire harness | Above under-dash fuse/relay box |
| ©18 | В | 22P | GRN | Under-dash fuse/relay | Connected to rear of under-dash fuse/relay box |
| C19 | В | 2P | ORN | Right-front wheel sensor connector | Right side of engine compartment |
| C20 | В | 2P | GRY | Under-hood fuse/relay box connector | Connected to under- hood fuse/relay box |
| (C21) | В | 14P | ORN | Modulator unit connector | Connected to modulator at right side or engine compartment |
| C22 | В | 2P | ORN | ABS pump motor connector | Connected to ABS pump motor at right side or engine compartment |
| C23 | В | 3P | ORN | Under-hood ABS fuse/relay box connector | Connected to under- hood fuse/relay box at |
| C24) | В | 4P | ORN | Under-hood ABS fuse/relay box connector | right side of engine compartment |
| 25 | B | Ground | | ABS pump motor ground Pressure switch and fail-safe relay ground | Connected to body at front right side of engine compartment |
| C26 | В | 4P | ORN | Front fail-safe relay connector \[\begin{array}{c c} 1 & 2 \ 3 & 4 \end{array} \] | Connected to fail-safe relays under coolant |
| ©27 | В | 4P | ORN | Rear fail-safe relay connector | reservoir |

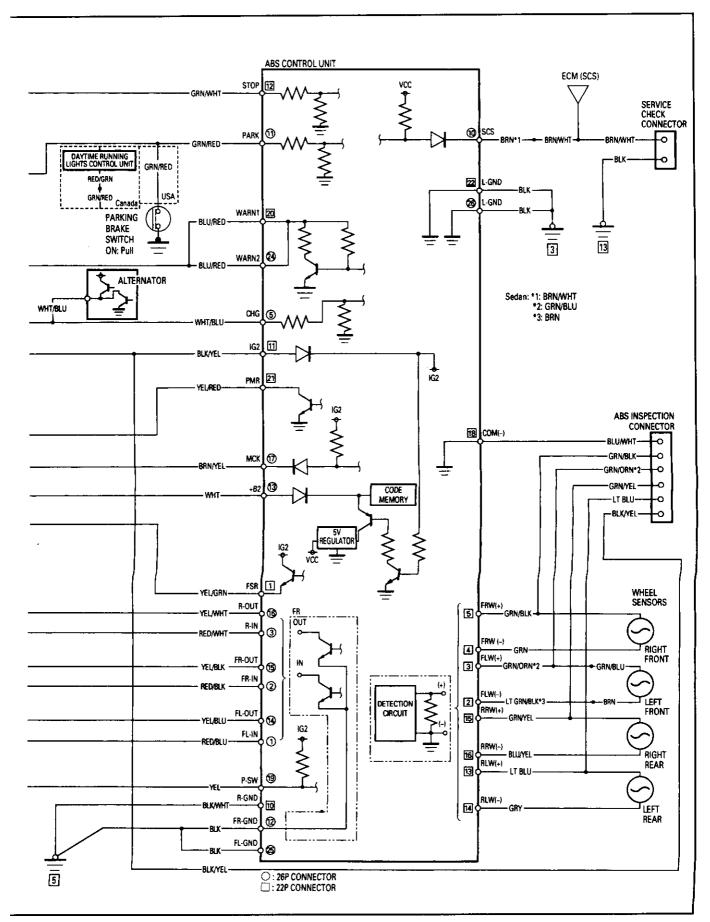


| No. | Wire har- ness | Number of ter- minals | Color | Description | Location |
|--------------|----------------------|-----------------------------|-------|--|--|
| C28 | С | 1P | GRY | Parking brake switch connector | Connected to parking brake switch |
| C29 | D | 13P | GRY | Gauge assembly connector | Connected to rear of |
| C30 | D | 16P | GRY | 1 2 3 4 6 7 8 9 10 11 13 14 15 16 Gauge assembly connector | gauge assembly |
| ©31) | D | 20P | GRN | Under-dash fuse/ relay box connector 1 2 3 4 1 5 6 8 9 11 12 14 15 16 18 19 20 | Connected to front of under-dash fuse/relay box |
| C32) | E | 14P | GRY | Relay connector: Engine compartment wire harness-to-engine wire harness | Left side of engine compartment |
| C33 | E | 2P | ORN | Left-front wheel sensor connector | Left side of engine compartment |
| 34 | E | 6P Ground | GRY | Brake fluid level switch ground | Connected to body at front left side of engine compartment |
| C35 | F | 4P | GRY | Alternator connector | Connected to alternator |

Circuit Diagram







ABS Control Unit Terminal Arrangement

26P CONNECTOR

| Γ | | | | | | | | L | | | | |
|---|--------------|--------------|-------------|-----------|----------|------------|---|---|-----------|-------------|--------------|-------------|
| l | 1 FL-IN | 2 FR-IN | 3 R-IN | | 5 CHG | | | | 10 SCS | 11 PARK | 12 FR-GND | 13 +B2 |
| | 14 FL-OUT | 15 FR-0UT | 16 R-OUT | 17 MCK | | 19 P-SW | _ | | _ | 24 WARN2 | 25 FL-GND | 26 L-GND |

26P CONNECTOR

TERMINAL SIDE OF MALE TERMINALS

NOTE: Standard voltage is 12 V.

| Terminal number | Wire color | Terminal name | Description | Signal |
|--------------------|-----------------|---|---|---|
| 1 | RED/BLU | FL-IN (Front-left inlet solenoid valve) | Drives left-front inlet solenoid valve | ON O OFF 12 |
| 2 | RED/BLK | FR-IN (Front-right in- let solenoid valve) | Drives right-front inlet solenoid valve. | 일 OFF 12 G OFF |
| 3 | RED/WHT | R-IN (Rear inlet sole- noid valve) | Drives rear inlet solenoid valve. | /Ignition O V |
| 5 | WHT/BLU | CHG (Charge) | Detects engine operation. (Activates ABS control unit with engine ON.) | Engine running: 12 V Engine stopped: 0 V |
| 10 | BRN BRN/WHT* | SCS (Service check signal) | Detects service check connector signal (diagnostic trouble code indication). | ON: 0 V OFF: 12 V |
| 11 | GRN/RED | PARK (Parking brake) | Detects parking brake switch signal. (ABS indicator light is turned on when driving with signal ON.) | ON: 0 V OFF: 12 V |
| 12 | BLK | FR-GND (Front-right solenoid valve ground) | Ground for the right-front inlet and outlet solenoid valves. | |
| 13 | WHT | +B2 (+B2 power source) | Power source for ABS control unit control circuit Power source for diagnostic trouble code memory. | 12 V at all time |
| 14 | YEL/BLU | FL-OUT (Front-left outlet solenoid) | Drives left-front outlet solenoid valve. | ON O OFF 12 |
| 15 | YEL/BŁK | FR-OUT (Front-right outlet solenoid valve) | Drives right-front outlet solenoid valve. | OFF 12 |
| 16 | YEL/WHT | R-OUT (Rear outlet solenoid valve) | Drives rear outlet solenoid valve. | (Ignition) O V Switch ON) |
| 17 | BRN/YEL | MCK (Motor check) | Detects pump motor drive signal. (ABS indicator light is turned on if there is open or short circuit.) | Motor ON: 12 V OFF: 0 V (Open): 12 V |
| 19 | YEL | P-SW (Pressure switch) | Detects pressure switch signal. (Switch turns ON at approx. 22,000 kPa, 220 kgf/cm², 3,100 psi and pump motor is stopped.) | ON: 0 V OFF: 12 V |
| 24 | BLU/RED | WARN 2 (Warning lamp) | Drives ABS indicator light. (Shuts off the indicator light ground circuit inside the ABS control unit to turn off the light when the system is normal.) | Light ON: 0 V Light OFF: 12 V |
| 25 | BLK | FL-GND (Front-left solenoid valve ground) | Ground for the left-front inlet and outlet solenoid valves. | |
| 26 | BLK | L-GND (Logic ground) | Ground for the ABS control unit control circuits. | |

^{*}Sedan



22P CONNECTOR

| Γ | $\neg \neg$ | | | | | | | | | | 7 |
|---|-------------|--------|--------|--------|--------|----------|----------|----------|----------|-------|-------|
| ľ | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | |] / | / |] / | 10 | 11 |
| l | FSR | FLW(-) | FLW(+) | FRW(-) | FRW(+) | \angle | \angle | \angle | \angle | R-GND | IG2 |
| l | 12 | 13 | 14 | 15 | 16 | | 18 | | 20 | 21 | 22 |
| ľ | STOP | RLW(+) | RLW(-) | RRW(+) | RRW(-) | | COM(-) | | WARN1 | PMR | L-GND |
| ľ | | | | | | | | | | | |

22P CONNECTOR

TERMINAL SIDE OF MALE TERMINALS

NOTE: Standard voltage is 12 V.

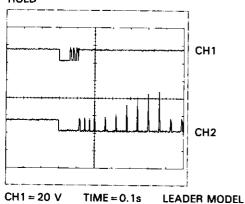
| erminal number | Wire color | Terminal name | Description | | Signal |
|-------------------|------------------------|--|---|---------------------------|--|
| 1 | YEL/GRN | FSR (Fail-safe relay) | Drives fail-safe relay. (Fail-safe relay is turned OFF to shut off the power source to the solenoid when problem occurs.) | ON: 12 V OFF: 0 V | |
| 2 | LT GRN/ BLK BRN* | FLW (-) (Front-left wheel sensor, negative) | Detects left-front wheel speed. (Ground level) | No. 2-3 | When the wheel is turned at 1 turn/second: 70 mV or above on |
| 3 | GRN/ORN GRN/BLU* | FLW (+) (Front-left wheel sensor, positive) | Detects left-front wheel speed. | terminals | digital tester (AC range) |
| 4 | GRN | FRW (-) (Front-right wheel sensor, negative) | Detects right-front wheel speed. (Ground level) | No. 2-3 | (Reference) 200 mVP-P or |
| 5 | GRN/BLK | FRW (+) (Front-right wheel sensor, positive) | Detects right-front wheel speed. | terminals | above on oscilloscope |
| 10 | BLK/WHT | R-GND (Rear solenoid valve ground) | Ground for rear inlet and outlet solenoid valves. | | |
| 11 | BLK/YEL | IG2 (IG2 power source) | Detects ignition switch IG2 signal. (When IG2 is input, +B2 power source is switched to the power source for the ABS control unit (Vcc). Also IG2 monitors P-SW and MCK lines, and drives fail-safe relay.) | ON: 12 V OFF: 0 V | |
| 12 | GRN/WHT | STOP (Foot brake) | Detects brake switch signal. (Prevents unnecessary ABS operation when the brake pedal is not depressed) | ON: 12 V OFF: 0 V | |
| 13 | LT BLU | RLW (+) (Rear-left wheel sensor, positive) | Detects left-rear wheel speed. (Ground level) | No. 13-14 | When the wheel is turned at 1 turn/second: |
| 14 | GRY | RLW (-) (Rear-left wheel sensor,negative) | Detects left-rear wheel speed. (Ground level) | terminals | 70 mV or above on digital tester (AC range) |
| 15 | GRN/YEL | RRW (+) (Rear-right wheel sensor, positive) | Detects right-rear wheel speed. | No. 15-16 | (Reference) 200 mVP-P or |
| 16 | BLU/YEL | RRW (-) (Rear-right wheel sensor, negative) | Detects right-rear wheel speed. (Ground level) | terminals | above on oscilloscope |
| 18 | BLU/WHT | COM (-) (Common negative) | Ground for ALB checker when it is connected. | | |
| 20 | BLU/RED | WARN 1 (Warning lamp) | Drives ABS indicator light. (Shuts off the indicator light ground circuit inside the ABS control unit to turn off the light when the system is normal.) | Light ON: (Light OFF: | |
| 21 | YEL/RED | PMR (Pump motor relay) | Drives pump motor relay. (Pump motor relay is turned ON to drive the pump motor when P-SW OFF signal is detected.) | ON: 0 V OFF: 12 V | |
| 22 | BLK/WHT | L-GND (Logic ground) | Ground for the ABS control unit control circuits. | | |

*Sedan

Oscilloscope Waveforms

Solenoid Waveform (Reference)

TRG 0.0div HOLD



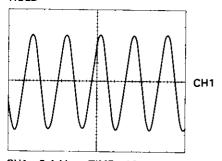
Waveform monitored at the ABS control unit conector by running mode 5 (right-front) with the ALB checker.

- · CH1: Right-front outlet solenoid valve
- · CH2: Right-front inlet solenoid valve
- Working voltage: Battery voltage
- Operation pattern changes according to the conditions (actual driving condition, checker, etc.) and measurement point (rear solenoid).

Wheel Sensor Waveform (Reference)

TRG 0.0div.

CH2 = 20 V



CH1 = 0.1 V

TIME = 10ms

LEADER MODEL 3040D

3040D

Waveform monitored at the ABS control unit (RRW+) connector by turning the right-rear tire approximately 1 turn/second by hand.

- Frequency and amplitude change according to the wheel speed.
- Measurement must be 200 mVP-P or above.

Troubleshooting Precautions



ABS Indicator Light:

The ABS indicator light comes on for three seconds and then goes off when the control unit detects no problem during the initial diagnosis right after the engine starts.

However, the ABS indicator light can stay on for up to 40 seconds when the control unit starts to check for pump overrun, etc. during the initial diagnosis.

The ABS indicator light comes on, and the ABS control unit memorizes the diagnostic trouble code (DTC) under certain conditions.

- The parking brake is applied for more than 30 seconds while the vehicle is being driven. (DTC 2-1)
- The vehicle loses traction, and the front wheels spin for more than 1 minute when starting from a stuck condition on a muddy, snowly, or sandy road. (DTC 4-8).
- The tires adhesion is lost due to excessive cornering speed. (DTC 5, 5-4, 5-8).
- The vehicle is driven on an extremely rough road. (DTC 8-1)
- The vehicle is interfered by strong radio waves (noise), e.g. illegal radio, etc. (DTC 8-2)

NOTE: If there is any trouble in the system, the ABS indicator light turns on during driving.

Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC):

- When the control unit detects a problem and the ABS indicator light comes on, the control unit memorizes the DTC.
- The control unit has three memory registers. When a problem occurs, the control unit stores the DTC in the first memory register. If another problem occurs, or the same problem occurs again, the control unit moves the first DTC to the next memory register, and stores the second DTC in the first register. If there's a third problem occurrence, the two existing DTCs are moved up one register, and the third DTC is stored in the first register. If problems continue to occur, the oldest problem is moved out of the last register and lost, and the most recent problem is stored in the first register. When the same problem occurs three times, the same DTC is stored in all memory registers.
- The most recent DTC is indicated first, and the oldest DTC is indicated last.
- The DTCs are erased from the control unit when the ABS control unit +B2 power supply or connector is disconnected.
- The control unit's memory can be erased by disconnecting the ABS B2 fuse for more than three seconds.

Self-diagnosis:

- There are three self-diagnosises described below.
 - ① Initial diagnosis: Performed right after the engine starts until the ABS indicator light goes off.
 - 2 Regular diagnosis: Continuously performed (under some conditions) after the ABS indicator light goes off until the engine stops.
- 3 Individual part/system diagnosis: Diagnosis about a specific part/system under its operating conditions.
- The CPU (central processing unit) controls the following when it detects a problem during self-diagnosis:
 - 1 Turns the ABS indicator light ON.
 - 2 Turns the front and rear fail-safe relays off.
 - ③ Stops the ABS control.
 - 4 Stops the ABS pump. (The pump may work under some conditions.)

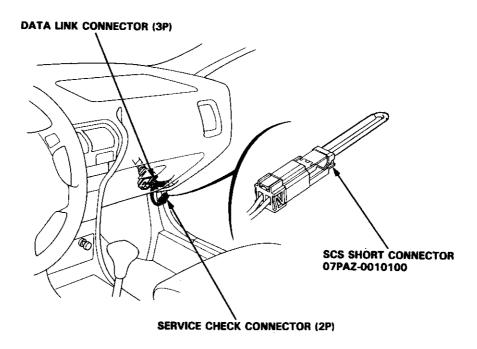
Kickback and Pump Operation:

- When the engine is started, the ABS control unit begins the initial diagnosis and operates the solenoid valve one time.
 The kickback is felt when the brake pedal is depressed.
- When the ABS control unit detects the pressure switch OFF signal during the initial diagnosis, it operates the pump motor, and performs the pump motor over-run diagnosis and pump motor diagnosis. Therefore, there are two cases where the pump motor operates or does not operate after the engine is started.
- Normally, after the initial diagnosis, the pump motor operates based on the pressure switch signal, regardless of the vehicle speed.

- When two or three DTCs are stored in the control unit, perform troubleshooting for the DTC that appears first.
- When a customer's reported problem cannot be verified on the car, ask the customer about the conditions when the ABS indicator light came ON, and test drive the car under those conditions, if possible. When the ABS indicator light does not come ON during the test, check for loose terminals and check by shaking the harnesses and connectors while following the flowchart.
- The connector terminal numbers are viewed from the wire side for the female terminals, and from the terminal side for the male terminals.

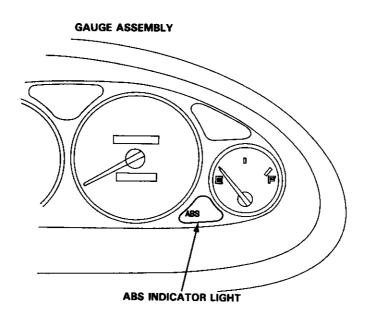
Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) Indication

1. Connect the SCS short connector to the service check connector under the right side of the glove box.



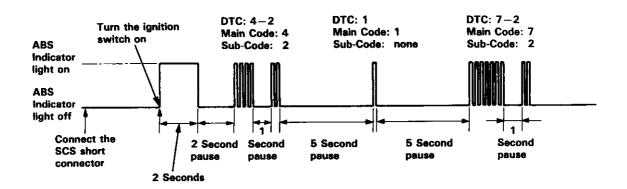
- 2. Turn the ignition switch ON, but do not start the engine.
- 3. Record the blinking frequency of the ABS indicator light. The blinking frequency indicates the diagnostic trouble code (DTC).

NOTE: Check the DTC carefully and record it. The memory of the DTC is erased if the connector is disconnected from the ABS control unit.





DTC Indication Pattern:



- Turn the ignition switch ON. The ABS indicator light comes on for two seconds to check the bulb.
- The ABS control unit can memorize three DTCs (one, two or three problems).
- If you miscount the blinking frequency or if you recheck the blinking frequency, turn the ignition switch OFF then turn it ON to cycle the ABS indicator light again.
- 4. Remove the SCS short connector.

NOTE: The Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) will stay on after the engine is started if the SCS short connector is connected.

5. Remove the ABS B2 (15 A) fuse in the under-hood ABS fuse/relay box for at least three seconds to erase the ABS control unit's memory.

Diagnostic Troubleshooting Code (DTC)

- Symptom-to-System Chart —

| TRO | NOSTIC UBLE ODE | | | AGNOS PERIOD |) | | |
|--------------|-----------------------|--|---------|-----------------|----------------------|---------------------|--|
| MAIN CODE | SUB- CODE | DIAGNOSIS/ SYMPTOM | INITIAL | INDIVIDUAL | REGULAR DIAGNOSIS | PROBLEM LOCATION | PROBABLE CAUSE |
| | | ABS indicator light does not come on when ignition switch is turned ON | | | | | Blown BACK-UP LIGHT (10 A fuse) Open circuit between the BACK-UP LIGHT (10 A) fuse and ABS indicator light Blown ABS indicator light bulb Open circuit between the ABS indicator light and ABS control unit Open circuit between the ABS control unit and body ground Poor body ground Faulty ABS control unit |
| | | ABS indicator light does not go off after engine is started | | | | | Blown REAR DEFROSTER RELAY/HEATER MOTOR RELAY/COOLING FAN MOTOR RELAY (7.5 A) fuse Open circuit between the under-dash fuse/relay box and ABS control unit. Open circuit between the battery and under-hood ABS fuse/relay box Blown ABS B2 (15 A) fuse Open circuit inside the under-hood ABS fuse/relay box Open circuit between the under-hood ABS fuse/relay box and ABS control unit Faulty alternator Open circuit between the alternator and ABS control unit Short to body ground in the WARN circuit between the ABS indicator light and ABS control unit Faulty ABS control unit |
| | | ABS pump motor over-run | 0 | 0 | | | Pressure switch stuck OFF Open circuit between the pressure switch and ABS control unit Open circuit in the P-SW circuit between the pressure switch and body ground, or a poor ground Drop in pump discharge volume Leaking modulator unit outlet valve Leaking relief valve ABS brake fluid leakage Faulty ABS control unit |
| Φ | ② | Pump motor | 0 | | 0 | | Open circuit or short to body ground between the REAR DEFROSTER RELAY/HEATER MOTOR RELAY/COOLING FAN MOTOR RELAY (7.5 A) fuse and under-hood ABS fuse/relay box Open circuit or short to body ground in the PMR circuit inside the under hood ABS fuse/relay box Faulty pump motor relay Open circuit or short to body ground in the PMR circuit between the under-hood fuse/relay box and ABS control unit Open circuit between the battery and under-hood ABS fuse/relay box Blown ABS MOTOR (40 A) fuse Blown ABS UNIT (10 A) fuse Open circuit or short to body ground in the motor drive circuit and MCK circuit inside the under-hood ABS fuse/relay box Open circuit or short to body ground in the MCK circuit between the under-hood ABS fuse/relay box and ABS control unit Open circuit or short to body ground between the under-hood ABS fuse/relay box and ABS control unit Open circuit or short to body ground between the under-hood ABS fuse/relay box and pump motor Faulty pump motor Open circuit between the pump motor and body ground or poor ground Faulty ABS control unit |
| | 3 | High pressure leakage | | | 0 | | Leaking outlet valve Leaking relief valve Poor contact in pressure switch circuit |
| | ① | Pressure switch | 0 | | | | Short to body ground between the ABS control unit and pressure switch Pressure switch stuck ON Faulty ABS control unit |
| | (1) | High pressure system | 0 | | | | Accumulator gas leakage Changed relief valve set pressure Rear outlet solenoid valve late to close Changed pressure switch set pressure |
| ② | 0 | Parking brake | | | 0 | | Driving with the parking brake applied Low fluid level in the master cylinder reservoir Blown BACK-UP LIGHT (10 A) fuse Open circuit between the BACK-UP LIGHT (10 A) fuse and brake system light Blown brake system light bulb Open circuit or short to body ground between the brake system light an ABS control unit Parking brake switch stuck ON Short to body ground between the brake system light and parking brake switch Brake fluid level switch stuck ON Short to body ground between the brake system light and brake fluid level switch Faulty ABS control unit |



| PROBABLE CAUSE WHEN SYMPTOM DOES NOT REAPPEAR | DESCRIPTION OF DIAGNOSIS | REFER TO PAGE |
|--|--|---------------------|
| | | 19-62 |
| | | 19-65 |
| | The ABS indicator light is turned ON when the pump motor relay ON signal is detected for more than 40 seconds while the ABS is not functioning. | 19-71 |
| Intermittent interruption in the MCK circuit Intermittent interruption in the pump motor relay drive circuit Intermittent interruption in the pump motor drive circuit | The ABS indicator light is turned on when battery voltage is detected at the MCK terminal while the pump motor relay OFF signal is detected. The ABS indicator light is turned on when the 0 V is detected at the MCK terminal while the pump motor relay ON signal is detected. | 19-74 |
| Intermittent interruption in the pressure switch Intermittent interruption in the pressure switch circuit | The ABS indicator light is turned on when the frequent ON/OFF cycle of the pressure switch signal after the engine is started, until it is stopped. The count is erased when the ABS functions. The ABS indicator light is turned on when the pressure switch ON signal is always | 19-81 |
| The ABS indicator light may not come on in normal climate when it comes on in very cold climate. | detected at every initial diagnosis. The count is erased when the ABS control unit detects the pressure switch OFF signal. This diagnosis is performed when the pressure switch is OFF at the initial diagnosis. The pump motor is operated to turn the pressure switch ON, then the solenoid valve is momentarily activated. The ABS indicator light is turned on if the pressure switch | 19-83 |
| Driving with the parking brake applied – (No problem) | signal changes from ON to OFF. • The ABS indicator light is turned on when the parking brake ON signal is detected for more than 30 seconds while driving. | 19-87 |
| | | (cont'd |

Diagnostic Troubleshooting Code (DTC)

- Symptom-to-System Chart (cont'd) ———

| TRO | NOSTIC UBLE ODE | | | AGNOS PERIO | | | | | |
|--------------|-----------------------|------------------------------|-----------------------|--|--|---------------------|--|--|--|
| MAIN CODE | SUB- CODE | DIAGNOSIS/ SYMPTOM | INITIAL | DIAGNOSIS INDIVIDUAL DIAGNOSIS REGULAR DIAGNOSIS | | PROBLEM LOCATION | | | |
| | 0 | | | | | Right- front | Chipped pulser gear Improperly installed wheel sensor | | |
| | 2 | | | | _ | Left- front | | | |
| 3 | (| Pulser | | | 0 | Right- rear | | | |
| | (8) | | | | | Left- rear | | | |
| | 0 | Different dia- meter tire | | | 0 | | Different diameter tire installed | | |
| | 0 | | | | | Right- front | Open circuit, internal short or short to body ground in the wheel sensor Open circuit or short to body ground in the positive (+) wire be- | | |
| ስ | 2 | Wheel sensor | Left- • Ope front twe | tween the wheel sensor and ABS control unit Open circuit or short to body ground in the negative (~) wire between the wheel sensor and ABS control unit | | | | | |
| (4) | (1) | | | 0 | 0 | Right- rear | Positive (+) wire shorted to the negative (-) wire between the wheel sensor and ABS control unit Loose connector or poor contact of terminals Improper wheel sensor air gap | | |
| | (8) | | | | | Left- rear | Faulty ABS control unit Missing pulser Modulator does not decrease pressure properly | | |
| | _ | | Rear wheel lock | Right/ Left | Wheel spin during cornering Open circuit, internal short or short to body ground in the wheel sensor system | | | | |
| (3) | () | Rear wheel lock | | Right | Rear brake drag Modulator does not decrease pressure properly Faulty ABS control unit | | | | |
| | (8) | | | | | Left | | | |
| | | į | | | | Front/ rear | Short to power in the relay drive circuit between the fail-safe relay and ABS control unit Faulty relay drive transistor (ON) in the ABS control unit | | |
| © | Ф | Fail-safe relay | 0 | | | Front | Fail-safe relay stuck ON Short to power in the solenoid drive circuits between the fail-safe relay and ABS control unit | | |
| | (1) | | | | | Rear | | | |
| | 0 | | | | | Right- front | Fail-safe relay stuck OFF Open circuit in the solenoid drive circuit between the under-hood ABS fuse/relay box and ABS control unit Short to body ground in the solenoid drive circuit between the solenoid and ABS control unit | | |
| (7) | ② | Solenoid | 0 | | 0 | Left- front | Faulty solenoid drive transistor (ON) in the ABS control unit Short to power in the solenoid drive circuit between the solenoid and ABS control unit Faulty solenoid drive transistor (OFF) in the ABS control unit | | |
| | ① | | | | | Rear | Short to power in the drive circuit inside the solenoid Short to the outlet circuit in the inlet circuit between the solenoid and ABS control unit | | |
| | <u></u> | ABS function | | | 0 | | Wheel sensor signal disappears at speeds of 6 mph (10 km/h) or le Faulty ABS control unit | | |
| (3) | ② | CPU comparison | 0 | | 0 | | Faulty ABS control unit | | |
| | (1) | IC [Integrated] | 0 | | 0 | | Faulty ABS control unit | | |



| PROBABLE CAUSE WHEN SYMPTOM DOES NOT REAPPEAR | DESCRIPTION OF DIAGNOSIS | REFER TO PAGE |
|---|---|------------------|
| Intermittent interruption in the wheel sensor | The ABS indicator light is turned on when the wheel sensor signal is periodically missing during driving. | _ |
| | | 19-92 |
| (•No problem) | The ABS indicator light may be turned on while driving when one, two or three different diameter tires are installed. This diagnosis is not performed when the parking brake switch is ON. | 19-92 |
| Intermittent interruption in the wheel sensor Wheel spin of both front wheels (only for DTC 4-4 and 4-8)—(No problem) | The ABS indicator light is turned on when the wheel sensor signal is missing at speeds of 6 mph (10 km/h) or more. This diagnosis is not performed when the parking brake switch is ON. | 19-93 |
| To a a did a dy the problem | | 19-98 |
| | | 19-103 |
| | | 19-108 |
| Intermittent interruption in the wheel sensor Wheel spin by operating the parking brake while the parking brake switch is stuck OFF Car spun-out—(No problem) | The ABS indicator light is turned on when either or both rear wheels lock and the wheel sensor signal is missing during driving. This diagnosis is not performed when the parking brake switch is ON. | 19-113 |
| | The ABS indicator light is turned on when battery voltage is detected at the solenoid terminal before the fail-safe relays are turned on at the initial diagnosis. | 19-116 |
| | | 19-119 |
| | | 19-122 |
| Intermittent interruption in the sole- noid valve drive circuit Intermittent interruption in the sole- noid valve ground circuit | Each solenoid valve is momentarily activated at the initial diagnosis and when the car starts off. The ABS indicator light is turned on when battery voltage is detected at the solenoid terminal. The ABS indicator light is turned on when OV is detected at the solenoid terminal. | 19-125 |
| Intermittent interruption in the fail- safe relay circuit | nal while the solenoid OFF signal is detected at the regular diagnosis. | 19-130 |
| | | 19-139 |
| Intermittent interruption in the wheel sensor Rough road driving—(No problem) | The ABS indicator light is turned on when the ABS functions continuously. | 19-147 |
| (*No problem) | The ABS indicator light is turned on when there is a difference between the CPU data. | 19-148 |
| (*No problem) | The ABS indicator light is turned on when there is a abnormality in the IC at the regular diagnosis. | 19-148 |

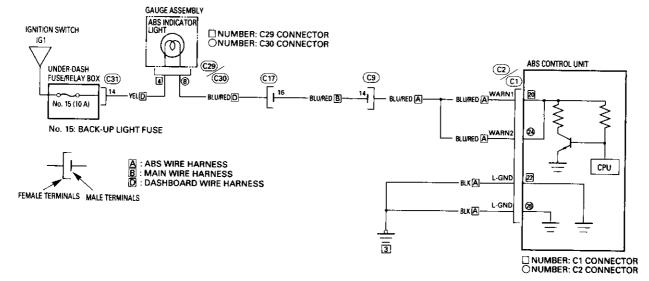
ABS Indicator Light Does Not Come On

The ABS indicator light does not come on when the ignition switch is turned ON.

When the ignition switch is turned ON, the ABS indicator light drive transistor in the ABS control unit is activated by self-bias and turns the ABS indicator light on.

Possible causes for an ABS indicator light that does not come on:

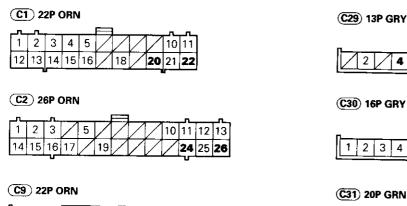
- Blown BACK-UP LIGHT (10A) fuse
- Open circuit between the BACK-UP LIGHT (10A) fuse and ABS indicator light.
- Blown ABS indicator light bulb
- Open circuit between the ABS indicator light and ABS control unit
- Open circuit between the ABS control unit and body ground
- Poor body ground
- Faulty ABS control unit

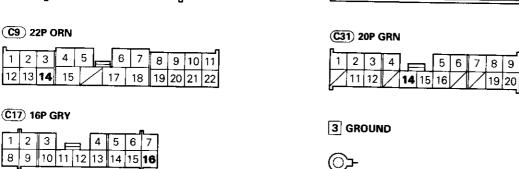


11 12 13

13 14 15 16

8 9 10 11

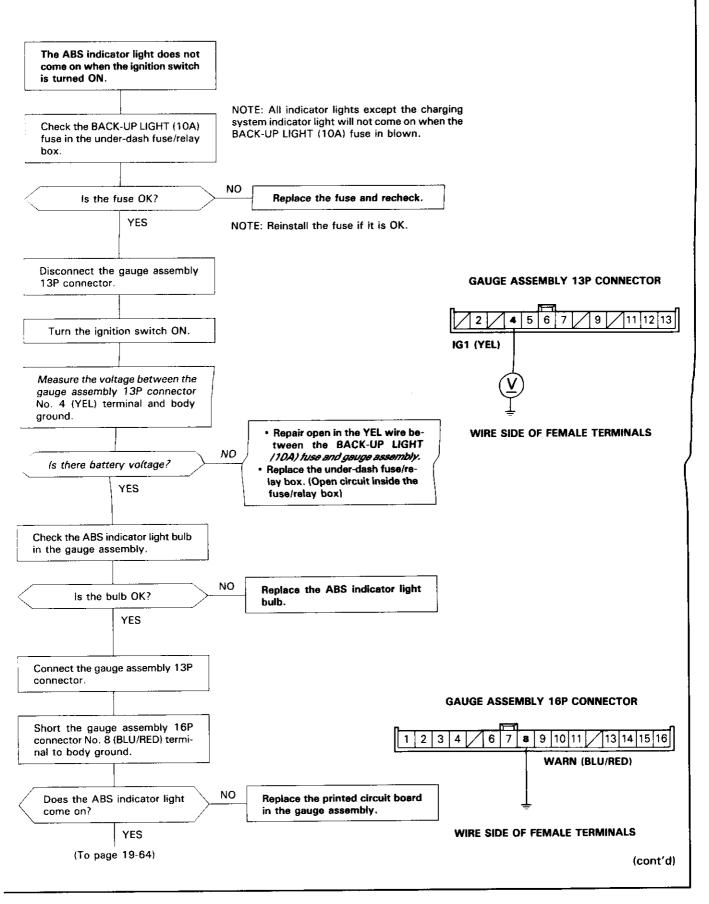


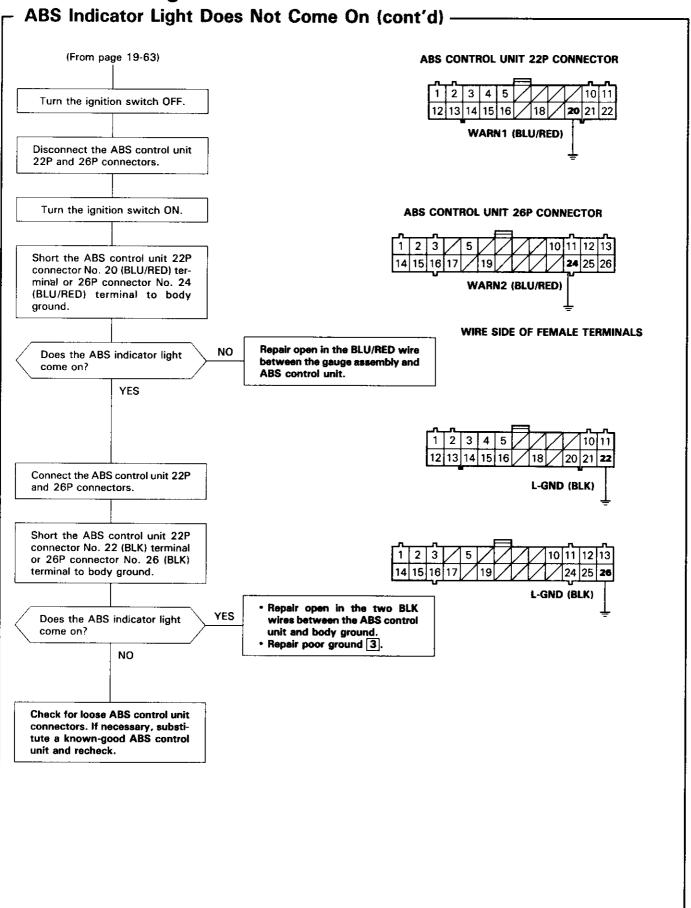


WIRE SIDE OF FEMALE TERMINALS

3









ABS Indicator Light Does Not Go Off -

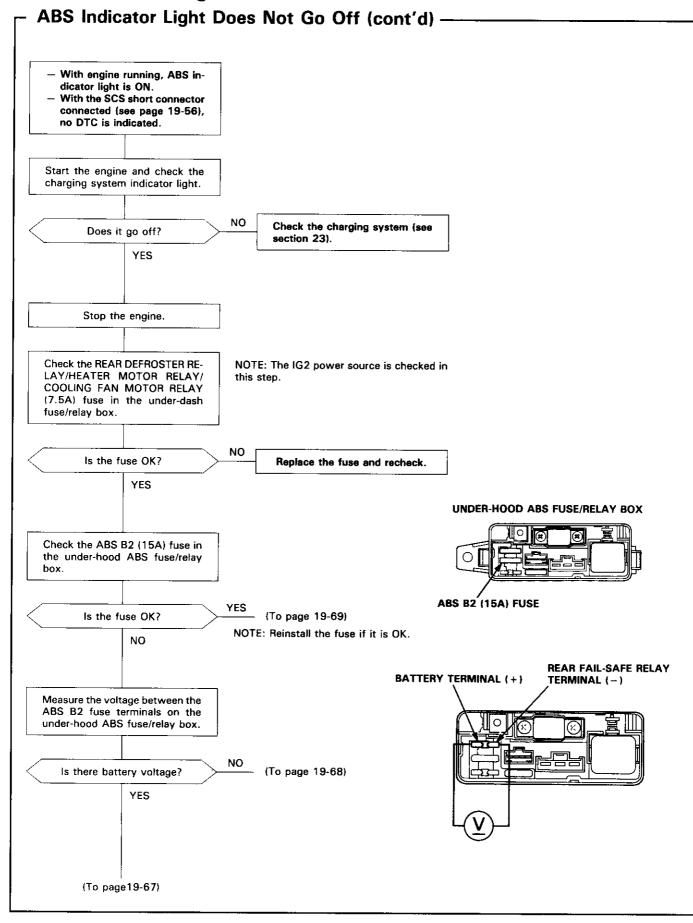
The ABS indicator light does not go off after the engine is started

When no problem is found during the initial diagnosis, the ABS control unit turns the ABS indicator light drive transistor off to turn the ABS indicator light off.

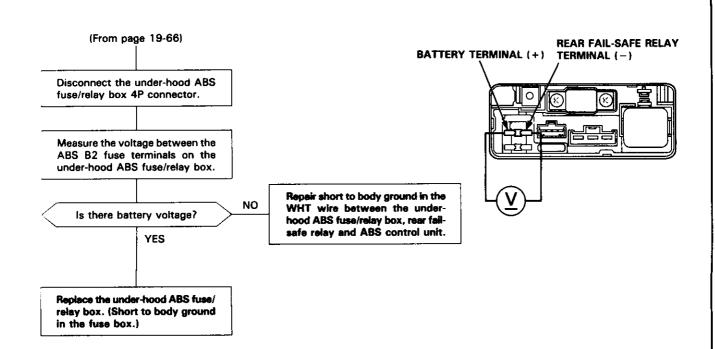
Possible causes for an ABS indicator light that does not go off, but no Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) is indicated:

- Blown REAR DEFROSTER RELAY/HEATER MOTOR RELAY/COOLING FAN MOTOR RELAY (7.5A) fuse
- Open circuit between the under-dash fuse/relay box and ABS control unit
- Open circuit between the battery and under-hood ABS fuse/relay box
- Blown ABS B2 (15A) fuse
- Open circuit inside the under-hood ABS fuse/relay box
- Open circuit between the under-hood ABS fuse/relay box and ABS control unit
- Faulty alternator
- Open circuit between the alternator and ABS control unit
- Short to body ground in the WARN circuit between the ABS indicator light and ABS control unit
- Faulty ABS control unit

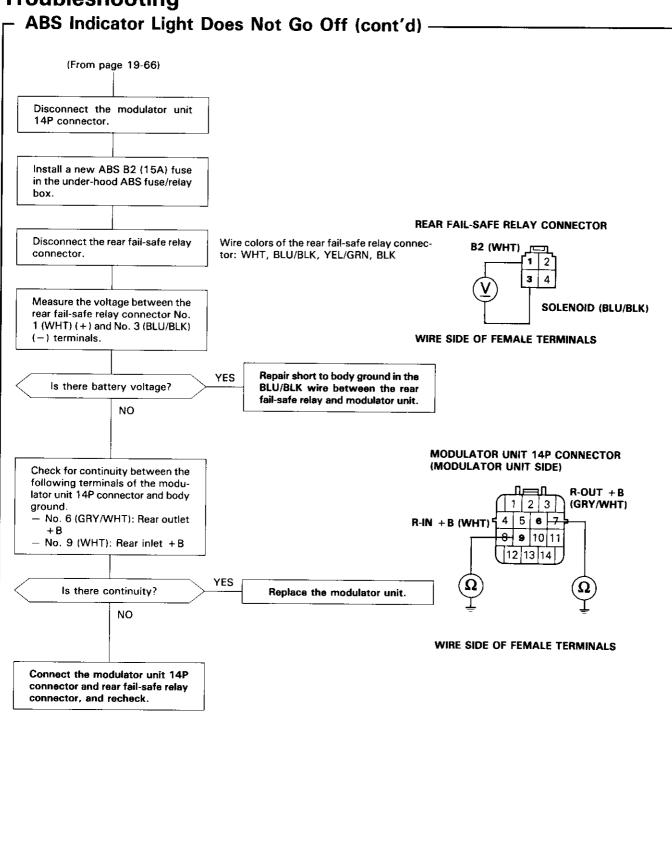
No. 13: REAR DEFROSTER RELAY/HEATER MOTOR RELAY/COOLING FAN MOTOR RELAY FUSE No. 15: BACK-UP LIGHT FUSE No. 24: ACG (IG) FUSE UNDER-DASH FUSE/RELAY BOX IGNITION SWITCH **(3**) No. 13 (7.5 A) No. 24 (15 A) ARS B2 (35 A) FIRE No. 15 (19 A UNDER-HOOD AE FUSE/RELAY BOX NUMBER: C29 CONNECTOR **(3**) ABS WIRE HARNESS : DASHBOARD WIRE HARNESS : ENGINE COMPARTMENT WIRE HARNESS **ENGINE WIRE HARNESS** FEMALE TERMINALS MALE TERMINALS (C31) 20P GRN **C18**) 22P GRN (C1) 22P ORN 2 3 3 4 5 2 13 14 15 12 13 14 15 16 16 17 (C2) 26P ORN (C24) 4P ORN (C32) 14P GRY (C35) 4P GRY 2 3 14 15 16 17 2 3 5 | 6 (C9) 22P ORN C29 13P GRY 8 9 | 10 | 11 8 9 10 11 2 6 12 13 14 15 18 (C14) 20P GRY (C30) 16P GRY 5 2 3 8 9 10 9 10 11 13 14 15 16 2 3 15 16 (cont'd) WIRE SIDE OF FEMALE TERMINALS



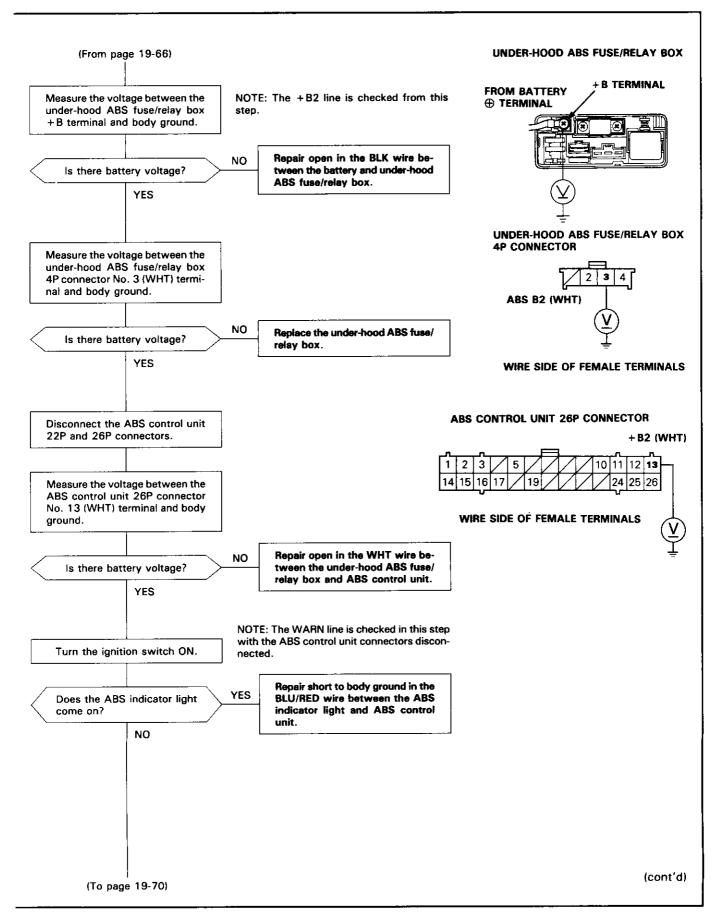


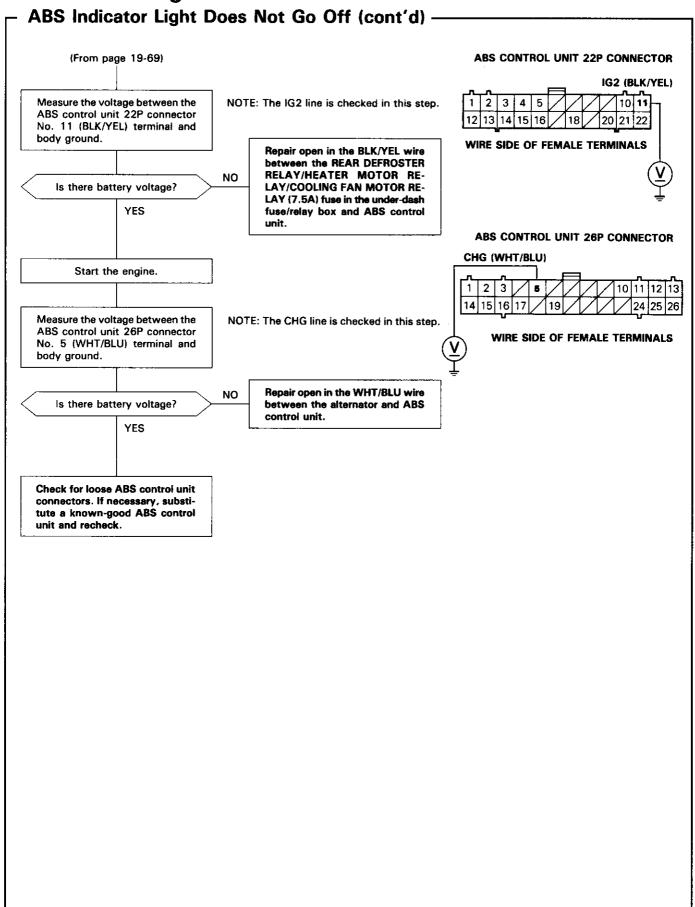


(cont'd)











ABS Pump Motor Over-run

Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) 1: ABS Pump Motor Over-run

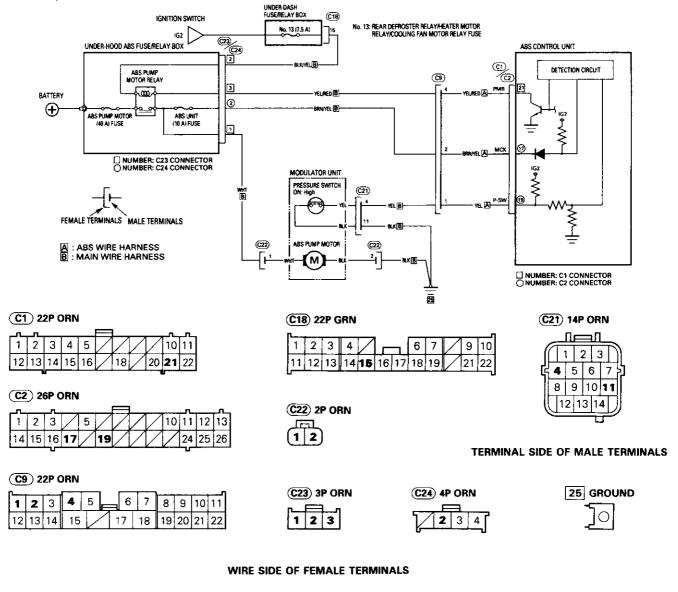
NOTE: The ABS indicator light comes on twice; once for two seconds during the bulb check, then again, indicating DTC 1.

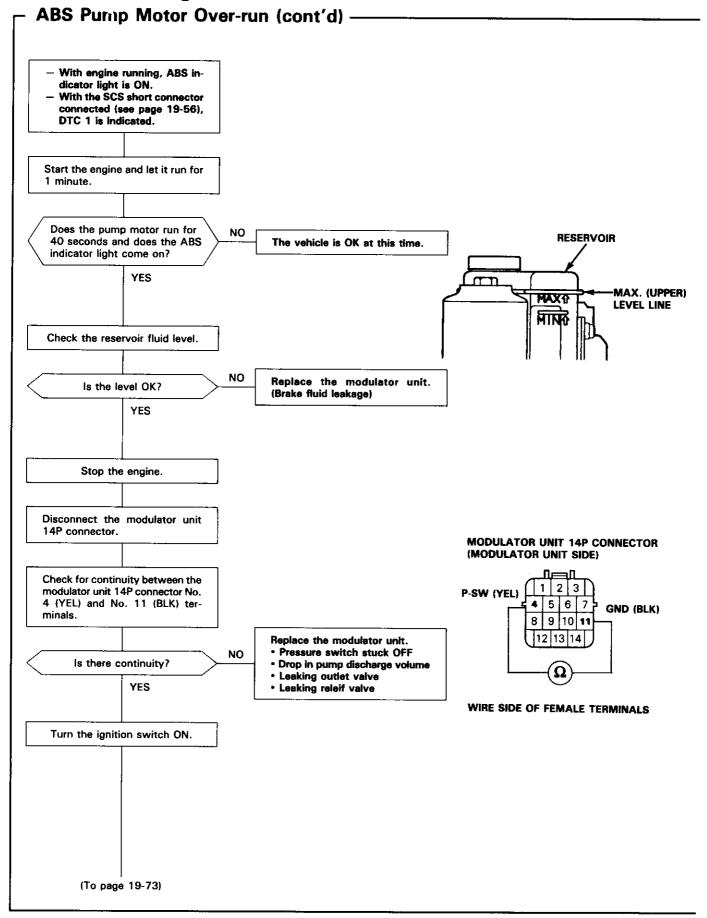
The ABS control unit monitors the pump motor relay drive signal during the initial diagnosis and individual diagnosis when the ABS is not functioning.

When the ABS control unit detects the drive signal for 40 seconds, it turns the pump motor relay off and keeps the ABS indicator light on. When the ABS control unit detects the drive signal for 40 seconds after the ABS indicator light went off, the control unit turns the ABS indicator light on again.

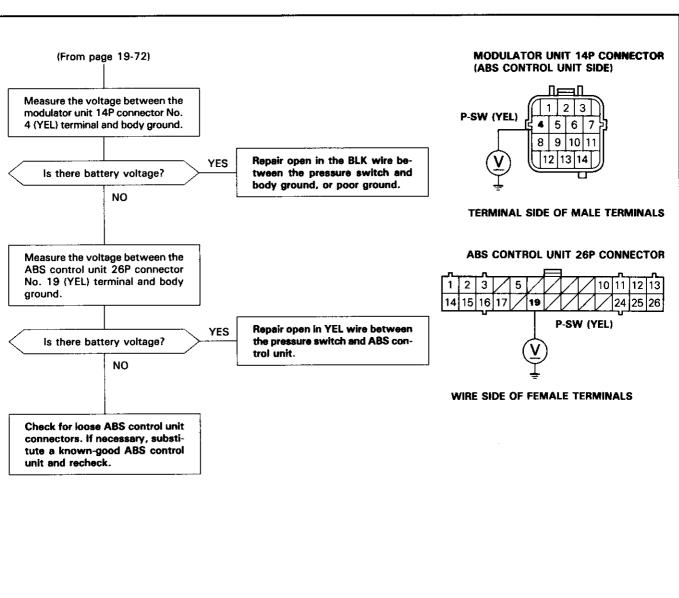
Possible causes:

- · Pressure switch stuck OFF
- Open circuit between the pressure switch and ABS control unit
- Open circuit in the P-SW circuit between the pressure switch and body ground, or a poor ground
- Drop in pump discharge volume
- Leaking outlet valve
- Leaking relief valve
- ABS brake fluid leakage
- · Faulty ABS control unit









ABS Pump Motor

Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) 1-2: ABS Pump Motor Diagnosis

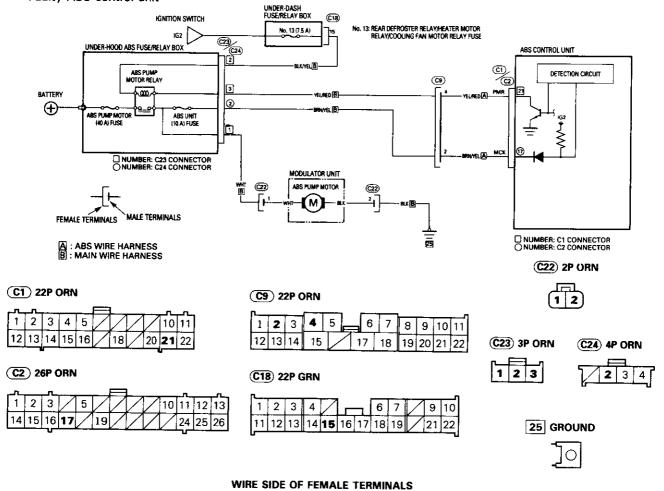
The ABS control unit checks the conditions at the pump motor relay drive (PMR) terminal and motor check (MCK) terminal during the initial diagnosis and regular diagnosis.

When the ABS control unit detects the following conditions during the diagnosis, it keeps the ABS indicator light on. When the following conditions are detected after the ABS indicator light goes off, the ABS control unit turns the ABS indicator light on again.

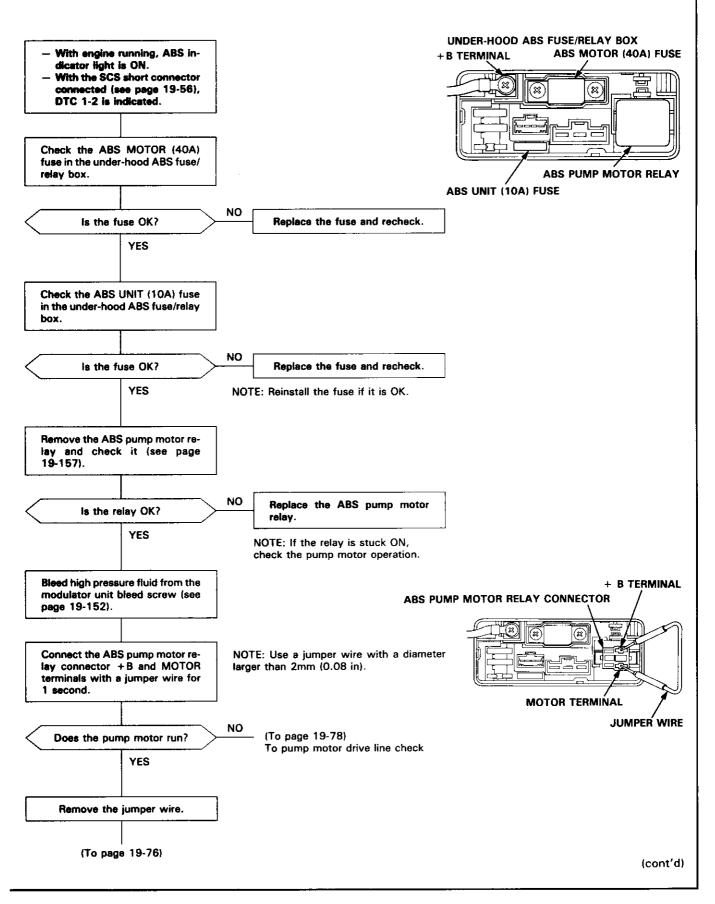
- Battery voltage at the MCK terminal with an OFF signal at the PMR terminal.
- 0 V at the MCK terminal with an ON signal at the PMR terminal.

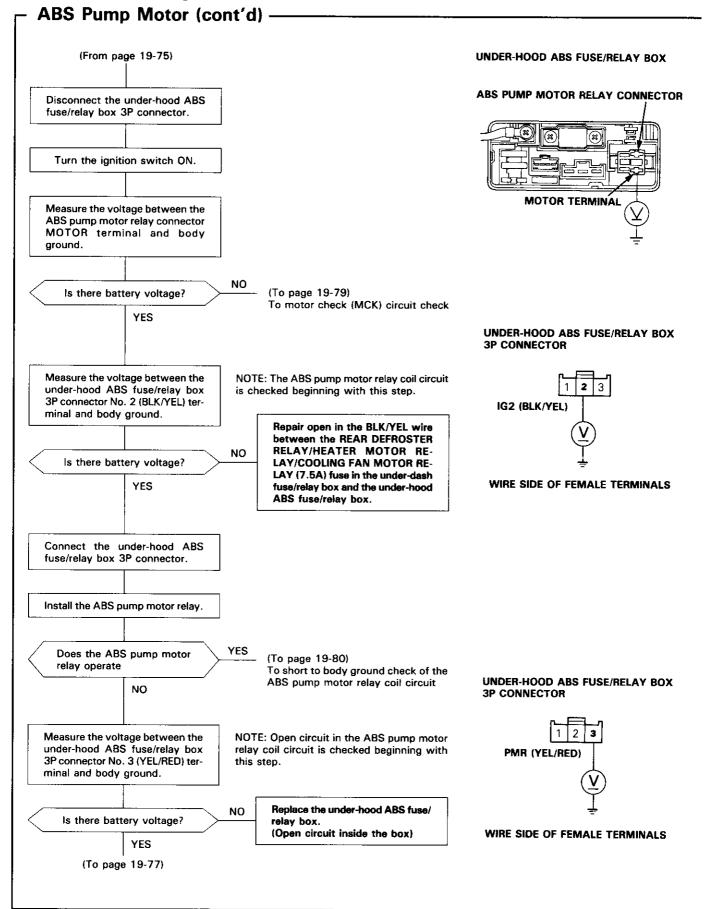
Possible causes:

- Open circuit or short to body ground between the REAR DEFROSTER RELAY/HEATER MOTOR RELAY/COOLING FAN MOTOR RELAY (7.5A) fuse and under-hood ABS fuse/relay box
- Open circuit or short to body ground in the PMR circuit inside the under-hood ABS fuse/relay box.
- Faulty pump motor relay
- Open circuit or short to body ground in the PMR circuit between the under-hood ABS fuse/relay box and ABS control unit.
- Open circuit between the battery and under-hood ABS fuse/relay box
- Blown ABS MOTOR (40A) fuse
- Blown ABS UNIT (10A) fuse
- Open circuit or short to body ground in the motor drive circuit and MCK circuit inside the under-hood ABS fuse/relay box.
- Open circuit or short to body ground in the MCK circuit between the under-hood ABS fuse/relay box and ABS control unit
- Open circuit or short to body ground between the under-hood ABS fuse/relay box and pump motor
- Faulty pump motor
- Open circuit between the pump motor and body ground or poor ground
- Faulty ABS control unit

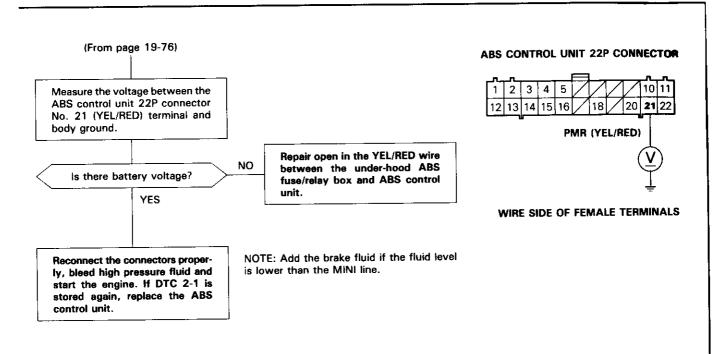




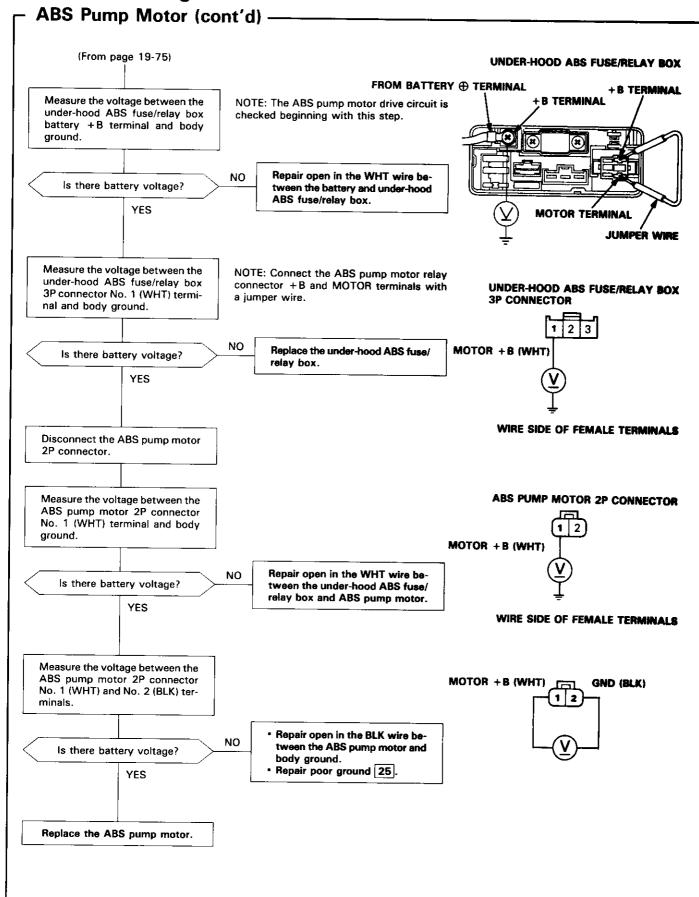




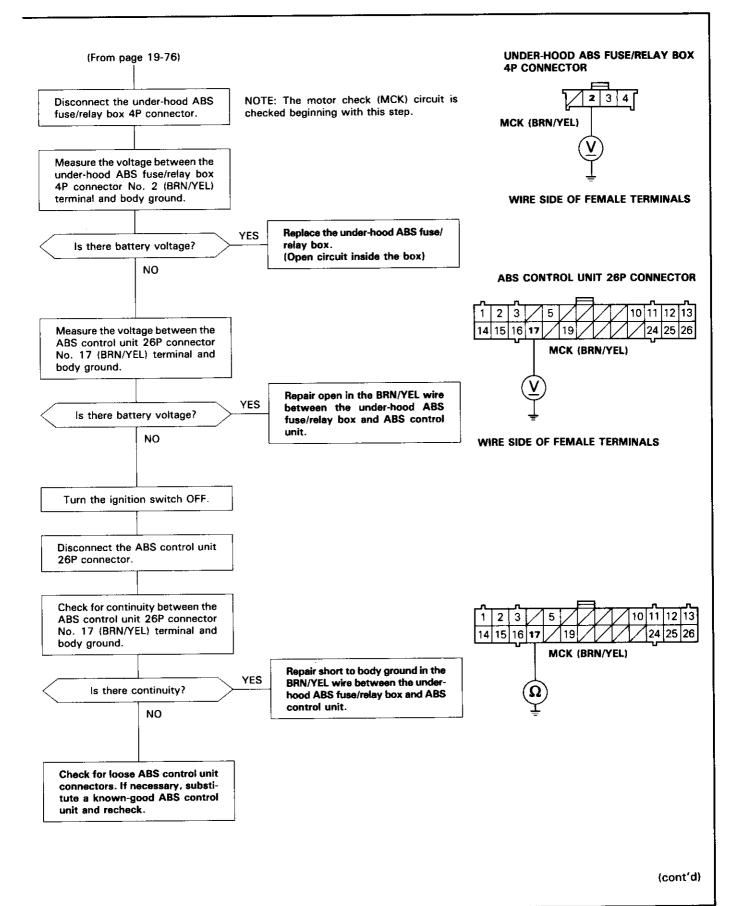


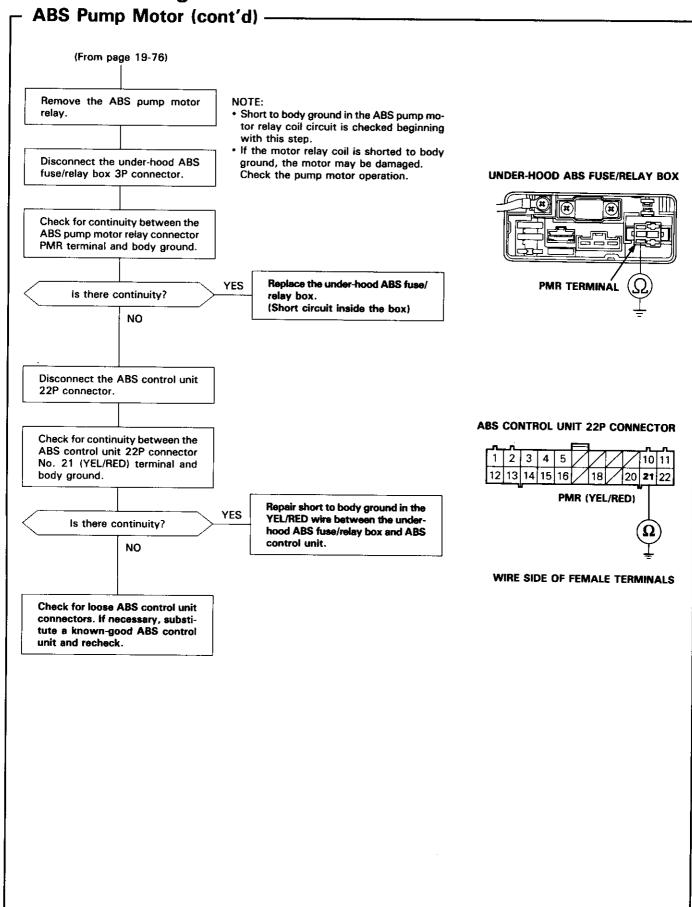


(cont'd)











High Pressure Leakage

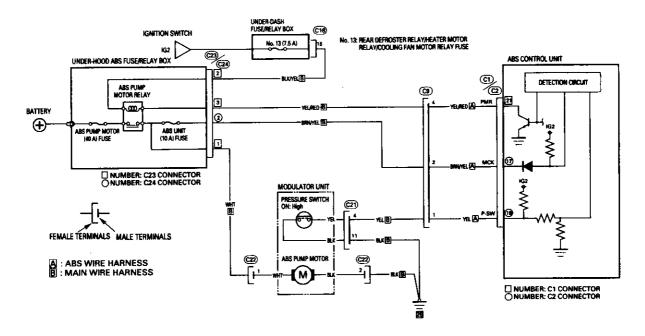
Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) 1-3: High Pressure Leakage Diagnosis

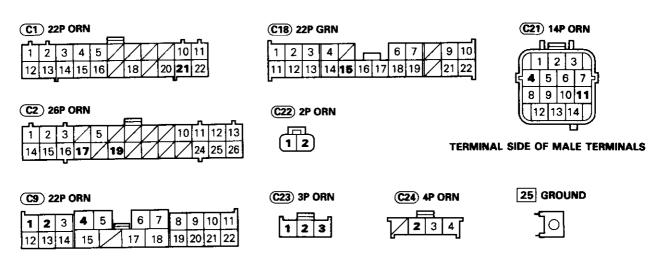
The ABS control unit counts the number of times that the ABS pump motor operates and stops during regular diagnosis. When the ABS pump motor repeatedly operates and stops, the ABS control unit determines that the high pressure system is leaking and turns the ABS indicator light on.

This count is reset when the ABS functions.

Possible causes:

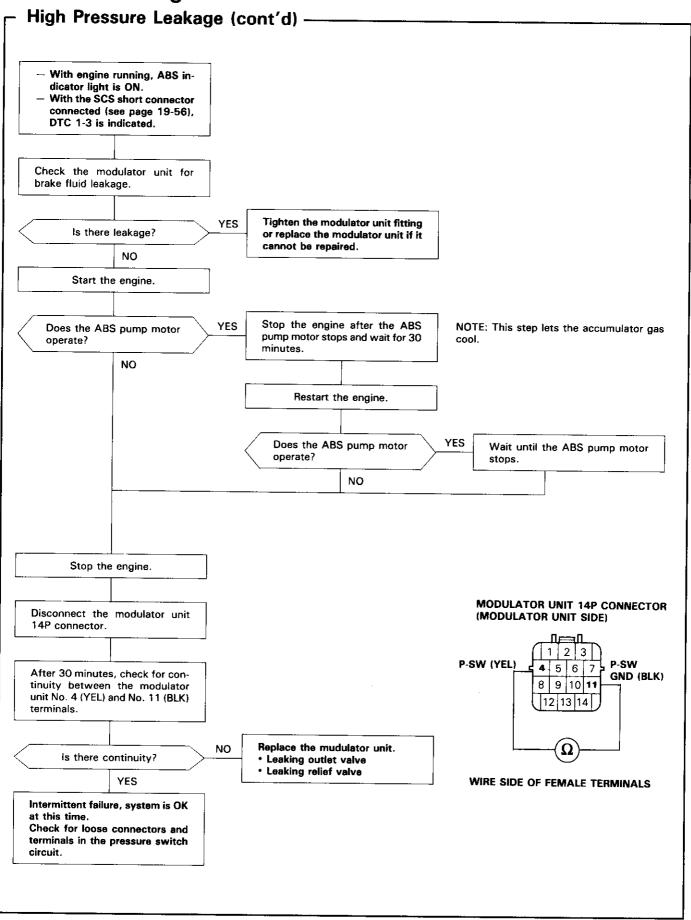
- Leaking outlet valve
- Leaking relief valve
- Poor contact in pressure switch circuit





WIRE SIDE OF FEMALE TERMINALS

(cont'd)





Pressure Switch

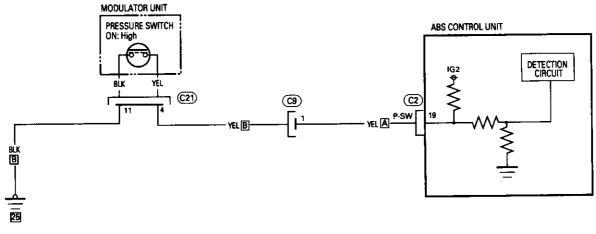
Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) 1-4: Pressure Switch Diagnosis

The ABS control unit momentarily activates the outlet solenoid valve and counts the number of times that the pressure switch signal is ON during the initial diagnosis.

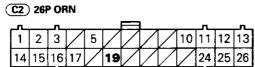
When the ABS control unit does not detect the pressure switch OFF signal at all when the engine is started and stopped repeatedly, it keeps the ABS indicator light on. The count of the pressure switch ON signals is reset when the ABS control unit detects the pressure switch OFF signal.

Possible causes:

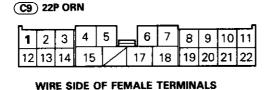
- Short to body ground between the ABS control unit and pressure switch
- Pressure switch stuck ON
- Faulty ABS control unit

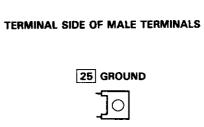






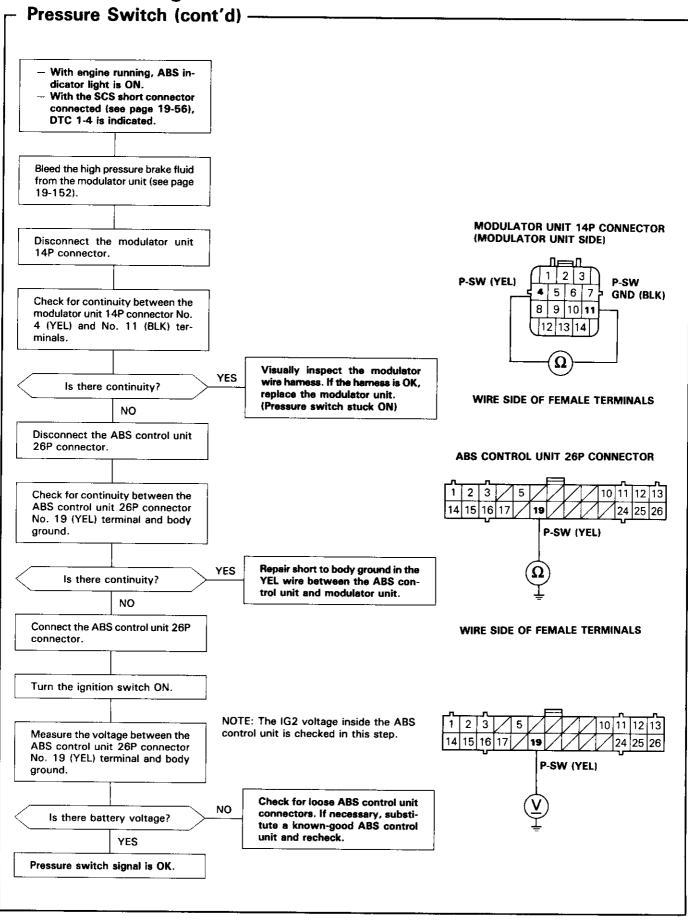






(C21) 14P ORN

(cont'd)





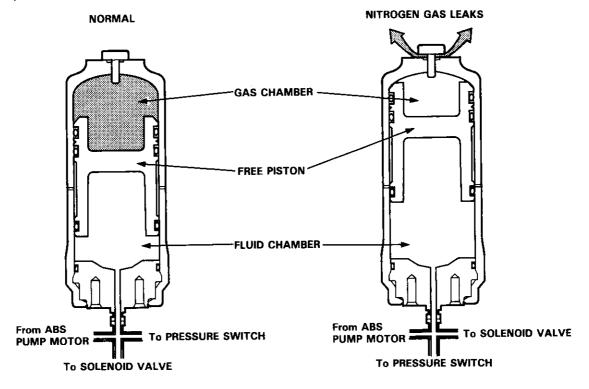
High Pressure System

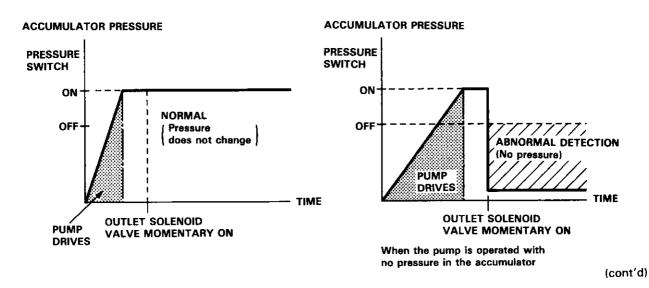
Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) 1-8: High Pressure System Diagnosis

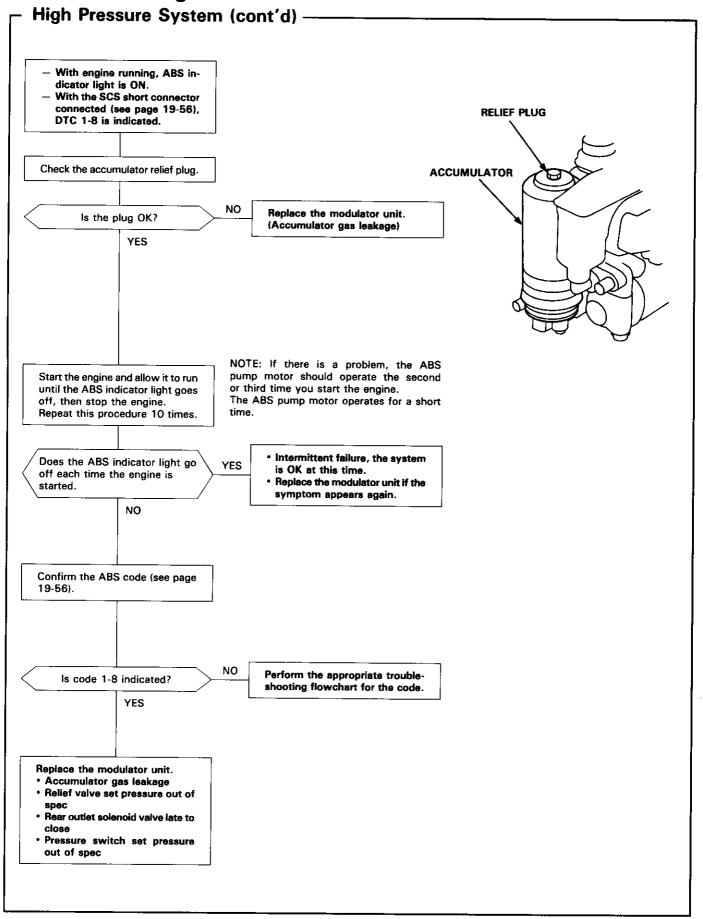
When the ABS control unit detects the pressure switch OFF signal during the initial diagnosis, it drives the ABS pump motor until the pressure switch turns ON. Then, it momentarily activates the outlet solenoid valve and monitors the pressure switch signal.

The ABS control unit keeps the ABS indicator light on if it detects the pressure switch OFF signal at this time. Possible causes:

- Accumulator gas leakage
- · Changed relief valve set pressure
- Rear outlet solenoid valve late to close
- Changed pressure switch set pressure







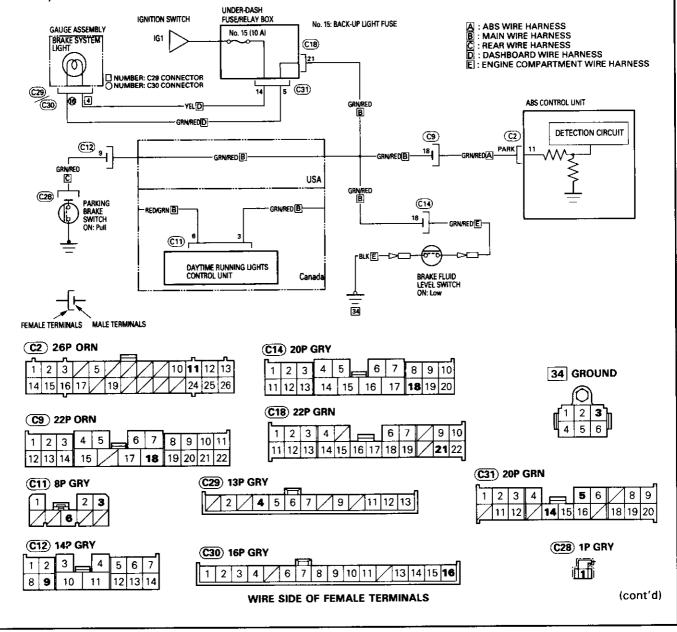


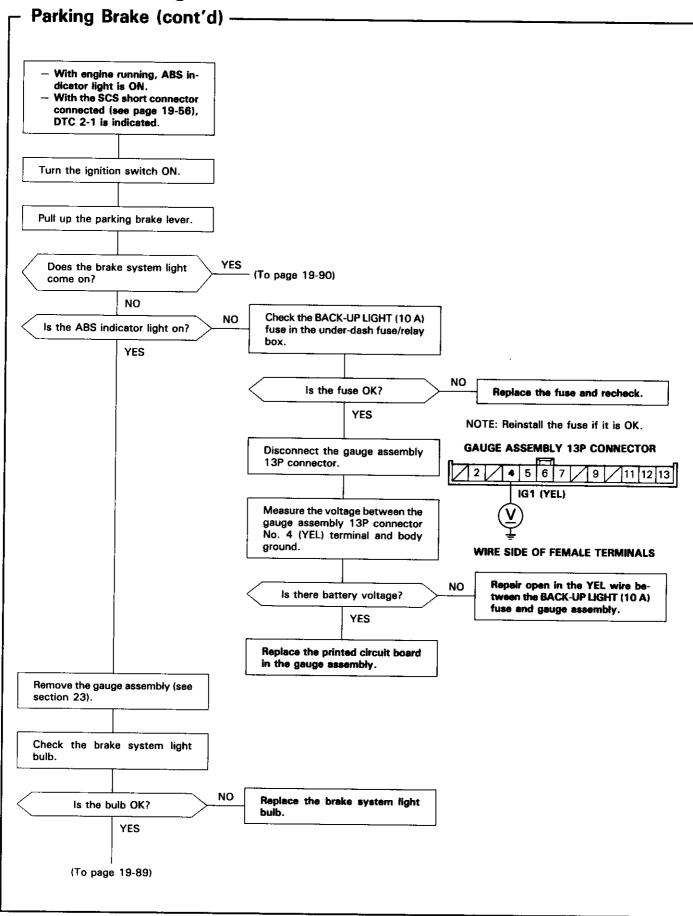
Parking Brake

Diagnostic Trouble Code (TDC) 2-1: Parking Brake Diagnosis

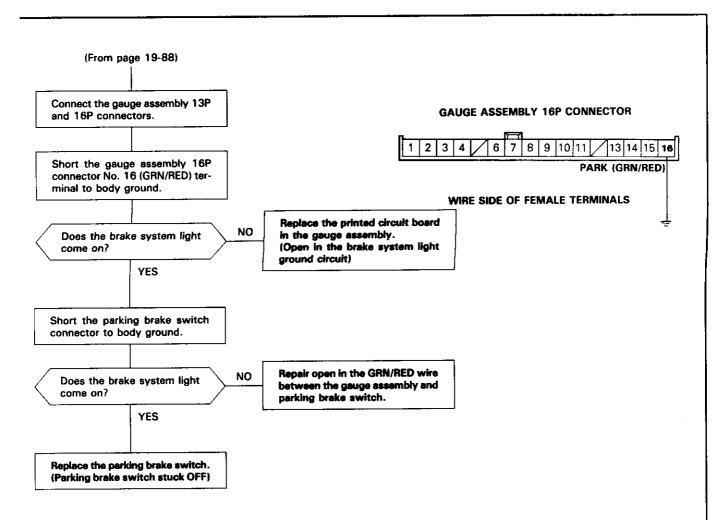
The ABS control unit monitors the parking brake signal during the regular diagnosis (during driving). It turns the ABS indicator light on if it detects the parking brake ON signal for 30 seconds. Possible causes:

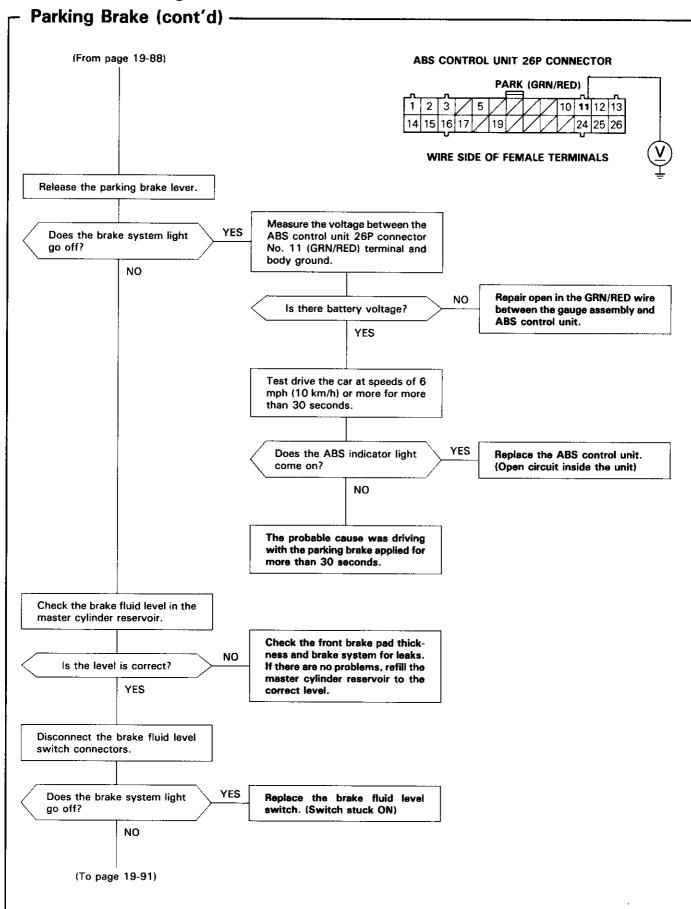
- Driving with the parking brake applied
- Low fluid level in the master cylinder reservoir
- Blown BACK-UP LIGHT (10 A) fuse
- Open circuit between the BACK-UP LIGHT (10 A) fuse and brake system light
- Blown brake system light bulb
- Open circuit or short to body ground between the brake system light and ABS control unit
- Parking brake switch stuck ON
- Short to body ground between the brake system light and parking brake switch
- Brake fluid level switch stuck ON
- Short to body ground between the brake system light and brake fluid level switch
- Faulty ABS control unit



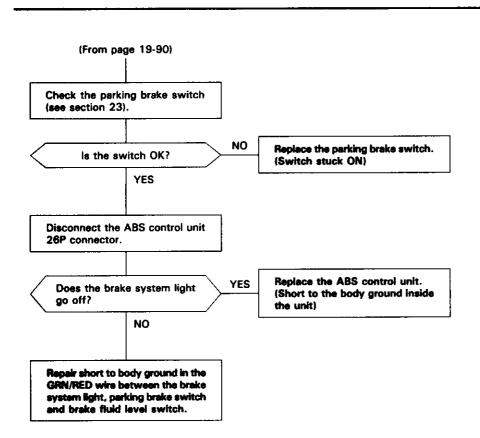












Pulser/Different Diameter Tire -

Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) 3-1 to 3-8: Pulser Diagnosis

The ABS control unit monitors the wheel sensor signals during the regular diagnosis (during driving).

It turns the ABS indicator light on if it detects a periodic change in the wheel sensor signal of each wheel caused by a chipped pulser gear, etc.

Possible causes:

- Chipped pulser gear
- Improperly installed wheel sensor

| | гс | | Pu | lser | |
|-----|----|-------------|------------|------------|-----------|
| ן " | | Right-front | Left-front | Right-rear | Left-rear |
| | 1 | 0 | | | |
| 3 | 2 | | 0 | | |
| 3 | 3 | | | 0 | |
| | 4 | | | | 0 |

Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) 3-12: Different Diameter Tire Diagnosis

The ABS control unit detects the wheel sensor signal speed during the regular diagnosis (during driving). This diagnosis is not performed when the parking brake switch signal is ON.

The ABS control unit may turn the ABS indicator light on when one, two or three different diameter tires are installed.



Right-front Wheel Sensor

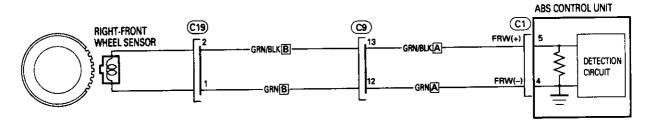
Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) 4-1: Right-front Wheel Sensor Diagnosis

The ABS control unit monitors the wheel sensor signal during the regular diagnosis (at speeds of 6 mph (10 km/h) or more). This diagnosis is not performed when the parking brake signal is ON.

The ABS control unit turns the ABS indicator light on if it detects that there is no wheel sensor signal from the right-front wheel.

Possible causes:

- Open circuit, internal short or short to body ground in the right-front wheel sensor
- Open circuit or short to body ground in the positive (+) wire between the right-front wheel sensor and ABS control unit
- Open circuit or short to body ground in the negative () wire between the right-front wheel sensor and ABS control unit
- Positive (+) wire shorted to the negative (-) wire between the right-front wheel sensor and ABS control unit
- Loose connector or poor contact of terminals
- Improper right-front wheel sensor air gap
- Faulty ABS control unit
- Missing right-front pulser
- Modulator does not decrease pressure properly





A : ABS WIRE HARNESS

B: MAIN WIRE HARNESS

(C1) 22P ORN

| | _n_ | л. | | | | | | | | | _n_ |
|---|-----|----|----------|----|----|---|---------------|---|----|---------|-----|
| | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | | \mathcal{I} | | | 10 | 11 |
| | 12 | 13 | 14 | 15 | 16 | | 18 | | 20 | 21 | 22 |
| ı | | | <u> </u> | _ | _ | _ | | V | - | <u></u> | |

(C9) 22P ORN

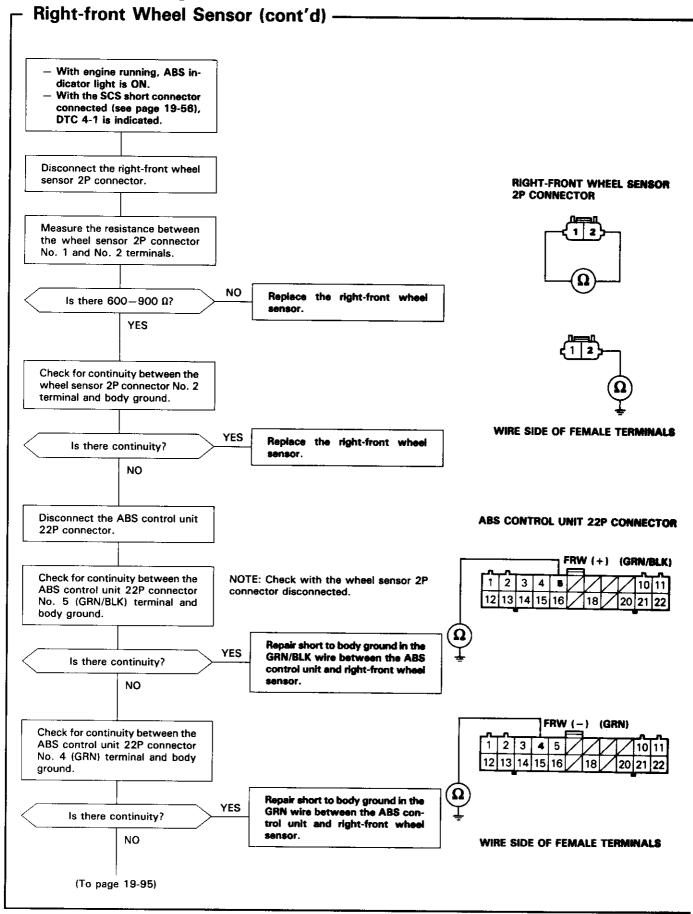
| n | | | | | 1 | _ | | | | | |
|----|----|----|----|---|---|---|----|----|----|----|----|
| 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | = | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 | 11 |
| 12 | 13 | 14 | 15 | | 1 | 7 | 18 | 19 | 20 | 21 | 22 |

WIRE SIDE OF FEMALE TERMINALS

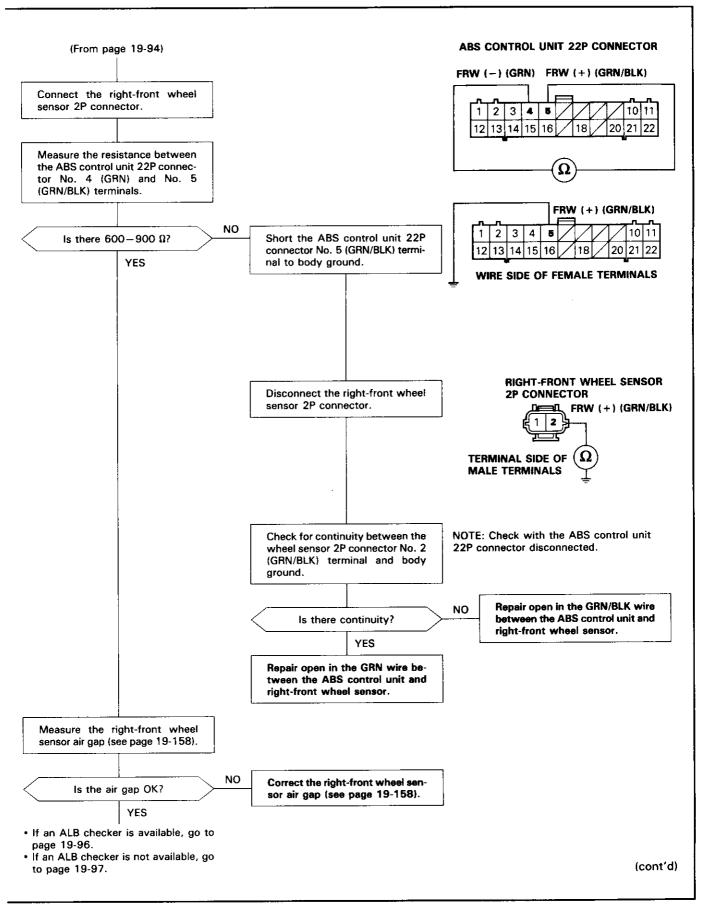
(C19) 2P ORN

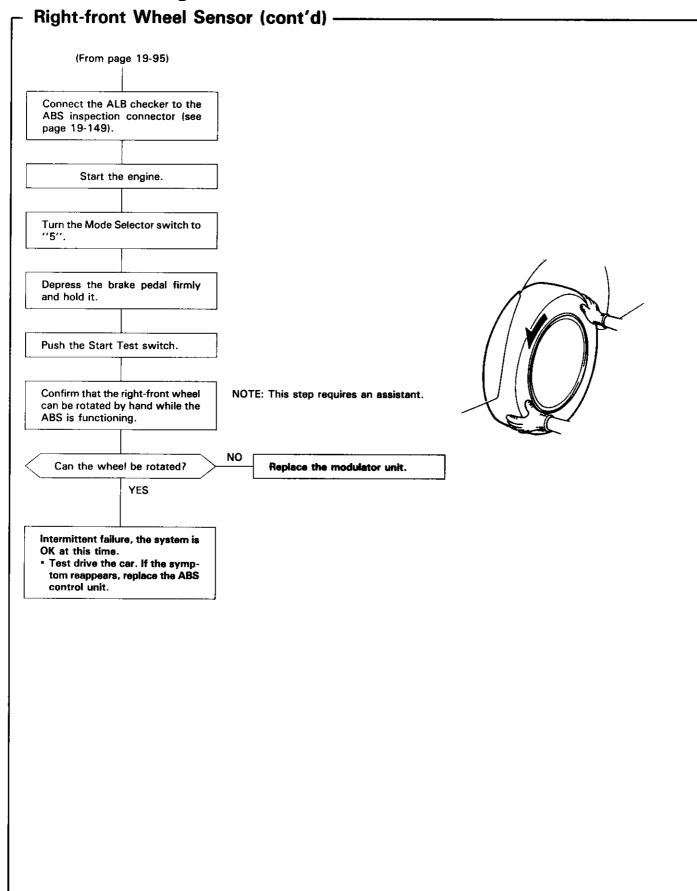


TERMINAL SIDE OF MALE TERMINALS

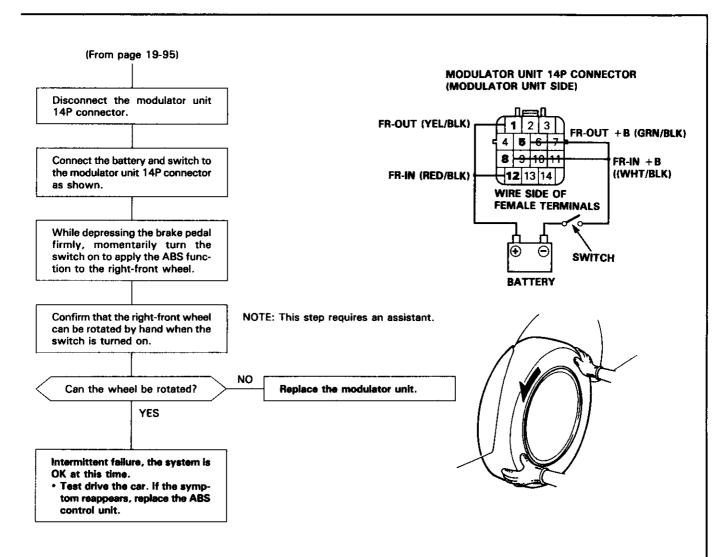












Left-front Wheel Sensor

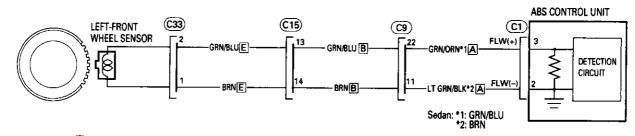
Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) 4-2: Left-front Wheel Sensor Diagnosis

The ABS control unit monitors the wheel sensor signal during the regular diagnosis (at speeds of 6 mph (10 km/h) or more). This diagnosis is not performed when the parking brake signal is ON.

The ABS control unit turns the ABS indicator light on if it detects that there is no wheel sensor signal from the left-front wheel.

Possible causes:

- Open circuit, internal short or short to body ground in the left-front wheel sensor
- Open circuit or short to body ground in the positive (+) wire between the left-front wheel sensor and ABS control unit
- Open circuit or short to body ground in the negative () wire between the left-front wheel sensor and ABS control unit
- Positive (+) wire shorted to the negative (-) wire between the left-front wheel sensor and ABS control unit
- Loose connector or poor contact of terminals
- Improper left-front wheel sensor air gap
- Faulty ABS control unit
- Missing left-front pulser
- Modulator does not decrease pressure properly





- A : ABS WIRE HARNESS
- B : MAIN WIRE HARNESS
- E : ENGINE COMPARTMENT WIRE HARNESS

(C1) 22P ORN

| | | | | | | | л | п |
|-------|----|----|----|----|--------------------------|----|----|----|
| 1 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | | $\overline{\mathcal{I}}$ | | 10 | 11 |
| 12 13 | 14 | 15 | 16 | 18 | | 20 | 21 | 22 |

(C9) 22P ORN

| 1 | Г | | | | | | _ | <u> </u> | | | | |
|---|----|----|----|----|----------------|------------|----|----------|----|----|----|--|
| | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 _E | = 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 | 11 | |
| | 12 | 13 | 14 | 15 | | 17 | 18 | 19 | 20 | 21 | 22 | |

(C15) 20P BRN

| | Г | | | | _ | | | | | | |
|---|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|--------------------------|----|----|
| ĺ | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | | | 5 | 6 | $\overline{\mathcal{C}}$ | | 9 |
| | 10 | 11 | 12 | 13 | 14 | 15 | 16 | 17 | 18 | 19 | 20 |

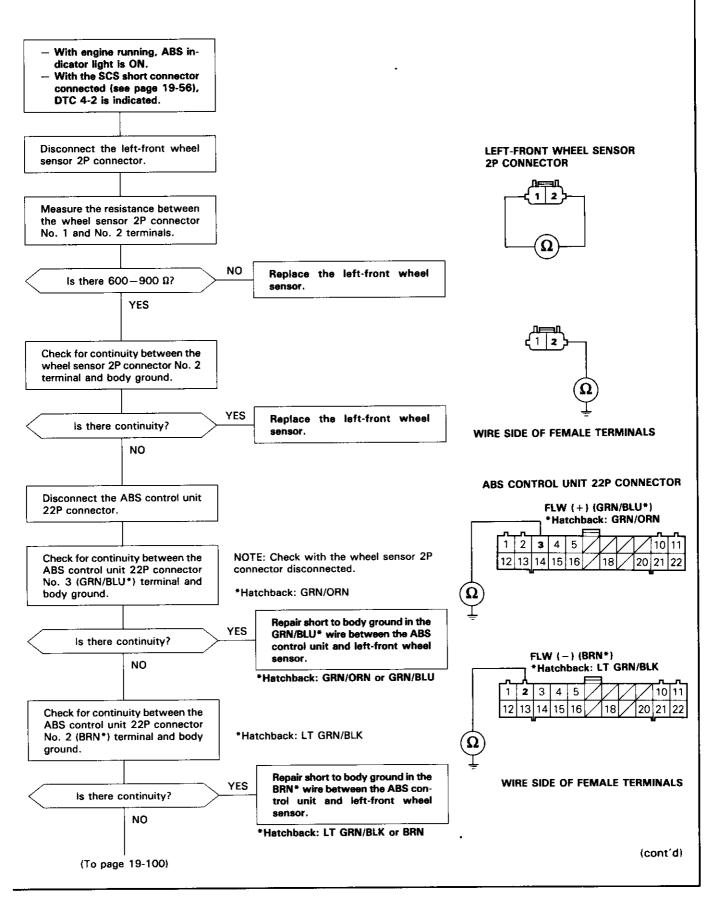
WIRE SIDE OF FEMALE TERMINALS

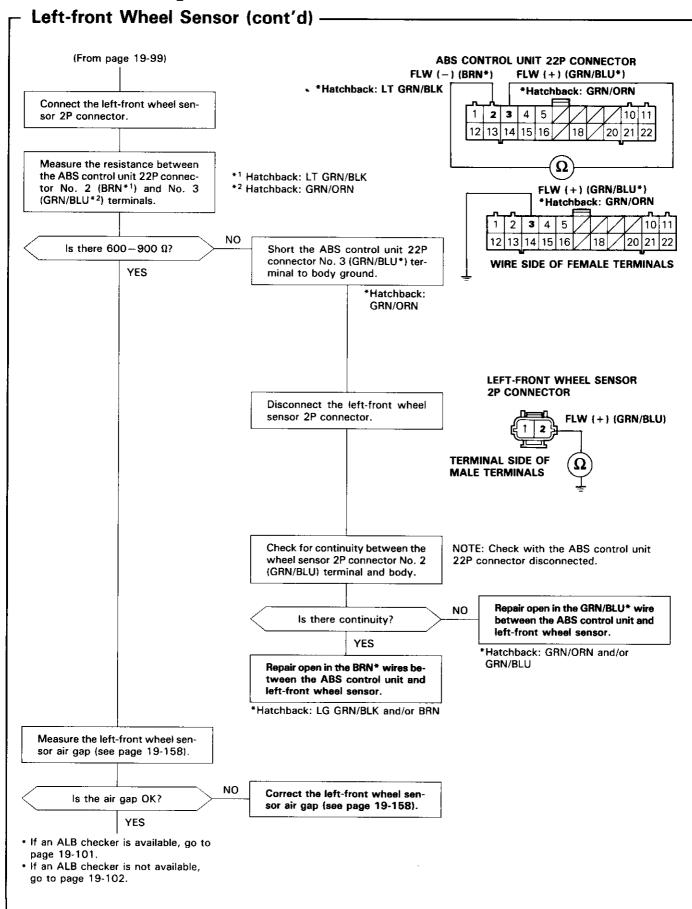
(C33) 2P ORN



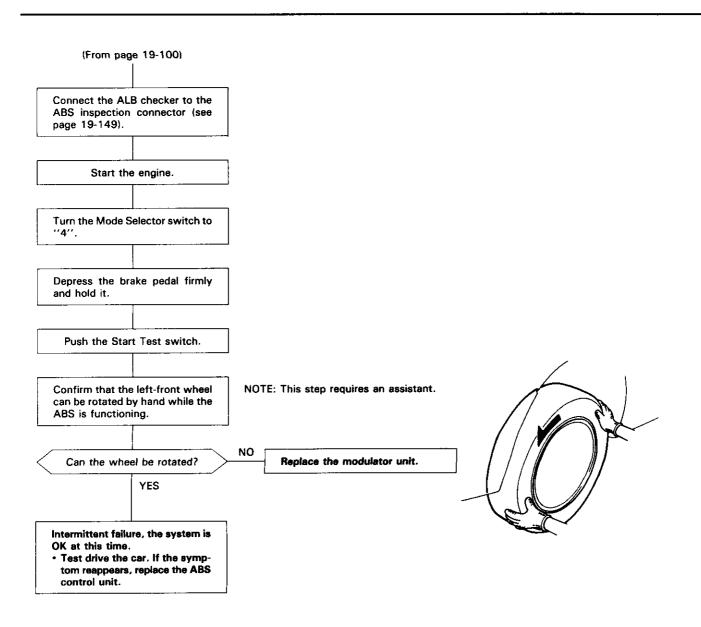
TERMINAL SIDE OF MALE TERMINALS

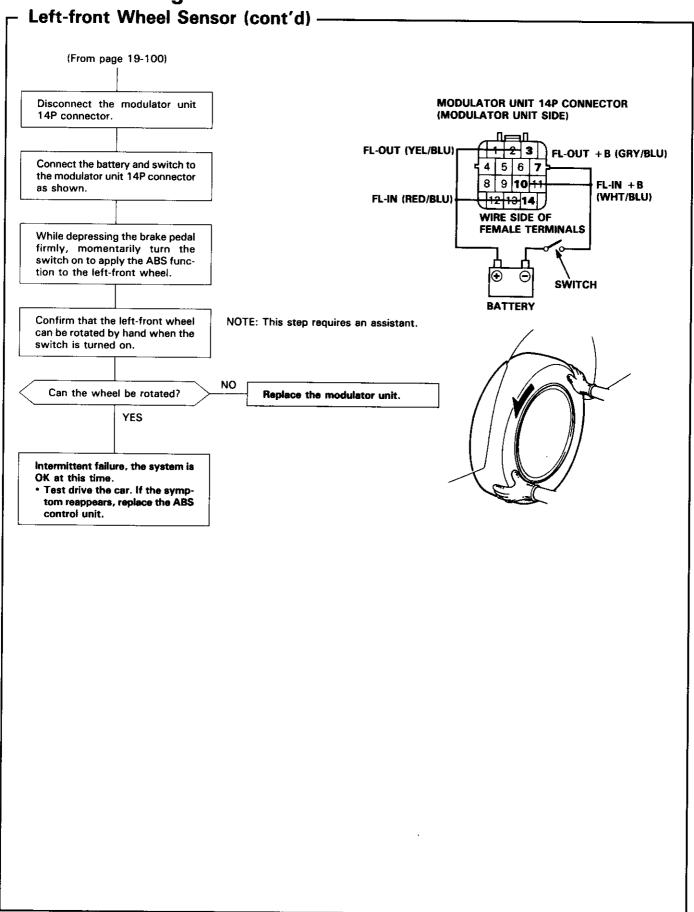














Right-rear Wheel Sensor -

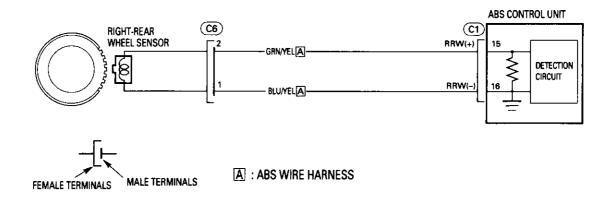
Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) 4-4: Right-rear Wheel Sensor Diagnosis

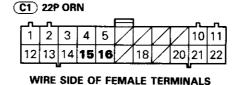
The ABS control unit monitors the wheel sensor signal during the regular diagnosis (at speeds of 6 mph (10 km/h) or more). This diagnosis is not performed when the parking brake signal is ON.

The ABS control unit turns the ABS indicator light on if it detects that there is no wheel sensor signal from the right-rear wheel.

Possible causes:

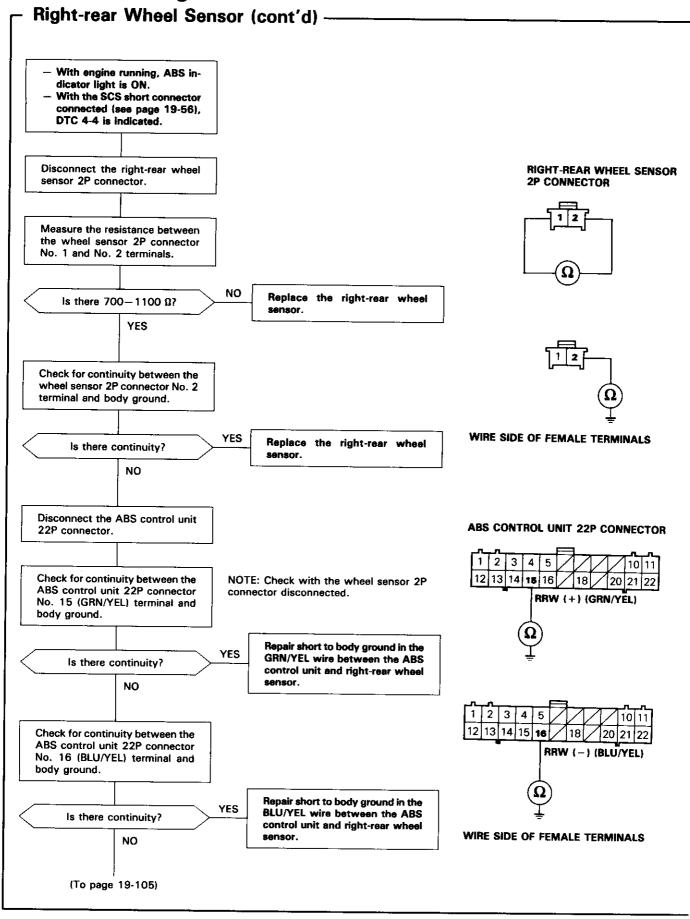
- Open circuit, internal short or short to body ground in the right-rear wheel sensor
- Open circuit or short to body ground in the positive (+) wire between the right-rear wheel sensor and ABS control unit
- Open circuit or short to body ground in the negative () wire between the right-rear wheel sensor and ABS control unit
- Positive (+) wire shorted to the negative (-) wire between the right-rear wheel sensor and ABS control unit
- Loose connector or poor contact of terminals
- Improper right-rear wheel sensor air gap
- Faulty ABS control unit
- Missing right-rear pulser
- Modulator does not decrease pressure properly



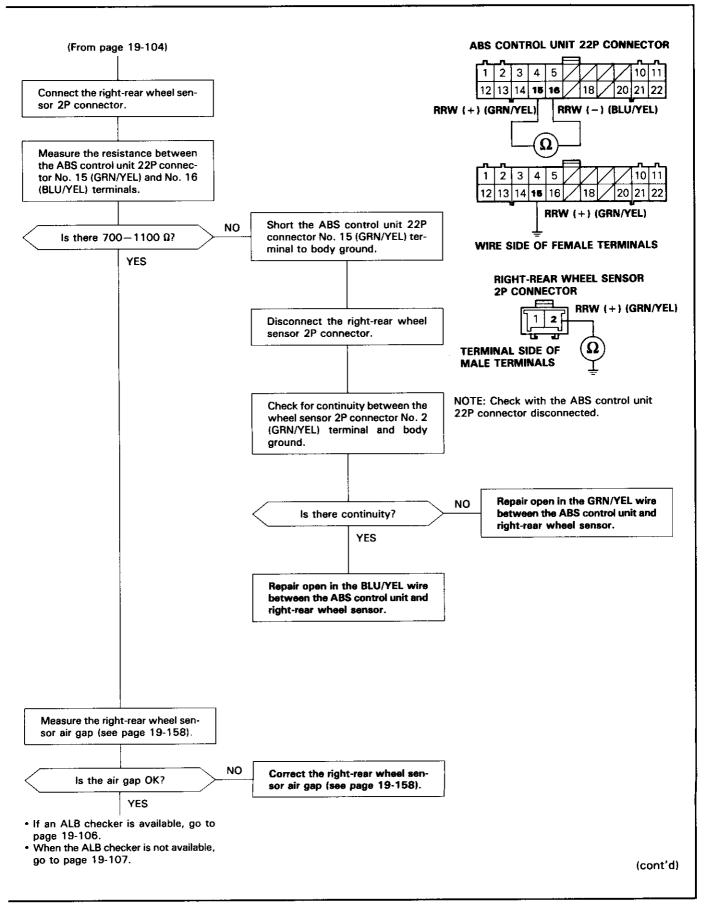


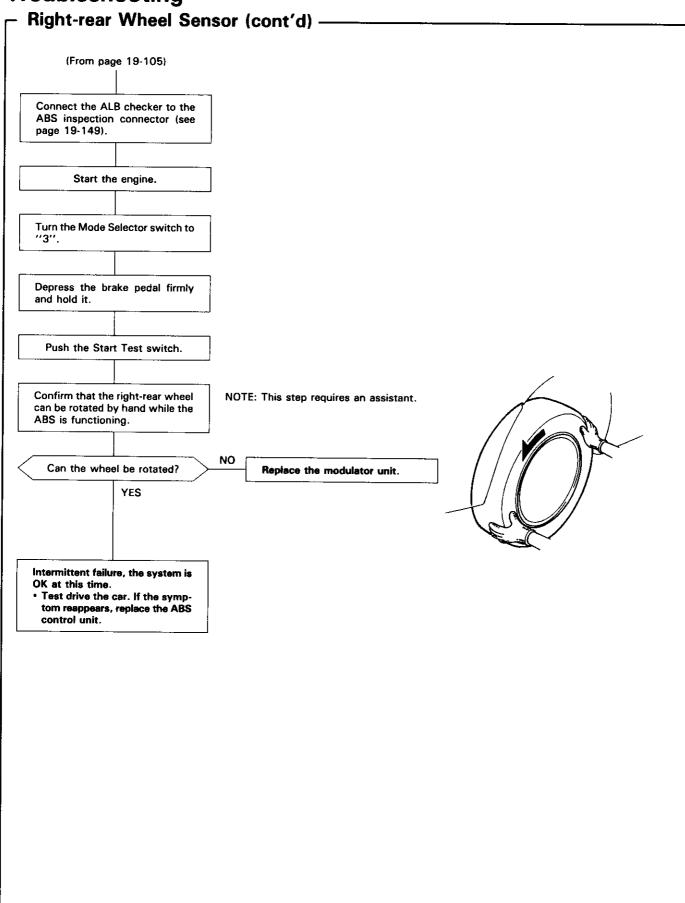


TERMINAL SIDE OF MALE TERMINALS

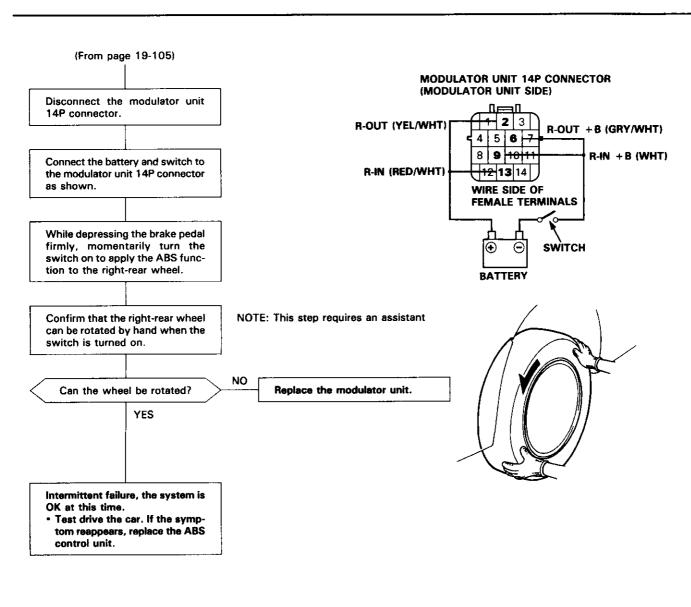












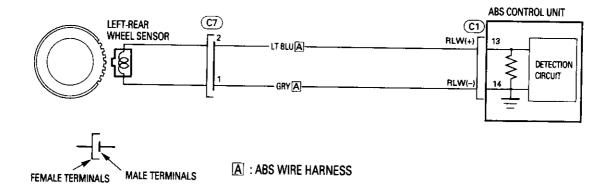
Left-rear Wheel Sensor -

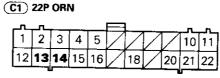
Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) 4-8: Left-rear Wheel Sensor Diagnosis

The ABS control unit monitors the wheel sensor signal during the regular diagnosis (at speeds of 6 mph (10 km/h) or more). This diagnosis is not performed when the parking brake signal is ON.

The ABS control unit turns the ABS indicator light on if it detects that there is no wheel sensor signal from the left-rear wheel. Possible causes:

- Open circuit, internal short or short to body ground in the left-rear wheel sensor
- Open circuit or short to body ground in the positive (+) wire between the left-rear wheel sensor and ABS control unit
- Open circuit or short to body ground in the negative () wire between the left-rear wheel sensor and ABS control unit
- Positive (+) wire shorted to the negative (-) wire between the left-rear wheel sensor and ABS control unit
- Loose connector or poor contact of terminals
- Improper left-rear wheel sensor air gap
- Faulty ABS control unit
- Missing left-rear pulser
- Modulator does not decrease pressure properly
- Both front wheels spin (for example, when wheels are stuck)



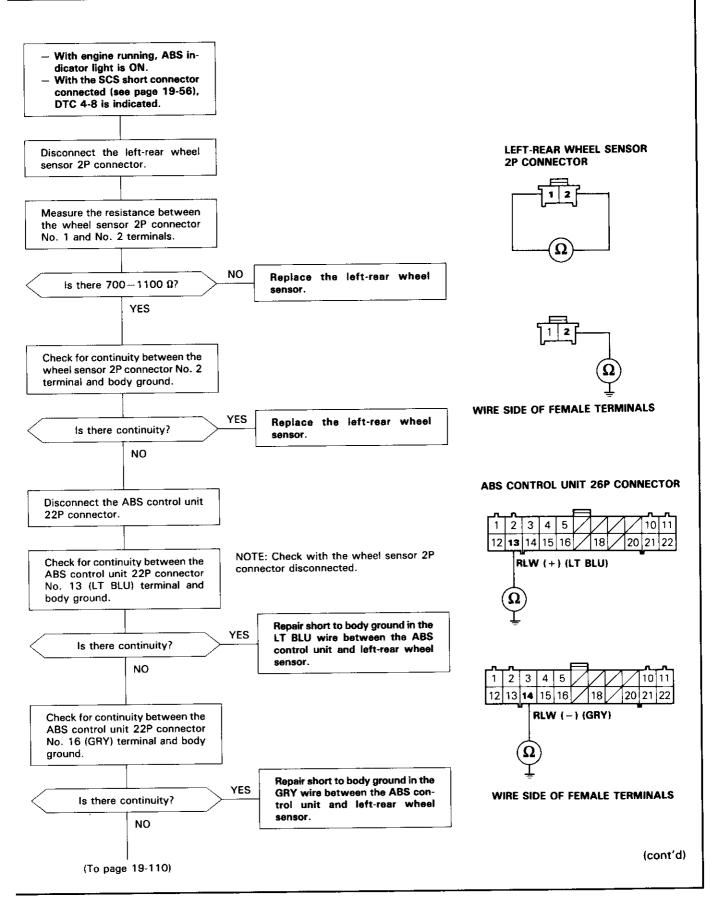


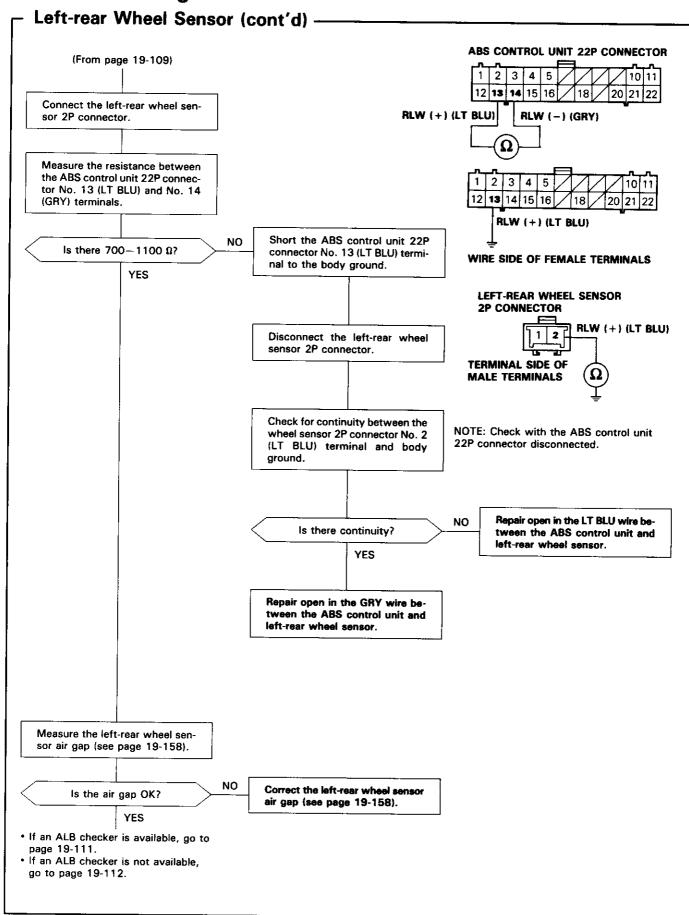
WIRE SIDE OF FEMALE TERMINALS



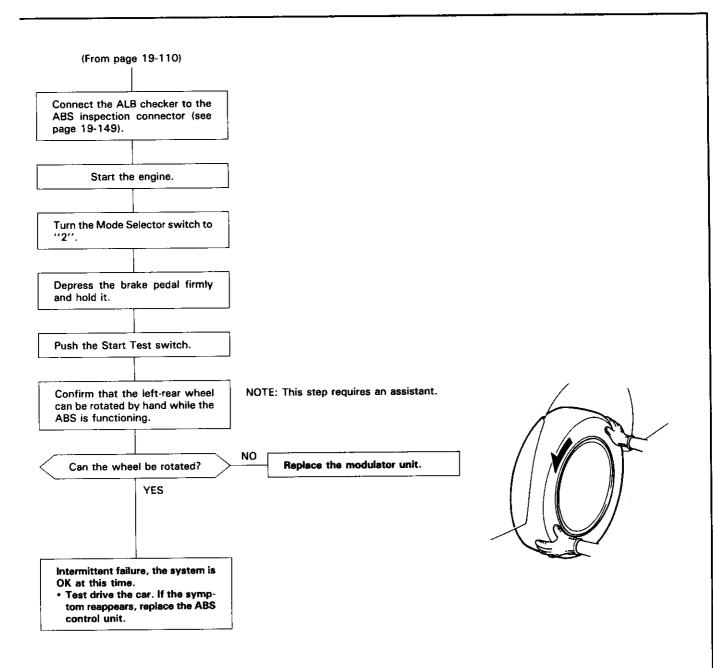
TERMINAL SIDE OF MALE TERMINALS

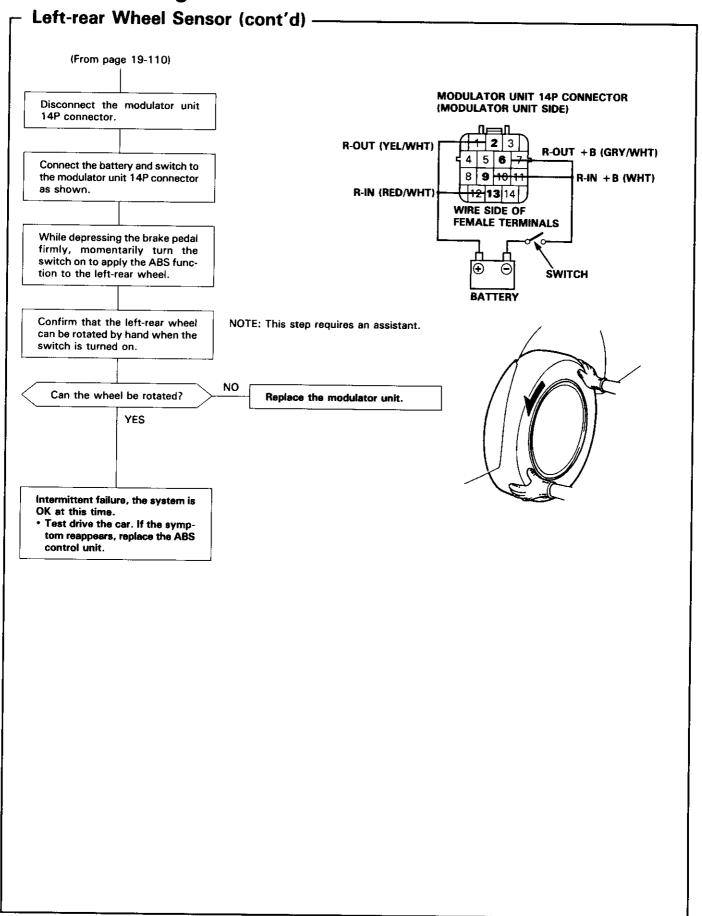














Rear Wheel Lock -

Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) 5 to 5-8: Rear Wheel Lock Diagnosis

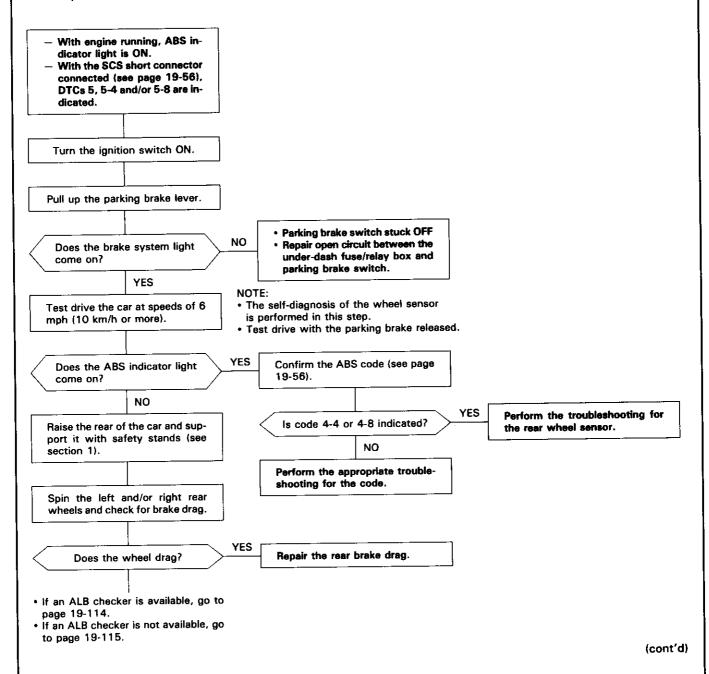
The ABS control unit monitors the rear wheel sensor signals during the regular diagnosis (during driving).

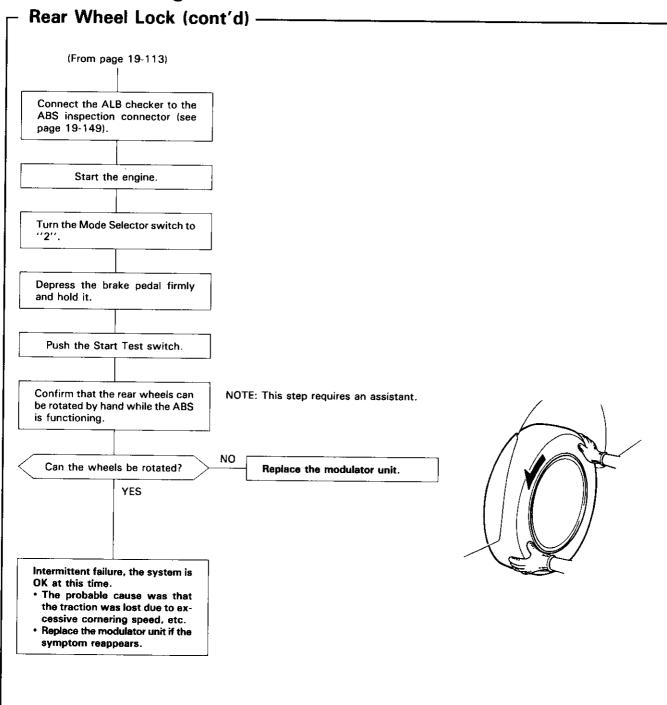
This diagnosis is not performed when the parking brake signal is ON.

The ABS control unit turns the ABS indicator light on if it detects no signal(s) from the rear wheel sensor(s) due to, for example, rear wheel lock.

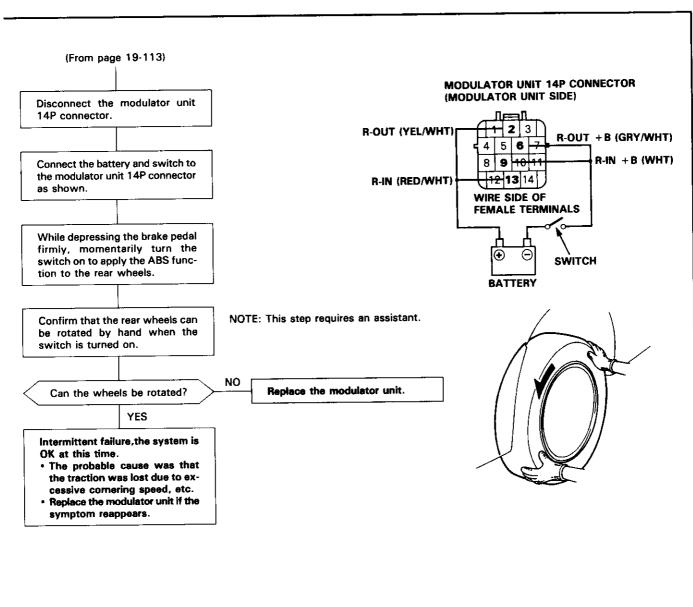
Possible causes:

- Wheel spin during cornering
- Open circuit, internal short or short to the body ground in the wheel sensor system
- Rear brake drag
- Modulator does not decrease pressure properly
- Faulty ABS control unit









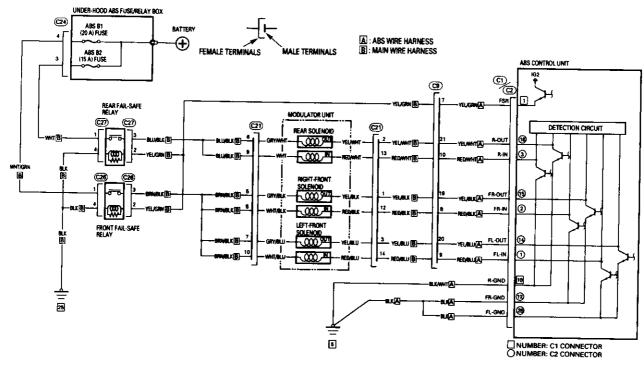
Front and Rear Fail-safe Relays

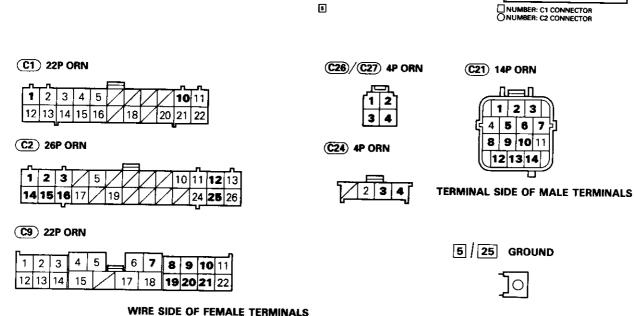
Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) 6: Front and Rear Fail-safe Relays Diagnosis

The ABS control unit monitors the voltage from the battery for the six solenoids during the initial diagnosis when the fail-safe relays are OFF.

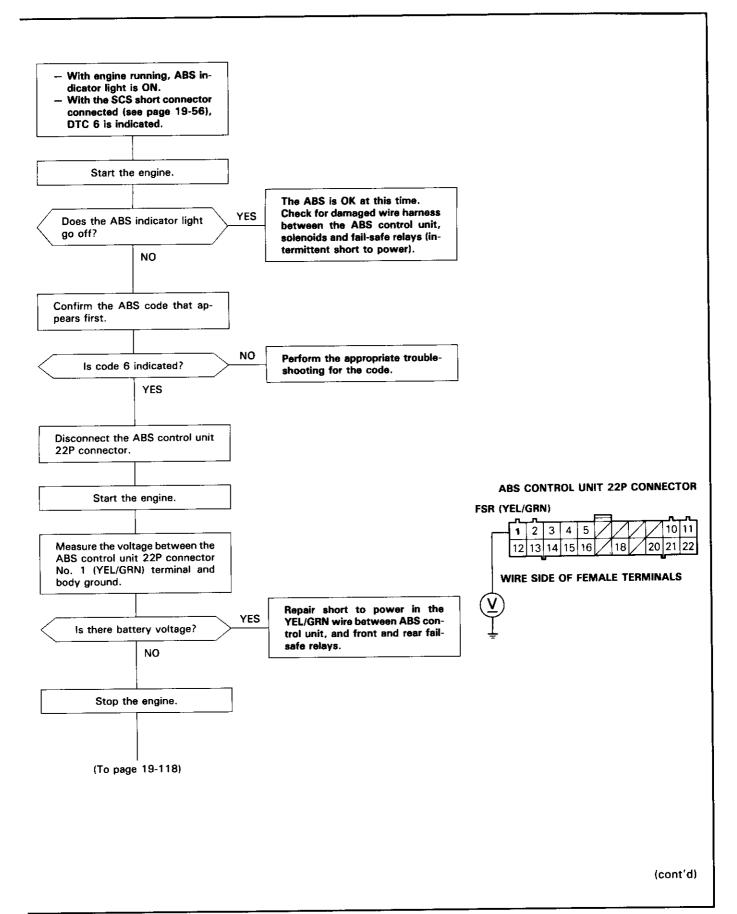
The ABS control unit keeps the ABS indicator light on if it detects battery voltage at the front and rear solenoid circuits. Possible causes:

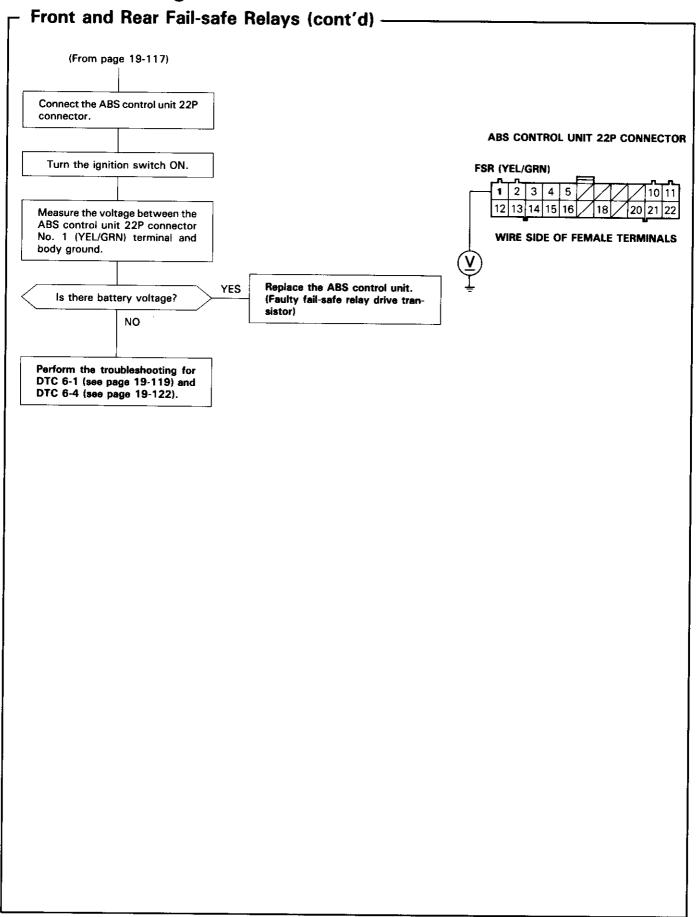
- Short to power in the relay drive circuits between the fail-safe relays and ABS control unit
- Faulty relay drive transistor (ON) in the ABS control unit













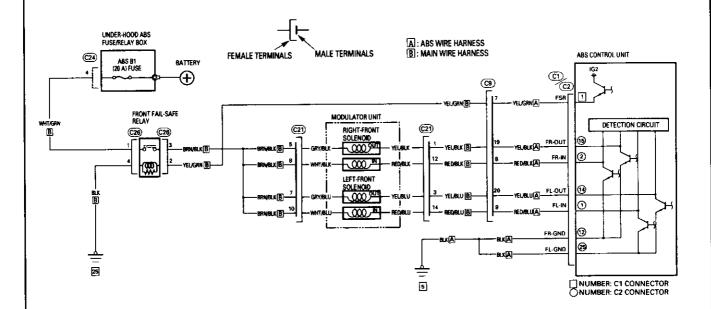
Front Fail-safe Relay -

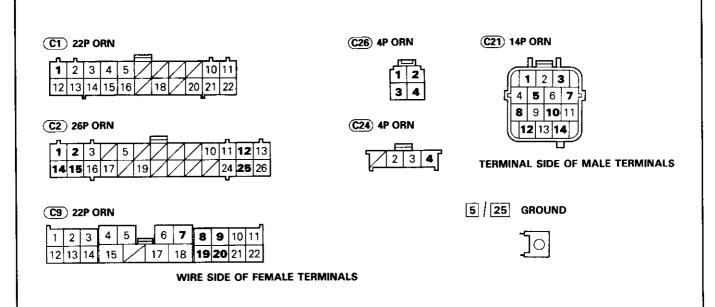
Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) 6-1: Front Fail-safe Relay Diagnosis

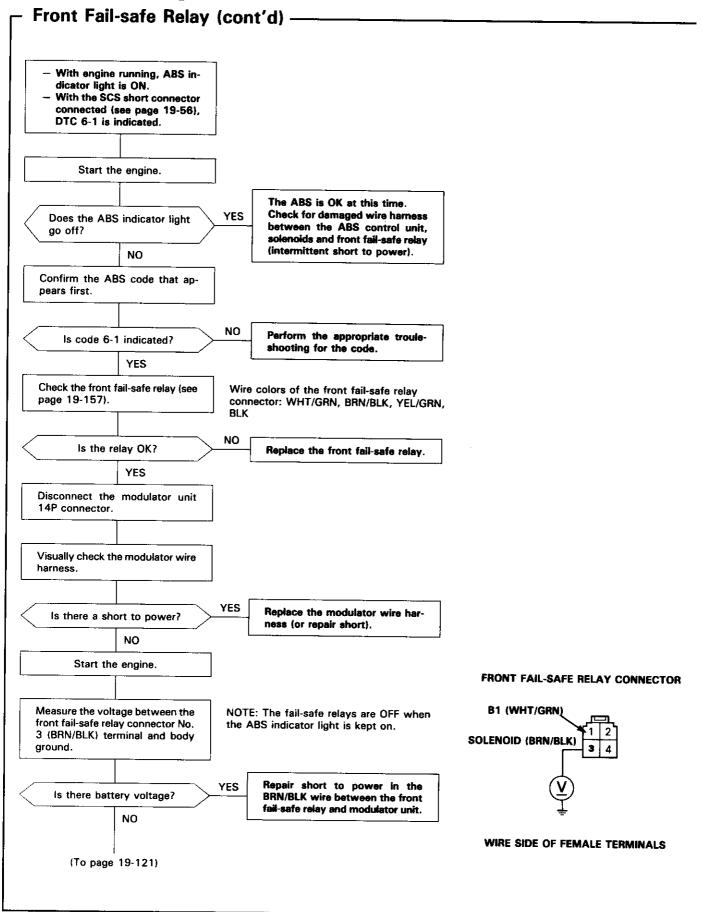
The ABS control unit monitors the voltage from the battery for the six solenoids during the initial diagnosis when the fail-safe relays are OFF.

The ABS control unit keeps the ABS indicator light on if it detects battery voltage at the front solenoid circuits. Possible causes:

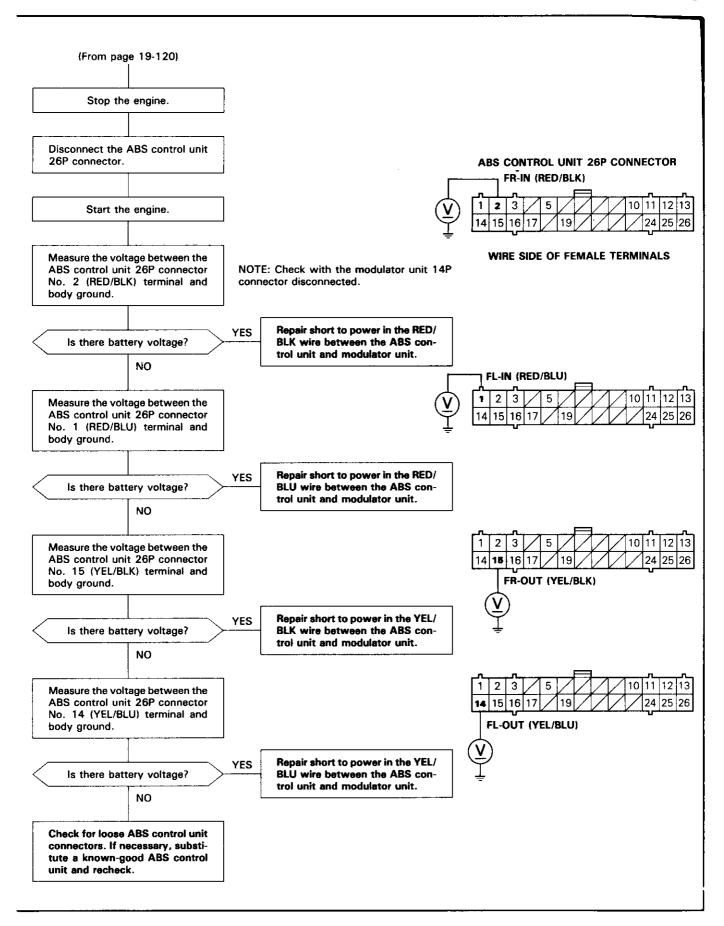
- Front fail-safe relay stuck ON
- Short to power in the solenoid drive circuits between the front fail-safe relay and ABS control unit.











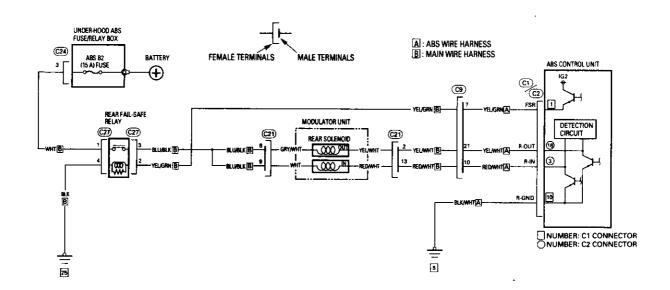
Rear Fail-safe Relay -

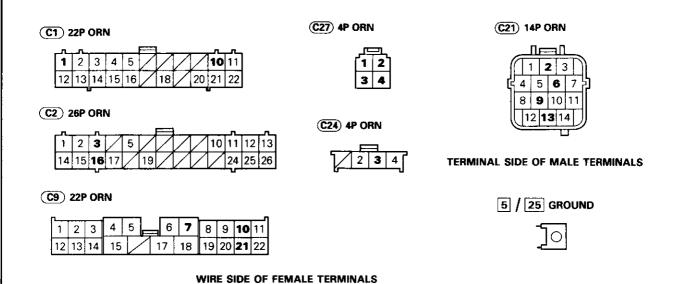
Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) 6-4: Rear Fail-safe Relay Diagnosis

The ABS control unit monitors the voltage from the battery for the six solenoids during the initial diagnosis when the fail-safe relays are OFF.

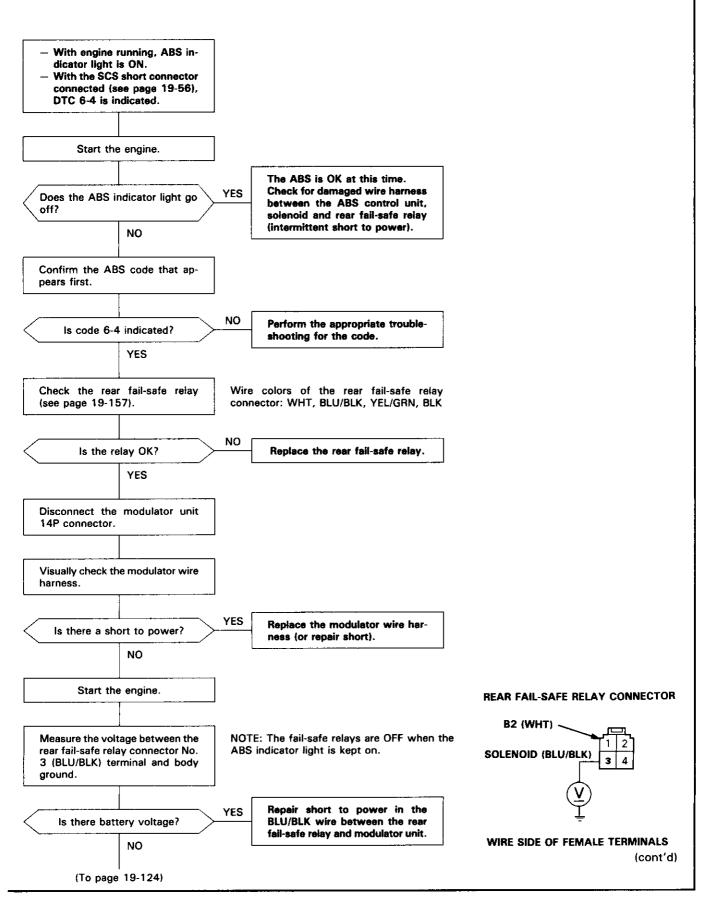
The ABS control unit keeps the ABS indicator light on if it detects the batery voltage at the two rear solenoid circuits. Possible causes:

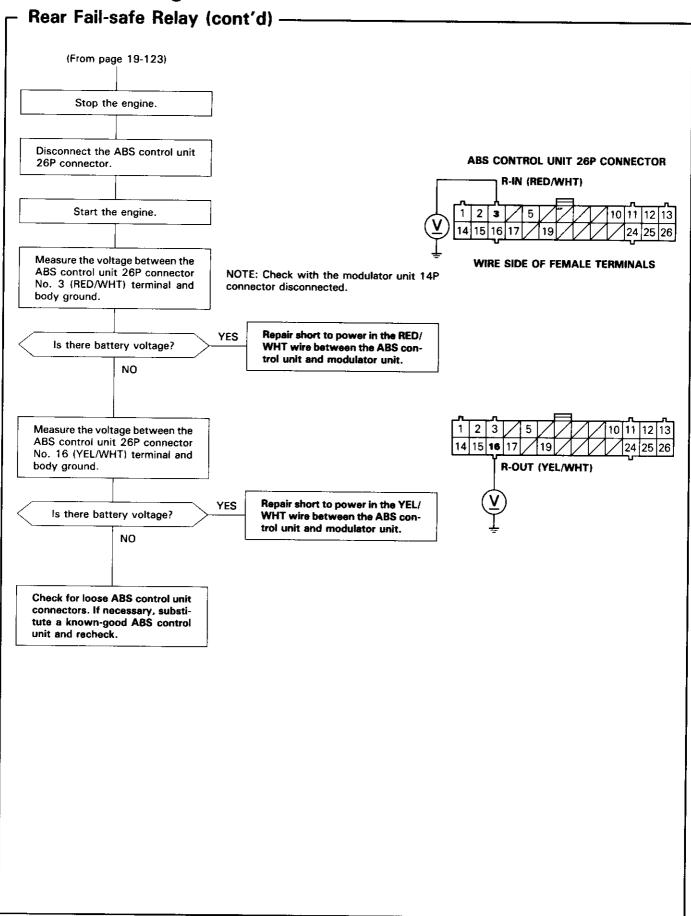
- Rear fail-safe relay stuck ON
- Short to power in the solenoid drive circuits between the rear fail-safe relay and ABS control unit













Right-front Solenoid

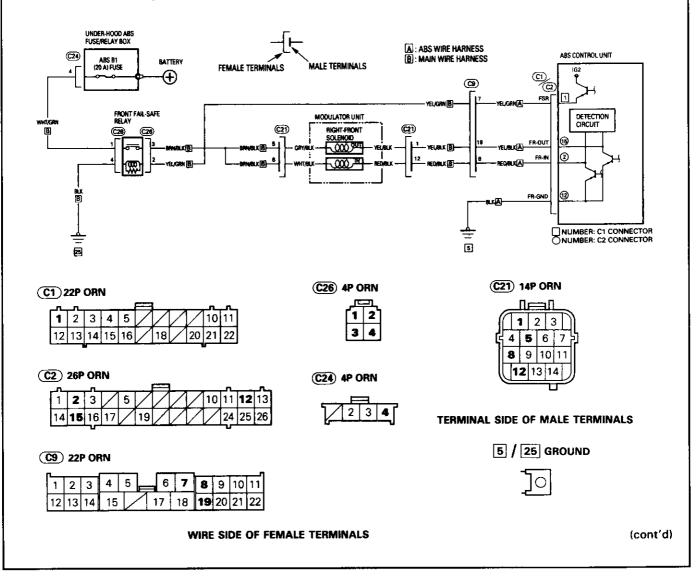
Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) 7-1: Right-front Solenoid Diagnosis

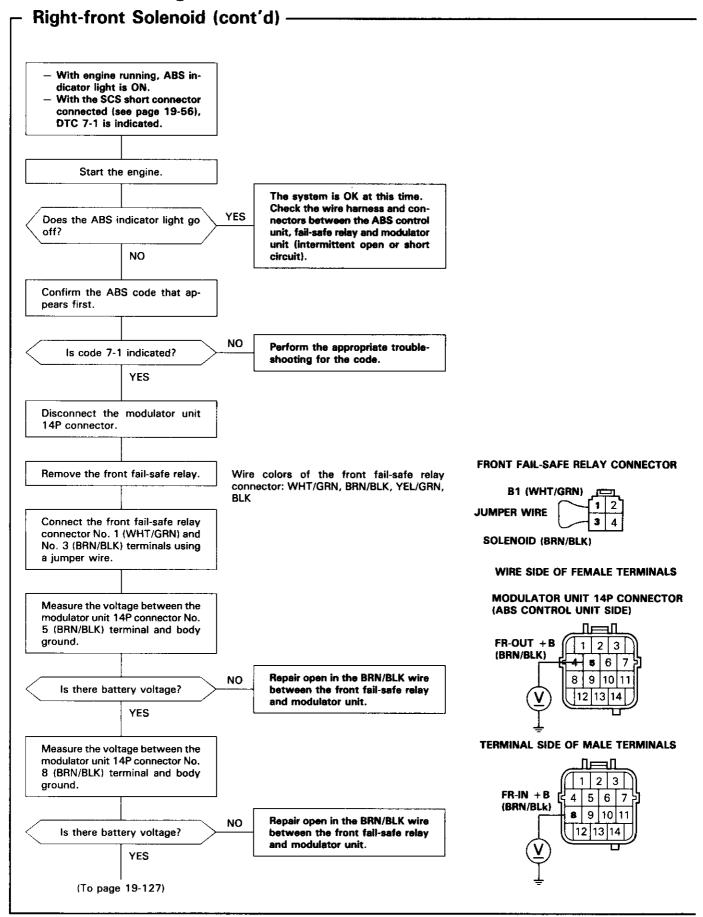
During the initial diagnosis, after the fail-safe relays are turned on, and during the regular diagnosis, the ABS control unit monitors the voltage from the battery for the six solenoids (when the ABS is not functioning). If the detection circuit for the right-front solenoid detects 0 V, the ABS control unit keeps the ABS indicator light on after the engine is started. It turns the ABS indicator light on again if it detects 0 V after the light goes off. Possible causes:

- Open circuit in the right-front solenoid drive circuits between the front fail-safe relay and ABS control unit
- Short circuit to body ground in the right-front solenoid drive circuits between the solenoids and ABS control unit
- Faulty right-front solenoid drive transistor (ON) in the ABS control unit

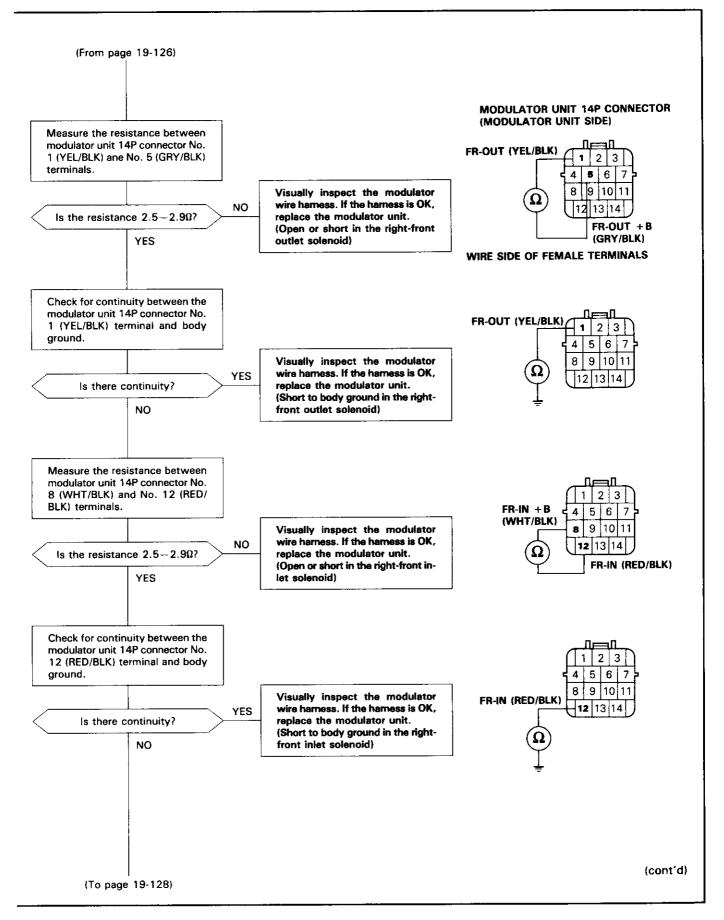
The ABS control unit momentarily outputs the ON signal to each solenoid (too mometary to turn the solenoid on) during the initial diagnosis, and each time the car is started, to check the voltage from the battery with the detection circuit. If the detection circuit for the right-front solenoids detects battery voltage at this time, the ABS control unit keeps the ABS indicator light on. It turns the ABS indicator light on again if it detects battery voltage when the car is started. Possible causes:

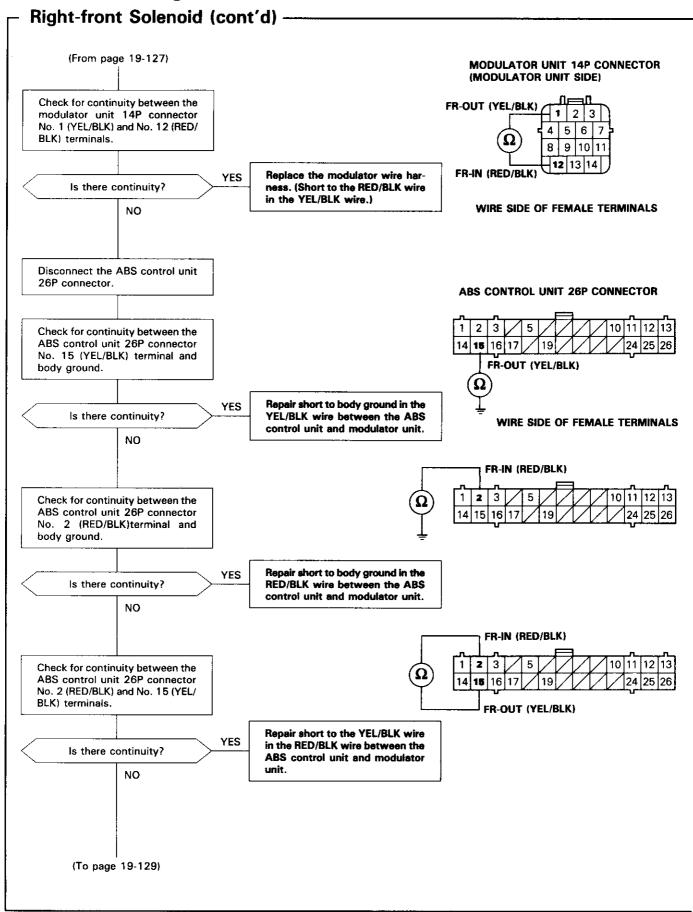
- Short circuit to power in the right-front solenoid drive circuits between the solenoids and ABS control unit
- Faulty right-front solenoid drive transistor (OFF) in the ABS control unit
- Short circuit to power in the right-front solenoid drive circuits in the modulator wire harness or solenoids
- Short circuit to the right-front solenoid outlet circuit in the inlet circuit between the solenoid and ABS control unit



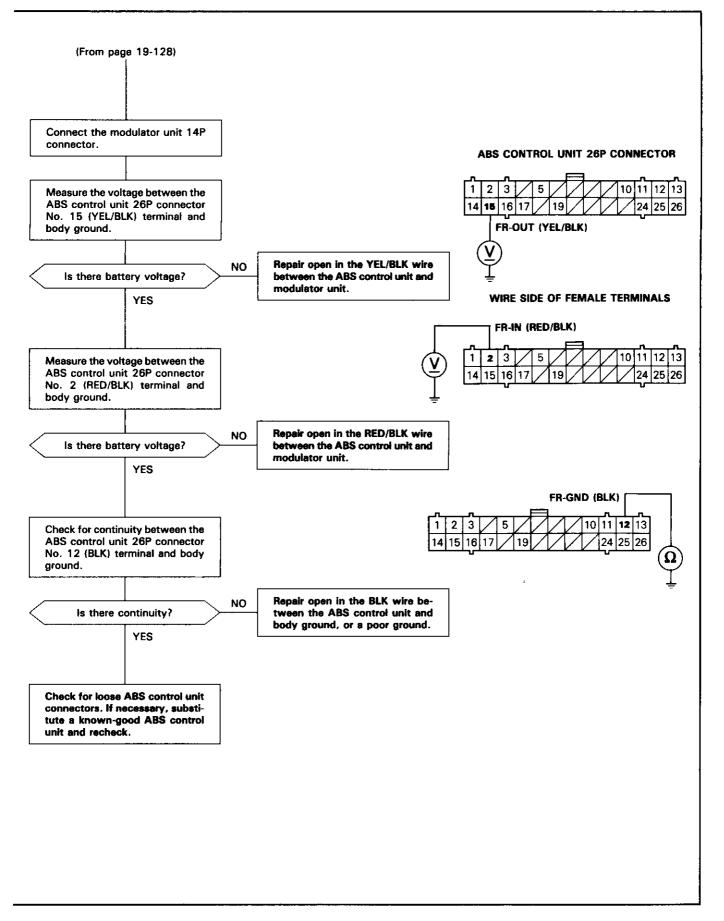












Left-front Solenoid

Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) 7-2: Left-front Solenoid Diagnosis

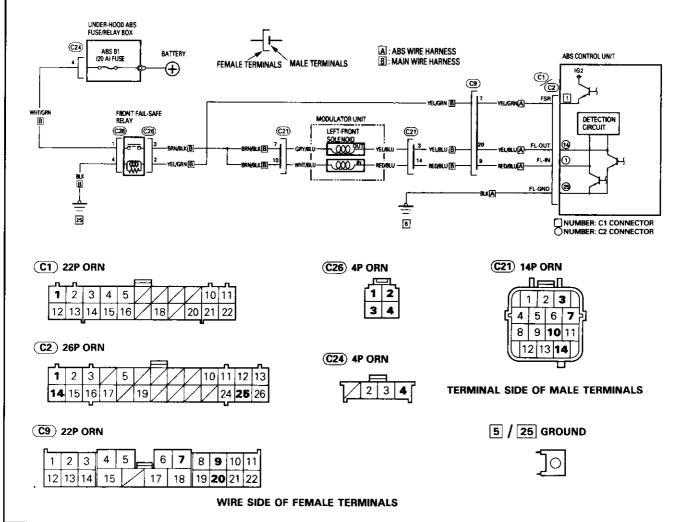
During the initial diagnosis, after the fail-safe relays are turned on, and during the regular diagnosis, the ABS control unit monitors the voltage from the battery for the six solenoids (when the ABS is not functioning).

If the detection circuit for the left-front solenoid detects 0 V, the ABS control unit keeps the ABS indicator light on after the engine is started. It turns the ABS indicator light on again if it detects 0 V after the light goes off. Possible causes:

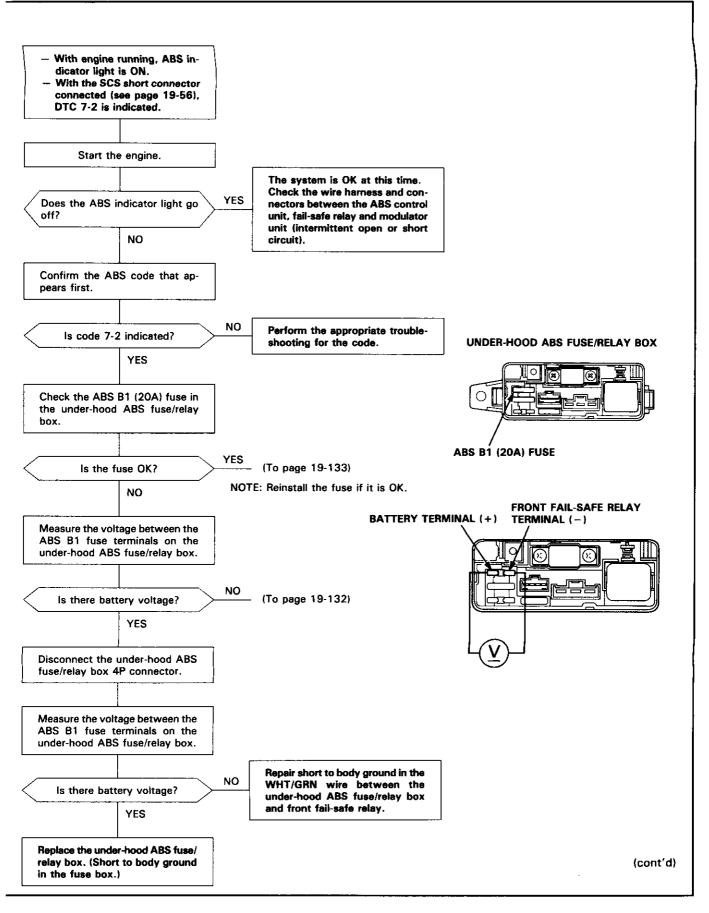
- Front fail-safe relay stuck OFF
- Open circuit in the left-front solenoid drive circuits between the under-hood ABS fuse/relay box and ABS control unit
- Short circuit to body ground in the left-front solenoid drive circuits between the solenoids and ABS control unit
- Faulty left-front solenoid drive transistor (ON) in the ABS control unit

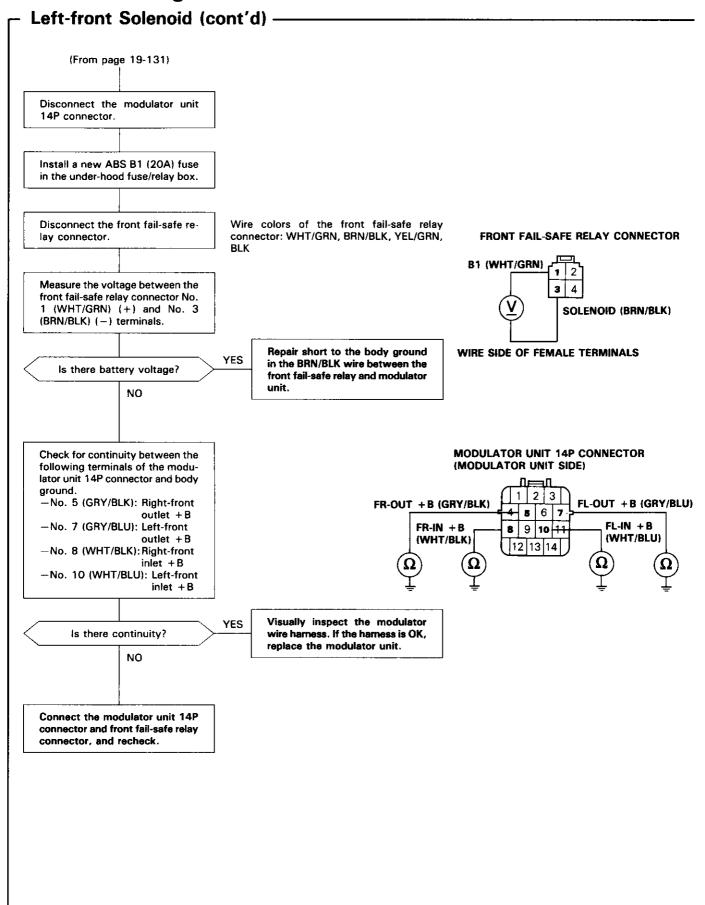
The ABS control unit momentarily outputs the ON signal to each solenoid (too momentary to turn the solenoid on) during the initial diagnosis, and each time the car is started, to check the voltage from the battery with the detection circuit. If the detection circuit for the left-front solenoids detects battery voltage at this time, the ABS control unit keeps the ABS indicator light on. It turns the ABS indicator light on again if it detects the battery voltage when the car is started. Possible causes:

- Short circuit to power in the left-front solenoid drive circuits between the solenoids and ABS control unit
- Faulty left-front solenoid drive transistor (OFF) in the ABS control unit
- Short circuit to power in the left-front solenoid drive circuits in the modulator wire harness or solenoids
- Short circuit to the left-front solenoid outlet circuit in the inlet circuit between the solenoids and ABS control unit
- Short circuit to the right-front solenoid inlet or outlet circuit in the left-front solenoid inlet or outlet circuit between the solenoids and ABS control unit

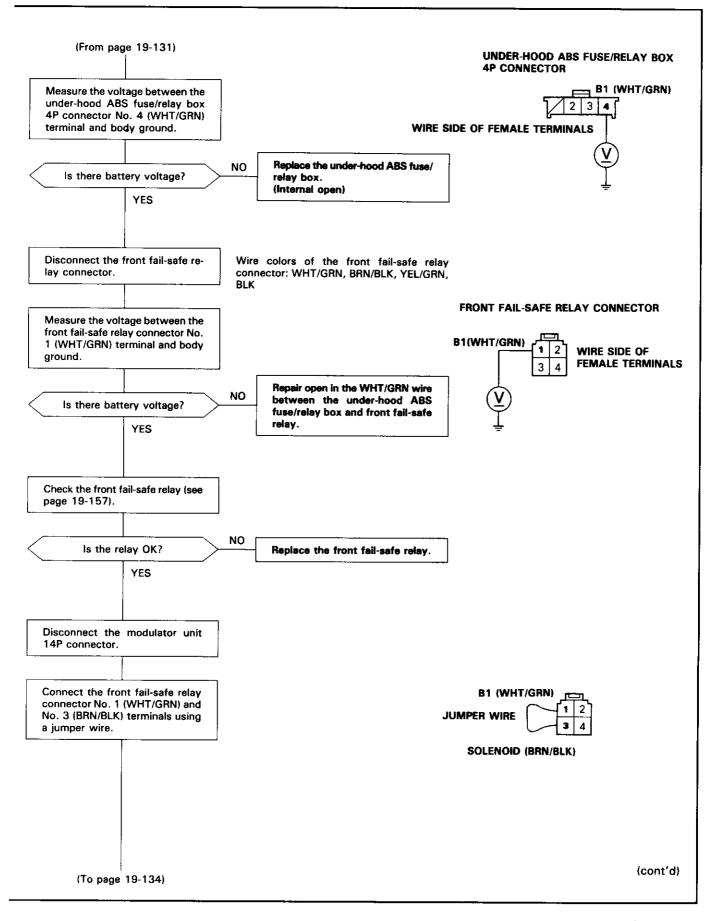


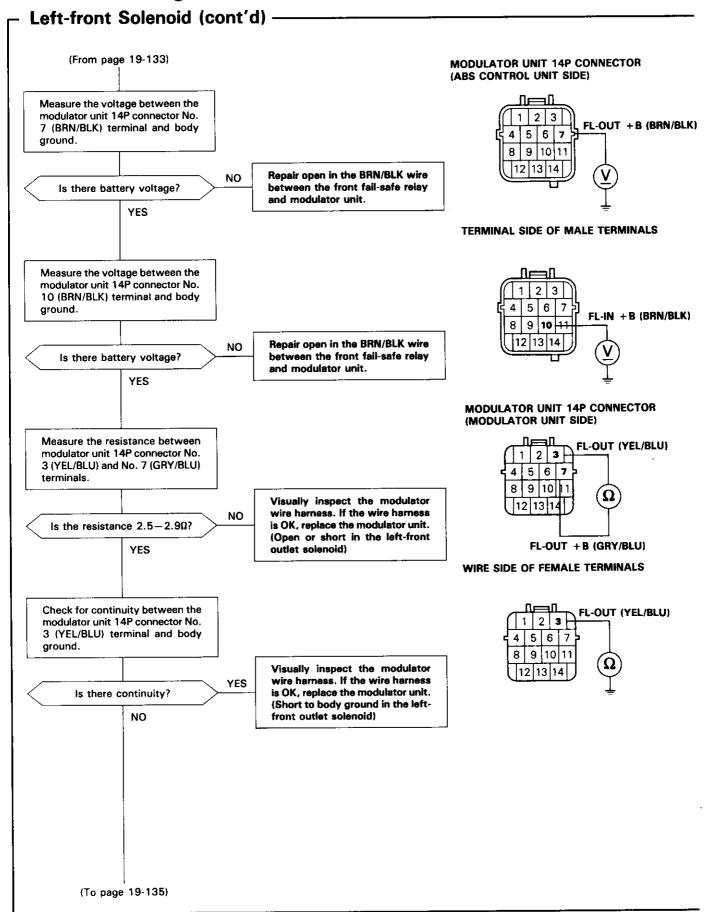




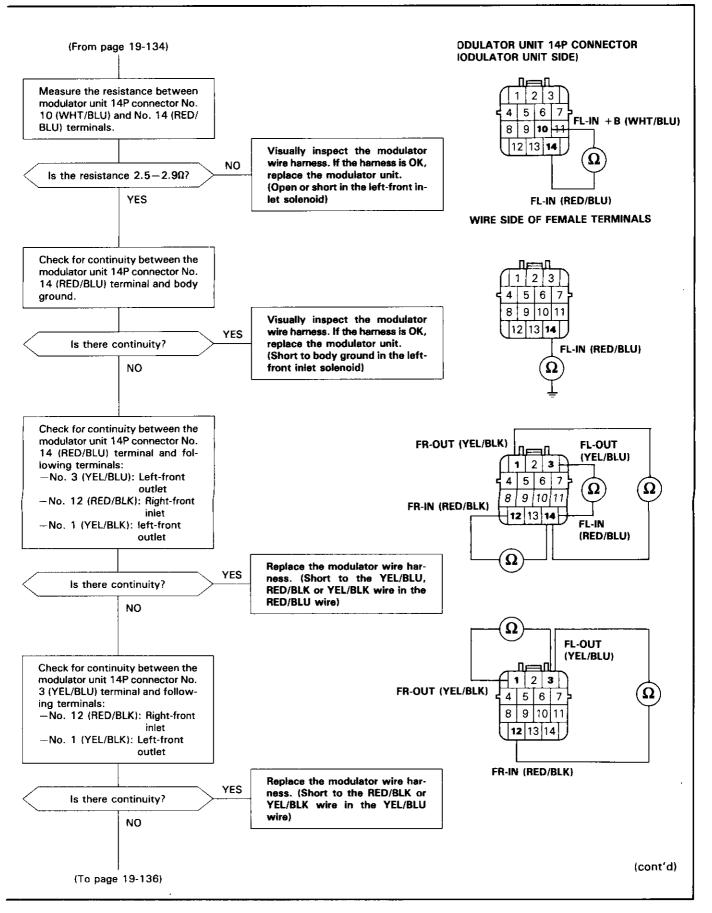


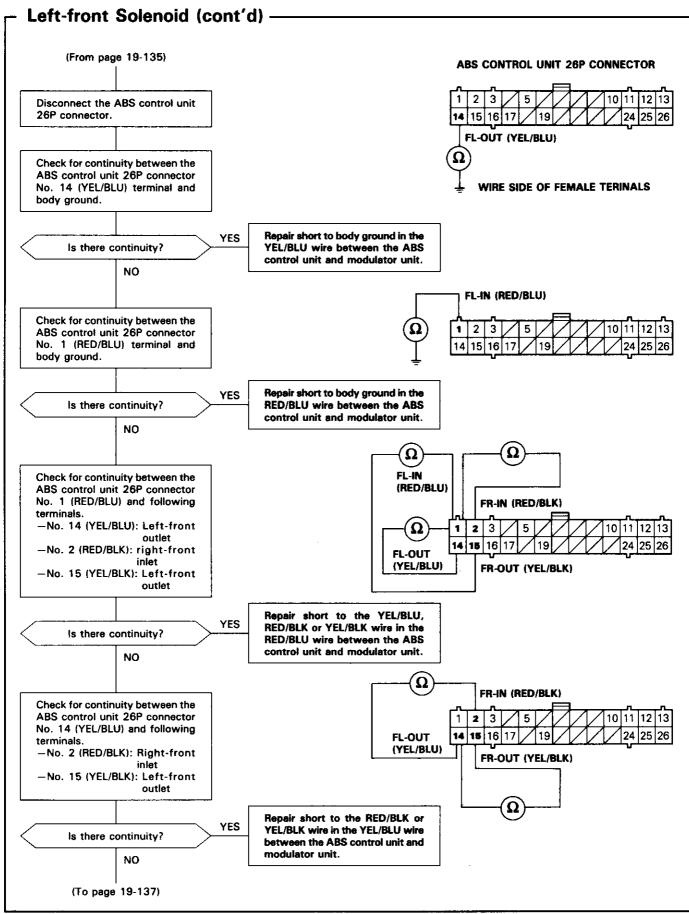




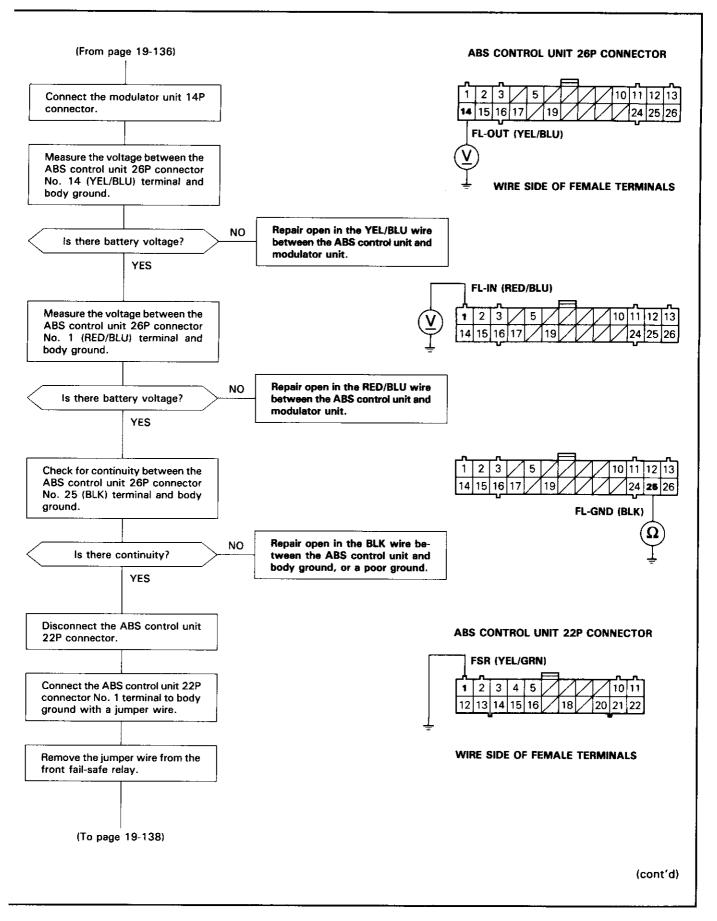


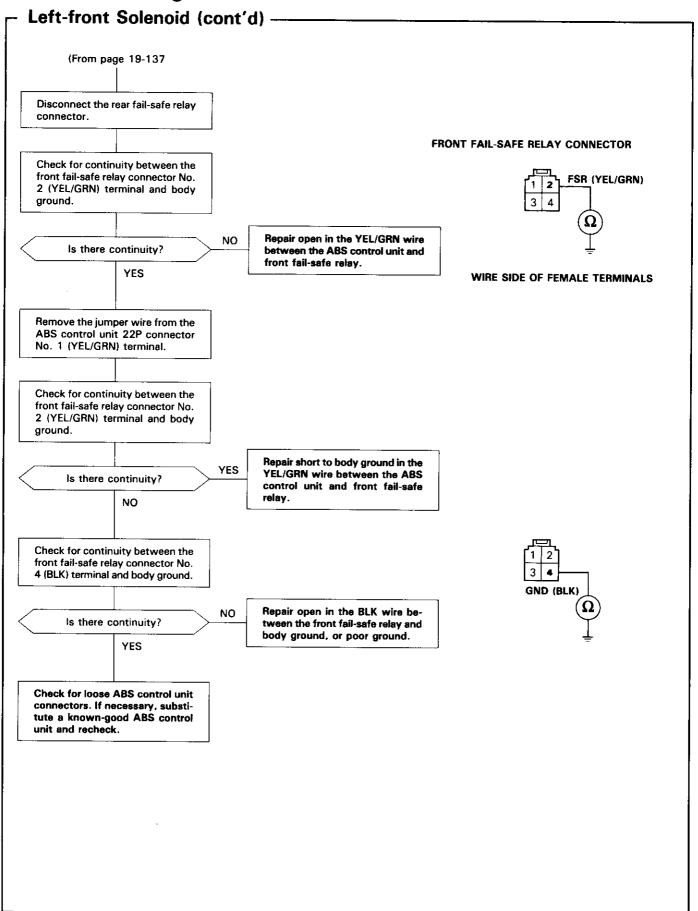














Rear Solenoid

Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) 7-4: Rear Solenoid Diagnosis

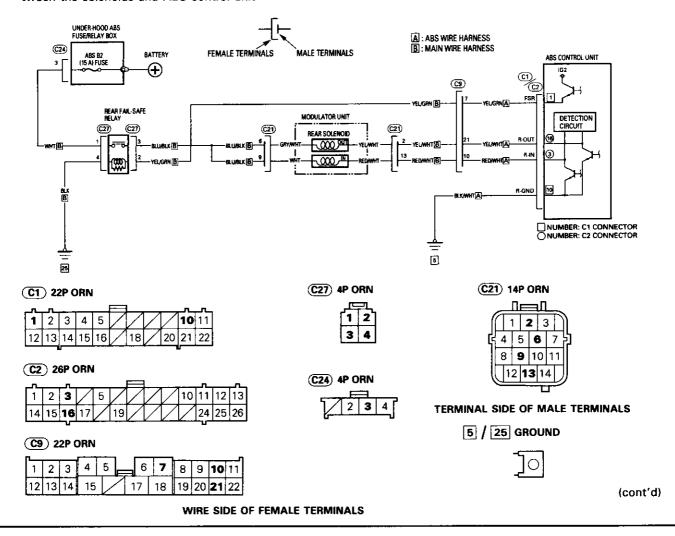
During the initial diagnosis, after the fail-safe relays are turned on, and during the regular diagnosis, the ABS control unit monitors the voltage from the battery for the six solenoids (when the ABS is not functioning).

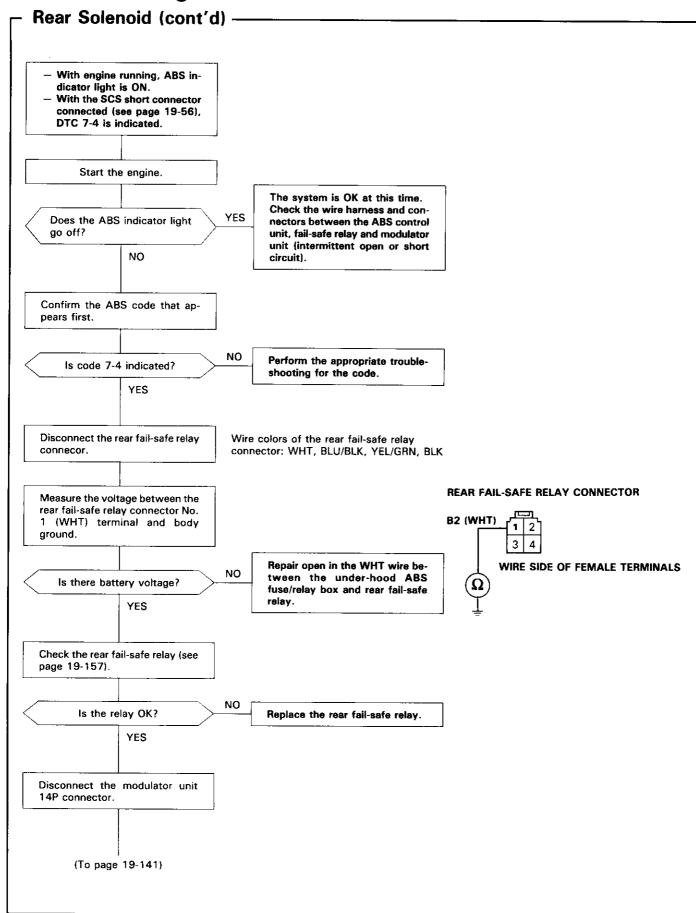
If the detection circuit for the rear solenoids detects 0 V, the ABS control unit keeps the ABS indicator light on after the engine is started. It turns the ABS indicator light on again if it detects 0 V after the light goes off. Possible causes:

- · Rear fail-safe relay stuck OFF
- Open circuit in the rear solenoid drive circuits between the under-hood ABS fuse/relay box and ABS control unit
- Short circuit to body ground in the rear solenoid drive circuits between the solenoids and ABS control unit
- Faulty rear solenoid drive transistor (ON) in the ABS control unit

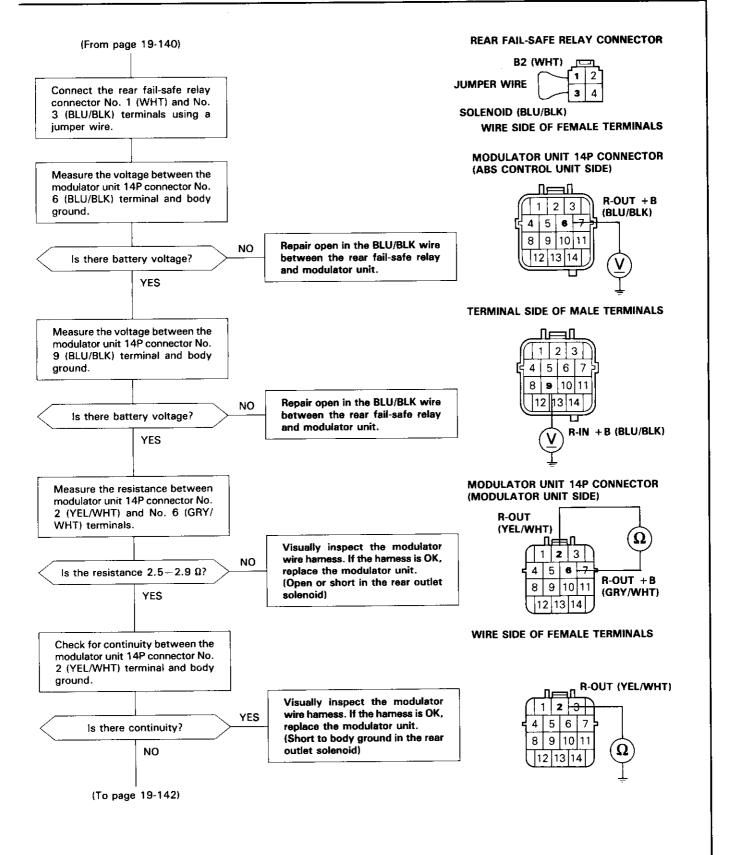
The ABS control unit momentarily outputs the ON signal to each solenoid (too momentary to turn the solenoid on) during the initial diagnosis, and each time the car is started, to check the voltage from the battery with the detection circuit. If the detection circuit for the rear solenoids detects battery voltage at this time, the ABS control unit keeps the ABS indicator light on. It turns the ABS indicator light on again if it detects the battery voltage when the car is started. Possible causes:

- Short circuit to power in the rear solenoid drive circuits between the solenoids and ABS control unit
- Faulty rear solenoid drive transistor (OFF) in the ABS control unit
- Short circuit to power in the rear solenoid drive circuits in the modulator wire harness or solenoids
- Short circuit to the rear solenoid outlet circuit in the inlet circuit between the solenoids and ABS control unit
- Short circuit to the right-front or left-front solenoid inlet or outlet circuit in the rear solenoid inlet or outlet circuit between the solenoids and ABS control unit

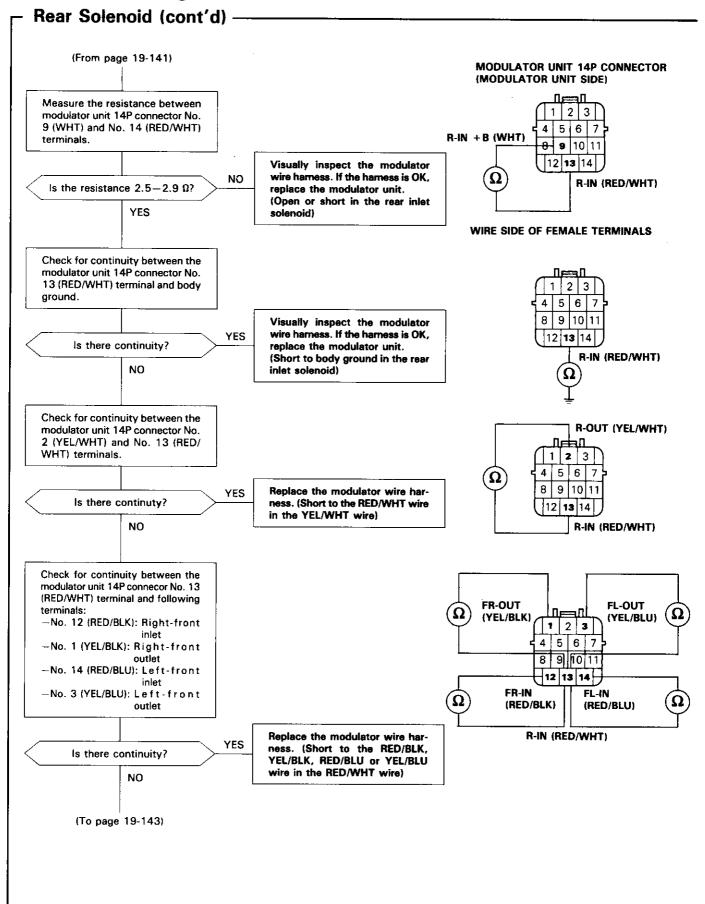




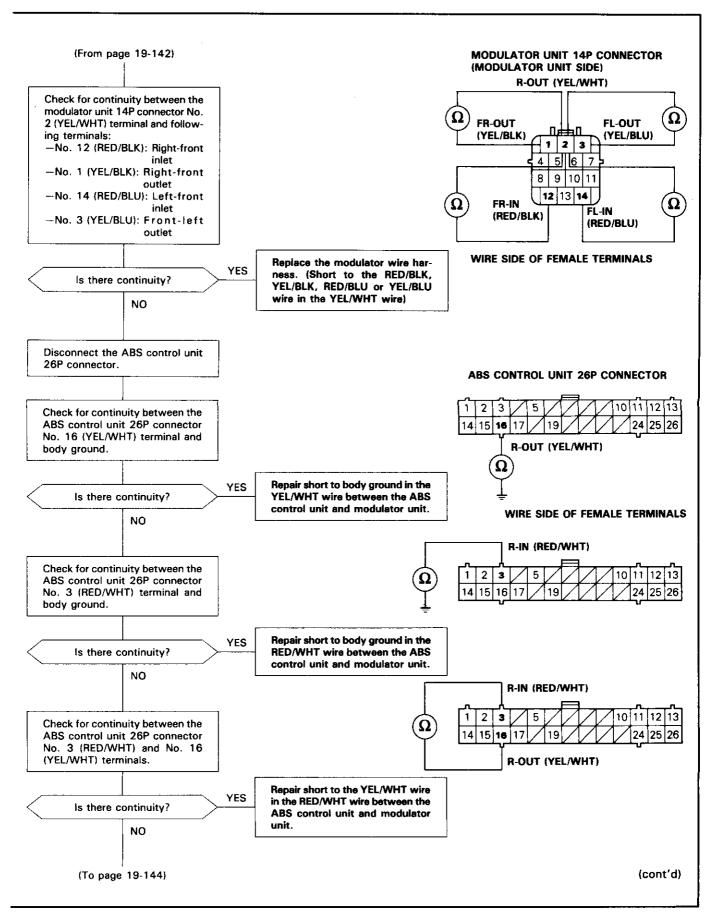


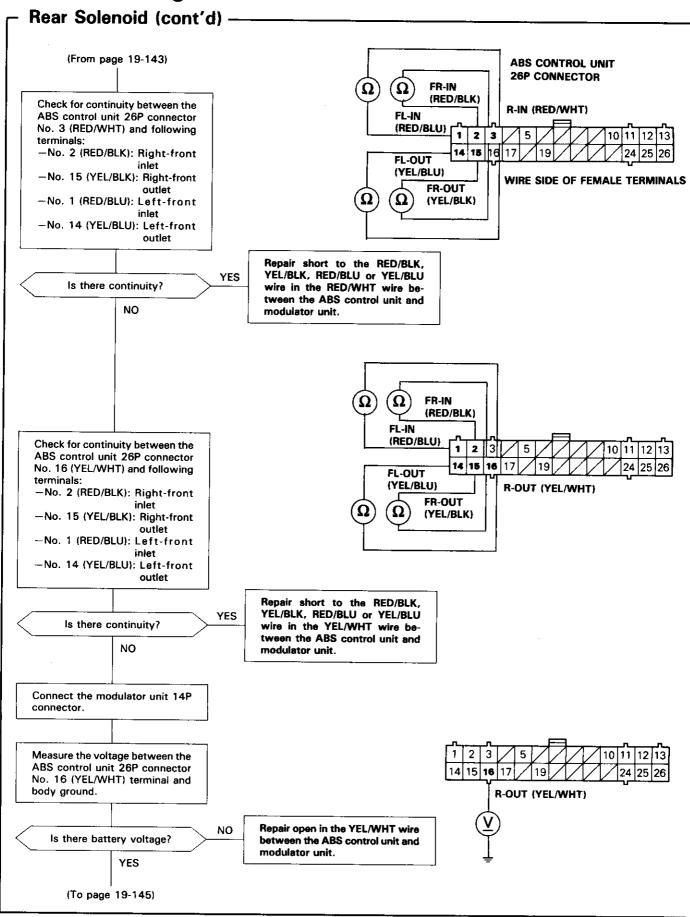


(cont'd)

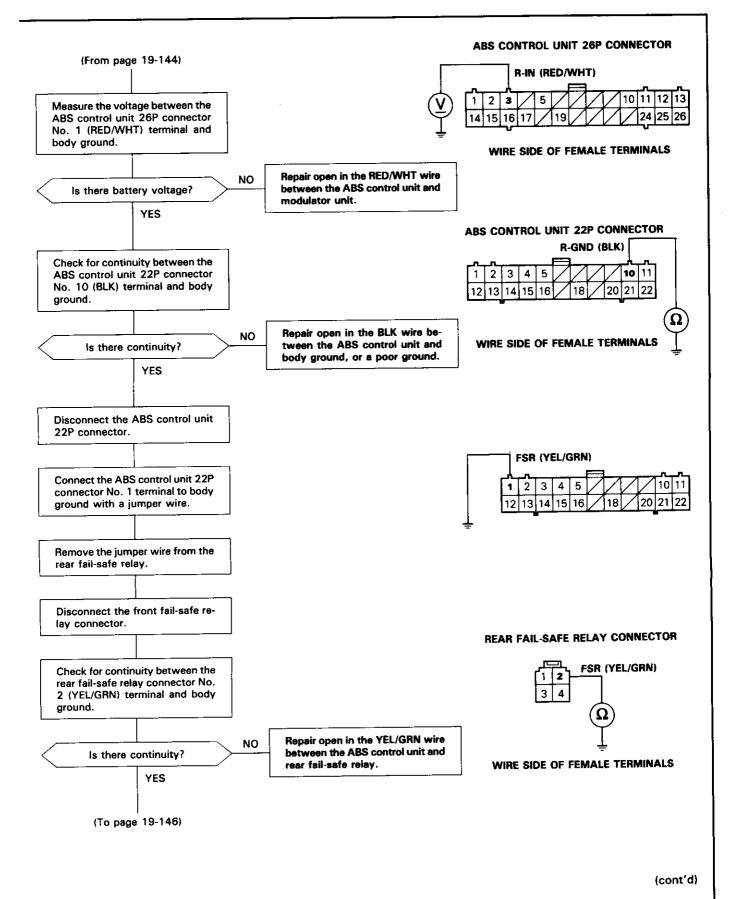


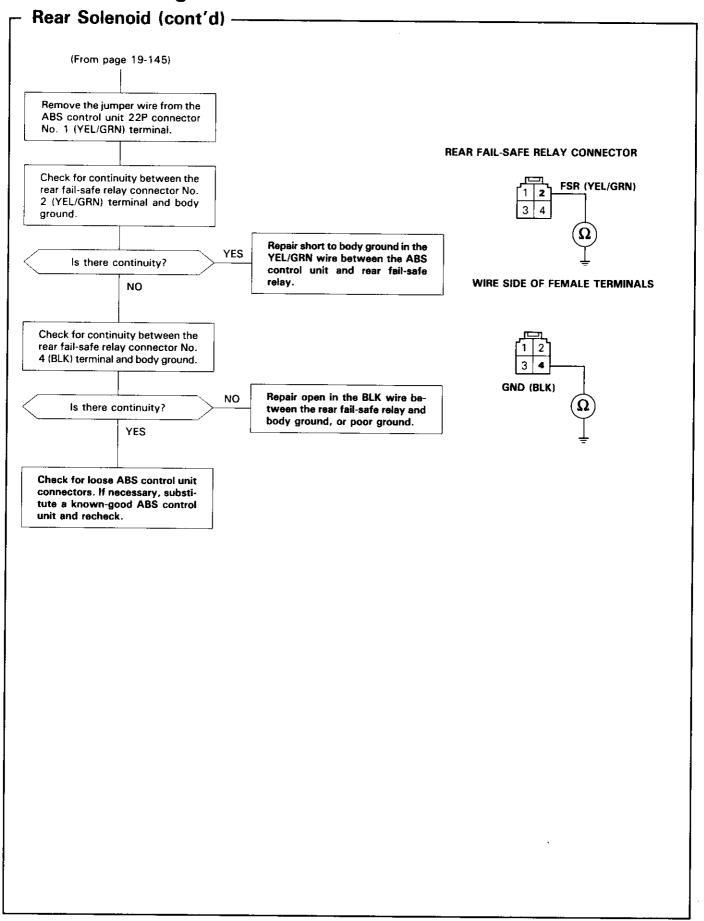














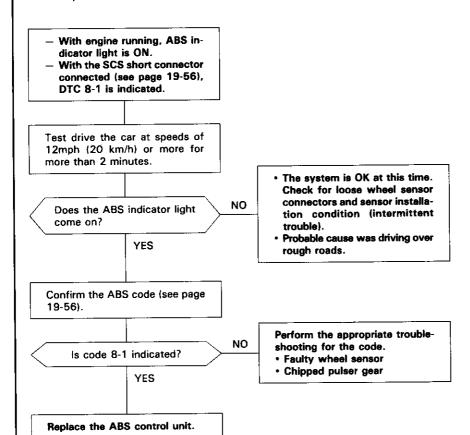
ABS Function

Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) 8-1: ABS Function Diagnosis

The ABS control unit monitors the ABS functioning time during regular diagnosis, and it turns the ABS indicator light on if the ABS is functioning for a prolonged time.

Possible causes:

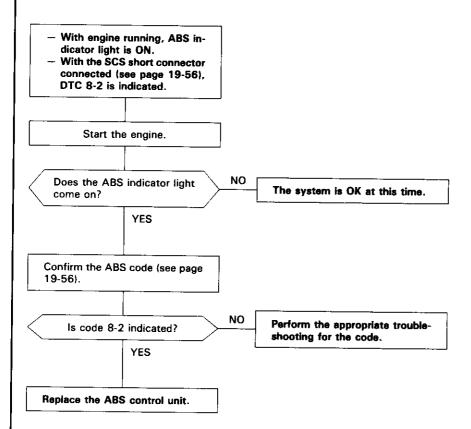
- Wheel sensor signal disappears at speeds of 6 mph (10 km/h) or less
- Faulty ABS control unit



ABS Control Unit

Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) 8-2: CPU Comparison Diagnosis

The ABS control unit checks the data of the two CPUs by comparison, and it keeps the ABS indicator light on if there are any differences in the data between the CPUs. It turns the ABS indicator light on again if it detects any difference after the light goes off.



Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) 8-4: IC (Integrated Circuit) Diagnosis

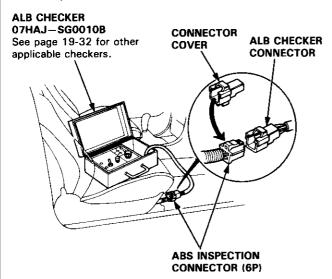
The ABS control unit checks the internal ICs during the initial diagnosis and regular diagnosis, and it keeps the ABS indicator light on if it detects any abnormality. It turns the ABS indicator light on again if it detects any abnormality after the light goes off.

Replace the ABS control unit if DTC 8-4 is indicated with the SCS short connector connected (see page 19-56).

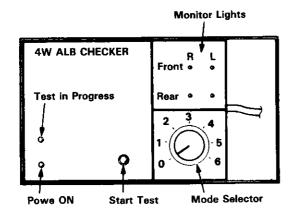
ABS Function Test



- 1. Raise the car off the ground and support it with safety stands (see section 1).
- 2. Check that there is no brake drag.
- Turn the ignition switch ON and confirm that the ABS indicator light comes on.
 - If the ABS indicator light does not come on, follow the troubleshooting on page 19-62.
- With the ignition switch OFF, disconnect the ABS inspection connector (6P) from the connector cover located on the cross-member under the passenger's seat, and connect it to the ALB checker.



- 5. Shift the transmission to neutral for manual transmission models, or to P position for automatic transmission models.
- 6. Start the engine and release the parking brake.
- 7. Turn the Mode Selector switch to "1".



- Push the Start Test switch.
 The ABS indicator light should not come on while the Test in Progress light is on.
 - If the ABS indicator light comes on, confirm the ABS code and perform the appropriate troubleshooting for the code.

NOTE: Do not turn the Mode Selector switch when the Test in Progress light is on. Damage to the ALB checker can result.

- 9. Turn the Mode Selector switch to "2".
- Depress the brake pedal firmly and push the Start Test switch.

The ABS indicator light should not come on while the Test in Progress light is on. There should be kickback on the brake pedal.

Have the assistant check that the wheel controlled by the ABS can be rotated by hand when there is kickback on the brake pedal.

- If the ABS indicator light comes on, confirm the ABS code and perform the appropriate troubleshooting for the code.
- If the ABS indicator light does not come on and the wheel controlled by the ABS cannot be rotated, check the connection of the modulator wire harness connectors. If the connections are OK, replace the modulator unit.

NOTE: The kickback should occur approximately 20 seconds after the Start Test switch is pushed. The ABS can be checked with a brake tester, too, by checking the brake torque fluctuation of the wheel controlled by the ABS.

11. Turn the Mode Selector switch to "3", "4" and "5". Perform the step 10 for each of the test mode positions.

(cont'd)

ABS Function Test (cont'd)

Operation Sequence Simulated by Modes of ALB Checker

NOTE: The wheel sensors and sensor wire harnesses are not checked by the ALB checker.

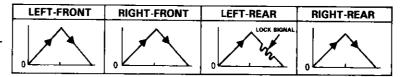
Mode 1: Sends the simulated driving signal 0 mph (0 km/h) → 113 mph (180 km/h) → 0 mph (0 km/h) of each wheel to the ABS control unit to check the system under the normal driving. There should be no kickback.

SIMULATED DRIVING SIGNAL

| Į | LEFT-FRONT | RIGHT-FRONT | LEFT-REAR | RIGHT-REAR |
|---|------------|-------------|-----------|------------|
| | | | 0 | |

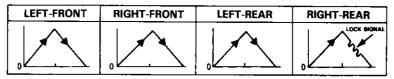
Mode 2: Sends the driving signal of each wheel, then sends the lock signal of the left-rear wheel to the ABS control unit to check the system under left-rear wheel lock. There should be kickback.

SIMULATED DRIVING SIGNAL



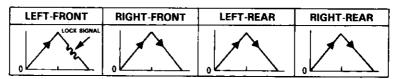
Mode 3: Sends the driving signal of each wheel, then sends the lock signal of the right-rear wheel to the ABS control unit to check the system under right-rear wheel lock. There should be kickback.

SIMULATED DRIVING SIGNAL



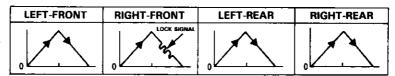
Mode 4: Sends the driving signal of each wheel, then sends the lock signal of the left-front wheel to the ABS control unit to check the system under left-front wheel lock. There should be kickback.

SIMULATED DRIVING SIGNAL



Mode 5: Sends the driving signal of each wheel, then sends the lock signal of the right-front wheel to the ABS control unit to check the system under right-front wheel lock. There should be kickback.

SIMULATED DRIVING SIGNAL



Inspection Points

If the ABS indicator light comes on and the system stops during the inspection, confirm the ABS code and perform the appropriate troubleshooting for the code.

If there is no kickback in modes 2 through 5 and the ABS indicator light does not come on, the following items are probable causes:

- Pressure switch stuck ON
- Clogged or stuck solenoid outlet valve
- Modulator wire harness connectors improperly connected

ABS Function Test

OABS

Modulator Function Check

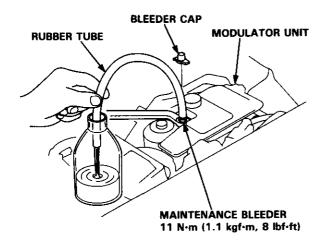
NOTE: This inspection determines whether the basic brake system continues to operate normally when the modulator unit fluid pressure is low.

CAUTION:

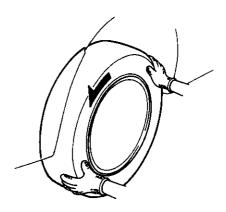
- This inspection is made by relieving the high-pressure fluid in the modulator unit and checking for brake operation. After inspection, be sure to add fresh brake fluid to the specified level of the reservoir, and start the engine to restore the ABS to its normal operating condition.
- Do not spill brake fluid on the car; it may damage the paint; if brake fluid does contact the paint, wash it off immediately with water.
- Do not reuse the drained brake fluid.
- Do not loosen the relief plug on the accumulator.
- Remove the bleeder cap from the maintenance bleeder on the modulator unit.
- 2. Attach the wrench to the maintenance bleeder.
- Connect a rubber tube of the appropriate diameter to the maintenance bleeder, and set the other end of the rubber tube in a suitable container.
- While holding the rubber tube with your hand, slowly loosen the maintenance bleeder 1/8 to 1/4 turn to collect the brake fluid in the container.

CAUTION: Do not loosen the maintenance bleeder too much. The high-pressure brake fluid can burst out.

- After the brake fluid stops flowing out, loosen the maintenance bleeder more to release the pressure completely.
- Tighten the maintenance bleeder to the specified torque.



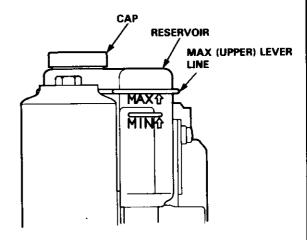
- Raise the car off the ground and support with safety stands (see section 1).
- Have an assistant depress the brake pedal firmly, and check that the wheels do not rotate.



9. Remove the cap and refill the reservoir to the MAX (upper) level with fresh brake fluid.

NOTE: Pour the brake fluid slowly so that it does not foam, and wait for a few minutes.

- 10. Start the engine and let it idle for a minute. Stop the engine.
- Check the brake fluid level in the reservoir. It should be below the MAX (upper) level line. Refill the reservoir with fresh brake fluid to the MAX level line again.



After inspection, start the engine and make sure that the ABS indicator light goes off.

Modulator Unit

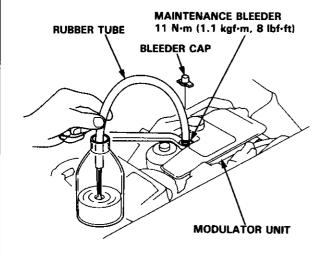
Relieving System Pressure -

CAUTION:

- Be sure to drain the high-pressure brake fluid completely before performing the modulator function check, disposing the modulator unit, and ABS pump motor replacement.
- Do not spill brake fluid on the car; it may damage the paint; if brake fluid does contact the paint, wash it off immediately with water.
- Do not reuse the drained brake fluid.
- Do not loosen the relief plug on the accumulator.
- Remove the bleeder cap from the maintenance bleeder on the modulator unit.
- 2. Attach the wrench to the maintenance bleeder.
- Connect a rubber tube of the appropriate diameter to the maintenance bleeder, and set the other end of the rubber tube in a suitable container.
- While holding the rubber tube with your hand, slowly loosen the maintenance bleeder 1/8 to 1/4 turn to collect the brake fluid in the container.

CAUTION: Do not loosen the maintenance bleeder too much. The high-pressure brake fluid can burst out.

5. Tighten the maintenance bleeder to the specified torque.



- Brake Fluid Replacement

CAUTION:

Do not loosen the relief plug on the accumulator.

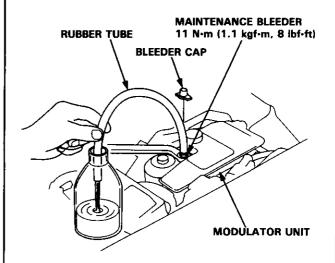
NOTE: Brake fluid replacement procedure explained in this section is for the brake fluid in the modulator unit (that is, the brake fluid in the high-pressure passage and in the reservoir). See page 19-6 for the brake fluid replacement procedures for the rest of the brake system.

- Remove the bleeder cap from the maintenance bleeder on the modulator unit.
- 2. Attach the wrench to the maintenance bleeder.
- Connect a rubber tube of the appropriate diameter to the maintenance bleeder, and set the other end of the rubber tube in a suitable container.
- While holding the rubber tube with your hand, slowly loosen the maintenance bleeder 1/8 to 1/4 to collect the brake fluid in the container.

CAUTION: Do not loosen the maintenance bleeder too much. The high-pressure brake fluid can burst out.

5. Tighten the maintenance bleeder.

NOTE: Do not remove the rubber tube and wrench yet.



(cont'd)

Modulator Unit

Brake Fluid Replacement (cont'd)

O

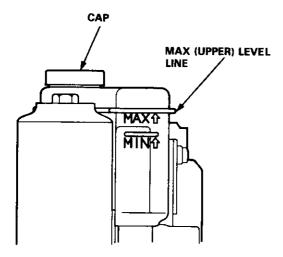
- Start the engine and let it idle for a minute. Stop the engine.
- 7. Check the brake fluid level in the reservoir. It should be below the MAX (upper) level line.
- 8. Repeat the steps 4 through 7 to drain the rest of the brake fluid from the modulator unit.

NOTE: The modulator has a capacity of approximately 150 ml (150 cc, 5 ft·oz). Approximately 40-45 ml (40-45 cc, 1.3-1.5 ft·oz) of the fluid is drained at each try.

Remove the cap, and refill the reservoir to the MAX (upper) level with fresh brake fluid.

NOTE: Pour the brake fluid slowly so that it does not foam, and wait for a few minutes.

Repeat steps 4 through 8 twice, and refill the reservoir to the MAX (upper) level with fresh brake fluid.



- 11. Tighten the maintenance bleeder to the specified torque.
- 12. After replacement, start the engine and make sure that the ABS indicator light goes off.

Bleeding:

When the brake fluid is completely drained from the reservoir (air enters in the modulator unit) during brake fluid replacement, bleed the air from the modulator unit as follows.

- -1. Fill the reservoir to the MAX (upper) level with fresh brake fluid.
- -2. Connect the rubber tube to the bleeder on the modulator unit, and set the other end of the rubber tube in a container (see the previous page).
- -3. Loosen the bleeder, and start the engine to activate the pump motor.

NOTE: Take care not to spill the brake fluid from the container.

- —4. Tighten the bleeder when the fluid starts to flow out of the bleeder.
- -5. Stop the engine after the pump motor stops

NOTE: If the ABS indicator light comes on and the pump motor stops, repeat steps 3 through 5 above.

Removal/Installation

CAUTION:

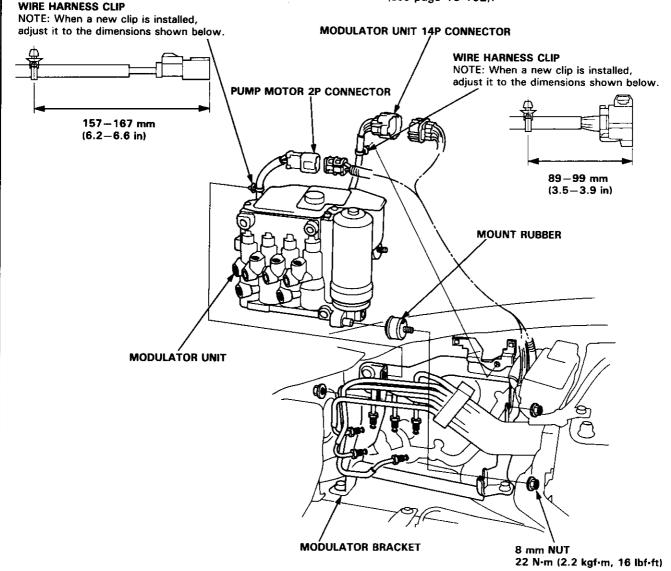
- Do not spill brake fluid on the car; it may damage the paint; if brake fluid does contact the paint, wash it off immediately with water.
- Take care not to damage or deform the brake pipes during removal and installation.
- To prevent the brake fluid from flowing, plug and cover the hose ends and joints with a shop towel or equivalent material.
- Do not loosen the relief plug on the accumulator.

- 1. Disconnect the modulator unit 14P connector and pump motor 2P connector.
- Remove the two wire harness clips from the modulator bracket.

NOTE: When a new harness clip is installed after a wire harness or modulator unit replacement, adjust the harness band to the dimensions shown below.

Remove the three 8 mm nuts, and remove the modulator unit from the bracket.

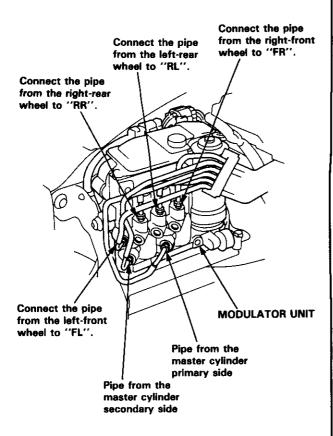
NOTE: When the pump motor or the modulator unit is replaced, bleed the high-pressure brake fluid first (see page 19-152).





Install the modulator unit in the reverse order of removal.

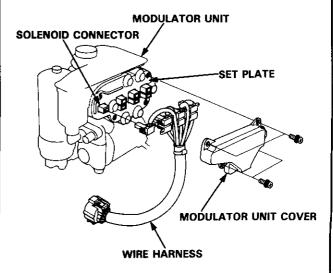
NOTE: Check the letters stamped on the modulator body, and connect the brake pipes properly. Tighten the flare nuts to 19 N·m (1.9 kgf·m, 14 lbf·ft).



- 8. Start the engine and let it idle for a minute. Check that:
 - · ABS indicator light is off.
 - Brake fluid is not leaking from the brake pipe joints.
- 9. Stop the engine.
- Check whether the brake fluid level in the reservoir is at the MAX (upper) level.
 If the level is low, add fresh fluid until the reservoir is refilled to the MAX (upper) level.
- 11. Bleed air from the brake system (see page 19-6).

Wire Harness Replacement

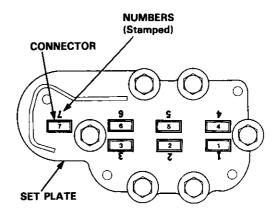
- Remove the modulator unit from the car (see page 19-154).
- Remove the modulator unit cover, and remove the wire harness.



Check the numbers stamped on the set plate, and connect each connector of the new wire harness to the set plate of the corresponding number.

NOTE: Be sure that each connector is locked securely with the two locking tabs.

4. Install the modulator unit cover and modulator unit (see the left column of this page).

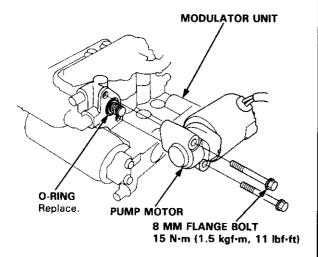


5. Check the ABS function using the ALB checker (see page 19-151).

Pump Motor Replacement

A WARNING The modulator unit contains high-pressure brake fluid. Be sure to bleed the high-pressure fluid from the modulator unit before removing the pump motor.

- Bleed the high-pressure brake fluid from the modulator unit (see page 19-152).
- Remove the modulator unit from the car (see page 19-156).
- 3. Remove the 8 mm flange bolts from the modulator unit, and remove the pump motor.



Install the pump motor in the reverse order of removal.

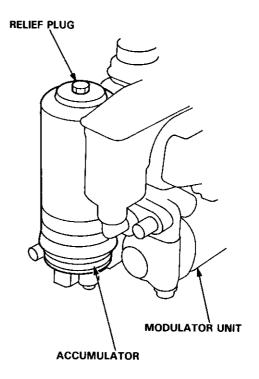
NOTE:

- After installing the modulator unit, add the fresh brake fluid until the reservoir is refilled to the specified level, and bleed air from the system (see page 19-152).
- Turn the ignition switch on, and check for the ABS indicator light operation.

Disposal

A WARNING The accumulator contains high pressure nitrogen gas. Do not puncture, expose to the flame, weld, drop or apply impact to the accumulator, or attempt to remove the accumulator from the modulator unit. The modulator unit may explode and severe personal injury may result.

- 1. Drain the high-pressure brake fluid from the modulator unit (see page 19-152).
- 2. Secure the modulator unit in a vise so that the relief plug points straight up.
- 3. Loosen the relief plug three and a half turns slowly and wait for three minutes for all pressure to escape.
- 4. Remove the accumulator from the modulator unit.
- Remove the relief plug completely and dispose of the accumulator.



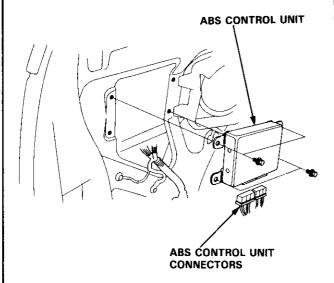
Electronic Components

ABS

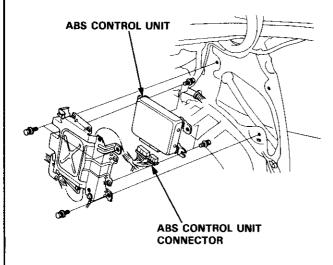
ABS Control Unit Replacement

- Remove the right quarter trim panel (hatchback) or trunk side panel (sedan)
- 2. Disconnect the ABS control unit connectors.
- Remove the ABS control unit mounting bolts, then remove the control unit.

< HATCHBACK:>



<SEDAN:>

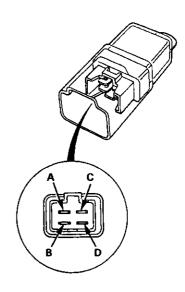


4. Install the ABS control unit in the reverse order of removal.

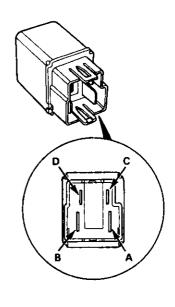
- Relay Inspection

- 1. Remove the fail-safe relays and motor relay (location: page 19-33).
- Check for continuity between the terminals C and D. There should be continuity.
- Check for continuity between the terminals A and B.
 There should be continuity when the battery is connected between the terminals C and D.
 There should no continuity when the battery is disconnected.

< Fail-safe Relay:>



<Motor Relay:>

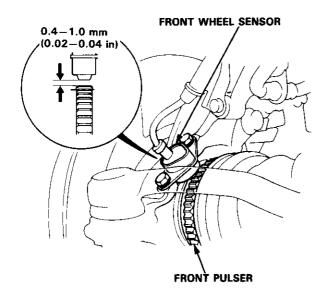


Pulsers/Wheel Sensors

Inspection -

Front:

1. Check the front pulser for chipped or damaged teeth.



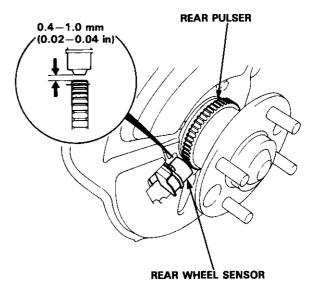
Measure the air gap between the wheel sensor and pulser all the way around while rotating the driveshaft by hand.

Standard: 0.4-1.0 mm (0.02-0.04 in)

NOTE: If the gap exceeds 1.0 mm (0.04 in), the probability is a distorted knuckle which should be replaced.

Rear:

1. Check the rear pulser for chipped or damaged teeth.



Measure the air gap between the wheel sensor and pulser all the way around while rotating the hub bearing unit by hand.

Standard: 0.4-1.0 mm (0.02-0.04 in)

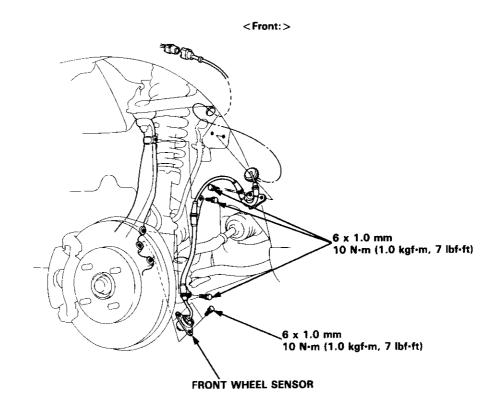
NOTE: If the gap exceeds 1.0 mm (0.04 in), the probability is a distorted knuckle which should be replaced.

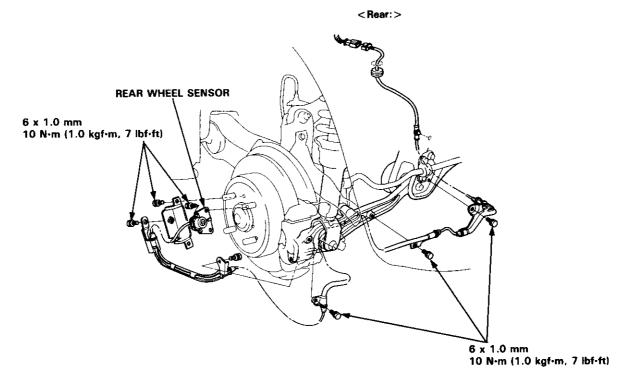


Wheel Sensor Replacement

NOTE:

- Be careful when installing the sensors to avoid twisting the wires.
- After sensor replacement, confirm proper operation (see page 19-149).





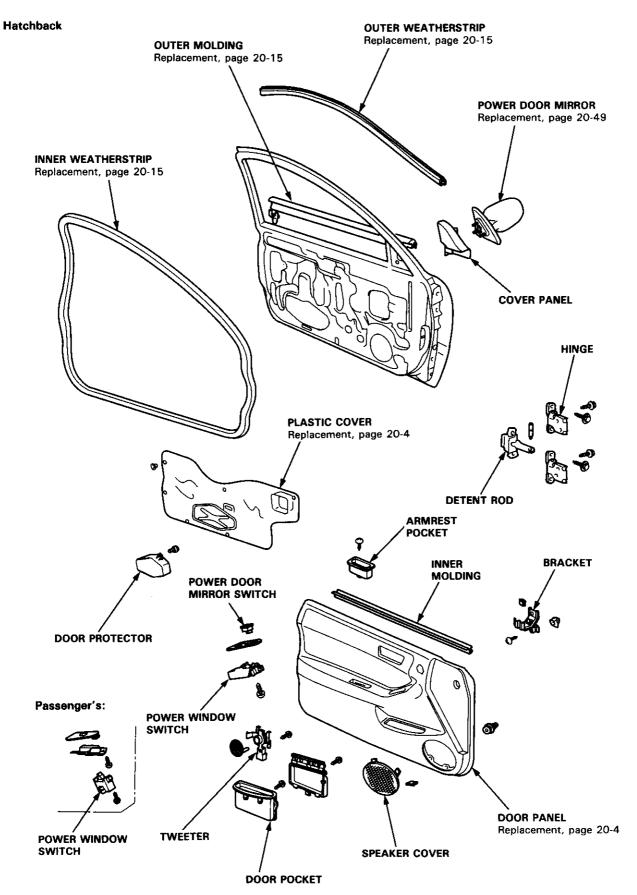
Body

| Bumpers | Moonroof |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| Front Bumper Replacement 20-139 | Index Hatchback 20-77 |
| Rear Bumper Replacement | Sedan 20-84 |
| Hatchback 20-141 | Opener and Latch |
| Sedan 20-142 | Replacement 20-154 |
| *Carpet | Opener Cables |
| Replacement 20-124 | Replacement 20-152 |
| *Consoles, Front and Rear | Rear Emblems |
| Replacement 20-128 | Installation 20-164 |
| Dashboard | Retainers and Weatherstrip |
| Component Removal/Installation 20-131 | Replacement 20-158 |
| Replacement Precautions 20-136 | Roof Molding |
| Replacement 20-137 | Replacement |
| Doors | Seats |
| Door Index Hatchback 20-2 | Front Seat Removal 20-103 |
| Front Door Index Sedan 20-18 | Front Seat Replacement 20-104 |
| Rear Door Index Sedan 20-30 | Front Seat Cover Replacement 20-106 |
| Door and Side Molding | Rear Seat Replacement |
| Replacement | Hatchback 20-108 |
| Fender Well Trim and Wheelhouse | Sedan 20-110 |
| Protector | Rear Seat Cover Replacement 20-112 |
| Replacement 20-159 | Seat Belts |
| *Frame Repair Chart 20-166 | Front Seat Belt Replacement |
| Hatch | Hatchback |
| Replacement 20-146 | Sedan |
| Adjustment | Rear Seat Belt Replacement |
| Support Strut Disposal 20-149 | Hatchback |
| Hatch Latch and Lock Cylinder | Sedan |
| Replacement | Inspection |
| Hatch Spoiler | Child Seat Anchor Plate 20-123 |
| Replacement | Side Sill Panel |
| Hatch/Trunk Lid Weatherstrip | Replacement |
| Replacement | Sub-frame |
| Headliner 20-100 | Trunk Lid |
| Replacement Hatchback 20-98 | Replacement |
| Sedan 20-98 | Adjustment |
| Hood | Trunk Lid Latch and Lock Cylinder |
| Replacement | Replacement |
| Adjustment | Trunk Trim |
| Interior Trim | Replacement 20-97 |
| | Windshield, Rear Window, Quarter Glass |
| Replacement Hatchback 20-91 | Index Hatchback |
| Sedan 20-94 | |
| Mirrors | Sedan 20-54 |
| Power Door Mirror Replacement 20-49 | |
| Mirror Holder Replacement 20-50 | |
| Mirror Visor and Mirror Cover | |
| Replacement Hatchback 20-50 | |

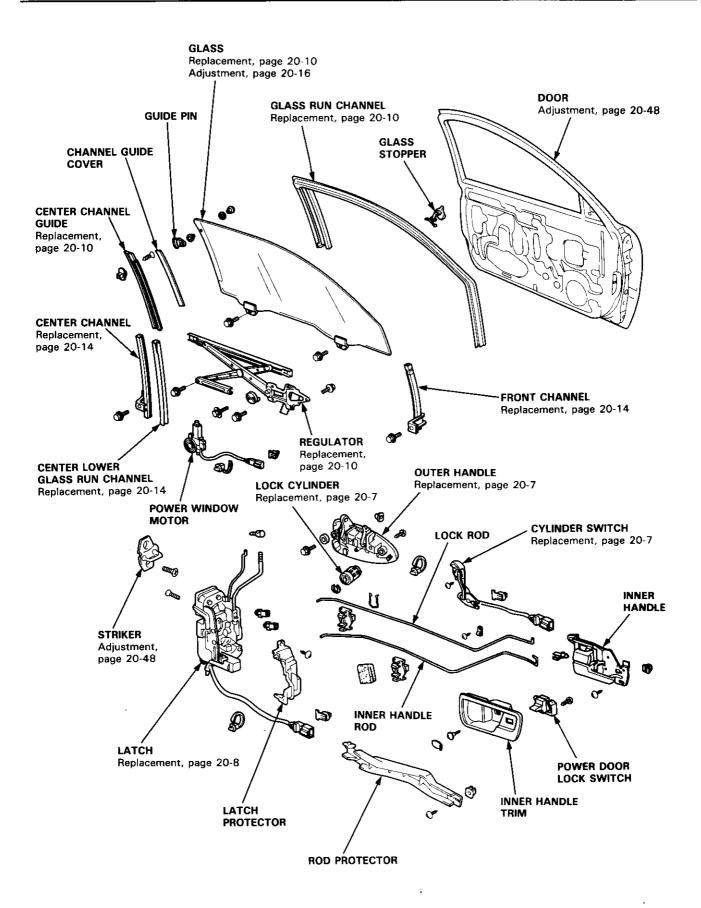
Sedan 20-51

Rearview Mirror Replacement 20-52





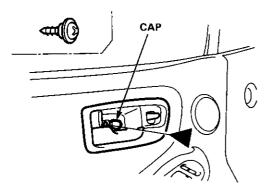




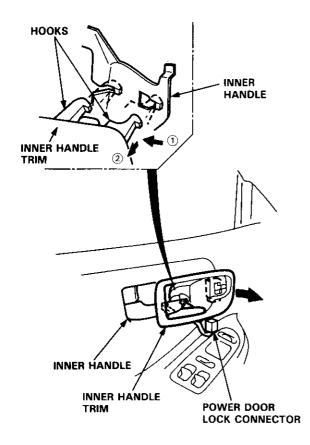
Door Panel/Plastic Cover Replacement -

NOTE: Take care not to scratch the door panel and other parts.

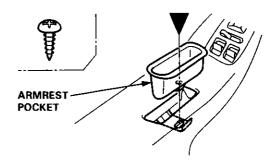
- 1. Pry the cap and remove the screw.
 - **◄: Screw location,1**



- 2. Remove the inner handle trim while pulling the inner handle.
 - Disconnect the power door lock connector.

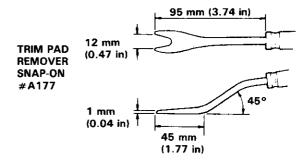


- 3. Remove the armrest pocket.
 - ▼ : Screw location, 1

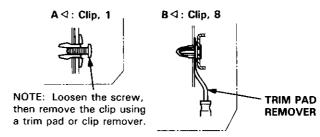


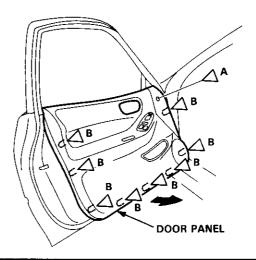
4. Release the clips that hold the door panel.

NOTE: Remove the door panel with as little bending as possible to avoid creasing or breaking it.



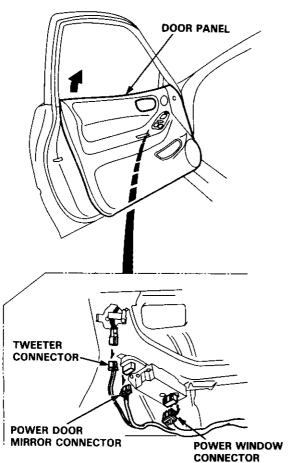
⊲: Clip locations



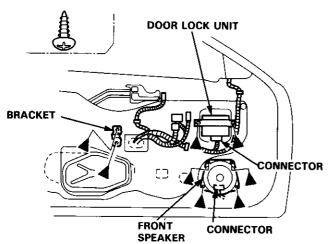




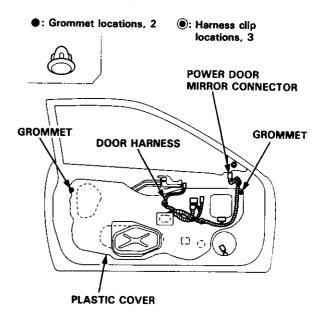
- 5. Remove the door panel by pulling it upward. Disconnect the following:
 - Power window connector
 - Power door mirror connector
 - Tweeter connector



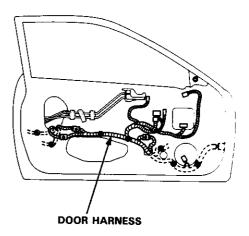
- Remove the bracket and door lock unit. If necessary, remove the front speaker. Disconnect the connectors.
 - ▲: Screw locations, 8



- Remove the cover panel, then disconnect the power door mirror connector (see page 20-49).
- 8. Detach the grommets and harness clips, then carefully remove the plastic cover.



- Before installing the plastic cover, make sure the door harness and connectors are fastened correctly on the door.
 - Connector clip locations, 3Harness clip locations, 7

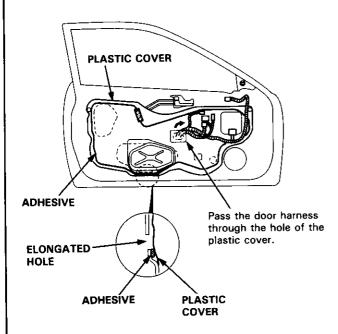


- Door Panel/Plastic Cover Replacement (cont'd) –

10. Install the plastic cover.

NOTE:

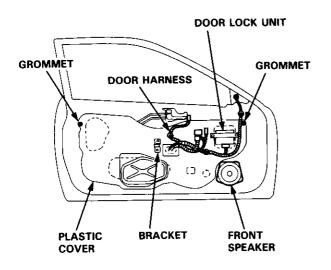
- Apply adhesive along the edge where necessary to maintain a continuous seal and prevent water leaks.
- Do not plug the elongated hole.



- 11. Install all removed parts, and fasten the door harness correctly.
 - ●: Grommet locations, 2







12. Install the door panel (see page 20-4).

NOTE:

- Make sure the door harness is not pinched.
- If necessary, replace any damaged clips.
- Make sure the connectors are connected properly.
- 13. Install the armrest pocket and inner handle trim (see page 20-4).

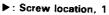
NOTE: Make sure the connector is connected properly.

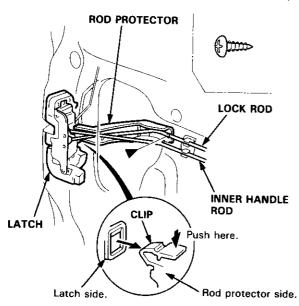


Outer Handle Replacement -

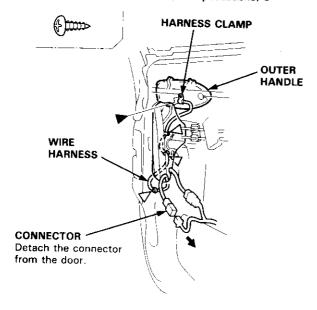
NOTE: Raise the glass fully.

- 1. Remove:
 - Door panel (see page 20-4)
 - Plastic cover (see page 20-4)
- 2. Remove the rod protector.

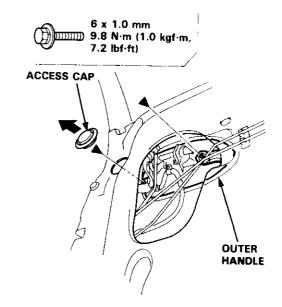




- Disconnect the connector, and remove the harness clamp and clips.
 - ▶: Screw location, 1 ▷: Clip locations, 3



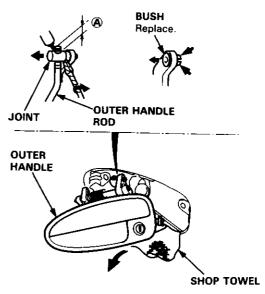
- Remove the bolts.
 - ▶: Bolt locations, 2



 Pull out the outer handle.
 Pry the outer handle rod out of its joint using a flat tip screwdriver.

NOTE:

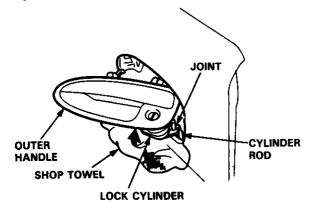
- To ease reassembly, note the location (A) of the outer handle rod on the joint before disconnecting it.
- Take care not to bend the outer handle rod.
- Use a shop towel to protect the opening in the door.



Outer Handle Replacement (cont'd) 7 [

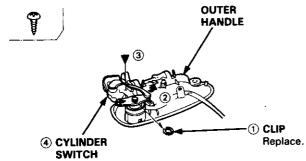
6. Disconnect the cylinder rod as shown.

NOTE: Take care not to damage the lock cylinder joint.

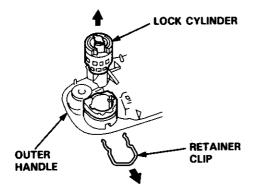


7. Remove the cylinder switch from the outer handle.

▼: Screw locations, 1



8. Pull out the retainer clip, then remove the lock cylinder.



9. Installation is the reverse of the removal procedure.

NOTE:

- Make sure the outer handle rod and connector are connected securely.
- Make sure the wire harness is routed properly.
- Check the door lock and open operations.

Latch Replacement

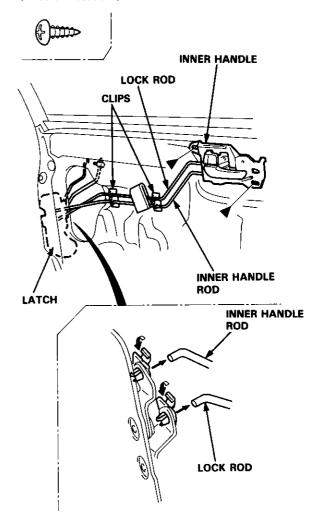
NOTE: Raise the glass fully.

- 1. Remove:
 - Door panel (see page 20-4)
 - Plastic cover (see page 20-4)
 - Outer handle (see page 20-7)
- Disconnect the inner handle rod and lock rod from the latch.

Detach the inner handle rod and lock rod, then remove the inner handle.

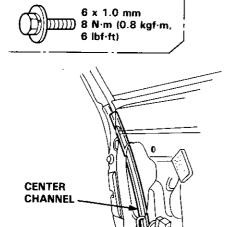
NOTE: Take care not to bend the rods.

▶: Screw locations, 2



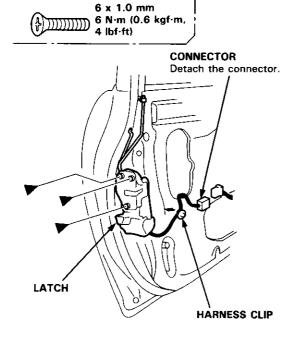


- 3. Loosen the bolt, then move the center channel outward.
 - ▶: Bolt location, 1



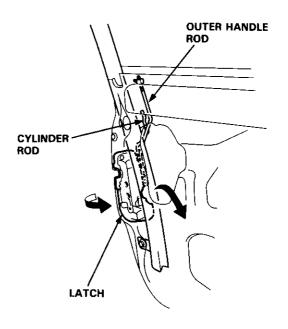
- Disconnect the connector, and detach the harness clip from the door.
 Remove the screw.
 - ▶: Screw locations, 3

Loosen.



5. Remove the latch through the hole in the door.

NOTE: Take care not to bend the outer handle rod and cylinder rod.



6. Installation is the reverse of the removal procedure.

NOTE:

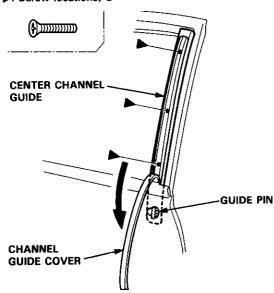
- Make sure the inner handle rod, lock rod and connector are connected properly.
- Check the door lock and open operations.

- Glass/Regulator/Glass Run Channel Replacement

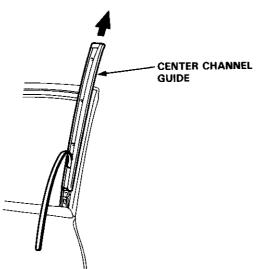
- 1. Remove:
 - Door panel (see page 20-4)
 - Plastic cover (see page 20-4)
- 2. Remove the power window switch from the door panel, then connect it to the door harness (see page 20-16).
- 3. Lower the glass fully.
- Peel off the channel guide cover, then remove the screws.

NOTE: When installing the channel guide cover, apply the double-faced adhesive tape to it.

▶: Screw locations, 3



Remove the center channel guide by pulling it upward.



Carefully move the glass until you can see the bolts, then loosen them.

Slide the guide to the rear, then remove the glass from the guide.

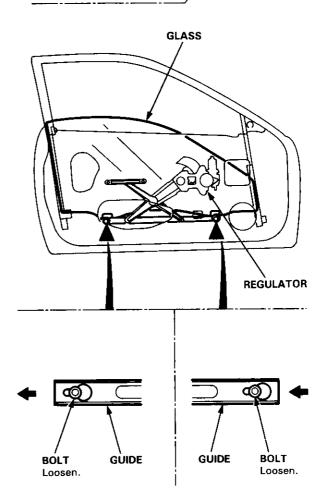
NOTE: Take care not to drop the glass inside the door.

▲: Bolt locations, 2



6 x 1.0 mm 9.8 N·m (1.0 kgf·m,

7.2 lbf·ft)

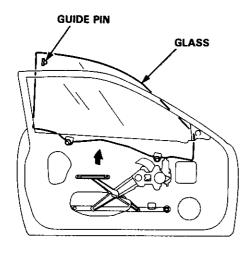




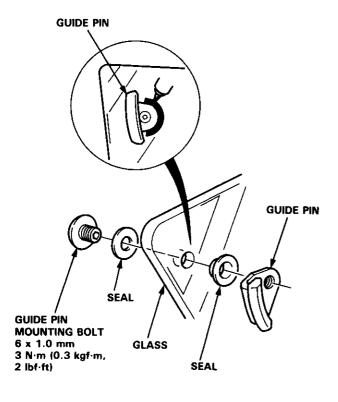
7. Carefully pull the glass out through the window slot.

NOTE:

- Take care not to drop the glass inside the door.
- Check the guide pin for damage, and replace if necessary.



NOTE: Scribe a line around the guide pin to show the original location.

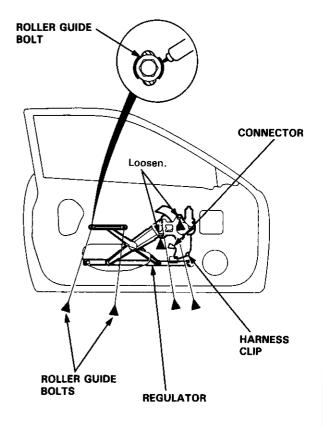


8. Disconnect the connector, then remove the regulator through the center hole in the door.

NOTE: Scribe a line around the rear roller guide bolt to show the original adjustment.

▲: Bolt locations, 6

6 x 1.0 mm 8 N·m (0.8 kgf·m, 6 lbf·ft)

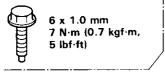


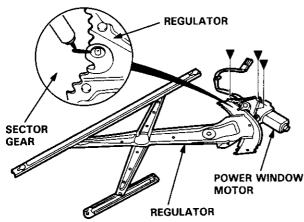
- Glass/Regulator/Glass Run Channel Replacement (cont'd) -

9. Remove the power window motor from the regulator.

NOTE: Before removing the power window motor, mark the location by scribing a line across the sector gear and regulator.

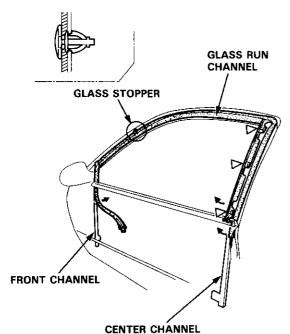
▼: Bolt locations, 3





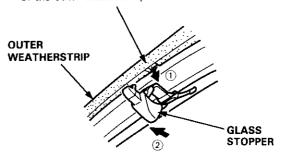
Detach the clips, then peel and remove the glass run channel.

⇒: Clip locations, 3



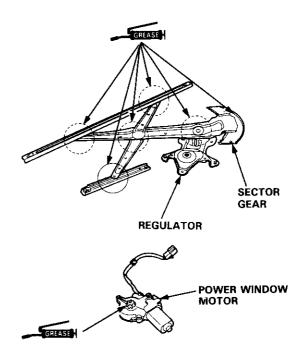
NOTE: If necessary, remove the glass stopper.

When installing the glass stopper, align it with the notch of the outer weatherstrip.



 Grease all the sliding surfaces of the regulator where shown. Install the power window motor on the regulator.

Check that the regulator moves smoothly by connecting a 12 V battery to the power window motor (see section 23).



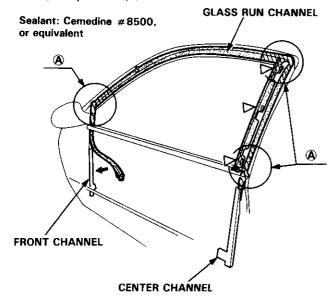


12. Apply clear sealant to the location (A) of the door as shown, then install the glass run channel.

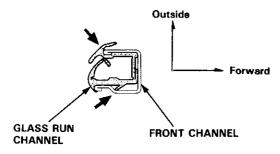
NOTE:

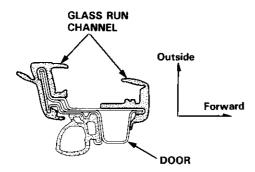
If necessary, replace any damaged clips.

▷: Clip location, 3



• Fit the glass run channel into the front channel and on the door as shown.



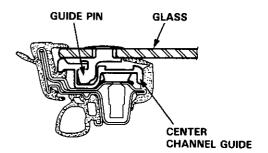


13. Install the regulator (see page 20-11).

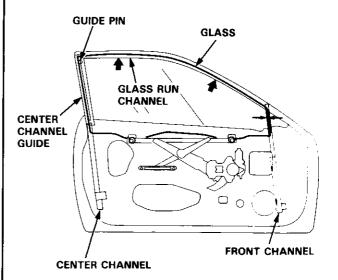
NOTE: Make sure the connector is connected properly.

- 14. Install the glass (see page 20-10).
- Install the center channel guide and channel guide cover.

NOTE: Make sure the guide pin is installed in the center channel guide properly.



16. Roll the glass up and down to see if it moves freely without binding. Also make sure that there is no clearance between the glass and glass run channel when the glass is closed. Adjust the position of the glass as necessary (see page 20-16).

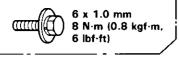


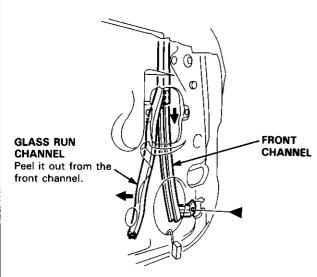
- 17. Attach the door harness to the door correctly (see page 20-5).
- Disconnect the power window switch from the door harness, then install the power window switch on the door panel (see page 20-16).
- 19. When reinstalling the plastic cover, apply adhesive along the edge where neccessary to maintain a continuous seal and prevent water leaks (see page 20-6).
- 20. Install the door panel (see page 20-4).

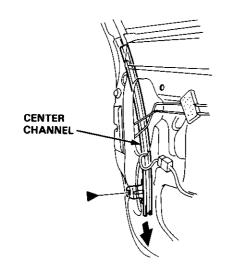
Front and Center Channel Replacement -

NOTE: Raise the glass fully.

- 1. Remove:
 - Door panel (see page 20-4)
 - Plastic cover (see page 20-4)
- 2. Remove the front and center channels.
 - ■: Bolt locations, 2

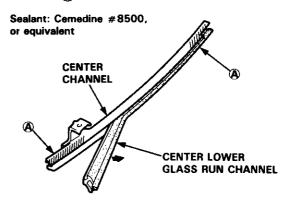






Peel the center lower glass run channel out from the center channel.

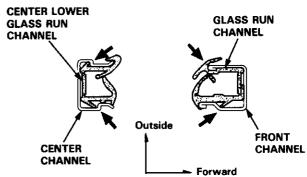
NOTE: When installing, apply clear sealant to the location (A) of the center channel.



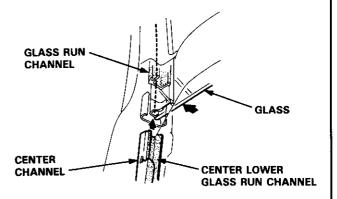
14. Installation is the reverse of the removal procedure.

NOTE:

• Fit the glass run channels into the front and center channels as shown.



- Install the center channel while pushing the glass as shown.
- Make sure the glass run channels are not twisted.





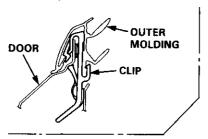
Outer Molding Replacement -

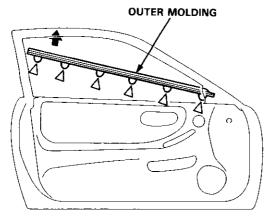
CAUTION: Wear gloves to remove the outer molding.

- 1. Remove the door mirror (see page 20-49).
- 2. Lower the glass.
- Starting at the rear, pry the outer molding up and detach the clips, then remove the outer molding.

NOTE: Take care not to twist or scratch the outer molding.

△: Clip locations, 6





4. Installation is the reverse of the removal procedure.

NOTE:

- If necessary, replace any damaged clips.
- When installing, align the rear edge of the outer molding with the rear edge of the door.

-Weatherstrip Replacement

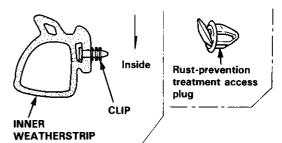
NOTE:

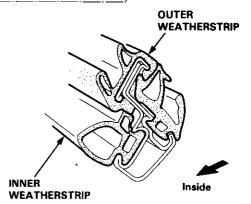
- Before installing the inner weatherstrip, apply clear sealant to the location (A) of the door as shown.
- If necessary, replace any damaged clips.

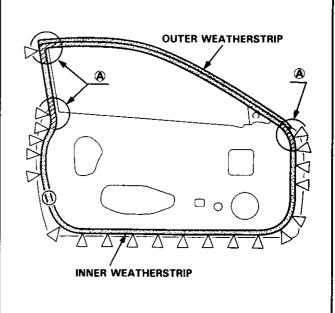
Sealant: Cemedine #8500, or equivalent

▷ : Clip locations, 21

O: Clip location, 1



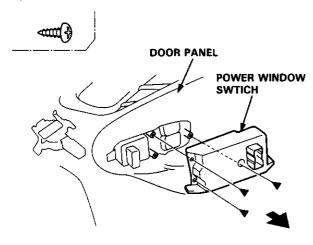




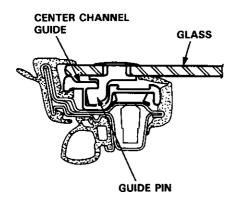
- Glass Adjustment

NOTE:

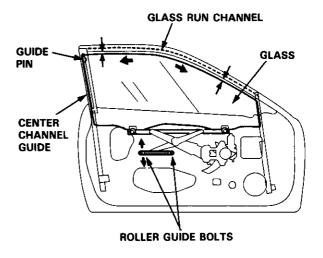
- Place the vehicle on a firm, level surface when adjusting the glass.
- Check the weatherstrips and glass run channel for damage or deterioration and replace if necessary.
- Remove the door panel, and peel off the plastic cover (see page 20-4).
- 2. Remove the power window switch from the door panel.
 - **∢**: Screw locations, 5



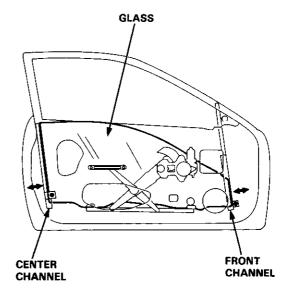
- Connect the power window switch to the door harness.
- 4. Make sure the guide pin is installed in the center channel guide properly.



- 5. Raise the glass as far up as possible, and hold it against the glass run channel.
- Loosen the roller guide bolts, and adjust the glass so it is parallel with the glass run channel.



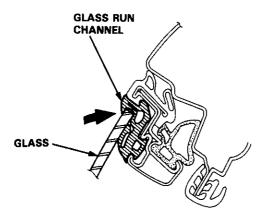
- 7. Tighten the roller guide bolts.
- 8. Check that the glass moves smoothly.
- 9. If necessary, adjust the front and center channels.





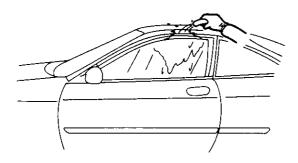
- 10. Raise the glass fully and check for gaps.
- 11. Check the glass operation.

NOTE: Check that the glass contacts the glass run channel evenly.

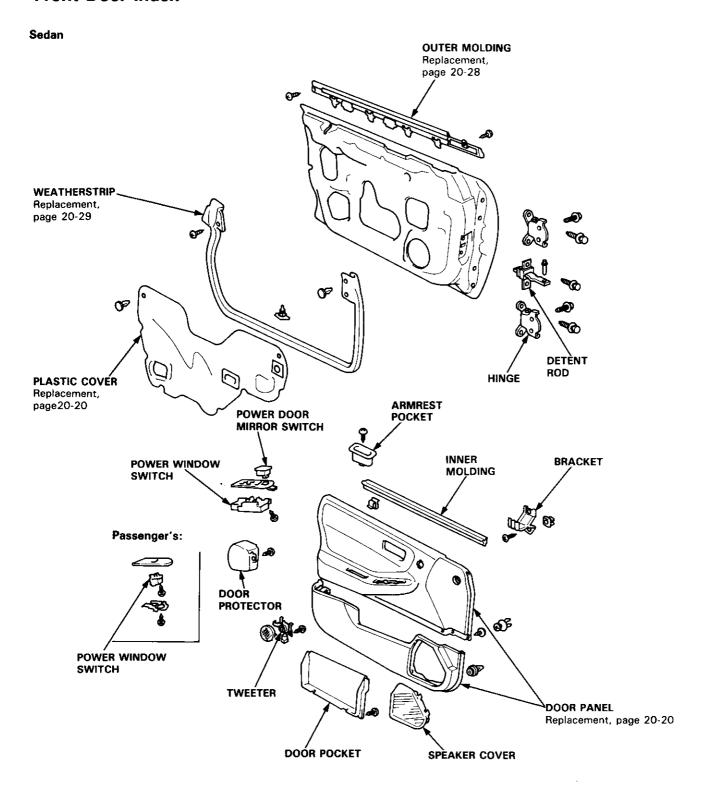


12. Check for water leaks.

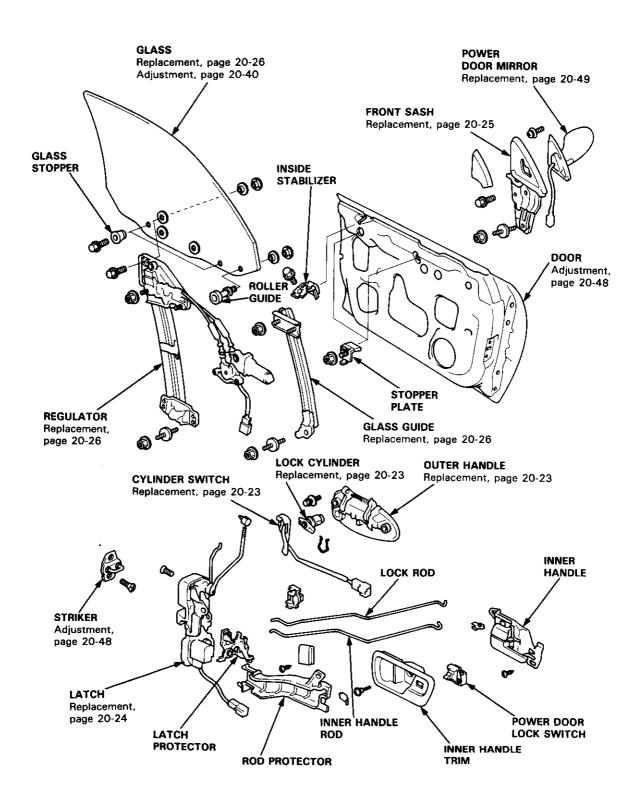
NOTE: Do not use high pressure water.



- 13. Route the door harness and connectors and fasten them to the door (see page 20-5).
- 14. Disconnect the power window switch from the door harness, then install the power window switch in the door panel (see page 20-16).
- 15. Attach the plastic cover, then install the door panel (see page 20-4).



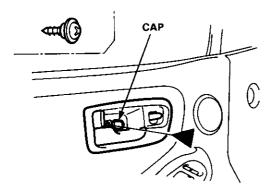




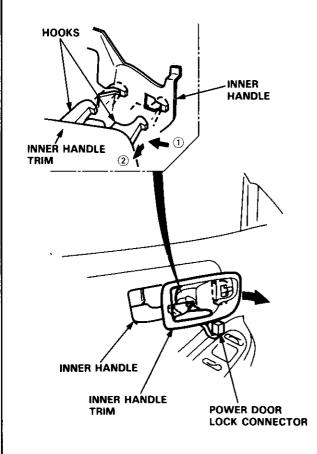
Door Panel/Plastic Cover Replacement

NOTE: Take care not to scratch the door panel and other parts.

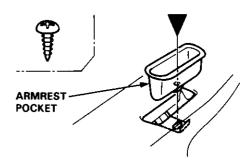
- 1. Pry the cap and remove the screw.
 - **◄**: Screw location,1



Remove the inner handle trim while pulling the inner handle.
 Disconnect the power door lock connector.

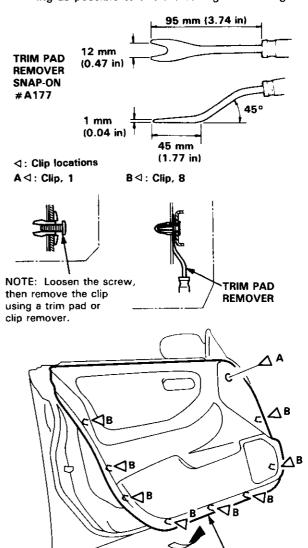


- 3. Remove the armrest pocket.
 - ▼ : Screw location, 1



4. Release the clips that hold the door panel.

NOTE: Remove the door panel with as little bending as possible to avoid creasing or breaking it.



DOOR PANEL

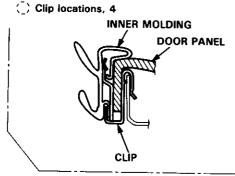


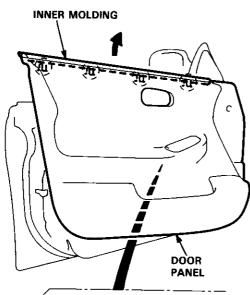
5. Detach the clips, and remove the door panel by pulling it upward.

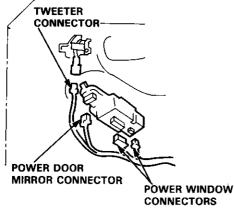
NOTE: Take care not to twist or scratch the inner molding.

Disconnect the following:

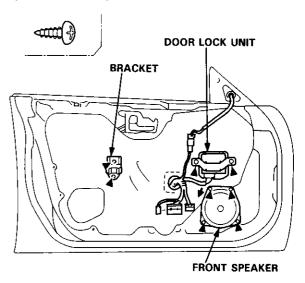
- Power window connectors
- Power door mirror connector
- Tweeter connector







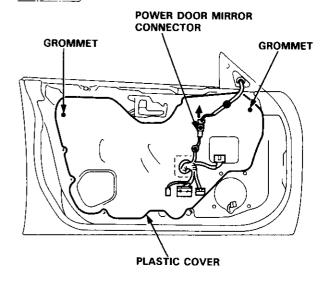
- Remove the bracket, door lock unit and front speaker.
 - **≼**: Screw locations, 8



- 7. Remove the cover panel, then disconnect the power door mirror connector (see page 20-49).
- 8. Detach the grommets and harness clips, then carefully remove the plastic cover.
- •: Grommet locations, 2

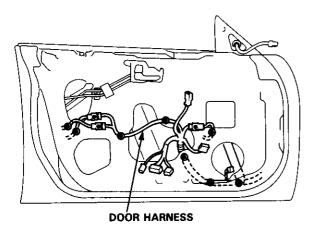
Harness clip locations, 3





Door Panel/Plastic Cover Replacement (cont'd) -

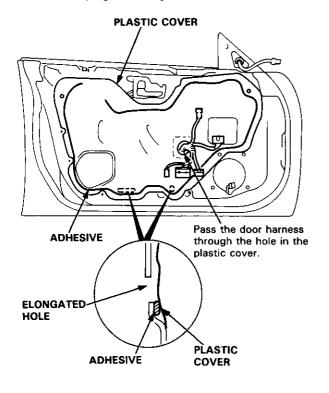
- Before installing the plastic cover, make sure the door harness and connectors are fastened correctly on the door.
 - : Connector clip locations, 3
 - : Harness clip locations, 8



10. Install the plastic cover.

NOTE:

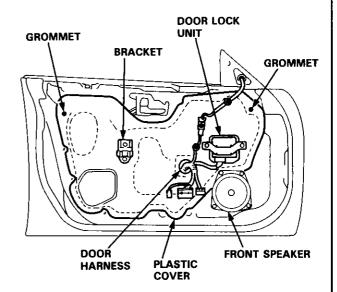
- Apply adhesive along the edge where necessary to maintain a continuous seal and prevent water leaks.
- Do not plug the elongated hole.



- Install all removed parts, and fasten the door harness correctly.
 - : Grommet locations, 2

Harness clip locations, 3





12. Install the door panel (see page20-21).

NOTE:

- Make sure the door harness is not pinched.
- If necessary, replace any damaged clips.
- Make sure the connectors are connected properly.
- 13. Install the armrest pocket and inner handle trim (see page 20-20).

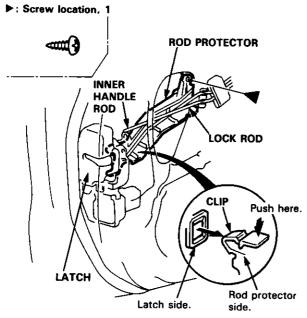
NOTE: Make sure the connector is connected properly.



Outer Handle Replacement

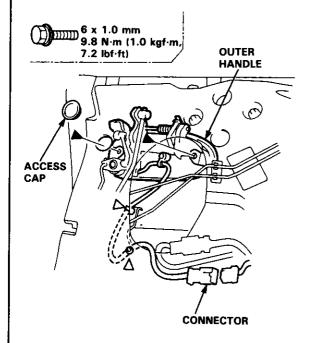
NOTE: Raise the glass fully.

- 1. Remove:
 - Door panel (see page 20-20)
 - Plastic cover (see page 20-20)
- 2. Remove the rod protector.

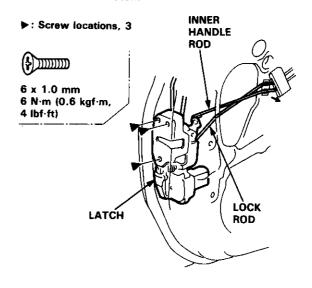


- 3. Remove the bolts and disconnect the connector.
- ▶: Bolt locations, 2

▷: Clip locations, 2



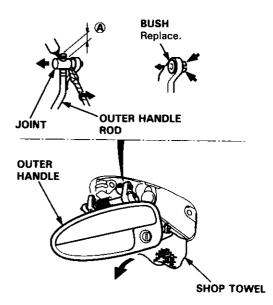
Remove the latch.



 Pull out the outer handle with the latch.
 Pry the outer handle rod out of its joint using a flat tip screwdriver.

NOTE:

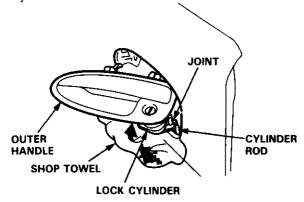
- To ease reassembly, note the location (A) of the outer handle rod on the joint before disconnecting it.
- Take care not to bend the outer handle rod.
- Use a shop towel to protect the opening in the door.



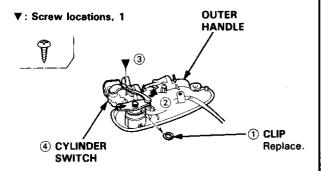
- Outer Handle Replacement (cont'd) ¬

6. Disconnect the cylinder rod as shown.

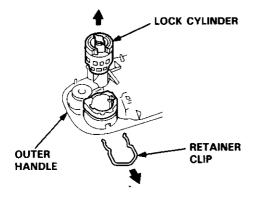
NOTE: Take care not to damage the lock cylinder joint.



7. Remove the cylinder switch from the outer handle.



8. Pull out the retainer clip, then remove the lock cylinder.



9. Installation is the reverse of the removal procedure.

NOTE:

- Make sure the outer handle rod and connector are connected securely.
- Make sure the wire harness is routed properly.
- Check the door lock and open operations.

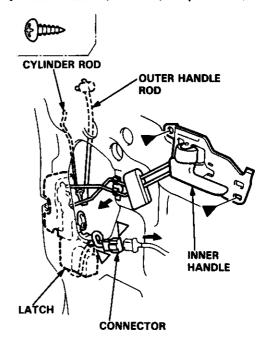
NOTE: Raise the glass fully.

- 1. Remove:
 - Door panel (see page 20-20)
 - Plastic cover (see page 20-20)
 - Outer handle (see page 20-23)
- Remove the screws and disconnect the connector, then remove the inner handle and latch.

NOTE: Take care not to bend the rods.

▶: Screw locations, 2

⊳: Clip locations, 2



3. Installation is the reverse of the removal procedure.

NOTE: Make sure the inner handle rod, lock rod and connector are connected properly.



Front Sash Replacement

NOTE: Lower the glass.

- 1. Remove:
 - Door panel (see page 20-20)
 - Plastic cover (see page 20-20)
 - Power door mirror (see page 20-49)
 - Outer molding (see page 20-38)
- 2. Detach the clips, then pry the weatherstrip away from the front sash.
- 3. Remove the bolts and locknut.

NOTE:

- Hold the adjusting bolt with a hex wrench when removing the locknut.
- Scribe a line around the locknut to show the original adjustment.
- ▶: Bolt locations, 2

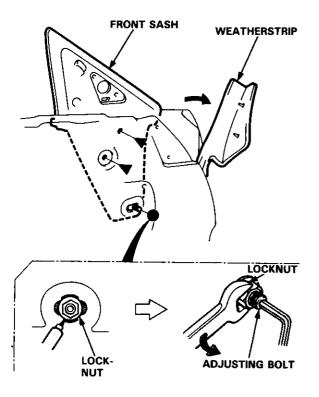
: Nut location, 1



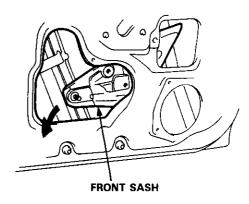
6 x 1.0 mm 9.8 N·m (1.0 kgf·m, 7.2 lbf·ft)



8 x 1.25 mm 22 N·m (2.2 kgf·m, 16 lbf·ft)



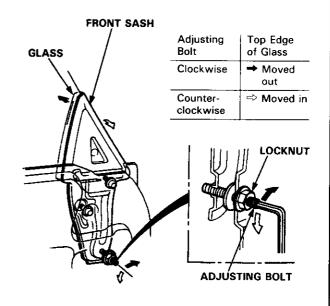
4. Remove the front sash through the center hole in the door as shown.



5. Installation is the reverse of the removal procedure.

NOTE: After installing, adjust the position of the front sash as necessary.

Align the front sash with the glass using the adjusting bolt at the bottom of the front sash.



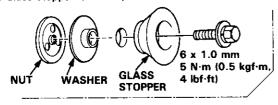
· Check for water leaks.

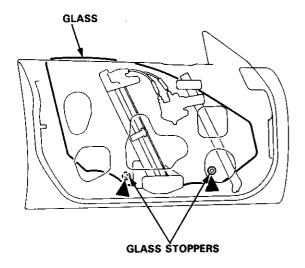
NOTE: Do not high pressure water.

Glass/Regulator/Glass Guide Replacement -

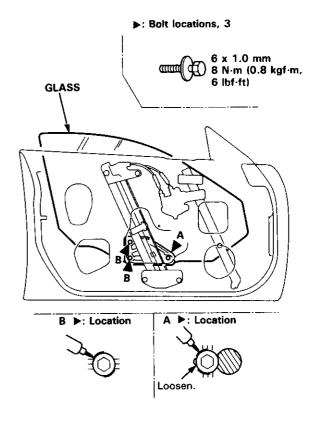
- 1. Remove:
 - Door panel (see page 20-20)
 - Plastic cover (see page 20-20)
- 2. Remove the power window switch from the door panel, then connect the door harness (see page 20-41).
- Move the glass until you can see the glass stoppers, then remove them.

▶: Glass stopper locations, 2



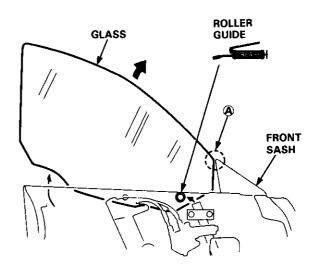


 Carfully move the glass until you can see the glass mounting bolts, then remove them. NOTE: Scribe a line around the glass mounting bolts to show the original adjustment.



5. Carefully pull the glass out of the window slot.

NOTE: Take care not to damage (A) location on the front sash.





- Remove the inner handle (see page 20-24).
- 7. Disconnect the connector, and remove the regulator through the center hole in the door.

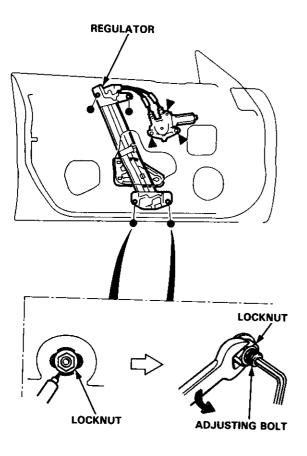
NOTE:

- Hold the adjusting bolts with a hex wrench when removing the locknuts.
- Scribe a line around the locknuts to show the original adjustment.

• : Nut locations, 4

▲: Bolts locations, 3

8 x 1.25 mm 22 N·m (2.2 kgf·m, 16 lbf·ft) 6 x 1.0 mm 8 N·m (0.8 kgf·m, 6 /bf·ft)

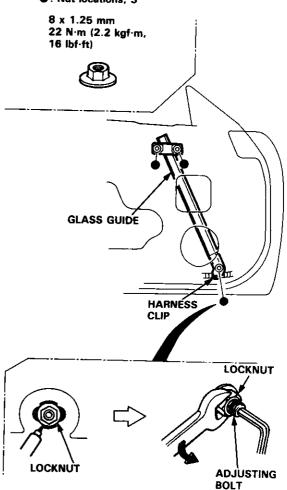


8. Remove the glass guide.

NOTE:

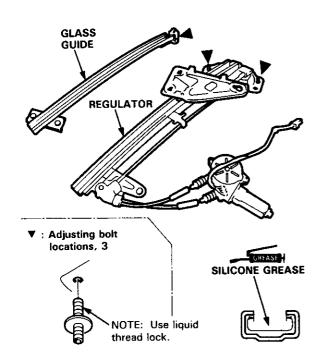
- Hold the adjusting bolt with a hex wrench when removing the locknut.
- Scribe a line around the mounting nut to show the original adjustment.

: Nut locations, 3

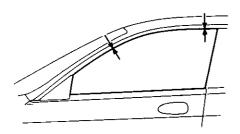


Glass/Regulator/Glass Guide - Replacement (cont'd)

9. Grease all the sliding surfaces of the regulator and glass guide where shown.



10. Roll the glass up and down to see if it moves freely without binding. Also make sure that there is no clearance between the glass and weatherstrip when the glass is closed. Adjust the position of the glass as necessary (see page 20-40).



- 11. Attach the door harness to the door correctly (see page 20-22).
- 12. Disconnect the power window switch from the door harness, then install the power window switch on the door panel (see page 20-41).
- When reinstalling the plastic cover, apply adhesive along the edge where neccessary to maintain a continuous seal and prevent water leaks (see page 20-22).
- 14. Install the door panel (see page 20-21).

Outer Molding Replacement

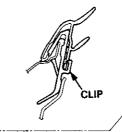
NOTE: Lower the glass fully.

- 1. Remove:
 - Door panel (see page 20-20)
 - Power door mirror (see page 20-49)
- 2. Peel the weatherstrip away from the door (see page 20-29), then remove the screw.
- 3. Starting at the rear, pry the outer molding up and detach the clips, then remove the outer molding.

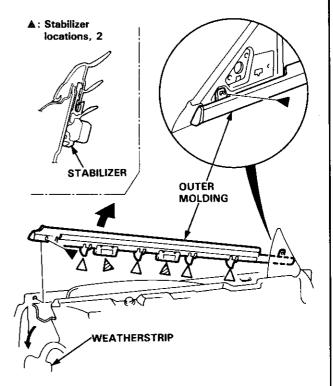
NOTE: Take care not to twist or scratch the outer molding.

⇒: Clip locations, 4

▶: Screw locations, 2

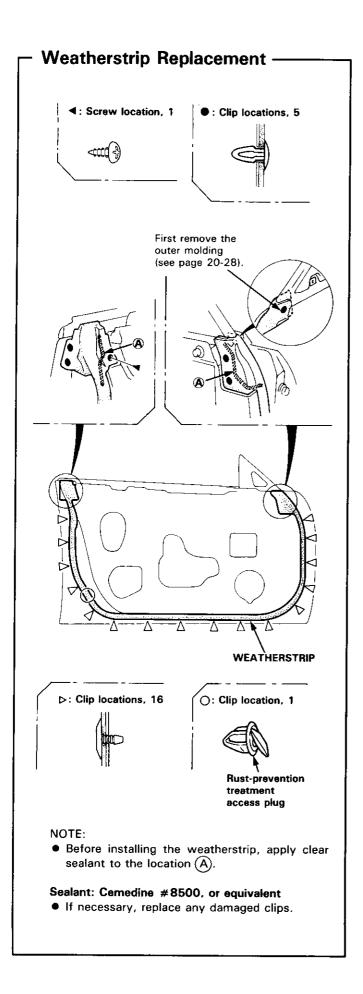


NOTE: If necessary, replace any damaged clips.

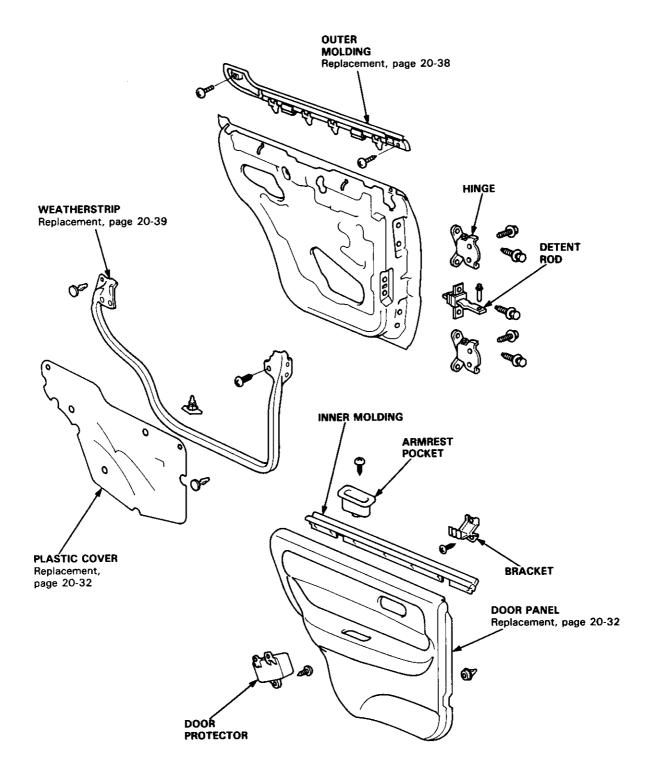


4. Installation is the reverse of the removal procedure.

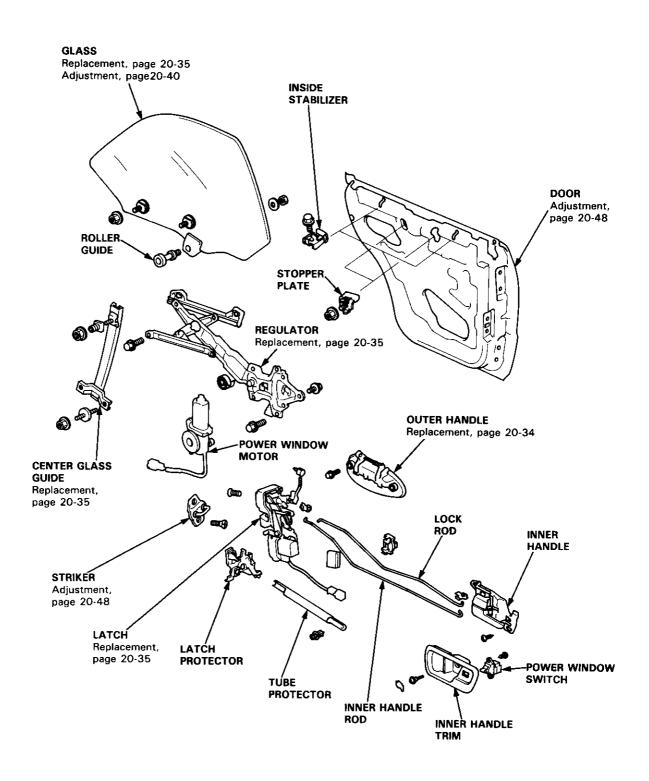




Sedan



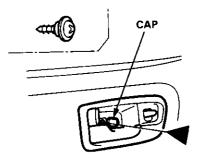




Door Panel/Plastic Cover Replacement

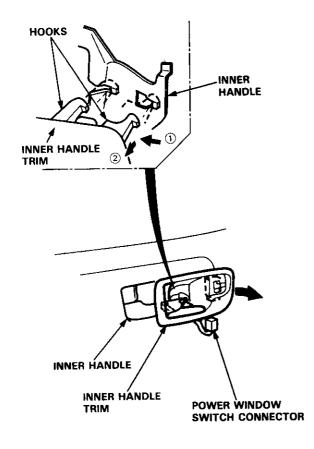
NOTE: Take care not to scratch the door panel and other parts.

- 1. Pry the cap and remove the screw.
 - **◄**: Screw location,1



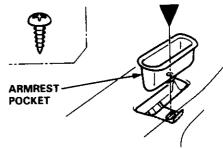
2. Remove the inner handle trim while pulling the inner handle.

Disconnect the power window switch connector.



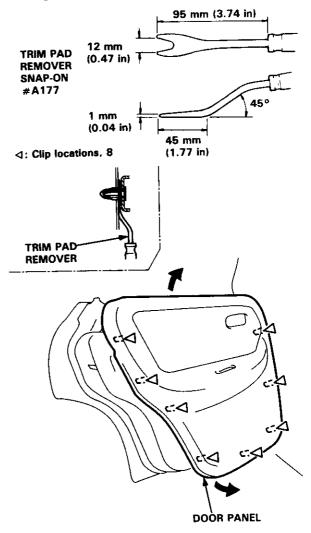
3. Remove the armrest pocket.

▼ : Screw location, 1



4. Release the clips that hold the door panel.

NOTE: Remove the door panel with as little bending as possible to avoid creasing or breaking it.



5. Remove the door panel by pulling it upward.

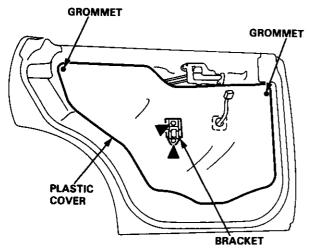


- 6. Remove the bracket and detach the grommets, then carefully remove the plastic cover.
- : Grommet locations, 2

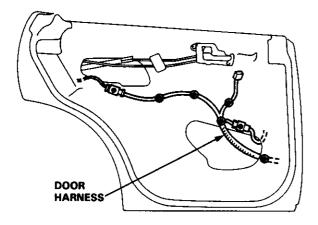
◄: Screw locations, 2







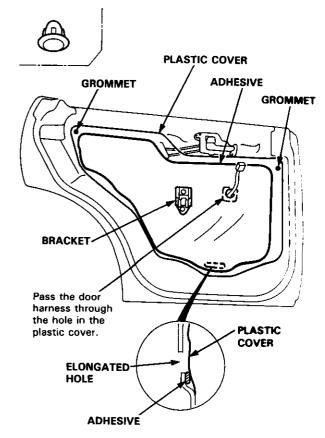
- Before installing the plastic cover, make sure the door harness and connectors are fastened correctly on the door.
 - ●: Connector clip locations, 2
 - : Harness clip locations, 5



8. Install the plastic cover and bracket.

NOTE:

- Apply adhesive along the edge where necessary to maintain a continuous seal and prevent water leaks.
- Do not plug the elongated hole.
- : Grommet locations, 2



9. Install the door panel (see page 20-32).

NOTE:

- Make sure the door harness is not pinched.
- If necessary, replace any damaged clips.
- Make sure the connectors are connected properly.
- Install the armrest pocket and inner handle trim (see page 20-32).

NOTE: Make sure the connector is connected properly.

Doors

- Outer Handle Replacement -

NOTE: Raise the glass fully.

- 1. Remove:
 - Door panel (see page 20-32)
 - Plastic cover (see page 20-32)
- 2. Remove the screws and clip, then move the latch.

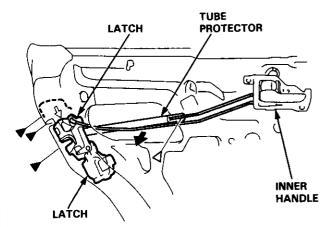


△: Clip location, 1



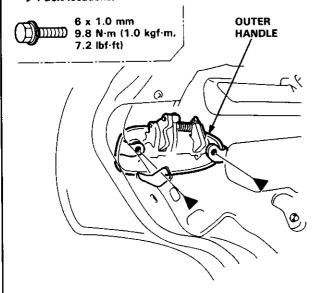
6 x 1.0 mm 6 N·m (0.6 kgf·m, 4 lbf·ft)





3. Remove the bolts.

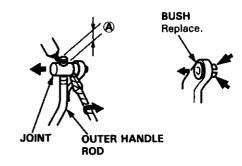


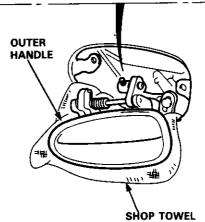


 Pull out the outer handle with the latch.
 Pry the outer handle rod out of its joint using a flat tip screwdriver.

NOTE:

- To ease reassembly, note the location (A) of the outer handle rod on the joint before disconnecting it.
- Take care not to bend the outer handle rod.
- Use a shop towel to protect the opening in the door.





5. Installation is the reverse of the removal procedure.

NOTE: Check the door lock and open operations.



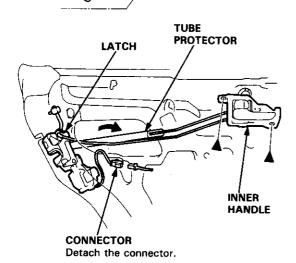
Latch Replacement

NOTE: Raise the glass fully.

- 1. Remove:
 - Door panel (see page 20-32)
 - Plastic cover (see page 20-32)
 - Outer handle (see page 20-34)
- 2. Remove the screws and disconnect the connector, then remove the inner handle and latch.

NOTE: Take care not to bend the rods.

▶: Screw locations. 2



3. Installation is the reverse of the removal procedure.

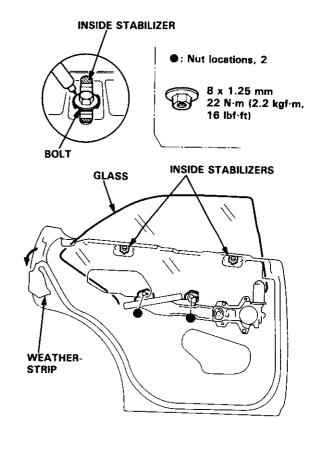
NOTE: Make sure the inner handle rod, lock rod and connector are connected properly.

Glass/Regulator/Center Glass Guide Replacement

- 1. Remove:
 - Door panel (see page 20-32)
 - Plastic cover (see page 20-32)
- 2. Connect the power window switch to the door harness (see page 20-41).
- Peel the weatherstrip away from the door (see page 20-39).
- 4. Loosen the inside stabilizers.

NOTE: Scribe a line around the bolts to show the original adjustment.

Carefully move the glass until you can see the glass mounting nuts, then remove them.

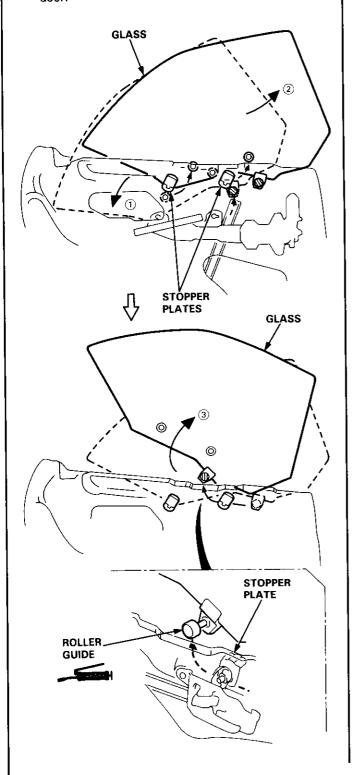


Doors

- Glass/Regulator/Center Glass Guide Replacement (cont'd)

5. Carefully remove the glass from the window slot as shown.

NOTE: Take care not to drop the glass inside the door.



6. Remove the center glass guide.

NOTE:

- Hold the adjusting bolts with a hex wrench when removing the locknuts.
- Scribe a line around the locknuts to show the original adjustment.
- : Nut locations

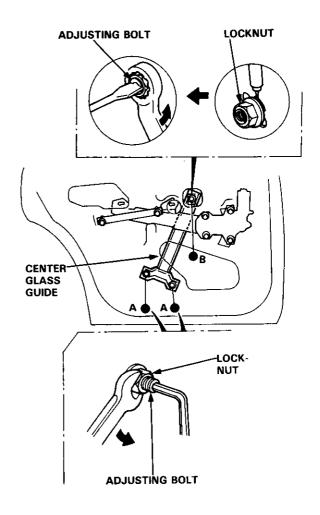
A • , 2



8 x 1.25 mm 22 N·m (2.2 kgf·m, 16 lbf·ft) B • , 1



12 x 1.25 mm 22 N·m (2.2 kgf·m, 16 lbf·ft)



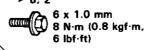


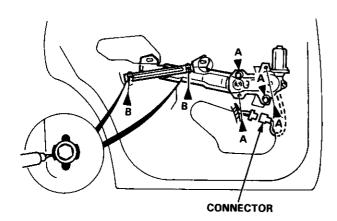
7. Disconnect the connector, and remove the regulator through the center hole in the door.

NOTE: Scribe a line around the roller guide bolts to show the original adjustment.

- ▶: Bolt locations
- ► A, 4

 6 × 1.0 mm
 8 N·m (0.8 kgf·m,
 6 lbf·ft)

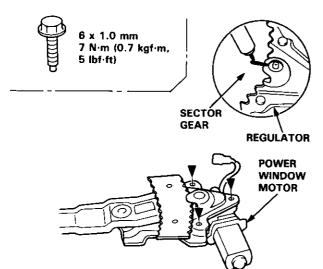




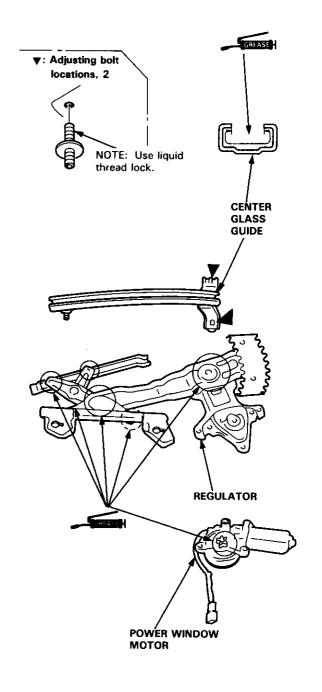
8. Remove the power window motor from the regulator.

NOTE: Before removing the power window motor, mark the location by scribing a line across the sector gear and regulator.

▼: Bolt locations, 3



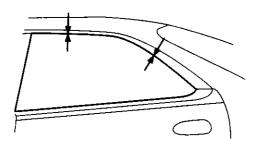
- 9. Grease all the sliding surfaces of the regulator and center glass guide where shown.
- 10. Install the power window motor on the regulator.
- 11. Check that the regulator moves smoothly by connecting a 12 V battery to the power window motor (see section 23).



Door

- Glass/Regulator/Center Glass Guide 7 — Outer Molding Replacement Replacement (cont'd)

12. Roll the glass up and down to see if it moves freely without binding. Also make sure that there is no clearance between the glass and weatherstrip when the glass is closed. Adjust the position of the glass as necessary (see page 20-40).



- 13. Attach the door harness to the door correctly (see page 20-33).
- 14. Disconnect the power window switch from the door harness.
- 15. When reinstalling the plastic cover, apply adhesive along the edge where neccessary to maintain a continuous seal and prevent water leaks (see page 20-33).
- 16. Install the door panel (see page 20-32).

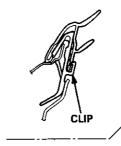
NOTE: Lower the glass fully.

- 1. Remove the door panel (see page 20-32).
- 2. Peel the weatherstrip away from the door (see page 20-39), then remove the screw.
- 3. Starting at the rear, pry the outer molding up and detach the clips, then remove the outer molding.

NOTE: Take care not to twist or scratch the outer molding.

⇒: Clip locations, 4

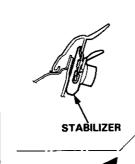
A ▶ : Screw location, 1





NOTE: If necessary, replace any damaged clips.

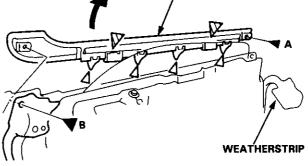
⇒: Stabilizer locations, 2



B ▶ : Screw location, 1

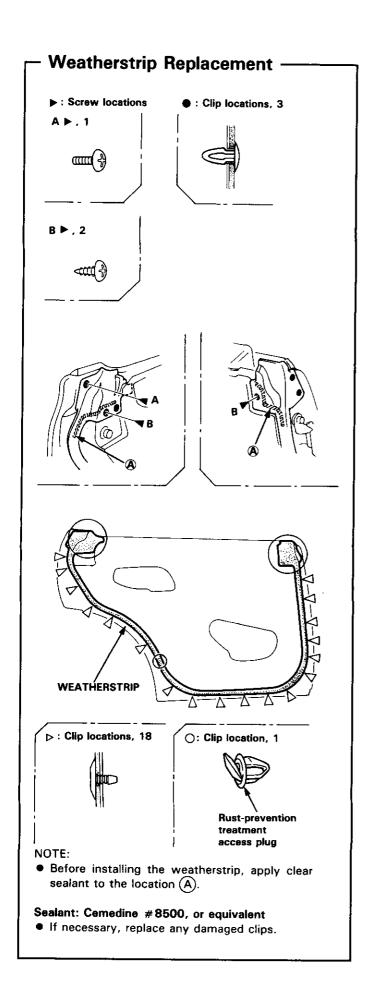


OUTER MOLDING



4. Installation is the reverse of the removal procedure.





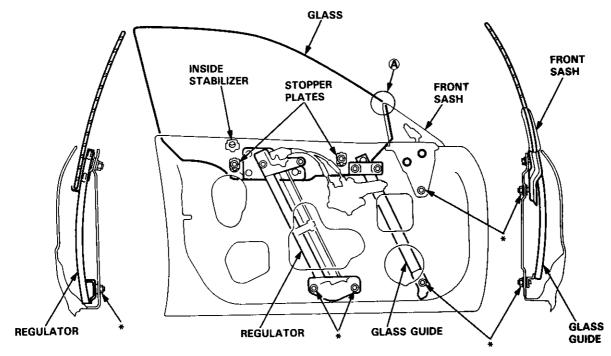
Doors

- Glass Adjustment

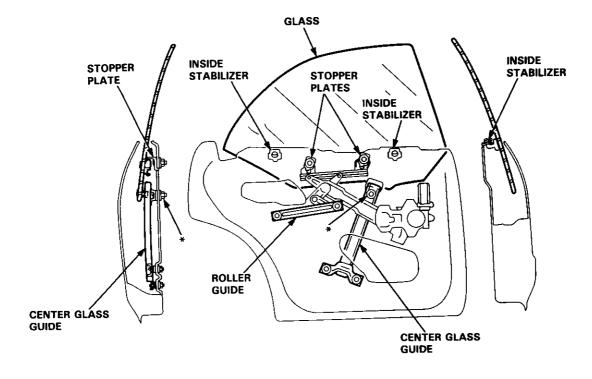
*: Adjusting bolt/locknut locations

NOTE: Take care not to damage the (A) location on the front sash.

Front:





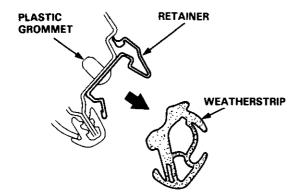




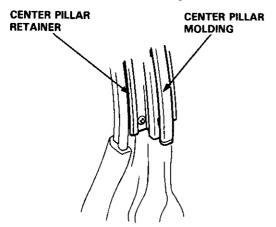
NOTE: Place the vehicle on a firm, level surface when adjusting the glass.

1. Remove the weatherstrip (see page 20-158).

NOTE: Check the weatherstrip for damage and deterioration, and replace if necessary.



2. Install the center pillar molding.

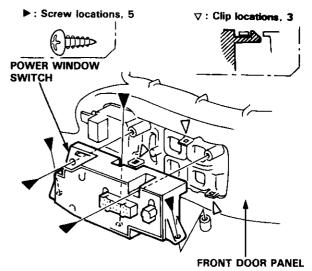


3. Remove the door panel (see pages 20-20, 32).

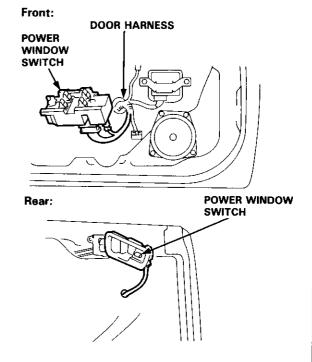
NOTE: If necessary, peel off the plastic cover.

4. Remove the door mirror (see page 20-49).

Remove the power window switch from the from door panel.



Connect the power window switch to the door harness connectors.



- 7. To prevent the glass from contacting the body, hold the glass, and close the door carefully.
- 8. Raise the glass fully.

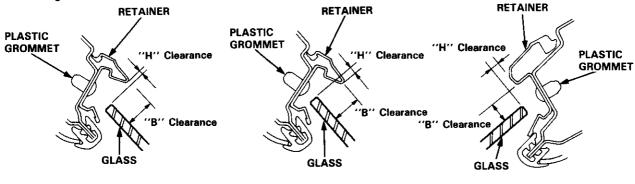
NOTE: Check the door fit to the body opening.

Doors

- Glass Adjustment (cont'd) ·

- 9. Measure and record clearances "H" and "B" at the locations shown.
- 10. Adjust the clearance as described in steps (11) thru (14).

Measuring Points



Section ①

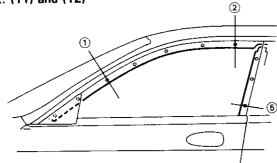
Section 2, 3

Section 4

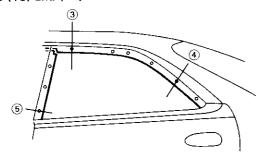
(Standard Clearance)

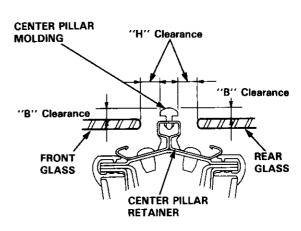
• Permissible tolerance: ±0.1 mm (0.04 in)

Front: (11) and (12)



Rear: (13) and (14)





Section (5)

Unit: mm (in)

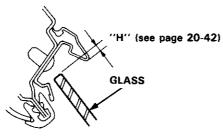
| Measuring Point | | 1 | 2 | (5) |
|--------------------|---|---------------|----------------|----------------|
| Clearance | Н | 0.8 (0.03) | 3.0 (0.12) | 10.3 (0.41) |
| | В | 9.3 (0.37) | 9.9 (0.389) | 5.6 (0.22) |

| Measuring Point | | 5 | 3 | 4 |
|--------------------|---|--------------|----------------|----------------|
| Clearance | Н | 10 (0.39) | 2.5 (0.1) | 6.0 (0.24) |
| | В | 5.1 (0.2) | 11.5 (0.45) | 12.1 (0.48) |



Front Door:

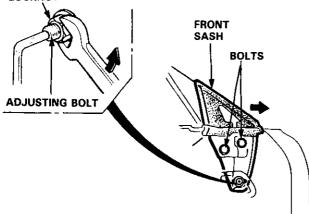
11. Adjust clearance "H" as follows.



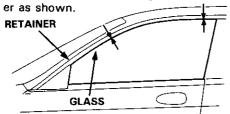
-1 Loosen the bolts and locknut securing the front sash, and move the front sash all the way forward.

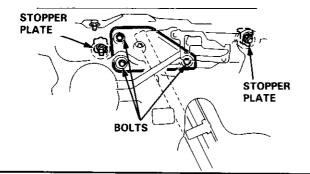
NOTE: Hold the adjusting bolt with a hex wrench when loosening the locknut.





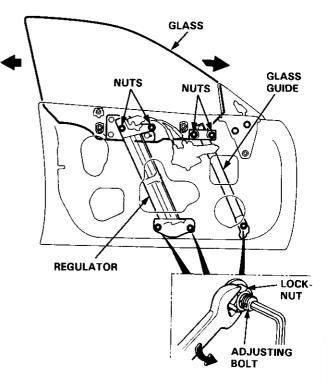
- -2 Loosen the nut securing the stopper plates.
- -3 Loosen the bolts securing the glass, and move the glass up or down to align it with the retain-





-4 Loosen the nuts and locknuts securing the glass guide, and regulator. Adjust the glass fore and aft by moving the glass guide and regulator.

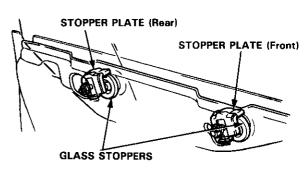
NOTE: Hold the adjusting bolts with a hex wrench when loosening the locknuts.



-5 Repeat steps -3 thru -4 until clearance "H" is within the specified limits, then fasten the glass guide and regulator.

Press the stopper plates against the glass stoppers, then fasten the stopper plates.

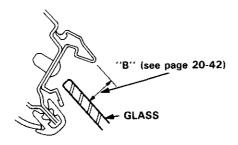
NOTE: Check that the stopper plates contact the glass stoppers evenly.



-6 Align the front sash with the glass, then fasten the front sash.

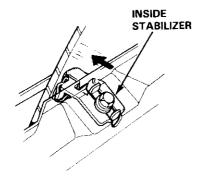
- Glass Adjustment (cont'd) -

12. Adjust clearance "B" as follows.



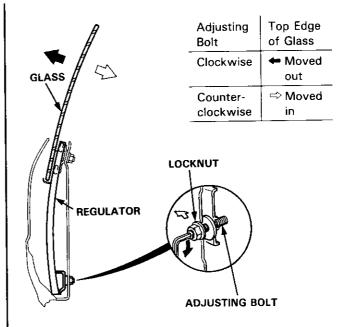
- -1 Lower the glass 10 mm (0.39 in).
- —2 Push the glass outward 10 mm (0.39 in), then push the inside stabilizers against the glass lightly. Fasten the inside stabilizers.

NOTE: Check that the glass moves smoothly.



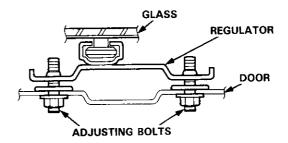
—3 Loosen the locknut, and turn the adjusting bolt until the clearance "B" is within the specified value.

| Adjusting Bolt | Top Edge of Glass | |
|-----------------------|----------------------|----------------|
| Clockwise | → Moved out | GLASS |
| Counter- clockwise | <> Moved in | # |
| LOCK | ADJUSTING BOLT | GLASS GUIDE |



NOTE: Turn the front and rear adjusting bolts the same amount to keep the regulator parallel with the seating surface of the door.

After tightening the adjusting bolts, make sure that the ends of the adjusting bolts still project out of the locknuts.



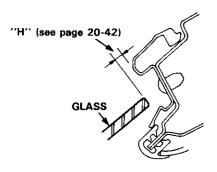
- —4 Align the front sash with the glass using the adjusting bolt at the bottom of the front sash.
- —5 Move the glass up and down to seat it, then measure clearance "B" at the designated locations.
- —6 Measure clearance "H" again to make sure it is still within the specified limits at the designated locations.

NOTE: Repeat the above steps until the correct clearances are obtained.

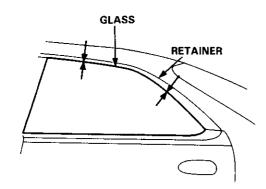


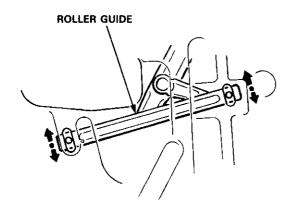
Rear Door:

13. Adjust clearance "H" as follows.



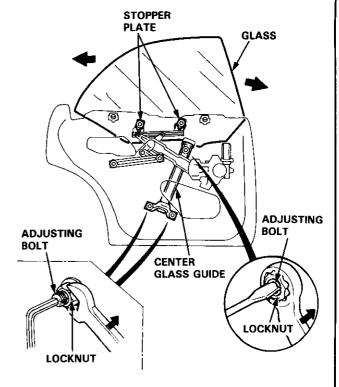
- -1 Loosen the nut securing the stopper plates.
- -2 Loosen the nut securing the roller guide, and move the guide up or down to align the glass with the body at the rear and center pillars.





—3 Loosen the locknuts securing the center glass guide, and adjust the glass fore and aft by moving the center glass guide.

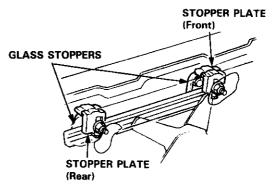
NOTE: Hold the adjusting bolts with a hex wrench or flat tip screwdriver when loosening the locknuts.



—4 Repeat steps—2 and —3 until clearance "H" is within the specified limits, then fasten the center glass guide and roller guide.

Press the stopper plates against the glass stoppers, then fasten the stopper plates.

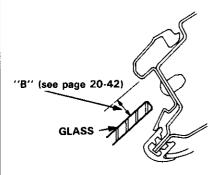
NOTE: Check that the stopper plates contact the glass stoppers evenly.



Doors

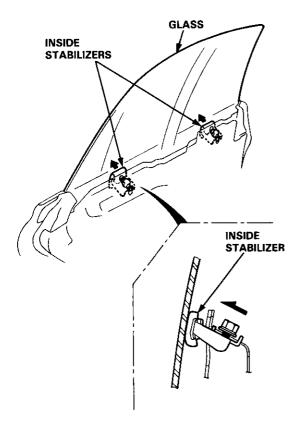
· Glass Adjustment (cont'd) ·

14. Adjust clearance "B" as follows.

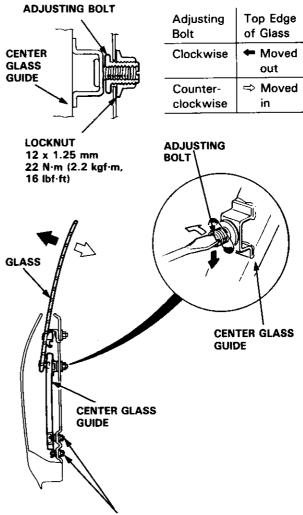


- -1 Lower the glass 10 mm (0.39 in).
- -2 Push the glass outward 10 mm (0.39 in), then push the inside stabilizers against the glass lightly. Fasten the inside stabilizers.

NOTE: Check that the glass moves smoothly.



—3 Loosen the upper locknut on the center glass guide, and turn the adjusting bolt until clearance "B" is within the specified value.



NOTE: Do not adjust the lower adjusting bolts on the center glass guide.

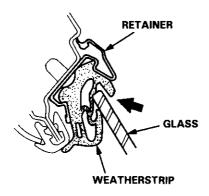
- —4 Move the glass up and down to seat it, then measure clearance "B" at the designated locations.
- —5 Measure clearance "H" again to make sure it is still within the specified limits at the designated locations.

NOTE: Repeat the above steps until the correct clearances are obtained.

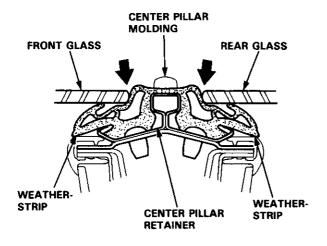


- 15. After the clearances have been adjusted properly, reinstall the weatherstrip.
- Check that the glass contacts the weatherstrip evenly.

NOTE: Measuring points are described on page 20-42.



Center Pillar section:



17. Check for water leaks.

NOTE: Do not use high pressure water.



- 18. Route the door harness and connectors, and fasten them to the door (see pages 20-22, 33).
- 19. Disconnect the power window switch from the door harness, then install the power window switch on the door panel (see page 20-41).
- 20. Attach the plastic cover, then install the door panel (see pages 20-20, 32).

Doors

- Position Adjustment

NOTE: Place the vehicle on a firm, level surface when adjusting the doors.

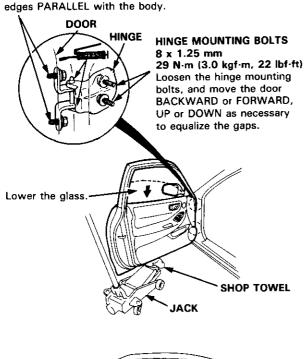
After installing the door, check for a flush fit with the body, then check for equal gaps between the front, rear, and bottom door edges and the body.

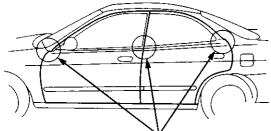
The door and body edges should also be parallel. Adjust at the hinges as shown.

CAUTION: Place a shop towel on the jack to prevent damage to the door when loosening the door and hinge mounting bolts for adjustment.

DOOR MOUNTING BOLTS

8 x 1.25 mm 29 N·m (3.0 kgf·m, 22lbf·ft) Loosen the door mounting bolts slightly to move the door IN or OUT until it's flush with the body. If necessary, you can install a shim behind one hinge to make the door





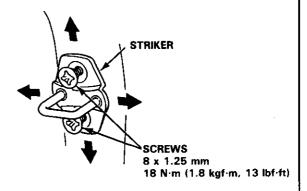
The door and body edges should be parallel.

NOTE: Check for water leaks.

Striker Adjustment

Make sure the door latches securely without slamming. If it needs adjustment:

- 1. Draw a line around the striker for reference.
- Loosen the screws, and move the striker IN or OUT to make the latch fit tighter or looser. Move the striker UP or DOWN to align it with the latch opening. Then lightly tighten the screws and recheck.



NOTE: Hold the outer handle out, and push the door against the body to be sure the striker allows a flush fir

If the door latches properly, tighten the screws and recheck.

Mirrors

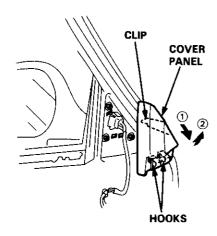


Power Door Mirror Replacement -

Hatchback

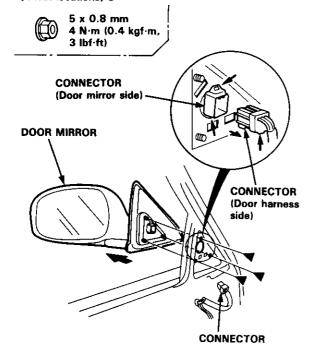
 Pry out the cover panel with a flat tip screwdriver, then remove it.

CAUTION: When prying with a flat tip screwdriver, wrap it with protective tape to prevent damage.



2. Disconnect the connector. Remove the nuts, then remove the door mirror while holding it.

■: Nut locations, 3

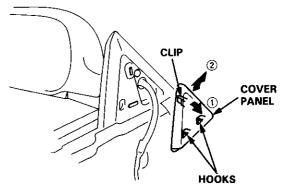


3. Installation is the reverse of the removal procedure.

Sedan

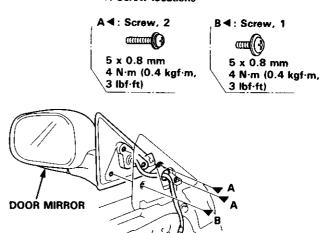
- Remove the door panel (see page 20-20) and disconnect the connector.
- 2. Pry the cover panel out with a flat tip screwdriver, then remove the cover panel.

CAUTION: When prying with a flat tip screwdriver, wrap it with protective tape to prevent damage.



3. Remove the screws while holding the door mirror.

◄: Screw locations



4. Installation is the reverse of the removal procedure.

CONNECTOR

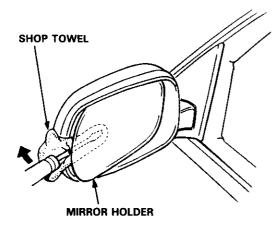
Detach the harness

Mirrors

- Mirror Holder Replacement

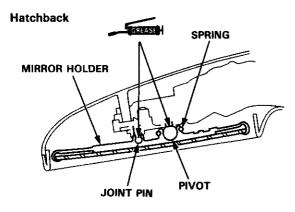
 Carefully pry out the mirror holder with a flat tip screwdriver as shown.

CAUTION: To prevent damage to the mirror, wrap the end of a flat tip screwdriver with a shop towel.

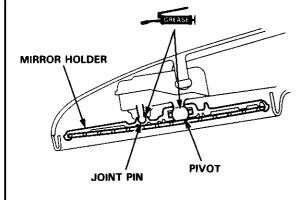


2. Installation is the reverse of the removal procedure.

NOTE: Apply grease to the locations indicated by the arrows.



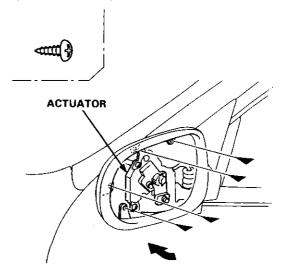
Sedan



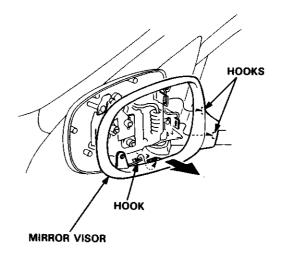
Mirror Visor and Mirror Cover-Replacement

Hatchback

- 1. Remove the mirror holder.
- 2. Turn the actuator forward, then remove the screws.
 - **◄**: Screw locations, 4

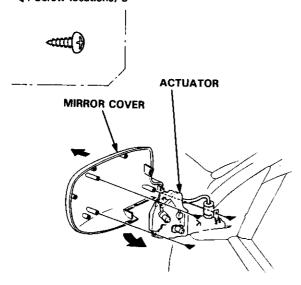


3. Detach the hooks, then remove the mirror visor.





- 4. Turn the actuator to the original position. Remove the screws, then remove the mirror cover.
 - **◄: Screw locations, 3**



5. Installation is the reverse of the removal procedure.

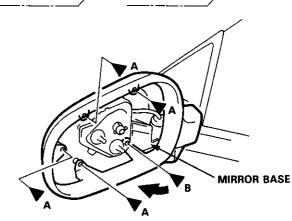
Sedan

- 1. Remove the mirror holder.
- 2. Turn the mirror base forward, then remove the screws.
- **◀**: Screw locations
- A ◀: Screw, 4

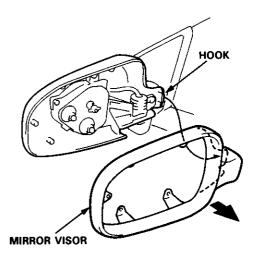








3. Detach the hook, then remove the mirror visor.



Mirrors

Mirror Visor and Mirror Cover — Replacement (cont'd)

4. Remove the actuator, then remove the screws.

◄: Screw locations

A ◀: Screw, 3

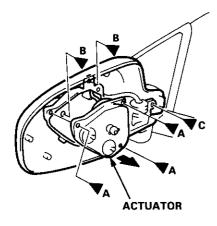
B◀: Screw, 2

C ◀: Screw, 1

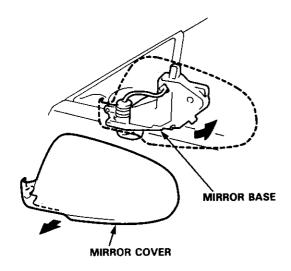
(P)







Turn the mirror base as shown, then remove the mirror cover



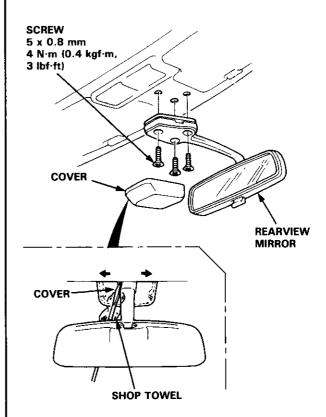
6. Installation is the reverse of the removal procedure.

Rearview Mirror Replacement -

1. Pry the cover off using the end of a flat tip screw-driver.

CAUTION: To prevent damage to the mirror and cover, wrap the end of the screwdriver with a shop towel.

2. Remove the screws, then remove the rearview mirror.



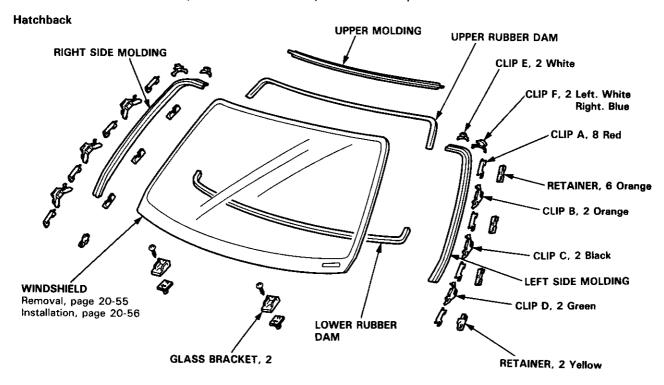
3. Installation is the reverse of the removal procedure.

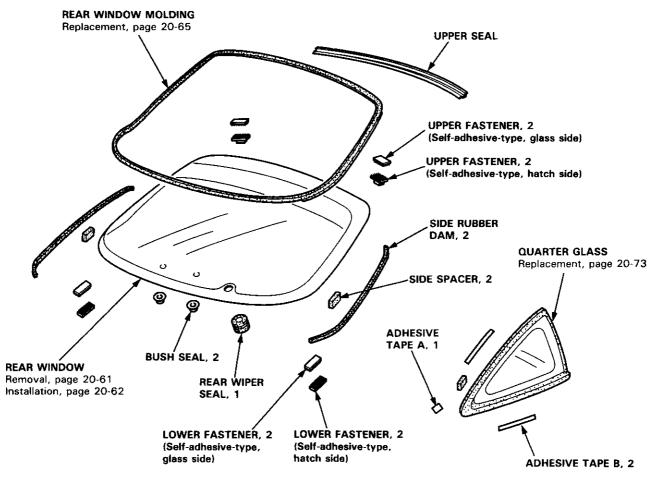
Windshield, Rear Window, Quarter Glass



Index-

NOTE: The numbers after the part names show the quantities of the parts used.



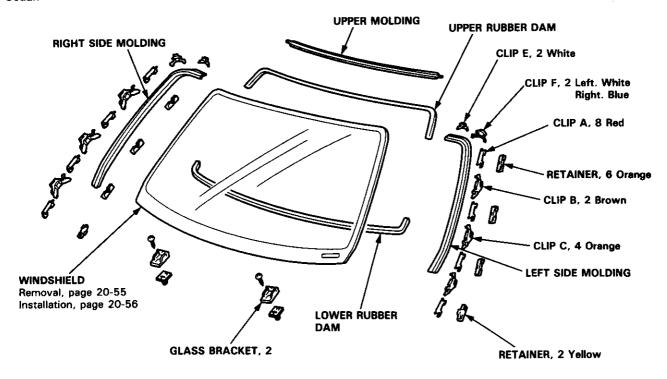


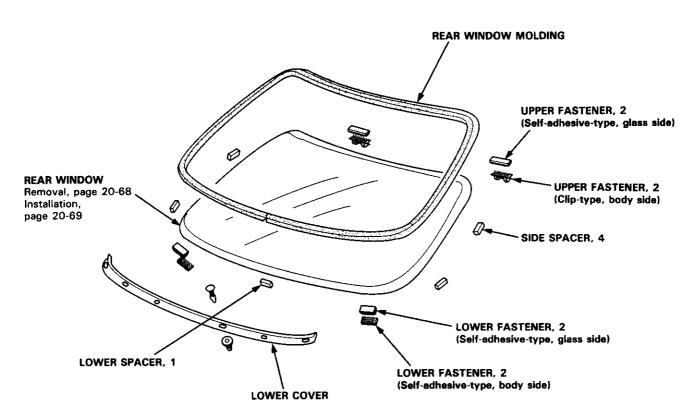
Windshield, Rear Window

Index -

NOTE: The numbers after the part names show the quantities of the parts used.

Sedan





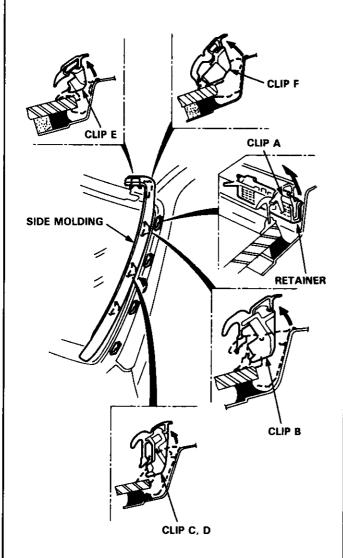
Windshield

- Removal -

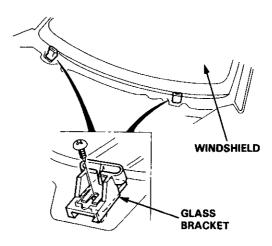
CAUTION:

- Wear gloves to remove and install the windshield.
- Use seat covers to avoid damaging any surfaces.
- 1. To remove the windshield, first remove the:
 - Front pillar trim (see page 20-91)
 - Headliner (see pages 20-98, 100)
 - Front wipers and air scoop (see section 23)
- 2. Detach the clips from the retainers, then remove both side moldings as shown.

NOTE: If necessary, replace any damaged clips.

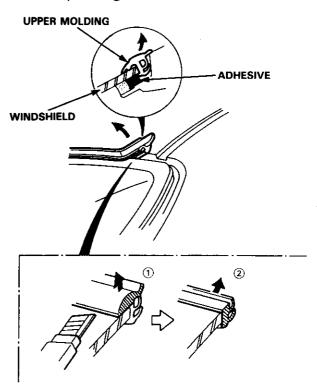


3. Remove the right and left glass brackets.



4. Peel off the upper molding.

NOTE: When the upper molding removal is difficult, cut the upper rubber portion ① off, then cut the side rubber portion ②.



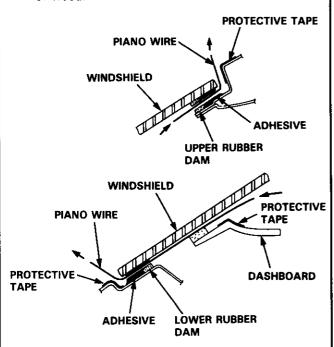
5. Remove the other retainers from the body.

Windshield

Removal (cont'd) -

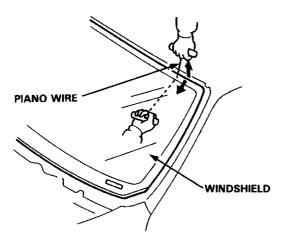
Apply protective tape to along the edge of the dashboard and body as shown.

Using an awl, make a hole through the rubber dam and adhesive from inside the car. Push the piano wire throught the hole, and wrap each end around a piece of wood.



 With a helper on the outside, pull the piano wire back and forth in a sawing motion, and carefully cut through the rubber dam and adhesive around the entire windshield.

CAUTION: Hold the piano wire as close to the windshield as possible to prevent damage to the body and dashboard.



8. Carefully remove the windshield.

Installation -

 Scrape the old adhesive smooth with a knife, to a thickness of about 2 mm (0.08 in) on the bonding surface around the entire windshield opening flange.

NOTE:

- Do not scrape down to the painted surface of the body; damaged paint will interfere with proper bonding.
- · Remove the rubber dam from the body.
- Mask off surrounding surfaces before painting.
- Clean the body bonding surface with a sponge dampened in alcohol.

NOTE: After cleaning, keep oil, grease and water from getting on the surface.

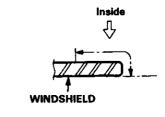
 If the old windshield is to be reinstalled, use a putty knife to scrape off all traces of old adhesive, then clean the windshield surface with alcohol where new adhesive is to be applied.

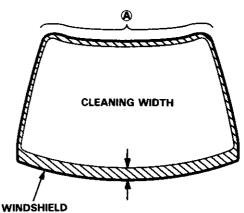
NOTE: Make sure the bonding surface is kept free of water, oil and grease.

CAUTION: Avoid setting the windshield on its edges; small chips may later develop into cracks.

NOTE:

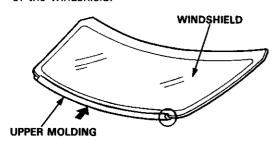
- Clean the shadowed area.
- Clean the area (A) as shown.

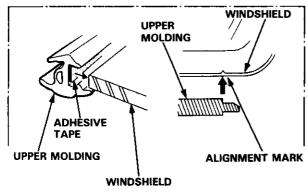






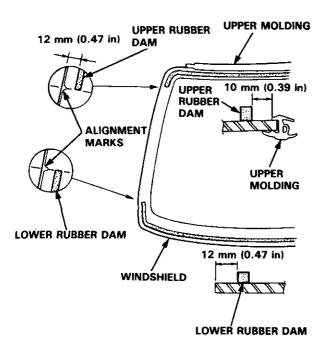
 Center and glue the upper molding to the upper edge of the windshield.





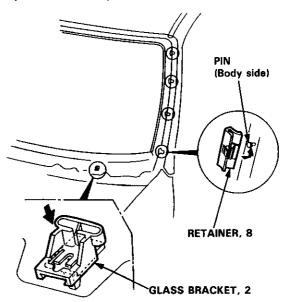
5. Glue the upper and lower rubber dams to the inside face of the windshield, as shown, to contain the adhesive during installation.

NOTE: Be careful not to touch the windshield where adhesive will be applied.

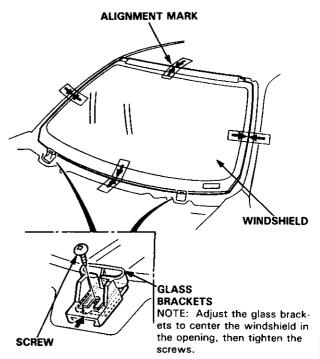


6. Install the glass brackets and retainers as shown.

NOTE: The numbers after the part names show the quantities of the parts used.



 Set the windshield on the glass brackets, then center it in the opening. Make alignment marks across the windshield and body with a grease pencil at the four points shown.



8. Remove the windshield.

Windshield

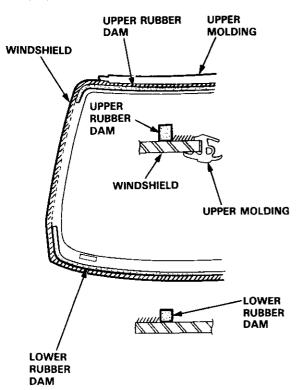
Installation (cont'd)

With a sponge, apply a light coat of glass primer around the edge of the windshield as shown, then lightly wipe it off with gauze or cheesecloth.

NOTE:

- Do not apply body primer to the windshield, and do not get body and glass primer sponges mixed up.
- Never touch the primed surfaces with your hands.
 If you do, the adhesive may not bond to the windshield properly, causing a leak after the windshield is installed.
- Keep water, dust, and abrasive materials away from the primed surface.

/////: Apply glass primer here.

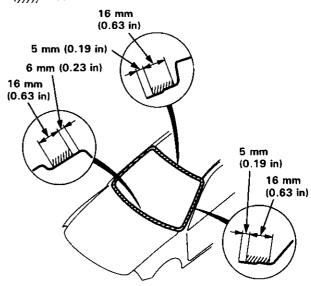


10. With a sponge, apply a light coat of body primer to the original adhesive remaining around the windshield opening flange. Let the body primer dry for at least 10 minutes.

NOTE:

- Do not apply glass primer to the body, and be careful not to mix up glass and body primer sponges.
- Never touch the primed surfaces with your hands.
- Mask off the dashboard before painting the flange.

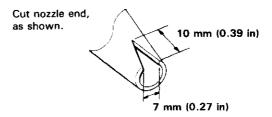
/////: Apply body primer here.



11. Thoroughly mix the adhesive and hardener together on a glass or metal plate with a putty knife.

NOTE:

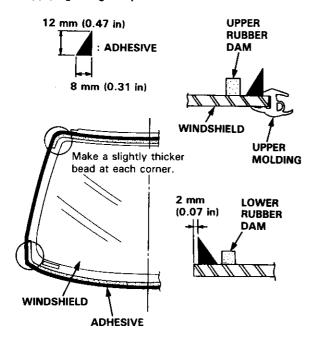
- Clean the plate with a sponge and alcohol before mixing.
- Follow the instructions that come with the adhesive.
- Before filling a cartridge, cut the end of the nozzle, as shown.





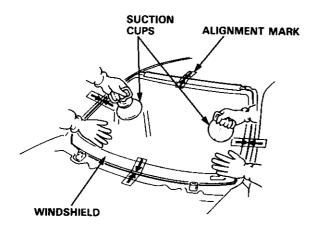
13. Pack adhesive into the cartridge without air pockets to ensure continuous delivery. Put the cartridge in a caulking gun, and run a bead of adhesive around the edge of the windshield as shown.

NOTE: Apply the adhesive within 30 minutes after applying the glass primer.

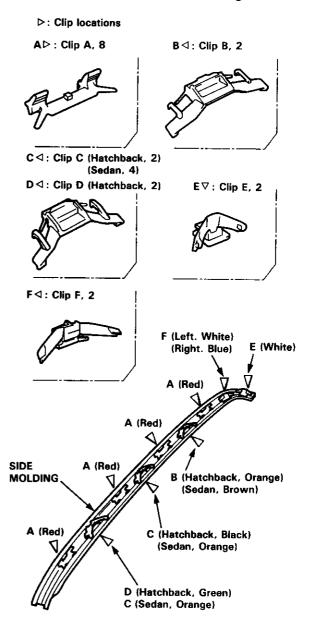


14. Use suction cups to hold the windshield over the opening, align it with the alignment marks made in step 7, and set it down on the adhesive. Lightly push on the windshield until its edge is fully seated on the adhesive all the way around.

NOTE: Do not close or open the doors until adhesive is dry.



15. Install the clips on both side moldings.



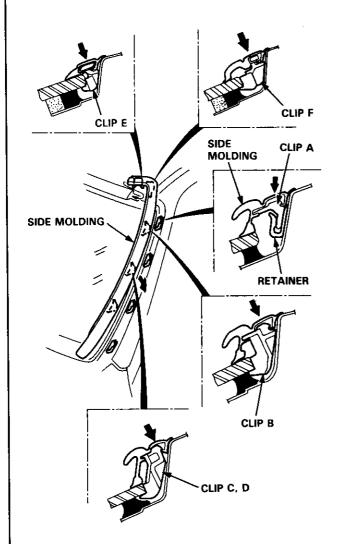
Scrape or wipe the excess adhesive off with a putty knife or towel.

NOTE: To remove adhesive from a painted surface or the windshield, wipe with a soft shop towel dampened with alcohol.

Windshield

Installation (cont'd)

17. Install both side moldings.



18. Let the adhesive dry for at least one hour, then spray water over the windshield and check for leaks. Mark leaking areas, and let the windshield dry, then seal with sealant.

NOTE:

- Let the car stand for at least four hours after windshield installation. If the car has to be used within the first four hours, it must be driven slowly.
- Keep the windshield dry for the first hour after installation.
- Check that the ends of the side molding are set under the air scoop.
- 19. Reassemble all removed parts.

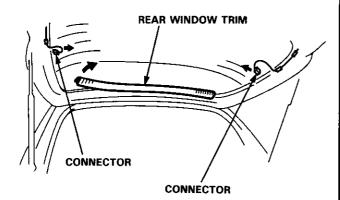
Rear Window

- Removal ·

Hatchback

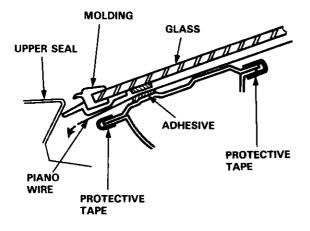
CAUTION:

- Use covers to avoid damaging the interior.
- Wear gloves to remove and install the glass.
- Do not damage the defroster grid lines.
- Take care not scratch the rear window molding.
- 1. To remove the rear window, first remove the:
 - Rear shelf (see page 20-91)
 - Hatch side trim and hatch trim panel (see page 20-146)
 - High mount brake light (see section 23)
 - Rear wiper and wiper motor (see section 23)
- Remove the rear window trim and disconnect the connectors.



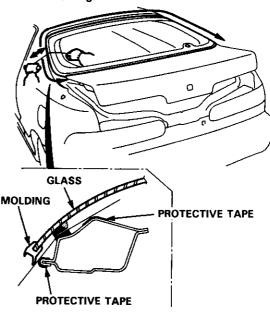
3. Apply protective tape to the inner and outer edges of the hatch.

Using an awl, make a hole through the adhesive from the inside, at the top of the hatch. Push piano wire through the hole, and wrap each end around a piece of wood.



4. With a helper on the outside, pull the piano wire back and forth in a sawing motion, and carefully cut through the adhesive the along the top and the sides of the rear window.

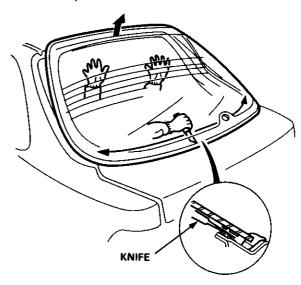
CAUTION: Hold the piano wire as close to the rear window as possible to prevent damage to the body and molding.



Cut the adhesive with a knife at the bottom of the rear window.

NOTE: Do not use piano wire in this area.

6. Carefully remove the rear window.



NOTE: Replace the fasteners with new ones whenever the rear window has been removed.

Rear Window

Installation

 Scrape the old adhesive smooth with a knife to a thickness of about 2 mm (0.08 in) on the bonding surface around the entire rear window opening flange.

NOTE:

- Do not scrape down to the painted surface of the body; damaged paint will interfere with proper bonding.
- Remove the upper and lower fasteners from the hatch.
- Mask off surrounding surfaces before applying primer.
- 2. Clean the hatch bonding surface with a sponge dampened in alcohol.

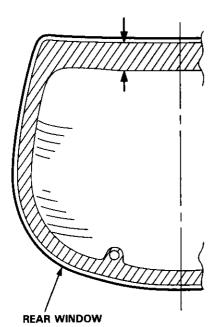
NOTE: After cleaning, keep oil, grease or water from getting on the surface.

 If the old rear window is to be reinstalled, use a putty knife to scrape off all traces of old adhesive, then clean the rear window surface with alcohol where new adhesive is to be applied.

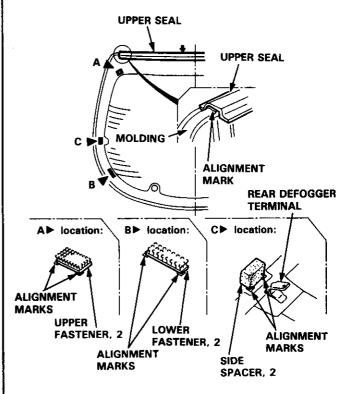
NOTE: Make sure the bonding surface is kept free of water, oil and grease.

CAUTION: Avoid setting the rear window on its edges; small chips may later develop into cracks.

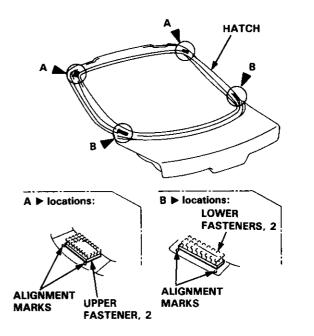
NOTE: Clean the shadowed area.



- Apply the upper seal to the inside face of glass as shown.
- Glue the upper fasteners, lower fasteners and side spacers, to the inside face of the rear window on each side.

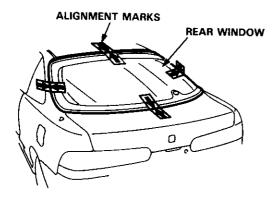


Glue the lower fasteners and upper fasteners to the hatch, as shown.





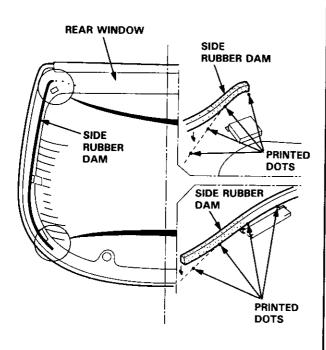
 Set the rear window upright on the hatch, then center it in the opening. Make alignment marks across the rear window and body with a grease pencil at the four points shown.



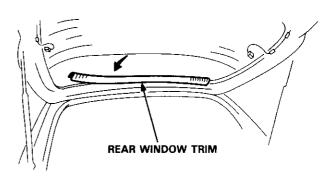
- 8. Remove the rear window.
- Center and glue the side rubber dams to the inside face of the rear window, as shown, to contain the adhesive during installation.

NOTE:

- Glue the side rubber dams, using the printed dots as a guide.
- Be careful not to touch the rear window, where adhesive will be applied.
- Mask off surrounding surfaces before applying primer.



10. Install the rear window trim.



11. With a sponge, apply a light coat of glass primer around the edge of the rear window, then lightly wipe it off with gauze or cheesecloth.

NOTE:

- Do not apply body primer to the rear window, and do not get body and glass primer sponges mixed up.
- Never touch the primed surfaces with your hands.
 If you do, the adhesive may not bond to the rear window properly, causing a leak after the rear window is installed.
- Keep water, dust, and abrasive materials away from the primed surface.

//// : Apply glass primer here. NOTE: Apply the glass primer, UPPER 15 mm 2 mm (0.6 in)using the printed dots as a guide. (0.08 in)SIDE RUBBER 15 mm DAM (0.6 in)SIDE RUBBER DAM. MOLDING 15 mm (0.6 in)15 mm (0.6 in)GLASS **REAR WINDOW** MOLDING (cont'd)

Rear Window

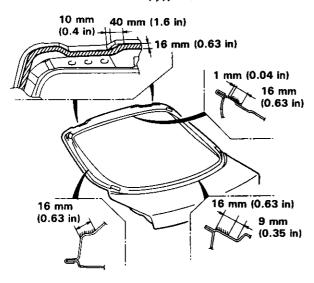
- Installation (cont'd) -

12. With a sponge, apply a light coat of body primer to the original adhesive remaining around the rear window opening flange. Let the body primer dry for at least 10 minutes.

NOTE:

- Do not apply glass primer to the body, and be careful not to mix up glass and body primer sponges.
- Never touch the primed surfaces with your hands.

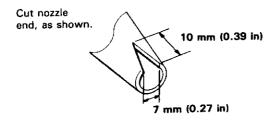
////: Apply body primer here.



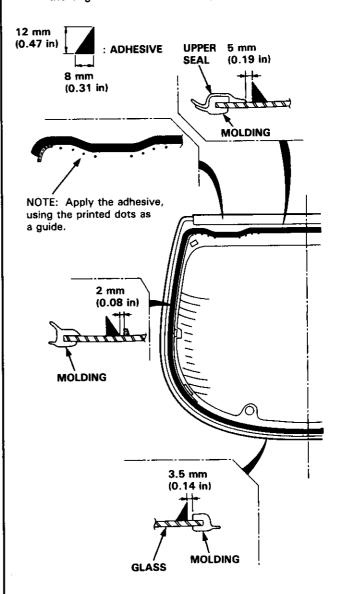
 Thoroughly mix the adhesive and hardener together on a glass or metal plate with a putty knife.

NOTE:

- Clean the plate with a sponge and alcohol before mixing.
- Follow the instructions that came with the adhesive.
- 14. Before filling a cartridge, cut the end of the nozzle, as shown.



15. Pack adhesive into the cartridge without air pockets to ensure continous delivery. Put the cartridge in a caulking gun, and run a bead of adhesive around the edge of the rear window, as shown.



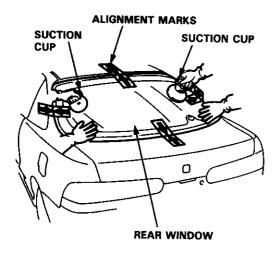
Rear Window Molding

- Replacement



16. Use suction cups to hold the rear window over the opening, align it with the alignment marks made in step 7, and set it down on the adhesive. Lightly push on the rear window until its edges are fully seated on the adhesive all the way around.

NOTE: Do not open or close the doors until the adhesive is dry.



17. Scrape or wipe the excess adhesive off with a putty knife or towel.

NOTE: To remove adhesive from a painted surface or the rear window, use a soft shop towel dampened with alcohol.

18. Let the adhesive dry for at least one hour, then spray water over the rear window and check for leaks. Mark leaking areas and let the rear window dry, then seal with sealant.

NOTE: Let the car stand for at least four hours after rear window installation. If the car has to be used within the first four hours, it must be driven slowly.

19. Reinstall all remaining removed parts.

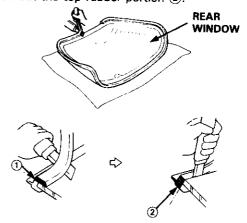
_

 Remove the rear window, then remove the upper seal.

2. Place the rear window on its surface, as shown, with a helper holding the rear window.

CAUTION: Avoid setting the rear window on its edges: small chips may later develop into cracks.

3. Cut the inner side rubber portion ① off the molding, then cut the top rubber portion ②.

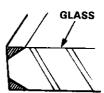


 Turn the rear window over, then cut the outer side rubber portion 3 of the molding.



Scrape all traces of old molding from the chamfered edges of the glass.

NOTE: Be sure to scrape all traces of old molding thoroughly.



6. Clean the rear window surface with alcohol where new molding is to be installed.

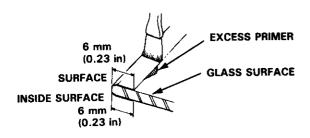
NOTE: Make sure the surface is kept free of water, oil and grease.

Rear Window Molding

- Replacement (cont'd) -

7. With a brush, apply a light coat of glass primer around the edge of the glass.

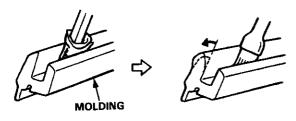
NOTE: Scrape off excess glass primer with a putty knife after installing new molding.



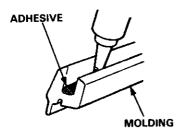
8. Degrease the inner surfaces of new molding thoroughly, then apply a light coat of glass primer to the surfaces.

NOTE:

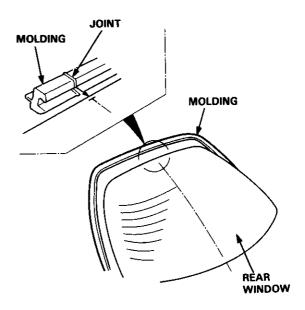
- Apply glass primer around the entire groove of the new molding.
- Do not apply glass primer to the outer surface.



9. Run a bead of adhesive in the groove of the molding.

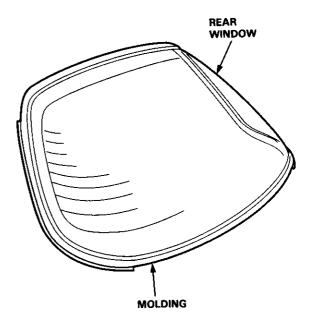


10. Place the rear window outside-up, then align the joint of the molding with the "T" mark at the top of the glass as shown.



11. Press the molding into position around the entire edge of the rear window.

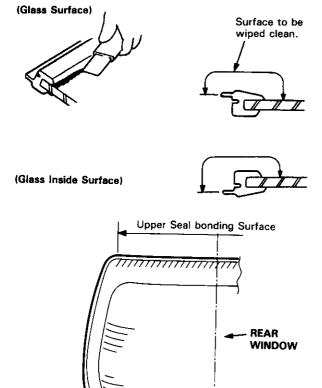
NOTE: Check that the molding is not wrinkled or lifted away at corners.



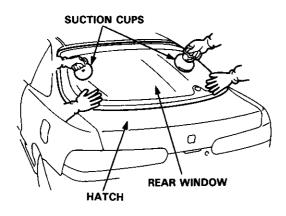


Scrape or wipe the excess adhesive off with a putty knife or gauge.

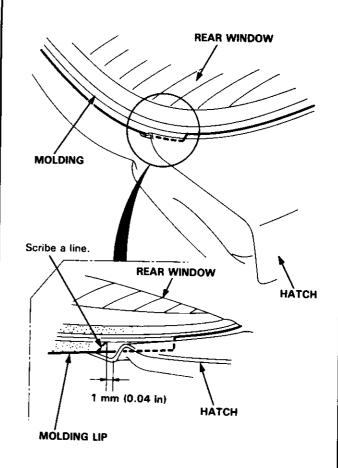
NOTE: Clean the molding and rear window surface with alcohol where upper seal is to be applied.



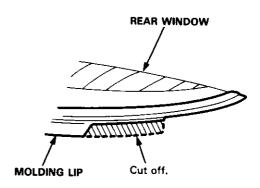
- 13. Apply the upper seal to the inside face of glass (see page 20-62).
- 14. After the adhesive is dry, use suction cups to hold the rear window over the opening, set the rear window on the hatch, then center it in the opening.



15. Scribe a line on the molding lip with a grease pencil to show the cutting portion of the molding lip, as shown.



16. Cut the molding lip off, as shown.



- Close the hatch, then check the gap between the molding lip and body.
- 18. If the molding lip contacts the body, cut the molding lip off, keeping the gap parallel with the body.

Rear Window

Removal -

Sedan

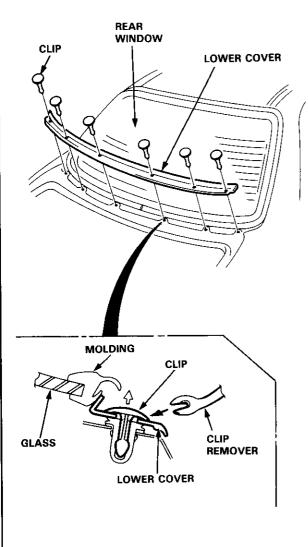
CAUTION:

- Wear gloves to remove and install the rear window.
- Do not damage the defroster grid lines.
- 1. To remove the rear window, first remove:
 - Trunk lid (see page 20-149)
 - Rear seat-back side bolsters (see page 20-111)
 - Rear shelf (see page 20-95)
 - Rear pillar trim panel (see page 20-95)
- Disconnect the defroster leads, and remove their holders.

NOTE: Avoid scratching the rear window with the cutter blade.

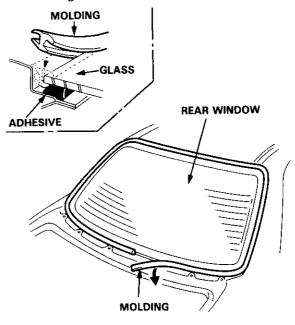
3. Remove the clips, then remove the lower cover.

NOTE: Use a clip remover to remove the clips.



4. Peel off the molding.

NOTE: When molding removal is difficult, cut the molding with a knife.

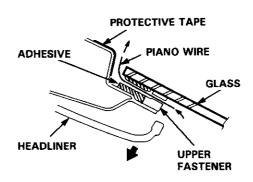


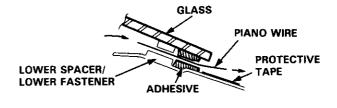
5. Pull down the rear of the headliner (see page 20-101).

CAUTION: Take care not to bend the headliner excessively.

Apply protective tape to the edge of the body, as shown.

Using an awl, make a hole through the adhesive from inside the car. Push the piano wire through the hole and wrap each end around a piece of wood.

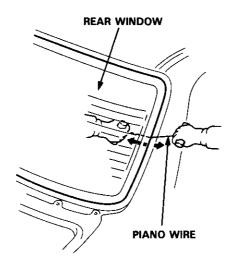






 With a helper on the outside, pull the piano wire back and forth in a sawing motion, and carefully cut through the adhesive around the entire rear window.

CAUTION: Hold the piano wire as close to the rear window as possible to prevent damage to the body.



8. Carefully remove the rear window.

Installation

 Scrape the old adhesive smooth with a knife, to a thickness of about 2 mm (0.08 in) on the bonding surface around the entire rear window opening flange.

NOTE:

- Do not scrape down to the painted surface of the body; damaged paint will interfere with proper bonding.
- Remove the upper and lower fasteners from the body.
- Mask off surrounding surfaces before applying primer.
- Clean the body bonding surface with a sponge dampened in alcohol.

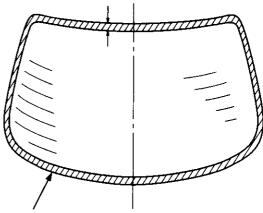
NOTE: After cleaning, keep oil, grease and water from getting on the surface.

 If the old rear window is to be reinstalled, use a putty knife to scrape off all traces of old adhesive, then clean the rear window surface with alcohol where new adhesive is to be applied.

NOTE: Make sure the bonding surface is kept free of water, oil and grease.

CAUTION: Avoid setting the rear window on its edges; small chips may later develop into cracks.

NOTE: Clean the shadowed area.



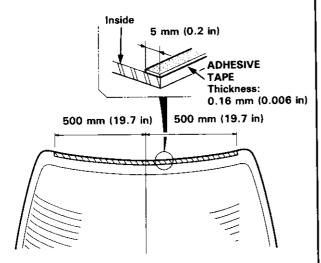
REAR WINDOW

(cont'd)

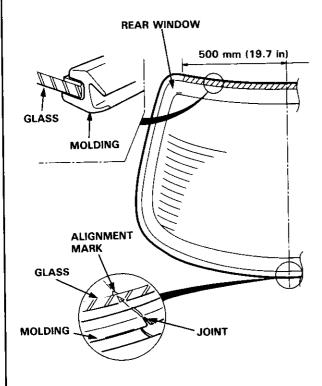
Rear Window

Installation (cont'd)

4. Apply the double-faced adhesive tape to the inside of the rear window, as shown.

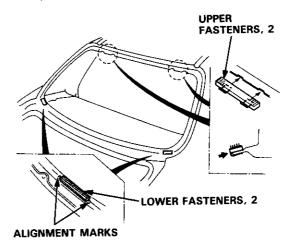


5. Glue the molding around the edge of the rear window, as shown.



Install the upper fasteners and glue the lower fasteners to the body, as shown.

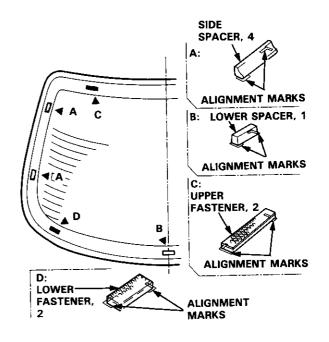
NOTE: The numbers after the parts names show quantity of the part used.



 Glue the side and lower spacers and fasteners to the inside face of the rear window and molding, as shown.

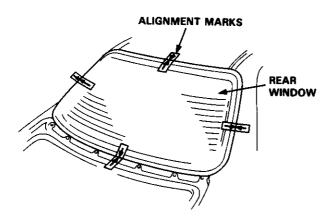
NOTE: The numbers after the part names show the quantities of the parts used.

>: Spacer, fastener locations





Set the rear window, then center it in the opening. Make alignment marks across the rear window and body with a grease pencil at the four points shown.

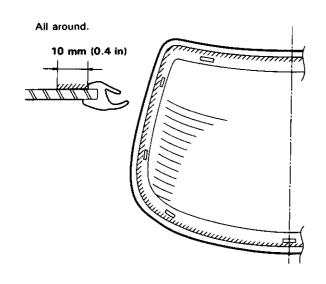


- 9. Remove the rear window.
- 10. With a sponge, apply a light coat of glass primer around the edge of the rear window as shown, then lightly wipe it off with gauze or cheesecloth.

NOTE:

- Do not apply body primer to the rear window, and do not get body and glass primer sponges mixed
- Never touch the primed surfaces with your hands.
 If you do, the adhesive may not bond to the rear window properly, causing a leak after the rear window is installed.
- Keep water, dust, and abrasive materials away from the primed surface.



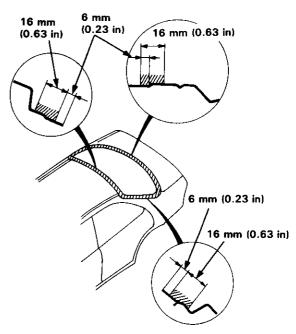


11. With a sponge, apply a light coat of body primer to the original adhesive remaining around the rear window opening flange. Let the body primer dry for at least 10 minutes.

NOTE:

- Do not apply glass primer to the body, and be careful not to mix up glass and body primer sponges.
- Never touch the primed surfaces with your hands.

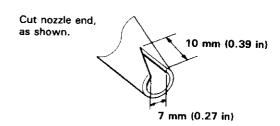
///////: Apply body primer here.



12. Thoroughly mix the adhesive and hardener together on a glass or metal plate with a putty knife. Follow the instructions that came with the adhesive.

NOTE: Clean the plate with a sponge and alcohol before mixing.

 Before filling a cartridge, cut the end of the nozzle, as shown.



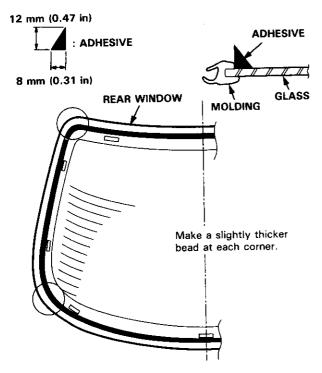
(cont'd)

Rear Window

- Installation (cont'd) -

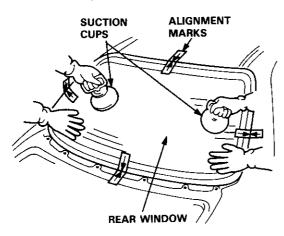
14. Pack adhesive into the cartridge without air pockets to ensure continuous delivery. Put the cartridge in a caulking gun, and run a bead of adhesive around the edge of the rear window, as shown.

NOTE: Apply the adhesive within 30 minutes after applying the glass primer.



15. Use suction cups to hold the rear window over the opening, align it with the alignment marks made in step 8, and set it down on the adhesive. Lightly push on the rear window until its edges are fully seated on the adhesive all the way around.

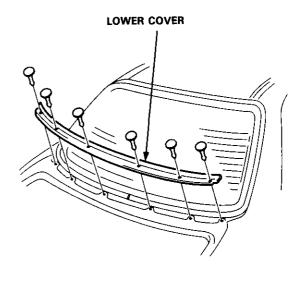
NOTE: Do not close or open the doors until the adhesive is dry.



16. Scrape or wipe the excess adhesive off with a putty knife or towel.

NOTE: To remove adhesive from a painted surface or the rear window, use a soft shop towel dampened with alcohol.

17. Install the lower cover.



18. Let the adhesive dry for at least one hour, then spray water over the rear window and check for leaks. Mark leaking areas, let the rear window dry, then seal with sealant.

NOTE: Let the car stand for at least four hours after rear window installation. If the car has to be used within the first four hours, it must be driven slowly.

- 19. Raise the headliner back up into position, then install:
 - Rear pillar trim panel
 - · Rear shelf
 - Rear seat-back side bolsters

Quarter Glass

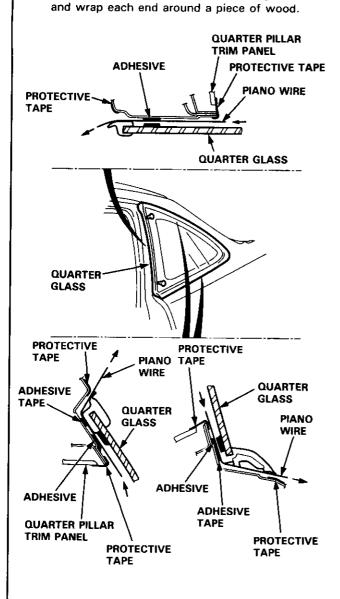
Replacement

CAUTION:

- Wear gloves to remove and install the quarter glass.
- Use seat covers to avoid damaging any surfaces.

NOTE: Replace the quarter glass with new one when removing it.

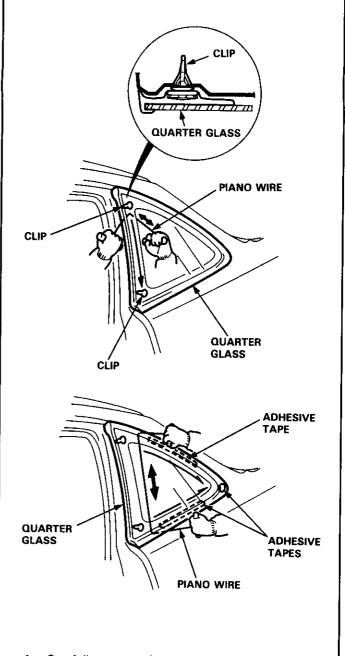
- 1. To remove the quarter glass, first remove the quarter trim (see page 20-93).
- Apply protective tape to the edge of the quarter pillar trim panel and body as shown.
 Using an awl, make a hole through the adhesive from inside the car. Push the piano wire throught the hole,



 Pull the piano wire back and forth in a sawing motion, and carefully cut through the adhesive around the entire quarter glass.

CAUTION: Hold the piano wire as close to the quarter glass as possible to prevent damage to the body and quarter pillar trim panel.

NOTE: When each corner cut is difficult, use a knife to cut through the adhesive from inside the car.



Carefully remove the quarter glass.

(cont'd)

Quarter Glass

- Replacement (cont'd) -

 Scrape the old adhesive smooth with a knife, to a thickness of about 2 mm (0.08 in) on the bonding surface around the entire quarter glass opening flange.

NOTE:

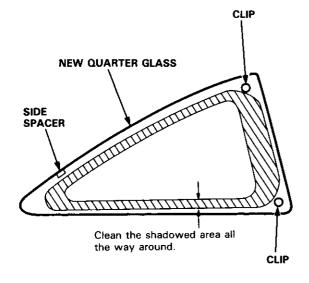
- Do not scrape down to the painted surface of the body: damaged paint will interfere with proper bonding.
- Mask off surrounding surfaces before applying primer.
- Clean the body bonding surface with a sponge dampened in alcohol.

NOTE: After cleaning, keep oil, grease and water from getting on the surface.

7. Clean the new quarter glass surface with alcohol where adhesive is to be applied.

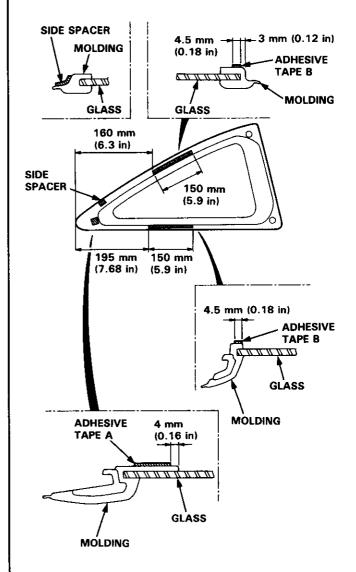
NOTE: Make sure the bonding surface is kept free of water, oil and grease.

CAUTION: Avoid setting the quarter glass on its edges; small chips may later develop into cracks.



 Apply the double-faced adhesive tapes to the molding, as shown.

- Be careful not to touch the quarter glass where adhesive will be applied.
- Do not peel the separator off the double-faced adhesive tapes.



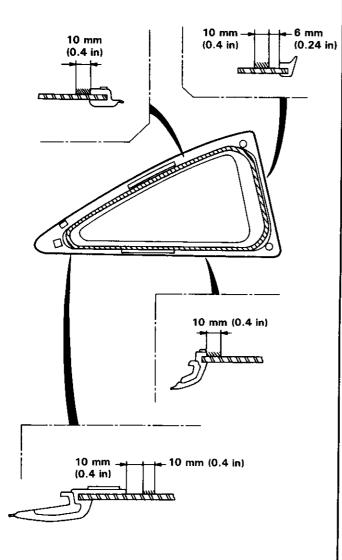


With a sponge, apply a light coat of glass primer to the inside face of the quarter glass, as shown, then lightly wipe it off with gauze or cheesecloth.

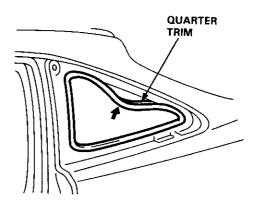
NOTE:

- Do not apply body primer to the quarter glass, and do not get body and glass primer sponges mixed up.
- Never touch the primed surfaces with your hands.
 If you do, the adhesive may not bond to the quarter glass properly, causing a leak after the quarter glass is installed.
- Keep water, dust, and abrasive materials away from the primed surface.

///// : Apply glass primer here.



10. Install the quarter trim.



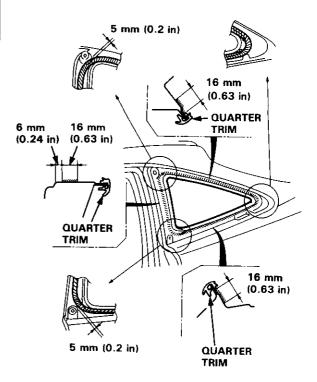
 With a sponge, apply a light coat of body primer to the original adhesive remaining around the quarter glass opening flange.

Let the body primer dry for at least 10 minutes.

NOTE:

- Do not apply glass primer to the body, and be careful not to mix up glass and body primer sponges.
- Never touch the primed surfaces with your hands.

/////,: Apply body primer here.



(cont'd)

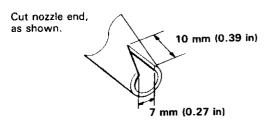
Quarter Glass

- Replacement (cont'd) -

Thoroughly mix the adhesive and hardener together on a glass or metal plate with a putty knife.

NOTE:

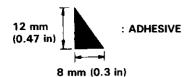
- Clean the plate with a sponge and alcohol before mixing.
- Follow the instructions that came with the adhesive.
- 13. Before filling a cartridge, cut the end of the nozzle, as shown.

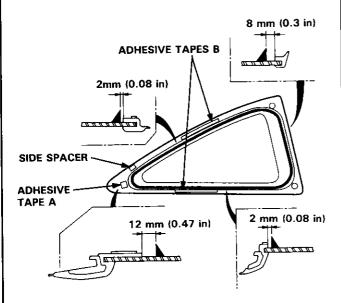


14. Pack adhesive into the cartridge without air pockets to ensure continuous delivery. Put the cartrige in a caulking gun, and run a bead of adhesive around the edge of the quarter glass as shown.

NOTE:

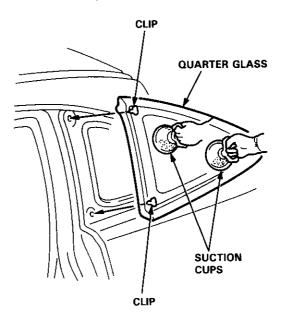
- After applying the adhesive, peel the separator off the double-faced adhesive tapes.
- Apply the adhesive within 30 minutes after applying the glass primer.





- 15. Install the fasteners to the body as shown.
- 16. Use suction cups to hold the quarter glass over the opening, align it with the clip setting points, and set it down on the adhesive. Lightly puch on the quarter glass until its edges are fully seated on the adhesive all the way around.

NOTE: Do not open or close the doors until the adhesive is dry.



17. Scrape or wipe the excess adhesive off with a putty knife or towel.

NOTE: Use a soft shop towel dampened with alcohol to remove adhesive from a painted surface or the quarter glass.

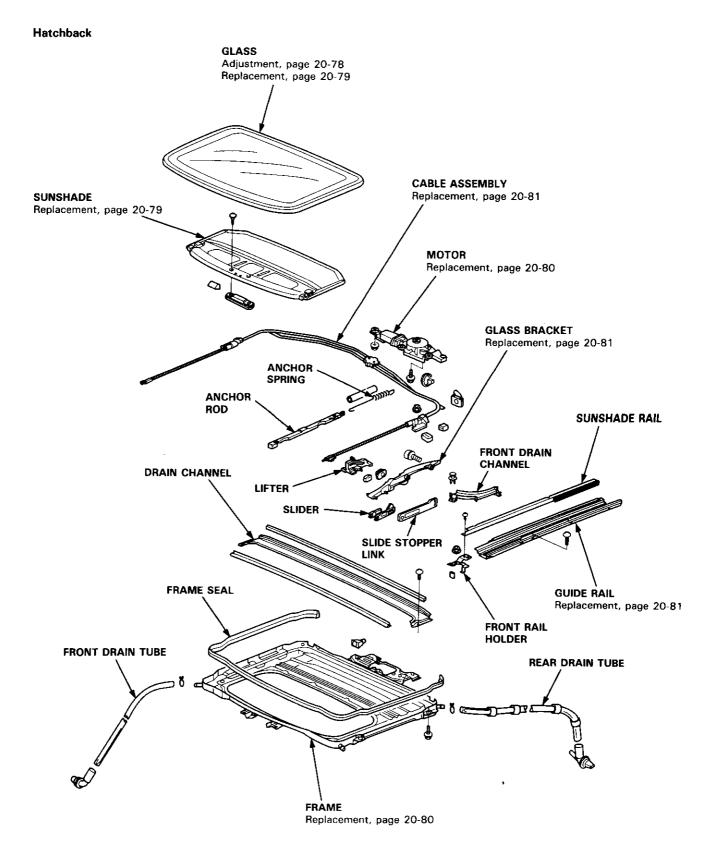
18. Let the adhesive dry for at least one hour, then spray water over the quarter glass and check for leaks. Mark leaking areas and let the quarter glass dry, then seal with sealant.

NOTE: Let the car stand for at least four hours after quarter glass installation. If the car has to be used within the first four hours, it must be driven slowly.

19. Reinstall all remaning removed parts.

Moonroof

Index -



Moonroof

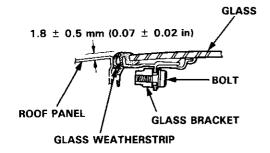
- Troubleshooting

| Symptom | Probable Cause |
|---|--|
| Water leaks | Clogged drain tube. Gap between glass weatherstrip and roof panel. Defective or improperly installed glass weatherstrip. Gap between drain seal and roof panel. |
| Wind noise | 1. Excessive clearance between glass weatherstrip and roof panel. |
| Motor noise | Loose motor. Worn gear or bearing. Cable assembly deformed. |
| Glass does not move, but motor turns | Clutch out of adjustment. Foreign matter stuck between guide rail and slider. Inner cable loose. Cable assembly not attached properly. |
| Glass does not move and motor does not turn (glass can be moved with moonroof wrench) | Blown fuse. Faulty switch. Battery run down. Defective motor. Faulty realy. |

Glass Height Adjustment

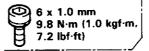
The roof panel should be even with the glass weather-strip, to within 1.8 \pm 0.5 mm (0.07 \pm 0.02 in) all the way around. If not, slide the sunshade back, and:

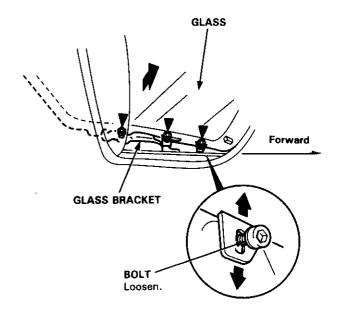
- 1. Tilt-up the glass.
- 2. Loosen the bolts and adjust the glass.
- 3. Repeat on opposite side if necessary.



4. Side-to-side fit of glass weatherstrip can be adjusted by loosening the frame mounting bolts and moving the frame right or left and forward or backward by hand (see page 20-80).

▼: Bolt locations, 6



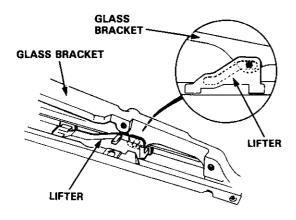




Rear Edge Closing Adjustment -

Open the glass about a foot, then close it to check where rear edge begins to rise. If it rises too soon and seats too tightly against the roof panel, or too late and does not seat tightly enough, adjust it.

- 1. Remove the headliner (see page 20-98).
- 2. Remove the glass.
- 3. Remove the motor (see page 20-80).
- 4. Align the tilt-up position of the lifter on each side.



- Check that the alignment left and right, then install the motor.
- 6. Install the glass, then check for water leaks.

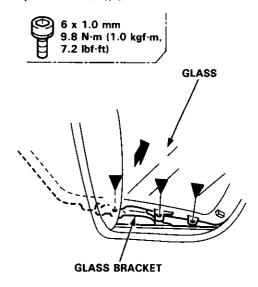
NOTE: Do not use high pressure water.

7. Install the headliner.

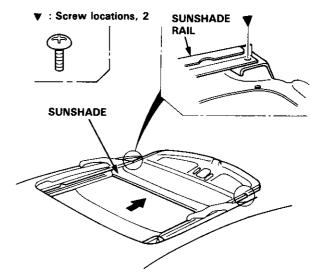
- Glass and Sunshade Replacement

- 1. Open the sunshade.
- 2. Tilt-up the glass.
- Remove the bolts, then remove the glass from the glass bracket.

▼ : Bolt locations, 6



- 4. Remove the screw and lift the sunshade rail on each side.
- Silde the sunshade forward, then remove the sunshade.



- 6. Installation is the reverse of the removal procedure.
- 7. Check for water leaks.

NOTE: Do not use high pressure water.

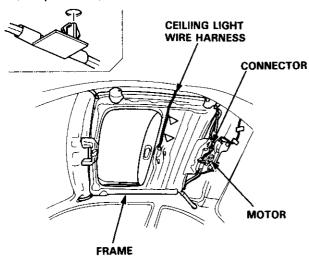
Moonroof

Motor, Drain Tube and Frame Replacement

CAUTION: Be careful not to damage the seats, dashboard and other interior trim.

- 1. Remove the glass (see page 20-79) and headliner (see page 20-98).
- 2. Disconnect the motor connector, and remove the clips securing the ceiling light wire harness.

⊲ : Clip locations, 2



Remove the bolts and nuts, then remove the motor, if necessary.

NOTE: Make sure both sliders are parallel when installing the motor.

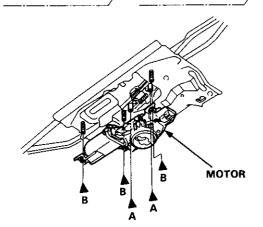
▲ : Bolt, nut locations

A . Bolt. 2 9.8 N·m (1.0 kgf·m, 7.2 (bf-ft)

6 x 1.0 mm

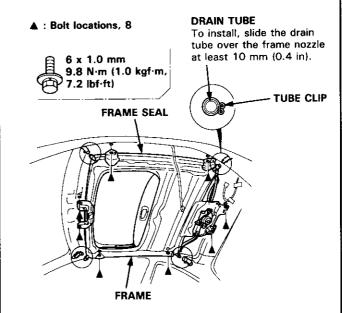
B . Nut. 3

6 x 1.0 mm 9.8 N·m (1.0 kgf·m, 7.2 lbf·ft)



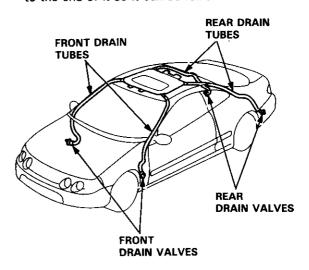
- 4. Disconnect the drain tubes.
- 5. Remove the bolts, then remove the frame from the

NOTE: You may require assistance when removing the frame.



6. Pull the drain tubes out the front and rear pillars.

NOTE: Before pulling out the drain tube, tie a string to the end of it so it can be reinstalled.



7. Installation is the reverse of the removal procedure.

- Clean the surface of the frame.
- · Check the frame seal.
- · Check for water leaks.

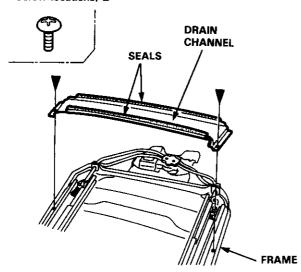


Glass Bracket/Slider, Lifter, Guide Rails and Cable Assembly Replacement

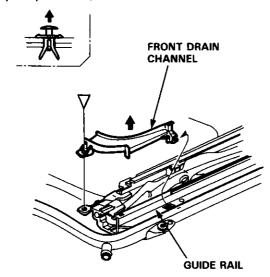
- 1. Remove the frame from the car (see page 20-80).
- Remove the motor (see page 20-80).
- 3. Remove the drain channel.

NOTE: Take care not to damage, twist or lift the seal.

▼ : Screw locations, 2



4. Remove the front drain channel on each side.



5. Remove the front rail holder on each side.

▼ : Nut, screw locations

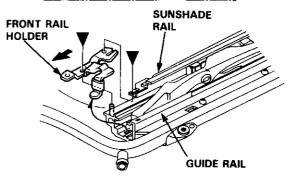
A▼ : Nut, 2

6 x 1.0 mm

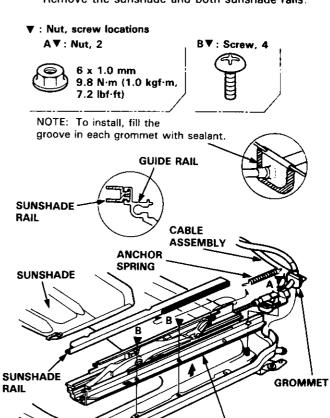
9.8 N·m

(1.0 kgf·m,
7.2 lbf·ft)

B▼ : Screw, 2



- 6. Remove the anchor spring on each side.
- Remove the nuts and screws, then lift and remove both guide rails and cable assembly from the frame.
 Remove the sunshade and both sunshade rails.



FRÀME

(cont'd)

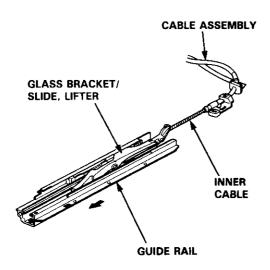
GUIDE RAIL

Moonroof

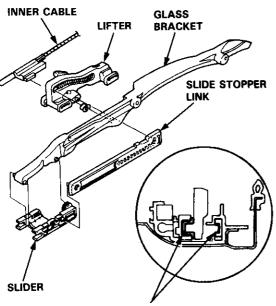
Glass Bracket/Slider, Lifter, Guide Rails and Cable Assembly Replacement (cont'd)

8. Slide the guide rail forward, then remove it.

NOTE: Take care not to bend the inner cable.

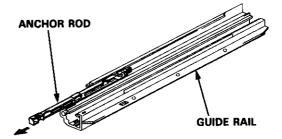


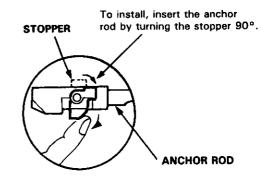
9. Separate the glass bracket, lifter, slide stopper link and slider.



NOTE: To install, apply multipurpose grease to the lifter and slide stopper link.

10. Slide the anchor rod forward, then remove it from the guide rail.





11. Installation is the reverse of the removal procedure.

- Damaged parts should be replaced.
- Apply grease to the sliding portion.

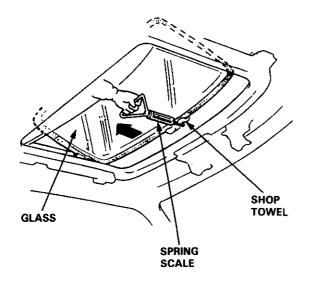


Opening Drag Check (Motor Removed)

Before installing the motor, measure the effort required to open the glass using a spring scale as shown.

CAUTION: When using a spring scale, protect the leading edge of the glass with a shop towel.

If load is over 40 N (4 kgf, 9 lbf), check side clearance and glass height adjustment (see page 20-78).



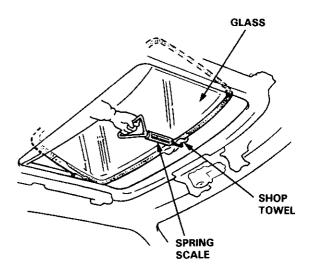
Closing Force Check - (Motor Installed)

 After installing all removed parts, have a helper hold the switch to close the glass while you measure force required to stop it. Attach a spring scale as shown. Read the force as soon as the glass stops moving, then immediately release the switch and spring scale.

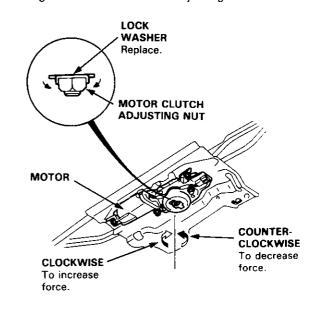
CAUTION: When using a spring scale, protect the leading edge of the glass with a shop towel.

Closing Force: 200-290 N

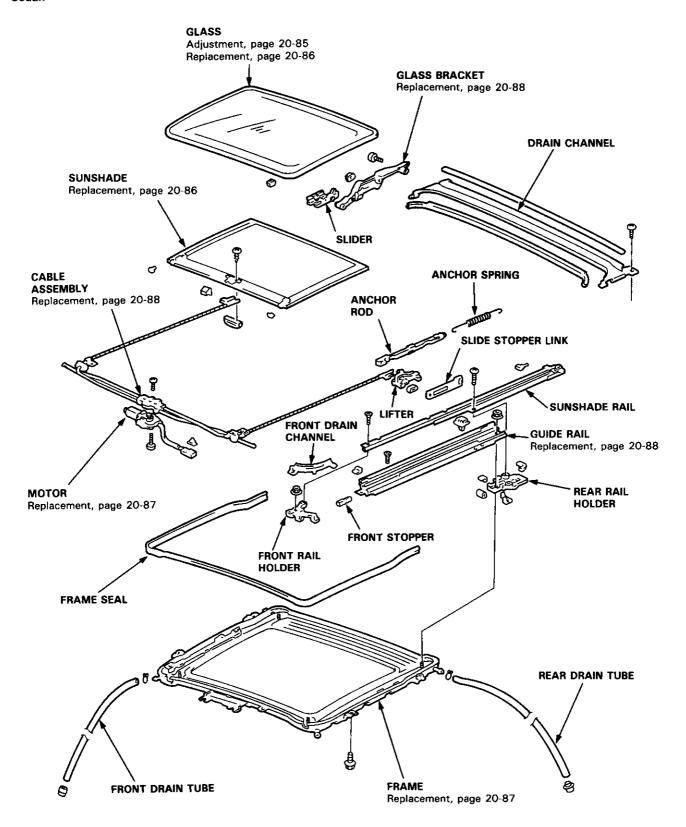
(20-30 kgf, 44-66 lbf)



If the force is not within specification, install a new lock washer, adjust the tension by turning the motor clutch adjusting nut, and bend the lock washer against the motor clutch adjusting nut.



Sedan





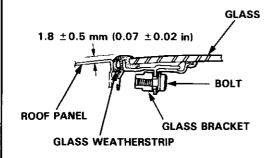
- Troubleshooting

| Symptom | Probable Cause |
|---|--|
| Water leaks | Clogged drain tube. Gap between glass weatherstrip and roof panel. Defective or improperly installed glass weatherstrip. Gap between drain seal and roof panel. |
| Wind noise | Excessive clearance between glass weatherstrip and roof panel. |
| Motor noise | Loose motor. Worn gear or bearing. Cable assembly deformed. |
| Glass does not move, but motor turns | Clutch out of adjustment. Foreign matter stuck between guide rail and slider. Inner cable loose. Cable assembly not attached properly. |
| Glass does not move and motor does not turn (glass can be moved with moonroof wrench) | Blown fuse. Faulty switch. Battery run down. Defective motor. Faulty relay. |

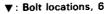
- Glass Height Adjustment -

The roof panel should be even with the glass weatherstrip, to within 1.8 \pm 0.5 mm (0.07 \pm 0.02 in) all the way around. If not, slide the sunshade back, and:

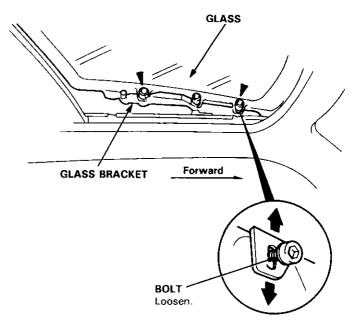
- 1. Tilt-up the glass.
- 2. Loosen the bolts and adjust the glass.
- 3. Repeat on opposite side if necessary.



 Side-to-side fit of glass weatherstrip can be adjusted by loosening the frame mounting bolts and moving the frame right or left and forward or backward by hand (see page 20-87).





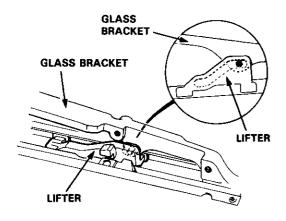


Moonroof

-Rear Edge Closing Adjustment -

Open the glass about a foot, then close it to check where rear edge begins to rise. If it rises too soon and seats too tightly against the roof panel, or too late and does not seat tightly enough, adjust it.

- 1. Remove the headliner (see page 20-100).
- 2. Remove the glass.
- 3. Remove the motor (see page 20-87).
- 4. Align the tilt-up position of the lifter on each side.



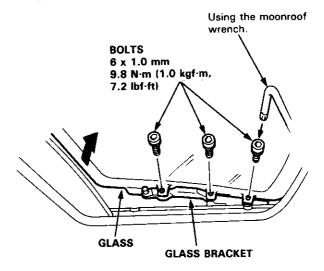
- Check that the alignment left and right, then install the motor.
- 6. Install the glass, then check for water leaks.

NOTE: Do not use high pressure water.

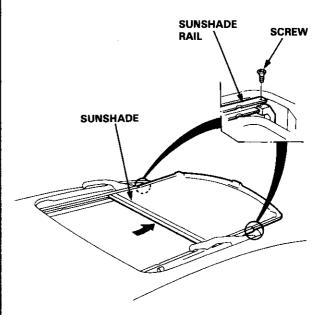
7. Install the headliner.

Glass and Sunshade Replacement

- 1. Open the sunshade.
- 2. Tilt-up the glass.
- 3. Remove the bolts, then remove the glass from the glass bracket.



- 4. Remove the screws and lift the sunshade rails.
- Silde the sunshade forward, then remove the sunshade.



- 6. Installation is the reverse of the removal procedure.
- 7. Check for water leaks.

NOTE: Do not use high pressure water.



Motor, Drain Tube and Frame Replacement

CAUTION: Be careful not to damage the seats, dashboard and other interior trim.

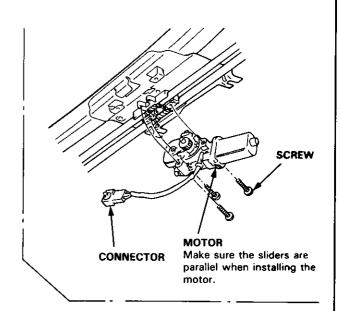
- 1. Remove the glass (see page 20-86) and headliner (see page 20-100).
- 2. Disconnect the motor connector, and remove the clips securing the ceiling light wire harness.

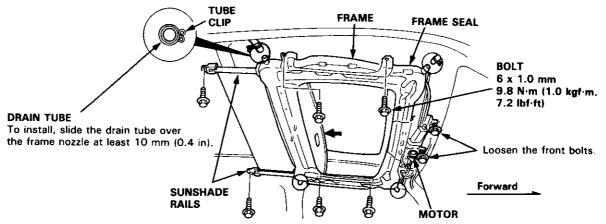
NOTE: To remove the motor, remove the screws.

- 3. Disconnect the drain tubes.
- 4. Loosen the front bolts.
- 5. Remove the bolts, then remove the frame from the car.

NOTE:

- You may require assistance when removing the
- Take care not to bend the sunshade rails.



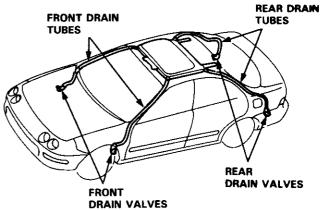


6. Pull the drain tubes out of the front and rear pillars.

NOTE: Before pulling out the drain tube, tie a string to the end of it so it can be reinstalled.

7. Installation is the reverse of the removal procedure.

- Install the tube clips with the ends facing the side to ease installation of the headliner.
- Clean the surface of the frame.
- Check the frame seal.
- Check for water leaks.
- Make sure the sunshade moves smoothly.

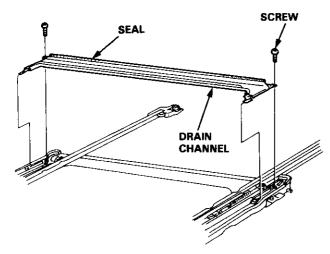


Moonroof

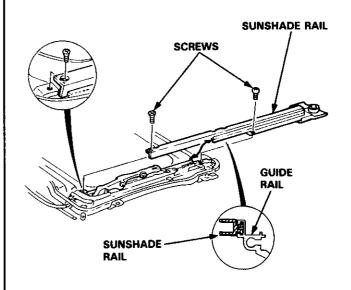
Glass Bracket/Slider, Lifter, Guide Rails and Cable Assembly Replacement -

- 1. Remove the frame (see page 20-87).
- 2. Remove the drain channel.

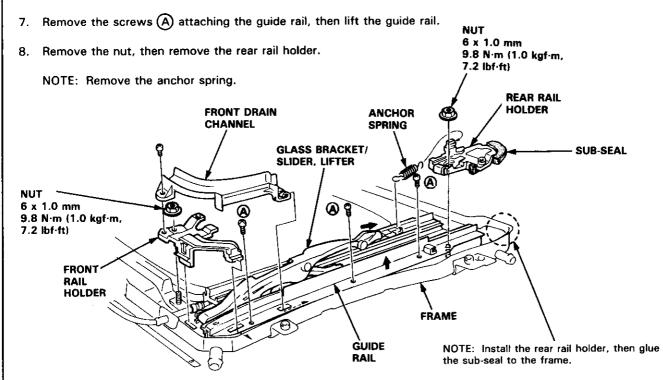
NOTE: Take care not to damage, twist or lift the seal.



3. Remove the screws, then remove the sunshade rail by sliding it backward.



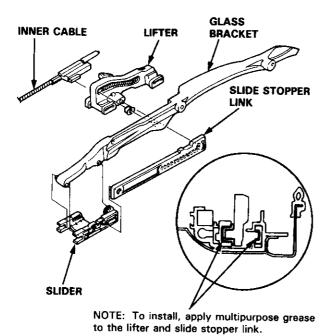
- 4. Remove the motor (see page 20-87).
- 5. Remove the front drain channel.
- 6. Remove the nut, then remove the front rail holder.



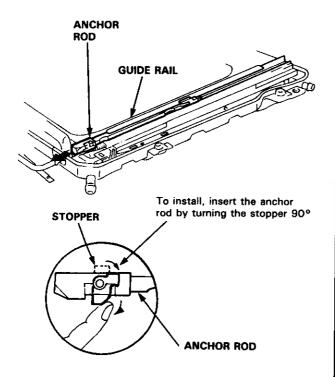
9. Slide the glass bracket/slider, lifter backward, then remove it.



10. Separate the glass bracket, lifter, slide stopper link and slider.

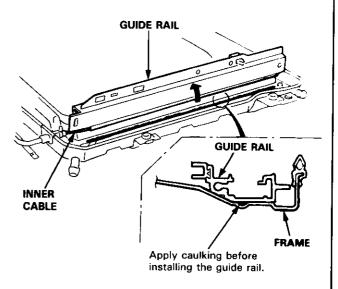


11. Slide the anchor rod forward, then remove it from the guide rail.



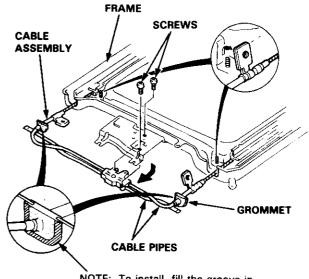
12. Slide the guide rail backward, then remove the guide rail from the inner cable.

NOTE: To install, apply the caulking to guide rail mount faces of the frame.



Remove the screws, then remove the cable assembly from the frame.

NOTE: Take care not to bend the cable pipes.



NOTE: To install, fill the groove in each grommet with sealant.

14. Installation is the reverse of the removal procedure.

- Damaged parts should be replaced.
- Apply grease to the sliding portion.

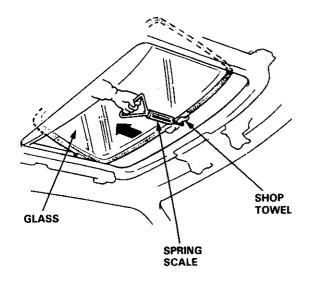
Moonroof

Opening Drag Check (Motor Removed)

Before installing the motor, measure the effort required to open the glass using a spring scale as shown.

CAUTION: When using a spring scale, protect the leading edge of the glass with a shop towel.

If load is over 40 N (4 kgf, 9 lbf), check side clearance and glass height adjustment (see page 20-85).



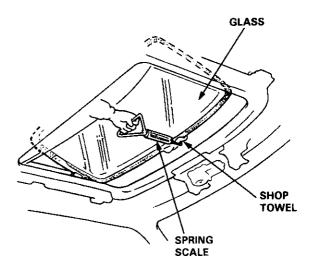
Closing Force Check (Motor Installed)

 After installing all removed parts, have a helper hold the switch to close the glass while you measure force required to stop it. Attach a spring scale as shown. Read the force as soon as the glass stops moving, then immediately release the switch and spring scale.

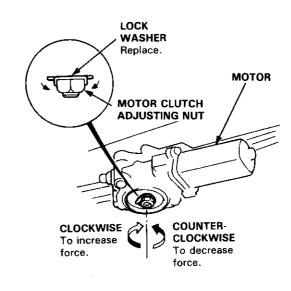
CAUTION: When using a spring scale, protect the leading edge of the glass with a shop towel.

Closing Force: 200-290 N

(20-30 kgf, 44-66 lbf)



If the force is not within specification, install a new lock washer, adjust the tension by turning the motor clutch adjusting nut, and bend the lock washer against the motor clutch adjusting nut.



Interior Trim

- Replacement

7-

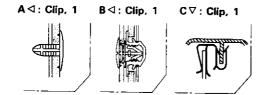
CAUTION:

- Wear gloves to remove and install the trim and panels.
- When prying with a flat tip screwdriver, wrap it with protective tape to prevent damage.

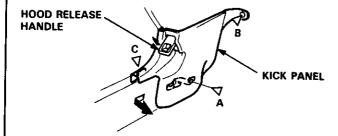
NOTE: Take care not to bend or scratch the trim and panels.

Kick panel/Front pillar trim removal:

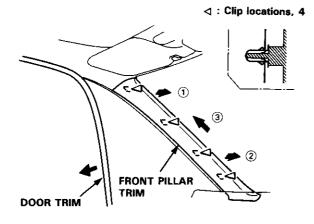
- 1. Remove the kick panel.



NOTE: Remove the driver's kick panel while pulling the hood release handle.



Pull the door trim back, then remove the front pillar trim.



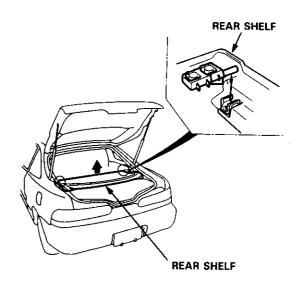
3. Installation is the reverse of the removal procedure.

NOTE: If necessary, replace any damaged clips.

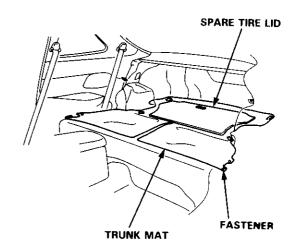
Hatchback

Rear trim panel/Side trim panel/Quarter pillar trim penel removal:

- 1. Open the hatch.
- 2. Remove the rear shelf.



- 3. Remove the rear seat (see page 20-108).
- 4. Remove the trunk mat and spare tire lid.

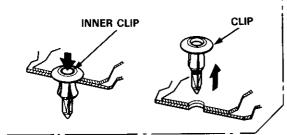


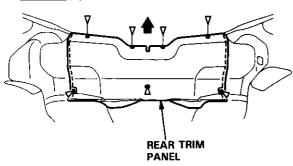
contidi

Interior Trim

- Replacement (cont'd) -

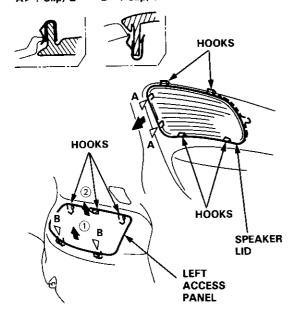
- 5. Remove the rear trim panel.
- ∇ : Clip locations, 7
- -1) Push the inner clip. -2) Detach the clip by NOTE: Do not push it in too far.
 - pulling it.



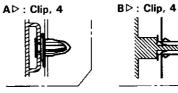


- 6. Remove the speaker lid and left access panel from the side trim panel.
- ▷ : Clip locations

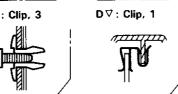
B ♥ : Clip, 2 A ▷ : Clip, 2



- 7. Remove the side trim panel.
- ⇒ : Clip locations



C▷: Clip, 3



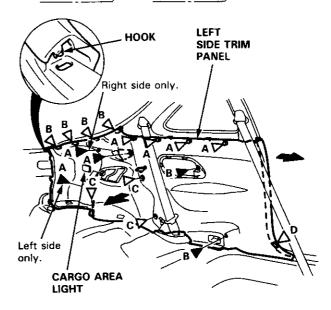
▶ : Bolt, screw locations

A > : Bolt, 2

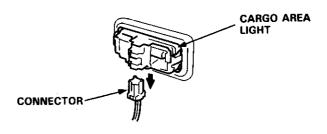








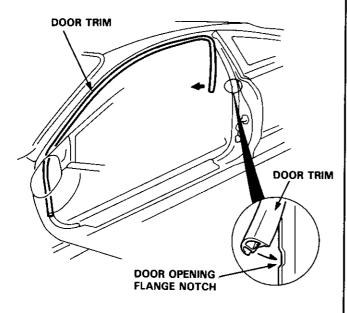
NOTE: Disconnect the cargo area light connector from the left side trim panel.



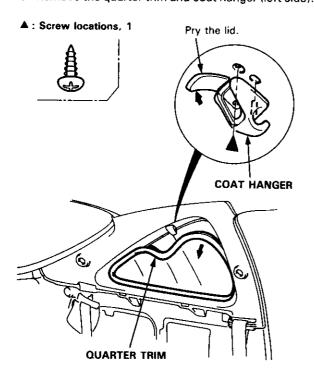


- 8. Remove the upper anchor bolts from the front and rear seat belts (see pages 20-115, 119).
- 9. Remove the door trim.

NOTE: When installing the door trim, align it with the door opening flange notch.

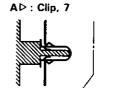


10. Remove the quarter trim and coat hanger (left side).



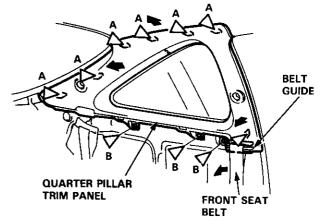
11. Remove the quarter pillar trim panel.

▷ : Clip locations





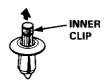
NOTE: Remove the front seat belt from the belt guide.



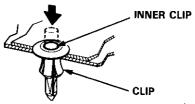
12. Installation is the reverse of the removal procedure.

NOTE:

- If necessary, replace any damaged clips.
- When installing the side trim panel, make sure there are no twists or kinks in the front and rear seat helts
- When installing the rear trim panel, install the clip as follows.
 - -1) Pull the inner clip up as shown.



-2) Install the clip in the rear trim panel, then push the inner clip until it's flush.



(cont'd)

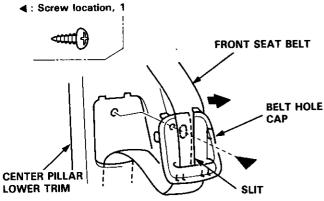
Interior Trim

- Replacement (cont'd) -

Sedan

Center pillar lower trim/Center pillar trim removal:

1. Remove the belt hole cap, then slip the front seat belt through the slit in the belt hole cap.

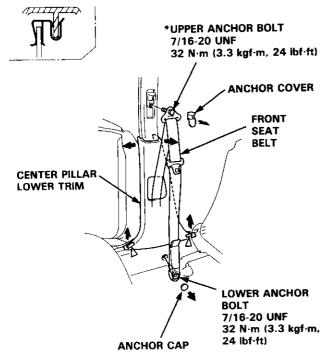


Remove the upper and lower anchor bolts from the front seat belt, then remove the center pillar lower tirm.

NOTE:

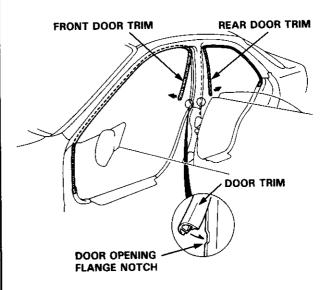
- When removing the anchor bolts, use a 17 mm socket or box-end wrench.
- On reassembly, replace the upper anchor bolt (*) and use liquid thread lock.

△: Clip locations, 2



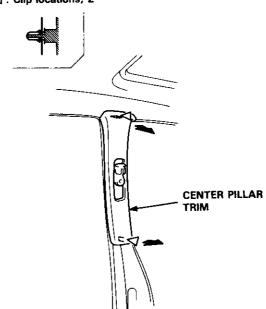
3. Remove the front and rear door trim.

NOTE: When installing the front and rear door trim, align them with the door opening flange notch.



4. Remove the center pillar trim.





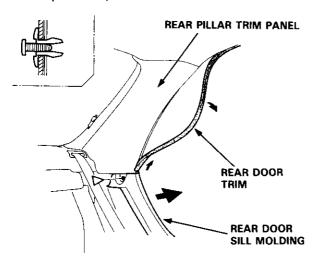
5. Installation is the reverse of the removal procedure.

- If necessary, replace any damaged clips.
- Before attaching the center pillar lower trim and belt hole cap, make sure there are no twists or kinks in the front seat belt.



Rear pillar trim panel/Rear shelf trim panel/Rear shelf removal:

- 1. Remove both seat-back side bolsters (see page 20-111).
- 2. Remove the upper portion of the rear door sill molding, then pull the rear door trim away on each side.
- ▷ : Clip locations, 2

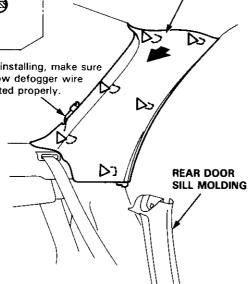


3. Remove both rear pillar trim panels.



▷ : Clip locations, 12

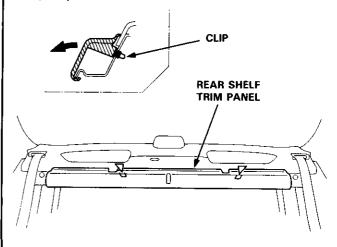
NOTE: When installing, make sure the rear window defogger wire harness is routed properly.



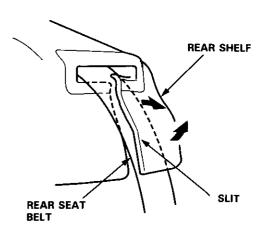
REAR PILLAR TRIM PANEL

4. Remove the rear shelf trim panel.

▽: Clip locations, 2



5. Slip the rear seat belt through the slit in the rear shelf.



6. Remove the seat lock cover (see page 20-111) and high mount brake light (see section 23).

(cont'd)

Interior Trim

- Replacement (cont'd) -

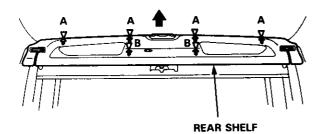
- 7. Remove the rear shelf.



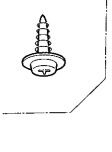
87: Clip, 2

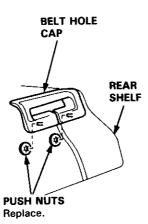


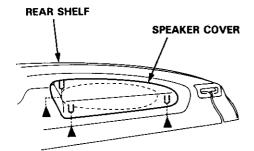




- 8. If necessary, remove the belt hole cap and speaker cover from the rear shelf.
 - ▲ : Screw locations, 3







9. Installation is the reverse of the removal procedure.

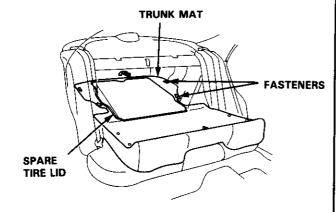
- If necessary, replace any damaged clips.
- When installing the rear shelf, make sure there are no twists or kinks in the rear seat belt.

Trunk Trim

- Replacement -

NOTE: Take care not to bend or scratch the panels.

- 1. Fold the rear seat-back forward.
- 2. Lift the trunk mat, then remove the spare tire lid.



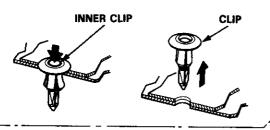
3. Remove the clips, then remove the rear trim panel.

∇ : Clip locations

A ♥: Clip, 4

-1) Push the inner clip.
 NOTE: Do not push it in too far.

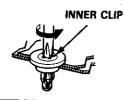
-2) Detach the clip by pulling it.

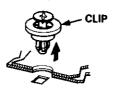


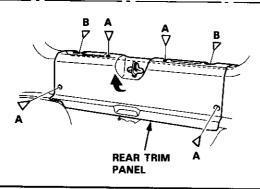
B ♥ : Clip, 2

-1) Loosen the inner clip.

2) Detach the clip by pulling it.







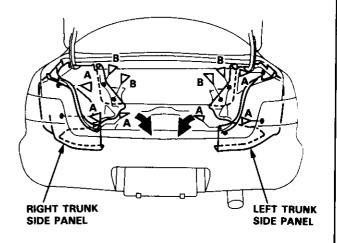
Remove the clips, then remove the trunk side panel on each side.

NOTE: A clips on the trunk side panel can be removed in the same way as those on the rear trim panel.

⊲: Clip locations

A ⊲ : Clip, 6 **B** ⊽ : Clip, 4

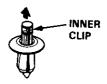




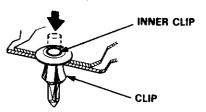
5. Installation is the reverse of the removal procedure.

NOTE:

- If necessary, replace any damaged clips.
- When installing the rear trim panel, install the A clip as follows.
 - -1) Pull the inner clip up as shown.



-2) Install the clip in the rear trim panel, then push the inner clip until it's flush.



Headliner

- Replacement

CAUTION: When prying with a flat tip screwdriver, wrap it with protective tape to prevent damage.

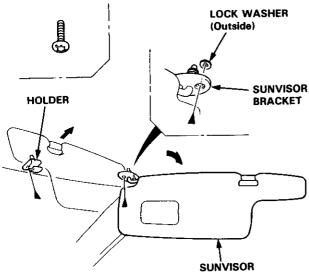
NOTE:

- Take care not to bend and scratch the headliner.
- Be careful not to damage the dashboard and other interior trim.
- Fold the front seat-back backward.

Hatchback

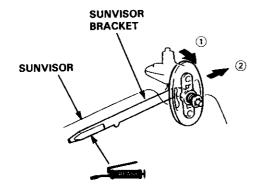
- 1. Remove:
 - Door trim (see page 20-93)
 - Front pillar tirm (see page 20-91)
 - Quarter trim (see page 20-93)
 - Coat hanger (see page 20-93)
 - Rearview mirror (see page 20-52)
- 2. Remove the sunvisor and holder from each side.

▲ : Screw locations, 6



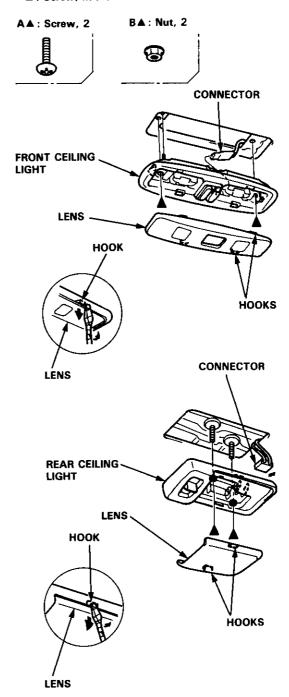
NOTE:

- If necessary, remove the sunvisor bracket as shown.
- When installing the sunvisor bracket, apply grease and make sure it's installed properly.



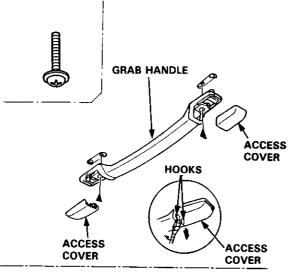
3. Remove the front and rear ceiling lights, then disconnect the connectors.

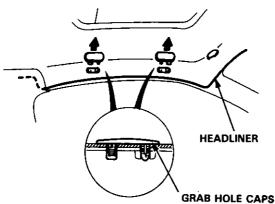
▲: Screw, nut locations



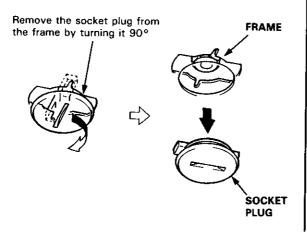


- 4. Remove the grab handle (front passenger's) and grab hole caps (driver's).
 - ▲: Screw locations (2)



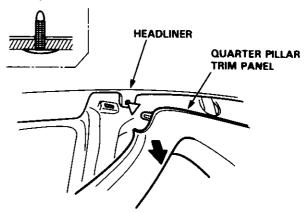


5. Remove the socket plug (moonroof model).

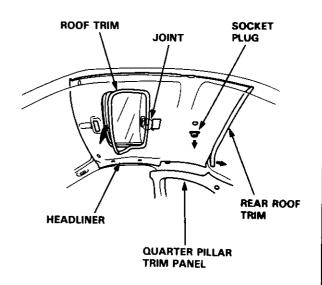


- 6. Remove the upper anchor bolts from the front and rear seat belts (see pages 20-115, 119).
- Remove the upper portion of the quarter pillar trim panel, then detach the headliner clip on each side.





Remove the roof trim (moonroof model).
 Open the hatch, then remove the rear roof trim.
 Remove the headliner.



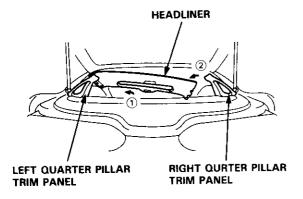
(cont'd)

Headliner

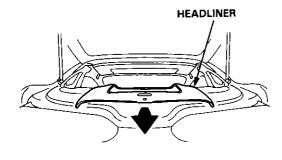
- Replacement (cont'd) -

9. Lower the headliner as shown.

NOTE: Take care not to bend and scratch the headliner.



10. Remove the headliner through the hatch opening.



11. Installation is the reverse of the removal procedure.

NOTE:

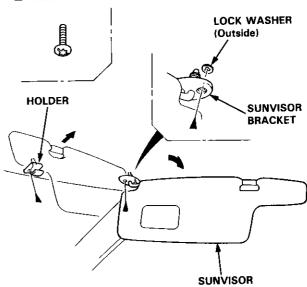
- When inserting the headliner through the hatch opening, be careful not to fold or bend it. Also, be careful not to scratch the body.
- Check that both sides of the headliner are securely attached to the trim and panels.
- When installing the roof trim, install the joint toward the rear.

Sedan

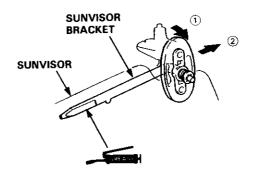
1. Remove:

- Center pillar lower trim (see page 20-94)
- Front and rear door trim (see page 20-94)
- Front pillar trim (see page 20-91)
- Center pillar trim (see page 20-94)
- Rear pillar trim panel (see page 20-95)
- Rearview mirror (see page 20-52)
- 2. Remove the sunvisor and holder from each side.





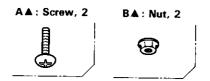
- If necessary, remove the sunvisor bracket as shown.
- When installing the sunvisor bracket, apply grease and make sure it's installed properly.

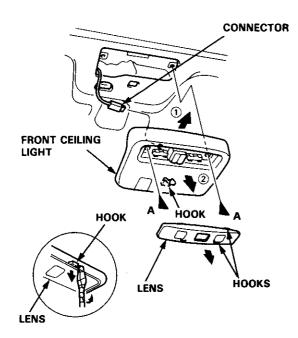


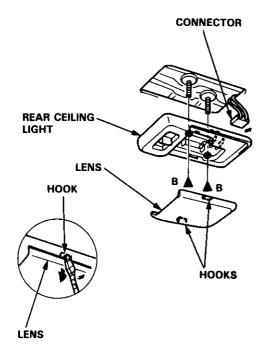


3. Remove the front and rear ceiling lights, then disconnect the connectors.

▲ : Screw, nut locations

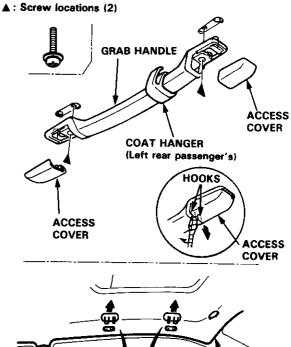






4. Remove the grab handles (front and rear passenger's) and grab hole caps (driver's).





(cont'd)

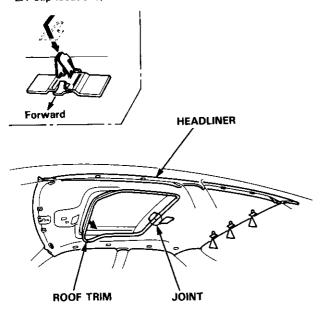
HEÀDLINER

GRAB HOLE CAPS

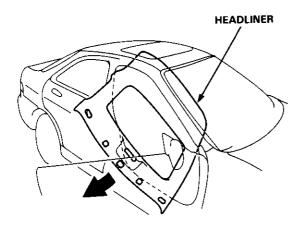
Headliner

- Replacement (cont'd) -

- 5. Remove the roof trim (moonroof model).
- 6. Detach the clips by sliding the headliner forward.
 - Δ : Clip locations, 3



7. Remove the headliner through the passenger's door opening.



8. Installation is the reverse of the removal procedure.

- When inserting the headliner through the door opening, be careful not to fold or bend it. Also, be careful not to scratch the body.
- Check that both sides of the headliner are securely attached to the trim and panels.
- When installing the roof trim, install the joint toward the rear.

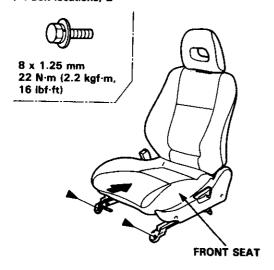
Seats



- Front Seat Removal -

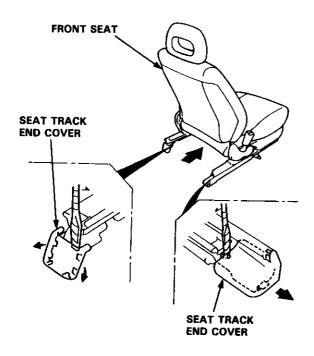
NOTE: Take care not to scratch the seat covers and body.

- 1. Slide the front seat backward, then remove the bolts.
- ▶: Bolt locations, 2



2. Slide the front seat forward, then remove the seat track end covers.

CAUTION: When prying with a flat tip screwdriver, wrap it with protective tape to prevent damage.



3. Remove the bolts.

▼:Bolt locations

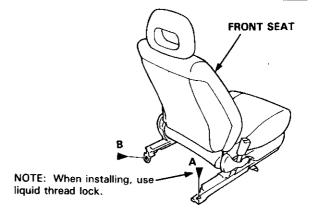
A ▼ : Bolt, 1

B ▶ : Bolt, 1

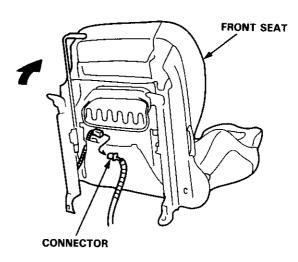
10 x 1.25 mm 38 N·m (4.0 kgf·m, 29 lbf·ft)



8 x 1.25 mm 22 N·m (2.2 kgf·m, 16 lbf·ft)



4. Lift the front seat, then disconnect the connector (driver's).



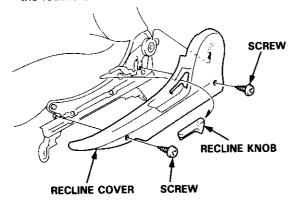
- Carefully remove the front seat through the door opening.
- 6. Installation is the reverse of the removal procedure.

Seats

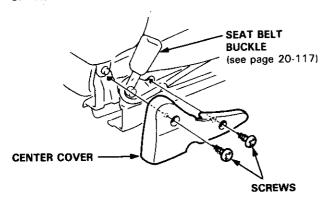
- Front Seat Replacement

NOTE: Take care not to scratch the seat covers and body.

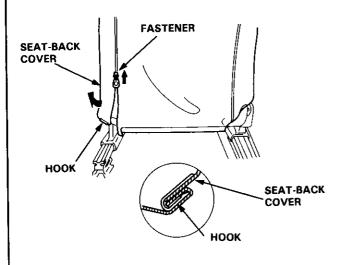
- 1. Remove the front seat through the door opening (see page 20-103).
- 2. Remove the screws and recline knob, then remove the recline cover.



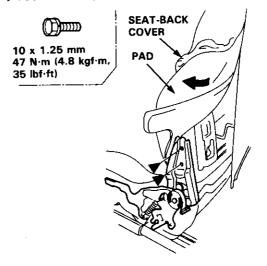
3. Remove the screws, then remove the center cover.



Remove the hook and fastener, then fold the seatback cover back.



- 5. Fold the seat-back cover and pad, then remove the bolts.
 - ▶ : Bolt locations, 2



PIVOT WASHER

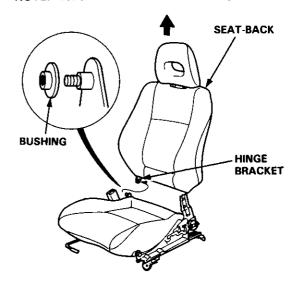
PLAIN
WASHER

PIVOT NUT
8 x 1.25 mm
22 N·m (2.2 kgf·m,

7. Remove the seat-back.

NOTE: Take care not to bend the hinge bracket.

16 lbf·ft)





8. Separate the seat cushion and seat tracks.

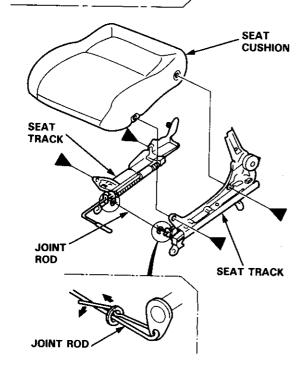
NOTE:

- Before separating, slide the seat cushion
- Take care not to bend the joint rod.

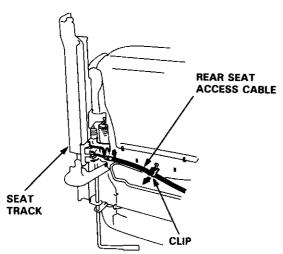


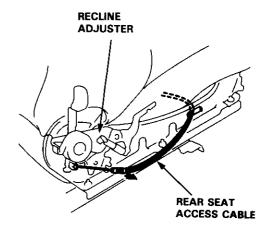


10 x 1.25 mm 47 N·m (4.8 kgf·m, 35 lbf·ft)



 Disconnect the rear seat access cable (hatchback passenger's).





9. Separate the seat track and recline adjuster.

A: Bolt, nut locations

A ▲: Bolt, 1

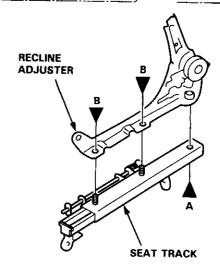


8 x 1.25 mm 22 N·m (2.2 kgf·m, 16 lbf·ft)



B▼: Nut, 2

8 x 1.25 mm 22 N·m (2.2 kgf·m, 16 lbf-ft)



10. Installation is the reverse of the removal procedure.

- To prevent wrinkles when installing a seat-back cover, make sure the material is stretched evenly over the pad before securing all the hooks.
- Apply grease to the moving surfaces.

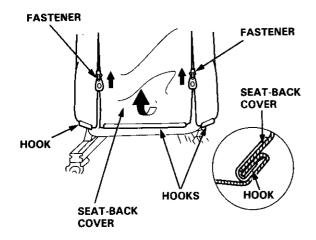
Front Seat Cover Replacement -

CAUTION: Wear gloves to remove and install the seat covers.

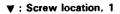
NOTE: Take care not to tear the seams or damage the seat covers.

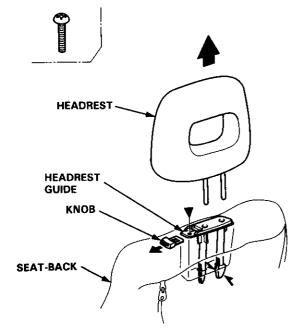
Seat-back cover removal:

- Slide the front seat forward and fold the seat-back forward.
- 2. Remove the hooks and fasteners, then fold the seatback cover back.

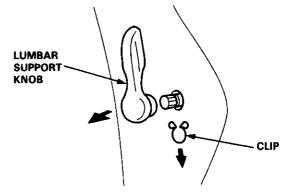


3. Remove the headrest and headrest guide.



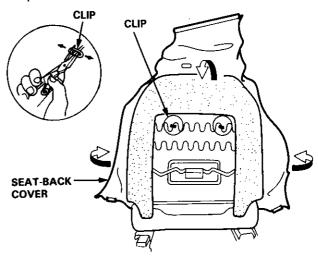


4. Remove the lumbar support knob.

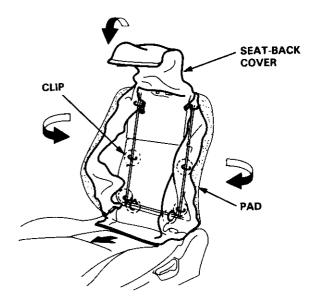


Remove the seat-back cover by releasing the inside clips.

Clip removal:



6. Pull back the edge of the seat-back cover all the way around, then release the clips.

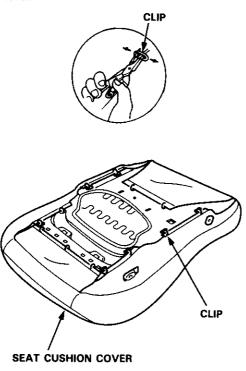




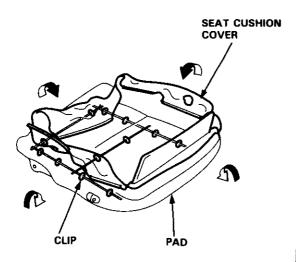
Seat cushion removal:

- 1. Remove the seat cushion from the seat tracks (see page 20-105).
- 2. Remove all clips from under the seat cushion, then loosen the seat cushion cover.

Clip removal:



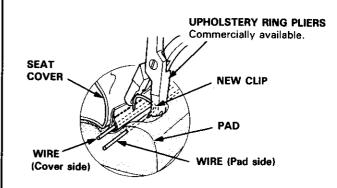
3. Pull back the edge of the seat cushion cover all the way around, then release the clips.



Installation is the reverse of the removal procedure.

NOTE:

- To prevent wrinkles when installing a seat cover, make sure the material is stretched evenly over the pad before securing all the clips.
- Replace the released clips with new ones.

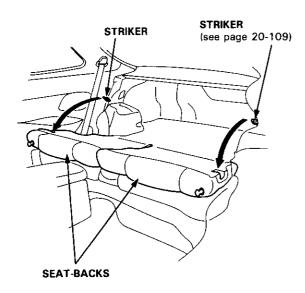


- Rear Seat Replacement -

Hatchback

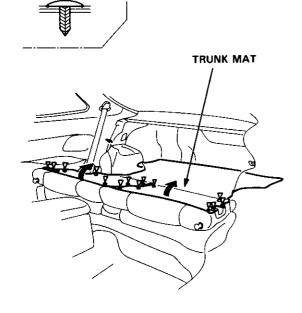
NOTE: Take care not to scratch the seat covers and body.

1. Fold the seat-backs forward.

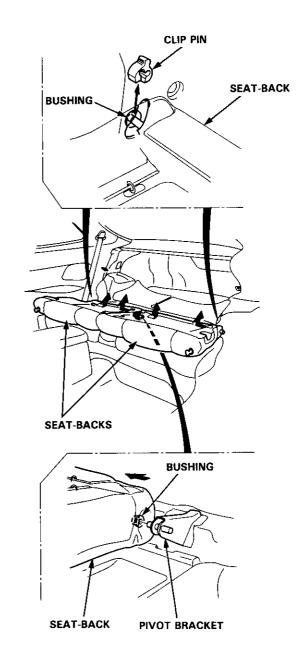


2. Remove the clips, then fold the trunk mat.

 ∇ : Clip locations, 14

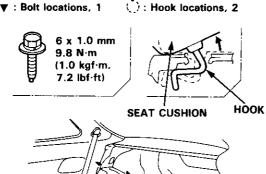


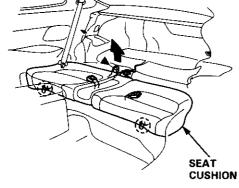
Remove the clip pin on each side.
 Slide the seat-backs outward, then remove the seat-backs from the pivot bracket.





4. Remove the bolt, then remove the seat cushion.

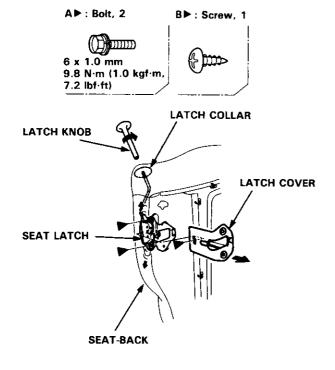


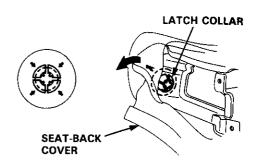


If necessary, remove the seat latch from the seatback and remove the striker.

CAUTION: Wear gloves to remove and install the seat latch and latch collar.

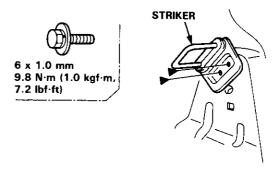
▶ : Bolt, screw locations





NOTE: When removing the striker, remove the side trim panel (see page 20-91).

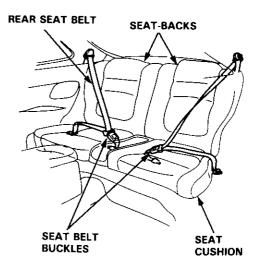
▶ : Bolt locations, 2



6. Installation is the reverse of the removal procedure.

NOTE:

- Make sure the seat-backs lock securely.
- If necessary, adjust the strikers.
- Before attaching the seat-backs and seat cushion, make sure there are no twists or kinks in the rear seat belts.
- When installing the seat cushion, slip the seat belt buckles through the slits in the seat cushion.



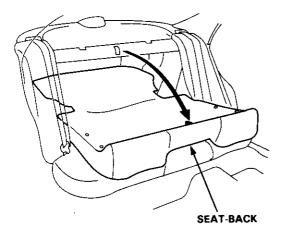
Seats

- Rear Seat Replacement (cont'd) -

Sedan

NOTE: Take care not to scratch the seat covers and body.

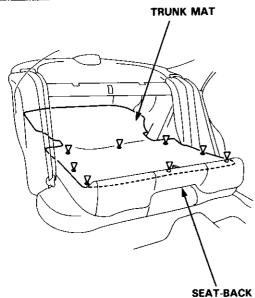
1. Fold the seat-back forward.



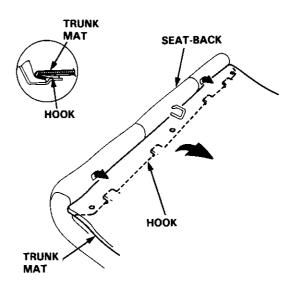
2. Remove the clips.

▽ : Clip locations, 8





3. Detach the hook, then remove the trunk mat.

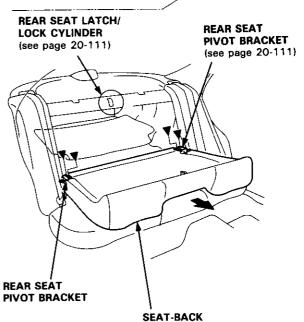


4. Remove the bolts, then remove the seat-back.

▼ : Bolt locations, 4



6 x 1.0 mm 9.8 N·m (1.0 kgf·m, 7.2 lbf·ft)





5. Remove the bolt, then remove the seat cushion.

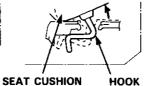


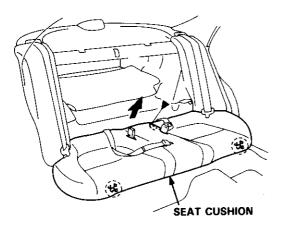


: Hook locations, 2



6 x 1.0 mm 9.8 N·m {1.0 kgf·m, 7.2 lbf·ft}



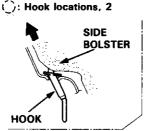


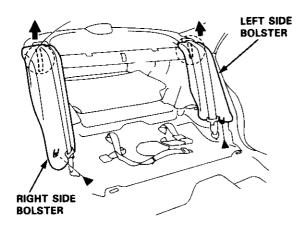
6. Remove the bolts, then remove the seat-back side bolsters by lifting them upward.

▲: Bolt locations, 2



9.8 N·m (1.0 kgf·m, 7.2 lbf·ft)





If necessary, remove the rear seat latch, lock cylinder and rear seat pivot bracket.

Rear seat latch/Lock cylinder removal:

Pry the rear shelf up after removing the rear shelf trim panel (see page 20-95) and seat lock cover.

NOTE: Take care not to bend the lock rod.

▼ : Bolt, screw locations

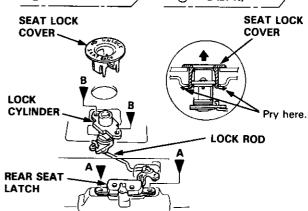


6 x 1.0 mm 9.8 N·m (1.0 kgf·m, 7.2 lbf·ft)



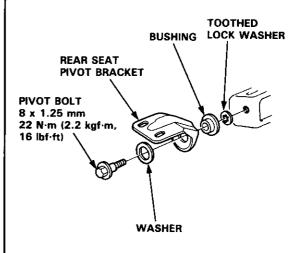
4 x 0.7 mm 4 N·m (0.4 kgf·m, 3 lbf·ft)

B▼: Screw, 2



Rear seat pivot bracket removal:

NOTE: When installing the pivot bolt, apply grease to it.



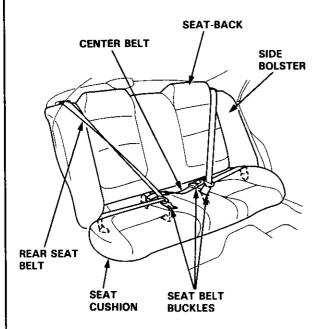
Seats

- Rear Seat Replacement (cont'd) -

8. Installation is the reverse of the removal procedure.

NOTE:

- Make sure the seat-back locks securely.
- If necessary, adjust the rear seat latch and seat-back.
- Before attaching the seat-back, side bolsters and seat cushion, make sure there are no twists or kinks in the rear seat belts and center belt.
- When installing the seat cushion, slip the seat belt buckles through the slits in the seat cushion.

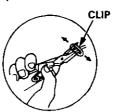


¬ — Rear Seat Cover Replacement -

CAUTION: Wear gloves to remove and install the seat covers.

NOTE:

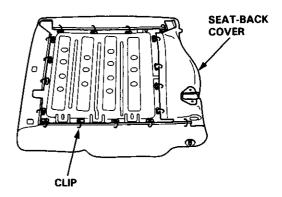
- Take care not to tear the seams or damage the seat covers.
- · Remove the clips as shown.



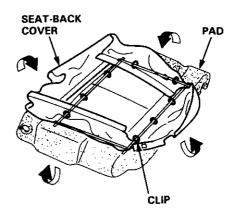
Seat-back cover removal:

Hatchback

- 1. Remove the seat-back (see page 20-108).
- Remove the latch cover and latch collar (see page 20-109).
- 3. Remove all the clips from the back of the seat-back, then loosen the seat-back cover.



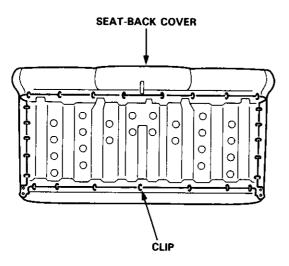
4. Pull back the edge of the seat-back cover all the way around, then release the clips.



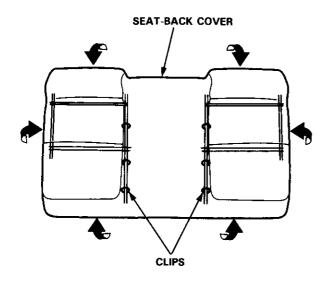


Sedan

- 1. Remove the seat-back (see page 20-110).
- Remove all the clips from the back of the seat-back, then loosen the seat-back cover.



3. Pull back the edge of the seat-back cover all the way around, then release the clips.

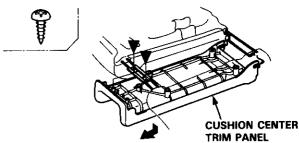


Seat cushion cover removal:

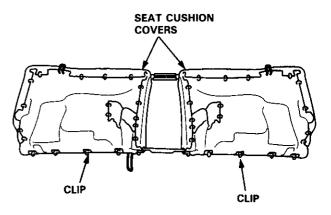
Hatchback

- 1. Remove the seat cushion (see page 20-109).
- 2. Remove the cushion center trim panel.

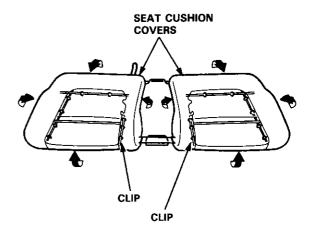




Remove all the clips from under the seat cushion, then loosen the seat cushion covers.



4. Pull back the edge of the seat cushion covers all the way around, then release the clips.

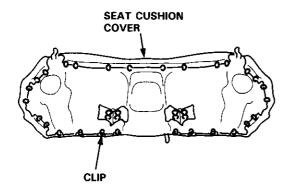


Seats

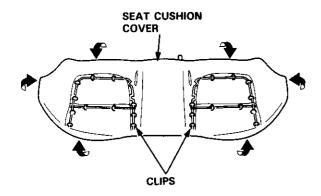
Rear Seat Cover Replacement (cont'd)

Sedan

- 1. Remove the seat cushion (see page 20-111).
- Remove all the clips from under the seat cushion, then loosen the seat cushion cover.



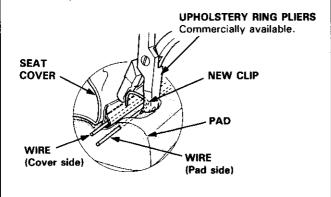
3. Pull back the edge of the seat cushion cover all the way around, then release the clips.



Installation is the reverse of the removal procedure.

NOTE:

- To prevent wrinkles when installing a seat cover, mark sure the material is stretched evenly over the pad before securing all the clips.
- · Replace the released clips with new ones.



Seat Belts



-Front Seat Belt Replacement

CAUTION: Check the front seat belts for damage and replace them if necessary. Be careful not to damage then during removal and installation.

Front seat belt removal:

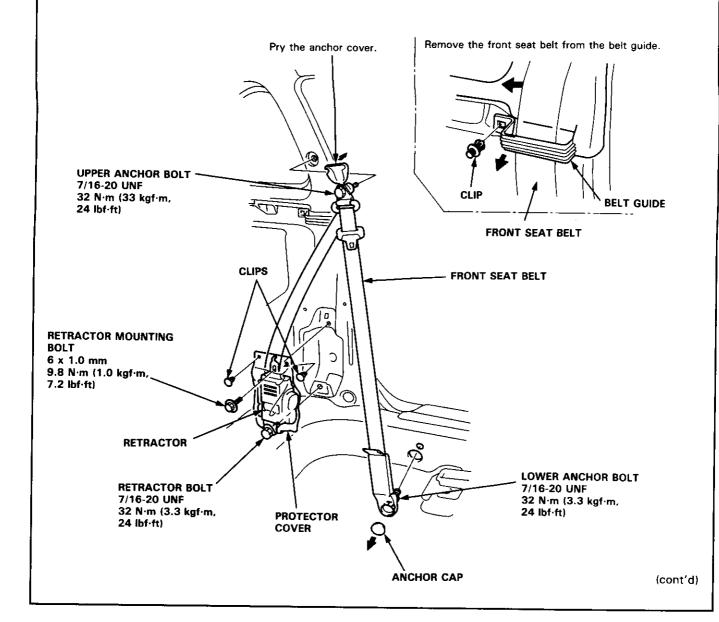
Hatchback

- 1. Remove the following parts, and slide the front seat forward fully.
 - Rear shelf (see page 20-91)
 - Rear trim panel (see page 20-92)

- Rear seat (see page 20-108)
- Side trim panel (see page 20-92)
- 2. Remove all the anchor bolts, the retractor bolt and the retractor mounting bolt, then remove the front seat belt.

NOTE: When removing the anchor bolts and the retractor bolt, use a 17 mm socket or box-end wrench.

3. Check that the retractor locking mechanism functions as described on page 20-122.



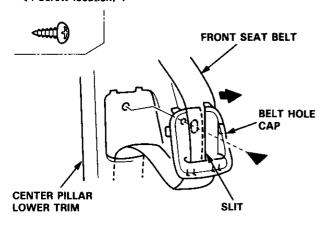
Seat Belts

Front Seat Belt Replacement (cont'd)

Sedan

- 1. Slide the front seat fully forward.
- 2. Remove the belt hole cap, then slip the front seat belt through the slit in the belt hole cap.

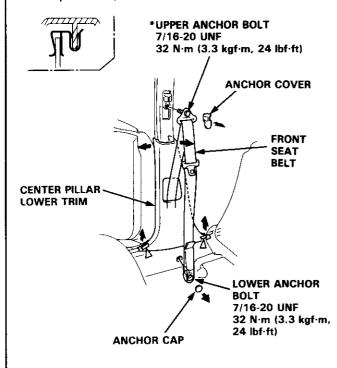
◄: Screw location, 1



Remove the upper and lower anchor bolts from the front seat belt, then remove the center pillar lower trim.

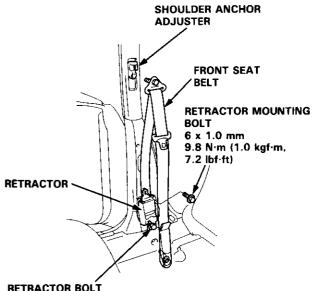
NOTE: When removing the anchor bolts, use a 17 mm socket or box-end wrench.

△ : Clip locations, 2



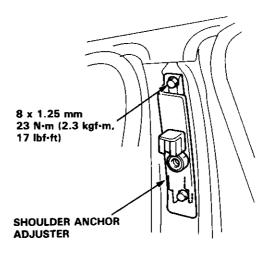
4. Remove the retractor bolt and retractor mounting bolt, then remove the front seat belt.

NOTE: When removing the retractor bolt, use a 17 mm socket or box-end wrench.



RETRACTOR BOLT 7/16-20 UNF 32 N·m (3.3 kgf·m, 24 lbf·ft)

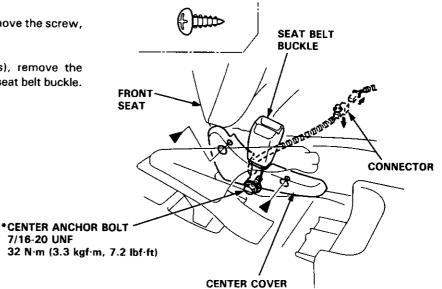
- Check that the retractor locking mechanism functions as described on page 20-122.
- 6. Remove the center pillar trim (see page 20-94), then remove the shoulder anchor adjuster.





Seat belt buckle removal:

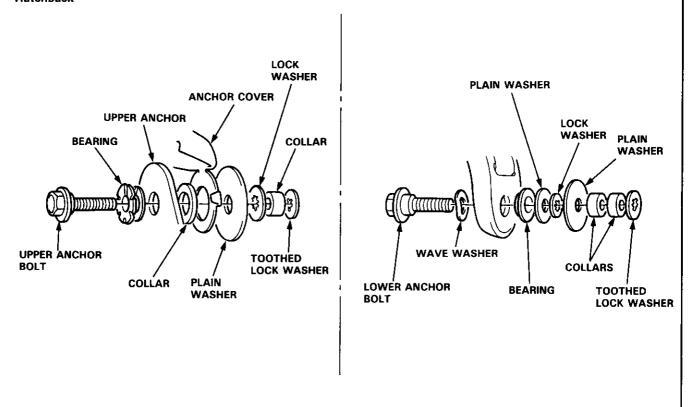
- 1. Remove the rear console (see page 20-128).
- 2. Slide the front seat until you can remove the screw, then remove the center cover.
- 3. Disconnect the connector (driver's), remove the center anchor bolt, then remove the seat belt buckle.



>: Screw locations, 2

Upper and lower anchor bolt construction:

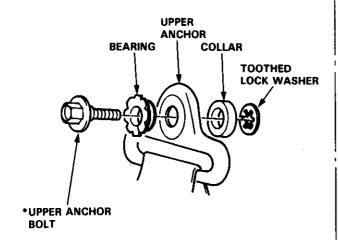
Hatchback

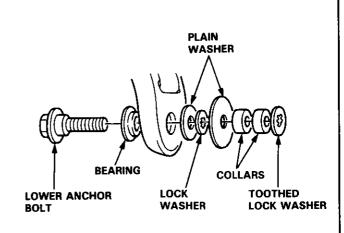


Seat Belts

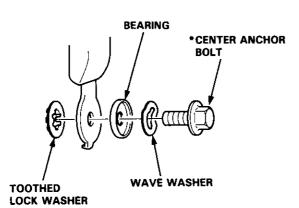
Front Seat Belt Replacement (cont'd) -

Sedan

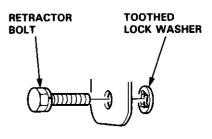




Center anchor bolt construction:



Retractor bolt construction:



Installation is the reverse of the removal procedure.

- Make sure you assemble the washers and collars on the upper and lower anchor bolts as shown.
- Before attaching the side trim panel (Hatchback) or center pillar lower trim (Sedan), make sure there are no twists or kinks in the front seat belt.
- On reassembly, replace the upper anchor bolt (Sedan) and center anchor bolt (*), and use liquid thread lock.



- Rear Seat Belt Replacement -

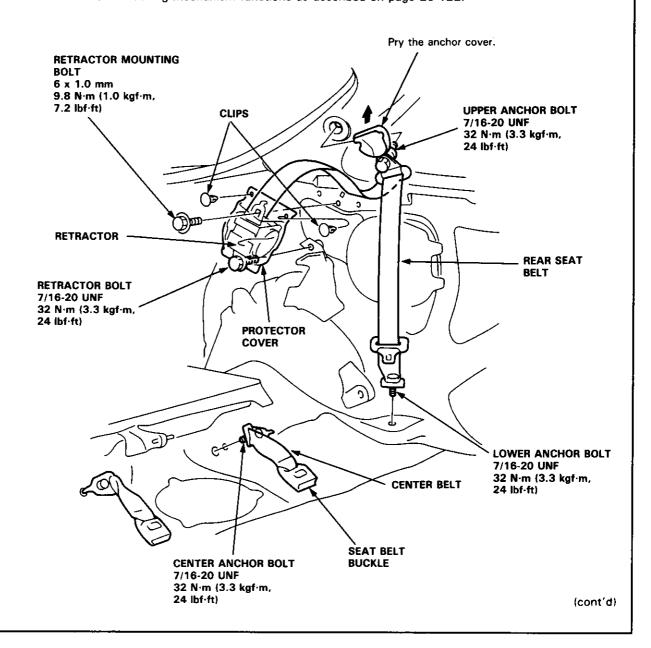
CAUTION: Check the rear seat belts for damage and replace them if necessary. Be careful not to damage them during removal and installation.

Hatchback

- 1. Remove:
 - Rear shelf (see page 20-91)
 - Rear trim panel (see page 20-92)
- Rear seat (see page 20-108)
- Side trim panel (see page 20-92)
- 2. Remove all the anchor bolts, the retractor bolt and the retractor mounting bolt, then remove the rear seat belt and center belt.

NOTE: When removing the anchor bolts and the retractor bolt, use a 17 mm socket or box-end wrench.

3. Check that the retractor locking mechanism functions as described on page 20-122.



Seat Belts

- Rear Seat Belt Replacement (cont'd) -

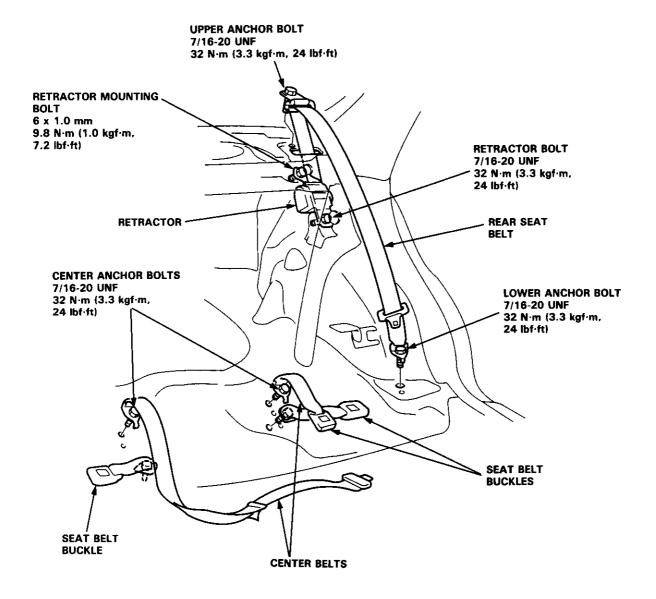
Sedan

- 1. Remove:
 - Rear seat (see page 20-110)
 - Rear pillar trim panel (see page 20-95)
 - Rear shelf trim panel (see page 20-95)
 - Rear shelf (see page 20-96)

- Trunk mat (see page 20-97)
- Rear trim panel (see page 20-97)
- Trunk side panel (see page 20-97)
- 2. Remove all the anchor bolts, the retractor bolt and the retractor mounting bolts, then remove the rear seat belts and center belts.

NOTE: When removing the anchor bolts and the retractor bolt, use a 17 mm socket or box-end wrench.

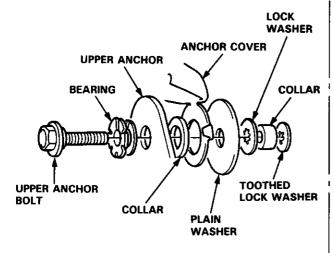
3. Check that the retractor locking mechanism functions as described on page 20-122.



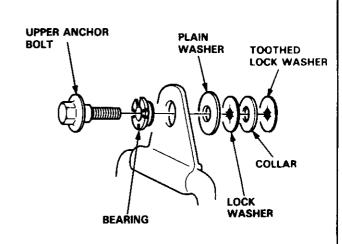


Upper anchor bolt construction:

Hatchback

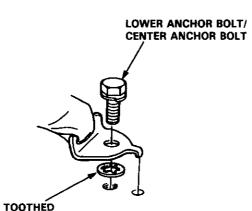


Sedan

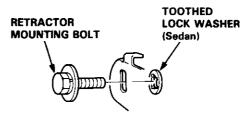


Lower and center anchor bolt construction:

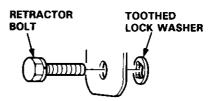




Retractor mounting bolt construction:



Retractor bolt construction:



Installation is the reverse of the removal procedure.

LOCK WASHER

NOTE:

- Make sure you assemble the washers and collars on the upper anchor bolt as shown.
- Before attaching the side trim panel (Hatchback) or rear shelf (Sedan), make sure there are no twists or kinks in the rear seat belt.
- Before attaching the seat-back, side bolsters (Sedan) and seat cushion, make sure there are no twists or kinks in the rear seat belts.
- When installing the seat cushion, slip the seat belt buckles through the slits in the seat cushion.

Seat Belts

Hatchback

Inspection

Retractor Inspection

- Before installing the retractor, check that the seat belt can be pulled out freely.
- Make sure that the seat belt does not lock when the retractor is leaned slowly up to 15° from the mounted position. The seat belt should lock when the retractor is leaned over 40°.

CAUTION: Do not attempt to disassemble the retractor.

Front:

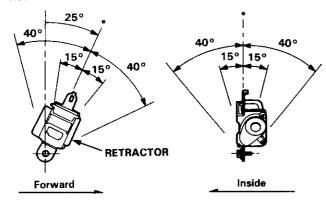
7°
40°
15°
15°
15°
15°
15°

RETRACTOR

Inside

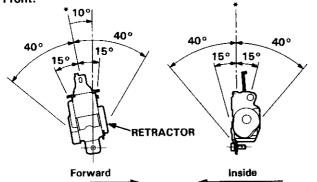
Rear:

Forward

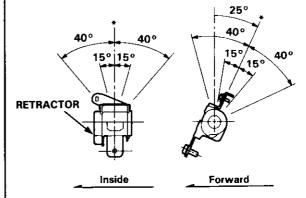


Sedan

Front:



Rear:



Replace the seat belt with a new one if there is any abnormality.

On-the-Car Seat Belt Inspection

- Check that the seat belt is not twisted or caught on anything.
- After installing the anchors, check for free movement on the anchor bolts. If necessary, remove the anchor bolts and check that the washers and other parts are not damaged or improperly installed.
- Check the seat belts for damage or discoloration. Clean with a shop towel if necessary.

CAUTION: Use only soap and water to clean.

NOTE: Dirt build-up in the metal loops of the upper anchors can cause the seat belts to retract slowly. Wipe the inside of the loops with a clean cloth dampened in isopropyl alcohol.

- Check that the seat belt does not lock when pulled out slowly. The seat belt is designed to lock only during a sudden stop or impact.
- Make sure that the seat belt will retract automatically when released.
- Replace the seat belt with a new one if there is any abnormality.



Child Seat Anchor Plate

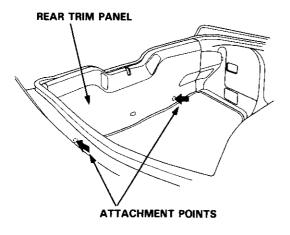
Attachment points are provided for a rear seat mounted child restraint system which uses a top tether.

The attachment points are located on the rear trim panel or rear shelf, just behind the rear seat-back.

When using a child seat with a top tether, install the child seat anchor plates securely.

Hatchback

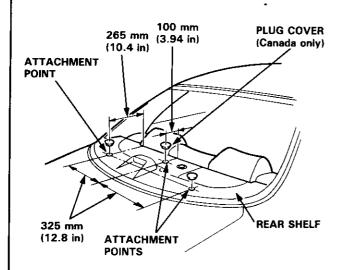
NOTE: The rear trim panel has perforations at each attachment point. Cut the rear trim panel along the perforations to make a hole.

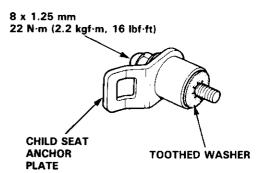


Sedan

NOTE: Remove the plug covers from the attachment points of the rear shelf (Canada).

Use a razor blade or sharp knife to carefully cut a 1 inch diameter circle at the location of the attachment point (USA).





NOTE:

- Do not remove the toothed washer from the child seat anchor plate. Use the child seat anchor plate with the toothed washer attached to it.
- When installing a child seat on the rear seat, follow the intructions of the manufacturer of the child seat.
- Additional anchor plates are available.

Á WARNING

- Do not use the child seat anchor plate for any other purpose; it is designed exclusively for installation of a child seat.
- Make sure the rear seat-back is locked firmly when installing a child seat.

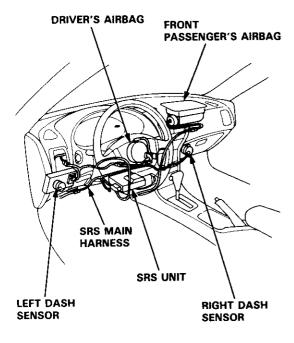
Carpet

- Replacement

SRS wire harnesses are routed near the carpet.

CAUTION:

- All SRS electrical wiring harnesses are covered with yellow insulation.
- Before disconnecting any part of the SRS wire harness, connect the short connectors (see page 20-272).
- Replace the entire affected SRS harness assembly if it has an open circuit or damaged wiring.



1. Remove:

Hatchback

- Front seat (see page 20-103)
- Rear seat (see page 20-108)
- Rear shelf (see page 20-91)
- Rear trim panel (see page 20-92)
- Side trim panel (see page 20-92)
- Front seat belt lower anchor (see page 20-115)
- Front and rear consoles (see page 20-128)
- Kick panel (see page 20-91)
- Dashboard lower cover (see page 20-131)
- Opener cover (see page 20-154)

Sedan

- Front seat (see page 20-103)
- Rear seat (see page 20-110)
- Rear pillar trim panel (see page 20-95)
- Center pillar lower trim (see page 20-94)
- Front seat belt lower anchor (see page 20-116)
- Front and rear consoles (see page 20-128)
- Kick panel (see page 20-91)
- Dashboard lower cover (see page 20-131)
- Opener cover (see page 20-155)

2. Remove the footrest.

▼ : Bolt locatios, 2



6 x 1.0 mm 9.8 N·m (1.0 kgf·m, 7.2 lbf·ft)



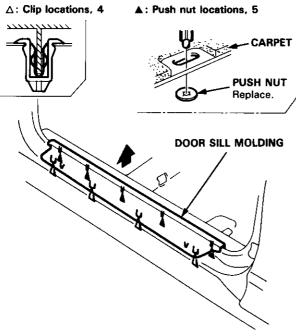


3. Remove the door sill molding from each side.

NOTE:

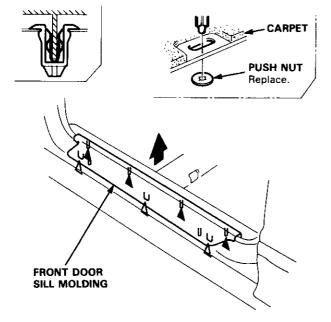
- Take care not to damage the door sill moldings.
- If necessary, separate the door sill molding and carpet.

Hatchback



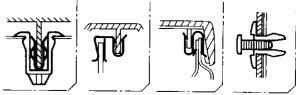
Sedan

△: Clip locations, 3 🔹 : Push nut locations, 4

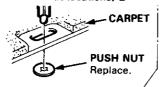


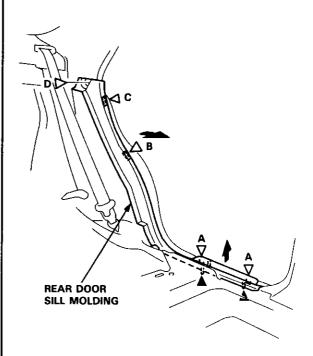
▽ : Clip locations

 $A \nabla$: Clip, 2 $B \triangleleft$: Clip, 1 $C \triangleleft$: Clip, 1 $D \triangleright$: Clip, 1



▲ : Push nut locations, 2

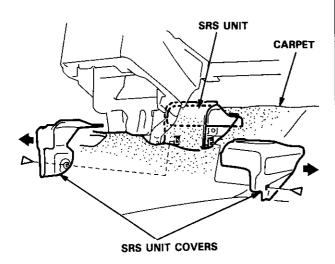




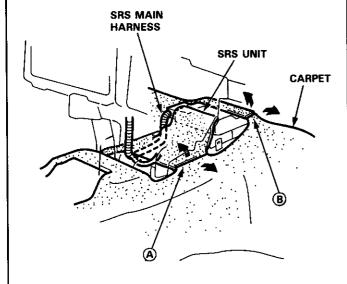
Replacement (cont'd)

- 4. Remove the SRS unit covers.
 - ▷: Clip locations, 2

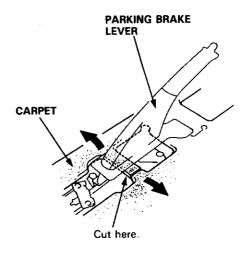




5. Cut the (A) and (B) areas in the carpet, then pull it back, as shown.



6. Cut the carpet under the parking brake lever.



- 7. Remove the dashboard center bracket and center beam bracket.
 - ▼ : Bolt locations
- A ▼ : Bolt, 4



8 x 1.25 mm 22 N·m (2.2 kgf·m, 16 lbf·ft)

C▶: Bolt, 2

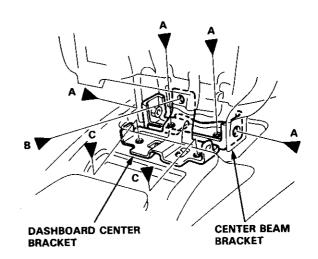


B▶: Bolt, 1

6 x 1.0 mm 9.8 N·m (1.0 kgf·m, 7.2 lbf·ft)

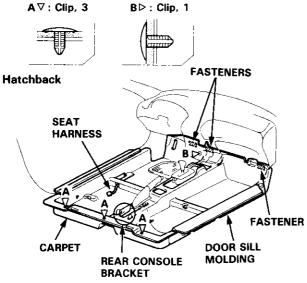


6 x 1.0 mm 9.8 N·m (1.0 kgf·m, 7.2 lbf·ft)

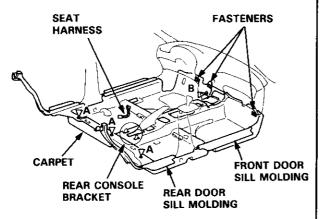




- 8. Remove the carpet by sliding it rearward.



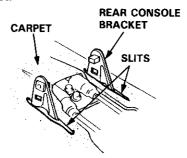
Sedan



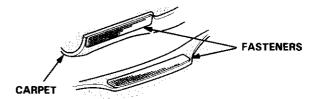
9. Installation is the reverse of the removal procedure.

NOTE:

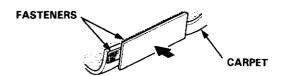
- Take care not to damage, wrinkle or twist the carpet.
- Make sure the seat harness is routed correctly.
- Slip the slits in the carpet over the rear console bracket.



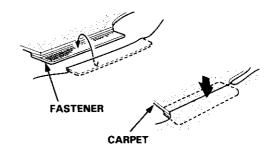
- Reattach the A cut area of the carpet (see page 20-126), as follows.
 - —1) Clean the back of the carpet with a sponge dampened in alcohol.
 Attach the fasteners to the edge of the carpet with double-faced adhesive tape.



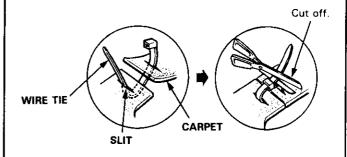
-2) Attach the other fastener, as shown.



—3) Align the carpet with the fastener, then press the carpet down securely.



 Reattach the cut area under the parking brake lever and B cut area (see page 20-126) with wire ties, as shown.



• If necessary, replace any damaged clips.

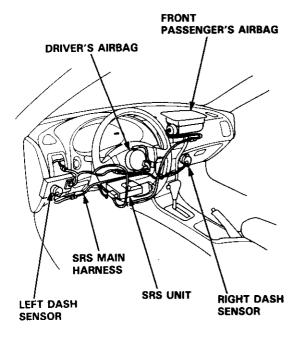
Front and Rear Consoles

- Replacement

SRS wire harnesses are routed near the front console.

CAUTION:

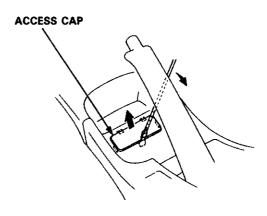
- All SRS electrical wiring harnesses are covered with yellow insulation.
- Before disconnecting any part of the SRS wire harness, connect the short connectors (see page 20-272).
- Replace the entire affected SRS harness assembly if it has an open circuit or damaged wiring.



NOTE: Take care not to scratch the front and rear consoles, and dashboard.

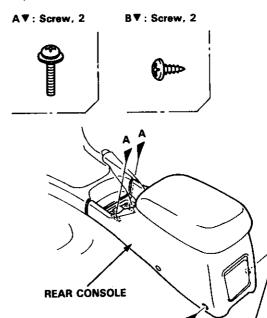
1. Remove the access cap.

CAUTION: When prying with a flat tip screwdriver, wrap it with protective tape to prevent damage.



2. Remove the screws.

▼ : Screw locations

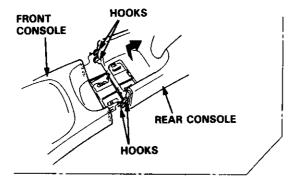


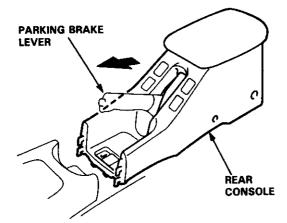


3. Remove the rear console.

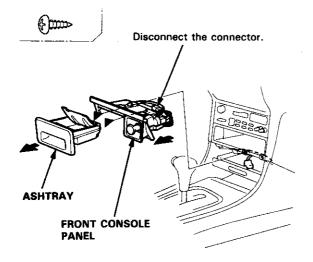
NOTE:

- Lift up the parking brake lever.
- Detach the hooks by lifting the front of the rear console and sliding it rearward.





- 4. Remove the ashtray and front console panel.
 - ▶ : Screw locations, 2



5. Remove the trim ring, then remove the console panel.

NOTE:

- Take care not to scratch the selecter lever and A/T gear position indicator panel.
- Remove the shift lever knob (M/T).

 Δ : Clip, hook locations

A △ : Clip, 2

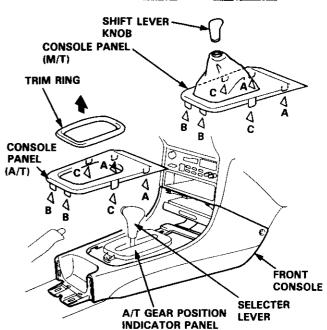
B∆: Clip, 2

 $C\Delta$: Hook, 2



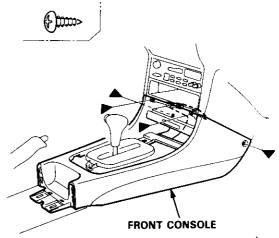






6. Remove the screws.

▶ : Screw locations, 4

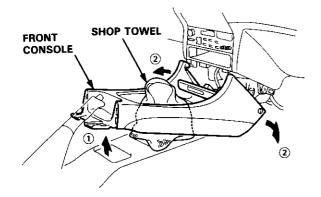


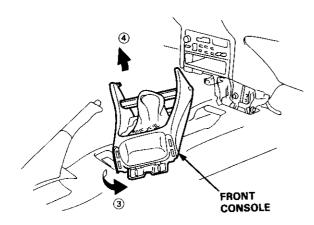
Front and Rear Consoles

- Replacement (cont'd) -

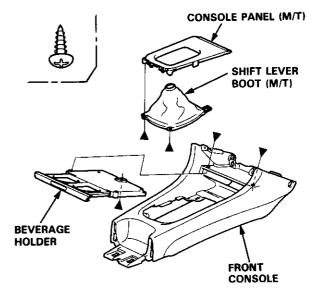
7. Remove the front console as shown.

NOTE: Wrap the selecter lever and A/T gear position indicator panel with a shop towel to prevent damage.

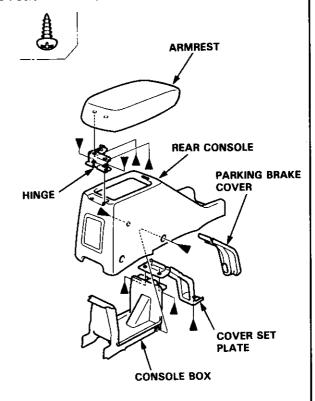




- 8. If necessary, disassemble the front and rear consoles.
- ▲ : Screw locations, 5



▲ : Screw locations, 9



9. Installation is the reverse of the removal procedure.

Dashboard

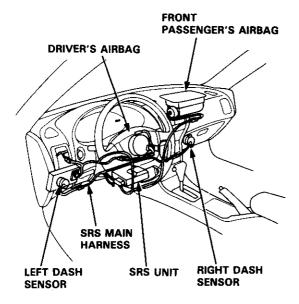


Component Removal/Installation

SRS wire harnesses are routed near the dashboard and steering column.

CAUTION:

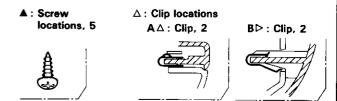
- All SRS electrical wiring harnesses are covered with yellow insulation.
- Before disconnecting any part of the SRS wire harness, connect the short connectors (see page 23-272).
- Replace the entire affected SRS harness assembly if it has an open circuit or damaged wiring.

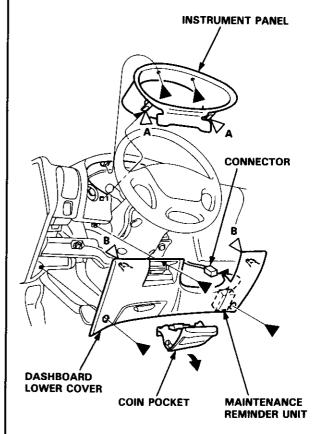


CAUTION: When prying with a flat tip screwdriver, wrap it with protective tape, and apply protective tape around the related parts, to prevent damage.

Instrument panel, Dashboad lower cover, Knee bolster removal:

- 1. Lower the steering column.
- Remove the screws and detach the clips, then remove the instrument panel.
- 3. Remove the coin pocket.
- Remove the screws and detach the clips, then remove the dashboard lower cover.
 Disconnect the connector.



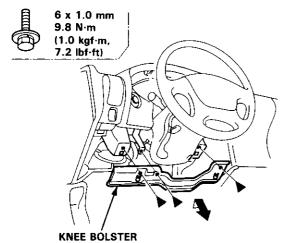


Dashboard

Component Removal/Installation (cont'd) -

5. Remove the knee bolster.





6. Installation is the reverse of the removal procedure.

Stereo radio/cassette, Heater control panel removal:

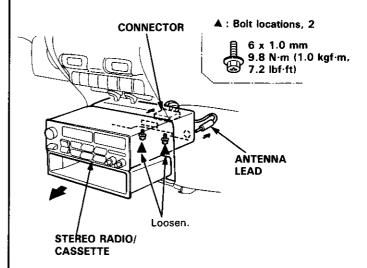
- Remove the rear console, then remove the front console (see page 20-128).
- 2. Loosen the bolts, then remove the stereo radio/ cassette by pulling it out.

Disconnect the connector and antenna lead.

NOTE: The original radio has a coded theft protection circuit. Be sure to get the customer's code number before

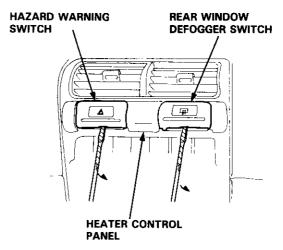
- disconnecting the battery.
- removing the No. 32 (7.5A) fuse from the underhood fuse/relay box.
- removing the radio.

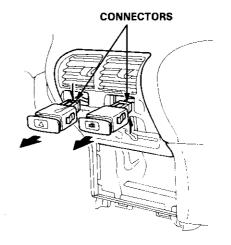
After service, reconnect power to the radio and turn it on. When the word "CODE" is displayed, enter the customer's 5-digit code to restore radio operation.



Carefully pry the hazard warning switch and rear window defogger switch out of the heater control panel.

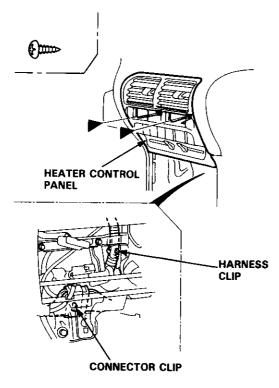
Disconnect the connectors.



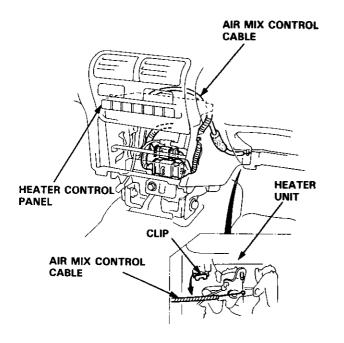




- Remove the screws.
 Detach the harness clip and connector clip.
- ▶ : Screw locations, 2

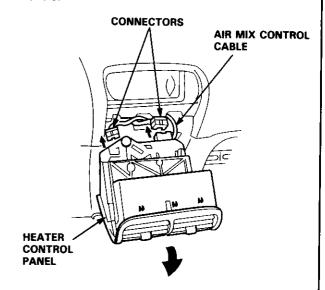


5. Disconnect the air mix control cable from the heater unit.



Pull the heater control panel out, then disconnect the connectors.

NOTE: Take care not to bend the air mix control cable.



7. Installation is the reverse of the removal procedure.

NOTE: Make sure the connector and air mix control cable are connected properly.

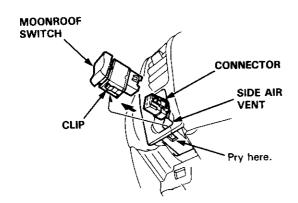
Dashboard

Component Removal/Installation (cont'd) -

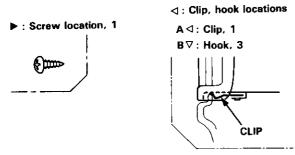
Side air vent removal:

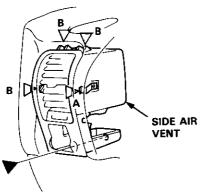
Driver's

- 1. Remove the dashboard lower cover (see page 20-131).
- Carefully pry the moonroof switch out of the side air vent, then disconnect the connector.



3. Remove the screw, then remove the side air vent.





4. Installation is the reverse of the removal procedure.

NOTE: Make sure the connector is connected properly.

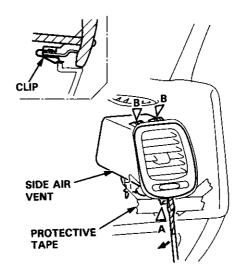
Front passenger's

Carefully pry the side air vent at the lower edge, then pull it out.

△: Clip, hook locations

A∆: Clip, 1

B∇: Hook, 2



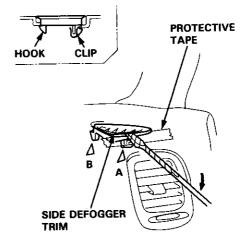
Side defogger trim removal:

Carefully pry the side defogger trim at the rear edge, then remove it.

△ : Clip, hook locations

A △: Clip.1

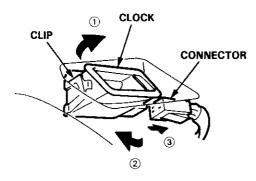
B △: Hook, 1





Clock removal:

Carefully pry the clock at the left edge, then pull it out. Disconnect the connector.



Glove box removal:

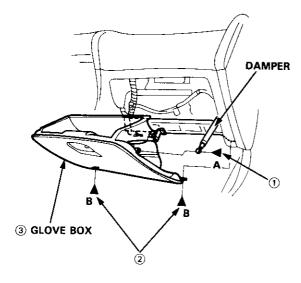
- Open the glove box.
- Remove the screw, then remove the damper from the glove box.
- 3. Remove the screw, then remove the glove box.
- ▲: Bolt, screw locations

A▲: Bolt, 2

B ◀: Screw, 1







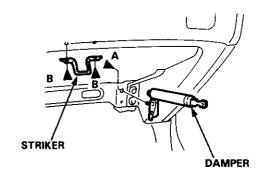
4. Remove the damper and striker.

▶: Nut, screw locations

A >: Nut, 1 B 4: Screw, 2







5. Installation is the reverse of the removal procedure.

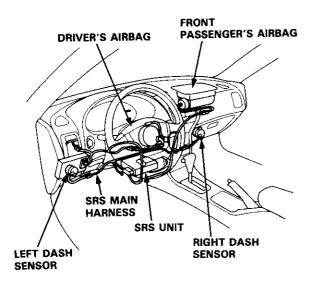
Dashboard

- Replacement Precautions

SRS wire harnesses are routed near the dashboard and steering column.

CAUTION:

- All SRS electrical wiring harnesses are covered with yellow insulation.
- Before disconnecting any part of the SRS wire harness, connect the short connectors (see page 23-272).
- Replace the entire affected SRS harness assembly if it has an open circuit or damaged wiring.



Before removing the dashboard:

AWARNING To avoid accidental deployment and possible injury, always install the protective short connectors on the driver's and front passenger's airbag connectors before working near any SRS wiring.

Disconnect the battery negative cable, then disconnect the positive cable.

NOTE: The original radio has a coded theft protection circuit. Be sure to get the customer's code number before

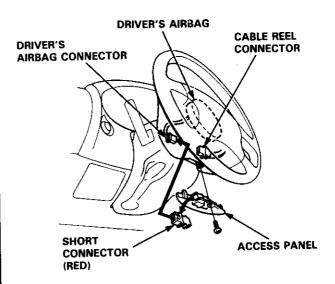
- disconnecting the battery.
- removing the No. 32 (7.5A) fuse from the underhood fuse/relay box.
- removing the radio.

After service, reconnect power to the radio and turn it on. When the word "CODE" is displayed, enter the customer's 5-digit code to restore radio operation.

2. Install the short connectors (RED).

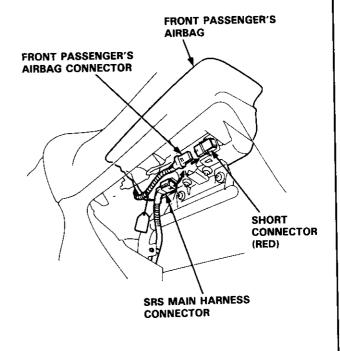
Driver's:

Remove the access panel, then disconnect the connector between the cable reel and driver's airbag. Connect the short connector (RED) to the driver's airbag connector (see page 23-272).



Front passenger's:

Remove the glove box (see page 20-135), then disconnect the connector between the front passenger's airbag and SRS main harness. Connect the short connector (RED) to the front passenger's airbag connector (see page 23-273).





Replacement -

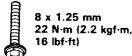
- 1. To remove the dashboard, first remove the:
 - Front seats (see page 20-103)
 - Front and rear consoles (see page 20-128)
 - Dashboard lower cover (see page 20-131)
 - Knee bolster (see page 20-132)
 - Glove box (see page 20-135)
 - Clock (see page 20-135)
 - Moonroof switch (see page 20-134)
 - Stereo radio/cassette (see page 20-132)
- 2. Lower the steering column (see section 17).

AWARNING To avoid accidental deployment and possible injury, always install the protective short connector on the driver's airbag connector before lowering the steering column (see page 20-136).

NOTE: To prevent damage to the steering column, wrap it with a shop towel.

▲: Bolt, nut locations

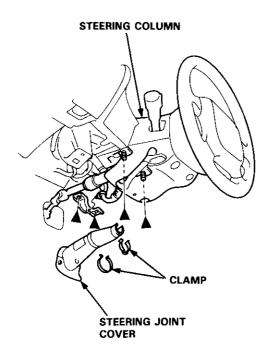
A ▲ : Bolt, 2



B . Nut, 2



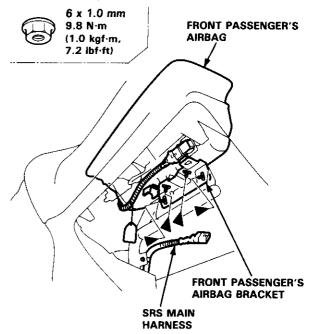
8 x 1.25 mm 13 N·m (1.3 kgf·m, 9 lbf·ft) Replace.



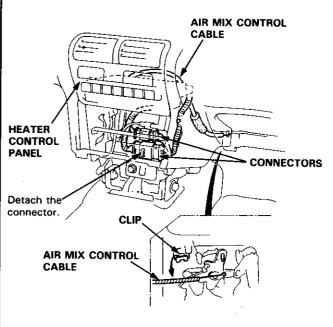
3. Remove the nuts, then remove the front passenger's airbag bracket.

AWARNING To avoid accidental deployment and possible injury, always install the protective short connector on the front passenger's airbag connector when the SRS main harness is disconnected (see page 20-136).

▲: Nut locations, 4



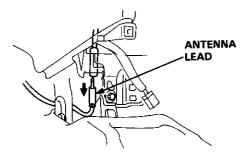
4. Disconnect the air mix control cable and connectors.



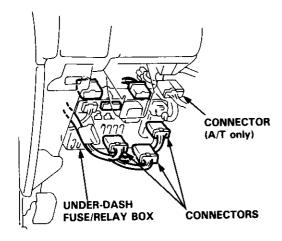
Dashboard

- Replacement (cont'd) -

5. Disconnect the antenna lead.

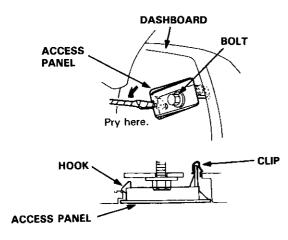


6. Disconnect the connectors from the under-dash fuse/relay box.



7. Remove the access panels on both sides.

CAUTION: When prying with a flat tip screwdriver, wrap it with protective tape to prevent damage.



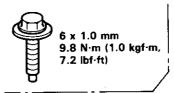
Remove the bolts, then lift and remove the dashboard.

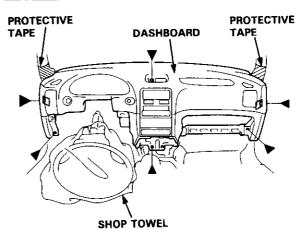
CAUTION: Use protective tape on the bottom of the front pillar trim:

NOTE:

- Take care not to scratch the dashboard.
- To prevent damage to the shift lever (M/T) or selecter lever and A/T gear position indicator panel (A/T), wrap them with a shop towel.

▼ : Bolt locations, 6





9. Installation is the reverse of the removal procedure.

NOTE:

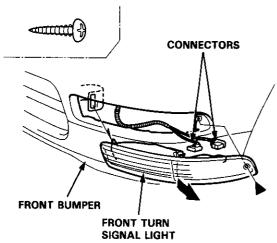
- Make sure the dashboard fits onto the body correctly.
- Before tightening the bolts, make sure the dashboard wire harnesses are not pinched, and that the dashboard is not interfering with the air mix control cable.

Bumpers

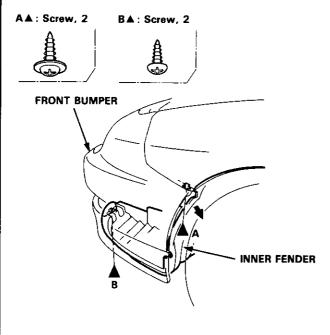
Front Bumper Replacement -

NOTE:

- An assistant is helpful when removing the front bumper and front bumper beam.
- Take care not to scratch the front bumper.
- Open the hood.
- Remove the front turn signal light, then disconnect the connectors on each side.
 - **◄**: Screw locations, 2



- Pull the inner fender down, then remove the screws from the front bumper and lower bumper on each side.
- ▲ : Screw locations



3. Remove the bolts, then remove the front bumper. ▼ : Bolt locations △: Clip locations, 2 A ▼ : Bolt. 9 B▼: Bolt. 2 6 x 1.0 mm 6 x 1.0 mm 9.8 N·m (1.0 kgf·m,) 9.8 N·m (1.0 kgf·m,) 7.2 lbf·ft) 7.2 lbf·ft) FRONT BUMPER NOTE: If necessary, disassemble the front bumper. ▶ : Bolt, screw locations A▶: Bolt, 2 C♥: Bolt, 8 D €: Screw, 8 B▶: Bolt, 5 △ : Clip locations A △ : Clip, 2 B △ : Clip, 4 **FRONT BUMPER BUMPER** FRONT TURN SIGNAL LIGHT HOLDER BRACKET SIDE SIDE **CLIPS** LICENSE PLATE SIDE **FRAME** PLATE FRÓNT (cont'd)

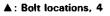
LOWER BUMPER

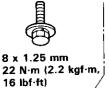
BUMPER

Bumpers

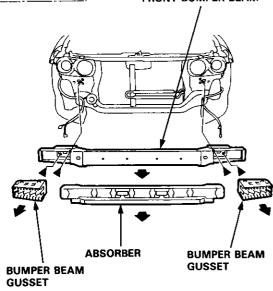
- Front Bumper Replacement (cont'd) -

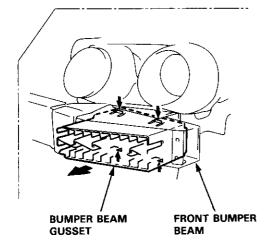
4. Remove the absorber and bumper beam gusset on each side, then remove the front bumper beam.





FRONT BUMPER BEAM

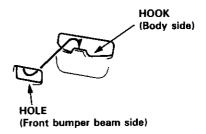




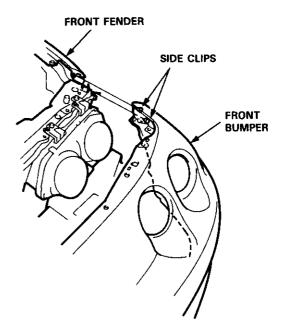
5. Installation is the reverse of the removal procedure.

NOTE:

 Install the holes in the front bumper beam over the hooks on the body.



 Align the front bumper side clips with the front fender properly, then install the front bumper.



• Make sure the connector is connected properly.



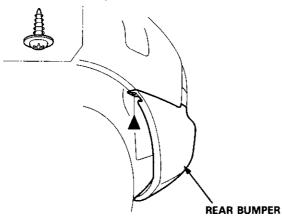
Rear Bumper Replacement -

NOTE:

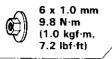
- An assistant is helpful when removing the rear bumper and rear bumper beam.
- Take care not to scratch the rear bumper.

Hatchback

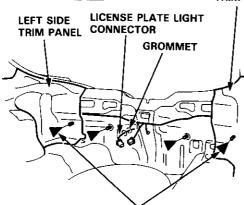
- 1. Remove the screw from each side.
 - ▲ : Screw locations, 2



- 2. Open the hatch, then remove the rear trim panel (see page 20-92).
- Remove the nuts, and disconnect the license plate light connector and grommet.
 - ▶: Nut locations, 4



RIGHT SIDE TRIM PANEL

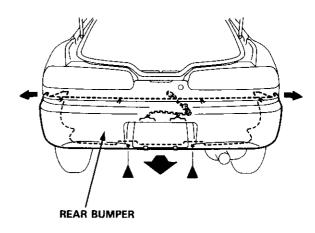


To remove the nuts, remove the rear portion of the side trim panel on each side (see page 20-92).

- 4. Remove the bolts, then remove the rear bumper.
- ▲ : Bolt locations, 2



6 x 1.0 mm 9.8 N·m (1.0 kgf·m, 7.2 lbf·ft)



- 5. If necessary, remove the bumper upper beam from the rear bumper.
- ▲ : Screw locations

A ▲ : Screw, 4

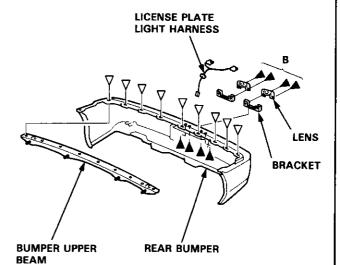
B ◀: Screw, 4

♥ : Clip locations, 9









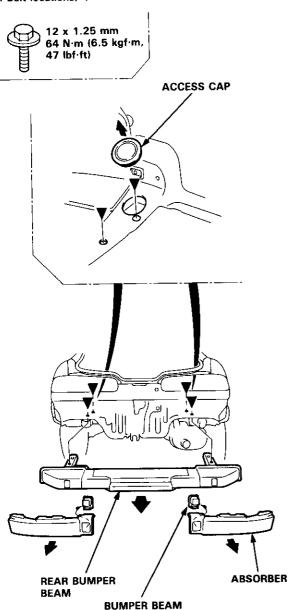
(cont'd)

Bumpers

- Rear Bumper Replacement (cont'd) -

6. Remove the absorber, bumper beam gusset and rear bumper beam.

▼ : Bolt locations, 4



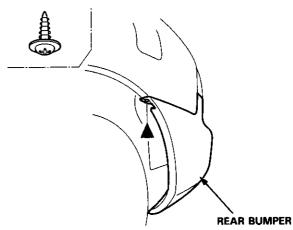
7. Installation is the reverse of the removal prcedure.

GUSSET

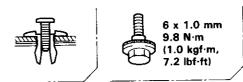
NOTE: Make sure the license plate light connector is connected, and the grommet is installed properly.

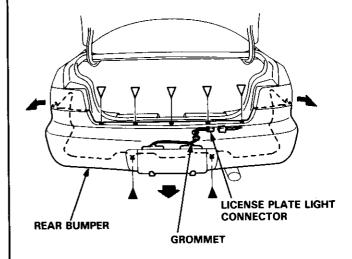
Sedan

- 1. Remove the screw from each side.
- ▲ : Screw locations, 2



- 2. Open the trunk lid, then remove the rear trim panel (see page 20-97).
- Disconnect the license plate light connector and grommet from the rear trunk area. Remove the clips and bolts, then remove the rear bumper.
- ▽ : Clip locations, 5 🔹 : Bolt locations, 2



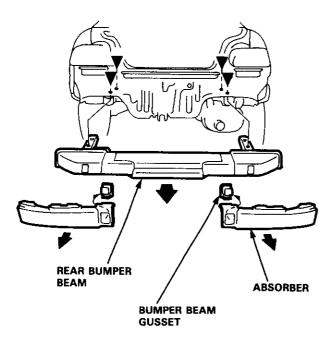




- If necessary, remove the license plate light harness, bracket and lens from the rear bumper (see page 20-141).
- 5. Remove the absorber, bumper beam gusset and rear bumper beam.
- ▼: Bolt locations, 4

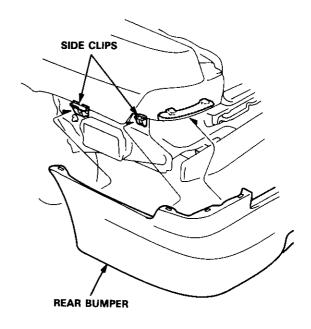


12 x 1.25 mm 64 N·m (6.5 kgf·m, 47 lbf·ft)



6. Installation is the reverse of the removal procedure.

- Make sure the license plate light connector is connected, and the grommet is installed properly.
- Make sure the rear bumper engages the side clips securely.

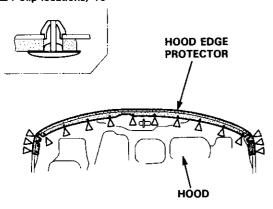


Hood

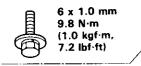
- Replacement

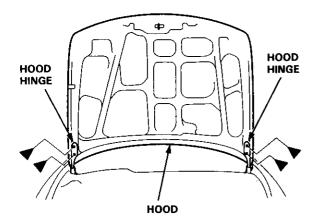
NOTE:

- An assistant is helpful when removing the hood.
- Take care not to damage the hood and body.
- When removing the clips, use a clip remover.
- · Open the hood.
- 1. If necessary, remove the hood edge protector.
- △: Clip locations, 16



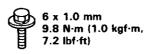
- 2. Remove the bolts, then remove the hood.
- ▲ : Bolt locations, 4

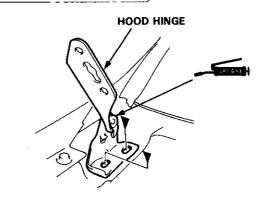




NOTE: If necessary, remove the hood hinge.

▼: Bolt locations, 4





3. Installation is the reverse of the removal procedure.

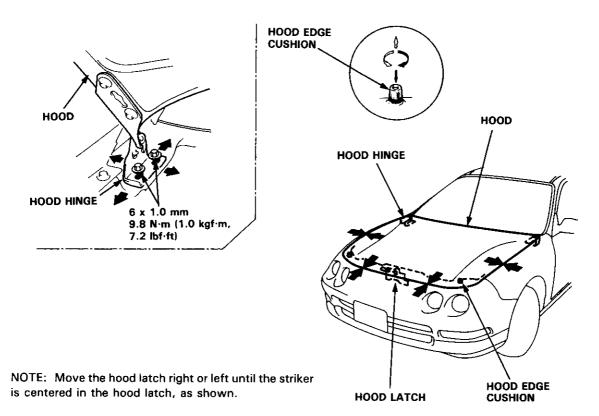
- If necessary, replace any damaged clips.
- Make sure the hood locks securely.
- Make sure the hood opens properly.
- Adjust the hood alignment (see page 20-145).

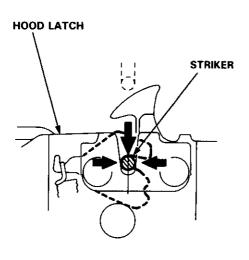


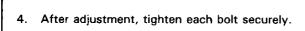
Adjustment -

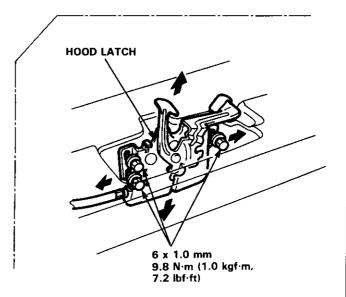
NOTE: Before adjusting the hood, loosen each bolt slightly.

- 1. Adjust the hood hinges right and left as well as fore and aft by using the elongated holes.
- 2. Turn the hood edge cushions, as necessary, to make the hood fit flush with the body at front and side edges.
- 3. Adjust the hood latch to obtain the proper height at the forward edge.







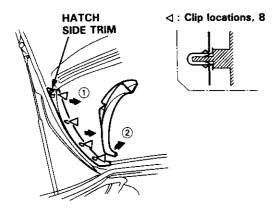


Hatch

Replacement

NOTE:

- An assistant is helpful when removing the hatch.
- Take care not to damage the hatch and body.
- Take care not to scratch the hatch side trims and hatch trim panel.
- Open the hatch.
- Remove the high mount brake light (see section 23).
- 1. Remove the hatch side trim on each side.



2. Remove the hatch trim panel.

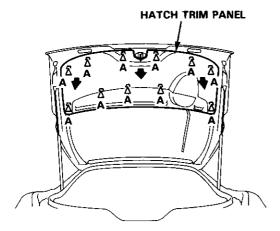
△: Clip locations

A △: Clip, 11

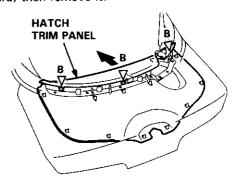
B ♥ : Clip, 3



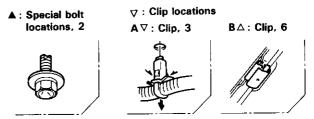




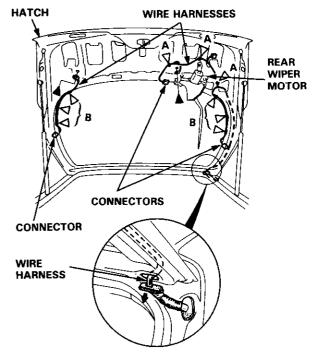
NOTE: Detach the clips by sliding the hatch trim panel forward, then remove it.



- 3. Remove the hatch spoiler as described on page 20-159 (for some type).
- 4. Disconnect the connectors, then remove the wire harnesses from the hatch.



NOTE: Before pulling out the wire harness, tie a string to the end of it so you can pull it back in when the hatch is reinstalled.



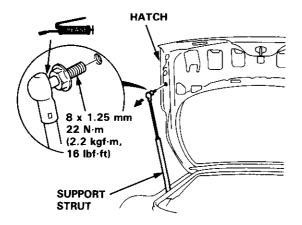
5. Remove the rear wiper motor (see section 23).



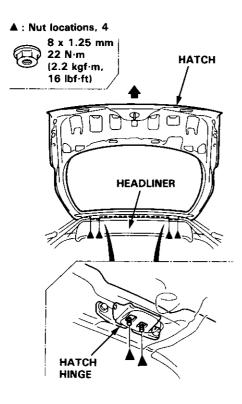
- Remove the upper anchor bolts from the front and rear seat belts (see pages 20-115, 119), then remove the upper portion of the quarter pillar trim panel (see page 20-99).
- 7. Remove the rear roof trim, then pull the rear of the headliner down (see page 20-99).

NOTE: Take care not to bend the headliner.

 Remove the support strut on each side while holding the hatch.

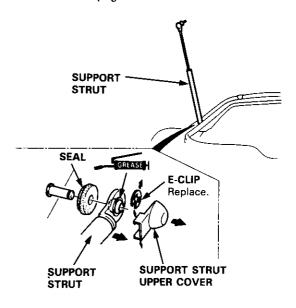


9. Remove the nuts, then remove the hatch.

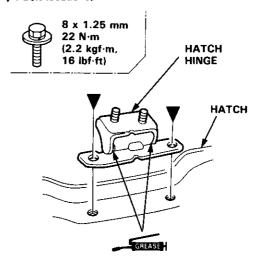


NOTE:

- If necessary, replace the support strut.
- When scrapping the support strut, dispose it as described on page 20-149.



- If necessary, remove the hatch hinge.
 - ▼ : Bolt locations, 4



10. Installation is the reverse of the removal procedure.

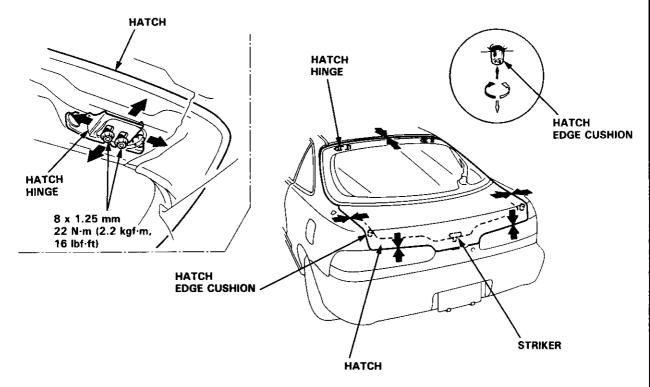
- If necessary, replace any damaged clips.
- Make sure the connectors are connected properly.
- Make sure the hatch locks securely.
- Make sure the hatch opens properly.
- Adjust the hatch alignment (see page 20-148).

Hatch

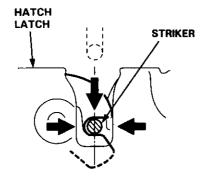
- Adjustment

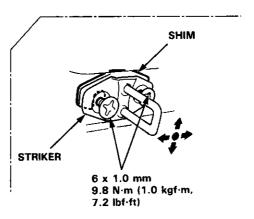
NOTE:

- Before adjusting the hatch, loosen each bolt and nut slightly.
- Do not install the support struts.
- 1. Adjust the hatch hinges right and left as well as fore and aft by using the elongated holes.
- 2. Turn the hatch edge cushions, as necessary, to make the hatch fit flush with the body at each side.
- 3. Adjust the hatch fit to the hatch opening by moving the striker.
- 4. Use shims, as necessary, to make the hatch fit flush with the body at the rear edge.



NOTE: Move the striker right or left until it's centered in the hatch latch, as shown.





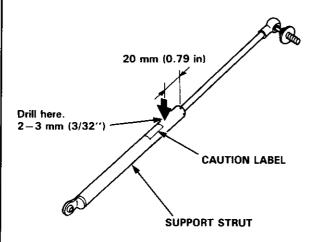
5. After adjustment, tighten each bolt and nut securely.

Support Strut Disposal

A WARNING The support strut contains nitrogen gas and oil under pressure.

The pressure must be relieved before disposal to prevent explosion and possible injury when scrapping.

Place the support strut on a level surface with its rod extended, and drill a hole 2-3 mm (3/32") diameter in the body to release the gas.



AWARNING Always wear eye protection to avoid getting metal shavings in your eyes when releasing the gas from the support strut.

Trunk Lid



Replacement -

NOTE:

- An assistant is helpful when removing the trunk lid.
- Take care not to damage the trunk lid and body.
- Open the trunk lid.
- Disconnect the connectors and trunk lid opener cable. Remove the wire harness and trunk lid opner cable from the trunk lid.

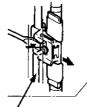
NOTE: Before pulling out the wire harness, tie a string to the end of it so you can pull it back in when the trunk lid is reinstalled.

▷ : Clip locations

A ▷ : Clip, 3

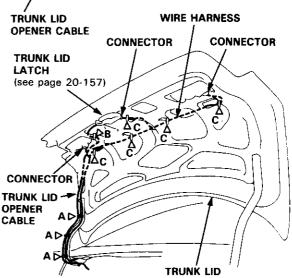
B < : Clip, 1

C∆: Clip, 5







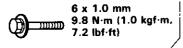


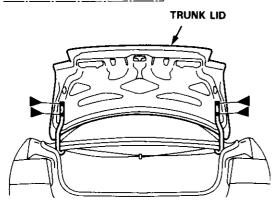
(cont'd)

Trunk Lid

- Replacement (cont'd) -

- 2. Remove the bolts, then remove the trunk lid.
- ▶ : Bolt locations, 4

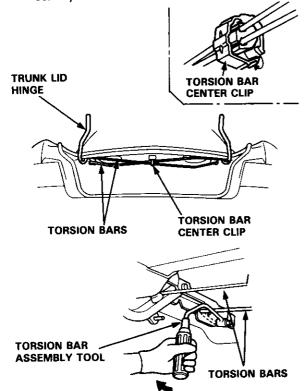




3. If necessary, remove the trunk lid hinge.

NOTE:

- Remove the rear shelf (see page 20-95).
- Remove the torsion bars with the torsion bar assembly tool.

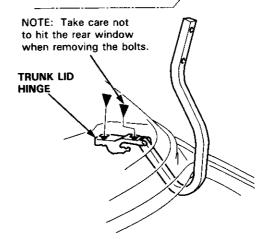


 Remove the bolts, then remove the trunk lid hinge.

▼ : Bolt locaitons, 4



6 x 1.0 mm 9.8 N·m (1.0 kgf·m, 7.2 lbf·ft)



4. Installation is the reverse of the removal procedure.

NOTE:

- Make sure the connectors are connected properly.
- Adjust the torsion bars fore or aft with the torsion bar assembly tool as shown.



= Normal position= Higher tension

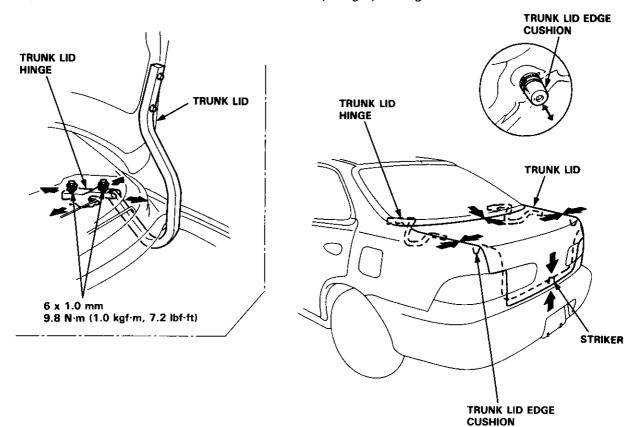
- Make sure the trunk lid locks securely.
- Make sure the trunk lid opens properly.
- Adjust the trunk lid alignment (see page 20-151).



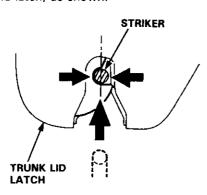
Adjustment -

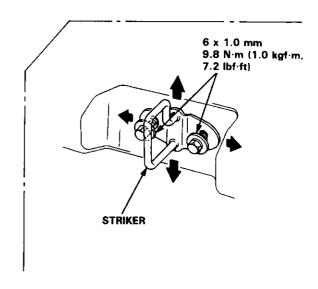
NOTE: Before adjusting the trunk lid, loosen each bolt slightly.

- 1. Adjust the trunk lid hinges right and left as well as fore and aft by using the elongated holes.
- 2. Turn the trunk lid edge cushions, as necessary, to make the trunk lid fit flush with the body at the rear and side edges.
- 3. Adjust the fit between the trunk lid and the trunk lid opening by moving the striker.



NOTE: Move the striker right or left until it's centered in the trunk lid latch, as shown.





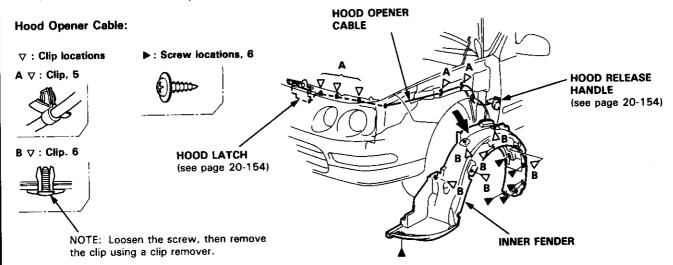
4. After adjustment, tighten each bolt securely.

Opener Cables

- Replacement

NOTE:

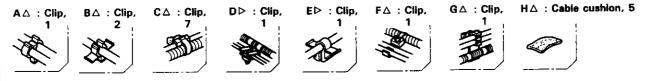
- When removing the clips, use a clip remover.
- Take care not to bend the opener cables.

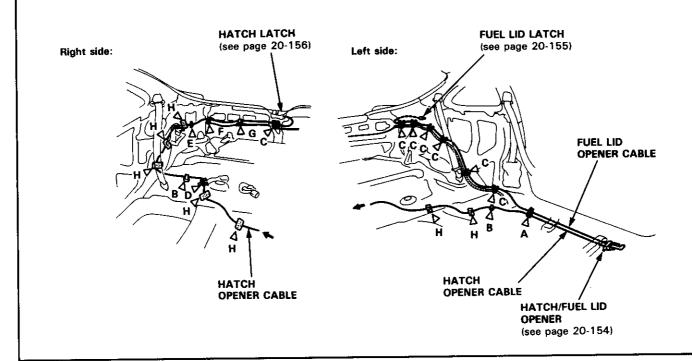


Hatch/Fuel Lid Opener Cables (Hatchback):

NOTE: Remove the rear seat (see page 20-108), rear trim panel and side trim panel (see page 20-91), then pull the carpet back, as necessary (see page 20-124).

△ : Clip, cable cushion locations



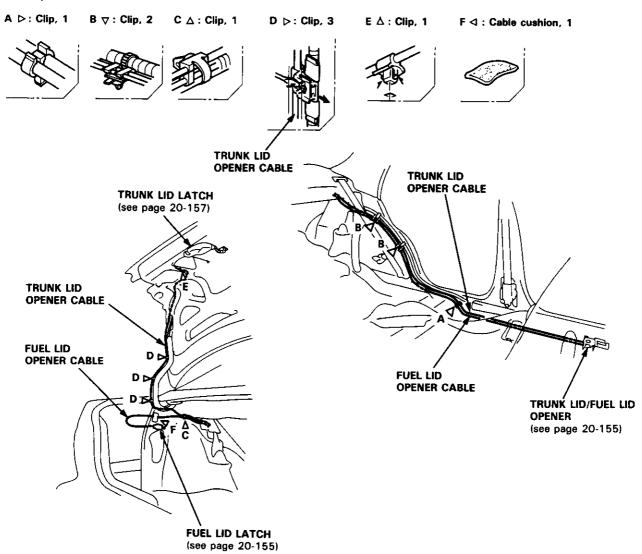




Trunk Lid/Fuel Lid Opener Cable (Sedan):

NOTE: Remove the rear seat (see page 20-110) and center pillar lower trim (see page 20-94), then pull the carpet back, as necessary (see page 20-124). Remove the left trunk side panel (see page 20-97).

▷ : Clip, cable cushion locations



Installation is the reverse of the removal procedure.

- Make sure each opener cable is routed and connected properly.
- Make sure the hood, hatch, trunk lid and fuel lid open properly.

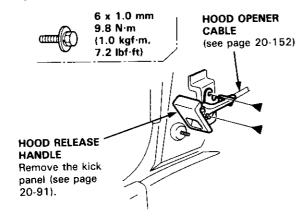
Opener and Latch

Replacement

NOTE: Take care not to bend the opener cables.

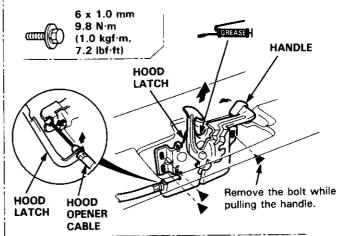
Hood Release Handle:

♦ : Bolt locations, 2



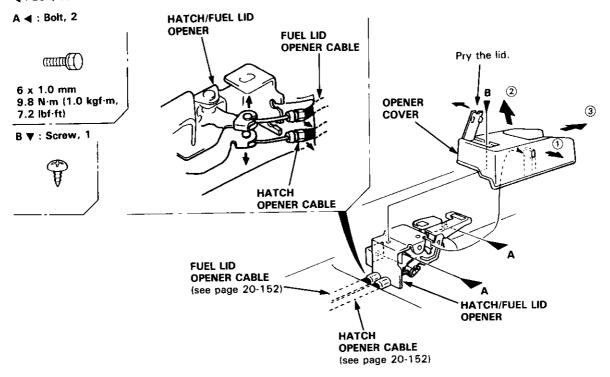
Hood Latch:

◄: Bolt locations



Hatch/Fuel Lid Opener (Hatchback):

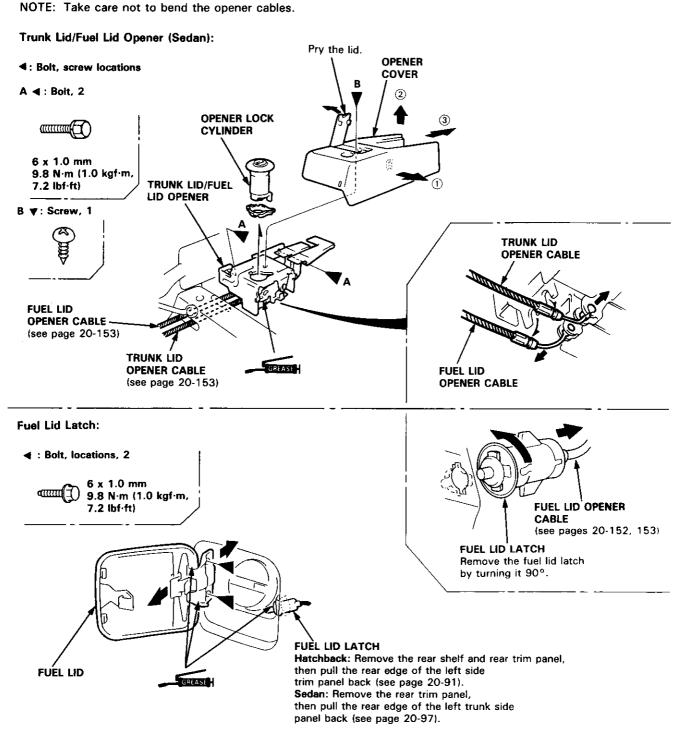
◄: Bolt, screw locations



Installation is the reverse of the removal procedure.

- Make sure each opener cable is connected properly.
- Make sure the hood locks securely.
- Make sure the hood, hatch and fuel lid open properly.





Installation is the reverse of the removal procedure.

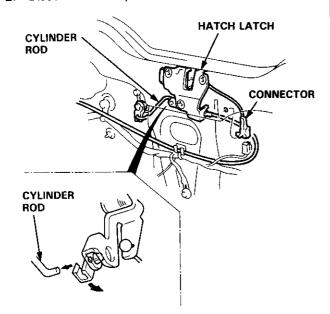
- Make sure each opener cable is connected properly.
- Make sure the fuel lid fits flush with the body.
- Make sure the fuel lid locks securely.
- Make sure the trunk lid and fuel lid open properly.

Hatch Latch and Lock Cylinder

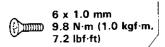
- Replacement

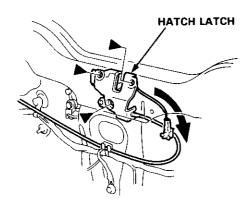
NOTE: Take care not to bend the cylinder rod and hatch opener cable.

- 1. Remove the rear trim panel (see page 20-92).
- 2. Disconnect the cylinder rod and connector.

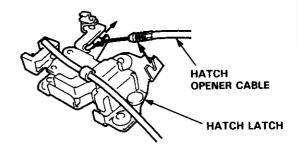


- 3. Remove the hatch latch.
- ▶: Screw locations, 3

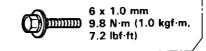


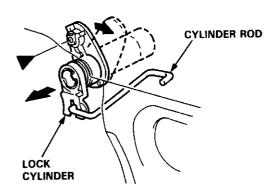


4. Disconnect the hatch opener cable.



- 5. Remove the lock cylinder by turning it 45°.
- ▶: Bolt location, 1

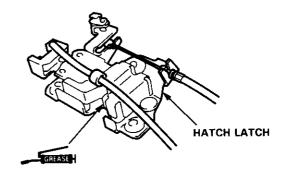




6. Installation is the reverse of the removal procedure.

NOTE:

Apply grease to the hatch latch.



- Make sure the hatch locks securely.
- Make sure the hatch opens properly.
- Make sure the connector is connected properly.

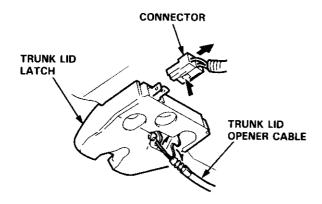
Trunk Lid Latch and Lock Cylinder



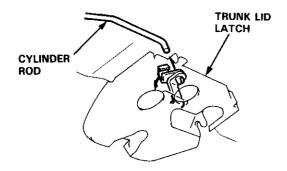
Replacement -

NOTE: Take care not to bend the cylinder rod and trunk lid opener cable.

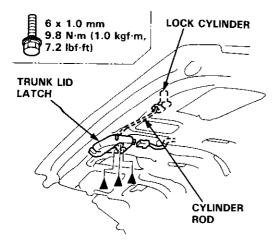
1. Disconnect the connector and trunk lid opener cable.



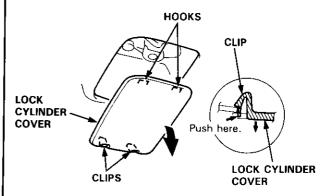
2. Disconnect the cylinder rod.



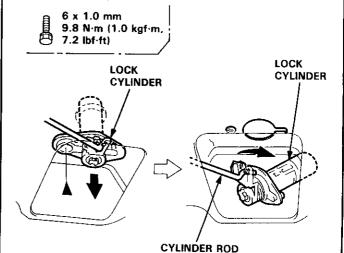
- 3. Remove the bolts, then remove the trunk lid latch.
 - ▲ : Bolt locations, 3



4. Remove the lock cylinder cover.



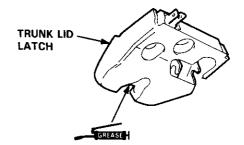
- Remove the bolt, then pull the lock cylinder out. Remove the lock cylinder from the cylinder rod, then take them out.
- ▲: Bolt location, 1



6. Installation is the reverse of the removal procedure.

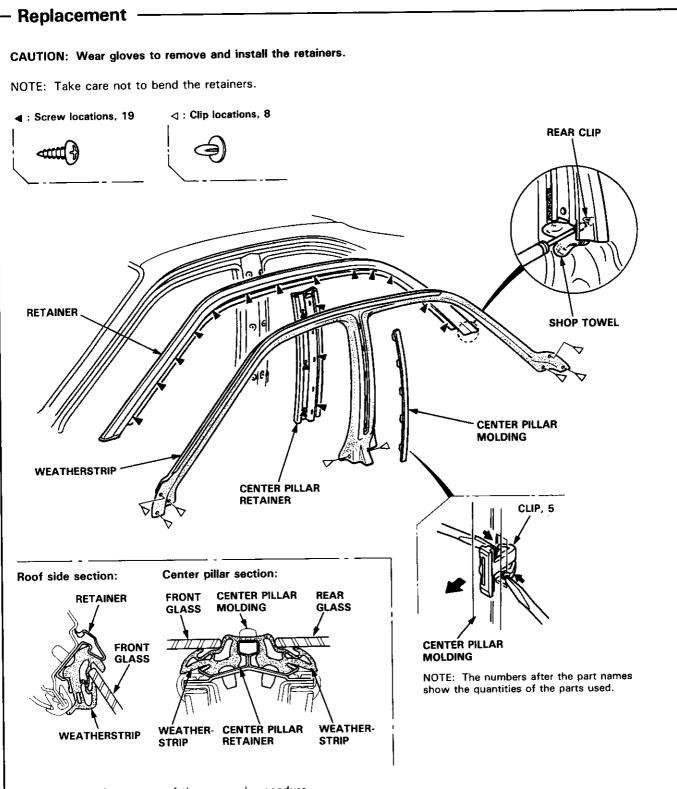
NOTE:

Apply grease to the trunk lid latch.



- Make sure the trunk lid locks securely.
- Make sure the trunk lid opens properly.
- Make sure the connector is connected properly.

Retainers and Weatherstrip



Installation is the reverse of the removal procedure.

- Check the weatherstrip for damage or deterioration, and replace if necessary.
- After installing the weatherstrip, check for water leaks.
- If necessary, adjust the position of the door glass (see page 20-40).
- If necessary, replace any damaged clips.

Hatch Spoiler

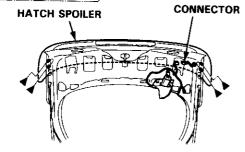
- Replacement

NOTE:

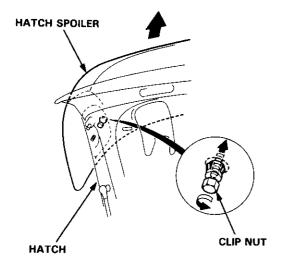
- Take care not to scratch the hatch.
- Open the hatch.
- 1. Remove the hatch side trim and hatch trim panel (see page 20-146).
- 2. Remove the nuts and disconnect the connector.



6 x 1.0 mm 9.8 N·m (1.0 kgf·m, 7.2 lbf·ft)



3. Remove the hatch spoiler by turning the clip nut on the left side counterclockwise.



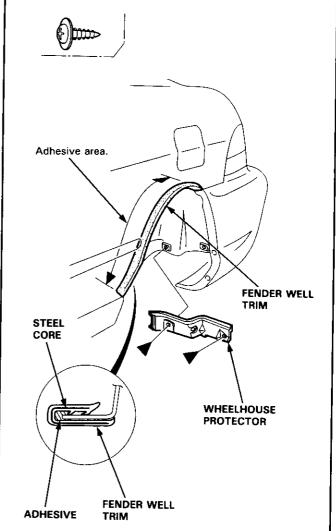
3. Installation is the reverse of the removal procedure.

Fender Well Trim and Wheelhouse Protector



- Replacement -

- Take care not to bend the fender well trim.
- Before installing the fender well trim, clean the body bonding surface with a sponge dampened in alcohol.
- After cleaning, keep oil, grease or water from getting on the surface.
- ▶: Screw locations.



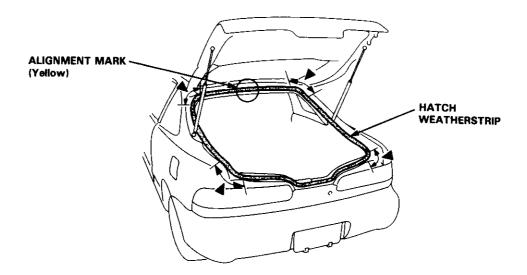
Hatch Weatherstrip/Trunk Lid Weatherstrip

- Replacement

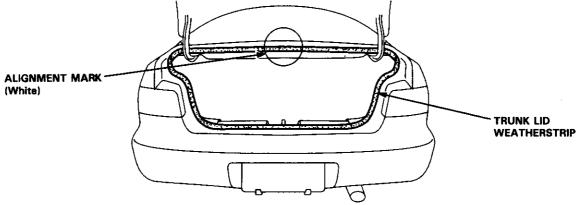
Hatch Weatherstrip:

NOTE:

- Before installing the hatch weatherstrip, apply clear sealant into its channel at the ▶ locations.
- After applying the sealant, install the hatch weatherstrip.

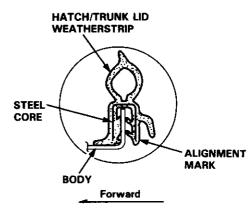


Trunk Lid Weatherstrip:



When installing the hatch or trunk lid weatherstrip, align it with the alignment mark on the hatch or trunk lid opening.

- Make sure there are no wrinkles in the weatherstrip.
- Check for water leaks.



Roof Molding

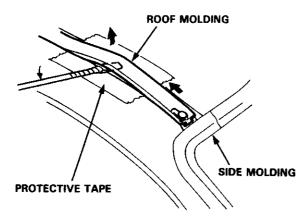
- Replacement

CAUTION: When prying with a flat tip screwdriver, wrap it with protective tape to prevent damage.

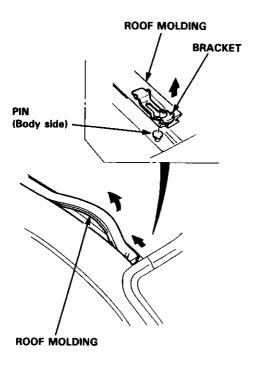
NOTE: Take care not to scratch the body and roof molding.

 Pry the roof molding with a flat tip screwdriver as shown.

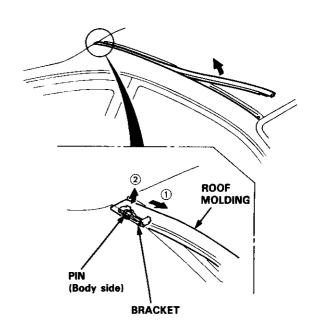
CAUTION: Use protective tape on the body.



Pull and slide the roof molding, then detach the bracket on the end of the roof molding from the pin.

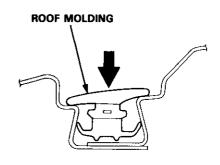


3. Pull the roof molding up and detach the bracket from the pin, then remove the roof molding.



4. Installation is the reverse of the removal procedure.

- Take care not to damage the windshield side molding.
- Make sure the roof molding is installed securely.



Door and Side Moldings

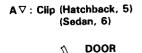
Replacement -

CAUTION: When prying with a flat tip screwdriver, wrap it with protective tape to prevent damage.

NOTE:

- To remove the door molding, remove the door panel and plastic cover (see pages 20-4, 20, 32).
- To remove the rear side molding, remove the side trim panel (see page 20-91).
- Take care not to bend the door moldings.
- The steel core in the door molding cannot be restored to its original shape once it is bent. Replace the door molding if the steel core is bent.

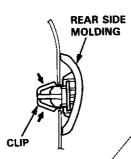




MOLDING

STEEL

CORE



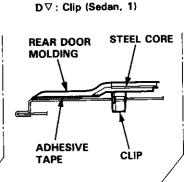
B ♥ : Clip (Hatchback, 3)

C ♥ : Clip (Hatchback, 1) (Sedan, 2) STEEL

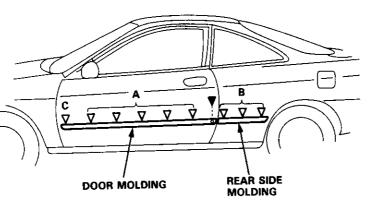
CLIP

CORE

DOOR MOLDING



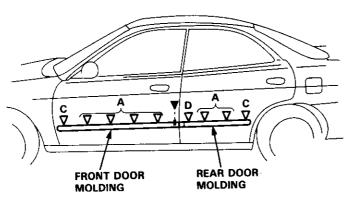
Hatchback



▼ : Plastic nut location (Hatchback, 1) (Sedan, 1)



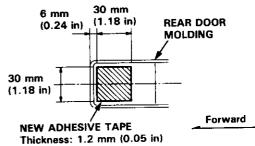
Sedan



Installation is the reverse of the removal procedure.

NOTE: If necessary, replace any damaged clip.

- Before installing the rear door molding, scrape the adhesive tape from the molding and body.
- Clean the molding and door bonding surfaces with a sponge dampened in alcohol.
- After cleaning, keep oil, grease and water from getting on the surface.
- Glue the new adhesive tape to the molding as shown.



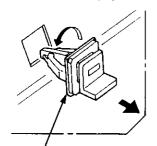
Side Sill Panel



- Replacement

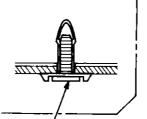


A ♥: Clip (Hatchback, 8) (Sedan, 8)



SIDE CLIP Remove the side clips from the body by turning them 45°

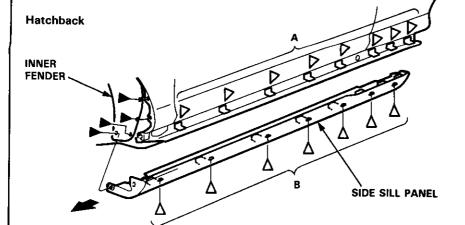
B∆: Clip (Hatchback, 7) (Sedan, 7)

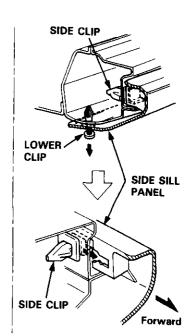


NOTE: Loosen the screw, then remove the lower clip using a clip remover.

▶: Screw locations, 4

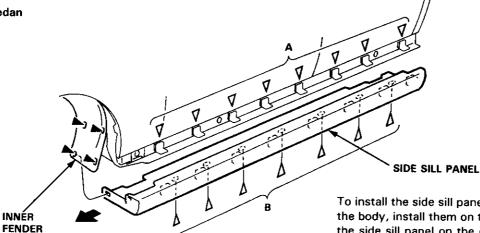
Remove the lower clips, then remove the side sill panel by sliding it forward.





NOTE: When removing the side sill panel, the side clips will stay in the body.

Sedan



To install the side sill panel, remove the side clips from the body, install them on the side sill panel, then install the side sill panel on the car.

- Take care not to twist the side sill panel.
- If necessary, replace any damaged side and lower clips.

Rear Emblems

- Installation -

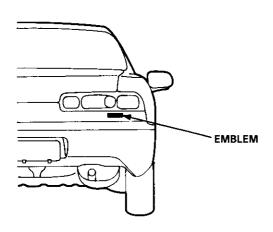
Align the application tape with the rear turn signal light and the gap between the taillight and body, as shown, then press the emblem into place. Remove the application tape.

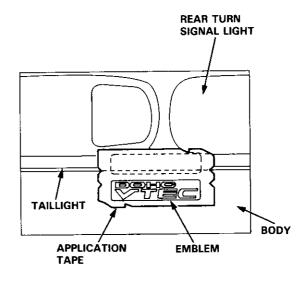
NOTE:

- Before applying, clean the body surface with a sponge dampened in alcohol.
- After cleaning, keep oil, grease and water from getting on the surface.
- When applying, make sure there are no wrinkles in the emblem.

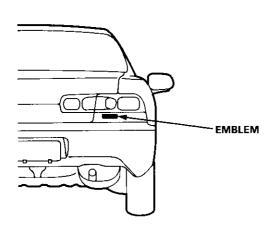
Attachment Point:

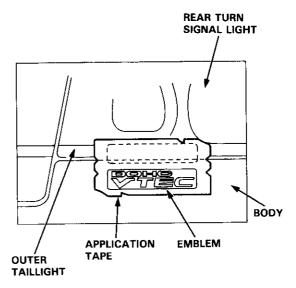
Hatchback





Sedan



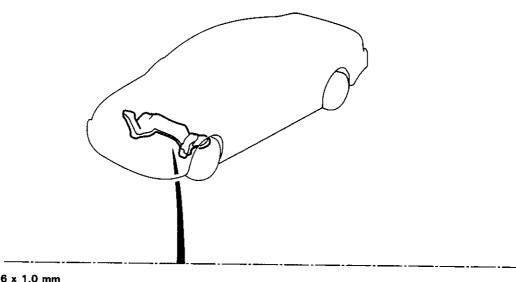


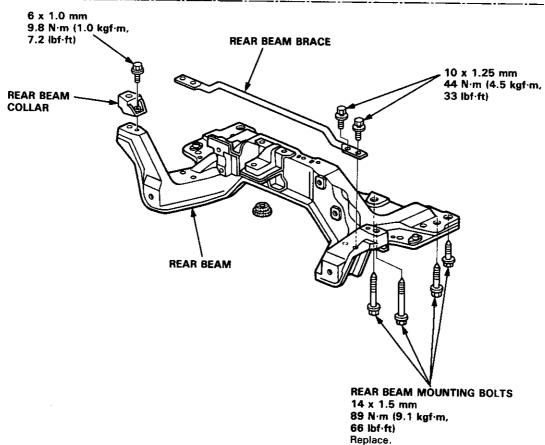
Sub-frame



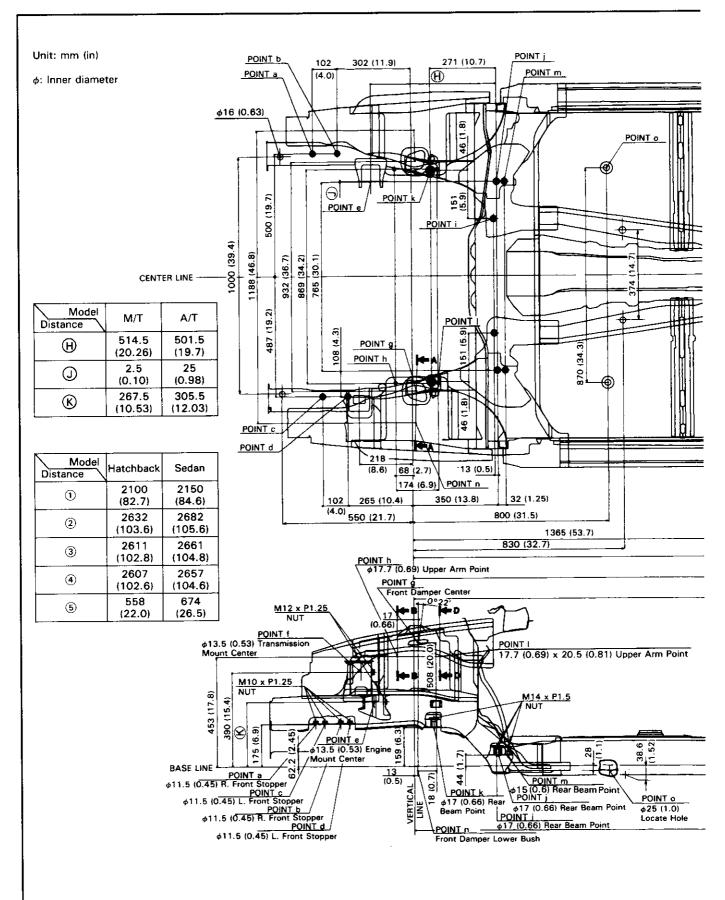
Sub-frame Torque Sequence:

CAUTION: After loosening the rear beam mounting bolts be sure to replace them with new ones.

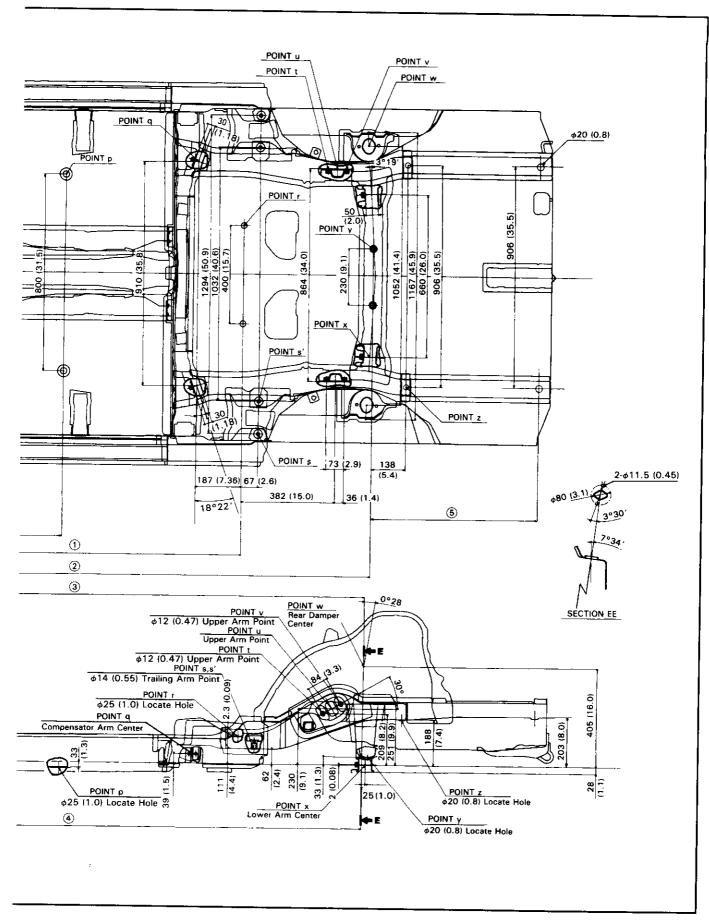




Frame Repair Chart







Heater and Air Conditioning

| Heater | | 21-1 |
|------------------|--------|------|
| Air Conditioning | •••••• | 22-1 |

SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM (SRS)

The Integra SRS includes a driver's airbag, located in the steering wheel hub. In addition, all models except the RS model for Canada have a front passenger's airbag located in the dashboard above the glove box. Information necessary to safely service the SRS is included in this Service Manual. Items marked with an asterisk (*) on the contents page include, or are located near, SRS components. Servicing, disassembling or replacing these items will require special precautions and tools, and should therefore be done by an authorized Acura dealer.

A WARNING

- To avoid rendering the SRS inoperative, which could lead to personal injury or death in the event of a severe frontal collision, all SRS service work must be performed by an authorized Acura dealer.
- Improper service procedures, including incorrect removal and installation of the SRS, could lead to personal injury caused by unintentional activation of the airbags.
- All SRS electrical wiring harnesses are covered with yellow insulation. Related components are located in the steering column, front console, dashboard, and dashboard lower panel, and in the dashboard above the glove box. Do not use electrical test equipment on these circuits.

NOTE: The original radio has a coded theft protection circuit. Be sure to get the customer's code number before — disconnecting the battery.

- removing the No. 32 (7.5 A) fuse from the under-hood fuse/relay box.
- removing the radio.

After service, reconnect power to the radio and turn it on. When the word "CODE" is displayed, enter the customer's 5-digit code to restore radio operation.

Heater

| Illustrated Index | 21-2 |
|--|-------|
| Heater Door Positions | 21-3 |
| Circuit Diagram | 21-6 |
| Troubleshooting | |
| Symptom Chart | 21-8 |
| Flowcharts | |
| Blower Motor Speed | 21-9 |
| Blower Motor | 21-11 |
| Mode Control Motor | 21-14 |
| Recirculation Control Motor | 21-17 |
| Heater Control Panel Input/ Output Signals | 21-19 |
| Blower Unit | |
| Replacement | 21-20 |
| Overhaul | |
| Heater Unit | |
| Replacement | 21-22 |
| Overhaul | |
| Defroster Door Adjustment | |
| Heater Control Panel | |
| Replacement | 21-25 |
| Overhaul | 21-26 |
| Heater Valve Cable | |
| Adjustment | 21-27 |
| Air Mix Control Cable | |
| Adjustment | 21-27 |
| Mode Control Motor | |
| Test | 21-28 |
| Replacement | 21-28 |
| Recirculation Control Motor | |
| Test | 21-29 |
| Replacement | 21-29 |
| Relay | |
| Test | 21-30 |
| Heater Fan Switch | |
| Test | 21-30 |
| Mode Control Switch | |
| Test | 21-31 |
| Recirculation Control Switch | |
| Test | 21-31 |

^{*:} Read SRS precautions before working in this area.

Illustrated Index

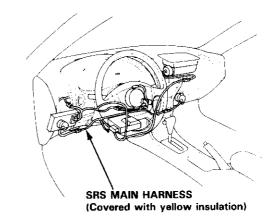
CAUTION:

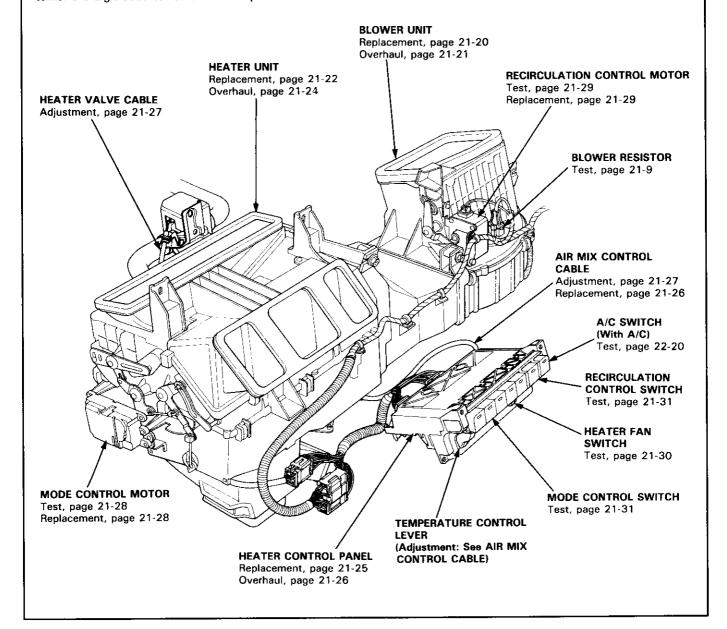
- All SRS electrical wiring harnesses are covered with yellow insulation.
- Before disconnecting any part of the SRS wire harness, connect the short connector(s).
- Replace the entire affected SRS harness assembly if it has an open circuit or damaged wiring.

NOTE: The original radio has a coded theft protection circuit. Be sure to get the customer's code number before

- disconnecting the battery.
- removing the No. 32 (7.5 A) fuse from the underhood fuse/relay box.
- removing the radio.

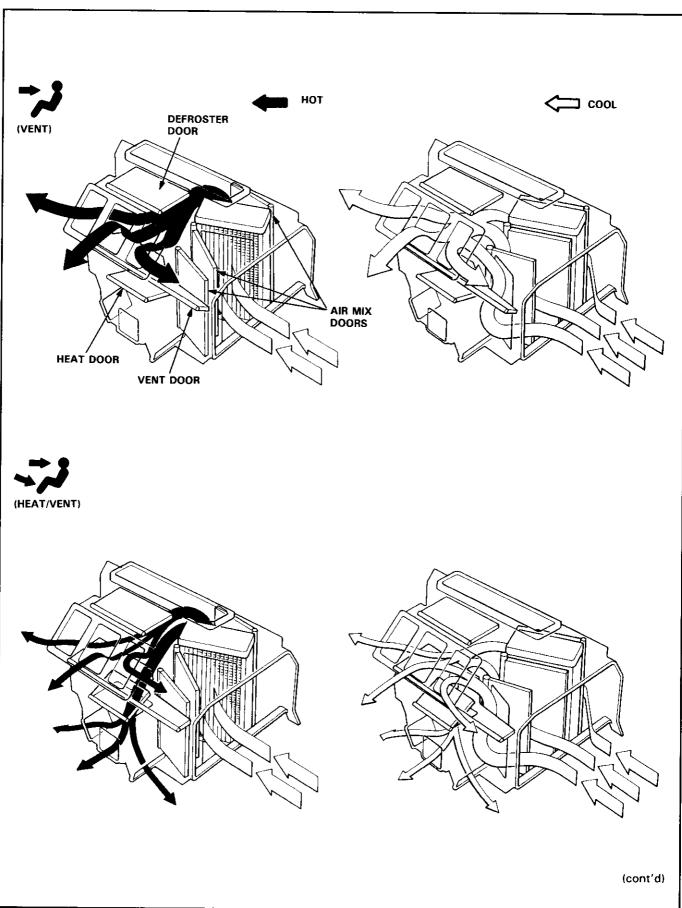
After service, reconnect power to the radio and turn it on. When the word "CODE" is displayed, enter the customer's 5-digit code to restore radio operation.





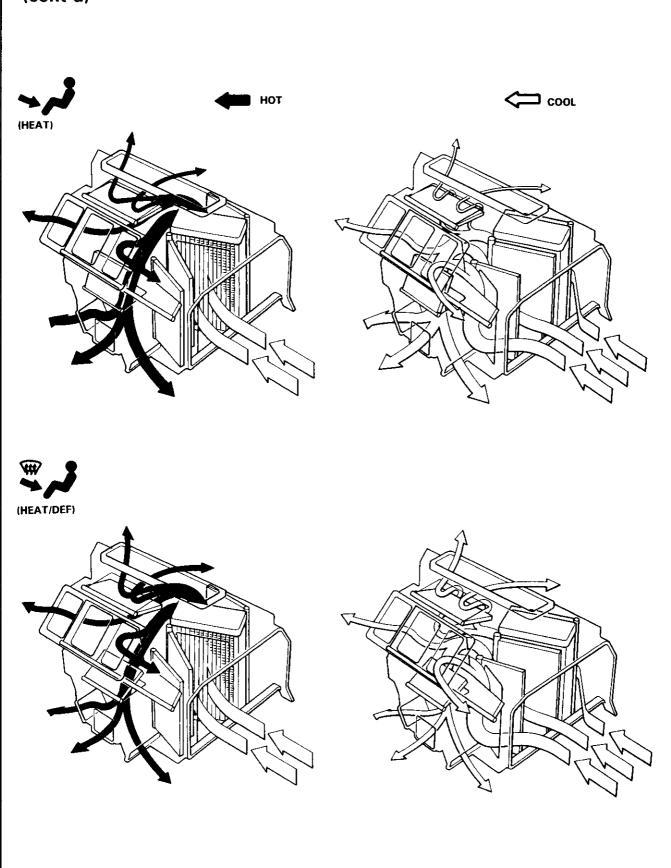
Heater Door Positions

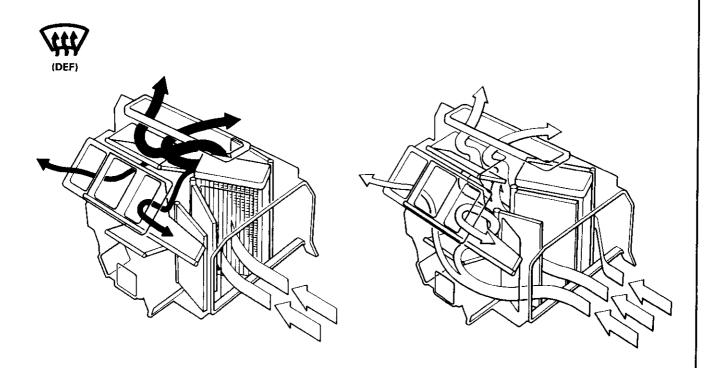




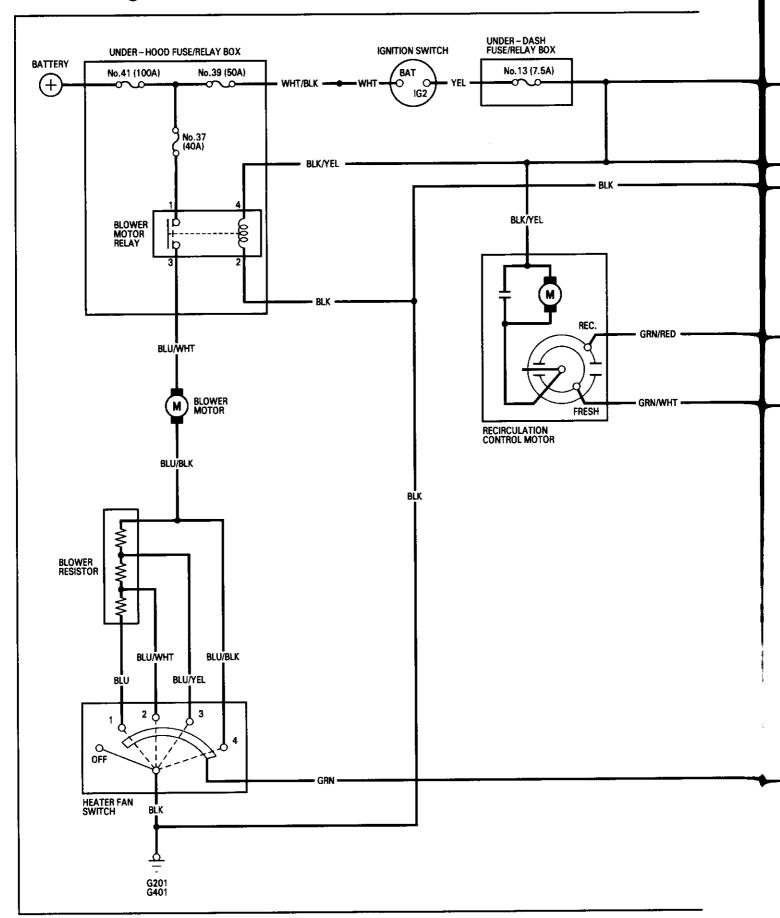
Heater Door Positions

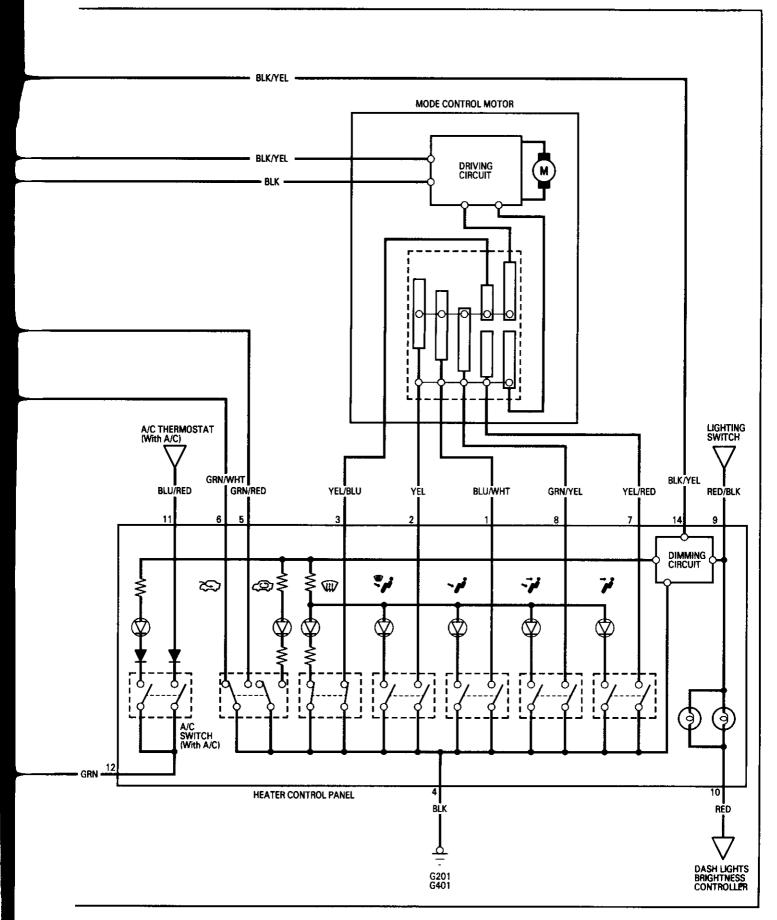
__ (cont'd) ____





Circuit Diagram



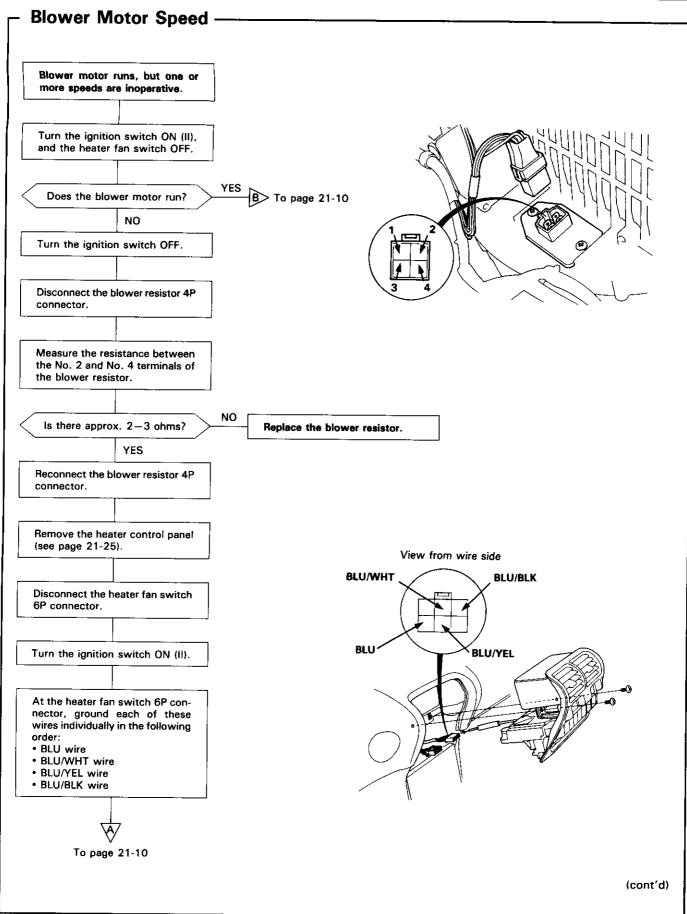


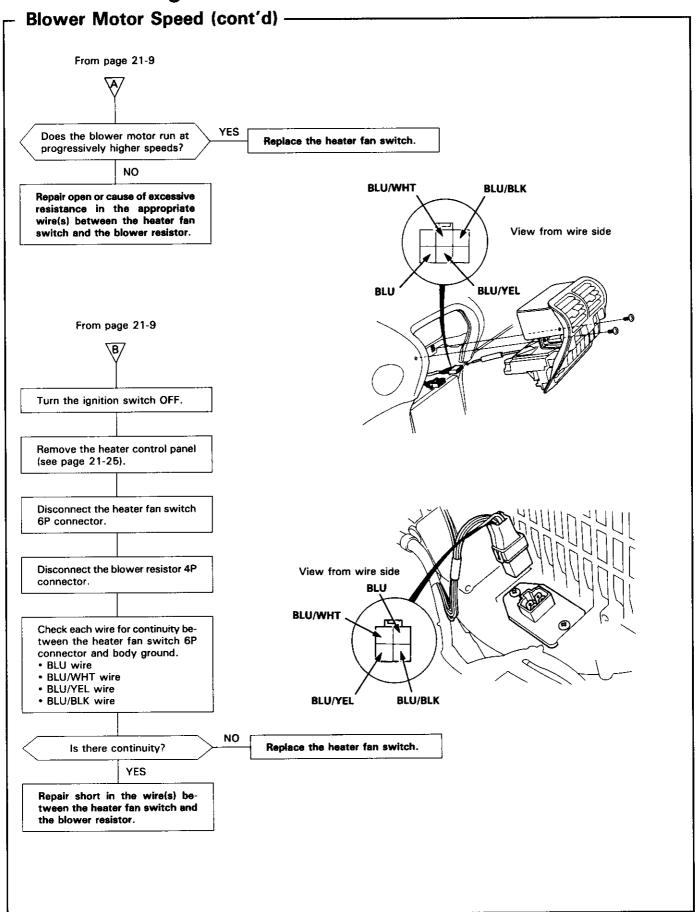
Troubleshooting

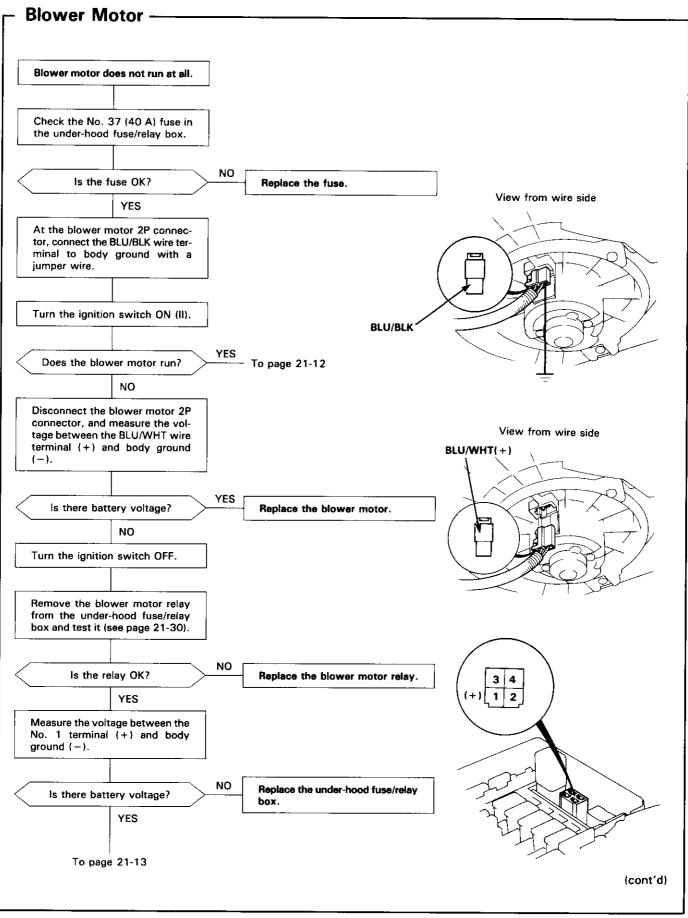
Symptom Chart -

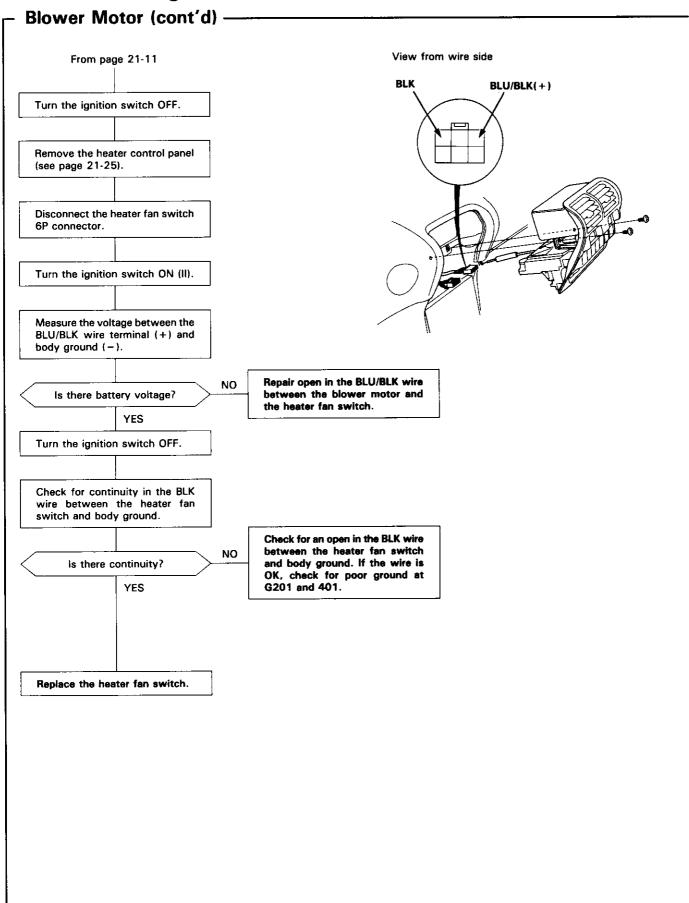
NOTE: Check the engine coolant level and allow the engine to warm up before troubleshooting.

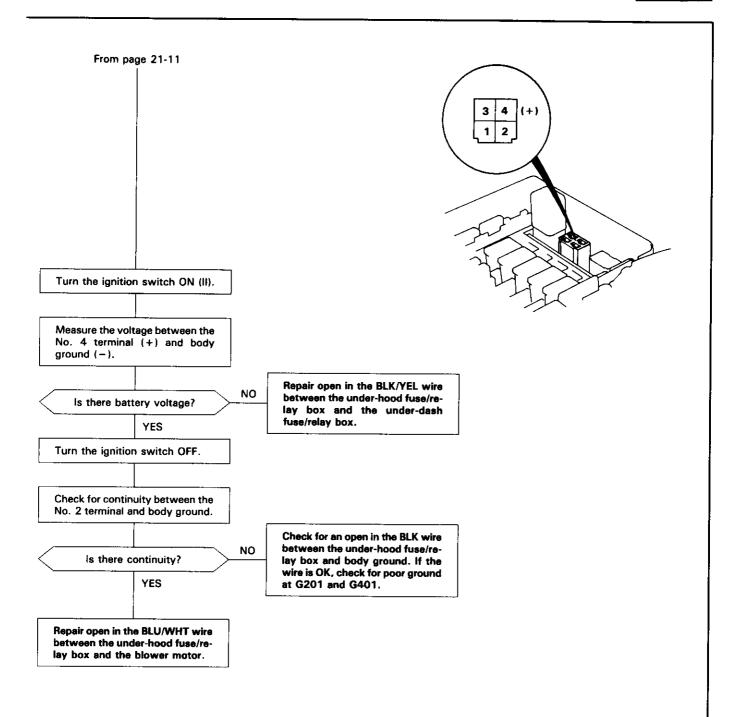
| SYMPTOM | | REMEDY |
|--|--|---|
| Hot air flow is low. | Blower motor runs, but one or more speeds are inoperative. | Follow the flowchart (see page 21-9). |
| | Blower runs properly. | Check for the following: • Clogged heater duct • Clogged heater outlet • Incorrect door position |
| No hot air flow | Blower motor does not run at all. | Follow the flowchart (see page 21-11). |
| | Blower motor runs. | Check for the following: Clogged heater duct Clogged blower outlet Clogged heater valve Faulty air mix door Heater valve cable adjustment (see page 21-27) Air mix control cable adjustment (see page 21-27) Faulty thermostat (see section 10) Clogged evaporator (with air conditioning) Frozen evaporator (with air conditioning) |
| Mode control motor inoperative. | does not run, or one or more modes are | Follow the flowchart (see page 21-14). |
| Recirculation control and RECIRCULATE. | door does not change between FRESH | Follow the flowchart (see page 21-17). |



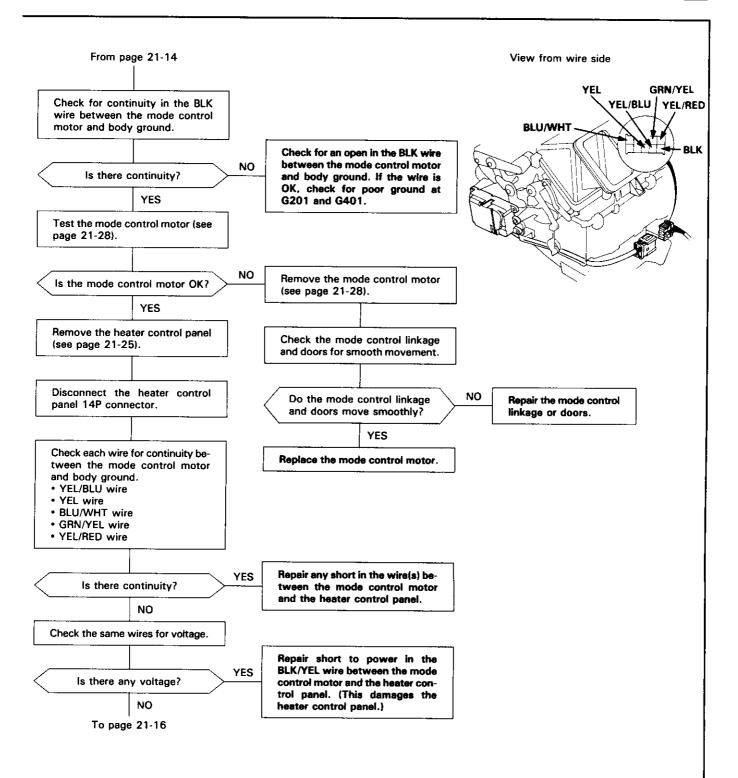




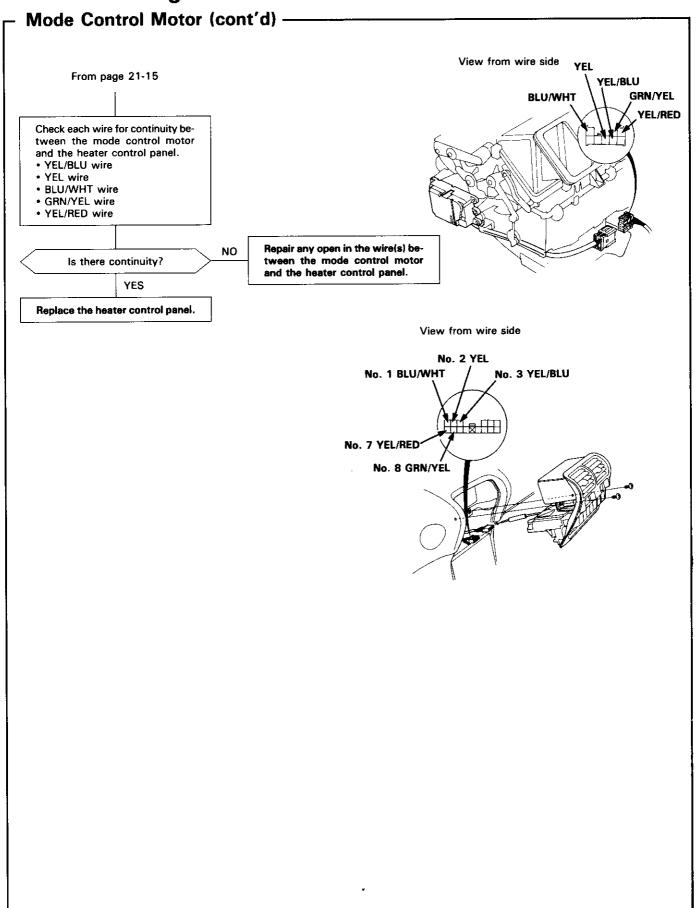




Mode Control Motor Mode control motor does not run, or one or more mode are inoperative. View from wire side BLK/YEL(+) Disconnect the mode control motor 8P connector. Turn the ignition switch ON (II). Measure the voltage between the BLK/YEL wire terminal (+) and body ground (-). Repair open in the BLK/YEL wire NO between the under-dash fuse/re-Is there battery voltage? lay box and the mode control motor. YES Turn the ignition switch OFF. To page 21-15



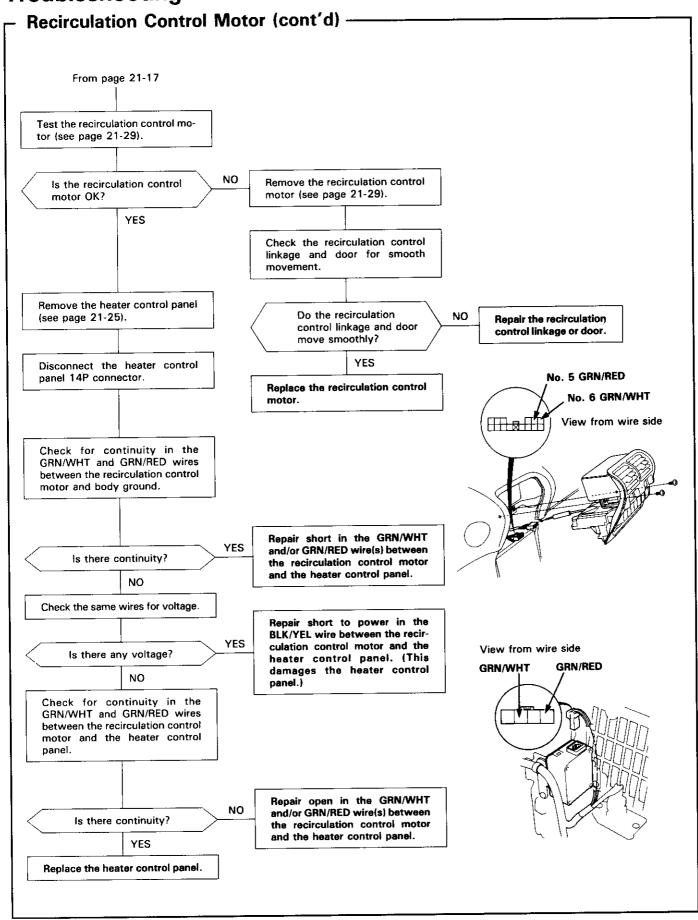
(cont'd)





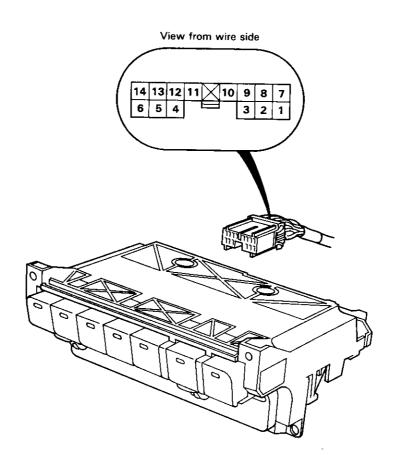
- Recirculation Control Motor -Recirculation control door does not change between FRESH and RECIRCULATE. View from wire side BLK/YEL(+) Disconnect the recirculation control motor 4P connector. Turn the ignition switch ON (II). Measure the voltage between the BLK/YEL wire terminal (+) and body ground (-). Repair open in the BLK/YEL wire NO between the under-dash fuse/re-Is there battery voltage? lay box and the recirculation control motor. YES Turn the ignition switch OFF. To page 21-18

(cont'd)





Heater Control Panel Input/Output Signals -



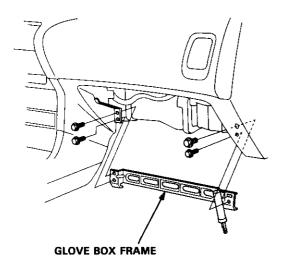
| No. | Wire Color | Signal | | No. | Wire Color | Signal | - |
|-----|------------|-------------|--------|-----|------------|--------------------------|--------|
| 1 | BLU/WHT | HEAT | INPUT | 8 | GRN/YEL | HEAT/VENT | INPUT |
| 2 | YEL | HEAT/DEF | INPUT | 9 | RED/BLK | COMBINATION LIGHT SWITCH | INPUT |
| 3 | YEL/BLU | DEF | INPUT | 10 | RED | BRIGHTNESS CONTROLLER | OUTPUT |
| 4 | BLK | GROUND | OUTPUT | 11 | BLU/RED | A/C THERMOSTAT | INPUT |
| 5 | GRN/RED | RECIRCULATE | INPUT | 12 | GRN | HEATER FAN SWITCH | OUTPUT |
| 6 | GRN/WHT | FRESH | INPUT | 13 | | | |
| 7 | YEL/RED | VENT | INPUT | 14 | BLK/YEL | IG2 | INPUT |

Blower Unit

- Replacement

NOTE: The blower motor, recirculation control motor and blower resistor can be replaced without removing the blower unit (see page 21-21).

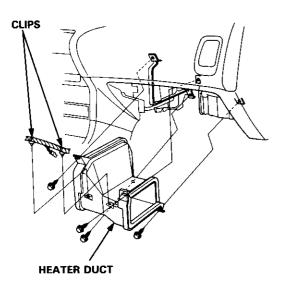
- 1. Remove the glove box (see section 20).
- 2. Remove the four bolts and the glove box frame.



Without Air Conditioning

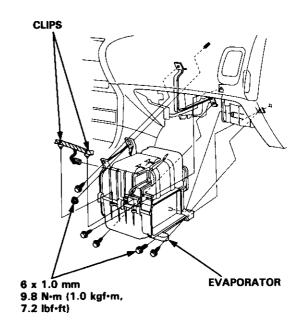
3-a. Remove the wire harness clips from the heater duct.

Remove the four self-tapping screws and the heater duct.

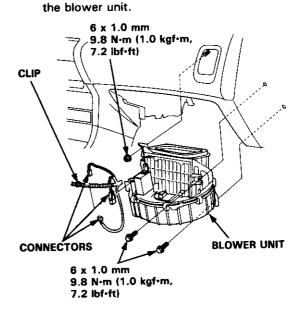


With Air Conditioning

3-b. Remove the evaporator (see page 22-26).



- Disconnect the connectors from the blower motor, blower resistor and the recirculation control motor.
- Remove the wire harness clip from the recirculation control motor, and release the wire harness from the clamp on the blower unit.
 Remove the two mounting bolts, mounting nut and

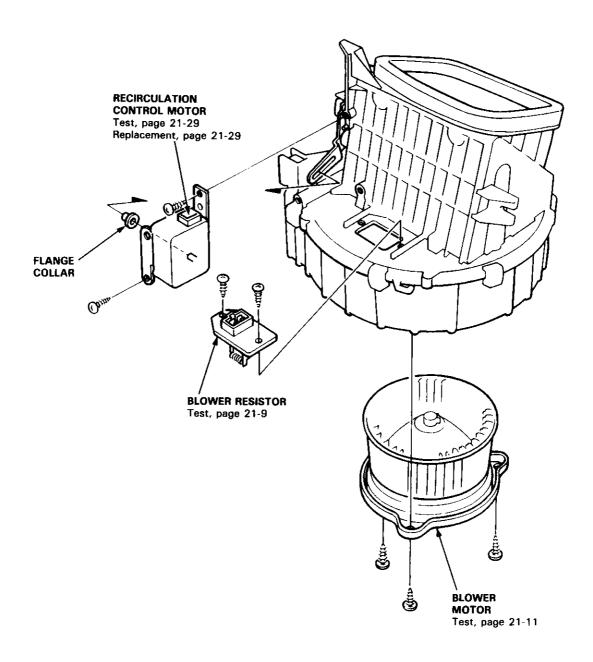


6. Install in the reverse order of removal, and make sure there are no air leaks.

Overhaul

NOTE:

- Before reassembly, make sure that the recirculation control door and linkage move smoothly without binding.
- When reattaching the recirculation control motor, make sure its positioning will not allow the recirculation control door
 to be pulled too far. Attach the recirculation control motor and all links, then connect power and ground, and watch
 the movement of the recirculation control door.

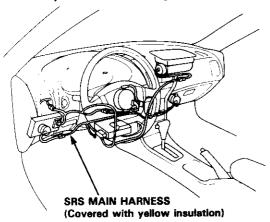


Heater Unit

- Replacement

CAUTION:

- All SRS electrical wiring harnesses are covered with yellow insulation.
- Before disconnecting any part of the SRS wire harness, connect the short connector(s).
- Replace the entire affected SRS harness assembly if it has an open circuit or damaged wiring.



NOTE: The original radio has a coded theft protection circuit. Be sure to get the customer's code number before

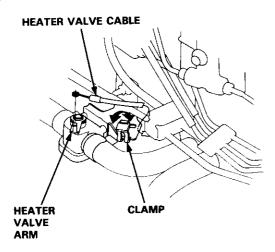
- disconnecting the battery.
- removing the No. 32 (7.5 A) fuse from the underhood fuse/relay box.
- removing the radio.

After service, reconnect power to the radio and turn it on. When the word "CODE" is displayed, enter the customer's 5-digit code to restore radio operation.

1. When the engine is cool, drain the engine coolant from the radiator (see section 10).

A WARNING Do not remove the radiator cap when the engine is hot; the engine coolant is under pressure and could severely scald you.

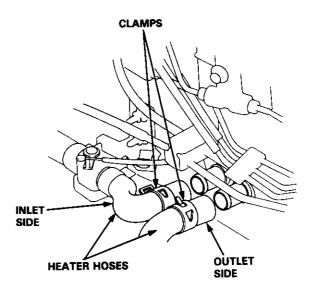
2. Snap open the clamp and disconnect the heater valve cable from the heater valve arm.



3. Disconnect the heater hoses from the heater unit.

CAUTION: Engine coolant will damage paint. Quickly rinse any spilled engine coolant from painted surfaces.

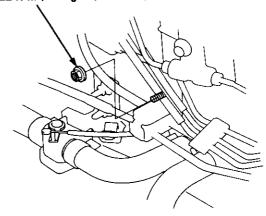
NOTE: Engine coolant will run out when the hoses are disconnected, drain it into a clean drip pan.



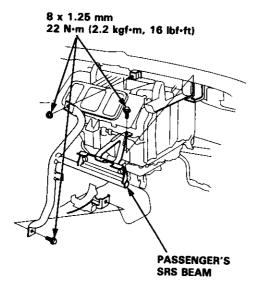
4. Remove the mounting nut from the heater unit.

NOTE: When removing the mounting nut, take care not to damage or bend the fuel pipes, brake pipes, etc.

8 x 1,25 mm 22 N•m (2.2 kgf•m, 16 lbf•ft)

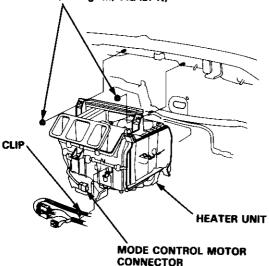


- 5. Remove the dashboard (see section 20).
- Remove the heater duct (see page 21-20) or the evaporator (see page 22-26).
- 7. Remove the two bolts, nut and the passenger's SRS beam.



 Disconnect the mode control motor connector, and remove the wire harness clip from the heater unit.
 Remove the two mounting nuts and the heater unit.





- 9. Install in the reverse order of removal, and:
 - apply sealant to the grommets.
 - do not interchange the inlet and outlet hoses.
 Make sure that the hose clamps are secure.
 - loosen the bleed bolt on the engine and refill the radiator and coolant reservoir with the proper engine coolant mixture (see section 10).
 Tighten the bleed bolt when all the trapped air has escaped and engine coolant begins to flow from it (see section 10).
 - connect all cables and make sure they are properly adjusted (see page 21-27).

Heater Unit

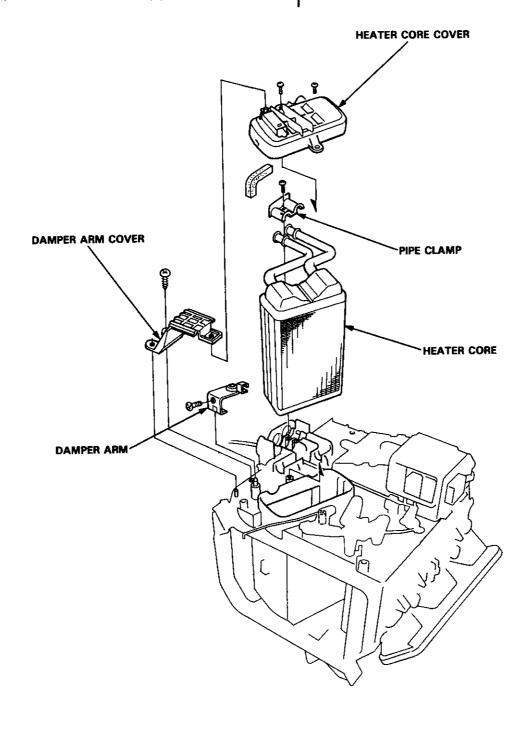
- Overhaul

- 1. Remove the screw and the damper arm cover.
- 2. Disconnect the link from the damper arm, and remove the screw and the damper arm.
- 3. Remove the two screws and the heater core cover.
- 4. Remove the screw and the pipe clamp.

5. Pull out the heater core.

NOTE: Be careful not to bend the inlet and outlet pipes during heater core removal.

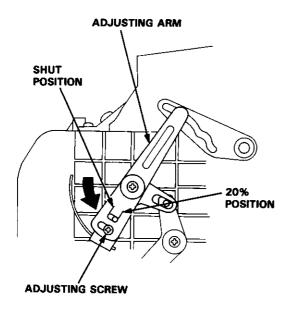
6. Assemble in the reverse order of disassembly.





Defroster Door Adjustment

- 1. Set the mode control switch on HEAT.
- 2. Loosen the adjusting screw.
- Turn the adjusting arm to the left, as shown, so that there will be no heat leakage from the defroster door.
- 4. Tighten the adjusting screw.

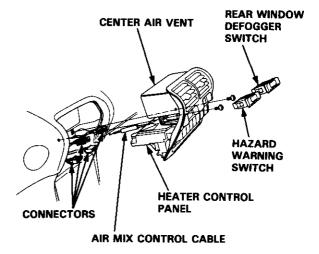


Heater Control Panel

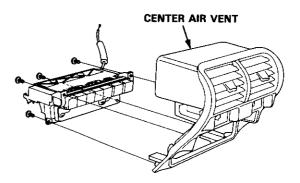
Replacement

- 1. Disconnect the air mix control cable from the heater unit (see page 21-27).
- 2. Remove the rear window defogger switch and the hazard warning switch.
- Remove the two self-tapping screws, then pull out the heater control panel and the center air vent. Disconnect the connectors, and remove the heater control panel and the center air vent.

NOTE: The locking tabs of the hazard warning switch and heater control panel connectors are on the bottom.



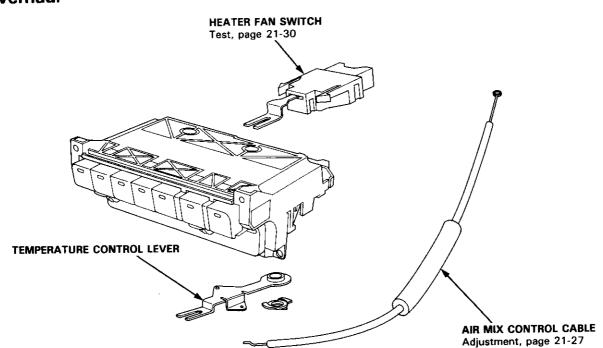
 Remove the four self-tapping screws and the center air vent.



 Install in the reverse order of removal, and adjust the air mix control cable at the heater unit (see page 21-27). If necessary, adjust the heater valve cable (see page 21-27).

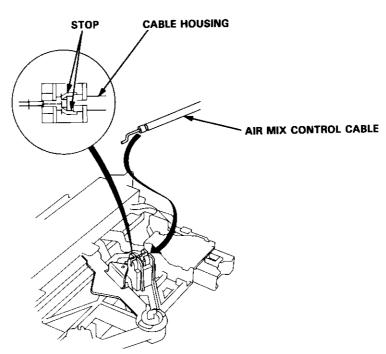
Heater Control Panel

- Overhaul



Air Mix Control Cable Replacement

- 1. Remove the air mix control cable.
- 2. Hook the tip of the new air mix control cable to the temperature control lever, and push the cable housing until it is locked.

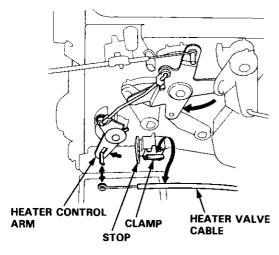


NOTE: After assembly, check that the temperature control lever slides smoothly through the full stroke from right to left.

Heater Valve Cable

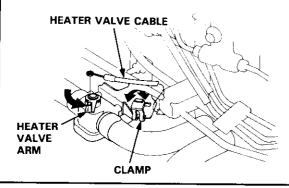
- Adjustment

- Disconnect the heater valve cable from the heater valve arm and the clamp, and from the heater control arm and the clamp.
- 2. Set the temperature control lever to MAX. HEAT.
- Turn the heater control arm as shown, and connect the end of the heater valve cable to the heater control arm.
- 4. Gently slide the heater valve cable housing back from the end enough to take up any slack in the heater valve cable, but not enough to make the temperature control lever move. Hold the end of the heater valve cable housing against the stop, then snap the heater valve cable housing into the clamp.



- Turn the heater valve arm as shown, and connect the end of the heater valve cable to the heater valve arm.
- Gently slide the heater valve cable housing back from the end enough to take up any slack in the heater valve cable, but not enough to make the temperature control lever move, then snap the heater valve cable housing into the clamp.

NOTE: The air mix control cable should always be adjusted whenever the heater valve cable has been disconnected.



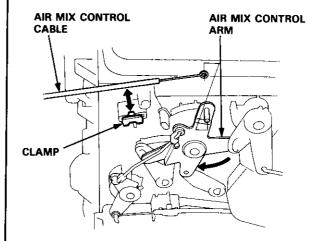
Air Mix Control Cable



Adjustment

- 1. Disconnect the air mix control cable from the air mix control arm and the clamp.
- 2. Set the temperature control lever to MAX, HEAT.
- Turn the air mix control arm as shown, and connect the end of the air mix control cable to the air mix control arm.
- 4. Gently slide the air mix control cable housing back from the end enough to take up any slack in the air mix control cable, but not enough to make the temperature control lever move, then snap the air mix control cable housing into the clamp.

NOTE: The heater valve cable should always be adjusted whenever the air mix control cable has been disconnected.



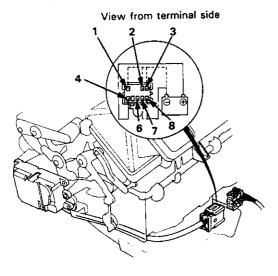
Mode Control Motor

-Test

- Connect battery power to the No. 4 terminal of the mode control motor and connect ground to the No. 8 terminal.
- 2. Using a jumper wire, short the No. 8 terminal individually to the No. 1, 2, 3, 6 and 7 terminals, in that order.
 - Each time the short circuit is made, the mode control motor should run smoothly and stop.

NOTE: If the mode control motor does not run when shorting the first terminal, short that terminal again after shorting the other terminals.

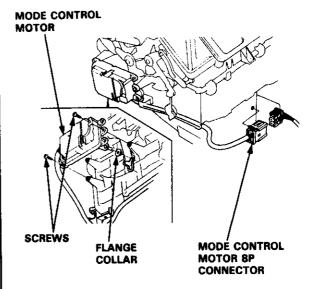
The mode control motor is normal if it runs when shorting the first terminal again.



If the mode control motor does not run in step 2, remove it, and check the mode control linkage and doors for smooth movement. If the mode control linkage and doors move smoothly, replace the mode control motor.

Replacement

- 1. Disconnect the mode control motor 8P connector, and remove it from the heater unit.
- 2. Remove the two screws, mode control motor, and flange collar.



 Install in the reverse order of removal. After installation, make sure the mode control motor runs smoothly.

Recirculation Control Motor

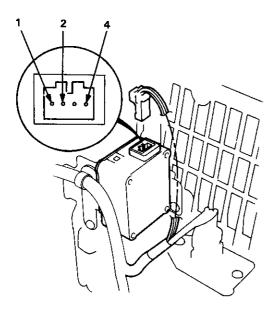
1

- Test -

- Connect battery power to the No. 1 terminal of the recirculation control motor, and connect ground to the No. 2 and No. 4 terminals; the recirculation control motor should run smoothly.
- Disconnect the ground from the No. 2 or No. 4 terminals; the recirculation control motor should stop at FRESH or RECIRCULATE.

CAUTION: Never connect the battery in the opposite direction.

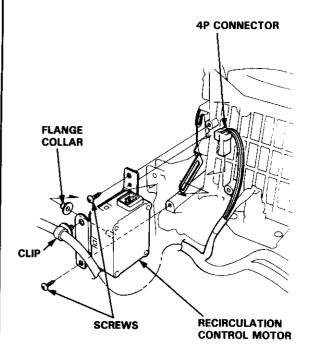
NOTE: Don't cycle the recirculation control motor for a long time.



 If the recirculation control motor does not run in step 1, remove it, and check the recirculation control linkage and door for smooth movement. If the recirculation control linkage and door move smoothly, replace the recirculation control motor.

Replacement

- Disconnect the 4P connector from the recirculation control motor, and remove the wire harness clip from it.
- 2. Remove the two screws, recirculation control motor and flange collar.

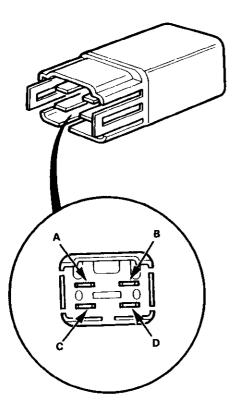


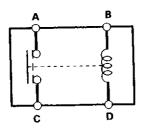
 Install in the reverse order of removal. After installation, make sure the recirculation control motor runs smoothly.

- Test

There should be continuity between the A and C terminals when power and ground are connected to the B and D terminals.

There should be no continuity when power is disconnected.



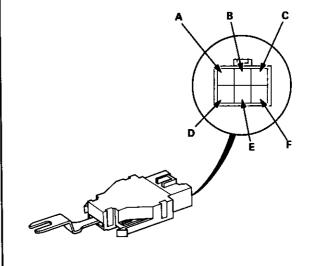


Heater Fan Switch

- Test -

Check for continuity between the terminals according to the table below.

| Terminal Position | Α | F | D | В | E | С |
|-------------------|----|---|----|----|-----|---|
| OFF | | | | | .,. | |
| 1 | 0 | 0 | -0 | | | |
| 2 | 0 | 0 | | -0 | | |
| 3 | 0- | 0 | | - | 0 | |
| 4 | 0 | 0 | | | | 0 |

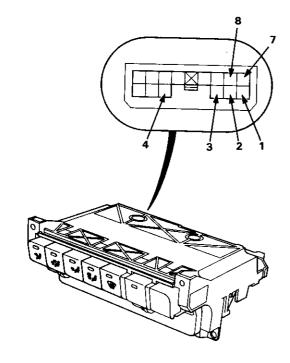


Mode Control Switch

- Test

Check for continuity between the terminals according to the table below.

| Terminal Position | 4 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 7 | 8 |
|----------------------|----|---|----|---|----|---|
| Heat | 0 | 0 | | | | |
| Heat/Def | 0 | | -0 | | - | |
| Def | 0 | | | - | | |
| Vent | 0 | | | | -0 | |
| Heat/Vent | 0- | | | | | |



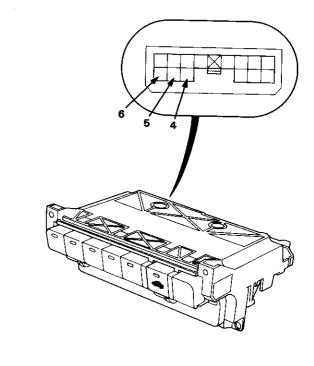
Recirculation Control Switch



- Test -

Check for continuity between the terminals according to the table below.

| Terminal Position | 4 | 5 | 6 |
|-------------------|----|---------------|---|
| Fresh | 0- | | 0 |
| Recirculate | 0 | $\overline{}$ | |



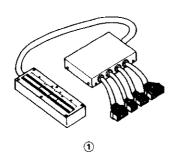
Air Conditioning

| Special Tools | 22-2 |
|----------------------------------|-------|
| Illustrated Index | 22-3 |
| Wiring/Connector Locations | 22-4 |
| Circuit Diagram | 22-5 |
| Description | 22-6 |
| Troubleshooting | |
| Reference Chart | 22-7 |
| Flowcharts | |
| Radiator Fan | 22-8 |
| Condenser Fan | 22-10 |
| Engine Coolant Temperature | |
| (ECT) Switch | 22-12 |
| Both Fans | 22-13 |
| Compressor | 22-14 |
| A/C System | 22-16 |
| A/C Thermostat | |
| Test | 22-19 |
| Relays | |
| Test | 22-19 |
| Diode | |
| Test | 22-20 |
| A/C Switch | |
| Test | 22-20 |
| A/C Service Tips and Precautions | 22-21 |
| A/C System Service | |
| Recovery | 22-22 |
| Pressure Test Chart | 22-23 |
| Performance Test | 22-24 |

| *Evaporator | |
|--------------------------|-------|
| Replacement | 22-26 |
| Overhaul | 22-27 |
| Compressor | |
| Description | 22-28 |
| Illustrated Index | 22-29 |
| Replacement | 22-30 |
| Clutch Inspection | 22-32 |
| Clutch Overhaul | 22-33 |
| Relief Valve Replacement | 22-34 |
| A/C Compressor Belt | |
| Replacement | 22-35 |
| Adjustment | 22-36 |
| Condenser | |
| Replacement | 22-37 |
| A/C System Service | |
| Evacuation | 22-38 |
| Charging | |
| Leak Test | |
| | |

^{*:} Read SRS precautions before working in this area.

| Ref. No. | Tool Number | Description | Qty. | Page Reference |
|----------|-----------------|--------------------|------|----------------|
| ① | 07LAJ - PT3010A | Test Harness | 1 | 22-15 |
| ② | 07JGG - 001010A | Belt Tension Gauge | 1 | 22-36 |





Illustrated Index



CAUTION:

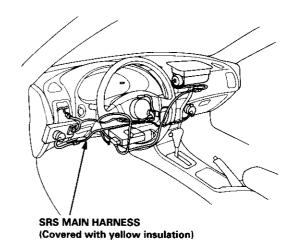
- All SRS electrical wiring harnesses are covered with yellow insulation.
- Before disconnecting any part of the SRS wire harness, connect the short connector(s).
- Replace the entire affected SRS harness assembly if it has an open circuit or damaged wiring.

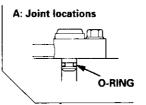
NOTE: The original radio has a coded theft protection circuit. Be sure to get the customer's code number before

- disconnecting the battery.
- removing the No. 32 (7.5 A) fuse from the underhood fuse/relay box.
- removing the radio.

After service, reconnect power to the radio and turn it on. When the word "CODE" is displayed, enter the customer's 5-digit code to restore radio operation.

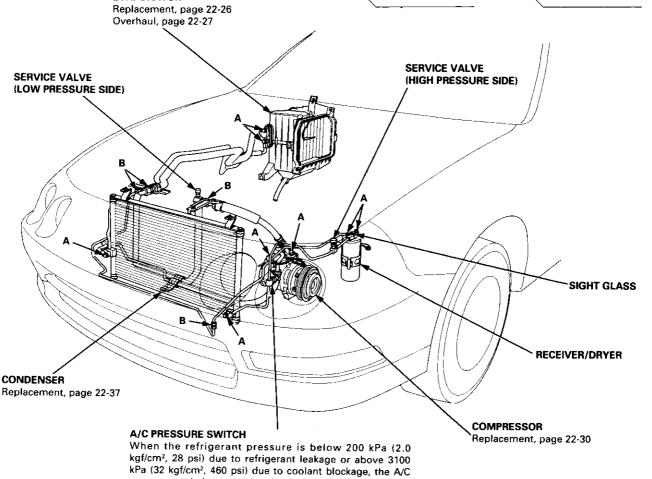
EVAPORATOR





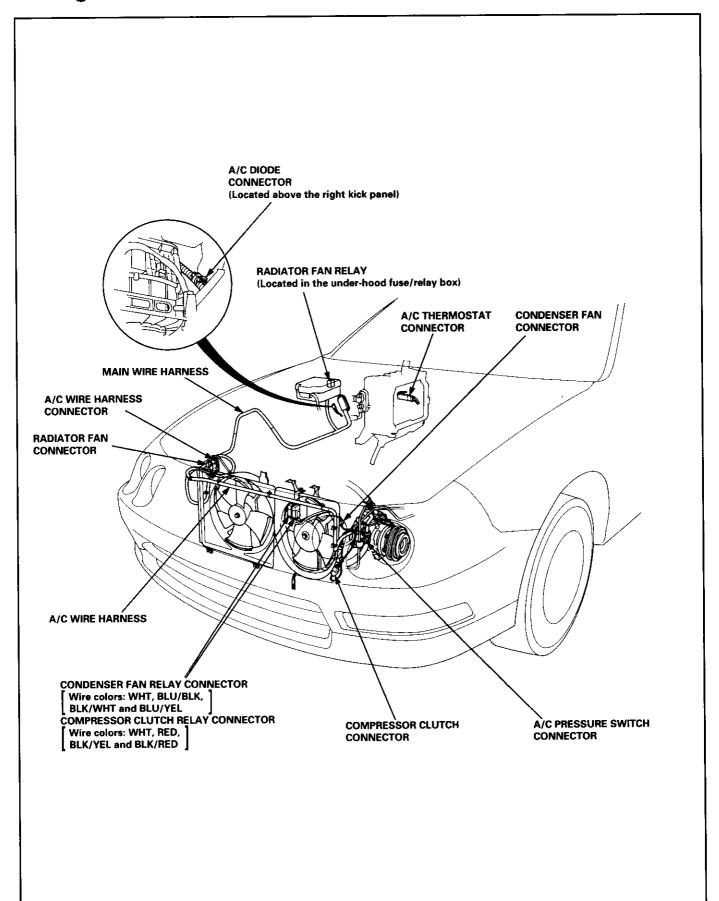
B: Joint locations

O-RING



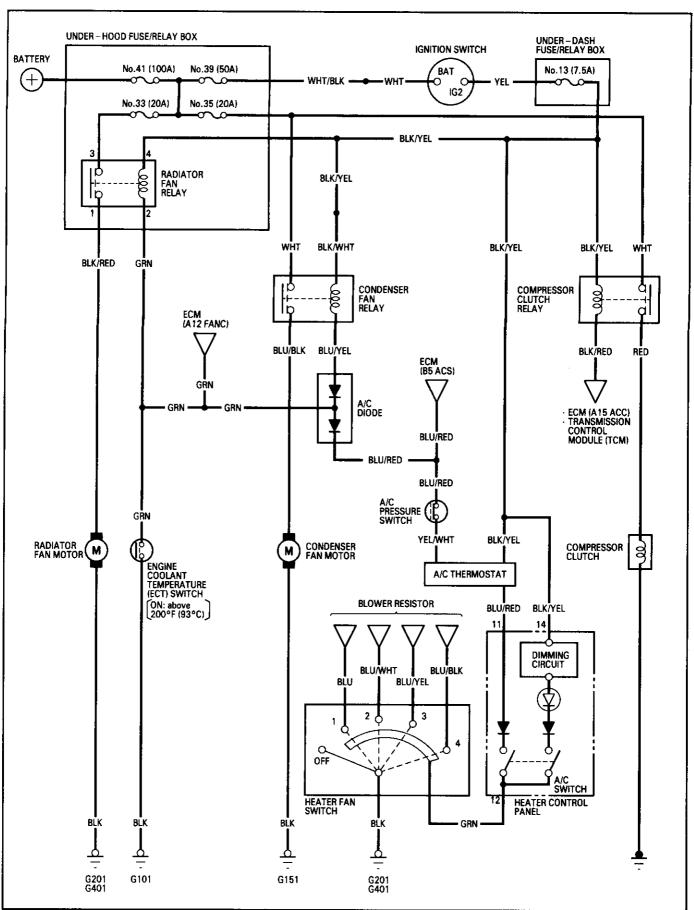
pressure switch opens the circuit to the A/C switch and stops the air conditioning to protect the compressor.

Wiring/Connector Locations



Circuit Diagram



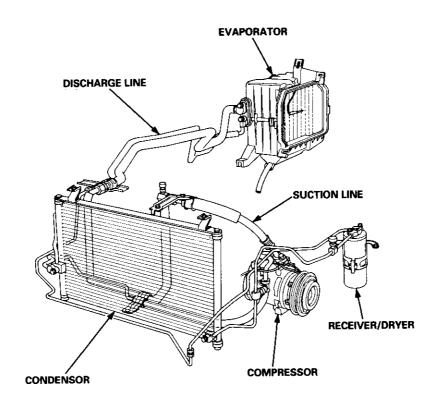


Description

Outline

The air conditioner system delivers cooled air into the passenger compartment by circulating refrigerant through the system as shown below.

High temperature/ High temperature/ Traps debris High temperature/ and removes high pressure liquid high pressure liquid high pressure gas Radiation of heat moisture Suction and compression RECEIVER/DRYER ■ ►CONDENSER COMPRESSOR = More liquidified Less moisturized low pressure vapor low pressure vapor Absorption of heat EXPANSION VALVE ⊒EVAPORATOR <\;



This car uses HFC-134a (R-134a) refrigerant which does not contain chlorofluorocarbons. Pay attention to the following service items:

- Do not mix refrigerants CFC-12 (R-12) and HFC-134a (R-134a). They are not compatible.
- Use only the recommended polyalkyleneglycol (PAG) refrigerant oil (ND-OIL 8: P/N 38899-PR7-A01) designed for the R-134a compressor. Intermixing the recommended (PAG) refrigerant oil with any other refrigerant oil will result in com-
- All A/C system parts (compressor, discharge line, suction line, evaporator, condenser, receiver/dryer, expansion valve, O-rings for joints) have to be proper for refrigerant R-134a. Do not confuse with R-12 parts.
- Use a halogen gas leak detector designed for refrigerant R-134a.
- R-12 and R-134a refrigerant servicing equipment are not interchangeable. Only use a Recovery/Recycling/Charging System that is U.L.-listed and is certified to meet the requirements of SAE J2210 to service R-134a air conditioning sys-
- Always recover the refrigerant R-134a with an approved Recover/Recycling/Charging System before disconnecting any A/C fitting.

1

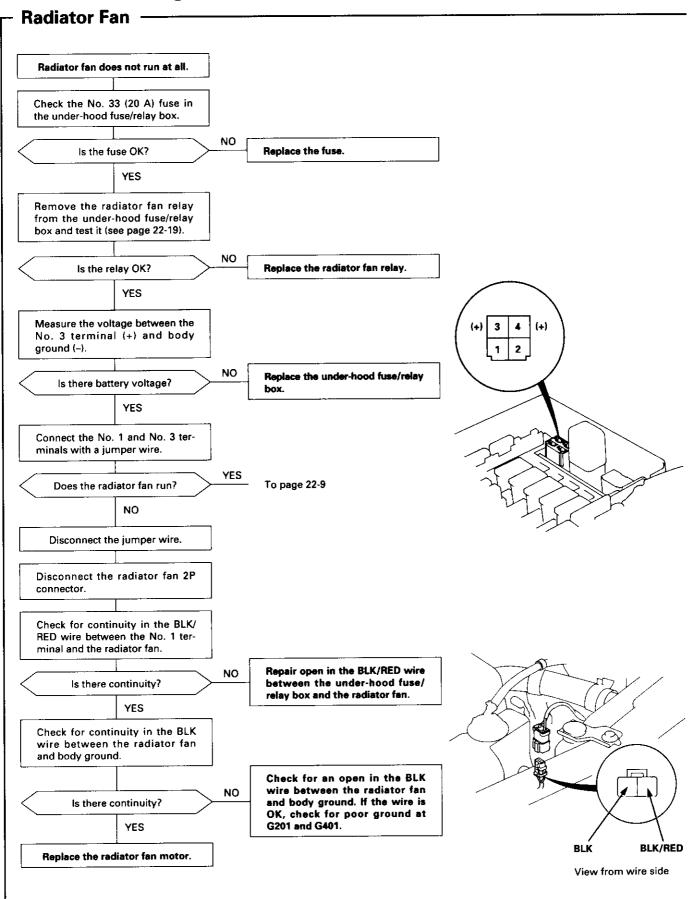
- Reference Chart

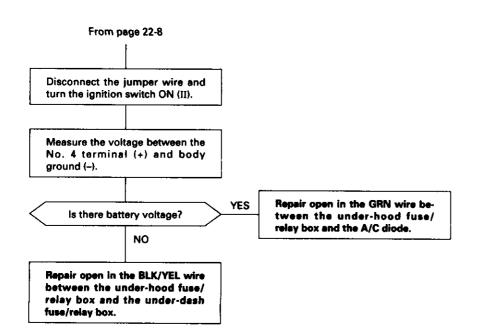
- Any abnormality must be corrected before continuing the test.
- · Because of the precise measurements needed, use a multimeter when testing.

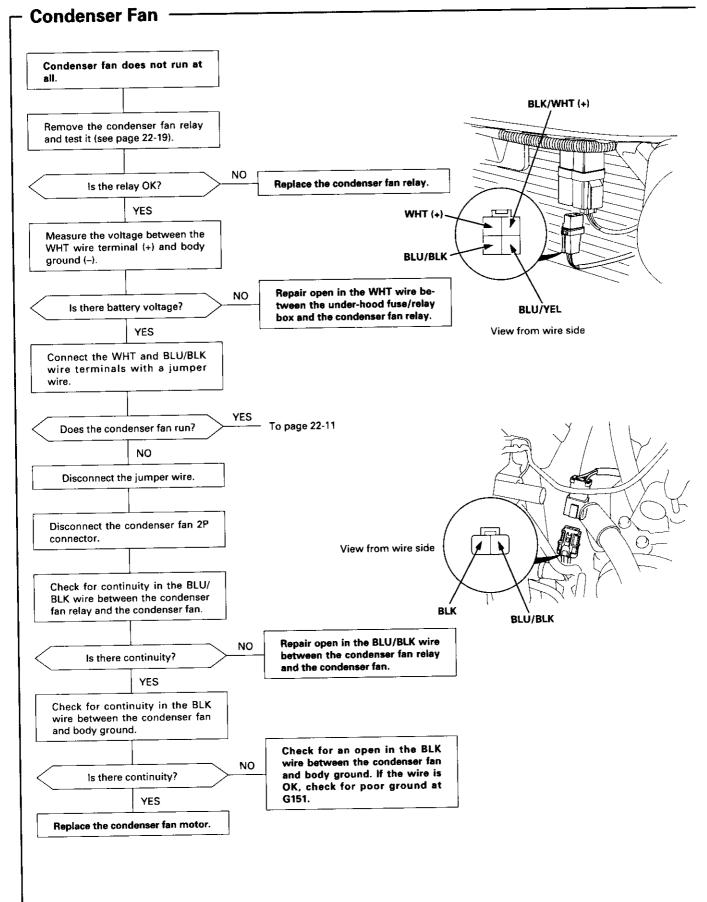
Before performing any troubleshooting procedures check:

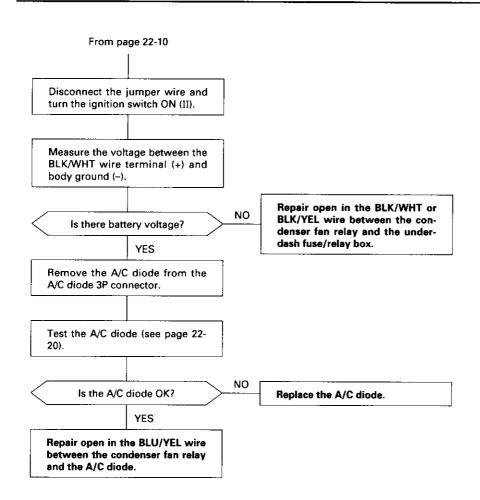
- Fuses *1 No. 35 (20 A), *1 No. 33 (20 A), *2 No. 13 (7.5 A)
- Grounds No. G401, G201, G151, G101
- · Cleanliness and tightness of all connectors
- *1: In the under-hood fuse/relay box
- *2: In the under-dash fuse/relay box

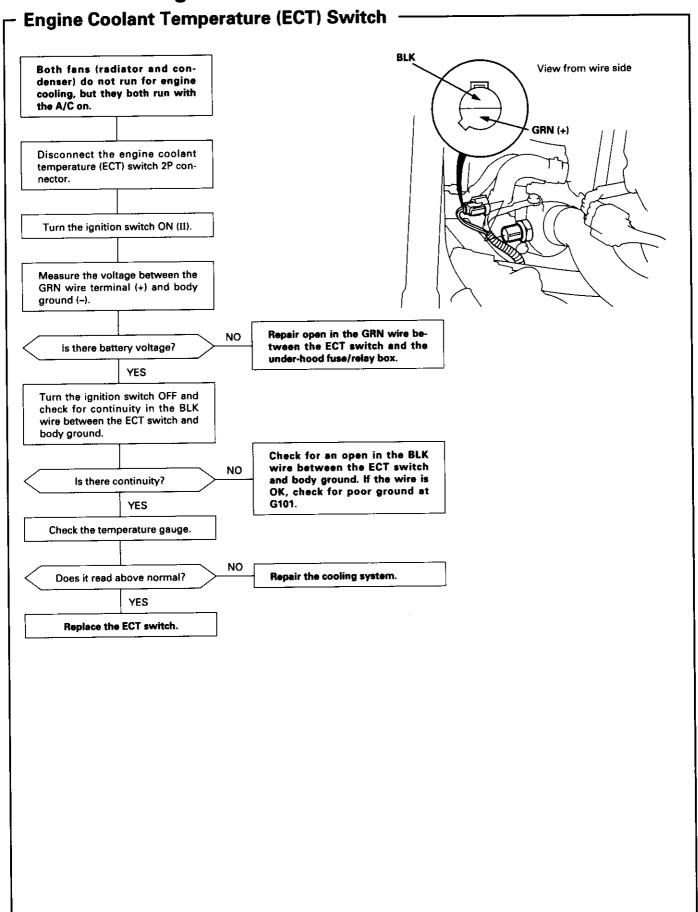
| SYMPTOM | REMEDY | | | |
|--|---|--|--|--|
| Radiator fan does not run at all. | Perform the procedures in the flowchart (see page 22-8). | | | |
| Condenser fan does not run at all. | Perform the procedures in the flowchart (see page 22-10). | | | |
| Both fans (radiator and condenser) do not run for engine cooling, but they both run with the A/C on. | Perform the procedures in the flowchart (see page 22-12). | | | |
| Both fans do not run at all. | Perform the procedures in the flowchart (see page 22-13). | | | |
| Compressor clutch does not engage. | Perform the procedures in the flowchart (see page 22-14). | | | |
| A/C system does not come on (compressor and both fans). | Perform the procedures in the flowchart (see page 22-16). | | | |



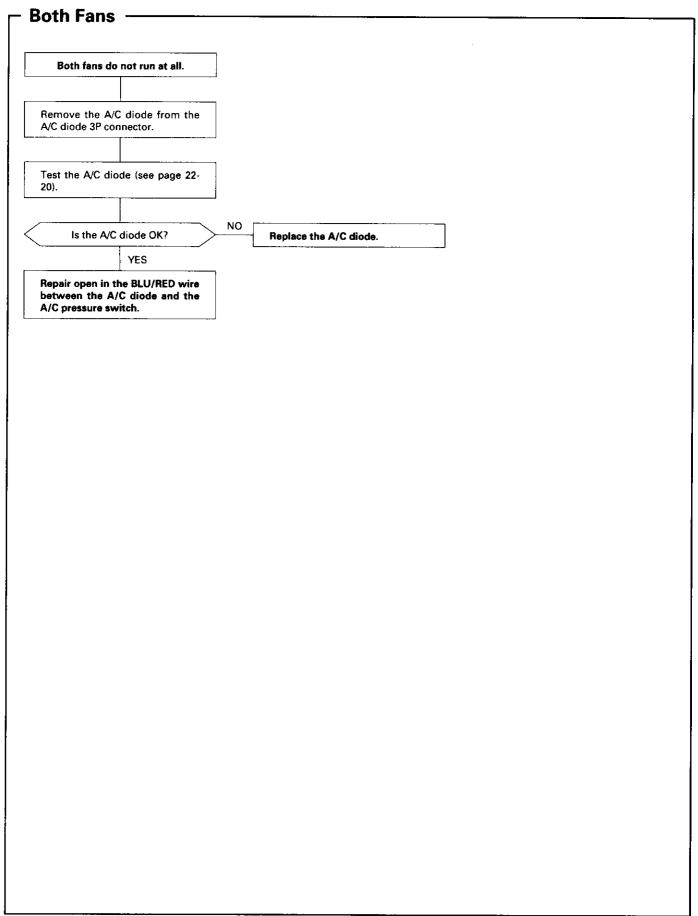


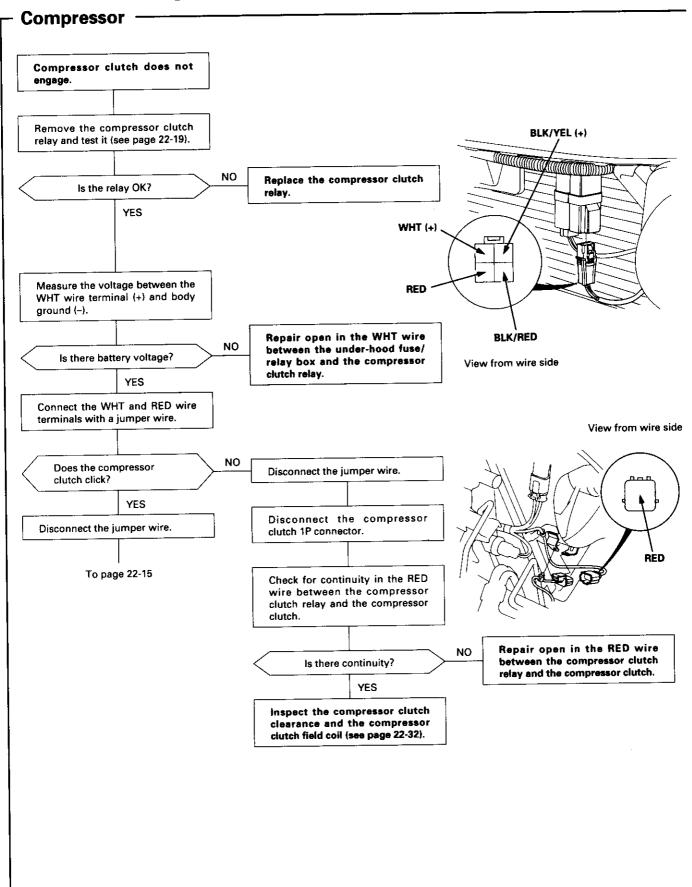


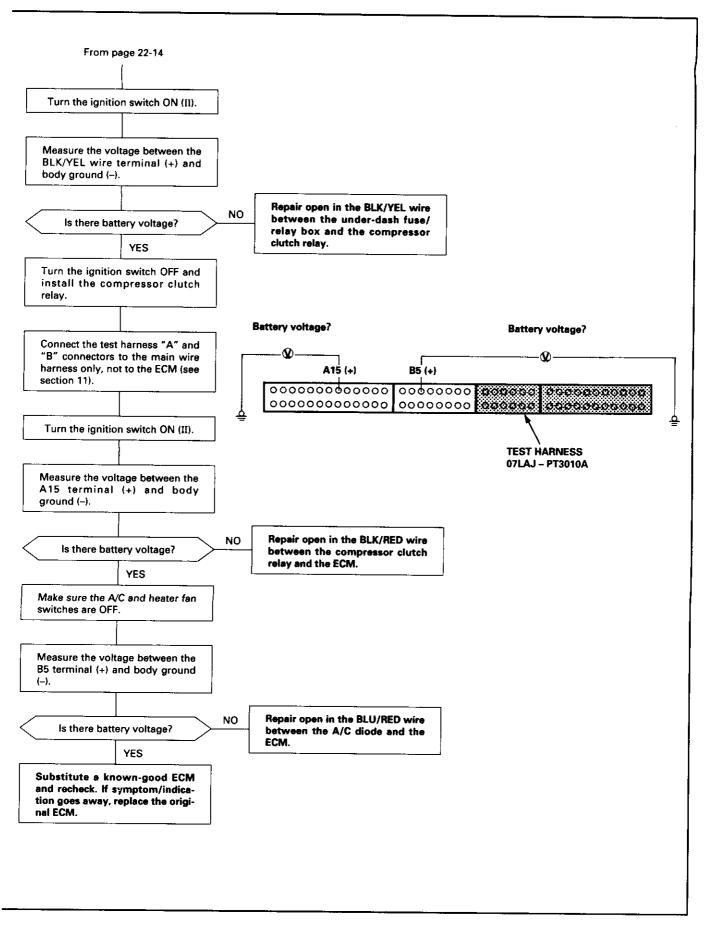


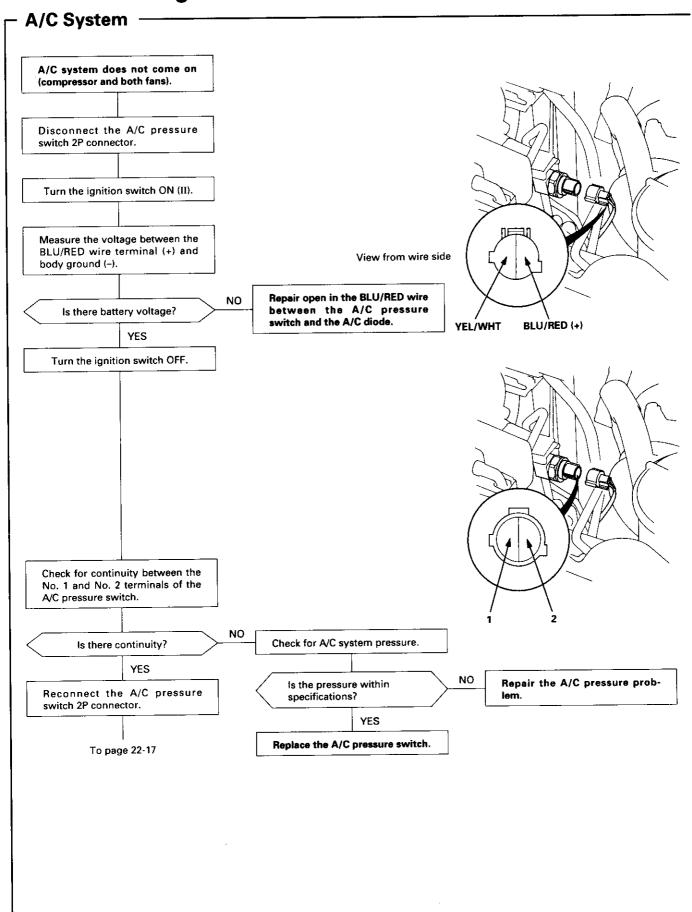


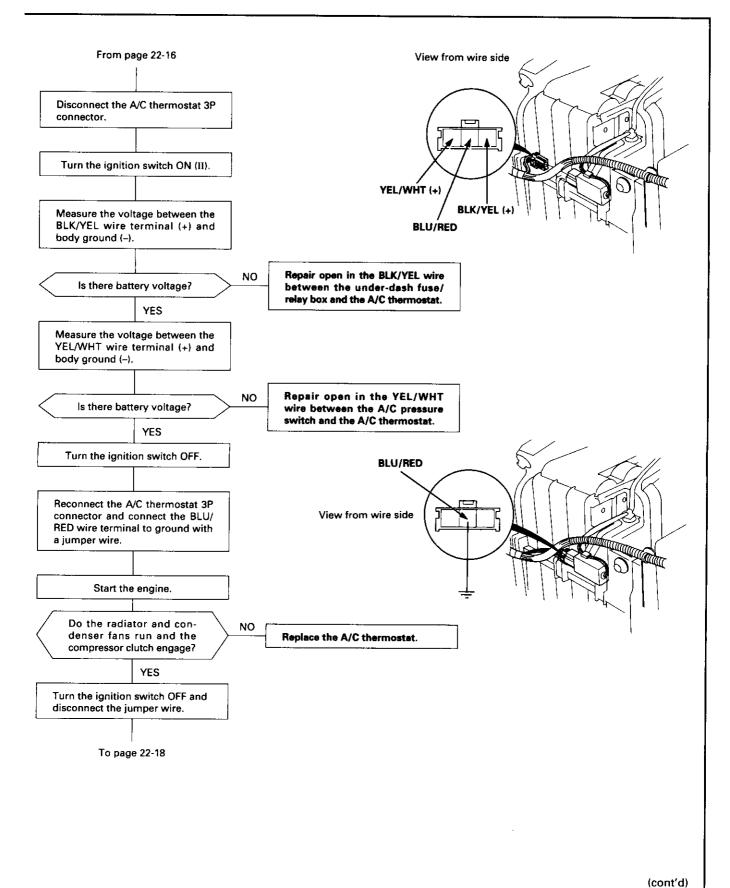


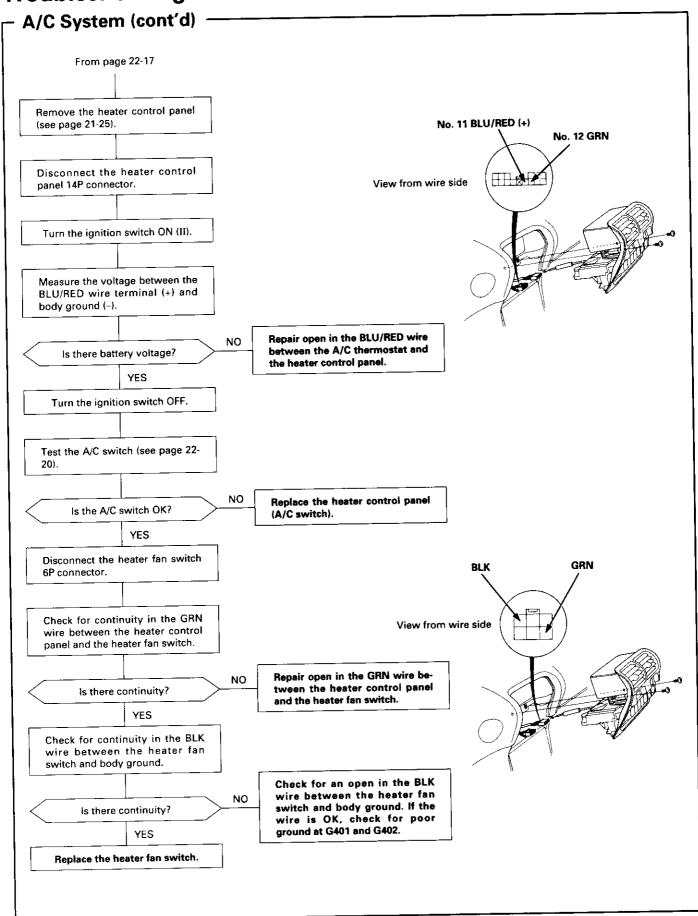












Test -

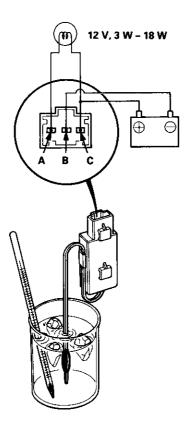
Connect battery power to terminal C and ground terminal B, and connect a test light between terminals A and C.

NOTE: Use a 12 V, 3 W - 18 W test light.

Dip the A/C thermostat into a cup filled with ice water, and check the test light.

The light should go off at 37°F (3°C) or less, and should come on at 39°F (4°C) or more.

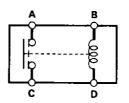
If the light doesn't come on and go off as specified, replace the A/C thermostat.



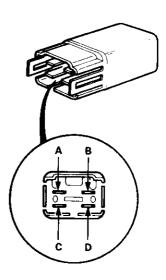
- Test

There should be continuity between the A and C terminals when power and ground are connected to the B and D terminals.

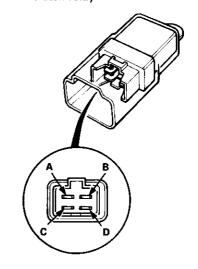
There should be no continuity when power is disconnected.



Radiator fan relay



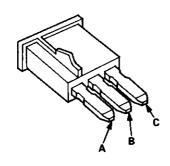
- Condenser fan relay
- Compressor clutch relay

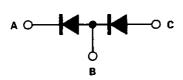


- Test

NOTE: The diode is designed to pass current in one direction while blocking it in the opposite direction. Use an analog ohmmeter, or a digital ohmmeter equipped with a diode tester.

Check for current flow in both directions between the A and B, and B and C terminals. There should be current flow in only one direction.





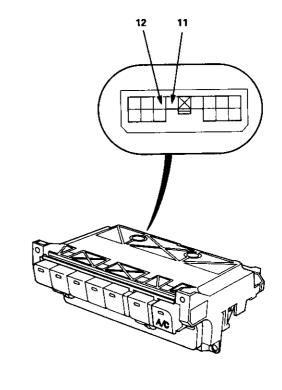
A/C Switch

- Test -

NOTE: The A/C switch contains a diode. Use an analog ohmmeter, or a digital ohmmeter equipped with a diode tester.

Check for current flow in both directions between terminals 11 and 12. There should be current flow in only one direction.

| Terminal Position | 11 | 12 |
|-------------------|------------|----|
| ON | O → | 0 |
| OFF | | |



A/C Service Tips and Precautions



The air conditioner system uses HFC-134a (R-134a) refrigerant and polyalkyleneglycol (PAG) refrigerant oil (ND-OłL 8: P/N 38899 – PR7 – A01), which are not compatible with CFC-12 (R-12) refrigerant and mineral oil. Do not use R-12 refrigerant or mineral oil in this system, and do not attempt to use R-12 servicing equipment; damage to the air conditioner system or your servicing equipment will result.

Only use service equipment that is U.L.-listed and is certified to meet the requirements of SAE J2210 to remove R-134a from the air conditioner system.

CAUTION: Exposure to air conditioner refrigerant and lubricant vapor or mist can irritate eyes, nose and throat. Avoid breathing the air conditioner refrigerant and lubricant vapor or mist.

If accidental system discharge occurs, ventilate work area before resuming service.

R-134a service equipment or vehicle air conditioner systems should not be pressure tested or leak tested with compressed air.

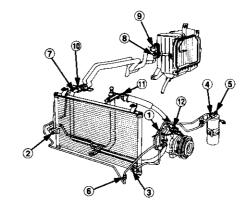
AWARNING Some mixtures of air and R-134a have been shown to be combustible at elevated pressures and can result in fire or explosion causing injury or property damage. Never use compressed air to pressure test R-134a service equipment or vehicle air conditioner systems.

Additional health and safety information may be obtained from the refrigerant and lubricant manufacturers.

- 1. Always disconnect the negative cable from the battery whenever replacing air conditioning parts.
- 2. Keep moisture and dust out of the system. When disconnecting any lines, plug or cap the fittings immediately; don't remove the caps or plugs until just before you reconnect each line.
- 3. Before connecting any hose or line, apply a few drops of refrigerant oil (ND-OIL 8: P/N 38899 PR7 A01) to the O-ring.
- 4. When tightening or loosening a fitting, use a second wrench to support the matching fitting.
- 5. When recovering the system, use a R-134a refrigerant Recovery/Recycling/Charging System; don't release refrigerant into the atmosphere.
- Add refrigerant oil (ND-OIL 8: P/N 38899 PR7 A01) after replacing the following parts: NOTE:
 - To avoid contamination, do not return the oil to the container once dispensed, and never mix it with other refrigerant oils.
 - Immediately after using the oil, replace the cap on the container and seal it to avoid moisture absorption.
 - Do not spill the refrigerant oil on the car; it may damage the paint; if the refrigerant oil contacts the paint, wash it
 off immediately.

| Condenser |
|--|
| Evaporator 40 mℓ (1 1/3 fl·oz, 1.4 lmp·oz) |
| Line or hose 10 mℓ (1/3 fl·oz, 0.4 lmp·oz) |
| Receiver/Dryer 10 mℓ (1/3 fl·oz, 0.4 lmp·oz) |
| Leakage repair 25 mℓ (5/6 fl·oz, 0.9 lmp·oz) |
| Compressor For compressor replace- |
| ment, subtract the volume of oil drained from the |
| removed compressor from 140 m ℓ (4 2/3 fl·oz, 4.9 |
| imp·oz), and drain the calculated volume of oil from |
| the new compressor: 140 m ℓ (4 2/3 fl·oz, 4.9 |
| imp·oz)- Volume of removed compressor = Volume |
| to drain from new compressor. |
| |

NOTE: Even if no oil is drained from the removed compressor, don't drain more than 50 m ℓ (1 2/3 fl·oz, 1.8 Imp ·oz) from the new compressor.



| ① Discharge hose to the compressor (6 x 1.0 mm) | |
|--|---------------------------------|
| ② Discharge hose to the condenser (6 x 1.0 mm) | |
| 3 Condenser pipe to the condenser (6 x 1.0 mm) | 9.8 N·m (1.0 kgf·m, 7.2 lbf·ft) |
| 4 Condenser pipe to the receiver/dryer (6 x 1.0 mm) | 9.8 N·m (1.0 kgf·m, 7.2 lbf·ft) |
| ⑤ Receiver pipe A to the receiver/dryer (6 x 1.0 mm) | 9.8 N·m (1.0 kgf·m, 7.2 lbf·ft) |
| 6 Receiver pipe A to the receiver pipe B | 13 N·m (1.3 kgf·m, 9.4 lbf·ft) |
| Receiver pipe B to the receiver pipe C | 13 N·m (1.3 kgf·m, 9.4 lbf·ft) |
| Receiver pipe C to the evaporator (6 x 1.0 mm) | 9.8 N·m (1.0 kgf·m, 7.2 lbf·ft) |
| Suction pipe B to the evaporator (6 x 1.0 mm) | 9.8 N·m (1.0 kgf·m, 7.2 lbf·ft) |
| Suction pipe A to the suction pipe B | 31 N·m (3.2 kgf·m, 23 lbf·ft) |
| ① Suction hose to the suction pipe A | 31 N·m (3.2 kgf·m, 23 lbf·ft) |
| ② Suction hose to the compressor (6 x 1.0 mm) | 9.8 N·m (1.0 kgf·m, 7.2 lbf·ft) |

A/C System Service

Recovery

Only use service equipment that is U.L.-listed and is certified to meet the requirements of SAE J2210 to remove HFC-134a (R-134a) from the air conditioner system.

CAUTION: Exposure to air conditioner refrigerant and lubricant vapor or mist can irritate eyes, nose and throat. Avoid breathing the air conditioner refrigerant and lubricant vapor or mist.

If accidental system discharge occurs, ventilate work area before resuming service.

R-134a service equipment or vehicle air conditioner systems should not be pressure tested or leak tested with compressed air.

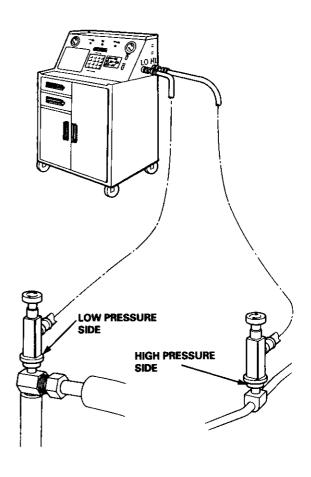
AWARNING Some mixtures of air and R-134a have been shown to be combustible at elevated pressures and can result in fire or explosion causing injury or property damage. Never use compressed air to pressure test R-134a service equipment or vehicle air conditioner systems.

Additional health and safety information may be obtained from the refrigerant and lubricant manufactures

- Connect a R-134a refrigerant Recovery/Recycling/ Charging System to the car, as shown, following the equipment manufacturer's instructions.
- Measure the amount of refrigerant oil removed from the A/C system after the recovery process is completed.

NOTE: Be sure to install the same amount of new refrigerant oil back into the A/C system before charging.

Recovery/Recycling/Charging System.



Pressure Test Chart -

NOTE: Performance Test on page 22-24.

| TEST RESULTS | RELATED SYMPTOMS | PROBABLE CAUSE | REMEDY |
|--|---|--|--|
| Discharge (high) pressure abnormally high | After stopping compressor, pressure drops to about 200 kPa (2.0 kgf/cm², 28 psi) quickly, and then falls gradually. | Air in system | Recover, evacuate and recharge with specified amount. Evacuation: see page 22-38 Charging: see page 22-39 |
| | No bubbles in sight glass when con- denser is cooled by water. | Excessive refrigerant in system | Recover, evacuate and recharge with specified amount. |
| | Reduced or no air flow through con- denser. | Clogged condenser or radiator fins Condenser or radiator fan not working properly | Clean Check voltage and fan rpm Check fan direction |
| | Line to condenser is excessively hot. | Restricted flow of refriger- ant in system | Restricted lines |
| Discharge pres- sure abnormal- ly low | Excessive bubbles in sight glass; condenser is not hot. | Insufficient refrigerant in system | Check for leak Charge system |
| | High and low pressures are balanced soon after stopping compressor. Low side is higher than normal. | Faulty compressor discharge valve Faulty compressor seal | Replace the compressor. |
| | Outlet of expansion valve is not frost- ed, low pressure gauge indicates vacu- um. | Faulty expansion valve Moisture in system | Replace Recover, evacuate and recharge with specified amount. |
| Suction (low) pressure abnormally low | Excessive bubbles in sight glass; condenser is not hot. | Insufficient refrigerant | Repair the leaks. Recover, evacuate and recharge with specified amount. Charge as required. |
| | Expansion valve is not frosted and low pressure line is not cold. Low pressure gauge indicates vacuum. | Frozen expansion valve Faulty expansion valve | Replace the expansion valve. |
| | Discharge temperature is low and the air flow from vents is restricted. | Frozen evaporator | Run the fan with compressor off then check A/C thermostat. |
| | Expansion valve is frosted. | Clogged expansion valve | Clean or replace. |
| | Receiver/dryer outlet is cool and inlet is warm (should be warm during operation). | Clogged receiver/dryer | Replace |
| Suction pres- sure abnormal- ly high | Low pressure hose and check joint are cooler than the temperature around evaporator. | Expansion valve open too long Loose expansion capillary tube | Repair or replace. |
| | Suction pressure is lowered when con- denser is cooled by water. | Excessive refrigerant in system | Recover, evacuate and recharge with specified amount. |
| | High and low pressure are equalized as soon as the compressor is stopped, and both gauges fluctuate while run- ning. | Faulty gasket Faulty high pressure valve Foreign particle stuck in high pressure valve | Replace the compressor. |
| Suction and discharge pressures abnormally high | Reduced air flow through condenser. | Clogged condenser or radiator fins Condenser or radiator fan not working properly. | Clean condenser and radiator Check voltage and fan rpm Check fan direction |
| | No bubbles in sight glass when con- denser is cooled by water. | Excessive refrigerant in system | Recover, evacuate and recharge with specified amount. |
| Suction and discharge pres- | Low pressure hose and metal end areas are cooler than evaporator. | Clogged or kinked low pres- sure hose parts | Repair or replace. |
| sure abnormal- ly low | Temperature around expansion valve is too low compared with that around receiver/dryer. | Clogged high pressure line | Repair or replace. |
| Refrigerant eaks | Compressor clutch is dirty. | Compressor shaft seal leak- ing | Replace the compressor. |
| | Compressor bolt(s) are dirty. | Leaking around bolt(s) | Tighten bolt(s) or replace com- pressor. |
| | Compressor gasket is wet with oil. | Gasket leaking | Replace the compressor. |

A/C System Service

Performance Test

The performance test will help determine if the air conditioner system is operating within specifications.

Only use service equipment that is U.L.-listed and is certified to meet the requirements of SAE J2210 to remove HFC-134a (R-134a) from the air conditioner system.

CAUTION: Exposure to air conditioner refrigerant and lubricant vapor or mist can irritate eyes, nose and throat. Avoid breathing the air conditioner refrigerant and lubricant vapor or mist.

If accidental system discharge occurs, ventilate work area before resuming service.

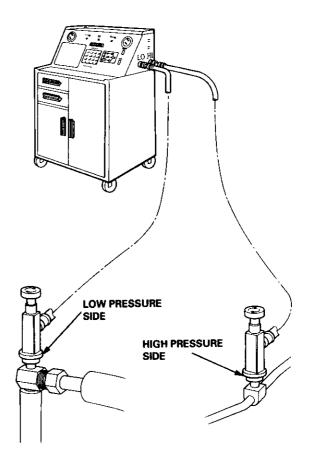
R-134a service equipment or vehicle air conditioner systems should not be pressure tested or leak tested with compressed air.

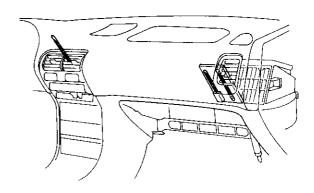
AWARNING Some mixtures of air and R-134a have been shown to be combustible at elevated pressures and can result in fire or explosion causing injury or property damage. Never use compressed air to pressure test R-134a service equipment or vehicle air conditioner systems.

Additional health and safety information may be obtained from the refrigerant and lubricant manufacturers.

- Connect a R-134a refrigerant Recovery/Recycling/ Charging System to the car, as shown, following the equipment manufacturer's instructions.
- Insert a thermometer in the center vent outlet.
 Determine the relative humidity and air temperature by calling the local weather information line.
- 3. Test conditions:
 - Avoid direct sunlight.
 - Open hood.
 - Open front doors.
 - Set the temperature control lever to MAX COOL, the mode control switch on VENT and the recirculation control switch on RECIRCULATE.
 - Slide the heater fan switch on MAX.
 - Run the engine at 1,500 rpm.
 - No driver or passengers in vehicle.
- 4. After running the air conditioning for 10 minutes under the above test conditions, read the delivery temperature from the thermometer in the dash vent and the high and low system pressure from the A/C gauges.

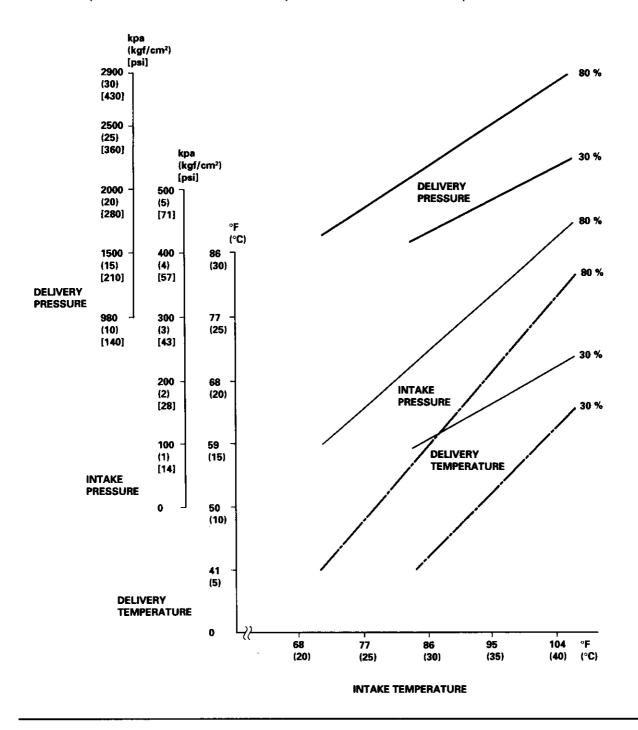
Recovery/Recycling/Charging System.





5. To complete the charts:

- Mark the delivery temperature along the vertical line.
- Mark the intake temperature (ambient air temperature) along the bottom line.
- Draw a line straight up from the air temperature to the humidity.
- Mark a point one line above and one line below the humidity level (10 % above and 10 % below the humidity level).
- From each point, draw a horizontal line across the delivery temperature.
- The delivery temperature should fall between the two lines.
- Complete the low side pressure test and high side pressure test in the same way.
- Any measurements outside the line may indicate the need for further inspection.

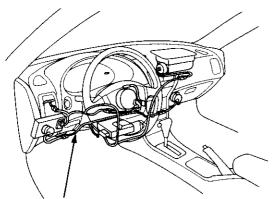


Evaporator

- Replacement

CATION:

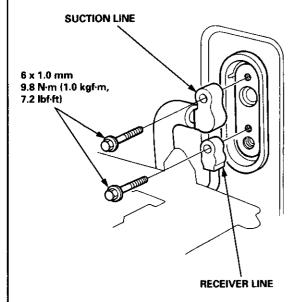
- All SRS electrical wiring harnesses are covered with vellow insulation.
- Before disconnecting any part of the SRS wire harness, connect the short connector(s).
- Replace the entire affected SRS harness assembly if it has an open circuit or damaged wiring.



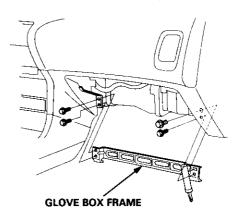
SRS MAIN HARNESS (Covered with yellow insulation)

- Recover the refrigerant with a Recovery/Recycling/ Charging System (see page 22-22).
- 2. Remove the bolts, and disconnect the receiver line and the suction line from the evaporator.

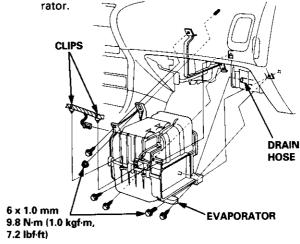
NOTE: Plug or cap the lines immediately after disconnecting to avoid moisture and dust contamination into the system.



- 3. Remove the glove box (see section 20).
- 4. Remove the four bolts and the glove box frame.



- Disconnect the connector from the A/C thermostat, and remove the wire harness clips from the evaporator.
- 6. Remove the four self-tapping screws, mounting bolt and the mounting nut.
- 7. Disconnect the drain hose, and remove the evapo-



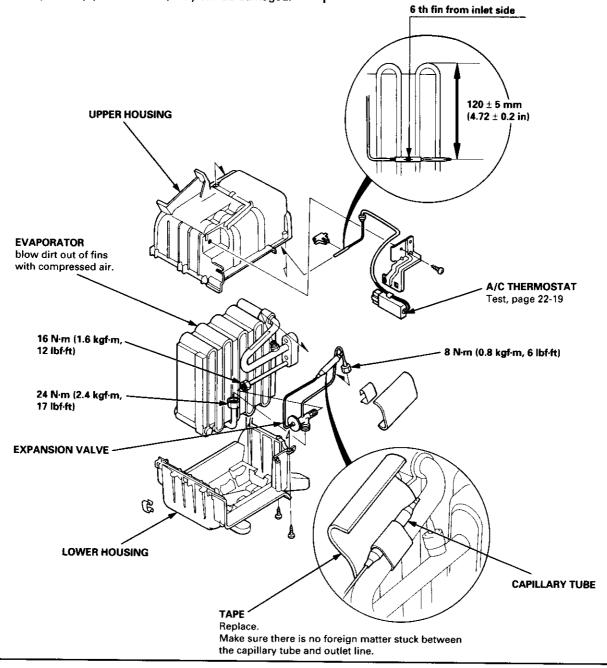
- 8. Install in the reverse order of removal, and:
 - if you're installing a new evaporator, add refrigerant oil (ND-OIL 8: P/N 38899 - PR7 - A01) (see page 22-21).
 - replace the O-rings with new ones at each fitting, and apply a thin coat of refrigerant oil (ND-OIL 8: P/N 38899 – PR7 – A01) before installing them.
 NOTE: Be sure to use the right O-rings for HFC-134a (R-134a) to avoid leakage.
 - · apply sealant to the grommets.
 - make sure that there is no air leakage.
 - charge the system (see page 22-39) and test its performance (see page 22-24).

Overhaul

- Pull out the A/C thermostat sensor from the evaporator fins.
- Remove the self-tapping screws and clamps from the housing.
- Carefully separate the housings and remove the evaporator.
- If necessary, remove the expansion valve.

NOTE: When loosening the expansion valve nuts, use a second wrench to hold the expansion valve or evaporator pipe. Otherwise, they can be damaged.

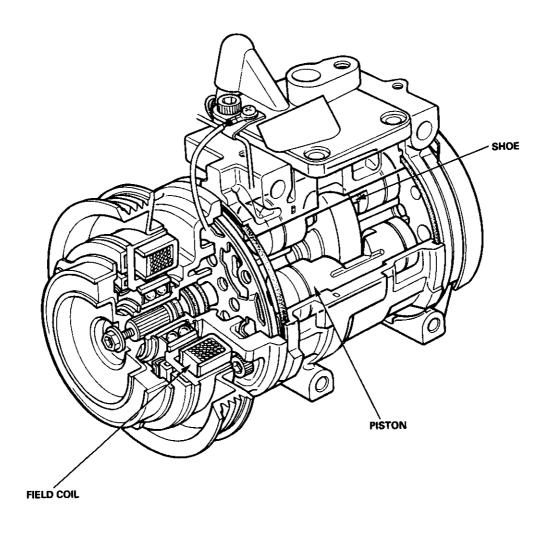
- 5. Assemble in the reverse order of disassembly, and:
 - replace the O-rings with new ones at each fitting, and apply a thin coat of refrigerant oil (ND-OIL 8: P/N 38899 – PR7 – A01) before installing them.
 NOTE: Be sure to use the right O-rings for HFC-134a (R-134a) to avoid leakage.
 - install the expansion valve capillary tube with the capillary tube in contact with the suction line directly, and wrap it with tape.
 - reinstall the A/C thermostat sensor to its original location.

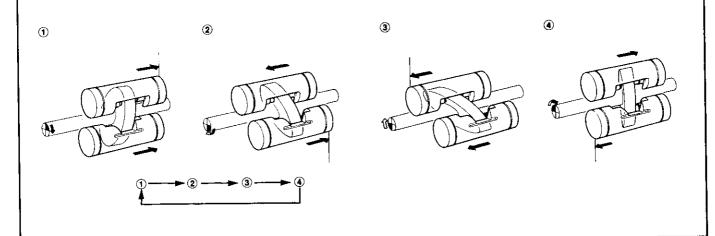


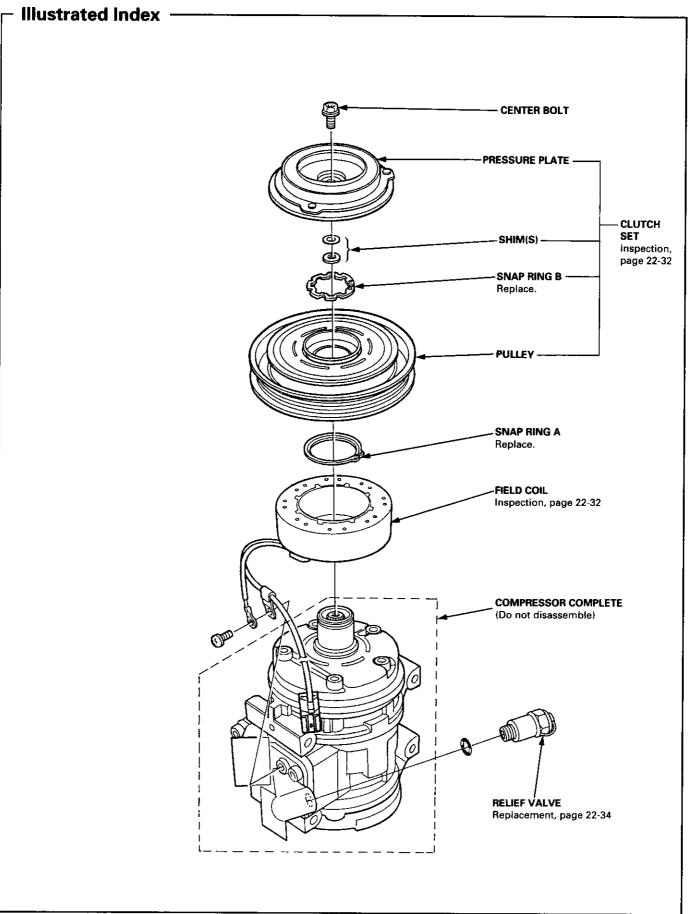
Compressor

- Description

This compressor is a Nippondenso piston type compressor for HFC-134a (R-134a). A revolving inclined disc drives the surrounding 10 reciprocating pistons. As the inclined disc revolves, it pushes the pistons, protected by a ceramic shoe, thus compressing the refrigerant.



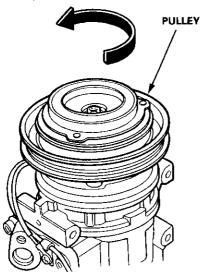




Compressor

- Clutch Inspection

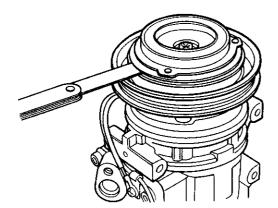
- Check the plated parts of the pressure plate for color changes, peeling or other damage. If there is damage, replace the clutch set.
- Check the pulley bearing play and drag by rotating the pulley by hand. Replace the clutch set with a new one if it is noisy or has excessive play/drag.



 Measure the clearance between the pulley and the pressure plate all the way around. If the clearance is not within specified limits, the pressure plate must be removed and shims added or removed as required, following the procedure on page 22-33.

Clearance: 0.50 \pm 0.15 mm (0.02 \pm 0.01 in)

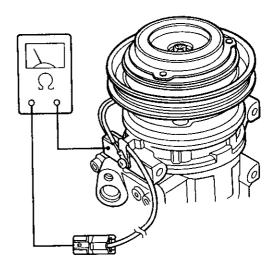
NOTE: The shims are available in three thicknesses: 0.1 mm, 0.3 mm and 0.5 mm.



· Check resistance of the field coil.

Field Coil Resistance: 3.6 ± 0.2 ohm at 68°F (20°C)

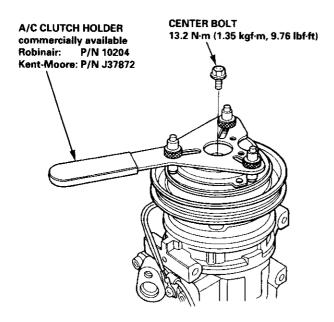
If resistance is not within specifications, replace the field coil.



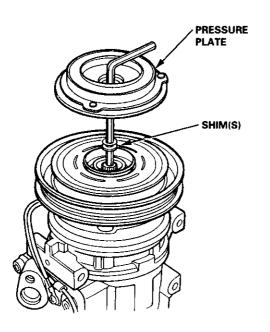


Clutch Overhaul

 Remove the center bolt while holding the pressure plate.



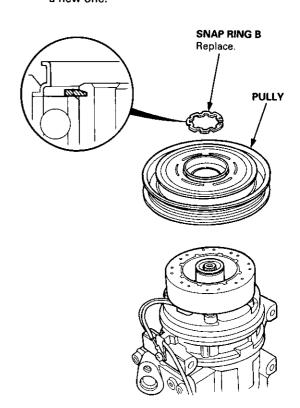
Remove the pressure plate and shim(s), taking care not to lose the shims.



3. Remove the snap ring B with a snap ring pliers, then remove the pulley.

NOTE:

- Be careful not to damage the pulley and compressor during removal/installation.
- Once the snap ring B is removed, replace it with a new one.



(cont'd)

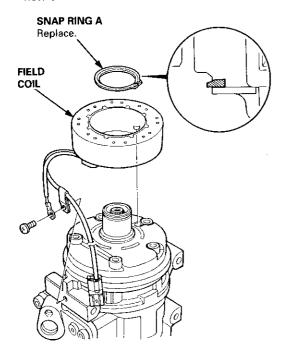
Compressor

- Clutch Overhaul (cont'd)

 Remove the screw from the field coil ground terminal. Remove snap ring A with snap ring pliers, then remove the field coil.

NOTE:

- Be careful not to damage the field coil and compressor during removal/installation.
- Once snap ring A is removed, replace it with a new one.



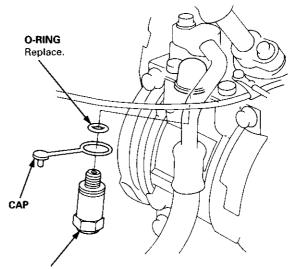
- 5. Install in the reverse order of removal, and:
 - install the field coil with the wire side facing down (see above).
 - clean the pulley and compressor sliding surfaces with non-petroleum solvent.
 - check the pulley bearings for excessive play.
 - make sure the snap rings are in the groove properly
 - apply locking agent to the threads of the center bolt, and tighten it securely.
 - make sure that the pulley turns smoothly after it's reassembled.

Relief Valve Replacement

1. Remove the relief valve and the O-ring.

NOTE:

- Do not let the compressor oil run out.
- Make sure there is no foreign matter in the system



RELIEF VALVE 13.2 N·m (1.35 kgf·m, 9.76 lbf·ft)

- 2. Install and tighten the relief valve.
 - Clean the mating surfaces.
 - Replace the O-ring with a new one at the relief valve, and apply a thin coat of refrigerant oil (ND-OIL 8: P/N 38899 – PR7 – A01) before installing it.

NOTE:

- To avoid contamination, do not return the oil to the container once dispensed, and never mix it with other refrigerant oils.
- Immediately after using the oil, replace the cap on the container, and seal it to avoid moisture absorption.
- Do not spill the refrigerant oil on the car; it may damage the paint; if the refrigerant oil contacts the paint, wash it off immediately.
- Check for leaks, and insert the cap in the top of the valve.

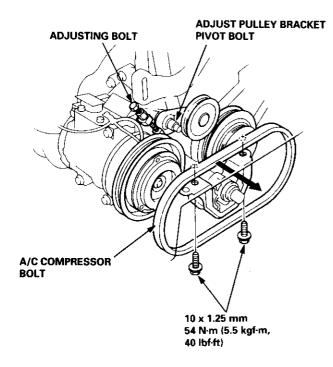
A/C Compressor Belt



- Replacement

Automatic Transmission Type

- Loosen the adjust pulley bracket pivot bolt and the adjusting bolt, then remove the A/C compressor belt from the pulleys.
- Remove the two mounting bolts from the left front engine mount, then pass the A/C compressor belt through the gap between the body and left front engine mount.



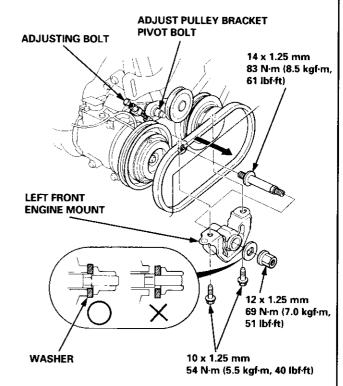
3. Install in the reverse order of removal, and adjust the A/C compressor belt (see page 22-36).

Manual Transmission Type

- Loosen the adjust pulley bracket pivot bolt and the adjusting bolt, then remove the A/C compressor belt from the pulleys.
- 2. Remove the two mounting bolts from the left front engine mount.

Remove the engine mount nut, washer, bolt and the left front engine mount.

Remove the A/C compressor belt.



3. Install in the reverse order of removal, and adjust the A/C compressor belt (see page 22-36).

NOTE: When tightening the engine mount nut, make sure the washer is set properly on the left front engine mount as shown.

A/C Compressor Belt

Adjustment

Deflection Method

 Apply a force of 98 N (10 kgf, 22 lbf), and measure the deflection between the A/C compressor and the crankshaft pulley.

A/C Compressor Belt

Used Belt: B18B1 engine 7.5 - 9.5 mm (0.3 - 0.4 in)

B18C1 engine 8.5 - 10.5 mm (0.3 - 0.41 in)

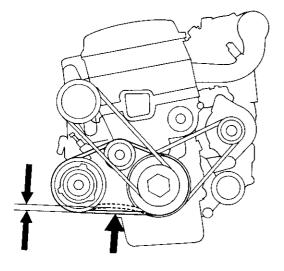
New Belt: 5.0 - 7.0 mm (0.2 - 0.3 in)

Power Steering Pump Belt

Used Belt: 11.5 - 13.5 mm (0.45 - 0.53 in) New Belt: 8.0 - 10.0 mm (0.3 - 0.39 in)

NOTE:

- If there are cracks or any damage evident on the belt, replace it with a new one.
- "Used belt" means a belt which has been used for five minutes or more.
- "New belt" means a belt which has been used for less than five minutes.
- Loosen the adjust pulley bracket pivot bolt and the adjusting bolt lock nut of the A/C compressor belt.
- Turn the adjusting bolt to get proper belt tension, then retighten the adjust pulley bracket pivot bolt and the adjusting bolt lock nut.
- 4. Recheck the deflection of the A/C compressor belt.



Tension Gauge Method

Attach the belt tension gauge to the A/C compressor belt as shown below, and measure the tension of the belt.

A/C Compressor Belt

Used Belt: B18B1 engine 390 - 540 N

(40 - 55 kgf, 88 - 120 lbf)

B18C1 engine 340 - 490 N

(35 - 50 kgf, 77 - 110 lbf)

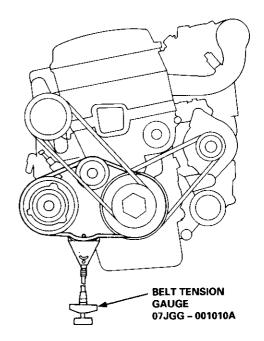
New Belt: 740 - 880 N (75 - 90 kgf, 170 - 200 lbf)

Power Steering Pump Belt

Used Belt: 390 - 540 N (40 - 55 kgf, 88 - 120 lbf) New Belt: 740 - 880 N (75 - 90 kgf, 170 - 200 lbf)

NOTE:

- If there are cracks or any damage evident on the belt, replace it with a new one.
- Follow the manufacturer's instructions for the belt tension gauge.
- "Used belt" means a belt which has been used for five minutes or more.
- "New belt" means a belt which has been used for less than five minutes.
- Loosen the adjust pulley bracket pivot bolt and the adjusting bolt lock nut of the A/C compressor belt.
- Turn the adjusting bolt to get proper belt tension, then retighten the adjust pulley bracket pivot bolt and the adjusting bolt lock nut.
- 4. Recheck the tension of the A/C compressor belt.



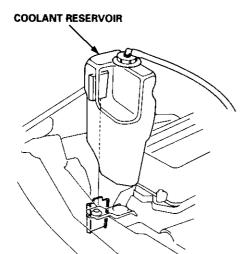
Condenser

1

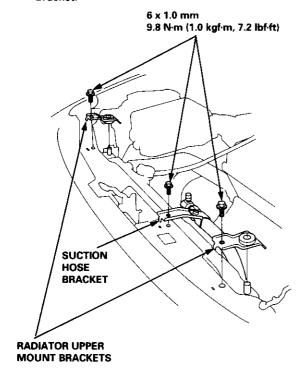
- Replacement

- Recover the refrigerant with a Recovery/Recycling/ Charging System (see page 22-22).
- 2. Remove the coolant reservoir.

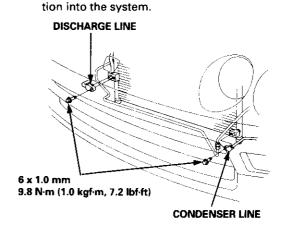
NOTE: Do not disconnect the reservoir hose from the coolant reservoir and the radiator.



Remove the bolts and the radiator upper mount brackets, and remove the bolt from the suction hose bracket.

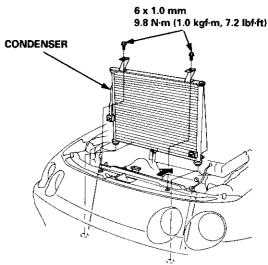


4. Remove the bolts, and disconnect the discharge line and the condenser line from the condenser. NOTE: Plug or cap the lines immediately after disconnecting to avoid moisture and dust contamina-



5. Remove the two mounting bolts, then lift out the condenser as shown.

NOTE: Do not damage the radiator and condenser fins when removing the condenser.



- 6. Install in the reverse order of removal, and:
 - if you're installing a new condenser, add refrigerant oil (ND-OIL 8: P/N 38899 PR7 A01) (see page 22-21).
 - replace the O-rings with new ones at each fitting, and apply a thin coat of refrigerant oil (ND-OtL 8: P/N 38899 – PR7 – A01) before installing them.
 NOTE: Be sure to use the right O-rings for HFC-134a (R-134a) to avoid leakage.
 - do not damage the radiator and condenser fins when installing the condenser.
 - be sure to install the condenser mount cushions securely into the holes.
 - charge the system (see page 22-39) and test its performance (see page 22-24).

A/C System Service

- Evacuation ·

Only use service equipment that is U.L.-listed and is certified to meet the requirements of SAE J2210 to remove HFC-134a (R-134a) from the air conditioner system.

CAUTION: Exposure to air conditioner refrigerant and lubricant vapor or mist can irritate eyes, nose and throat. Avoid breathing the air conditioner refrigerant and lubricant vapor or mist.

If accidental system discharge occurs, ventilate work area before resuming service.

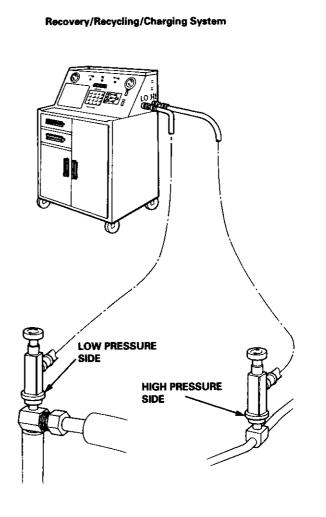
R-134a service equipment or vehicle air conditioner systems should not be pressure tested or leak tested with compressed air.

AWARNING Some mixtures of air and R-134a have been shown to be combustible at elevated pressures and can result in fire or explosion causing injury or property damage. Never use compressed air to pressure test R-134a service equipment or vehicle air conditioner systems.

Additional health and safety information may be obtained from the refrigerant and lubricant manufactures.

- When an A/C System has been opened to the atmosphere, such as during installation or repair, it must be evacuated using a R-134a refrigerant Recovery/Recycling/Charging System. (If the system has been open for several days, the receiver/dryer should be replaced.)
- 2. Connect a R-134a refrigerant Recovery/Recycling/Charging System to the car, as shown, following the equipment manufacturer's instructions.

NOTE: If low pressure does not reach more than 93.3 kPa (700 mm Hg, 27.6 in·Hg) in 15 minutes, there is probably a leak in the system. Partially charge the system and check for leaks (see Leak Test).



Charging

Only use service equipment that is U.L.-listed and is certified to meet the requirements of SAE J2210 to remove HFC-134a (R-134a) from the air conditioner system.

CAUTION: Exposure to air conditioner refrigerant and lubricant vapor or mist can irritate eyes, nose and throat. Avoid breathing the air conditioner refrigerant and lubricant vapor or mist.

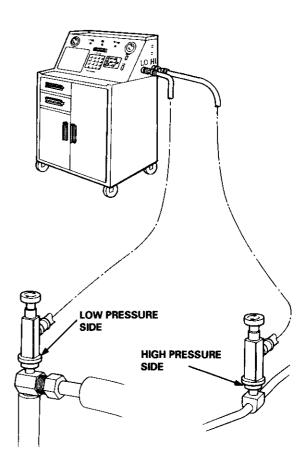
If accidental system discharge occurs, ventilate work area before resuming service. Additional health and safety information may be obtained from the refrigerant and lubricant manufactures.

Refrigerant capacity: 700 ± 0 g (24.7 ± 0 oz)

CAUTION: Do not overcharge the system; the compressor will be damaged.

Connect a R-134a refrigerant Recovery/Recycling/ Charging System to the car, as shown, following the equipment manufacturer's instructions.

Recovery/Recycling/Charging System



A/C System Service

- Leak Test -

Only use service equipment that is U.L.-listed and is certified to meet the requirements of SAE J2210 to remove HFC-134a (R-134a) from the air conditioner system.

CAUTION: Exposure to air conditioner refrigerant and lubricant vapor or mist can irritate eyes, nose and throat. Avoid breathing the air conditioner refrigerant and lubricant vapor or mist.

If accidental system discharge occurs, ventilate work area before resuming service.

R-134a service equipment or vehicle air conditioner systems should not be pressure tested or leak tested with compressed air.

AWARNING Some mixtures of air and R-134a have been shown to be combustible at elevated pressures and can result in fire or explosion causing injury or property damage. Never use compressed air to pressure test R-134a service equipment or vehicle air conditioner systems.

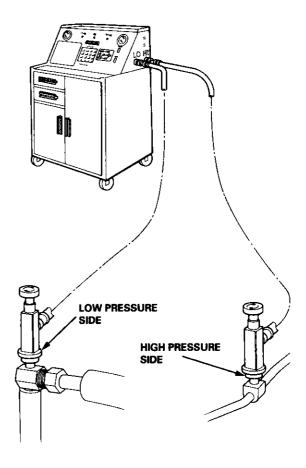
Additional health and safety information may be obtained from the refrigerant and lubricant manufactures.

 Connect a R-134a refrigerant Recovery/Recycling/ Charging System to the car, as shown, following the equipment manufacturer's instructions.

NOTE: Be sure to install the same amount of new refrigerant oil back into the A/C system before charging.

- Open high pressure valve to charge the system to about 98 kPa (1.0 kgf/cm², 14 psi), then close the supply valve.
- 3. Check the system for leaks using a R-134a refrigerant leak detector with an accuracy of 14 g (0.5 oz) per year or better.
- If you find leaks that require the system to be opened (to repair or replace houses, fittings, etc.), recover the system according to the Recover Procedure on page 22-22.
- 5. After checking and repairing leaks, the system must be evacuated (see System Evacuation on page 22-38).





Electrical

| Special Tools | . 23-2 |
|--|---------------|
| Troubleshooting | |
| Tips and Precautions | 22.2 |
| Five-step Troubleshooting | |
| Schematic Symbols | . 23-5 |
| Wire Color Codes | . 23-6 |
| Relay and Control Unit Locations | . 23-6 |
| | 00.7 |
| Engine Compartment Dashboard and Door | |
| | |
| Dashboard and Floor | |
| Quarter Panel Connector Identification and Wire | . 23-12 |
| | |
| Harness Routing | . 23-13 |
| Index to Circuits and Systems | |
| Airbag | . 23-265 |
| Air Conditioning Se | ection 21 |
| Alternator | 23-98 |
| Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) Se | ction 19 |
| Automatic Transmission Se | ection 14 |
| Battery | |
| Charging System | |
| *Cigarette Lighter | 23-30 |
| Clock | 23-207 |
| *Cruise Control | 23-137 |
| Distributor | |
| Fan Controls | |
| Fuel and Emissions Se | |
| *Fuses | Cuon i i |
| Under-dash Fuse/Relay Box | 23-48 |
| Under-hood ABS Fuse/Relay Box | |
| Under-hood Fuse/Relay Box | 23-51 |
| *Gauges | 23-32 |
| Engine Coolant Temperature (ECT) | |
| Gauge | 22-126 |
| Fuel Gauge | |
| *Gauge Assembly | |
| Speedometer | 23-113 |
| Tachometer | |
| Ground Distribution | |
| Heater Ser | |
| Horn | |
| Ignition Switch | 23-133 |
| Ignition System | |
| Ignition Timing | 23.00 |
| Indicator Lights | 23-0 3 |
| *A/T Gear Position | 22 122 |
| Brake System | |
| Engine Oil Pressure | 23-12/ |
| Low Fuel | 23.131 |
| Malfunction Indicator Lamo (MIL) Soc | |

| *Integrated Control Unit | 23-144 |
|--|---|
| *Interlock System | 23-138 |
| Lights, Exterior | |
| Back-up Lights | 23-179 |
| Brake Lights | |
| *Daytime Running Lights (Canada) | 23-156 |
| Front Parking Lights | 23-165 |
| Front Side Marker Lights | 23-165 |
| Front Turn Signal Lights | 23-165 |
| *Hazard Warning Lights | 23-184 |
| Headlights | 23-161 |
| License Plate Lights | 23-169 |
| Taillights | |
| (Hatchback) | 23-166 |
| (Sedan) | |
| Lights, Interior | |
| Cargo Area Light (Hatchback) | 23-177 |
| Ceiling Light | |
| Dash Lights Brightness Control | |
| Glove Box Light | |
| Spotlight | |
| Trunk Light (Sedan) | 23-177 |
| *Lighting System | 23-152 |
| | |
| *Moonroof | 23-211 |
| *Moonroof | 23-211 |
| *Moonroof PGM-FI System | 23-211 Section 11 |
| *Moonroof | 23-211 Section 11 23-54 |
| *Moonroof | 23-211 Section 11 23-54 23-233 |
| *Moonroof PGM-FI System Power Distribution Power Door Locks Power Mirrors | 23-211 Section 11 23-54 23-233 23-216 |
| *Moonroof PGM-FI System Power Distribution Power Door Locks Power Mirrors Power Relays | 23-211 Section 11 23-54 23-233 23-216 23-68 |
| *Moonroof PGM-FI System Power Distribution Power Door Locks Power Mirrors Power Relays Power Windows | 23-211 Section 11 23-54 23-233 23-216 23-68 23-222 |
| *Moonroof PGM-FI System Power Distribution Power Door Locks Power Mirrors Power Relays Power Windows *Rear Window Defogger Reminder Systems | 23-211 Section 11 23-54 23-233 23-216 23-68 23-222 23-206 |
| *Moonroof PGM-FI System Power Distribution Power Door Locks Power Mirrors Power Relays Power Windows *Rear Window Defogger Reminder Systems Key-in Reminder System | 23-211 Section 11 23-54 23-233 23-216 23-68 23-222 23-206 |
| *Moonroof PGM-FI System Power Distribution Power Door Locks Power Mirrors Power Relays Power Windows *Rear Window Defogger Reminder Systems Key-in Reminder System Lights-on Reminder System | 23-211 Section 11 23-54 23-233 23-216 23-68 23-222 23-206 23-150 23-151 |
| *Moonroof PGM-FI System Power Distribution Power Door Locks Power Mirrors Power Relays Power Windows *Rear Window Defogger Reminder Systems Key-in Reminder System Lights-on Reminder System *Maintenance Reminder System | 23-211 Section 11 23-54 23-233 23-216 23-222 23-206 23-150 23-151 23-128 |
| *Moonroof PGM-FI System Power Distribution Power Door Locks Power Mirrors Power Relays Power Windows *Rear Window Defogger Reminder Systems Key-in Reminder System Lights-on Reminder System *Maintenance Reminder System Seat Belt Reminder System | 23-211 Section 11 23-54 23-233 23-216 23-222 23-206 23-150 23-151 23-128 |
| *Moonroof PGM-FI System Power Distribution Power Door Locks Power Mirrors Power Relays Power Windows *Rear Window Defogger Reminder Systems Key-in Reminder System Lights-on Reminder System *Maintenance Reminder System Seat Belt Reminder System *Side Marker/Turn Signal/Hazard | 23-211 Section 11 23-54 23-233 23-216 23-222 23-206 23-150 23-151 23-128 23-125 |
| *Moonroof PGM-FI System Power Distribution Power Door Locks Power Mirrors Power Relays Power Windows *Rear Window Defogger Reminder Systems Key-in Reminder System Lights-on Reminder System *Maintenance Reminder System Seat Belt Reminder System *Side Marker/Turn Signal/Hazard Flasher System | 23-211 Section 11 23-54 23-233 23-216 23-222 23-206 23-150 23-151 23-128 23-125 |
| *Moonroof PGM-FI System Power Distribution Power Door Locks Power Mirrors Power Relays Power Windows *Rear Window Defogger Reminder Systems Key-in Reminder System Lights-on Reminder System *Maintenance Reminder System Seat Belt Reminder System *Side Marker/Turn Signal/Hazard Flasher System Spark Plugs | 23-211 Section 11 23-54 23-233 23-216 23-68 23-222 23-206 23-150 23-151 23-128 23-125 23-125 |
| *Moonroof PGM-FI System Power Distribution Power Door Locks Power Mirrors Power Relays Power Windows *Rear Window Defogger Reminder Systems Key-in Reminder System Lights-on Reminder System *Maintenance Reminder System Seat Belt Reminder System *Side Marker/Turn Signal/Hazard Flasher System Spark Plugs Starting System | 23-211 Section 11 23-54 23-233 23-216 23-68 23-222 23-206 23-150 23-151 23-128 23-125 23-125 23-184 23-97 23-73 |
| *Moonroof PGM-FI System Power Distribution Power Door Locks Power Mirrors Power Relays Power Windows *Rear Window Defogger Reminder Systems Key-in Reminder System Lights-on Reminder System *Maintenance Reminder System Seat Belt Reminder System *Side Marker/Turn Signal/Hazard Flasher System Spark Plugs Starting System *Stereo Sound System | 23-211 Section 11 23-54 23-233 23-216 23-68 23-222 23-206 23-150 23-151 23-128 23-125 23-184 23-73 23-188 |
| *Moonroof PGM-FI System Power Distribution Power Door Locks Power Mirrors Power Relays Power Windows *Rear Window Defogger Reminder Systems Key-in Reminder System Lights-on Reminder System *Maintenance Reminder System Seat Belt Reminder System *Side Marker/Turn Signal/Hazard Flasher System Spark Plugs Starting System *Stereo Sound System Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) | 23-211 Section 11 23-54 23-246 23-216 23-268 23-222 23-206 23-150 23-151 23-128 23-125 23-184 23-97 23-188 23-265 |
| *Moonroof PGM-FI System Power Distribution Power Door Locks Power Mirrors Power Relays Power Windows *Rear Window Defogger Reminder Systems Key-in Reminder System Lights-on Reminder System *Maintenance Reminder System Seat Belt Reminder System *Side Marker/Turn Signal/Hazard Flasher System Spark Plugs Starting System *Stereo Sound System Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) Vehicle Speed Sensor (VSS) | 23-211 Section 11 23-54 23-233 23-216 23-68 23-222 23-206 23-150 23-151 23-128 23-125 23-184 23-97 23-188 23-265 23-122 |
| *Moonroof PGM-FI System Power Distribution Power Door Locks Power Mirrors Power Relays Power Windows *Rear Window Defogger Reminder Systems Key-in Reminder System Lights-on Reminder System *Maintenance Reminder System Seat Belt Reminder System *Side Marker/Turn Signal/Hazard Flasher System Spark Plugs Starting System *Stereo Sound System Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) | 23-211 Section 11 23-54 23-233 23-216 23-68 23-222 23-206 23-150 23-151 23-128 23-125 23-184 23-97 23-188 23-265 23-122 |

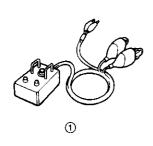
^{*}Read SRS precautions on Page 23-271 before working in these areas.

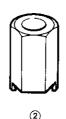
Special Tools

| Ref. No. | Tool Number | Description | Qty. | Page Reference |
|--------------|---------------|---------------------|------|----------------|
| 0 | 07HAZ-SG00400 | Deployment Tool | 1 | 23-300 |
| 2 | 07JAA-001000C | Antenna Nut Wrench | 1 | 23-195 |
| 3 | 07JGG-001010A | Belt Tension Gauge | 1 | 23-108 |
| <u>@</u> ** | 07LAZ-SL40300 | Test Harness C | 1 | 23-201,248,28 |
| <u>(5</u>)* | 07LAZ-SL40400 | Test Harness D | 1 | 23-287 |
| <u>®</u> * | 07MAZ-SL00500 | Test Harness A | 1 | 23-281 |
| Ŏ** | 07MAZ-SP00500 | Test Harness B | 1 | 23-284 |
| 8 | 07NAC-SR20100 | Fuel Sender Wrench | 1 | 23-124 |
| <u> </u> | 07PAZ-0010100 | SCS Short Connector | 1 | 23-89 |

- *: Included in SRS Tool Set 07HAZ-SG0000A

 **: Included in SRS Tool Set 07MAZ-SL0010A

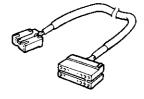




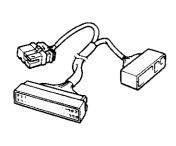






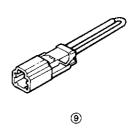


6



4





Tips and Precautions

Before Troubleshooting

- Check applicable fuses in the appropriate fuse/relay box
- Check the battery for damage, state of charge, and clean and tight connections.
- Check the alternator belt tension.

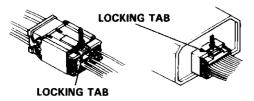
CAUTION:

- Do not quick-charge a battery unless the battery ground cable has been disconnected, otherwise you will damage the alternator diodes.
- Do not attempt to crank the engine with the battery ground cable loosely connected or you will severely damage the wiring.
- The original radio has a coded theft protection circuit. Be sure to get the customer's code number before
 - disconnecting the battery.
 - removing the No. 32 (7.5 A) fuse from the under-hood fuse/relay box.
 - removing the radio.

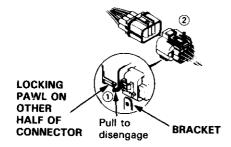
After service, reconnect power to the radio and turn it on. When the word "CODE" is displayed, enter the customer's 5-digit code to restore radio operation.

Handling Connectors

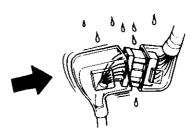
- Make sure the connectors are clean and have no loose wire terminals.
- Make sure multiple cavity connectors are packed with grease (except watertight connectors).
- All connectors have push-down release type locks.



- Some connectors have a clip on their side used to attach them to a mount bracket on the body or on another component. This clip has a pull type lock.
- Some mounted connectors cannot be disconnected unless you first release the lock and remove the connector from its bracket.



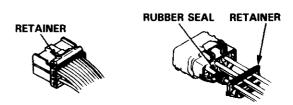
- Never try to disconnect connectors by pulling on their wires; pull on the connector halves instead.
- Always reinstall plastic covers.



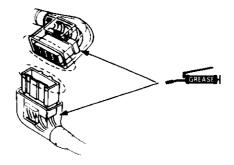
 Before connecting connectors, make sure the terminals are in place and not bent.



• Check for loose retainer and rubber seals.



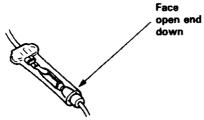
 The backs of some connectors are packed with grease. Add grease if needed. If the grease is contaminated, replace it.



(cont'd)

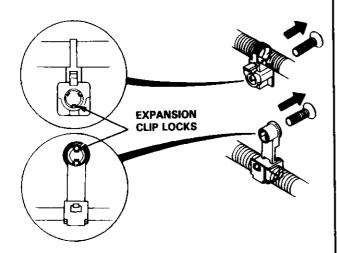
Tips and Precautions (cont'd) -

- Insert the connector all the way and make sure it is securely locked.
- Position wires so that the open end of the cover faces down.

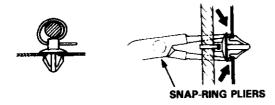


Handling Wires and Harnesses

- Secure wires and wire harnesses to the frame with their respective wire ties at the designated locations.
- Remove clips carefully; don't damage their locks.

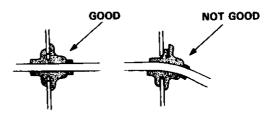


Slip pliers under the clip base and through the hole at an angle, then squeeze the expansion tabs to release the clip.



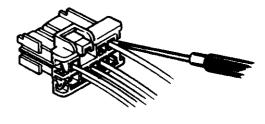
- After installing harness clips, make sure the harness doesn't interfere with any moving parts.
- Keep wire harnesses away from exhaust pipes and other hot parts, from sharp edges of brackets and holes, and from exposed screws and bolts.

Seat grommets in their grooves properly.

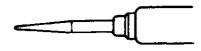


Testing and Repairs

- Do not use wires or harnesses with broken insulation.
 Replace them or repair them by wrapping the break with electrical tape.
- After installing parts, make sure that no wires are pinched under them.
- When using electrical test equipment, follow the manufacturer's instructions and those described in this manual.
- If possible, insert the probe of the tester from the wire side (except waterproof connector).



• Use a probe with a tapered tip.



 Refer to the instructions in the Honda Terminal Kit for identification and replacement of connector terminals.



Five-step Troubleshooting

1. Verify The Complaint

Turn on all the components in the problem circuit to verify the customer complaint. Note the symptoms. Do not begin disassembly or testing until you have narrowed down the problem area.

2. Analyze The Schematic

Look up the schematic for the problem circuit. Determine how the circuit is supposed to work by tracing the current paths from the power feed through the circuit components to ground. If several circuits fail at the same time, the fuse or ground is a likely cause.

Based on the symptoms and your understanding of the circuit operation, identify one or more possible causes of the problem.

3. Isolate The Problem By Testing The Circuit

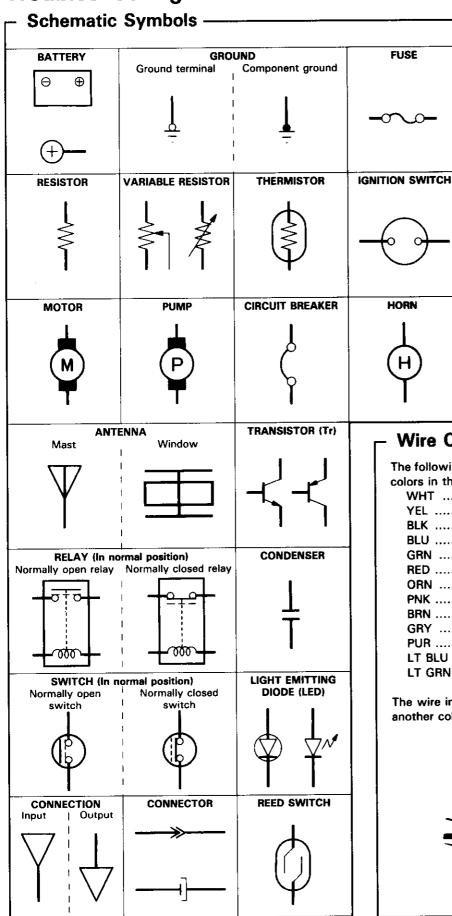
Make circuit tests to check the diagnosis you made in step 2. Keep in mind that a logical, simple procedure is the key to efficient troubleshooting. Test for the most likely cause of failure first. Try to make tests at points that are easily accessible.

4. Fix The Problem

Once the specific problem is identified, make the repair. Be sure to use proper tools and safe procedures.

5. Make Sure The Circuit Works

Turn on all components in the repaired circuit in all modes to make sure you've fixed the entire problem. If the problem was a blown fuse, be sure to test all of the circuits on that fuse. Make sure no new problems turn up and the original problem does not recur.



Wire Color Codes -

The following abbreviations are used to identify wire colors in the circuit schematics:

COIL, SOLENOID

BULB

DIODE

FUSE

HORN

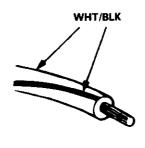
CIGARETTE LIGHTER

HEATER

SPEAKER, BUZZER

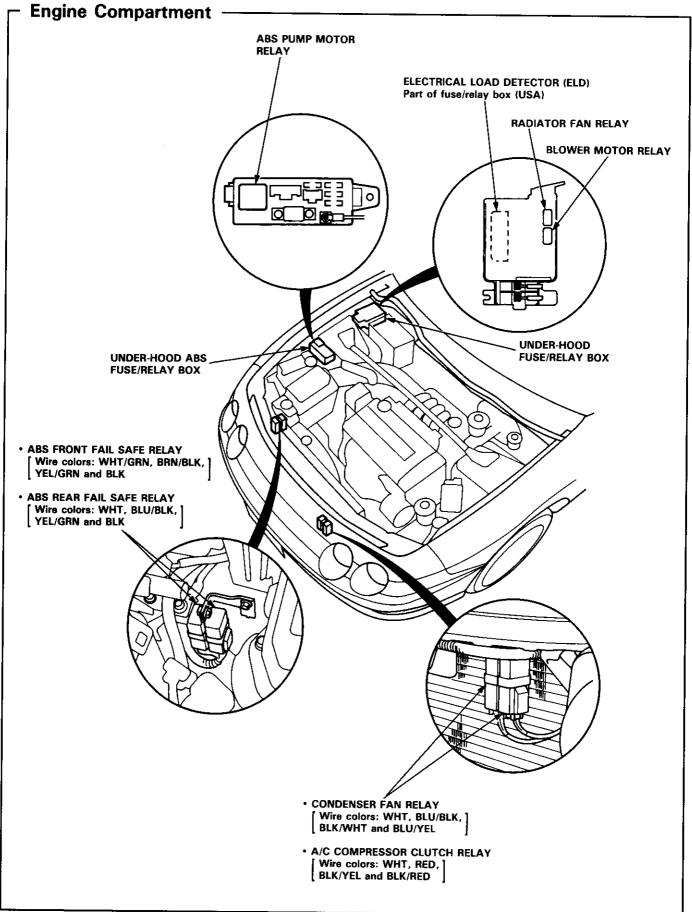
WHT White YEL Yellow BLK Black BLU Blue GRN Green RED Red ORN Orange PNK Pink BRN Brown GRY Gray PUR Purple LT BLU Light Blue LT GRN Light Green

The wire insulation has one color or one color with another color stripe. The second color is the stripe.

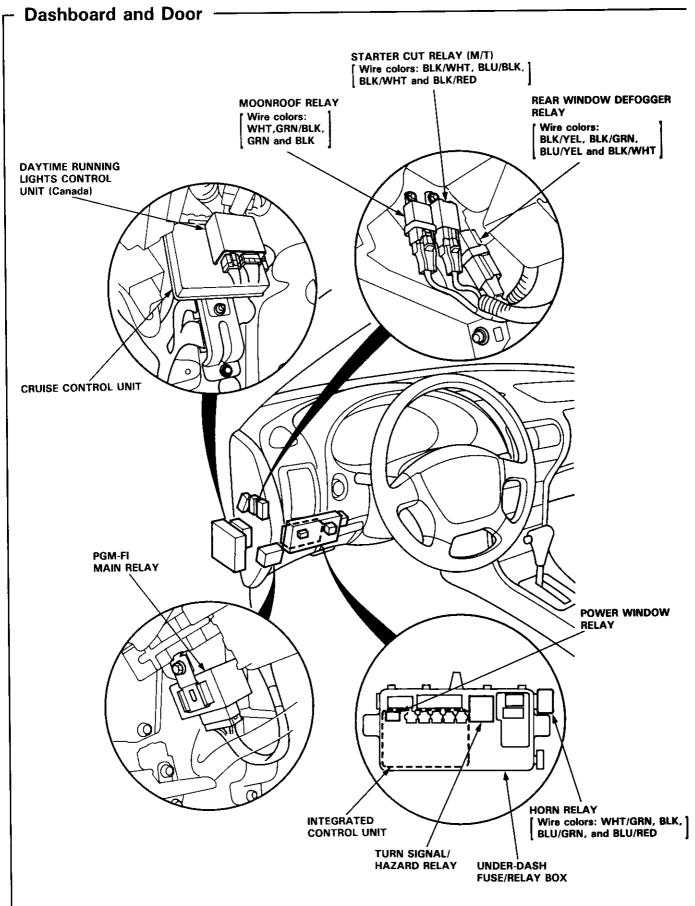


Relay and Control Unit Locations

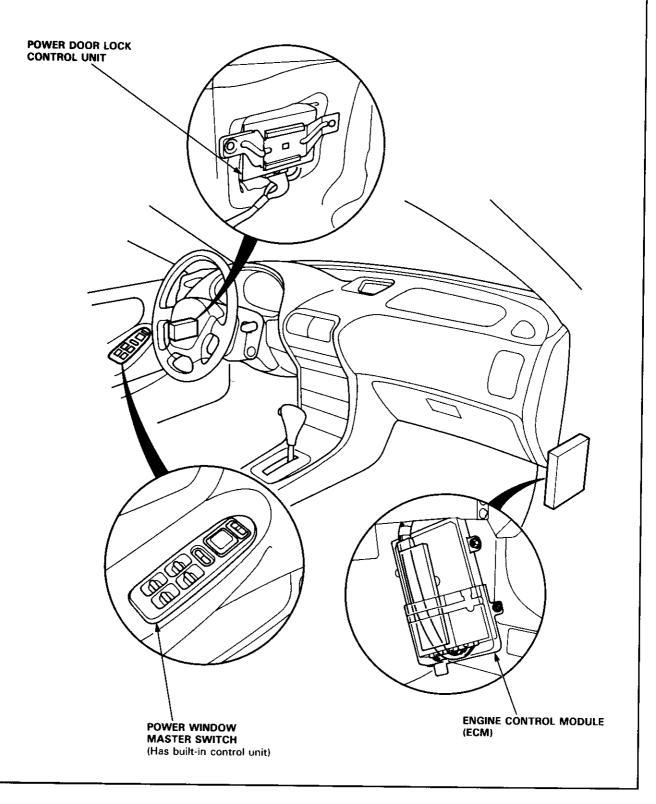




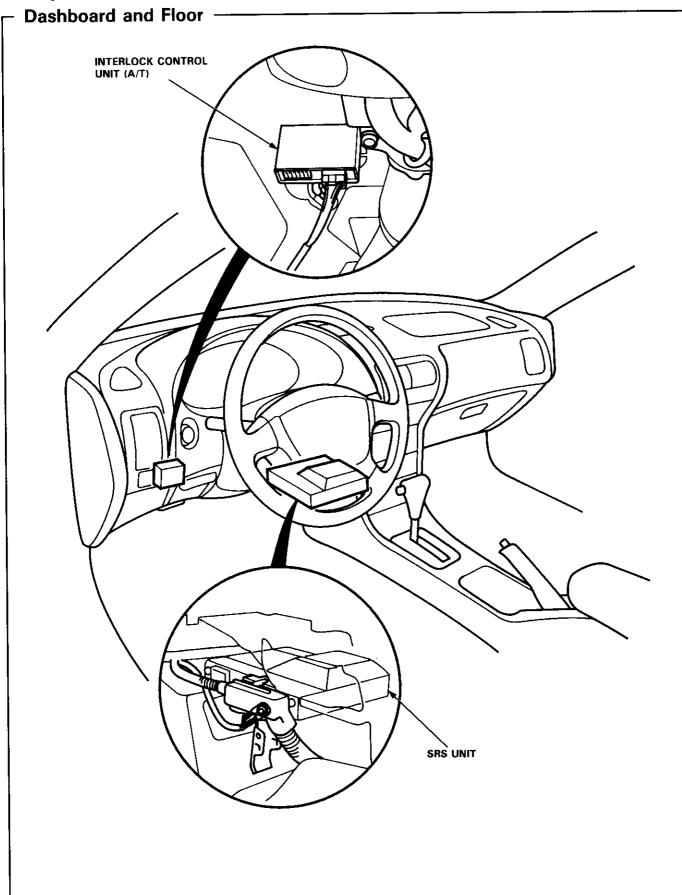
Relay and Control Unit Locations



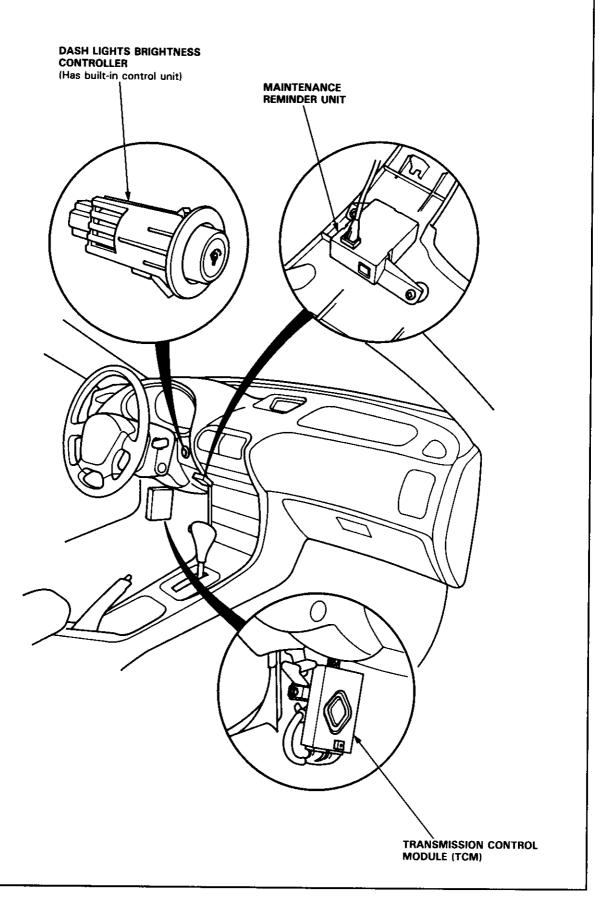




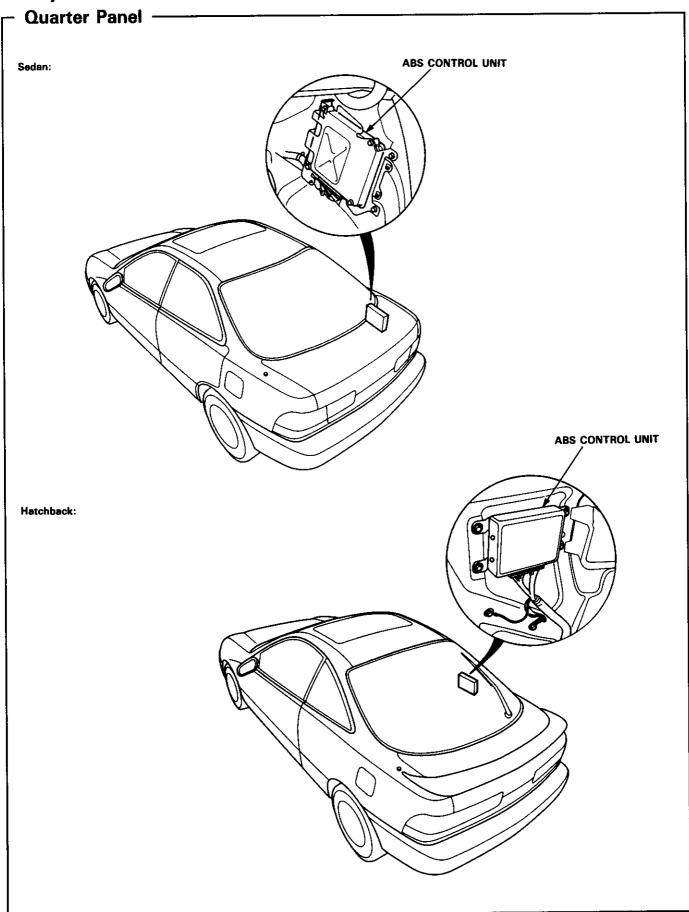
Relay and Control Unit Locations







Relay and Control Unit Locations





How to Identify Connectors:

Identification numbers have been assigned to all connectors. The number is preceded by the letter "C" for connectors, "G" for single ground terminals or "T" for single non-ground terminals.

| Location | Engine Compartment | Dashboard | Others (Floor, Door, Trunk, Roof) |
|--|--|---------------------------|---|
| Starter cables | T1, T2, and ⊕ | | |
| Battery ground cable | G1 and ⊖ | | |
| Engine ground cable A | T3 G2 | | |
| Engine ground cable B | T4 G3 | | |
| Under-hood ABS fuse/relay box cable | T5 and ⊕ | | |
| Engine wire harness | C101 through C134 T101 and T102 G101 | | |
| A/C wire harness | C151 through C156 G151 | | |
| ABS modulator unit wire harness | C161 through C168 | | |
| Engine compartment wire harness | C301 through C320 G301 | | |
| Main wire harness | C201 through C223 G201 and G202 | C401 through C449 G401 | |
| Rear wire harness | | | C501 through C536 G501, G502 and G503 |
| Dashboard wire harness | | C551 through C569 G551 | |
| Driver's door wire harness | | | C601 through C612 |
| Front passenger's door wire harness | | | C626 through C634 |
| Left rear door wire harness (Sedan) | | | C651 through C654 |
| Right rear door wire harness (Sedan) | **** | | C656 through C659 |
| Roof wire harness | | | C661 through C667 |
| Heater sub-harness A | | C671 through C677 | |
| Heater sub-harness B | | C681 through C684 | |
| ABS sub-harness | | | C701 through C706 G701, G702 and G703 (Sedan) |
| Tailgate wire harness (Hatchback) | | | C751 through C756 G751 |
| Spoiler sub-harness (Hatchback) | | | C761 through C763 |
| Rear window defogger ground wire (Hatchback) | | | C771 G771 |
| SRS main harness | | | C801 through C807 G801 |

Starter Cables

| Connector or Terminal | Number of Cavities | Location | Connects to | Notes |
|--------------------------|-----------------------|---|--|-------|
| T1 T2 | | Right side of engine compartment Right side of engine compartment | Under-hood fuse/relay box Starter motor | |
| ⊕ | | Battery | Battery positive terminal | |

Battery Ground Cable

| Connector or Terminal | Number of Cavities | Location | Connects to | Notes |
|--------------------------|-----------------------|-------------------------|---------------------------------------|-------|
| G1 | | Right front shock tower | Body ground, via battery ground cable | |
| Θ | | Battery | Battery negative terminal | |

Engine Ground Cable A

| Connector or Terminal | Number of Cavities | Location | Connects to | Notes |
|--------------------------|-----------------------|---------------------------------|---------------------------------------|-------|
| ТЗ | | Left side of engine | Valve cover | |
| G2 | | Left side of engine compartment | Body ground, via engine ground wire A | |

Engine Ground Cable B

| Connector or Terminal | Number of Cavities | Location | Connects to | Notes |
|--------------------------|-----------------------|----------------------------------|---------------------------------------|-------|
| T4 | | Right side of engine compartment | Transmission housing | |
| G3 | | Right side of front frame | Body ground, via engine ground wire B | |

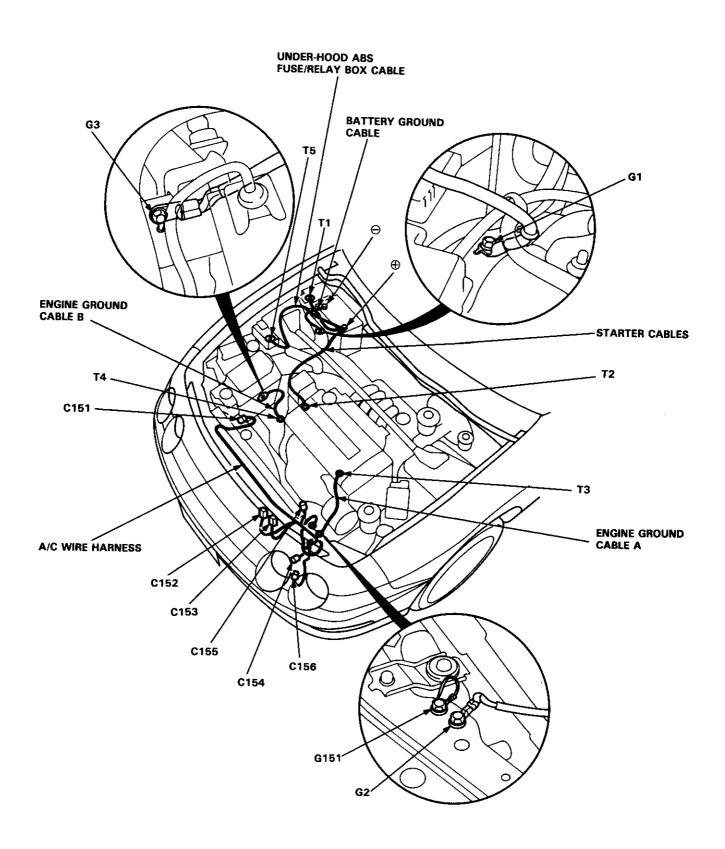
A/C Wire Harness

| Connector or Terminal | Number of Cavities | Location | Connects to | Notes |
|--------------------------|-----------------------|----------------------------------|-----------------------------|-------|
| C151 | 8 | Right side of engine compartment | Main wire harness (C207) | |
| C152 | 4 | Left side of engine compartment | Condenser fan relay | |
| C153 | 4 | Left side of engine compartment | A/C compressor clutch relay | |
| C154 | 2 | Left side of engine compartment | A/C pressure switch | |
| C155 | 2 | Left side of engine compartment | Condenser fan motor | |
| C156 | 1 | Left side of engine compartment | A/C compressor clutch | |
| G151 | | Right side of front frame | | |

Under-hood ABS Fuse/Relay Box Cable

| Connector or Terminal | Number of Cavities | Location | Connects to | Notes |
|--------------------------|-----------------------|----------------------------------|-------------------------------|-------|
| T5 | | Right side of engine compartment | Under-hood ABS fuse/relay box | |
| ⊕ | | Right side of engine compartment | Battery positive terminal | |

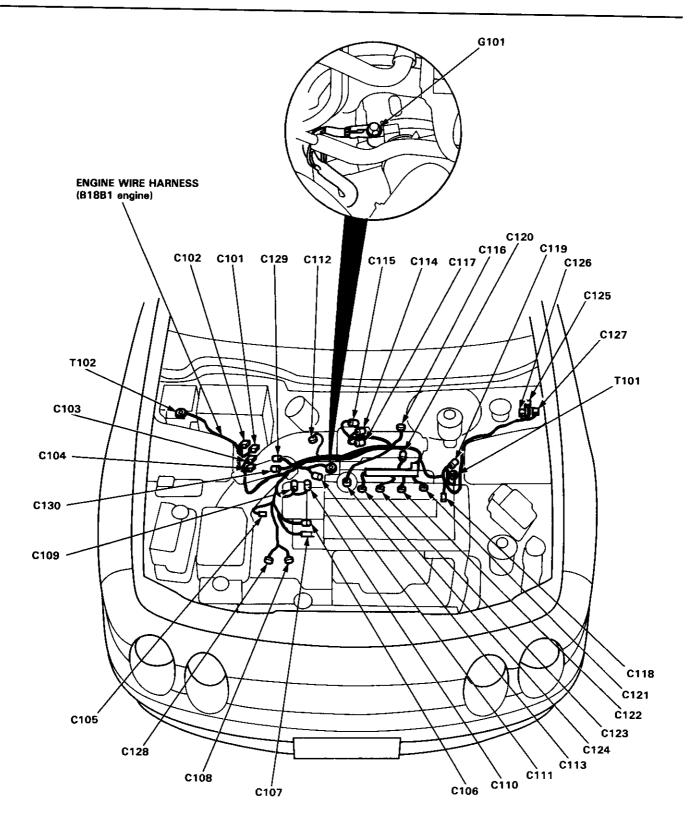




Engine Wire Harness (B18B1 engine)

| Connector or Terminal | Number of Cavities | Location | Connects to | Notes |
|--------------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------------------|--|-------|
| C101 | 4 | Right side of engine compartment | Main wire harness (C221) | |
| C102 | 10 | Right side of engine compartment | Main wire harness (C222) | |
| C103 | 14 | Right side of engine compartment | Main wire harness (C223) | |
| C104 | 6 | Right side of engine compartment | Main wire harness (C220) | |
| C105 | 1 | Right side of engine compartment | Starter solenoid | |
| C106 | 2 | Right side of engine | Engine coolant temperature (ECT) sensor | |
| C107 | 1 | Right side of engine | Engine coolant temperature (ECT) gauge sending unit | |
| C108 | 2 | Transmission | Back-up light switch | M/T |
| C108 | 2 | Transmission | Lock-up control solenoid valve A and B | A/T |
| C109 | 2 | Middle of engine | Ignition coil | |
| C110 | 8 | Middle of engine | Top dead center/Crankshaft position/Cylinder position (TDC/CKP/CYP) sensor | |
| C111 | 2 | Right side of engine | Engine coolant temperature (ECT) switch | i |
| C112 | 3 | Right side of engine compartment | Vehicle speed sensor (VSS) | |
| C113 | 4 | Middle rear of engine compartment | Heated oxygen sensor (HO2S) | ! |
| C114 | 3 | Middle of engine | MAP sensor | |
| C115 | 3 | Middle of engine | Throttle position (TP) sensor | |
| C116 | 2 | Middle of engine | Idle air control (IAC) valve | |
| C117 | 2 | Middle of engine | Evaporative emission (EVAP) purge control solenoid valve | |
| C118 | 1 | Middle of engine | Engine oil pressure switch | |
| C119 | 4 | Left side of engine | Alternator | |
| C120 | 2 | Middle of engine | Intake air temperature (IAT) sensor | |
| C121 | 2 | Middle of engine | No. 1 fuel injector | |
| C122 | 2 | Middle of engine | No. 2 fuel injector | |
| C123 | 2 | Middle of engine | No. 3 fuel injector | |
| C124 | 2 | Middle of engine | No. 4 fuel injector | |
| C125 | 8 | Left side of engine compartment | Junction connector | |
| C126 | 2 | Left side of engine compartment | Engine compartment wire harness (C304) | |
| C127 | 14 | Left side of engine compartment | Engine compartment wire harness (C305) | |
| C128 | 3 | Transmission | Shift control solenoid valve A and B | A/1 |
| C129 | 2 | Transmission | Countershaft speed sensor | A/1 |
| C130 | 2 | Transmission | Mainshaft speed sensor | A/1 |
| T101 | - | Left side of engine | Alternator | |
| T101 | | Right side of engine compartment | Under-hood fuse/relay box | |
| G101 | - | Right side of engine | Engine ground, via engine wire harness | |

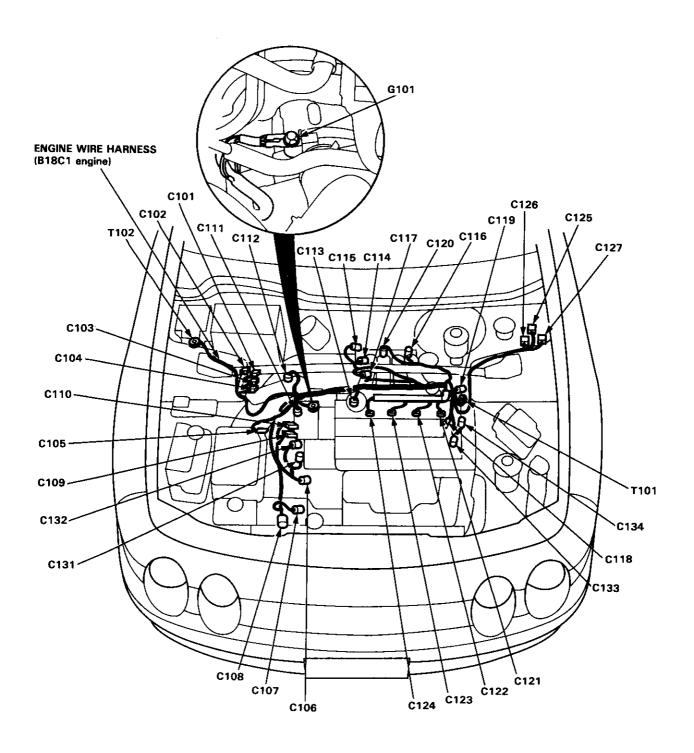




Engine Wire Harness (B18C1 engine)

| Connector or Terminal | Number of Cavities | Location | Connects to | Notes |
|--------------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------------------|--|-------------|
| C101 | 4 | Right side of engine compartment | Main wire harness (C221) | |
| C102 | 10 | Right side of engine compartment | Main wire harness (C222) | |
| C103 | 14 | Right side of engine compartment | Main wire harness (C223) | |
| C104 | 2 | Right side of engine compartment | Main wire harness (C220) | |
| C105 | 1 1 | Right side of engine compartment | Starter solenoid | |
| C106 | 2 | Right side of engine | Engine coolant temperature (ECT) sensor | |
| C107 | 1 | Right side of engine | Engine coolant temperature (ECT) gauge sending unit | |
| C108 | 2 | Transmission | Back-up light switch | |
| C109 | 2 | Middle of engine | Ignition coil | |
| C110 | 8 | Middle of engine | Top dead center/Crankshaft | } |
| 3110 | | | position/Cylinder position (TDC/CKP/CYP) sensor | |
| C111 | 2 | Right side of engine | Engine coolant temperature (ECT) switch | |
| C112 | 3 | Right side of engine compartment | Vehicle speed sensor (VSS) | |
| C113 | 4 | Middle rear of engine compartment | Heated oxygen sensor (HO2S) | |
| C114 | 3 | Middle of engine | MAP sensor | |
| C115 | 3 | Middle of engine | Throttle position (TP) sensor | |
| C116 | 2 | Middle of engine | Idle air control (IAC) valve | |
| C117 | 2 | Middle of engine | Evaporative emission (EVAP) purge control solenoid valve | |
| C118 | 1 | Middle of engine | Engine oil pressure switch | |
| C119 | 4 | Left side of engine | Alternator | |
| C120 | 2 | Middle of engine | Intake air temperature (IAT) sensor | |
| C121 | 2 | Middle of engine | No. 1 fuel injector | |
| C121 | 2 | Middle of engine | No. 2 fuel injector | |
| C123 | 2 | Middle of engine | No. 3 fuel injector | |
| C124 | 2 | Middle of engine | No. 4 fuel injector | |
| C125 | 8 | Left side of engine compartment | Junction connector | |
| C126 | 2 | Left side of engine compartment | Engine compartment wire harness (C304) | |
| C127 | 14 | Left side of engine compartment | Engine compartment wire harness (C305) | |
| C131 | 1 | Right side of engine | VTEC solenoid valve | |
| C132 | 2 | Right side of engine | VTEC oil pressure switch | |
| C132 | 2 | Middle of engine | Knock sensor (KS) | |
| C133 | 2 | Middle of engine | Intake air bypass (IAB) control sole- | |
| C134 | | Tinadio or origina | noid valve | |
| T101 | | Left side of engine | Alternator | |
| T102 | | Right side of engine compartment | Under-hood fuse/relay box | |
| G101 | | Right side of engine | Engine ground, via engine wire harness | |





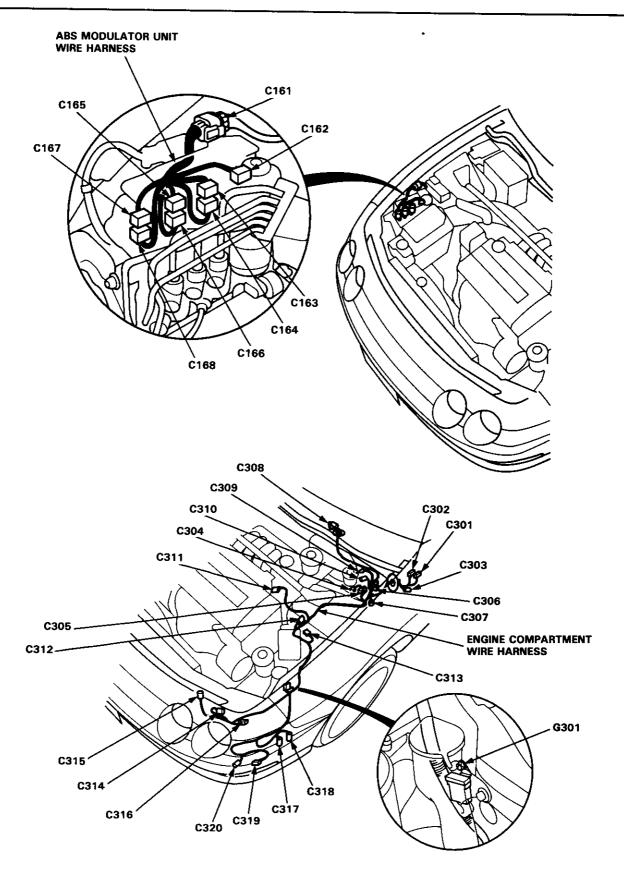
ABS Modulator Unit Wire Harness

| Connector or Terminal | Number of Cavities | Location | Connects to | Notes |
|--------------------------|-----------------------|----------------------------------|--------------------------------|-------|
| C161 | 14 | Right side of engine compartment | Main wire harness (C211) | |
| C162 | 2 | ABS modulator unit | ABS pressure switch | |
| C163 | 2 | ABS modulator unit | ABS right front solenoid (OUT) | |
| C164 | 2 | ABS modulator unit | ABS right front solenoid (IN) | |
| C165 | 2 | ABS modulator unit | ABS rear solenoid (OUT) | l l |
| C166 | 2 | ABS modulator unit | ABS rear solenoid (IN) | |
| C167 | 2 | ABS modulator unit | ABS left front solenoid (OUT) | |
| C168 | 2 | ABS modulator unit | ABS left front solenoid (IN) | l |

Engine Compartment Wire Harness

| Connector or Terminal | Number of Cavities | Location | Connects to | Notes |
|--------------------------|-----------------------|------------------------------------|---|--------|
| C301 | 20 | Behind left kick panel | Main wire harness (C423) | |
| C302 | 20 | Behind left kick panel | Main wire harness (C424) | |
| C303 | 1 | Behind left kick panel | Front fog light system | Option |
| C304 | 2 | Left side of engine compartment | Engine wire harness (C126) | |
| C305 | 14 | Left side of engine compartment | Engine wire harness (C127) | |
| C306 | 2 | Left side of engine compartment | Test tachometer connector | |
| C307 | 3 | Left side of engine compartment | Daytime running lights resistor | Canada |
| C308 | 5 | Left side of engine compartment | Windshield wiper motor | |
| C309 | 1 | Left side of engine compartment | Brake fluid level sensor (+) | |
| C310 | 1 | Left side of engine compartment | Brake fluid level sensor (-) | |
| C311 | 2 | Middle of engine compartment | Power steering pressure (PSP) switch | USA |
| C312 | 2 | Left side of engine compartment | Left front wheel sensor | ABS |
| C313 | 4 | Left side of engine compartment | Cruise control actuator | |
| C314 | 2 | Behind left headlight | Left headlight (Low beam) | |
| C315 | 2 | Behind left headlight | Left headlight (High beam) | |
| C316 | 1 | Behind left headlight | Front fog light system | Option |
| C317 | 2 | Behind left corner of front bumper | Windshield washer motor | |
| C318 | 2 | Behind left corner of front bumper | Rear window washer motor | |
| C319 | 2 | Behind left corner of front bumper | Left front side marker light | |
| C320 | 3 | Behind left corner of front bumper | Left front turn signal/parking lights | |
| G301 | | Left side of engine compartment | Body ground, via engine compart- ment wire harness | |

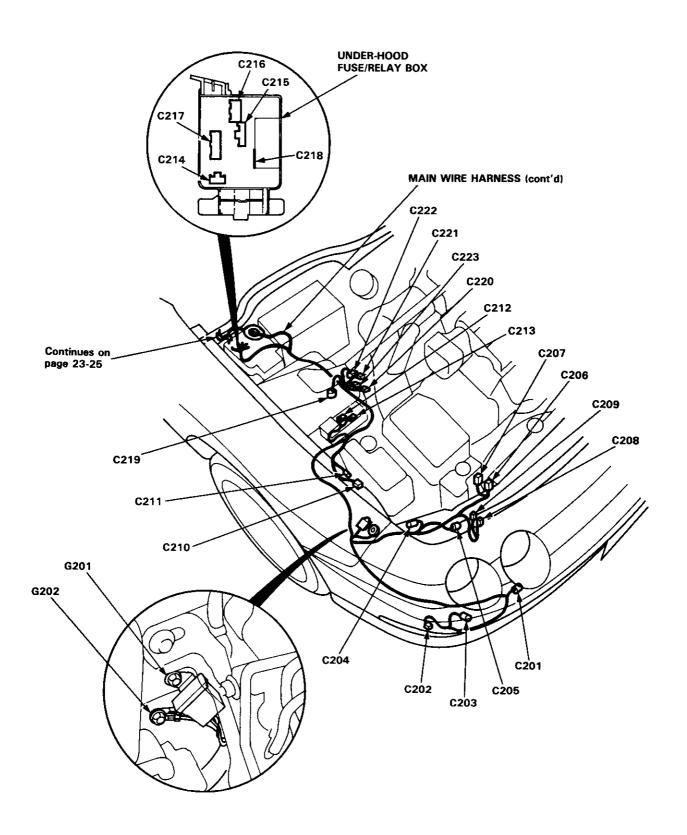




Main Wire Harness (Under-hood branch)

| Connector or Terminal | Number of Cavities | Location | Connects to | Notes |
|--------------------------|-----------------------|--|--|-----------------|
| C201 | 2 | Behind right side of front bumper | Horn | |
| C202 | 2 | Behind right corner of front | Right front turn signal/parking light | |
| C203 | 3 | bumper Behind right corner of front bumper | Right front side marker light | |
| C204 | 2 | Behind right headlight | Right headlight (Low beam) | |
| C205 | 2 | Behind right headlight | Right headlight (High beam) | |
| C206 | 2 | Right side of engine compartment | Radiator fan motor | |
| C207 | 8 | Right side of engine compartment | A/C wire harness (C151) | |
| C208 | 4 | Right side of engine compartment | ABS front fail safe relay | |
| C209 | 4 | Right side of engine compartment | ABS rear fail safe relay | |
| C210 | 2 | Right side of engine compartment | ABS pump motor | |
| C211 | 14 | Right side of engine compartment | ABS modulator unit wire harness (C161) | |
| C212 | 3 | Right side of engine compartment | Under-hood ABS fuse/relay box (C901) | |
| C213 | 4 | Right side of engine compartment | Under-hood ABS fuse/relay box (C902) | |
| C214 | 2 | Right side of engine compartment | Under-hood fuse/relay box (C907) | |
| C214 | 3 | Right side of engine compartment | Under-hood fuse/relay box (C909) | |
| C216 | 5 | Right side of engine compartment | Under-hood fuse/relay box (C910) | |
| C210 | 7 | Right side of engine compartment | Under-hood fuse/relay box (C908) | |
| C217 | 3 | Right side of engine compartment | Under-hood fuse/relay box (C911) | |
| C218 | 2 | Right side of engine compartment | Right front wheel sensor | ABS |
| C219 | 2 | Right side of engine compartment | Engine wire harness (C104) | B18C1 engine |
| C220 | 6 | Right side of engine compartment | Engine wire harness (C104) | B18B1 engine |
| C221 | 4 | Right side of engine compartment | Engine wire harness (C101) | |
| C222 | 10 | Right side of engine compartment | Engine wire harness (C102) | |
| C223 | 14 | Right side of engine compartment | Engine wire harness (C103) | |
| G201 | | Right side of engine compartment | Body ground, via main wire harness | |
| G202 | | Right side of engine compartment | Body ground, via main wire harness | ABS |

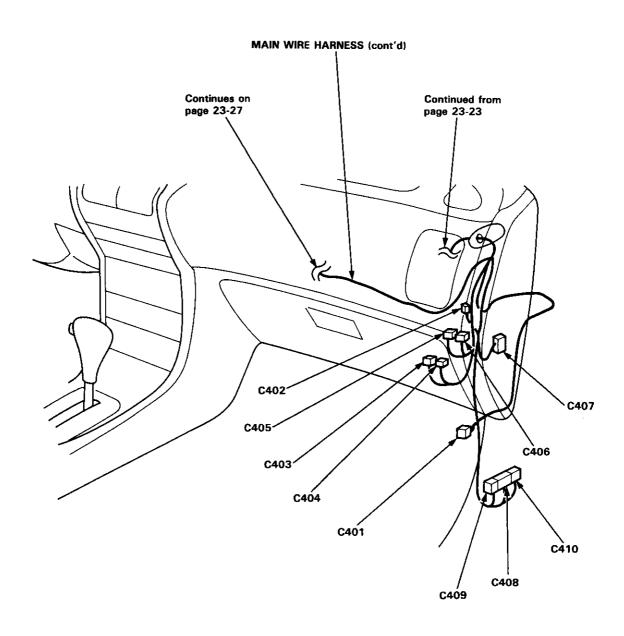




Main Wire Harness (Right branch)

| Connector or Terminal | Number of Cavities | Location | Connects to | Notes |
|--------------------------|-----------------------|--------------------------|--|-------|
| C401 | 25 | Front Passenger's door | Front passenger's door wire harness (C626) | |
| C402 | 3 | Under right side of dash | A/C diode |] |
| C403 | 2 | Under right side of dash | Heater sub-harness A (C672) | |
| C404 | 10 | Under right side of dash | Heater sub-harness A (C671) | |
| C405 | 2 | Under right side of dash | SCS short connector | |
| C406 | 3 | Under right side of dash | Data link connector (DLC) | |
| C407 | 22 | Behind right kick panel | ABS sub-harness (C701) | |
| C408 | 16 | Behind right kick panel | Engine control module (ECM) | |
| C409 | 22 | Behind right kick panel | Engine control module (ECM) | |
| C410 | 26 | Behind right kick panel | Engine control module (ECM) | |

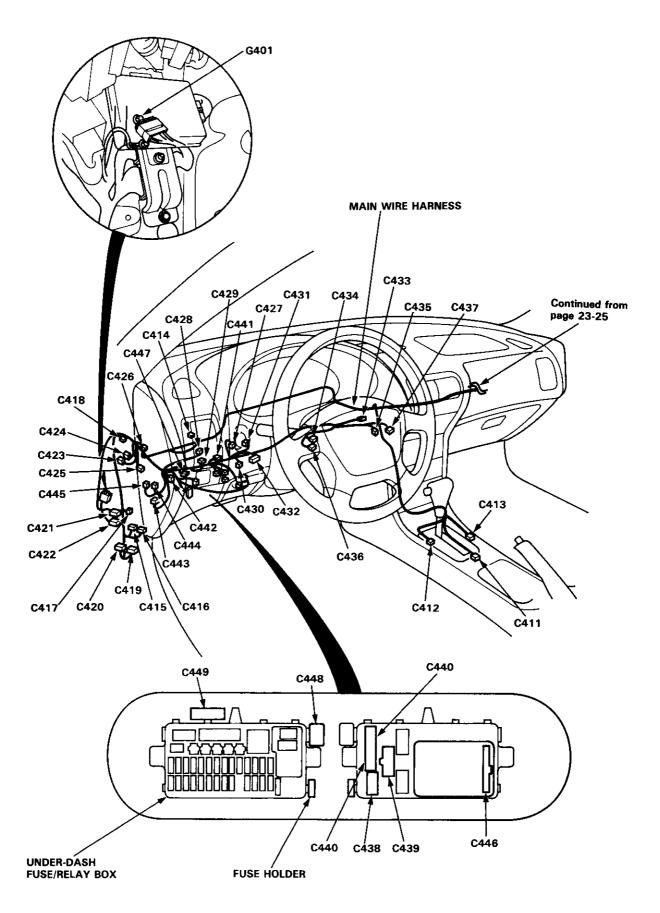




Main Wire Harness (Left branch)

| Connector or Terminal | Number of Cavities | Location | Connects to | Notes |
|--------------------------|-----------------------|----------------------------------|--|--------|
| C411 | 2 | Center floor | A/T gear position console light | A/T |
| C412 | 2 | Center floor | Shift lock solenoid | A/T |
| C413 | 14 | Center floor | A/T gear position switch | A/T |
| C414 | 8 | Under left side of dash | Interlock control unit | A/T |
| C415 | 4 | Behind left kick panel | Daytime running lights control unit | Canada |
| C416 | 8 | Behind left kick panel | Daytime running lights control unit | Canada |
| C417 | 14 | Behind left kick panel | Cruise control unit | |
| C418 | 20 | Behind left kick panel | Junction connector | |
| C419 | 22 | Behind left kick panel | Transmission control module (TCM) | A/T |
| C420 | 26 | Behind left kick panel | Transmission control module (TCM) | A/T |
| C421 | 10 | Behind left kick panel | Rear wire harness (C501) | |
| C422 | 14 | Behind left kick panel | Rear wire harness (C502) | |
| C423 | 20 | Under left side of dash | Engine compartment wire harness (C301) | |
| C424 | 20 | Under left side of dash | Engine compartment wire harness (C302) | |
| C425 | 2 | Under left side of dash | Roof wire harness (C663) | |
| C426 | 14 | Under left side of dash | Security system (Option) | Canada |
| C427 | 4 | Under left side of dash | SRS main harness (C802) | |
| C428 | 2 | Under left side of dash | Clutch interlock switch | M/T |
| C429 | 2 | Under left side of dash | Clutch switch (Cruise control) | M/T |
| C430 | 10 | Under left side of dash | Dashboard wire harness (C552) | A/T |
| C431 | 2 | Under left side of dash | Brake switch (Without cruise control) | |
| C431 | 4 | Under left side of dash | Brake switch (With cruise control) | |
| C432 | 7 | Under left side of dash | Ignition switch | |
| C433 | 2 | Under left side of dash | Security system (Option) | Canada |
| C434 | 4 | Under left side of dash | Combination light switch | |
| C435 | 6 | Under left side of dash | Combination light switch | |
| C436 | 7 | Under left side of dash | Combination light switch | |
| C437 | 8 | Under left side of dash | Combination light switch | |
| C438 | 5 | Behind dashboard lower cover | Under-dash fuse/relay box (C913) | |
| C439 | 7 | Behind dashboard lower cover | Under-dash fuse/relay box (C916) | |
| C440 | 22 | Behind dashboard lower cover | Under-dash fuse/relay box (C917) | |
| C441 | 6 | Under left side of dash | Security system (Option) | Canada |
| C442 | 4 | Under left side of dash | Security system (Option) | Canada |
| C443 | 7 | Under left side of dash | PGM-FI main relay | |
| C444 | 4 | Under left side of dash | Starter cut relay | M/T |
| C445 | 4 | Under left side of dash | Rear window defogger relay | |
| C446 | 15 | Behind under-dash fuse/relay box | Integrated control unit | _ |
| C447 | 3 | Under left side of dash | Security system (Option) | Canada |
| C448 | 4 | Behind dashboard lower cover | Horn relay | |
| C449 | 16 | Behind dashboard lower cover | Dashboard wire harness (C553) | |
| G401 | | Behind left kick panel | Body ground, via main wire harness | |

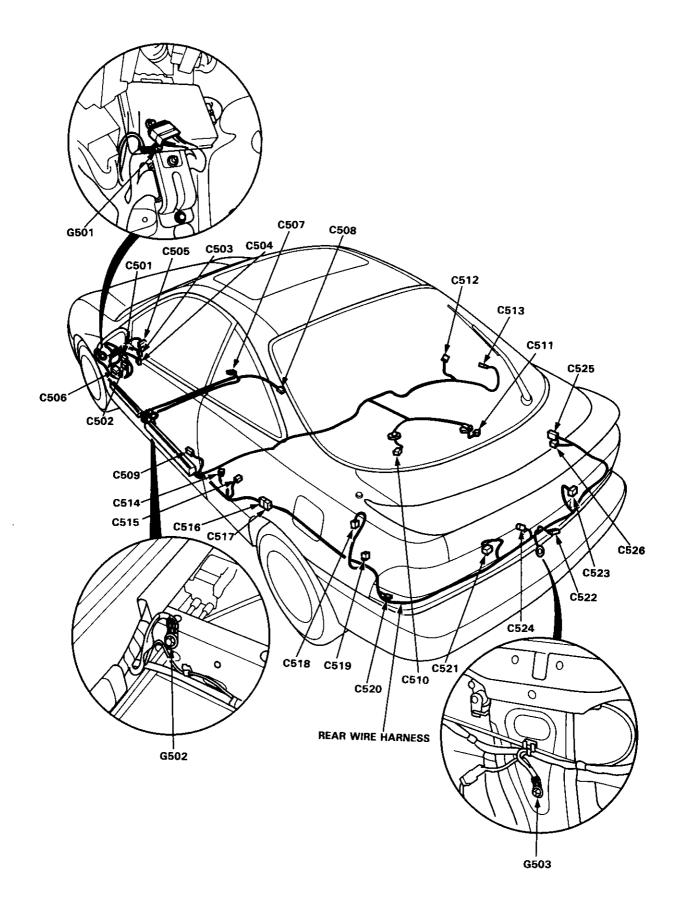




Rear Wire Harness (Hatchback)

| Connector or Terminal | Number of Cavities | Location | Connects to | Notes |
|--------------------------|-----------------------|---------------------------------|------------------------------------|-------|
| C501 | 10 | Behind left kick panel | Main wire harness (C421) | |
| C502 | 14 | Behind left kick panel | Main wire harness (C422) | |
| C503 | 10 | Behind dashboard lower cover | Under-dash fuse/relay box (C912) | |
| C504 | 12 | Behind dashboard lower cover | Under-dash fuse/relay box (C915) | |
| C505 | 12 | Behind dashboard lower cover | Dashboard wire harness (C554) | |
| C506 | 25 | Driver's door | Driver's door wire harness (C601) | |
| C507 | 2 | Center floor | Driver's seat belt switch | |
| C508 | 1 | Center floor | Parking brake switch | |
| C509 | 1 | Left quarter panel | Driver's door switch | |
| C510 | 2 | Fuel tank | Fuel pump | |
| C511 | 3 | Fuel tank | Fuel gauge sending unit | |
| C512 | 1 | Right quarter panel | Passenger's door switch | |
| C513 | 2 | Right quarter panel | Right rear speaker | |
| C514 | 2 | Left quarter panel | Left rear speaker | |
| C515 | 2 | Left quarter panel | Noise condenser | |
| C516 | 20 | Left quarter panel | Connector C517 | |
| C517 | 20 | Left quarter panel | Connector C516 | |
| C518 | 3 | Left side corner of cargo area | Power antenna motor | |
| C519 | 2 | Left side corner of cargo area | Cargo area light | |
| C520 | 6 | Left side corner of cargo area | Trailer lighting connector | |
| C521 | 6 | Left rear corner of cargo area | Left taillight | |
| C522 | 2 | Center of cargo area bulkhead | License plate lights | |
| C523 | 6 | Right rear corner of cargo area | Right taillight | |
| C524 | 2 | Center of cargo area bulkhead | Tailgate latch switch | |
| C525 | 2 | Right side of cargo area | Tailgate wire harness (C752) | |
| C526 | 4 | Right side of cargo area | Tailgate wire harness (C751) | |
| G501 | | Behind left kick panel | Body ground, via rear wire harness | |
| G502 | | Left side of floor | Body ground, via rear wire harness | |
| G503 | | Center of cargo area bulkhead | Body ground, via rear wire harness | |

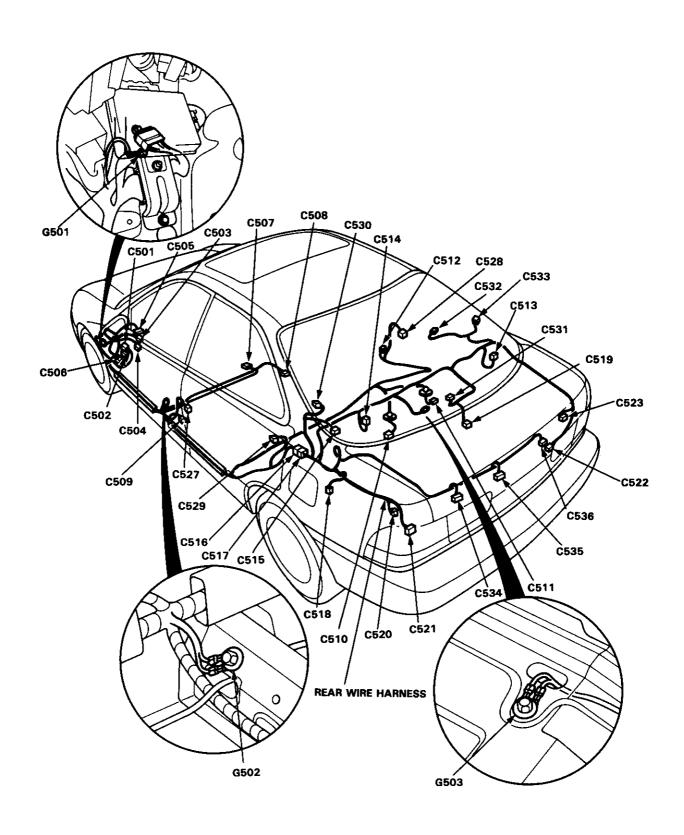




Rear Wire Harness (Sedan)

| Connector or Terminal | Number of Cavities | Location | Connects to | Notes |
|--------------------------|-----------------------|------------------------------|---------------------------------------|-------|
| C501 | 10 | Behind left kick panel | Main wire harness (C421) | |
| C502 | 14 | Behind left kick panel | Main wire harness (C422) | |
| C503 | 10 | Behind dashboard lower cover | Under-dash fuse/relay box (C912) | |
| C504 | 12 | Behind dashboard lower cover | Under-dash fuse/relay box (C915) | |
| C505 | 12 | Behind dashboard lower cover | Dashboard wire harness (C554) | |
| C506 | 25 | Driver's door | Driver's door wire harness (C601) | |
| C507 | 2 | Center floor | Driver's seat belt switch | |
| C508 | 1 | Center floor | Parking brake switch | |
| C509 | 1 | Left B-pillar | Driver's door switch | |
| C510 | 2 | Fuel tank | Fuel pump | |
| C511 | 3 | Fuel tank | Fuel gauge sending unit | |
| C512 | 1 | Right B-pillar | Front passenger's door switch | |
| C513 | 2 | Above right side of trunk | Right rear speaker | |
| C514 | 2 | Above left side of trunk | Left rear speaker | |
| C515 | 2 | Left quarter panel | Noise condenser | |
| C516 | 20 | Left quarter panel | Connector C517 | |
| C517 | 20 | Left quarter panel | Connector C516 | |
| C518 | 3 | Left side corner of trunk | Power antenna motor | |
| C519 | 2 | Above center of trunk | Trunk light | |
| C520 | 6 | Left side corner of trunk | Trailer lighting connector | |
| C521 | 4 | Left rear corner of trunk | Left outer taillight | |
| C522 | 2 | Right rear corner of trunk | License plate lights | |
| C523 | 4 | Right rear corner of trunk | Right outer taillight | |
| C527 | 6 | Left rear door | Left rear door wire harness (C651) | |
| C528 | 6 | Right rear door | Right rear door wire harness (C656) | |
| C529 | 1 | Left quarter panel | Left rear door switch | |
| C530 | 1 | Left side of rear window | Rear window defogger (+) | |
| C531 | 2 | Above right side of trunk | High mount brake light | |
| C532 | 1 | Right quarter panel | Right rear door switch | |
| C533 | 1 | Right side of rear window | Rear window defogger (-) | |
| C534 | 4 | Left side of trunk lid | Left inner taillight | |
| C535 | 2 | Center of trunk lid | Trunk latch switch | |
| C536 | 4 | Right side of trunk lid | Right inner taillight | |
| G501 | | Behind left kick panel | Body ground, via rear wire harness | |
| G502 | | Left side of floor | Body ground, via rear wire harness | |
| G503 | | Above center of trunk | Body ground, via rear wire harness | |

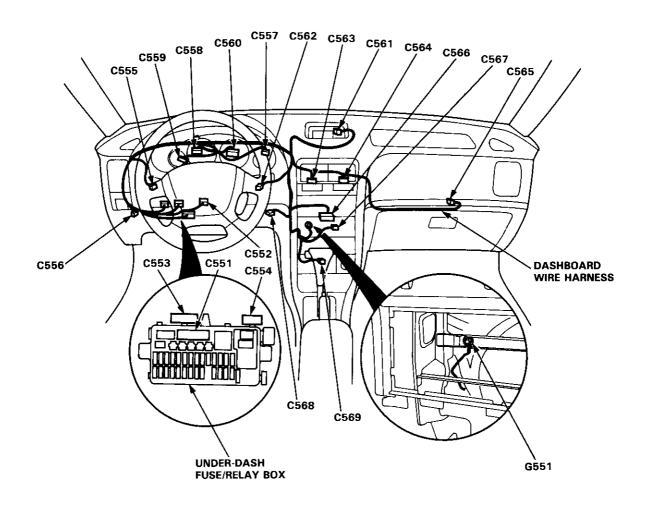




Dashboard Wire Harness

| Connector or Terminal | Number of Cavities | Location | Connects to | Notes |
|--------------------------|-----------------------|------------------------------|---|-------|
| C551 | 20 | Behind dashboard lower cover | Under-dash fuse/relay box (C919) | |
| C552 | 10 | Behind dashboard lower cover | Main wire harness (C430) | A/T |
| C553 | 16 | Behind dashboard lower cover | Main wire harness (C449) | |
| C554 | 12 | Behind dashboard lower cover | Rear wire harness (C505) | |
| C555 | 5 | Under left side of dash | Cruise main switch | |
| C556 | 22 | Under left side of dash | Junction connector | |
| C557 | 5 | Behind gauges | Gauge assembly | |
| C558 | 10 | Behind gauges | Gauge assembly | |
| C559 | 13 | Behind gauges | Gauge assembly | |
| C560 | 16 | Behind gauges | Gauge assembly | |
| C561 | 4 | Behind middle of dash | Clock | |
| C562 | 3 | Left side of dash | Dash lights brightness controller | |
| C563 | 10 | Behind middle of dash | Hazard warning switch | |
| C564 | 6 | Behind middle of dash | Rear window defogger switch | |
| C565 | 2 | Right side of dash | Glove box light | |
| C566 | 16 | Under middle of dash | Stereo radio/cassette player | |
| C567 | 2 | Under middle of dash | Chime | |
| C568 | 5 | Behind dashboard lower cover | Maintenance reminder unit | |
| C569 | 4 | Under middle of dash | Cigarette lighter | |
| G551 | | Under middle of dash | Body ground, via dashboard wire harness | |



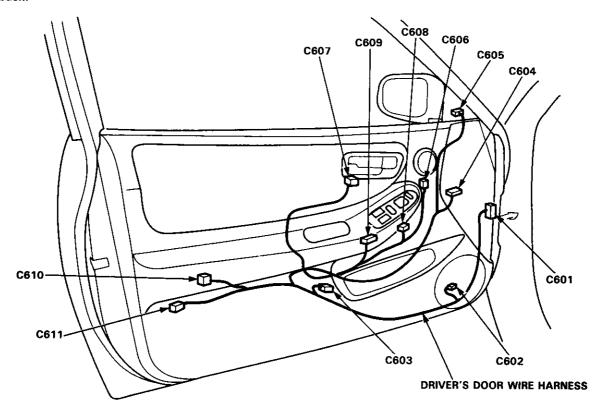


Driver's Door Wire Harness

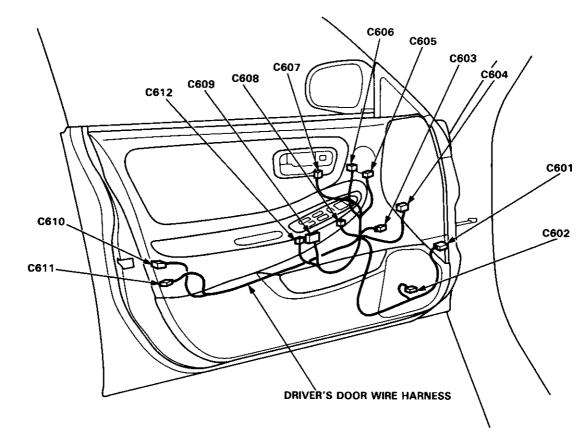
| Connector or Terminal | Number of Cavities | Location | Connects to | Notes |
|--------------------------|-----------------------|---------------------|---|-----------------|
| C601 | 25 | Driver's door | Driver's door wire harness (C506) | |
| C602 | 2 | Driver's door | Driver's door speaker | |
| C603 | 4 | Driver's door | Driver's power window motor | |
| C604 | 14 | Driver's door | Power door lock control unit | |
| C605 | 8 | Behind mirror panel | Left power mirror | Hatchback |
| C605 | 8 | Driver's door | Left power mirror | Sedan |
| C606 | 2 | Driver's door | Left tweeter | B18C1 engine |
| C607 | 3 | Driver's door | Driver's door lock switch | J. 13 |
| C608 | 10 | Driver's door | Power mirror switch | |
| C609 | 10 | Driver's door | Power window master switch | |
| C610 | 6 | Driver's door | Driver's door lock actuator as- sembly | |
| C611 | 2 | Driver's door | Driver's key cylinder switch | |
| C612 | 1 | Driver's door | Power window master switch | Sedan |



Hatchback:



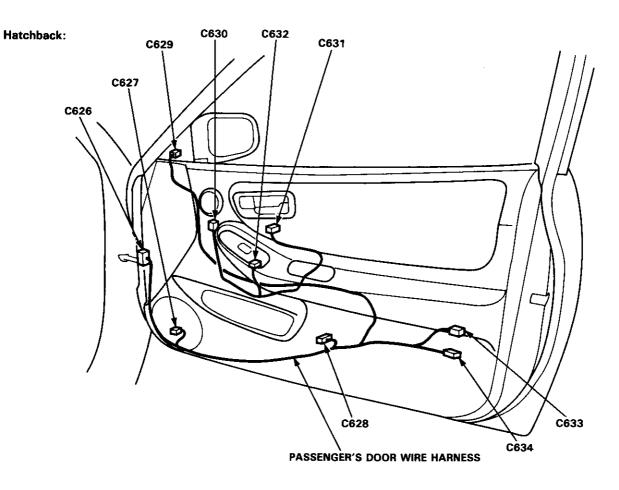


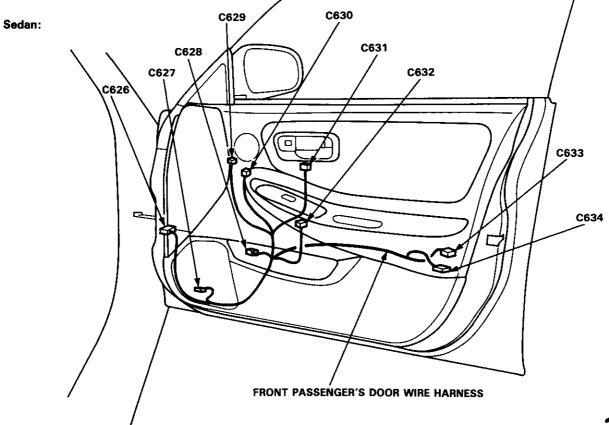


Front Passenger's Door Wire Harness

| Connector or Terminal | Number of Cavities | Location | Connects to | Notes |
|--------------------------|-----------------------|------------------------|--|-----------------|
| C626 | 25 | Front passenger's door | Main wire harness (C401) | |
| C627 | 2 | Front passenger's door | Front passenger's door speaker | |
| C628 | 2 | Front passenger's door | Front passenger's power window motor | |
| C629 | 8 | Behind cover panel | Right power mirror | Hatchback |
| C629 | 8 | Front passenger's door | Right power mirror | Sedan |
| C630 | 2 | Front passenger's door | Right tweeter | B18C1 engine |
| C631 | 3 | Front passenger's door | Front passenger's door lock switch | |
| C632 | 5 | Front passenger's door | Front passenger's power window switch | |
| C633 | 2 | Front passenger's door | Front passenger's door lock actuator | |
| C634 | 3 | Front passenger's door | Front passenger's door key cylinder switch | |







23-37

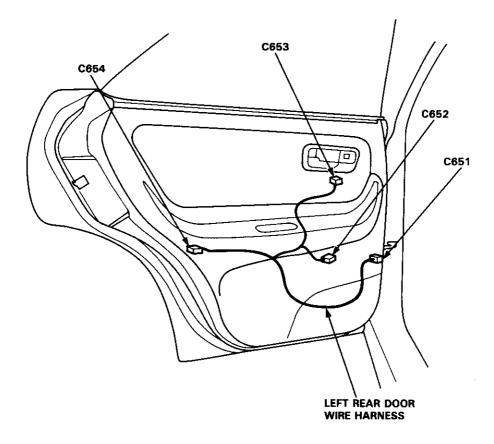
Left Rear Door Wire Harness (Sedan)

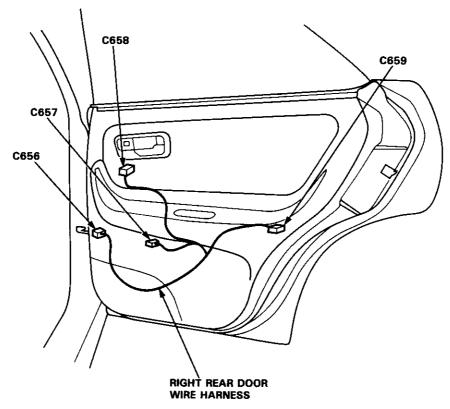
| Connector or Terminal | Number of Cavities | Location | Connects to | Notes |
|------------------------------|-----------------------|--|---|-------|
| C651 C652 C653 C654 | 6 2 5 2 | Left rear door Left rear door Left rear door Left rear door | Rear wire harness (C527) Left rear power window motor Left rear power window switch Left rear power window actuator | |

Right Rear Door Wire Harness (Sedan)

| Connector or Terminal | Number of Cavities | Location | Connects to | Notes |
|------------------------------|-----------------------|--|--|-------|
| C656 C657 C658 C659 | 6 2 5 2 | Right rear door Right rear door Right rear door Right rear door | Rear wire harness (C528) Right rear power window motor Right rear power window switch Right rear power window actuator | · |





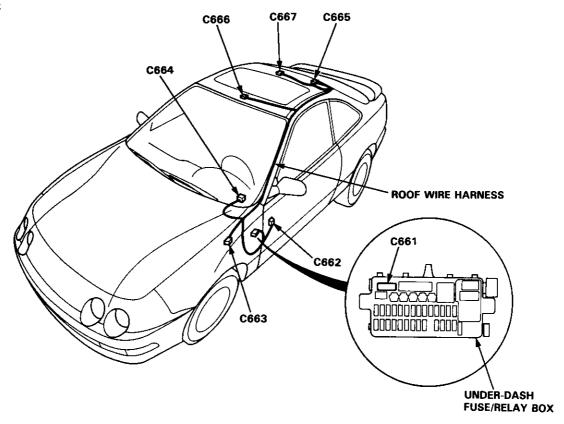


Roof Wire Harness

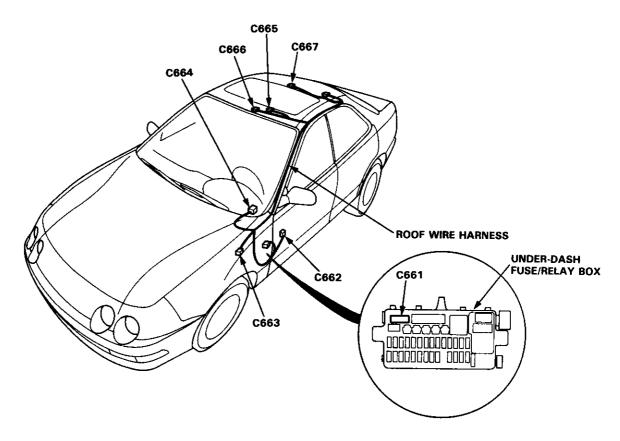
| Connector or Terminal | Number of Cavities | Location | Connects to | Notes |
|--------------------------|-----------------------|------------------------|----------------------------------|------------------|
| C661 | 3 | Behind left kick panel | Under-dash fuse/relay box (C918) | With moonroof |
| C662 | 4 | Behind left kick panel | Moonroof relay | With moonroof |
| C663 | 2 | Behind left kick panel | Main wire harness (C425) | |
| C664 | 4 | Left side of dashboard | Moonroof switch | With moonroo |
| C665 | 2 | Roof | Moonroof motor | With moonroo |
| C666 | 1 | Roof | Spotlight | With moonroo |
| C667 | 3 | Roof | Ceiling light | |



Hatchback:



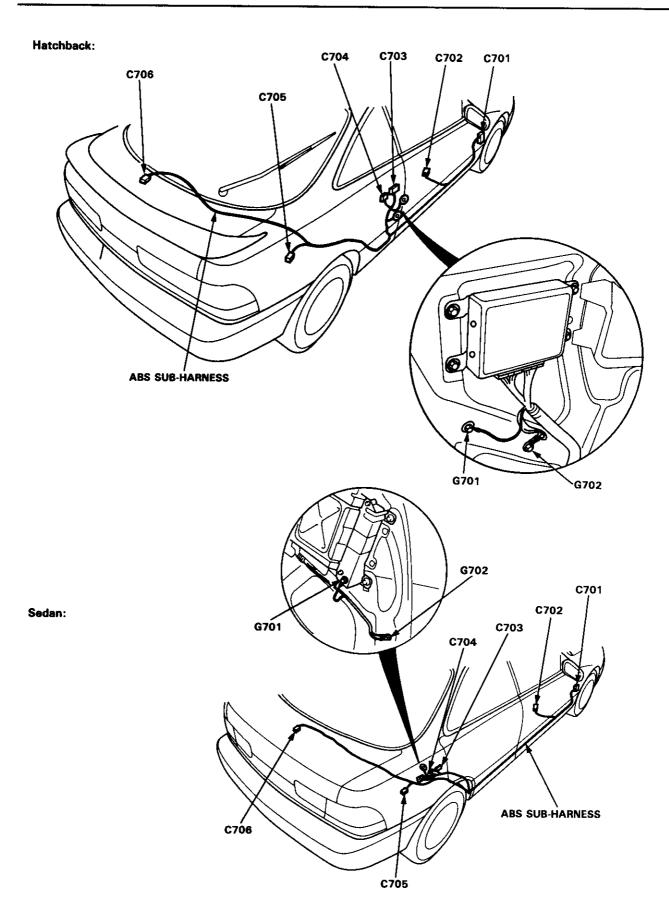
Sedan:



ABS Sub-harness

| Connector or Terminal | Number of Cavities | Location | Connects to | Notes |
|--------------------------|-----------------------|--------------------------|----------------------------------|-----------|
| C701 | 22 | Behind right kick panel | Main wire harness (C407) | |
| C702 | 6 | Right side of floor | ABS maintenance connector | |
| C703 | 26 | Right quarter panel | ABS control unit | |
| C704 | 22 | Right quarter panel | ABS control unit | |
| C705 | 2 | Right side of cargo area | ABS right wheel sensor | Hatchback |
| C705 | 2 | Right side of trunk | ABS right wheel sensor | Sedan |
| C706 | 2 | Left side of cargo area | ABS left wheel sensor | Hatchback |
| C706 | 2 | Left side of trunk | ABS left wheel sensor | Sedan |
| G701 | | Right quarter panel | Body ground, via ABS sub-harness | |
| G702 | | Right quarter panel | Body ground, via ABS sub-harness | |





Hatch Wire Harness (Hatchback)

| Connector or Terminal | Number of Cavities | Location | Connects to | Notes |
|--------------------------|-----------------------|---------------------------|-------------------------------------|-----------------|
| C751 | 4 | Right side of cargo area | Rear wire harness (C526) | |
| C752 | 2 | Right side of cargo area | Rear wire harness (C525) | |
| C753 | 1 | Right side of rear window | Rear window defogger (+) | |
| C754 | 2 | Right side of hatch | Spoiler sub-harness (C761) | B18C1 engine |
| C755 | 4 | Middle of hatch | Rear window wiper motor | |
| C756 | 2 | Middle of hatch | High mount brake light | B18B1 engine |
| G751 | | Right side of hatch | Body ground, via hatch wire harness | |

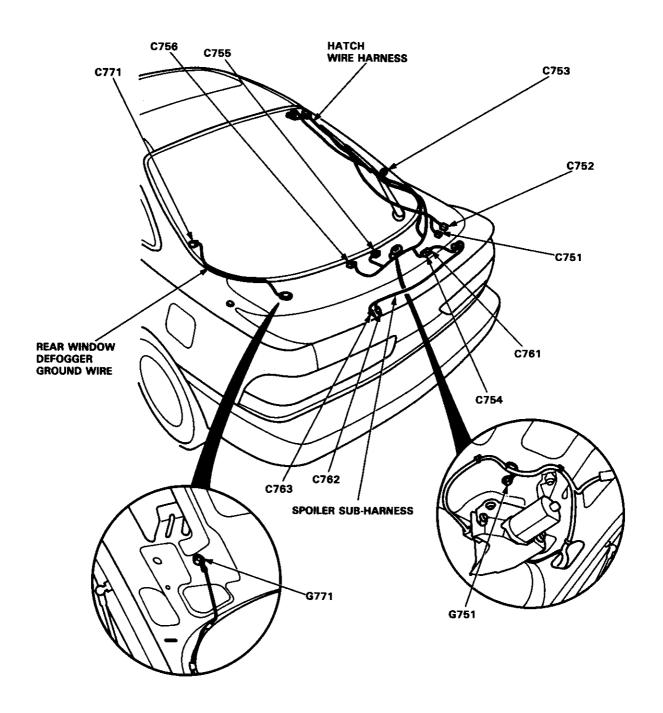
Spoiler Sub-harness (Hatchback with B18C engine)

| Connector or Terminal | Number of Cavities | Location | Connects to | Notes |
|--------------------------|-----------------------|---------------------|----------------------------|-------|
| C761 | 2 | Right side of hatch | Hatch wire harness (C754) | |
| C762 | 1 | Middle of hatch | High mount brake light (+) | |
| C763 | 1 | Middle of hatch | High mount brake light (-) | |

Rear Window Defogger Ground Wire (Hatchback)

| Connector or Terminal | Number of Cavities | Location | Connects to | Notes |
|--------------------------|-----------------------|--------------------------|---|-------|
| C771 | 1 | Left side of rear window | Rear window defogger (-) | |
| G771 | | Left side of rear window | Body ground, via rear window defogger ground wire | |



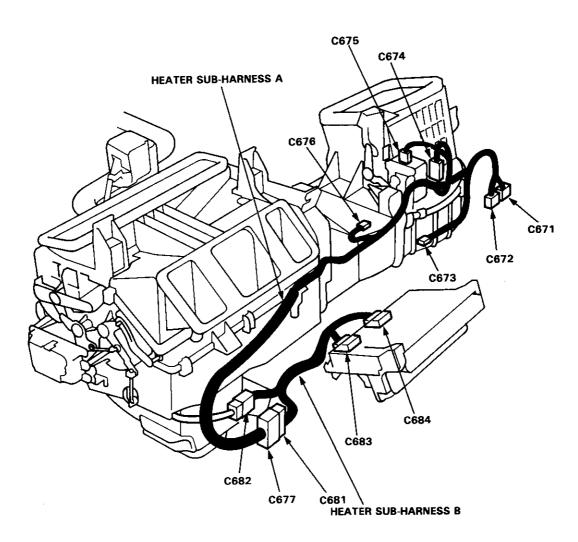


Heater Sub-harness A

| Connector or Terminal | Number of Cavities | Location | Connects to | Notes |
|--------------------------|-----------------------|--------------------------|-----------------------------|-------|
| C671 | 10 | Under right side of dash | Main wire harness (C404) | İ |
| C672 | 2 | Under right side of dash | Main wire harness (C403) | |
| C673 | 2 | Under right side of dash | Blower motor | ļ |
| C674 | 4 | Behind glove box | Blower resistor | |
| C675 | 4 | Behind glove box | Recirculation control motor | |
| C676 | 3 | Behind glove box | A/C thermostat | |
| C677 | 14 | Behind middle of dash | Heater sub-harness B (C681) | |

Heater Sub-harness B

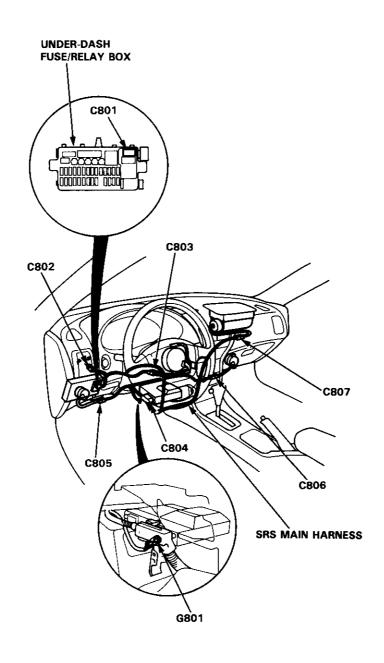
| Connector or Terminal | Number of Cavities | Location | Connects to | Notes |
|------------------------------|-----------------------|--|--|-------|
| C681 C682 C683 C684 | 14 8 6 14 | Behind middle of dash Middle of floor Behind middle of dash Behind middle of dash | Heater sub-harness A (C677) Mode control motor Heater fan switch Heater control panel | |





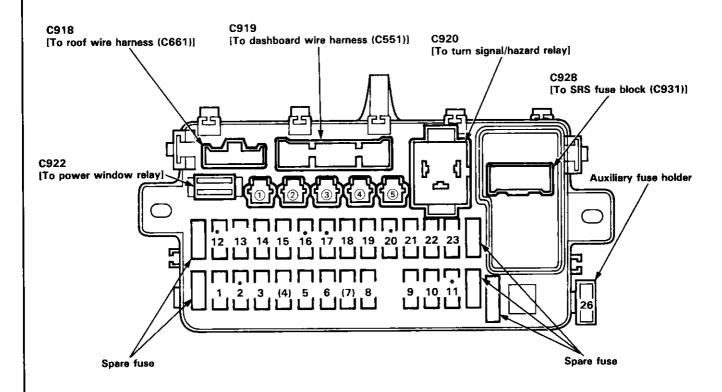
SRS Main Harness

| Connector or Terminal | Number of Cavities | Location | Connects to | Notes |
|--------------------------|-----------------------|------------------------------|-----------------------------------|-------|
| C801 | 2 | Behind dashboard lower cover | Under-dash fuse/relay box (C929) | |
| C802 | 4 | Under left side of dash | Main wire harness (C427) | |
| C803 | 6 | Under left side of dash | Cable reel | |
| C804 | 18 | Middle of floor | SRS unit | |
| C805 | 2 | Under left side of dash | Left dash sensor | |
| C806 | 2 | Under right side of dash | Right dash sensor | |
| C807 | 3 | Behind glove box | Passenger's airbag assembly | |
| G801 | | Middle of floor | Body ground, via SRS main harness | |

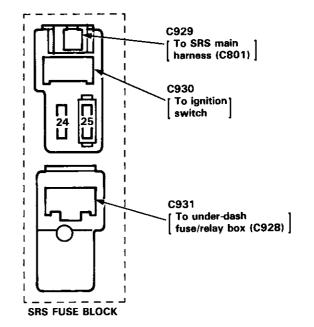


Fuses

Under-dash Fuse/Relay Box



- *: Not used
- •: Canada
- (): Sedan
- (1): C923 [Option (BAT)]
- ②: C924 [Option (BAT)] ③: C925 [Option (IG2)]
- 4: C926 [Option (No. 19 fuse)]
- (5): C927 [Option (ACC)]





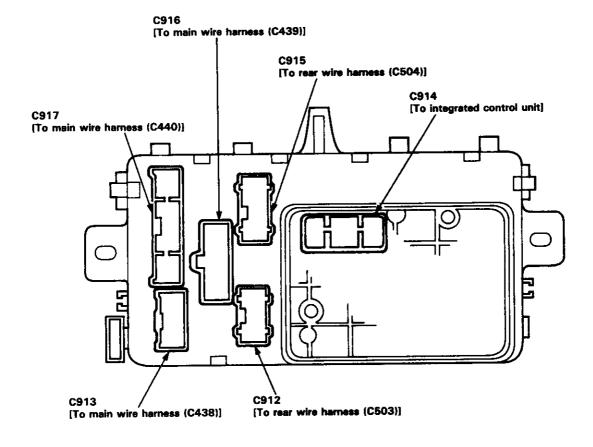
| Fuse Number | Amps | Wire Color | Component (s) or Circuit (s) Protected | | | |
|-------------|-------|------------|--|--|--|--|
| 1 | 30 A | WHT | Moonroof motor | | | |
| 2 | | | Not used | | | |
| 3 | 7.5 A | WHT/RED | Integrated control unit, Ceiling light, Power antenna motor, Data link connector (DLC) | | | |
| 4 | 20 A | YEL/BLK | Right rear power window motor (Sedan) | | | |
| 5 | 20 A | WHT/YEL | Driver's power window motor | | | |
| 6 | 20 A | WHT/GRN | Power door lock control unit | | | |
| 7 | 20 A | GRN/BLK | Left rear power window motor (Sedan) | | | |
| 8 | 20 A | BLU/BLK | Passenger's power window motor | | | |
| 9 | 10 A | RED/BLU | Right headlight (High beam) | | | |
| 10 | 10 A | RED/GRN | Left headlight (High beam), High beam indicator light | | | |
| 11 | | | Not used | | | |
| 12 | | | Not used | | | |
| 13 | 7.5 A | BLK/YEL | Rear window defogger system, A/C system, ABS control unit, Power mirror actuator | | | |
| 14 | 20 A | GRN/BLK | Wiper/washer system, Moonroof relay, Integrated control unit | | | |
| 15 | 10 A | YEL | Gauges, Clock, Back-up lights, Maintenance reminder unit | | | |
| 16 | 7.5 A | YEL/BLK | Daytime running lights control unit (Canada) | | | |
| 17 | 10 A | WHT/YEL | Daytime running lights control unit (Canada) | | | |
| 18 | 7.5 A | BLU/WHT | ECM, PGM-FI main relay | | | |
| 19 | 10 A | RED/BLK | Dash lights, Parking lights, Taillights, License plate lights | | | |
| 20 | | | Not used | | | |
| 21 | 10 A | RED/WHT | Right headlight (Low beam) | | | |
| 22 | 10 A | RED/YEL | Left headlight (Low beam) | | | |
| 23 | 15 A | YEL/RED | Stereo radio/cassette player, Cigarette lighter | | | |
| 24 | *1 | RED | SRS unit | | | |
| _ | | BLK/YEL | PGM-FI main relay, TCM, Cruise control unit, VSS, ELD unit (USA) | | | |
| 25 | 10 A | PNK | SRS unit | | | |
| 26 | 10 A | YEL/BLK | Turn signal/hazard relay | | | |

*1 No. 24 (15 A): B18B1 engine No. 24 (20 A): B18C1 engine

Fuses

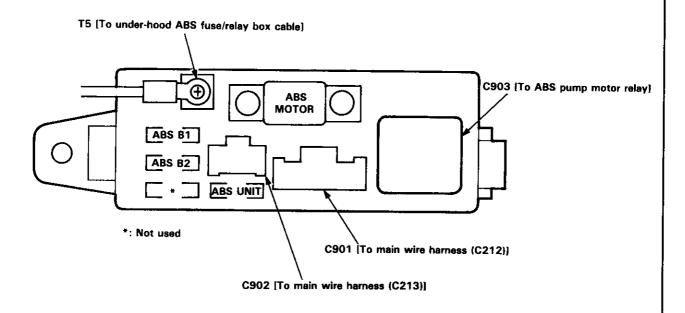
Under-dash Fuse/Relay Box (cont'd)

NOTE: View from the backside of the under-dash fuse/relay box



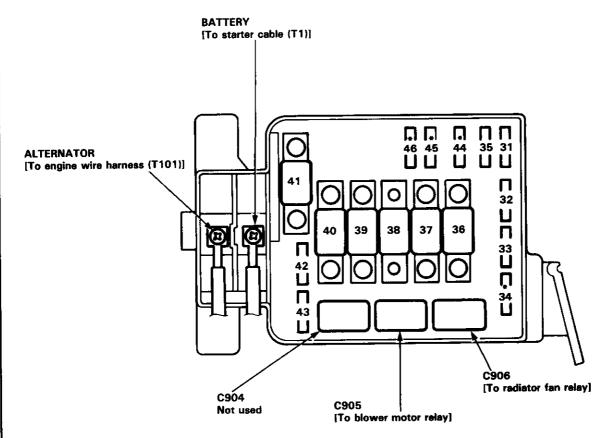


Under-hood ABS Fuse/Relay Box



| Fuse Name | Amps | Wire Color | Component (s) or Circuit (s) Protected |
|-----------|------|------------|--|
| ABS B1 | 20 A | WHT/GRN | Right/left ABS front solenoids |
| ABS B2 | 15 A | WHT | ABS control unit, ABS rear solenoid |
| ABS MOTOR | 40 A | | ABS pump motor relay, ABS unit (10 A) fuse |
| ABS UNIT | 10 A | BRN/YEL | ABS control unit |

Under-hood Fuse/Relay Box

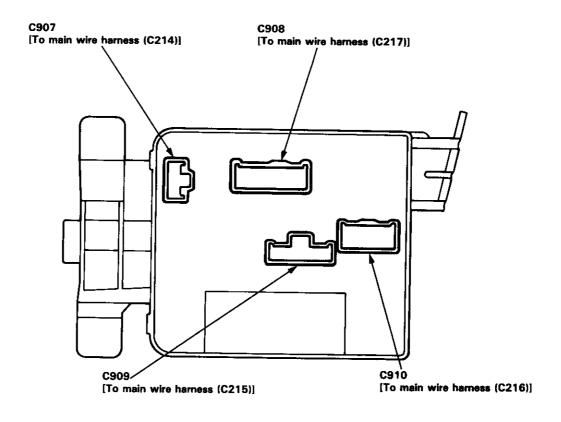


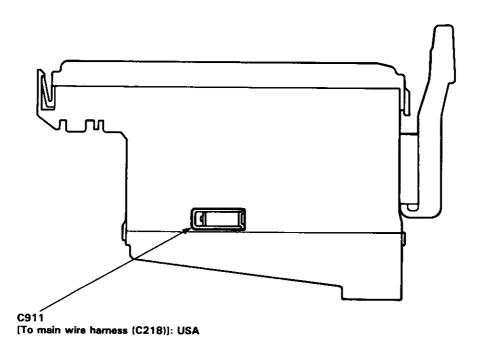
*: Not used

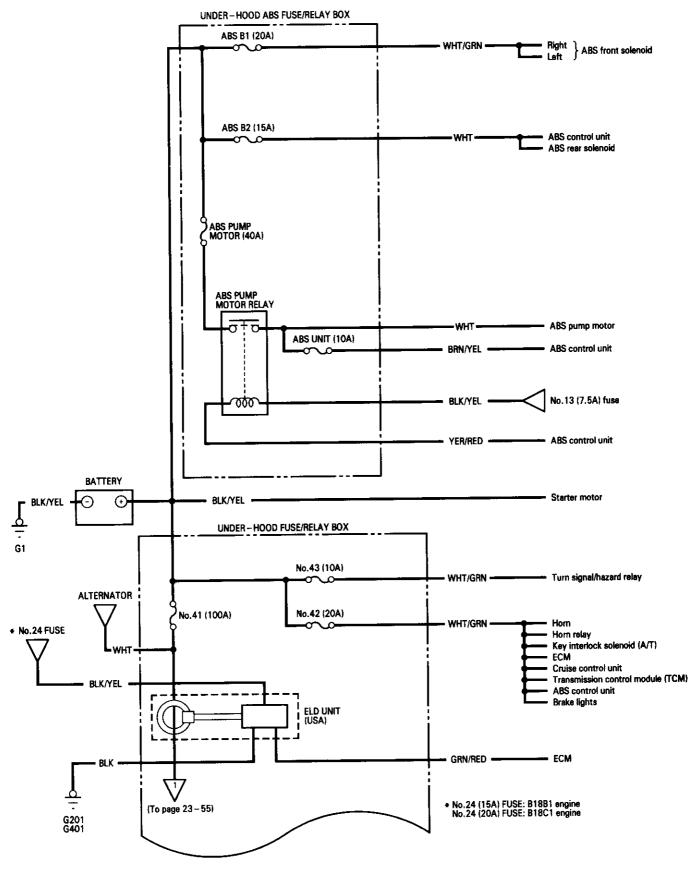
| Fuse Number | Amps | Wire Color | Component (s) or Circuit (s) Protected | | | |
|-------------|-------|------------|--|--|--|--|
| 31 | 15 A | YEL/WHT | PGM-FI main relay | | | |
| 32 | 7.5 A | WHT/BLU | ECM, TCM, Clock, Stereo radio/cassette player, Maintenance reminder unit | | | |
| 33 | 20 A | BLK/RED | Radiator fan motor | | | |
| 34 | | | Not used | | | |
| 35 | 20 A | WHT | Condenser fan motor, A/C compressor clutch | | | |
| 36 | 50 A | WHT/RED | No. 1 (30 A), No. 3 (7.5 A), No. 4 (20 A), No. 5 (20 A), No. 7 (20 A), No. 8 (20 A) fuses | | | |
| 37 | 40 A | BLU/WHT | Blower motor | | | |
| 38 | 30 A | BLK/GRN | Rear window defogger, Noise condenser | | | |
| 39 | 50 A | WHT/BLK | Ignition switch (BAT) | | | |
| 40 | 50 A | WHT | Combination light switch, No. 17 (10 A) fuse | | | |
| 41 | 100 A | | Power distribution | | | |
| 42 | 20 A | WHT/GRN | Horn system, Brake system, Key interlock solenoid (A/T) | | | |
| 43 | 10 A | WHT/GRN | Turn signal/hazard relay | | | |
| 44 | | | Not used | | | |
| 45 | | | Not used | | | |
| 46 | | | Not used | | | |



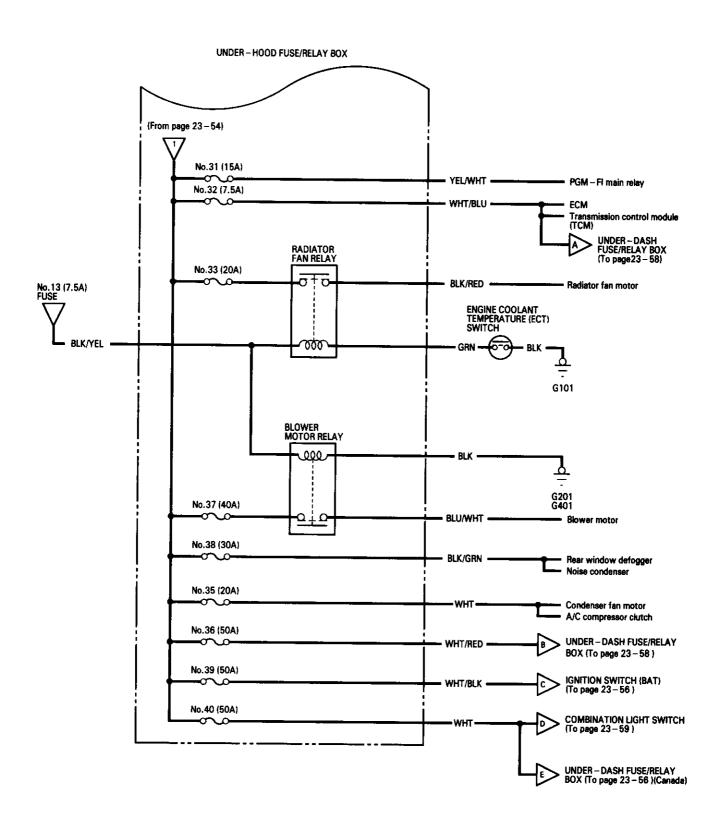
NOTE: View from the backside of the under-hood fuse/relay box

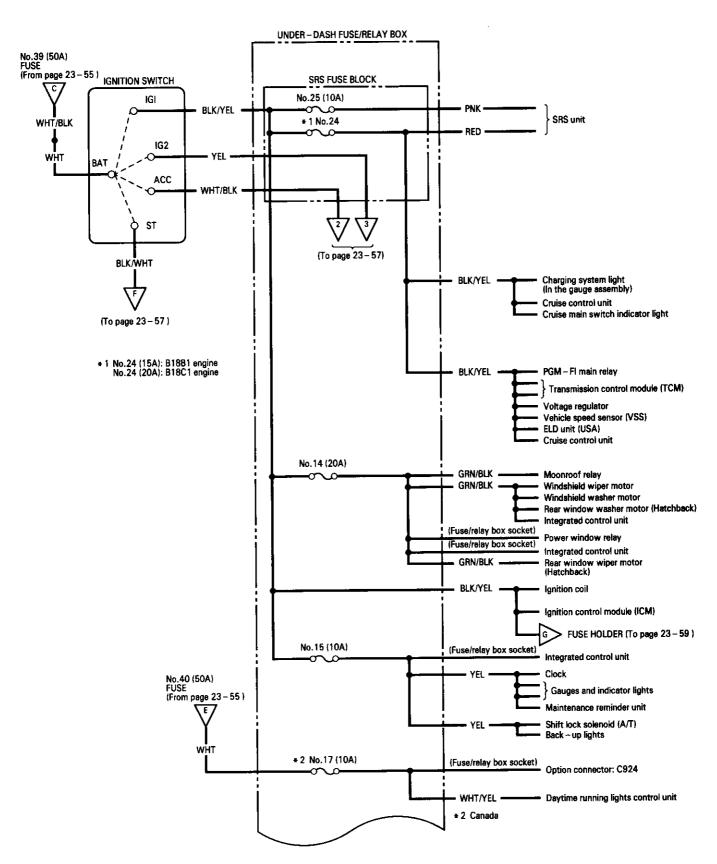




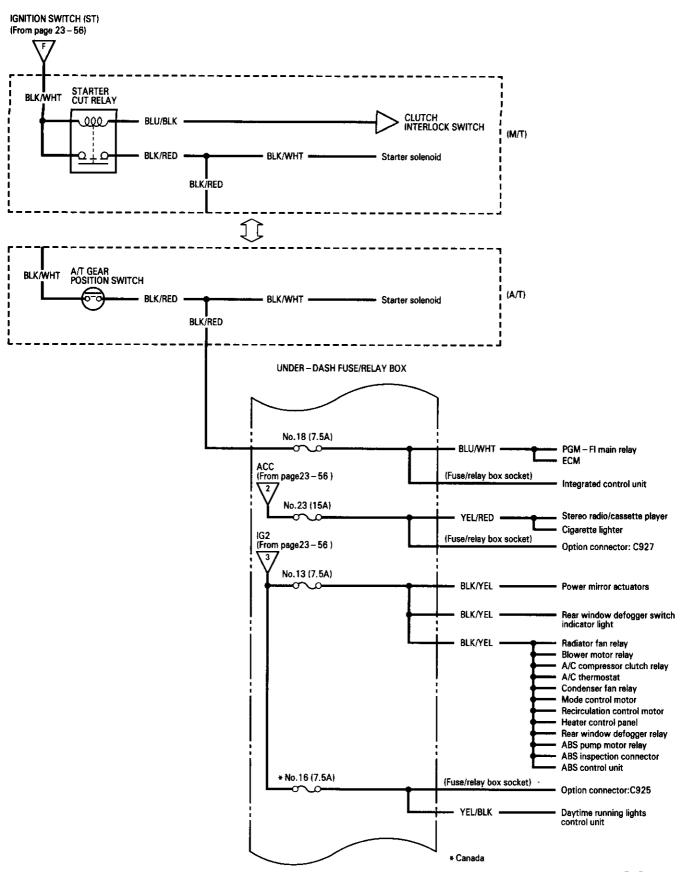


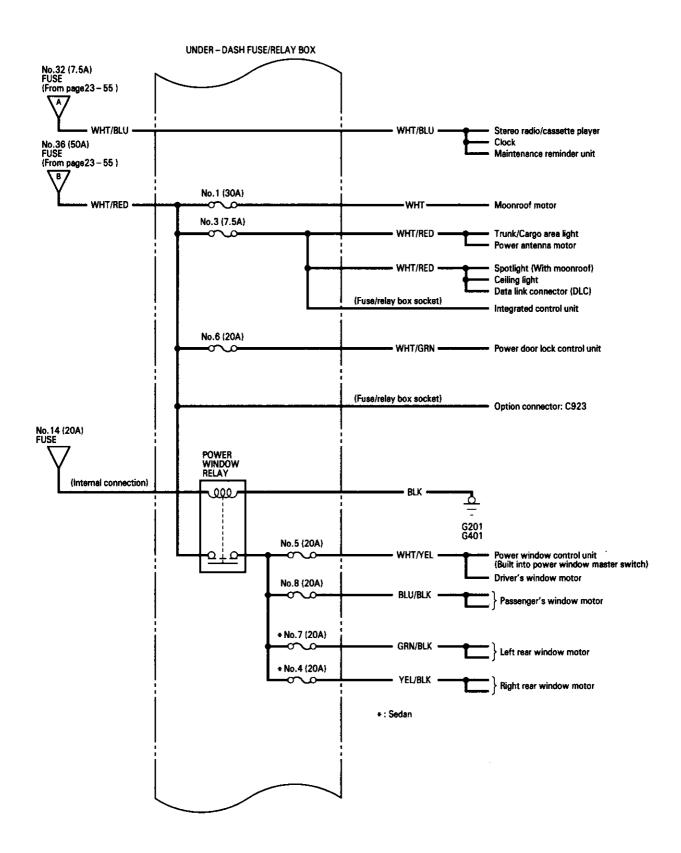




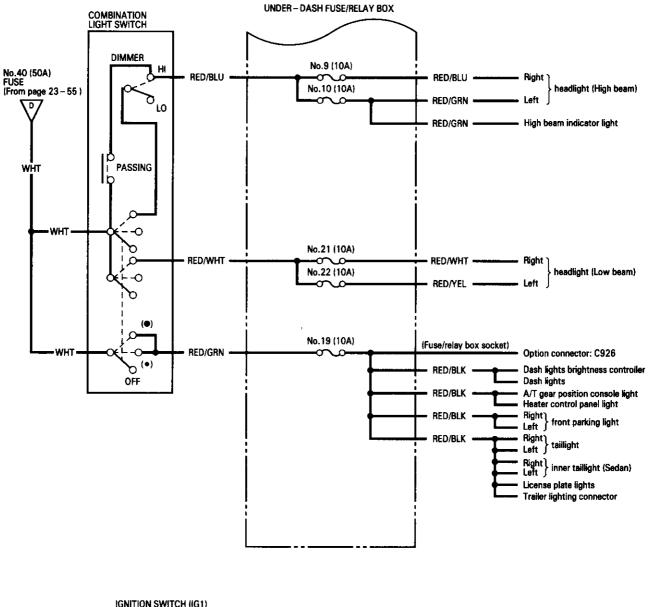


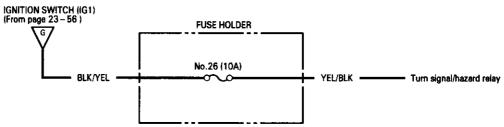






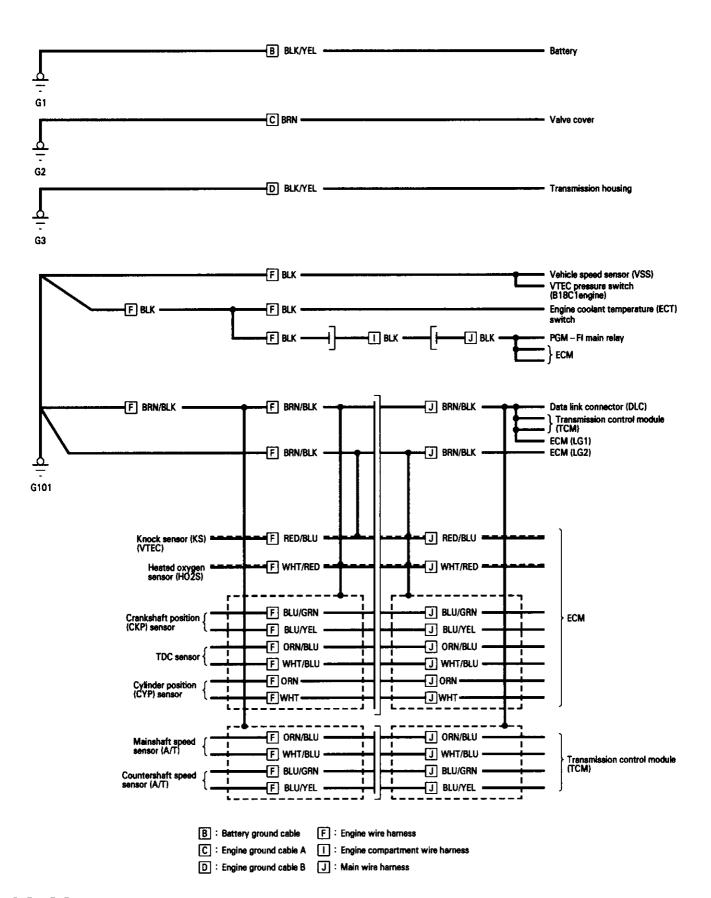




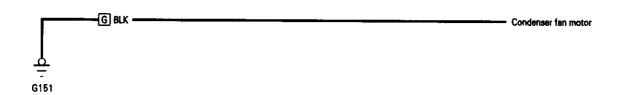


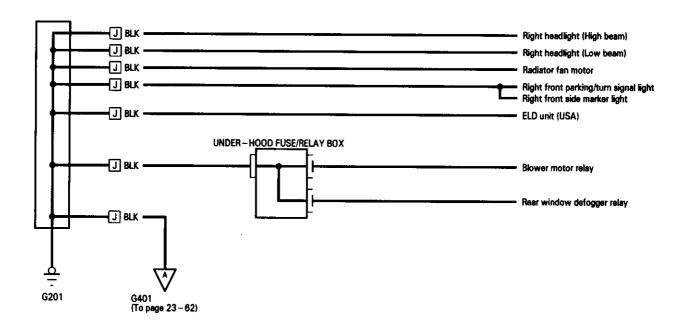
Ground Distribution

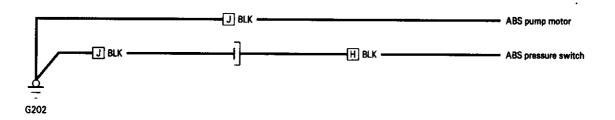
Circuit Identification











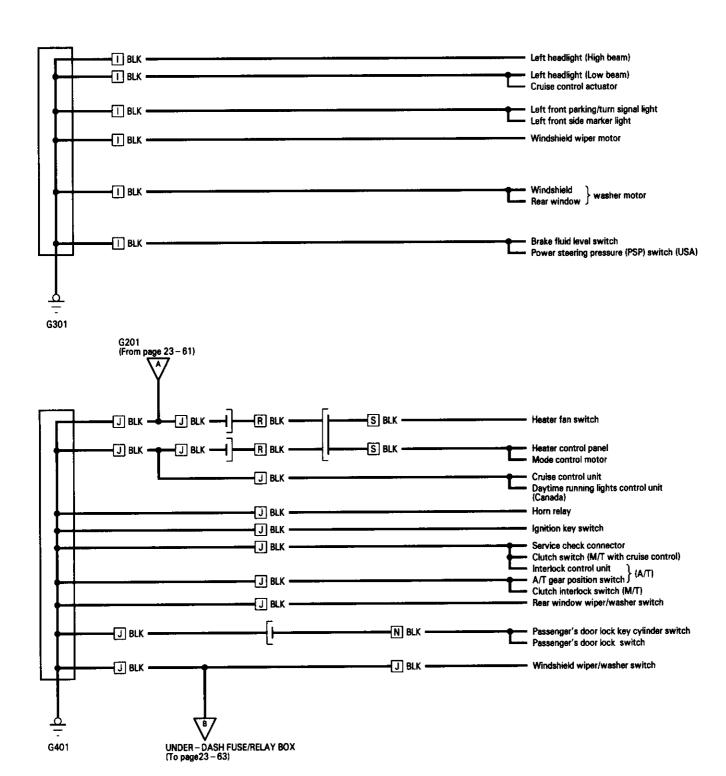
G : A/C wire harness

H : ABS modulator unit wire harness

J: Main wire harness

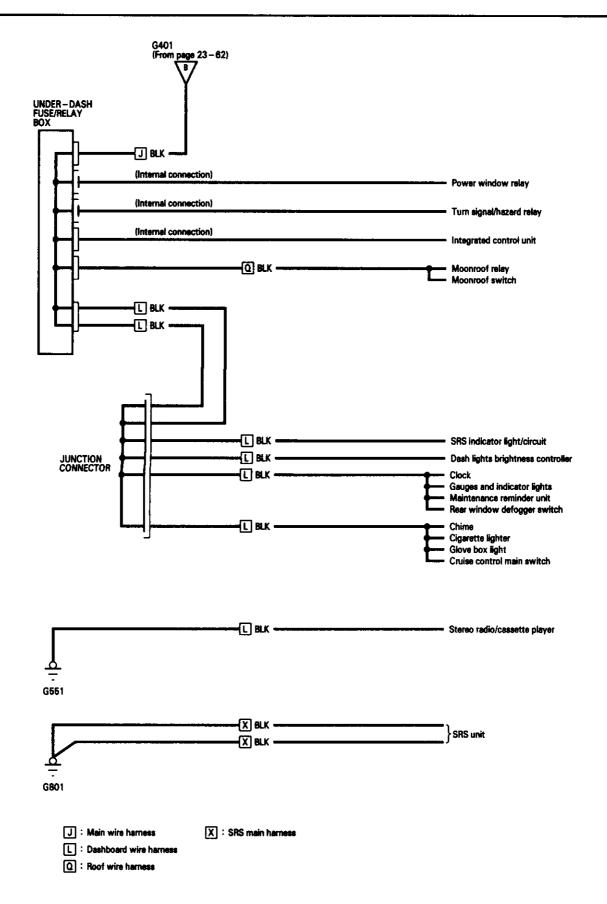
Ground Distribution

Circuit Identification-



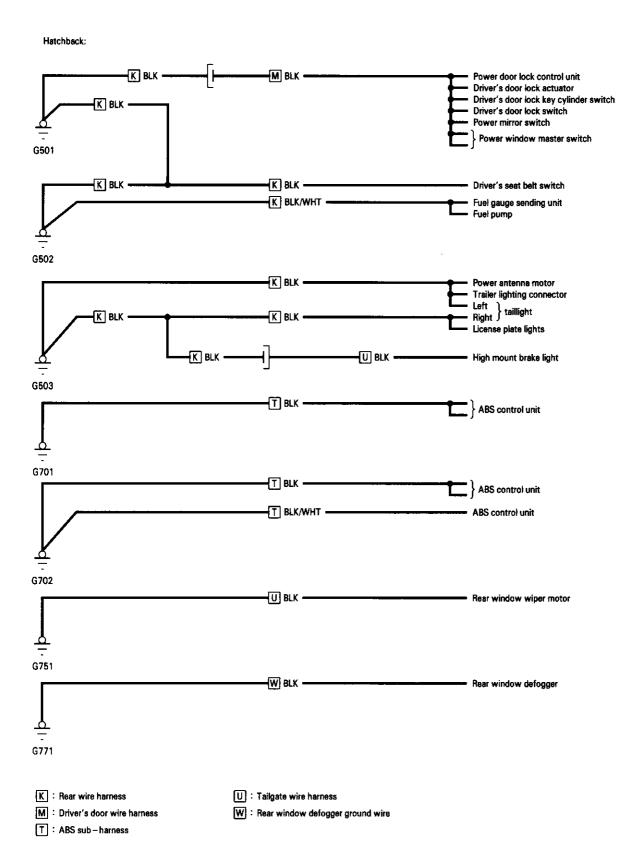
- 1 : Engine compartment wire harness
- R : Heater sub harness A
- J : Main wire harness
- S : Heater sub harness B
- N : Front passenger's door wire harness



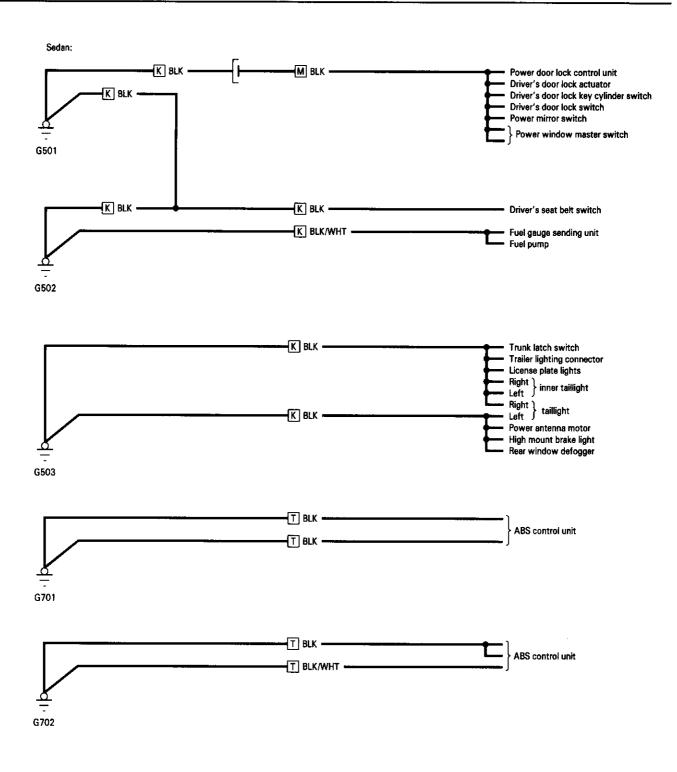


Ground Distribution

Circuit Identification-







K : Rear wire harness

M : Driver's door wire hamess

T: ABS sub - harness

Battery

Test

A WARNING

- Battery fluid (electrolyte) contains sulfuric acid. It may cause severe burns if it gets on your skin or in your eyes.
 Wear protective clothing and a face shield.
 - If electrolyte gets on your skin or clothes, rinse it off with water immediately.
 - If electrolyte gets in your eyes, flush it out by splashing water in your eyes for at least 15 minutes; call a physician immediately.
- A battery gives off hydrogen gas. If ignited, the hydrogen will explode and could crack the battery case and splatter acid on you. Keep sparks, flames, and cigarettes away from the battery.
- Overcharging will raise the temperature of the electrolyte. This may force electrolyte to spray out of the battery vents.
 Follow the charger manufacturer's instructions and charge the battery at a proper rate.

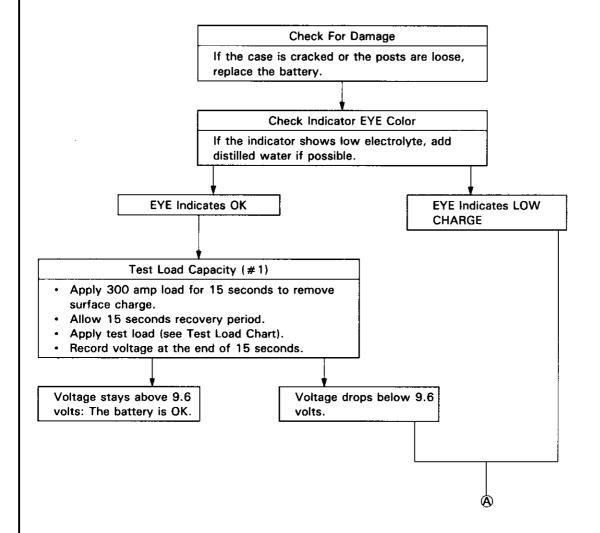
NOTE: The original radio has a coded theft protection circuit. If service to the car requires any of the following, be sure to get the customer's code number before

- disconnecting the battery.
- removing No. 32 (7.5 A) fuse from the under-hood fuse/relay box.
- removing the radio.

After service, reconnect power to the radio and turn it on. When the word "CODE" is displayed, enter the customer's 5-digit code to restore radio operation.

Use either a JCI or Bear ARBST tester, and follow the manufacturer's procedures. If you don't have one of these computerized testers, follow this conventional test procedure:

To get accurate results, the temperature of the electrolyte must be between 70°F (21°C) and 100°F (38°C).







Charge on High Setting (40 amps)

Charge until EYE shows charge is OK; plus an additional 30 minutes to assure full charge. NOTE: If the battery charge is very low, it may be necessary to bypass the charger's polarity protection circuitry. If the EYE does not show charge is OK within

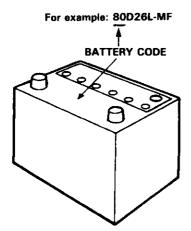
If the EYE does not show charge is OK within three hours, the battery is no good; replace it. Write down how long the battery was charged.

Test Load Capacity (#2)

- · Apply 300 amp load for 15 seconds to remove surface charge.
- Allow 15 seconds recovery period.
- · Apply test load (see Test Load Chart).
- · Record voltage at the end of 15 seconds.

Voltage stays above 9.6 volts: The battery is OK.

Voltage drops below 9.6 volts: The battery is no good.



TEST LOAD CHART

Use the test load or 1/2 the cold cranking amps (CCA) printed on the label on the top of the battery. If neither is indicated, use the information below:

| BATTERY CODE | COLD CRANKING AMPS (CCA) | TEST LOAD (amps) |
|-----------------|-----------------------------|---------------------|
| 80 | 550 | 270 |
| 70 | 440 | 220 |
| 55 | 405 | 200 |

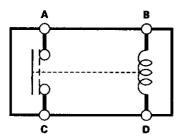
Power Relays

Relay Test

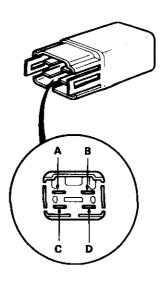
Normally-open Type:

- 1. Remove the power relay from its socket.
- 2. Check continuity between relay terminals.
 - There should be continuity between the A and C terminals when power and ground are connected to the B and D terminals.
 - There should be no continuity when power is disconnected.

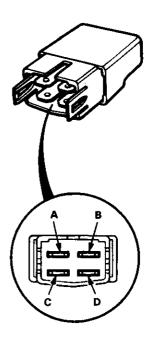
| Power (B – D) | A | С |
|---------------|---|---|
| Connected | 0 | |
| Disconnected | , | |



- Power window relay
- Radiator fan relay
- Blower motor relay

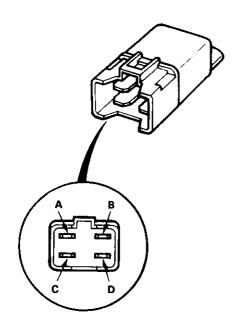


- Starter cut relay
- Condenser fan relay
- A/C compressor clutch relay
- ABS front fail-safe relay
- ABS rear fail-safe relay

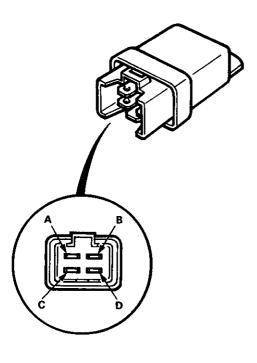




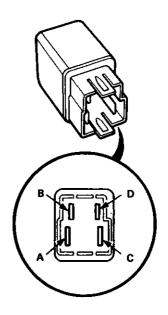
Horn relay



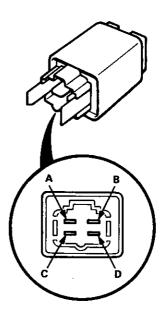
Moonroof relay



ABS pump motor relay



• Rear window defogger relay

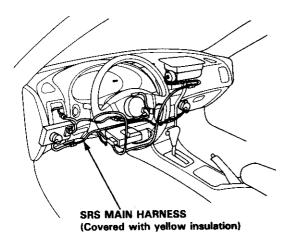


Ignition Switch

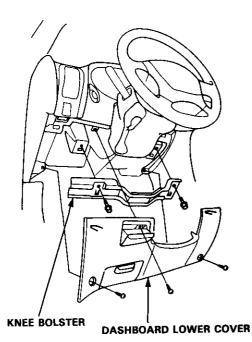
Test

CAUTION:

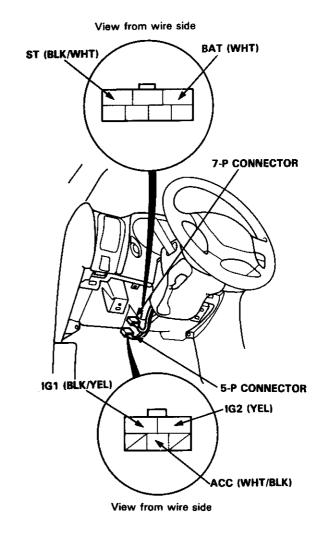
- All SRS electrical wiring harnesses are covered with yellow insulation.
- Before disconnecting any part of the SRS wire harness, connect the short connector(s).
- Replace the entire affected SRS harness assembly if it has an open circuit or damaged wiring.



1. Remove the dashboard lower cover and knee bolster.



Disconnect the 5-P connector from the under-dash fuse/relay box and the 7-P connector from the main wire harness. 3. Check for continuity between the terminals in each switch position according to the table.



| Terminal Position | ACC | BAT | IG1 | 1G2 | ST |
|-------------------|-----|---------------|-----------------|-----|----|
| 0 | | | | | |
| i | 0- | 0 | | | |
| I | 0 | $\overline{}$ | - 0- | 9 | |
| L | | 0- | 0- | | -0 |

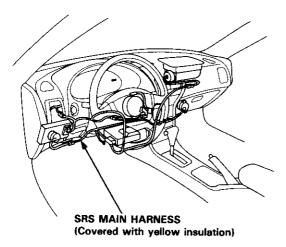
 If continuity checks do not agree with the table, replace the electrical part of the switch (see page 23-72).



Electrical Switch Replacement

CAUTION:

- All SRS electrical wiring harnesses are covered with yellow insulation.
- Before disconnecting any part of the SRS wire harness, connect the short connector(s).
- Replace the entire affected SRS harness assembly if it has an open circuit or damaged wiring.



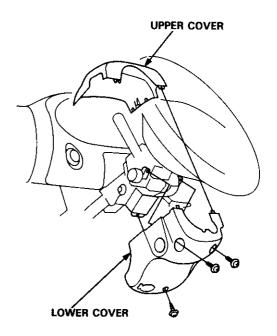
NOTE: The original radio has a coded theft protection circuit. Be sure to get the customer's code number before

- disconnecting the battery.
- removing the No. 32 (7.5 A) fuse from the under-hood fuse/relay box.
- removing the radio.

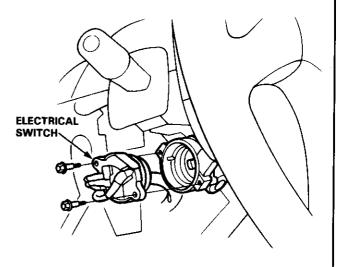
After service, reconnect power to the radio and turn it on. When the word "CODE" is displayed, enter the customer's 5-digit code to restore radio operation.

- 1. Disconnect the negative cable from the battery.
- 2. Remove the dashboard lower cover and knee bolster (see page 23-70).
- Disconnect the 5-P connector from the under-dash fuse/relay box and the 7-P connector from the main wire harness (see page 23-70).

4. Remove the steering column covers.



- 5. Insert the key and turn it to "0".
- 6. Remove the two bolts and replace the switch.



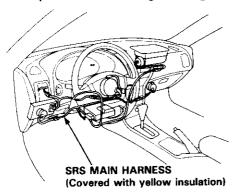
7. Install in the reverse order of removal.

Ignition Switch

Steering Lock Replacement

CAUTION:

- All SRS electrical wiring harnesses are covered with yellow insulation.
- Before disconnecting any part of the SRS wire harness, connect the short connector(s).
- Replace the entire affected SRS harness assembly if it has an open circuit or damaged wiring.

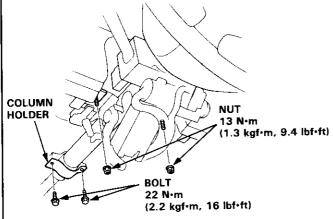


NOTE: The original radio has a coded theft protection circuit. Be sure to get the customer's code number before

- disconnecting the battery.
- removing the No. 32 (7.5 A) fuse from the under-hood fuse/relay box.
- removing the radio.

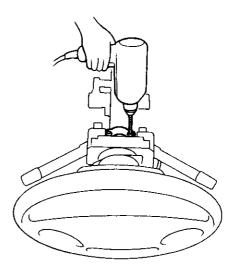
After service, reconnect power to the radio and turn it on. When the word "CODE" is displayed, enter the customer's 5-digit code to restore radio operation.

- 1. Disconnect the negative cable from the battery.
- Remove the dashboard lower cover and knee bolster (see page 23-71).
- 3. Disconnect the 5-P connector from the under-dash fuse/relay box and the 7-P connector from the main wire harness (see page 23-71).
- 4. Remove the steering column covers (see page 23-71).
- 5. Remove the column holder mounting bolts and nuts.

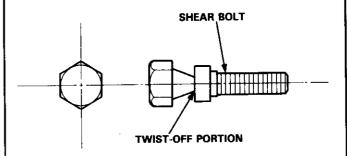


- 6. Lower the steering column assembly.
- 7. Center-punch each of the two shear bolts and drill their heads off with a 5 mm (3/16 in) drill bit.

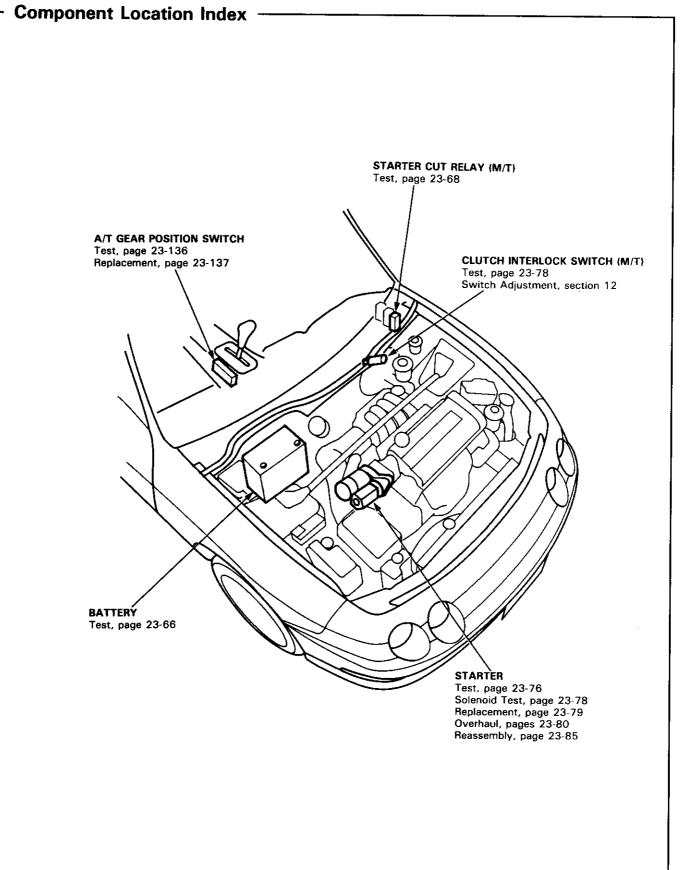
CAUTION: Do not damage the switch body when removing the shear bolts.

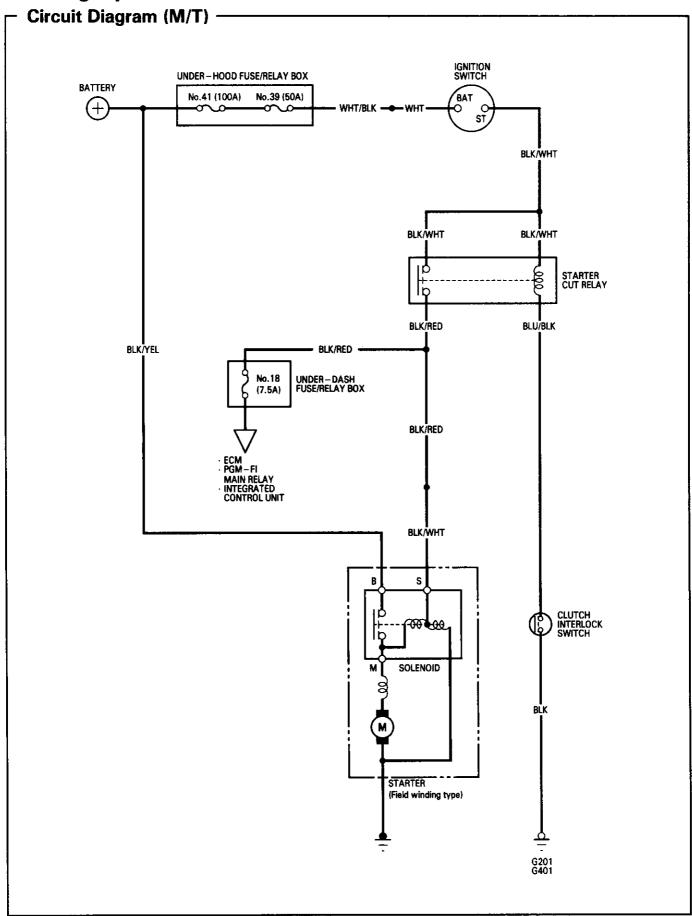


- 8. Remove the shear bolts from the switch body.
- Install the new ignition switch without the key inserted.
- 10. Loosely tighten the new shear bolts.
- Insert the ignition key and check for proper operation of the steering wheel lock and that the ignition key turns freely.
- 12. Tighten the shear bolts until the hex heads twist off.

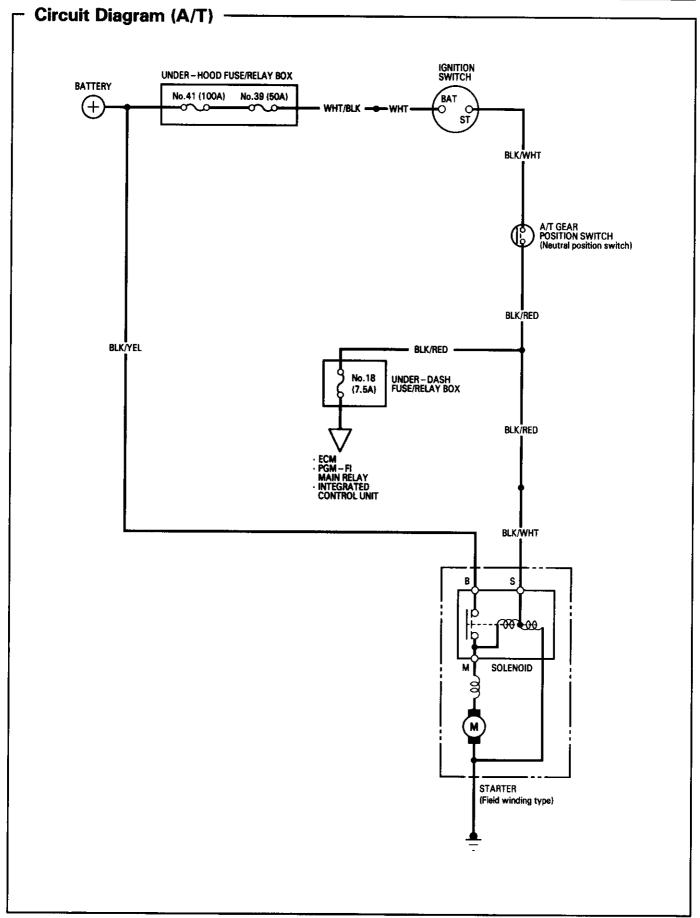












Starter Test -

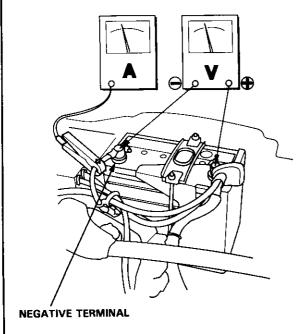
NOTE: The air temperature must be between 59 and 100°F (15 and 38°C) before testing.

Recommended Procedure:

- Use a starter system tester.
- Connect and operate the equipment in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.
- Test and troubleshoot as described.

Alternate Procedure:

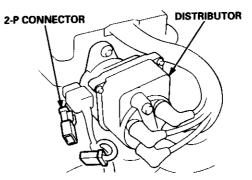
- Use the following equipment:
 - Ammeter, 0-400 A
 - Voltmeter, 0-20 V (accurate within 0.1 volt)
 - Tachometer, 0-1200 rpm
- Hook up voltmeter and ammeter as shown.



NOTE: After this test, or any subsequent repair, reset the ECM to clear any codes (see section 11).

Check Starter Engagement:

 Disconnect the 2-P connector (ignition coil primary lead) from the distributor.



Press the clutch pedal all the way in (M/T), and turn the ignition switch to "Start". The starter should crank the engine.

NOTE: On cars equipped with manual transmission, the engine will not crank unless the clutch pedal is fully depressed.

If the starter does not crank the engine go to step 3.

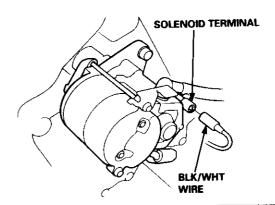
Check the battery, battery positive cable, ground, and the wire connections for looseness and corrosion.

Test again. If the starter still does not crank the engine, go to step 4.

4. Bypass the ignition switch circuit as follows (make sure the transmission is in neutral):

Unplug the connector (BLK/WHT wire and solenoid terminal) from the starter. Then connect a jumper wire from the battery positive (+) terminal to the solenoid terminal. The starter should crank the engine.

- If the starter still does not crank the engine, replace it and diagnose its internal problems.
- If the starter cranks the engine, go to step 5.





- Check for an open in the BLK/WHT wire circuit between the starter and ignition switch, and connectors.
- 6. Check the ignition switch (see page 23-70).
- On cars with automatic transmission, check the A/T gear position switch (neutral position switch) and connector. On cars with manual transmission, check the starter cut relay, clutch interlock switch, and connectors.

NOTE: Check the No. 39 (50 A) fuse in the under-hood fuse/relay box for the starter cut relay.

Check for Wear and Damage:

The starter should crank the engine smoothly and steadily. If the starter engages, but cranks the engine erratically, remove it. Inspect the starter, drive gear, and flywheel ring gear for damage.

 Check the drive gear overrunning clutch for binding or slipping when the armature is rotated with the drive gear held. Replace the gears if damaged.

Check Cranking Voltage and Current Draw:

Cranking voltage should be no less than 8.0 volts. Current draw should be no more than 360 amperes.

If cranking voltage is too low, or current draw too high, check for:

- Fully charged battery
- Open circuit in starter armature commutator segments
- Starter armature dragging
- Shorted armature winding
- Excessive drag in engine

Check Cranking rpm:

Engine speed during cranking should be above 100 rpm.

If speed is too low, check for:

- Loose battery or starter teminals
- Excessively worn starter brushes
- Open circuit in commutator segments
- Dirty or damaged helical spline or drive gear
- Defective drive gear overrunning clutch

Check Starter Disengagement:

Press the clutch pedal all the way in (M/T), turn the ignition switch to ''III'' and release to ''II''.

The starter drive gear should disengage from the flywheel ring gear. When you release the key.

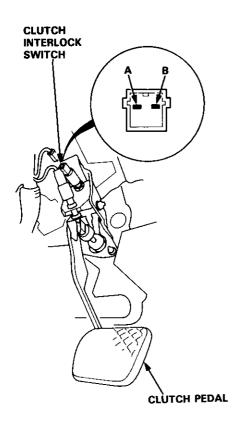
If the drive gear hangs up on the flywheel ring gear, check for:

- Solenoid plunger and switch malfunction
- Dirty drive gear assembly or damaged overrunning clutch

- Clutch Interlock Switch Test -

- Remove the dashboard lower cover and knee bolster (see page 23-70), then disconnect the 2-P connector from the switch.
- 2. Check for continuity between the terminals according to the table.

| Terminal Clutch Pedal | A | В |
|-----------------------|---|---|
| RELEASED | | |
| PUSHED | 0 | |

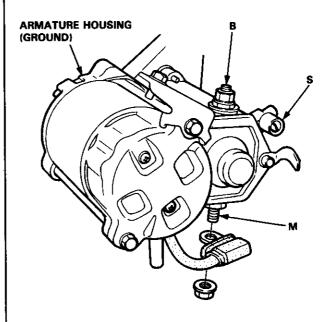


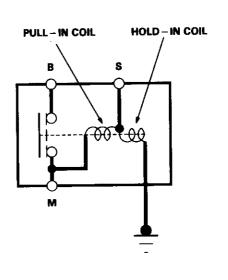
If necessary, replace the switch or adjust the switch position (see section 12).

Starter Solenoid Test

Check for continuity between the terminals according to the table.

| Terminal Coil | М | s | Housing |
|---------------|-------------|---|---------|
| HOLD-IN | | 0 | -0 |
| PULL - IN | | 0 | |

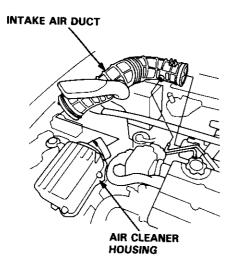




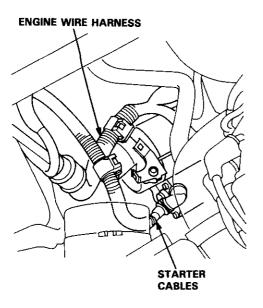


Starter Replacement

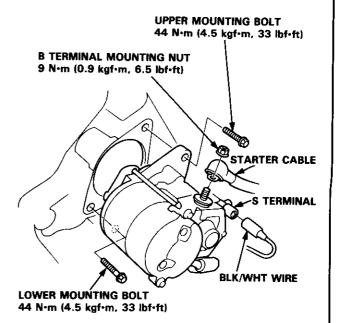
- 1. Disconnect the negative cable from the battery.
- 2. Remove the intake air duct.



3. Remove the engine wire harness and starter cables from their brackets.



- Disconnect the starter cable from the B terminal on the solenoid, then the BLK/WHT wire from the S terminal.
- 5. Remove the two bolts holding the starter, then remove the starter.



6. Install in the reverse order of removal.

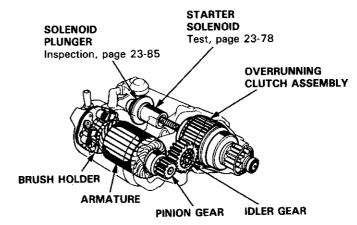
Starter Overhaul

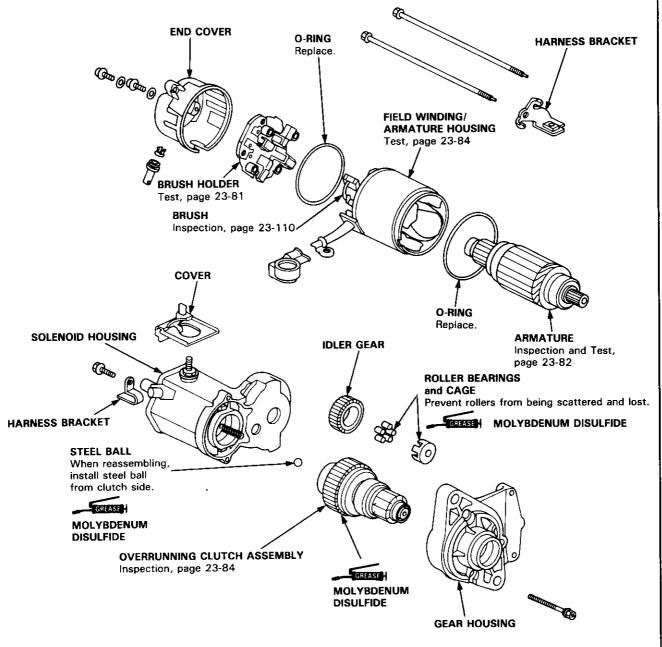
CAUTION: Disconnect the battery negative cable before removing the starter.

NOTE: The original radio has a coded theft protection citcuit. Be sure to get the customer's code number before

- disconnecting the battery.
- removing the No.3 2 (7.5 A) fuse from the under-hood fuse/relay box.
- removing the radio.

After service, reconnect power to the radio and turn it on. When the word "CODE" is displayed, enter the customer's 5-digit code to restore radio operation.

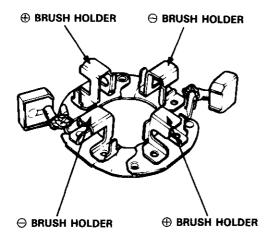






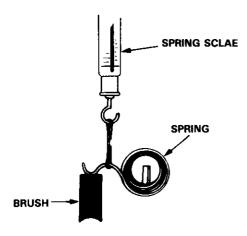
Starter Brush Holder Test -

Check that there is no continuity between the ⊕ and
 ⊕ brush holders. If continuity exists, replace the
 brush holder assembly.



Insert the brush into the brush holder, and bring the brush into contact with the commutator, then attach a spring scale to the spring. Measure the spring tension at the moment the spring lifts off the brush.

Spring Tension: 17.7-23.5 N (1.8-2.4 kgf, 4.0-5.3 lbf)



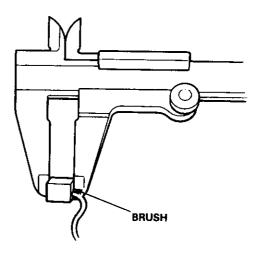
Starter Brush Inspection

Measure the brush length. If it is less than the service limit, replace the armature housing and brush holder assembly.

Brush Length

Standard (New): 15.0-15.5 mm (0.59-0.61 in)

Service Limit: 10.0 mm (0.39 in)

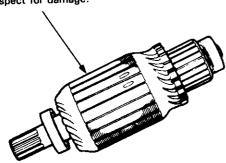


NOTE: To seat new brushes after installing them in their holders, slip a strip of #500 or #600 sandpaper, with the grit side up, over the commutator and smoothly rotate the armature. The contact surface of the brushes will be sanded to the same contour as the commutator.

Armature Inspection and Test

1. Inspect the armature for wear or damage due to contact with the field coil magnets.

Inspect for damage.

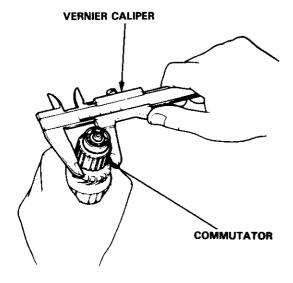


A dirty or burnt commutator surface may be resurfaced with emery cloth or a lathe within the following specifications.

Commutator Diameter

Standard (New): 29.9-30.0 mm (1.17-1.18 in)

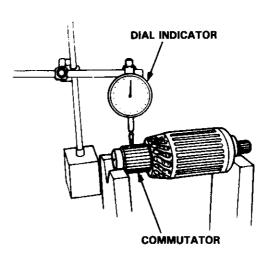
Service Limit: 29 mm (1.14 in)



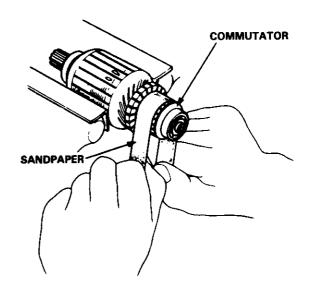
Commutator Runout

Standard (New): 0-0.02 mm (0-0.0008 in)

Service Limit: 0.05 mm (0.002 in)

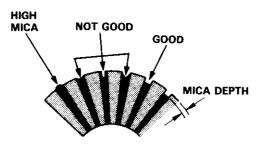


- If the commutator runout and diameter are within limits, check the commutator for damage or for carbon dust or brass chips between the segments.
- 4. If the surface is dirty, recondition it with #500 or #600 sandpaper.





Check for mica depth. If necessary, undercut mica with a hacksaw blade to achieve proper depth.

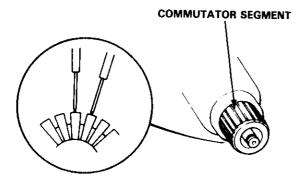


Commutator Mica Depth

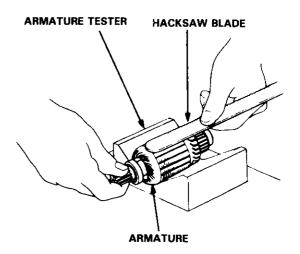
Standard (New): 0.5-0.8 mm (0.02-0.03 in)

Service Limit: 0.2 mm (0.008 in)

Check for continuity between the segments of the commutator. If an open circuit exists between any segments, replace the armature.

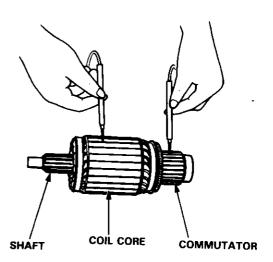


7. Place the armature on an armature tester. Hold a hacksaw blade on the armature core.



If the blade is attracted to the core or vibrates while the core is turned, the armature is shorted. Replace the armature.

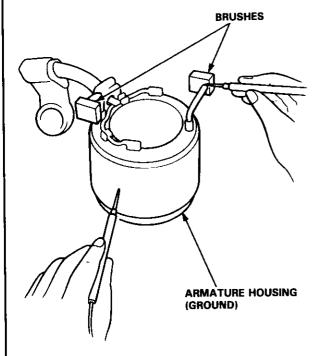
 Check with an ohmmeter that no continuity exists between the commutator and armature coil core, and between the commutator and armature shaft. If continuity exists, replace the armature.



Starting System

Starter Field Winding Test -

- Check for continuity between the brushes. If there's no continuity, replace the armature housing.
- Check for continuity between each brush and the armature housing (ground). If continuity exists, replace the armature housing.



Overrunning Clutch Inspection

- Slide the overrunning clutch along the shaft.
 Does it move freely? If not, replace it.
- Rotate the overrunning clutch both ways.
 Does it lock in one direction and rotate smoothly in reverse? If it does not lock in either direction or it locks in both directions, replace it.

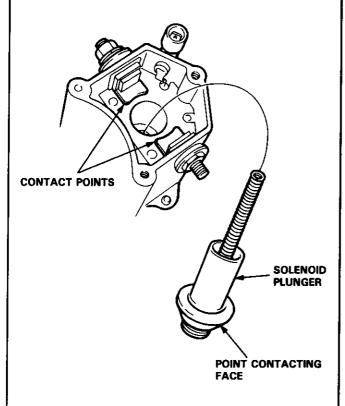


- If the starter drive gear is worn or damaged, replace the overrunning clutch assembly; the gear is not available separately.
- Check the condition of the flywheel or torque converter ring gear if the starter drive gear teeth are damaged.



Solenoid Plunger Inspection -

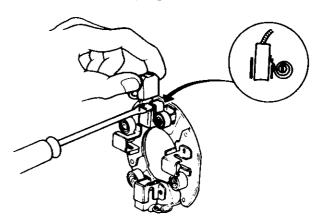
Check the contact points and the face of the starter solenoid plunger for burning, pitting or any other defects. If surfaces are rough, recondition them with a strip of #500 or #600 sandpaper.



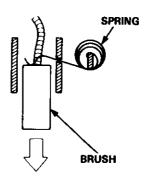
Starter Reassembly

Reassemble the starter in the reverse order of disassembly.

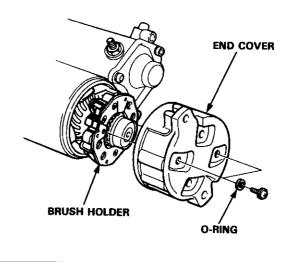
Pry back each brush spring with a screwdriver, then
position the brush about halfway out of its holder,
and release the spring to hold it there.



2. Install the armature in the housing. Next pry back each brush spring again and push the brush down until it seats against the commutator, then release the spring against the end of the brush.



3. Install the end cover on the brush holder.



Starting System

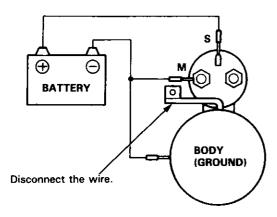
Performance Test

NOTE: Before starting the following checks, disconnect the wire from terminal M, and make a connection as described below using as heavy a wire as possible (preferably equivalent to the wire used for the car).

Pull-in Coil Test:

Connect the battery as shown. If the starter pinion pops out, it is working properly.

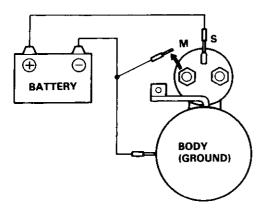
CAUTION: Do not leave the battery connected for more than 10 seconds.



Hold-in Coil Test:

Disconnect the battery from the M terminal. If the pinion does not retract, the hold-in coil is working properly.

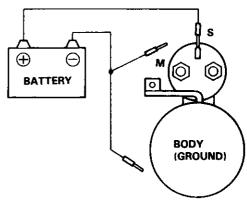
CAUTION: Do not leave the battery connected for more than 10 seconds.



Retracting Test:

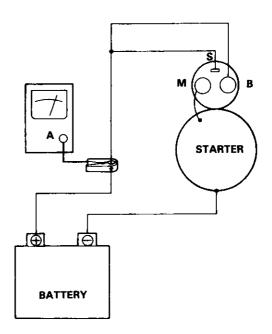
Disconnect the battery negative cable. If the pinion retracts immediately, it is working properly.

NOTE: Do not leave the battery connected for more than 10 seconds.



Starter No-load Test:

- 1. Clamp the starter firmly in a vise.
- Connect the starter to the battery as shown and confirm that the motor starts and keeps rotating.



 If the electric current and motor speed meet the specifications when the battery voltage is at 11 V, the starter is working properly.

Specifications: 90 A or less (Electric current), 3000 rpm or more (Motor speed)



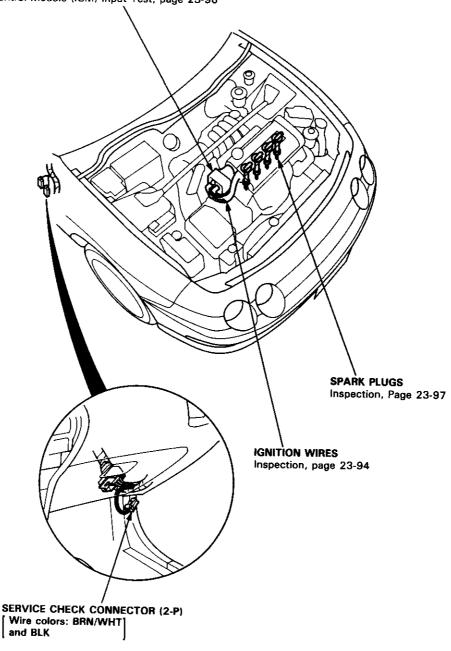
Component Location Index -

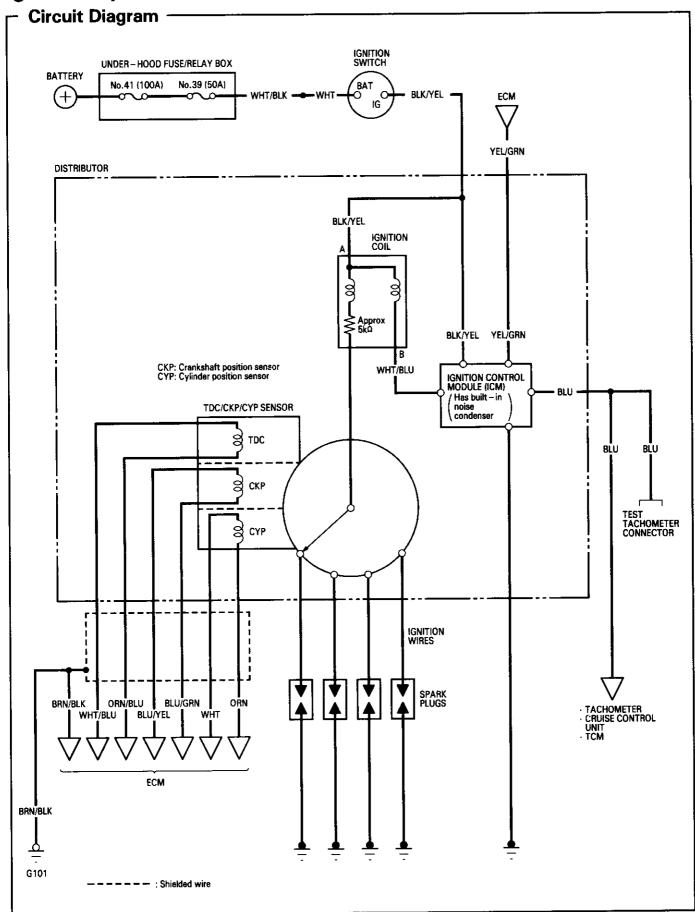
IGNITION TIMING CONTROL SYSTEM

- Troubleshooting, section 11
- Inspection and setting, page 23-89

DISTRIBUTOR

Top End Inspection, page 23-91
Removal/Installation, pages 23-91, 92
Overhaul, page 23-93
Reassembly, page 23-94
Ignition Coil Test/Replacement, page 23-95
Ignition Control Module (ICM) Input Test, page 23-96

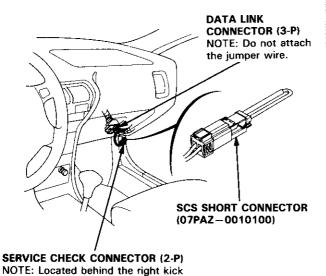






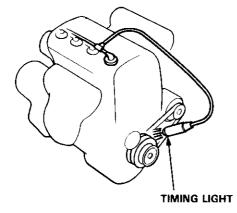
Ignition Timing Inspection and Setting

- 1. Start the engine. Hold the engine at 3,000 rpm with no load (A/T in N or P position, M/T in neutral) until the radiator fan comes on, then let it idle.
- Pull out the service check connector located behind the right kick panel. Connect the BRN/WHT and BLK terminals with the SCS short connector.



Connect a timing light to the No.1 ignition wire and point it toward the pointer on the timing belt cover.

panel



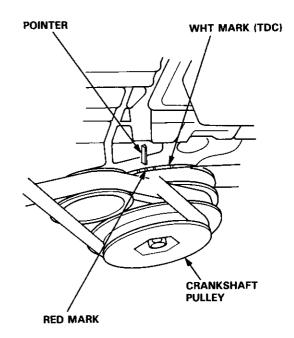
4. Adjust ignition timing, if necessary, to the following specifications:

Ignition Timing:

16 \pm 2 BTDC (RED) at 750 \pm 50 rpm in neutral

NOTE:

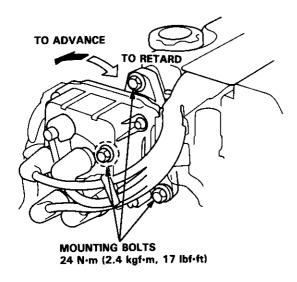
- Shift lever must be in neutral.
- All electrical systems should be turned OFF.



(cont'd)

Ignition Timing Inspection and Setting (cont'd)

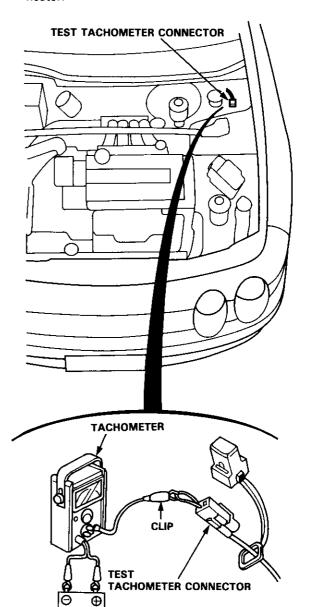
To adjust ignition timing, loosen the distributor mounting bolts, and turn the distributor housing counterclockwise to advance the timing, or clockwise to retard the timing.



- 6. Tighten the adjusting bolts and recheck the timing.
- Remove the SCS short connector from the service check connector.

- Idle Speed Inspection

- 1. Shift to neutral or P and start the engine. Hold the engine at 3,000 rpm with no load until the radiator fan comes on, then let it idle.
- Connect a tachometer to the test tachometer connector.



Idle speed

M/T: 750 \pm 50 rpm in neutral A/T: 750 \pm 50 rpm in \boxed{N} or \boxed{P}

NOTE: All electrical systems should be turned OFF.

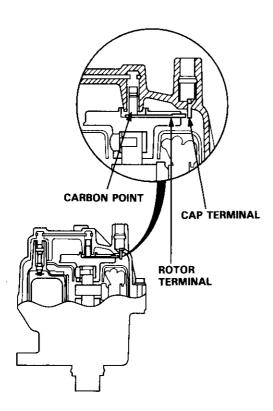
3. Adjust the idle speed if necessary (see section 11).

- BATTERY

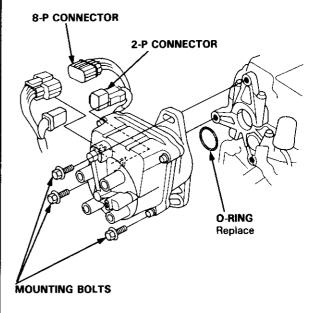


Distributor Top End Inspection — Distributor Removal

- 1. Check for rough or pitted rotor and cap terminals.
- 2. Scrape or file off the carbon deposits. Smooth the rotor terminal with an oil stone or #600 sandpaper if rough.
- 3. Check the distributor cap for cracks, wear, and damage. If necessary, clean or replace it.



- 1. Disconnect the 2-P and 8-P connectors from the distributor.
- 2. Disconnect the ignition wires from the distributor

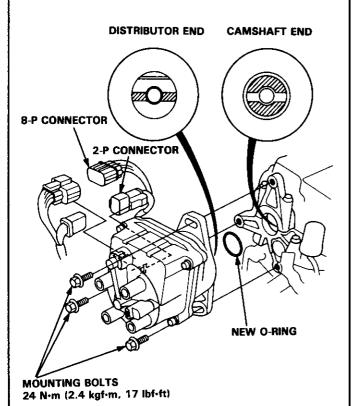


3. Remove the distributor mounting bolts, then remove the distributor from the cylinder head.

Distributor Installation

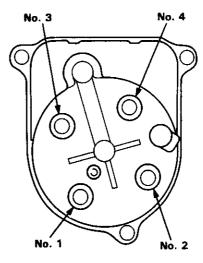
- 1. Coat a new O-ring with engine oil, then install it.
- 2. Slip the distributor into position.

NOTE: The lugs on the end of the distributor and its mating grooves in the camshaft end are both offset to eliminate the possibility of installing the distributor 180° out of time.



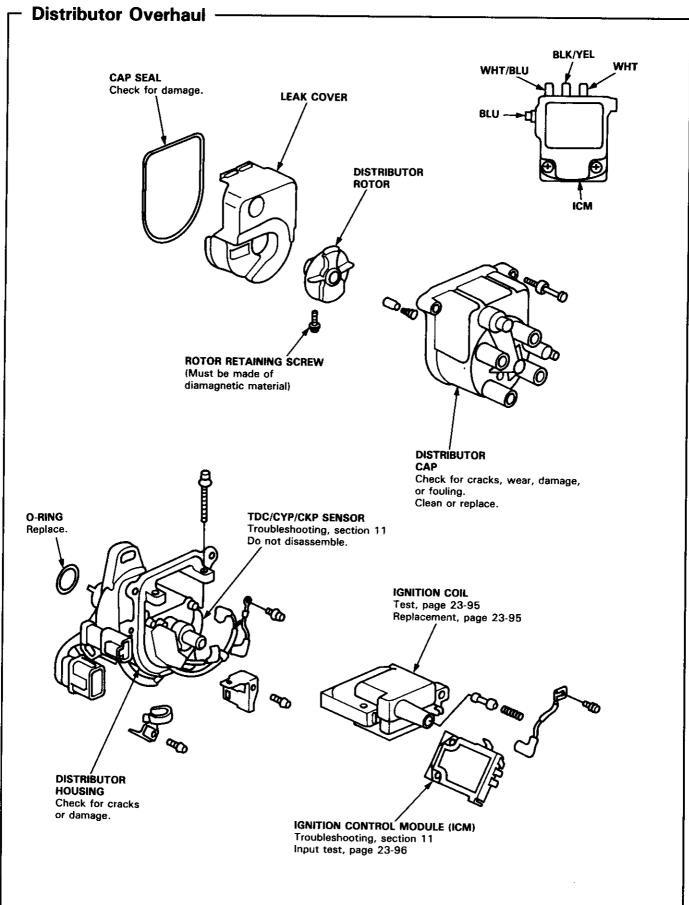
- 3. Install the mounting bolts and tighten them temporarily.
- Connect the 2-P and 8-P connectors to the distributor.

5. Connect the ignition wires as shown.



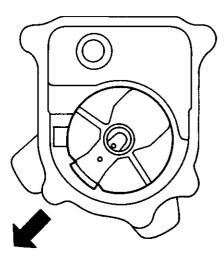
- 6. Set the timing with a timing light (see page 23-89).
- 7. After setting the timing, tighten the mounting bolts.



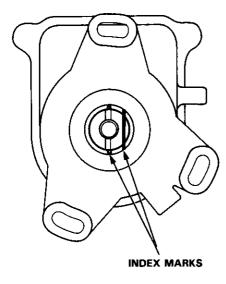


Distributor Reassembly -

 When reassembling the distributor, install the distributor rotor so on the shaft that it faces in the direction shown (toward the No. 1 cylinder).



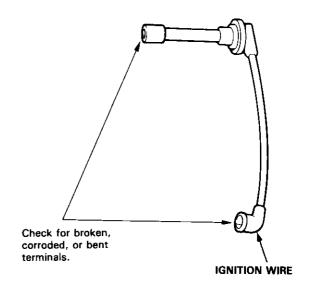
Align the index mark on the distributor housing with the index mark on the end of the shaft.



Ignition Wire Inspection and Test

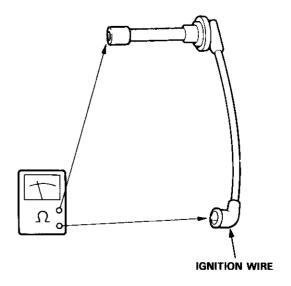
CAUTION: Carefully remove the ignition wires by pulling on the rubber boots. Do not bend the wires; you might break them inside.

Check the condition of the wire terminals. If any terminal is corroded, clean it, and if it is broken or distorted, replace the wire.



2. Connect ohmmeter probes and measure resistance.

Ignition Wire Resistance: 25 kΩ max. at 68°F (20°C)

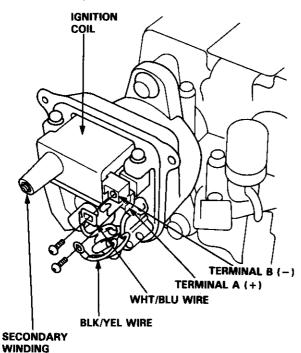


3. If resistance exceeds 25 k Ω , replace the ignition wire.



Ignition Coil Test -

- With the ignition switch OFF, remove the distributor cap.
- Remove the two screws to disconnect the BLK/YEL and WHT/BLU wires from terminals A (+) and B (-) respectively.

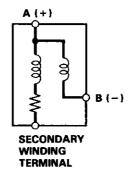


3. Using an ohmmeter, measure resistance between the terminals. Replace the coil if the resistance is not within specifications.

TERMINAL

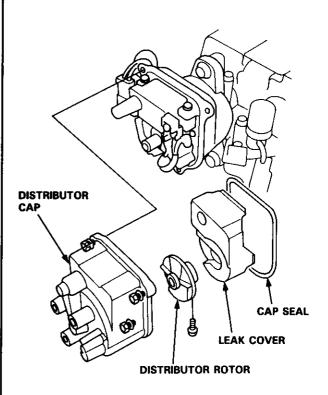
NOTE: Resistance will vary with the coil temperature; specifications are at 68°F (20°C)

Primary Winding Resistance (Between the A and B terminals): 0.6-0.8 ohms Secondary Winding Resistance (Between the A and secondary winding terminals): $12.8-19.2~k\Omega$

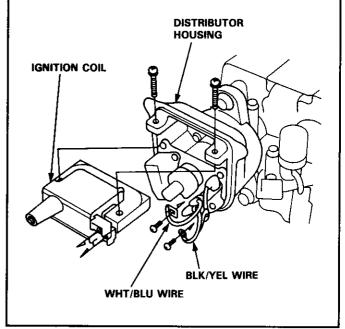


Ignition Coil Replacement

 With the ignition switch OFF, remove the distributor cap, rotor, and cap seal, then remove the leak cover.



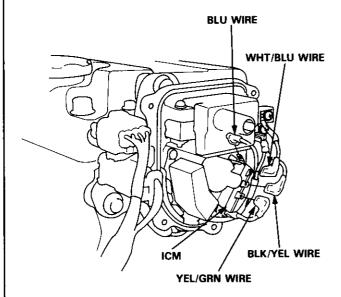
- Remove the two screws to disconnect the BLK/YEL and WHT/BLU wires from the coil.
- Remove the two screws and slide the ignition coil out of the distributor housing.



Ignition Control Module (ICM) Input Test

NOTE:

- See section 11 if the malfunction indicator lamp (MIL) blinks.
- Perform an input test for the ignition control module (ICM) after finishing the fundamental tests for the ignition system and the fuel and emissions systems.
- The tachometer should operate normally.
- Remove the distributor cap, the distributor rotor, and the leak cover.
- 2. Disconnect the BLK/YEL, WHT/BLU, YEL/GRN, and BLU wires from the ICM.



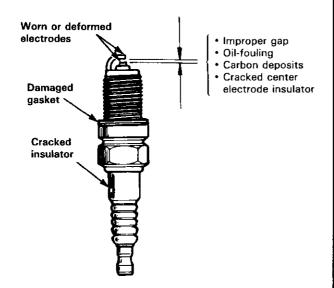
- Turn the ignition switch ON. Check for voltage between the BLK/YEL wire and body ground.
 There should be battery voltage.
 - If there is no battery voltage, check the BLK/YEL wire between the ignition switch and the ICM.
 - If there is battery voltage, go to step 4.

- Turn the ignition switch ON. Check for voltage between the WHT/BLU wire and body ground. There should be battery voltage.
 - If there is no battery voltage, check:
 - Ignition coil
 - WHT/BLU wire between the ignition coil and the ICM
 - If there is battery voltage, go to step 5.
- Check the YEL/GRN wire between the ECM and the ICM.
- 6. Check the BLU wire between the tachometer and the
- 7. If all tests are normal, replace the ICM.



Spark Plug Inspection

1. Inspect the electrodes and ceramic insulator for:



Burned or worn electrodes may be caused by:

- · Advanced ignition timing
- Loose spark plug
- Plug heat range too low
- · Insufficient cooling

Fouled plug may be caused by:

- · Retarded ignition timing
- Oil in combustion chamber
- Incorrect spark plug gap
- · Plug heat range too high
- · Excessive idling/low speed running
- · Clogged air cleaner element
- · Deteriorated ignition coil or ignition wires
- 2. Check the electrode gap.

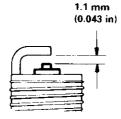
B18B1 engine:

• Adjust the gap with a suitable gapping tool.

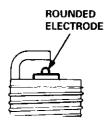
Electrode Gap

Standard:

1.0-1.1 mm (0.039-0.043 in)

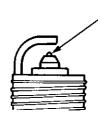


Replace the plug if the center electrode is rounded as shown below:



B18C1 engine:

 Make sure that the 1.4 mm (0.055 in) wire-type plug gauge does not go into the gap for the platinum tip plug. If the gauge goes into the gap, do not attempt to adjust the side electrode; replace the plug with a new one. Use only the spark plugs listed below.



ROUNDED ELECTRODE

Electrode Gap

Standard: 1.2-1.3 mm

(0.047-0.051 in)

Service Limit: 1.4 mm (0.055 in)

CAUTION: Do not use a blade-type plug gauge, it may damage the platinum tip of the center electrode.

Spark plugs for the B18B1 engine:

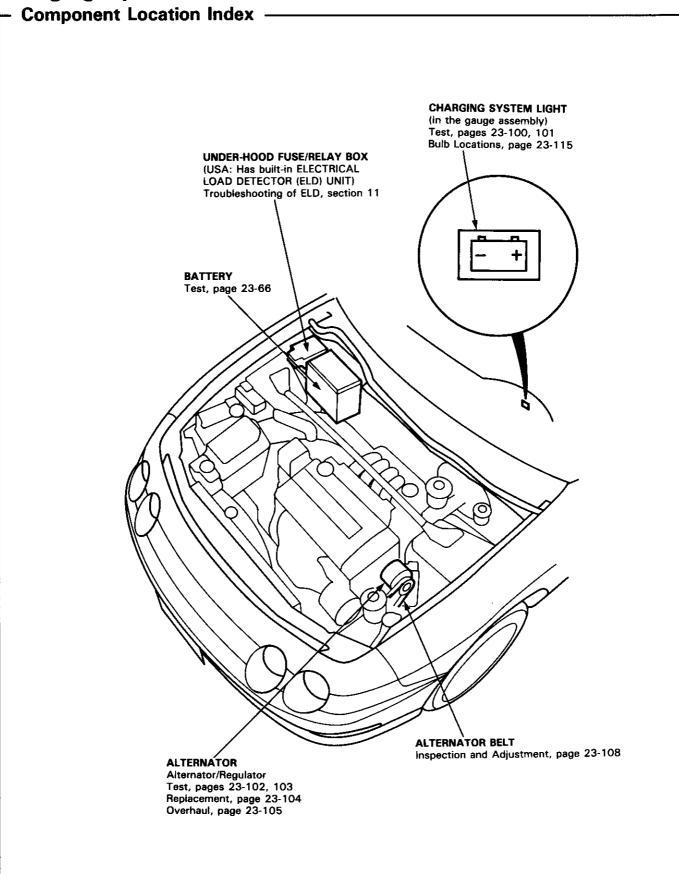
| ZFR5F-11 (NGK) KJ16CR-L11 (Nippondenso) | For all normal driving |
|---|---|
| ZFR6F-11 (NGK) KJ20CR-L11 (Nippondenso) | For hot climates or continuous high speed driving |

Spark plugs for the B18C1 engine:

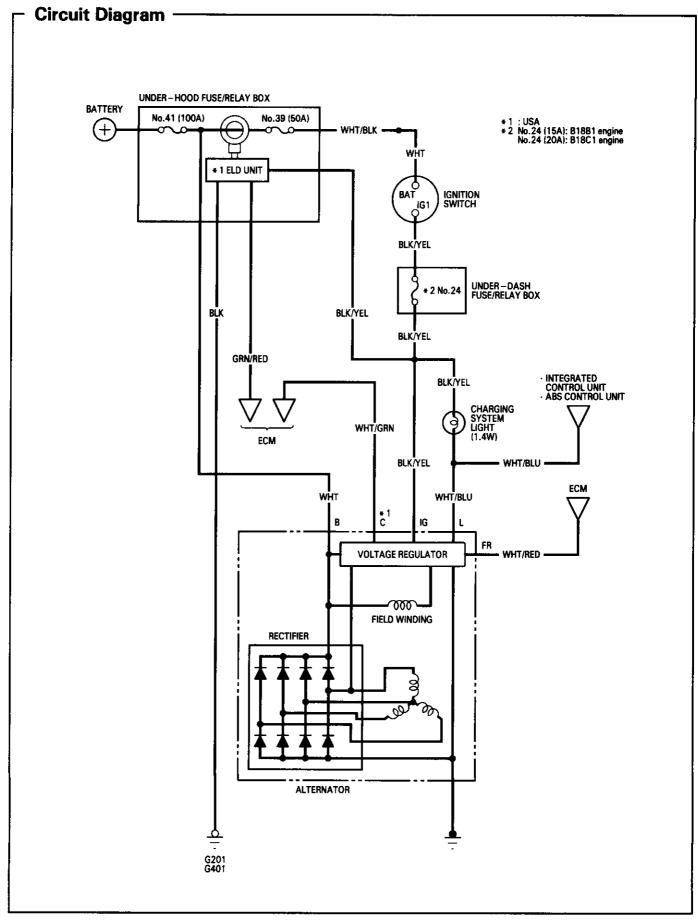
| PFR6G-13 (NGK) | |
|----------------|------------------------|
| PK20PR-L13 | For all normal driving |
| (Nippondenso) | |

Apply a small quantity of anti-seize compound to the plug threads.

Screw the plugs into the cylinder head finger-tight, then torque them to 18 N.m (1.8 kgf·m, 13 lbf·ft).







Troubleshooting

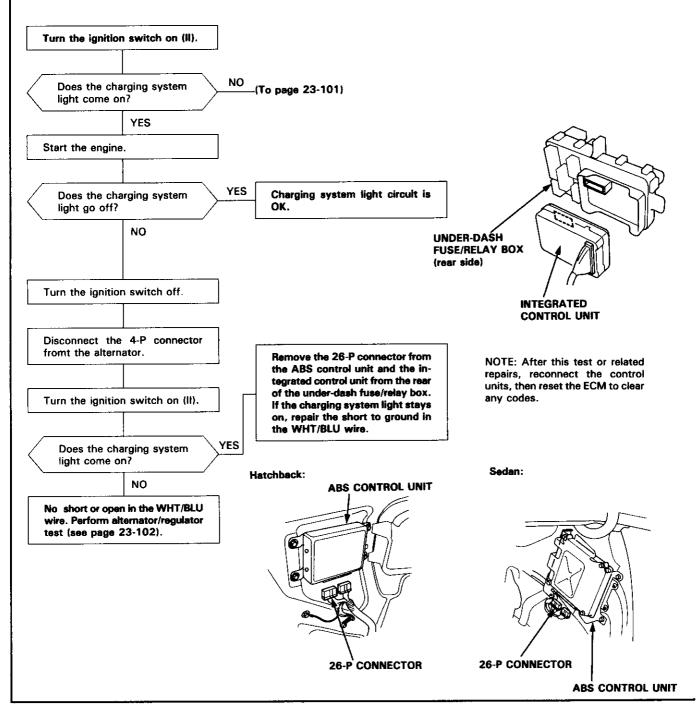
Before troubleshooting check

- tightness of the alternator belt (see page 23-108).
- that the malfunction indicator lamp (MIL) of the ECM does not blink. If it blinks, refer to section 11.

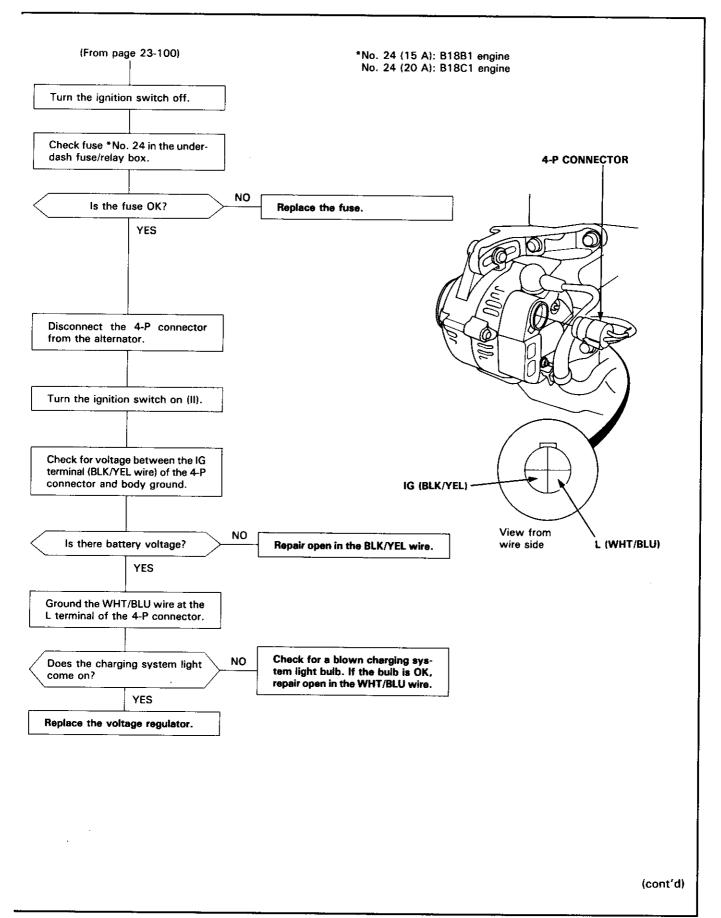
If the charging system light is on, or the battery is dead or low, perform the following tests in the order listed below:

- 1. Battery Test (see page 23-66)
- 2. Charging System Light Test
- 3. Alternator/Regulator Test

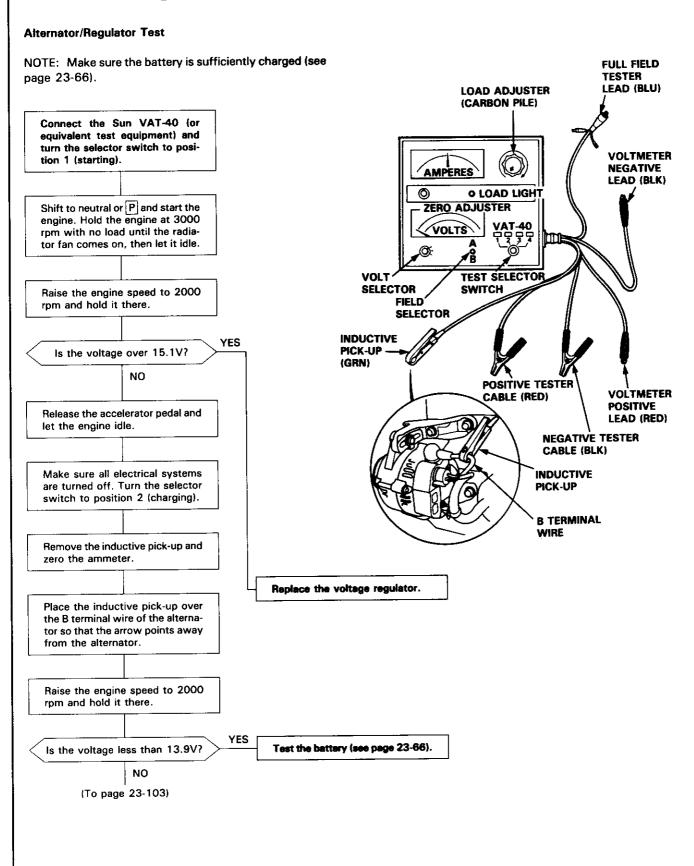
Charging System Light Test



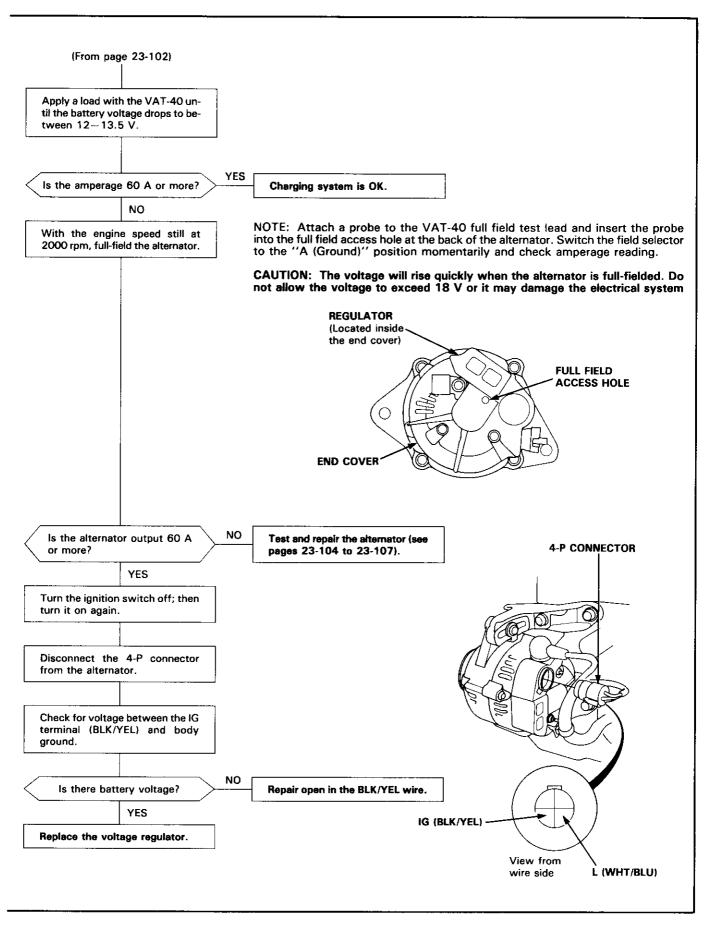




Troubleshooting (cont'd) -







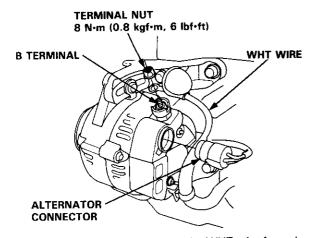
Alternator Replacement

NOTE: The original radio has a coded theft protection circuit. Be sure to get the customer's code number before

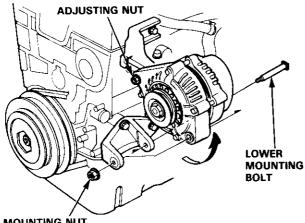
- disconnecting the battery.
- removing the No. 32 (7.5 A) fuse from the under-hood fuse/relay box.
- removing the radio.

After service, reconnect power to the radio and turn it on. When the word "CODE" is displayed, enter the customer's 5-digit code to restore radio operation.

- Disconnect the ground cable from the battery negative (-) terminal.
- Disconnect the alternator connector from the alternator.



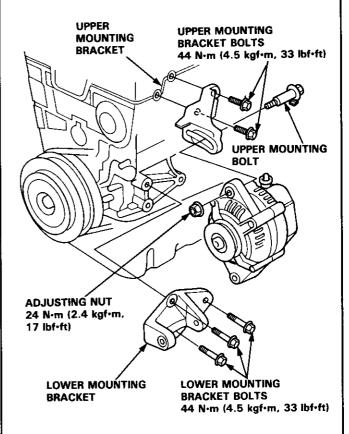
- 3. Remove the terminal nut and the WHT wire from the B terminal.
- Loosen the adjusting nut, then remove the mounting nut.



MOUNTING NUT 44 N·m (4.5 kgf·m, 33 lbf·ft)

- Remove the alternator belt from the alternator pulley.
- Remove the lower mounting bolt, then lift the alternator upward.

7. Remove the lower and upper mounting bracket bolts and the mounting brackets.



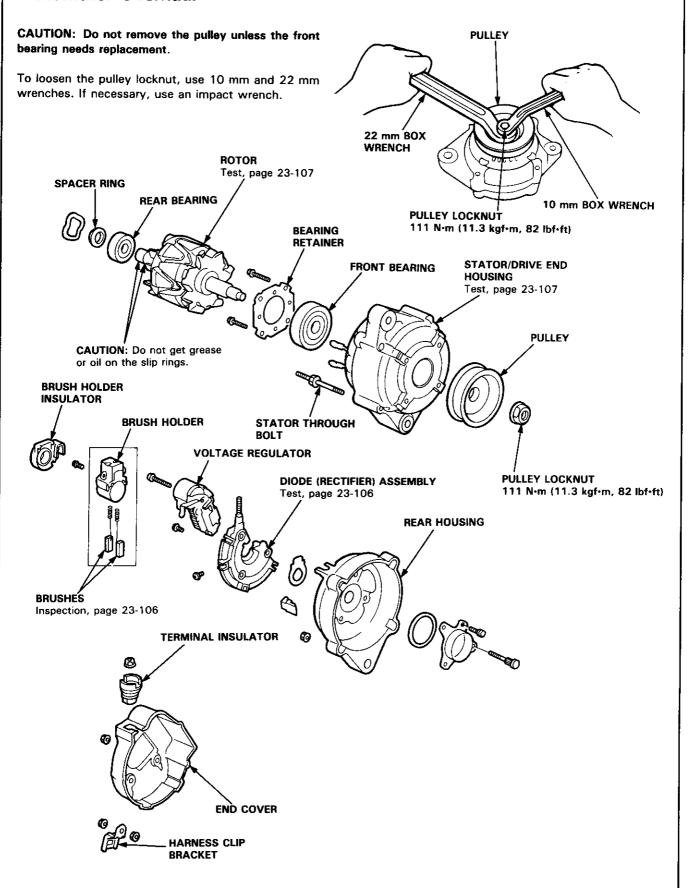
- 8. Remove the adjusting nut and upper mounting bolt, then lift out the alternator.
- 9. Install the alternator in the reverse order of removal.

CAUTION: Adjust the alternator belt tension after installation (see page 23-108).

NOTE: Reconnect the battery ground cable and turn the radio on. When the word "CODE" is displayed, enter the customer's 5-digit code.



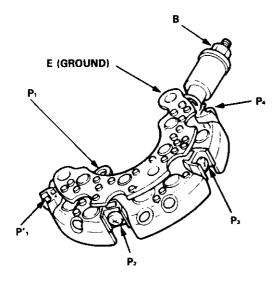
Alternator Overhaul

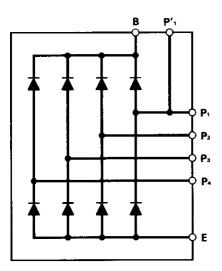


Rectifier Test

NOTE: The diodes are designed to allow current to pass in one direction while blocking it in the opposite direction. Each diode must be tested for continuity in both directions with an ohmmeter that has diode checking capability. Since the alternator rectifier is made up of eight diodes (four pairs), there are a total of 16 checks.

 Check for continuity in each direction between the B and P terminals, and between the E (ground) and P terminals of each diode pair. All diodes should have continuity in only one direction.





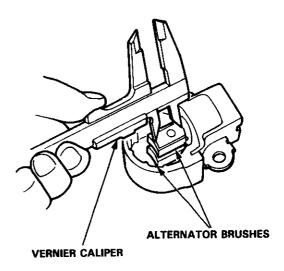
If any of the eight diodes fails, replace the rectifier assembly. (Diodes are not available separately.)

Alternator Brush Inspection

- 1. Remove the end cover, then take out the brush holder by removing its two screws.
- Measure the length of the brushes with a vernier caliper.

Alternator Brush Length:

Standard: 10.5 mm (0.41 in) Service Limit: 1.5 mm (0.06 in)

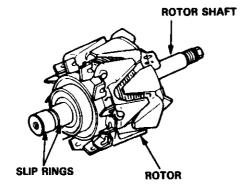


If the brushes are less than the service limit, replace the brush holder assembly.



Rotor Slip Ring Test ---

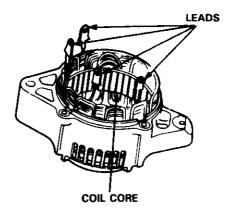
1. Check that there is continuity between the slip rings.



- 2. Check that there is no continuity between the slip rings and the rotor or rotor shaft.
- 3. If the rotor fails either continuity check, replace the alternator.

- Stator Test

1. Check that there is continuity between each pair of leads.



- 2. Check that there is no continuity between each lead and the coil core.
- 3. If the coil fails either continuity check, replace the alternator.

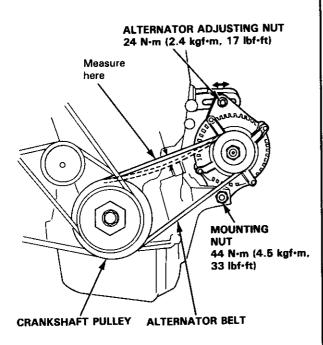
Alternator Belt Inspection and Adjustment

Deflection Method:

Apply a force of 100 N (10 kgf, 22 lbf) and measure the deflection between the alternator and the crankshaft pulley.

Deflection: 9-11 mm (0.35-0.43 in)

NOTE: On a brand-new belt (one that has been run for less than five minutes), the deflection should be $6-8~\mathrm{mm}$ (0.23-0.32 in) when first measured. If the belt is worn or damaged, replace it.



If adjustment is necessary:

- Loosen the alternator adjusting nut and mounting nut.
- Move the alternator to obtain the proper belt tension, then retighten the adjusting nut and mounting nut to the specified torques.
- 3. Recheck the deflection of the belt.

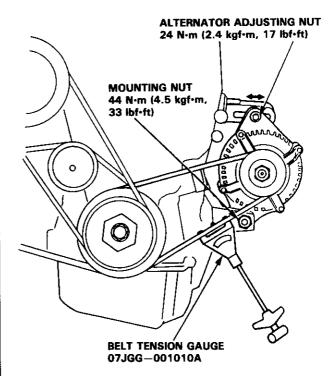
NOTE: If necessary, adjust the P/S pump belt (see section 17) and A/C compressor belt (see section 22).

Belt Tension Gauge Method:

Following the gauge manufacturer's instructions, attach the belt tension gauge to the belt and measure the tension.

Tension: 340-490 N (35-50 kgf, 77-110 lbf)

NOTE: On a brand-new belt (one that has been run for less than five minutes), tension should be $690-880 \, N \, (70-90 \, kgf, 154-198 \, lbf)$ when first measured. If the belt is worn or damaged, replace it.



If adjustment is necessary:

- Loosen the alternator adjusting nut and mounting nut.
- Move the alternator to obtain the proper belt tension, then retighten the adjusting nut and mounting nut to the specified torques.
- 3. Recheck the tension of the belt.

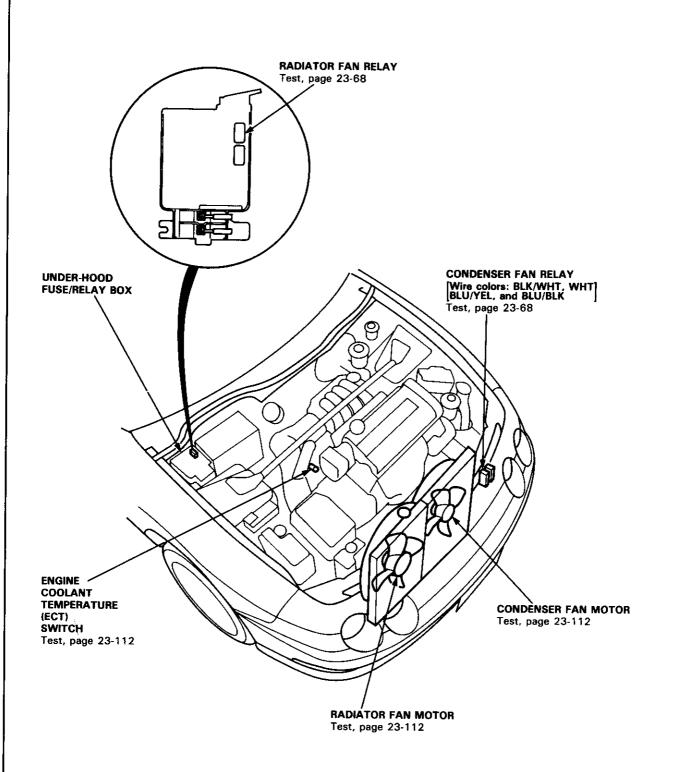
NOTE: If necessary, adjust the P/S pump belt (see section 17) and A/C compressor belt (see section 22).

Fan Controls

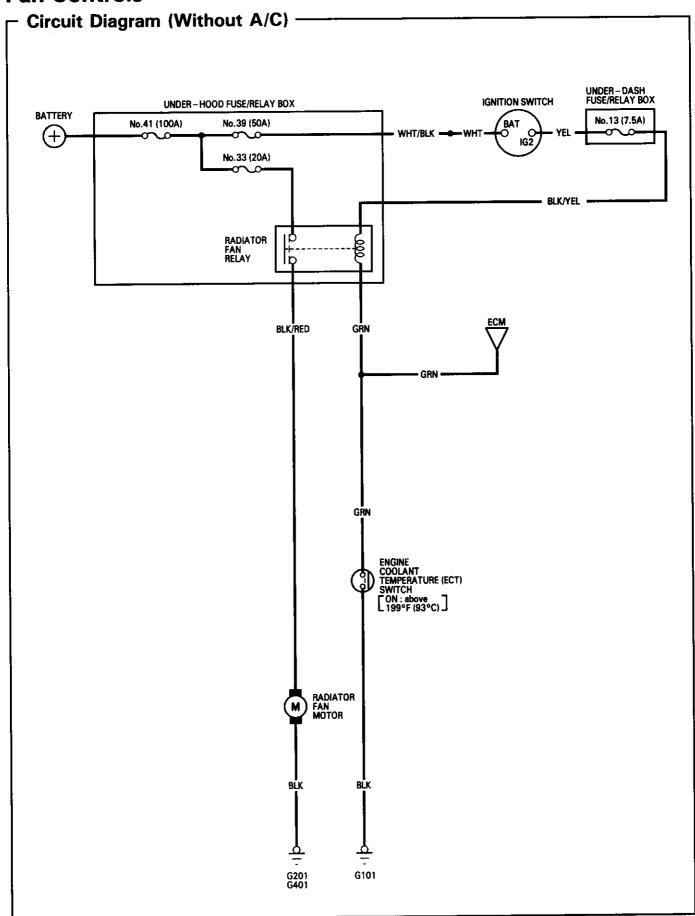


- Component Location Index

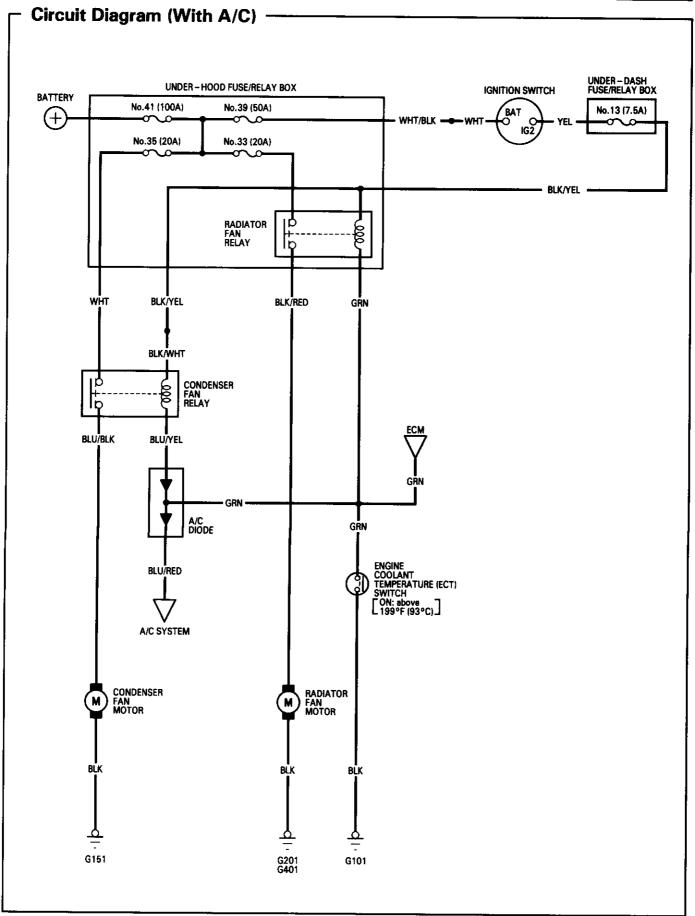
For the A/C system, see section 22.



Fan Controls





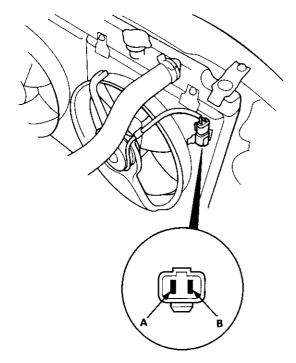


Fan Controls

- Fan Motor Test

- 1. Disconnect the 2-P connector from the fan motor.
- Test the motor by connecting battery power to the B terminal, and ground to the A terminal.
- 3. If the fan motor fails to run smoothly, replace it.

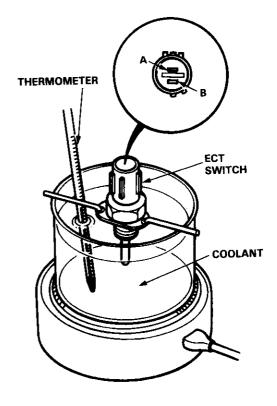
NOTE: The illustration shows the radiator fan.



Engine Coolant Temperature (ECT) Switch Test

NOTE: Bleed air from the cooling system after installing the engine coolant temperature (ECT) switch (see section 10).

- 1. Remove the ECT switch from the thermostat housing.
- 2. Suspend the ECT switch in a container of coolant as shown.



- 3. Heat the coolant and check engine coolant temperature with a thermometer.
- 4. Check the continuity between the A and B terminals according to the table:

| Tempe | Terminal | Α | В |
|--------|------------------------------|----|----------|
| Switch | Above 196-203°F (91-95°C) | 0- | <u> </u> |
| | Below 181-189°F (83-87°C) | | |

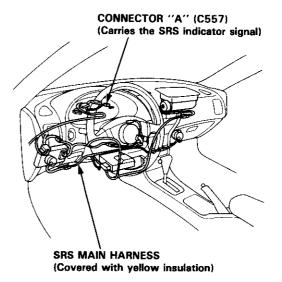
Gauge Assembly

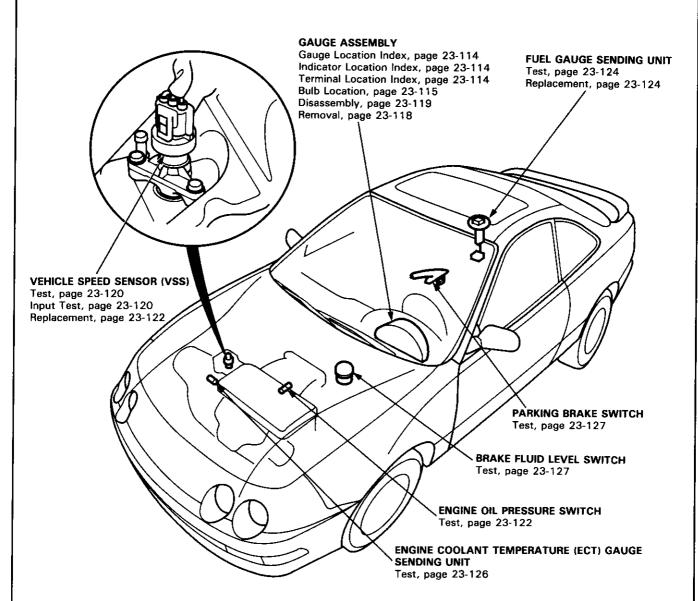
- - +

Component Location Index -

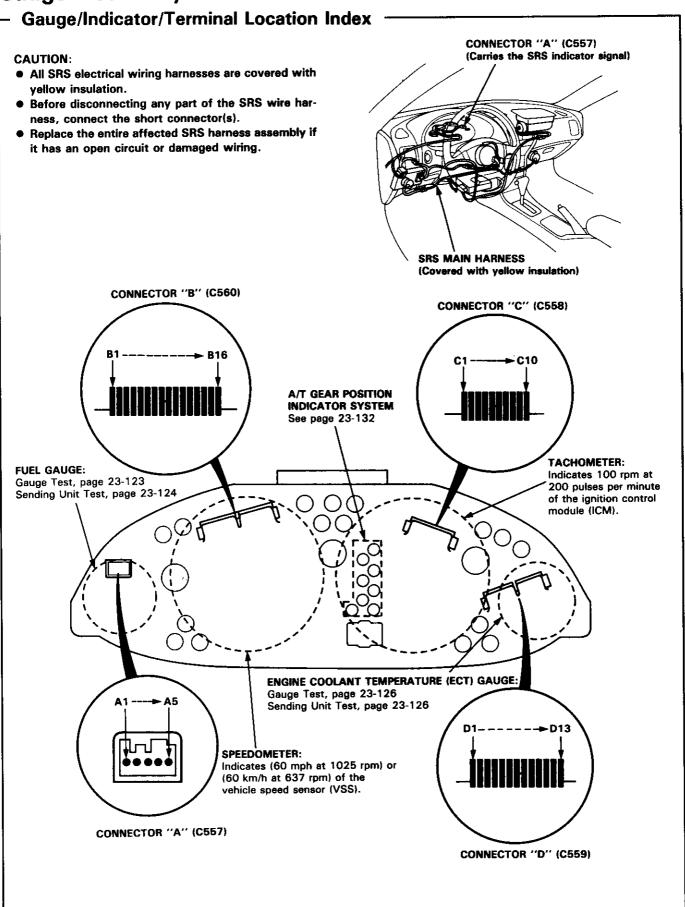
CAUTION:

- All SRS electrical wiring harnesses are covered with yellow insulation.
- Before disconnecting any part of the SRS wire harness, connect the short connector(s).
- Replace the entire affected SRS harness assembly if it has an open circuit or damaged wiring.





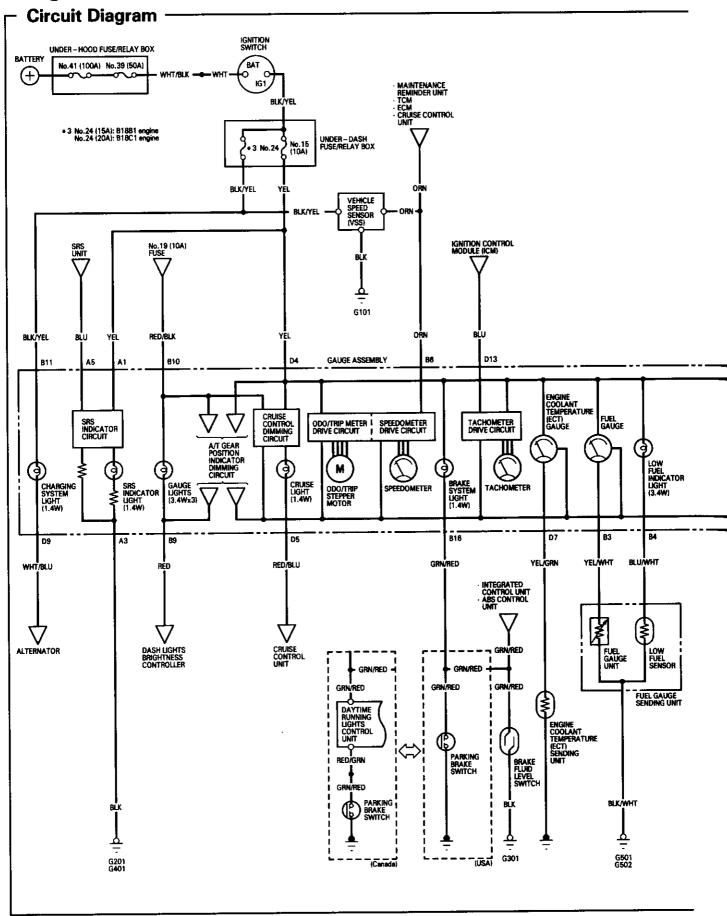
Gauge Assembly



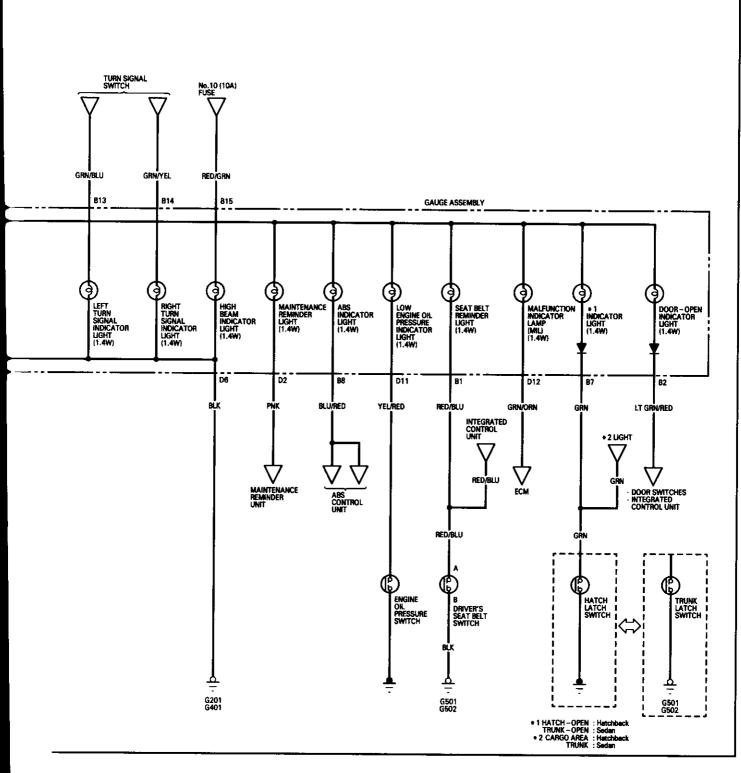


Bulb Locations HIGH BEAM INDICATOR LIGHT (1.4 W) LEFT TURN SIGNAL INDICATOR LIGHT (1.4 W) RIGHT TURN SIGNAL INDICATOR LIGHT (1.4 W) **CHARGING SYSTEM LIGHT (1.4 W)** BRAKE SYSTEM LIGHT (1.4 W) SEAT BELT REMINDER LIGHT (1.4 W) A/T GEAR POSITION INDICATOR LIGHT (1.12 W x 7) DOOR-OPEN INDICATOR LIGHT (1.4 W) **LOW ENGINE OIL PRESSURE** INDICATOR LIGHT (1.4 W) **MALFUNCTION INDICATOR LAMP** (MIL) (1.4 W) *SRS INDICATOR LIGHT (1.4 W) **GAUĞE LIGHTS LOW FUEL INDICATOR LIGHT (3.4 W)** MAINTENANCE REMINDER LIGHT (1.4 W) (3.4 W x 3) CRUISE LIGHT (1.4 W) ABS INDICATOR LIGHT (1.4 W) TAILGATE-OPEN INDICATOR LIGHT (1.4 W): Hatchback TRUNK-OPEN INDICATOR LIGHT (1.4 W): Sedan *: On the SRS printed circuit board

Gauge Assembly





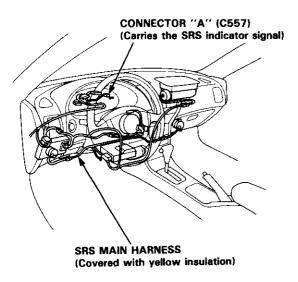


Gauge Assembly

Removal

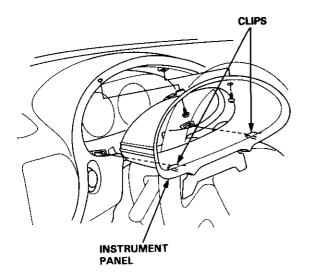
CAUTION:

- All SRS electrical wiring harnesses are covered with yellow insulation.
- Before disconnecting any part of the SRS wire harness, connect the short connector(s).
- Replace the entire affected SRS harness assembly if it has an open circuit or damaged wiring.

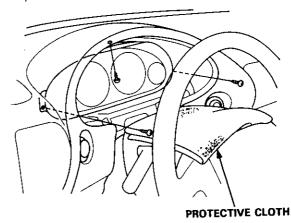


- 1. Remove the two screws from the instrument panel.
- 2. Remove the instrument panel.

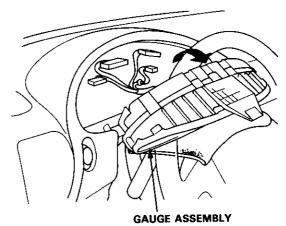
NOTE: Remove the instrument panel carefully without damaging the clips.



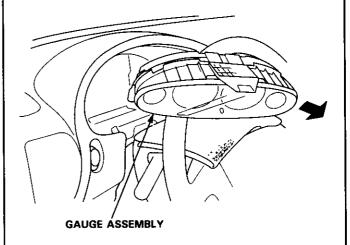
- 3. Tilt the steering wheel down with the tilt adjustment lever
- 4. Remove the three mounting screws, and spread a protective cloth on the steering column.



5. Pry the gauge assembly out, and disconnect all connectors from it.



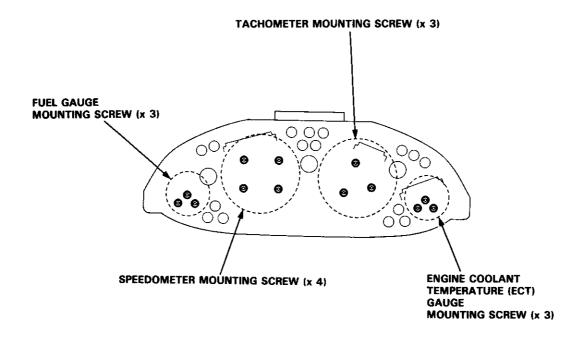
6. Take out the gauge assembly as shown.

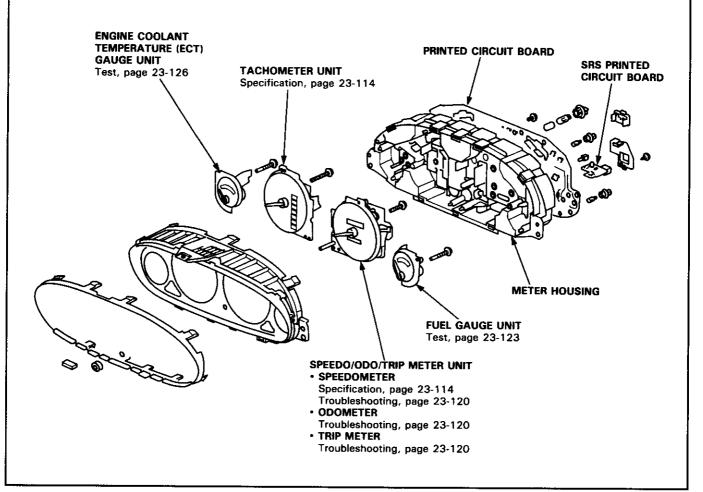




Disassembly

NOTE: Handle the terminals and printed circuit boards carefully to avoid damaging them.





Speedometer/Trip Meter/Odometer

Troubleshooting -

NOTE: The numbers in the table show the troubleshooting sequence.

| Item to be inspected Symptom | Blown *No. 24 fuse (In the under-dash fuse/relay box) | Speedometer | Odo/Trip meter | Printed circuit board | Vehicle speed sensor (VSS) input test | Odometer connector at printed circuit board | VSS test flowchart |
|---|--|-------------|----------------|-----------------------|--|---|--------------------|
| Odometer and trip meter work, but speedometer does not. | | 1 | | 2 | | | |
| Speedometer works, but odometer and trip meter do not. | | | 1 | 2 | | 3 | |
| Speedometer, odometer, and trip meter do not work. | 1 | | | | 2 | | 3 |

VSS Input Test (At harness side of 3-P connector)

| No. | Wire | Test condition | Test: Desired result | Possible cause if result is not obtained |
|-----|---------|-------------------------|---|--|
| 1 | BLK | Under all conditions | Check for continuity to ground: There should be continuity. | An open in the wire Poor ground (G101) |
| 2 | BLK/YEL | Ignition switch ON (II) | Check for voltage to ground: There should be battery voltage. | Blown *No. 24 fuse in the underdash fuse/relay box Short to ground An open in the wire |
| 3 | ORN | Ignition switch ON (II) | Check for voltage to ground: There should be about 5 V. | Short to ground An open in the wire |

NOTE: A short to ground in the ORN wire can be caused by a short in any component connected to it.

VSS Test

Speedometer does not work.

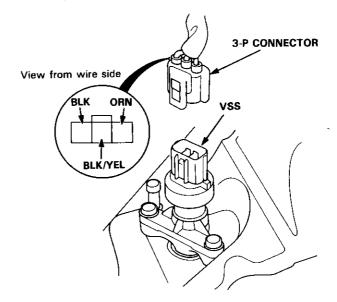
Inspect *No. 24 fuse in the underdash fuse/relay box before testing.

Disconnect the 3-P connector at the VSS.

Turn the ignition switch ON (II).

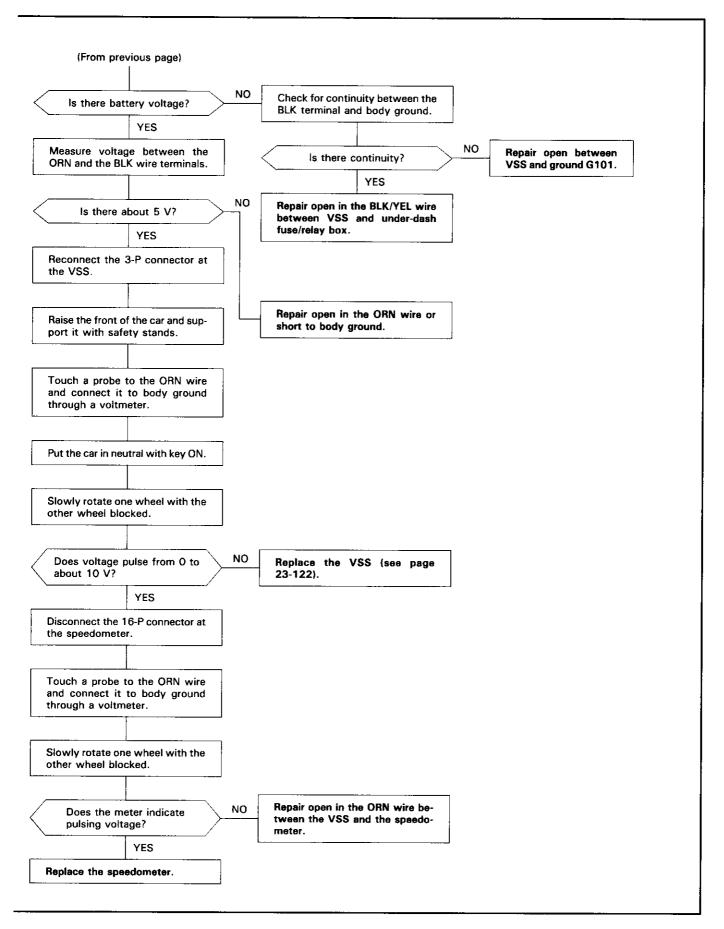
Measure voltage between the BLK/YEL wire terminal and the BLK wire terminal in the harness side of the 3-P connector.

(To next page)



*No. 24 (15 A): B18B1 engine No. 24 (20 A): B18C1 engine

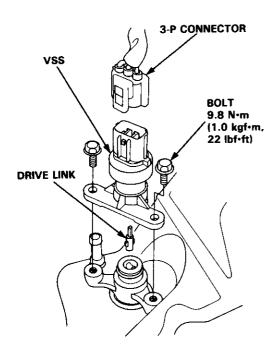




Vehicle Speed Sensor (VSS)

Replacement

- Disconnect the 3-P connector from the vehicle speed sensor (VSS).
- 2. Remove the two mounting bolts, then remove the VSS



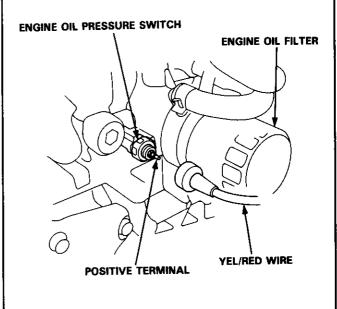
3. Install in the reverse order of removal.

NOTE: The VSS drive link is a very small part; be careful not to lose it.

Engine Oil Pressure Indicator System

Engine Oil Pressure Switch Test

Remove the YEL/RED wire from the engine oil pressure switch.



- 2. Check for continuity between the positive terminal and the engine (ground) with the ignition switch OFF.
 - If there is continuity, go to step 3.
 - If there is no continuity, replace the switch.
- 3. Check for continuity again, this time with the engine running.
 - If there is continuity, go to step 4.
 - If there is no continuity, the switch is OK.
- Make sure engine oil level is OK, then check engine oil pressure (see section 8).
 - If engine oil pressure is OK, replace the switch.
 - If engine oil pressure is low, check the engine oil pump (see section 8) and, if necessary, replace it.

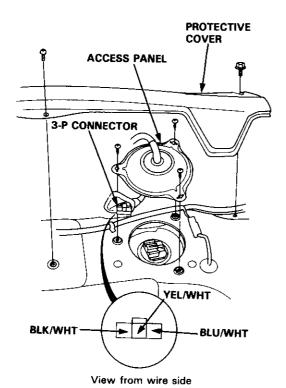
Fuel Gauge

Gauge Test

<u>-</u>

NOTE: Refer to page 23-116 for the fuel gauge system circuit.

- Check the No. 15 (10 A) fuse in the under-dash fuse/relay box before testing.
- Remove the rear seat (see section 20).
- Remove the protective cover and access panel from the floor.
- 4. With the ignition switch OFF, disconnect the 3-P connector from the fuel gauge sending unit.



- Connect the voltmeter positive probe to the YEL/WHT terminal and the negative probe to the BLK/WHT terminal, then turn the ignition switch ON (II). There should be between 5 and 8 V.
 - If the voltage is as specified, go to step 5.
 - If the voltage is not as specified, check for
 - an open in the YEL/WHT, BLU/WHT or BLK/WHT wire.
 - poor ground (G502).

 Turn the ignition switch OFF. Attach a jumper wire between the BLK/WHT and YEL/WHT terminals, then turn the ignition switch ON (II). Check that the pointer of the fuel gauge starts moving toward the "F" mark.

CAUTION: Turn the ignition switch OFF before the pointer reaches "F" on the gauge dial. Failure to do so may damage the fuel gauge.

NOTE: The fuel gauge is a bobbin (cross-coil) type gauge, hence the fuel level is continuously indicated even when the ignition switch is OFF, and the pointer moves more slowly than that of a bimetal type gauge.

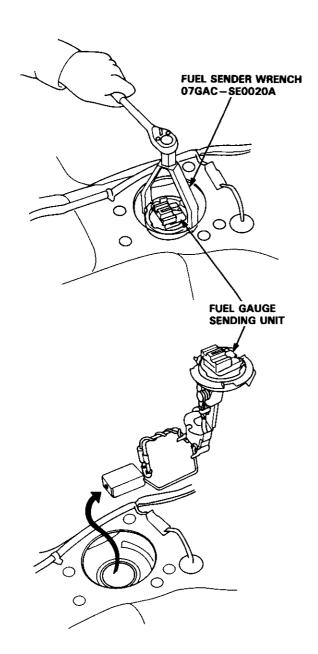
- If the pointer of the fuel gauge does not move at all, replace the gauge.
- If the gauge is OK, inspect the fuel gauge sending unit.

Fuel Gauge

Sending Unit Test/Replacement

A WARNING Do not smoke while working on the fuel system. Keep open flames away from your work area.

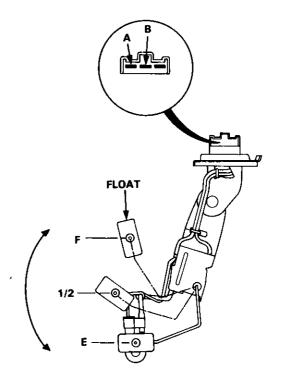
- 1. Remove the rear seat (see section 20).
- 2. Remove the protective cover and access panel from the floor.
- 3. With the ignition switch OFF, disconnect the 3-P connector from the fuel gauge sending unit.
- 4. Remove the fuel gauge sending unit.



Measure the resistance between the A and B terminals at E (empty), 1/2 (half full) and F (full) by moving the float.

| Float Position | E | 1/2 | F | |
|----------------|---------|-----------|-----|--|
| Resistance (Ω) | 105-110 | 25.5-39.5 | 2-5 | |

Check the change in resistance by moving the float up and down.



If unable to obtain the above readings or if resistance does not change, replace the fuel gauge sending unit.

Low Fuel Indicator

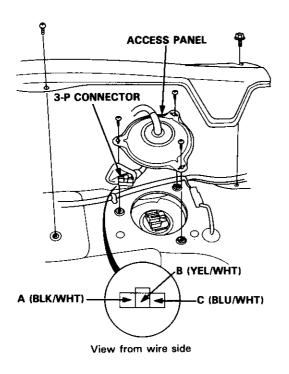
Indicator Light Test

NOTE: Refer to page 23-116 for the wiring description of the low fuel indicator circuit.

1. Park car on level ground.

A WARNING Do not smoke while working on the fuel system. Keep open flames away from your work area. Drain fuel only into an approved container.

- 2. Drain fuel into an approved container. Then install the drain bolt with a new washer.
- 3. Add less than 8.2ℓ (2.2 U.S.Gal, 1.8 Imp.Gal) of fuel and turn the ignition switch ON (II). The low fuel indicator light should come on within four minutes.
 - If the light does not come on, remove the access panel and disconnect the 3-P connector from the fuel gauge sending unit. Connect the A (BLK/WHT) terminal to the C (BLU/WHT) terminal with a jumper wire.
 - If the light comes on, the problem is either the sending unit or its ground.
 - If the light does not come on, the problem is an open in the BLU/WHT wire to the gauge assembly, no power to the gauge, or a blown bulb.
 - If the light comes on, add approx. 4 \(\ell \) (1.1
 U.S.Gal, 0.9 Imp.Gal) of fuel, the light should go
 off within four minutes.



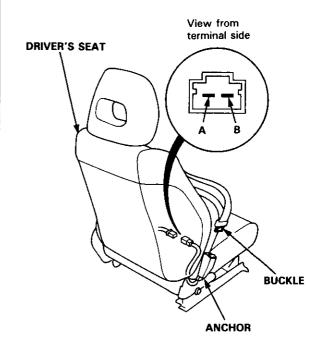
Seat Belt Reminder System



Seat Belt Switch Test

- Slide the driver's seat to the middle position, then disconnect the 2-P connector from the back of the seat
- 2. Check for continuity between the A and B terminals in each condition according to the table.

| Terminal Condition | Α | В |
|--------------------|---|----------|
| UNBUCKLED | 0 | <u> </u> |
| BUCKLED | | |



NOTE: Refer to page 23-146 for the seat belt reminder input test.

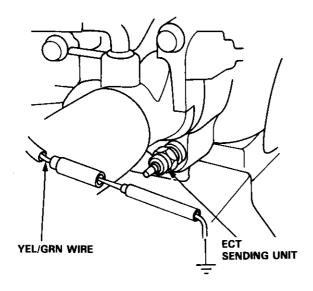
3. If necessary, replace the seat belt switch.

Engine Coolant Temperature (ECT) Gauge

Gauge Test -

NOTE: Refer to page 23-116 for the wiring description of the engine coolant temperature (ECT) gauge circuit diagram.

- Check the No. 15 (10 A) fuse in the under-dash fuse/relay box before testing.
- Make sure the ignition switch is OFF, then disconnect the YEL/GRN wire from the ECT gauge sending unit and ground it with a jumper wire.



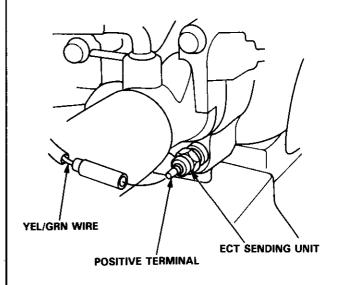
Turn the ignition switch ON (II).
 Check that the pointer of the ECT gauge starts moving toward the "H" mark.

CAUTION: Turn the ignition switch OFF before the pointer reaches "H" on the gauge dial. Failure to do so may damage the gauge.

- If the pointer of the gauge does not move at all, check for an open in the YEL or YEL/GRN wire.
 If the wires are OK, replace the ECT gauge.
- If the ECT gauge works, test the ECT sending unit.

ECT Sending Unit Test

- Disconnect the YEL/GRN wire from the ECT sending unit.
- 2. With the engine cold, use an ohmmeter to measure resistance between the positive terminal and the engine (ground).



- 3. Check the temperature of the coolant.
- Run the engine and measure the change in resistance with the engine at operating temperature (the radiator fan comes on).

| Temperature | 133°F (56°C) | 185°F (85°C) — 212°F (100°C) |
|----------------|--------------|---------------------------------|
| Resistance (Ω) | 137 | 46-30 |

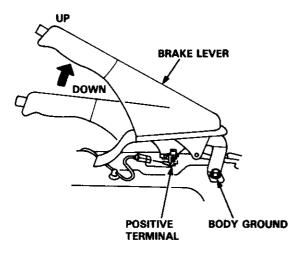
If the obtained readings are substantially different from the specifications above, replace the ECT sending unit.



Parking Brake Switch Test

- Remove the floor console, and disconnect the connector from the switch.
- Check for continuity between the positive terminal and body ground in each lever position according to the table.

| Terminal Lever position | POSITIVE | BODY | | |
|-------------------------|----------|------|--|--|
| UP | 0 | | | |
| DOWN | | | | |



Canada:

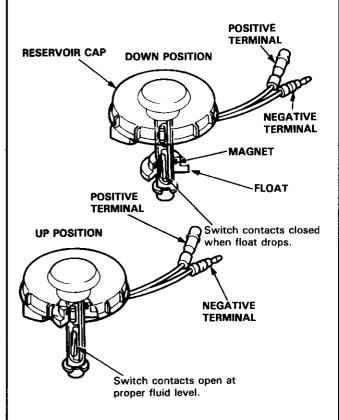
If the parking brake switch is OK, but the brake system indicator does not function, perform the input test for the daytime running lights control unit (see page 23-156).



Brake Fluid Level Switch Test

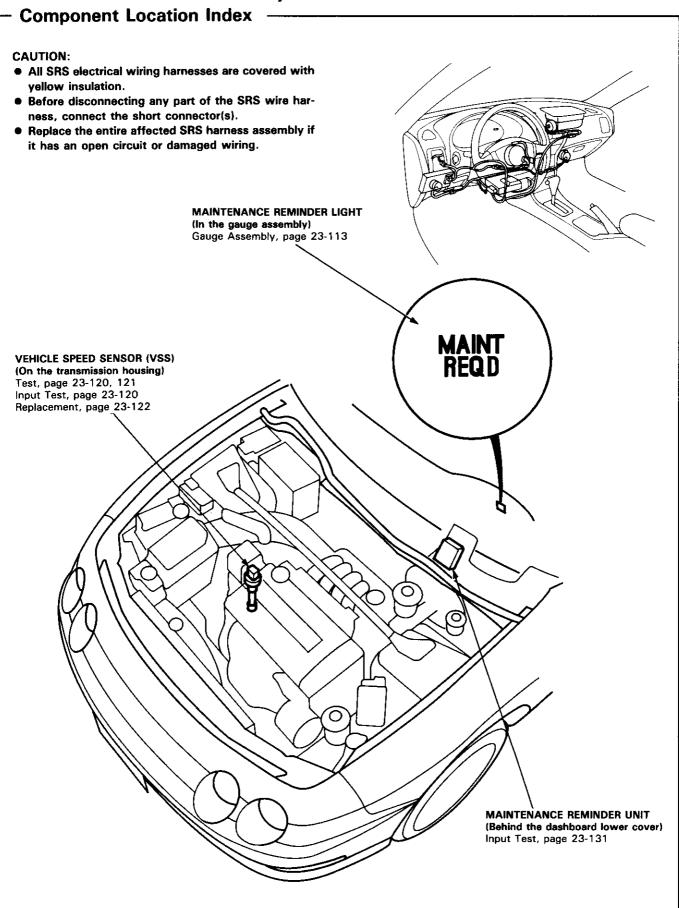
- 1. Remove the reservoir cap.
- 2. Check that the float moves up and down freely, if it does not, replace the reservoir cap assembly.
- 3. Check for continuity between the terminals in each float position according to the table.

| Terminal Float position | POSITIVE | NEGATIVE |
|-------------------------|----------|----------|
| UP | | |
| DOWN | 0 | |



4. If necessary, replace the reservoir cap assembly.

Maintenance Reminder System





Description

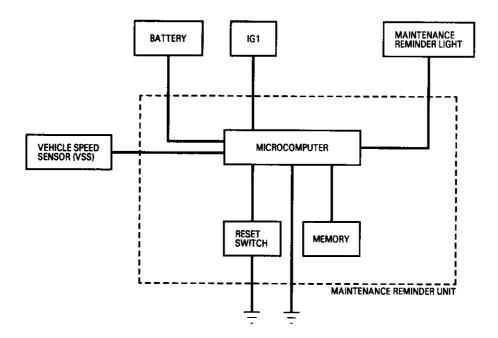
Based on signals received from the vehicle speed sensor (VSS), the microcomputer in the maintenance reminder unit, which is located behind the dashboard lower cover, computes the distances traveled. When you turn the ignition switch on, the reminder light in the gauge assembly will come on for two seconds (bulb check function). At $9.650 \pm 160 \, \text{km}$ ($6.000 \pm 100 \, \text{miles}$) intervals, the reminder light will glow for two seconds and then blink ten seconds after you turn the ignition switch on. This will repeat every time you turn the ignition switch on until the car reaches $12.070 \pm 160 \, \text{km}$ ($7.500 \pm 100 \, \text{miles}$).

Beyond the 12,070 \pm 160 km (7,500 \pm 100 mile) interval, the light will continue to glow after the bulb check until you turn the ignition switch off or reset the unit.

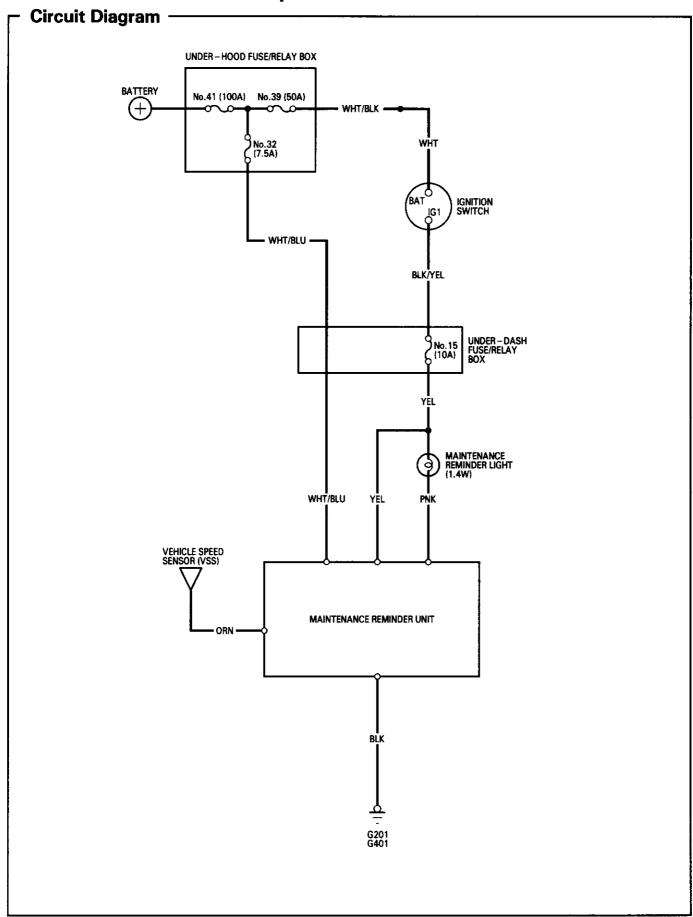
To reset the unit, the car must be parked and the ignition switch must be on. Press the reset button on the unit for more than three seconds, and the reminder light will go off.

NOTE

- Turn the ignition switch OFF before you remove the 5-P connector from the maintenance reminder unit, otherwise you will cancel all data in the memory.
- The data will remain in the memory even when the ignition switch is turned off, or if the unit is disconnected. When the ignition switch is turned on, and the car is driven, additional data will be stored.



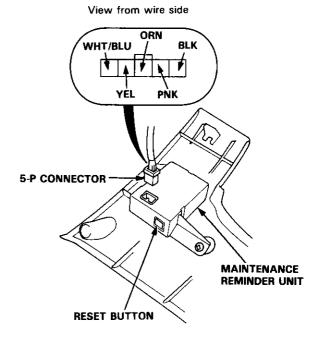
Maintenance Reminder System





Maintenance Reminder Unit Input Test

- 1. With the ignition switch OFF, disconnect the 5-P connector from the reminder unit.
- 2. Inspect the connector and socket terminals to be sure they are all making good contact.
 - If the terminals are bent, loose or corroded, repair them as necessary, and recheck the system.
 - If the terminals look OK, make the following input tests at the connector.
 - If a test indicates a problem, find and correct the cause, then recheck the system.
 - If all the input tests prove OK, the reminder unit must be faulty; replace it.



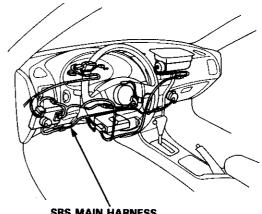
| No. | Wire | Test condition | Test: Desired result | Possible cause if result is not obtained |
|-----|---------|---|---|--|
| 1 | BLK | Under all conditions | Check for continuity to ground: There should be continuity. | Poor ground (G201, G401)An open in the wire |
| 2 | WHT/BLU | Under all conditions | Check for voltage to ground: There should be battery voltage. | Blown No. 32 (7.5 A) fuse in the under-hood fuse/relay box An open in the wire |
| 3 | YEL | Ignition ON (II) | Check for voltage to ground: There should be battery voltage. | Blown No. 15 (10 A) fuse in the under-dash fuse/relay box An open in the wire |
| 4 | PNK | Ignition ON (II) | Connect to body ground: The reminder light should go on. | Blown No. 15 (10 A) fuse in the under-dash fuse/relay box Blown bulb An open in the wire |
| 5 | ORN | Ignition ON (II), car in neutral with front of car raised, one wheel rotated with other wheel blocked | Check for voltage to ground: Meter should indicate pulsing voltage. | Faulty vehicle speed sensor (VSS) An open in the wire |

A/T Gear Position Indicator

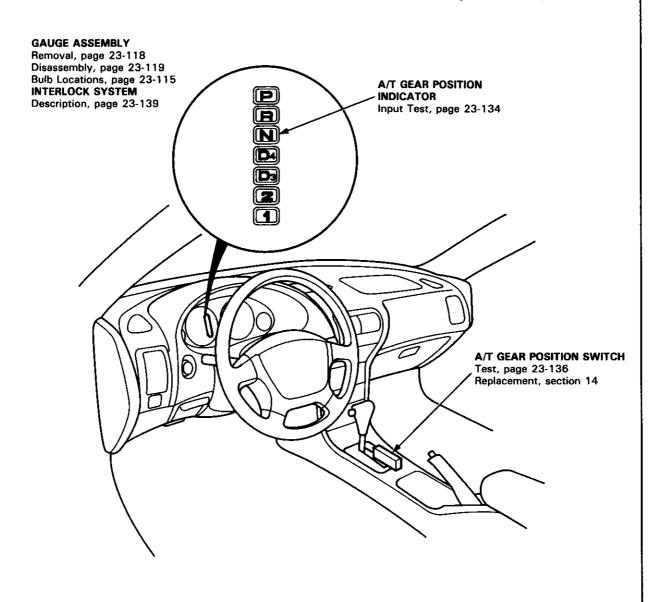
- Component Location Index -

CAUTION:

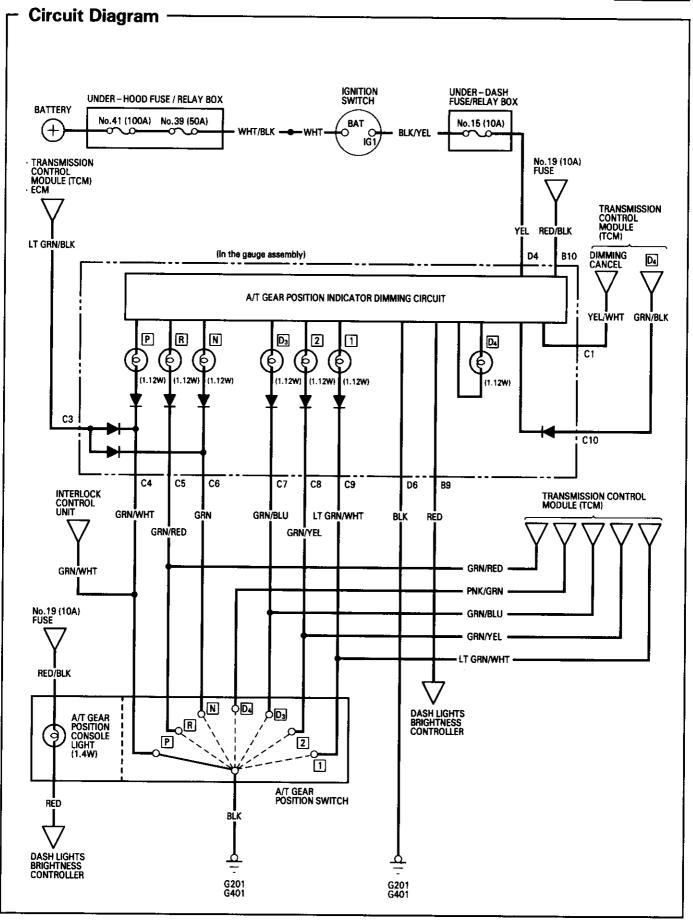
- All SRS electrical wiring harnesses are covered with yellow insulation.
- Before disconnecting any part of the SRS wire harness, connect the short connector(s).
- Replace the entire affected SRS harness assembly if it has an open circuit or damaged wiring.



SRS MAIN HARNESS (Covered with yellow insulation)







A/T Gear Position Indicator

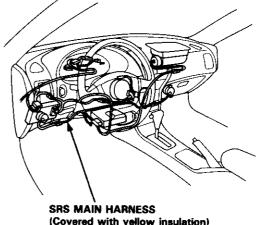
- Indicator Input Test -

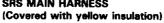
CAUTION:

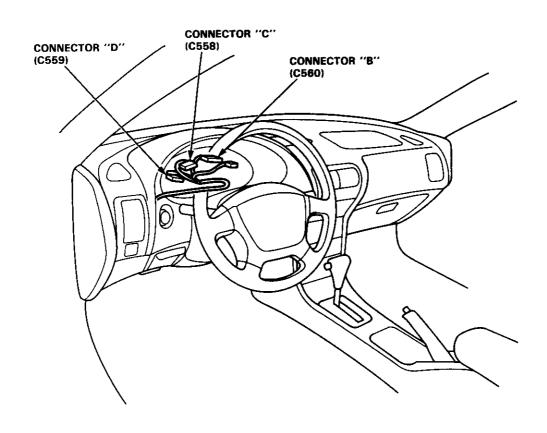
- All SRS electrical wiring harnesses are covered with yellow insulation.
- Before disconnecting any part of the SRS wire harness, connect the short connector(s).
- Replace the entire affected SRS harness assembly if it has an open circuit or damaged wiring.

Remove the gauge assembly from the dashboard (see page 23-118), and disconnect connectors "B", "C" and "D" from it. Inspect the connector terminals to be sure they are all making good contact.

- If the terminals are bent, loose or corroded, repair them as necessary, and recheck the system.
- If the terminals look OK, make the following input tests at the connector.
 - If any test indicates a problem, find and correct the cause, then recheck the system.
 - If all the input tests prove OK, the gauge assembly must be faulty; replace it.

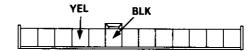






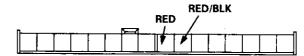


CONNECTOR "D": View from wire side of female terminals



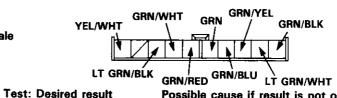
| No. | Wire | Test condition | Test: Desired result | Possible cause if result is not obtained |
|-----|------|-------------------------|--|---|
| 1 | BLK | Under all conditions | Check for continuity to ground: There should be continuity. | • Poor ground (G201, G401) • An open in the wire |
| 2 | YEL | Ignition switch ON (II) | Check for voltage to ground: There should be battery voltage. | Blown No. 15 (10 A) fuse in the under-dash fuse box An open in the wire |

CONNECTOR "B": View from wire side of female terminals



| No. | Wire | Test condition | Test: Desired result | Possible cause if result is not obtained |
|-----|-----------------------|---|---|--|
| 1 | RED/BLK and RED | Combination light switch ON and dash lights brightness control dial on full bright | Check for voltage between RED/BLK and RED terminals: There should be battery voltage. | Faulty dash lights brightness control system An open in the wire |

CONNECTOR "C": View from wire side of female terminals

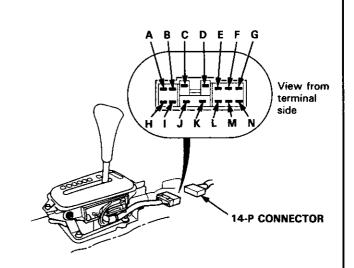


| No. | Wire | Test condition | Test: Desired result | Possible cause if result is not obtained |
|-----|----------------|---|---|--|
| | GRN/WHT | Shift lever in position P NOTE: Don't push the brake pedal. | Check for continuity to ground: There should be continuity. NOTE: There should be no | Faulty A/T gear position switch Poor ground An open in the wire |
| | GRN/RED | Shift lever in position R | continuity in any other position. | |
| 1 | GRN | Shift lever in position N | | |
| | GRN/BLU | Shift lever in position D ₃ | | |
| | GRN/YEL | Shift lever in position 2 | | |
| | LT- GRN/WHT | Shift lever in position 1 | | |
| 2 | GRN/BLK | Ignition switch ON (II) and shift lever in any position except D4 | Check for voltage to ground: There should be battery voltage for two seconds after the ignition switch is turned ON, and less than 1 V two seconds later. | Faulty transmission control module (TCM) An open in the wire |
| 3 | YEL/WHT | Ignition switch ON (II) and shift lever in any position except D4 | Check for voltage to ground: There should be less than 1 V for two seconds after the ignition switch is turned ON and more than 5 V two seconds later. | Faulty transmission control module (TCM) An open in the wire |
| 4 | LT- GRN/BLK | Ignition switch ON (II) | Check for voltage to ground: There should be more than 5 V | Faulty transmission control module (TCM) or ECM An open in the wire |

A/T Gear Position Indicator

- A/T Gear Position Switch Test

- 1. Remove the console, then disconnect the 14-P connector from the switch.
- 2. Check for continuity between the terminals in each position according to the table.
 - Move the lever back and forth at each position without touching the push button, and check for continuity within the range of free play.
 - If there is no continuity within the range of free play, adjust the installing position of the switch as described on the next page.



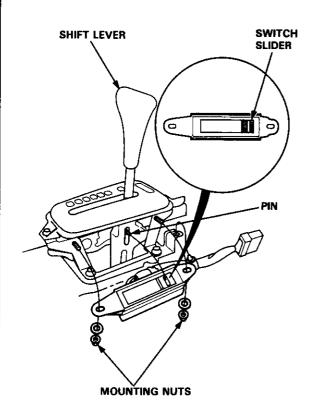
| A/T Gear Pos | sition Sy | vitch (W | ithout c | ruise co | ntrol) | | | | | Back — u Light Sv | | Neutral Position | Switch |
|-----------------------|---------------------------------------|-----------------------|----------|----------|--------|---|----|---|----------|----------------------|---|---------------------|----------|
| Terminal Position | | A | В | E | F | G | N | М | L | С | D | J | К |
| 1 | | 0- | -0 | | | | | | | | | | |
| 2 | | $\overline{\bigcirc}$ | | | | | | | | <u> </u> | | <u> </u> | |
| D ₃ | | \Diamond | | | 0 | | | | | | | | |
| D 4 | ····· | 0 | | | | 0 | | | | | | | |
| N | | 0- | | - | | | -0 | | | | | $ \bigcirc $ | - |
| R | | 0 | | | | | | 0 | | 0 | 0 | | |
| P | · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · | \circ | | | | | | | <u> </u> | | | 0- | $-\circ$ |

| A/T Gear Pos | sition Sv | vitch (W | ith cruis | e contro | d) | | | | | Back – u Light Sv | | Neutral Position | Switch |
|-------------------|---------------|---------------|-----------|----------|----|---------------|---|----|---|----------------------|------------|---------------------|---------------|
| Terminal Position | 1 | A | В | E | F | G | N | М | L | С | D | J | K |
| 1 | | 0 | Ö | | | | | | | | | | |
| 2 | 0- | $\overline{}$ | | -0 | | | | | | | | | |
| D ₃ | $\overline{}$ | $\overline{}$ | | <u> </u> | 0 | | | | | | | | |
| D4 | 0- | | | | | $\overline{}$ | | | | | | | |
| N | | 0 | | | | | 0 | | | | | | 9 |
| R | | 0 | | | | | | -0 | | 0 | \bigcirc | | |
| P | | 0 | | | | | | | 0 | | | 0 | $\overline{}$ |



A/T Gear Position Switch Replacement

- Remove the console, then disconnect the 14-P connector from the switch.
- 2. Remove the two console switch mounting nuts.



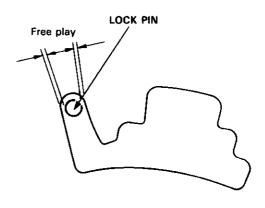
- 3. Position the switch slider to "Neutral" as shown above.
- 4. Move the shift lever to "Neutral", then slip the switch into position.
- 5. Attach the switch with the two nuts.
- 6. Test the switch in the P and N position of the shift lever. The engine should start when the shift lever is in position P anywhere in the range of free play.
- Connect the 14-P connector, clamp the harness and install the console.

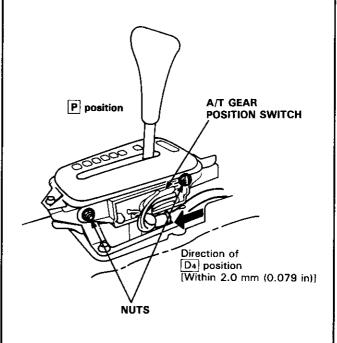
A/T Gear Position Switch Adjustment

- 1. Shift to the P position, and loosen the nuts.
- Slide the switch in the direction of D₄ position [within 2.0 mm (0.079 in.)] so that there is continuity between the "A" and "L" terminals in the range of free play of the shift lever.
- Recheck for continuity between each of the terminals.

NOTE:

- If adjustment is not possible, check for damage to the shift lever detent and/or the bracket. If there is no damage, replace the console switch.
- The engine should start when the shift lever is in position N in the range of free play.



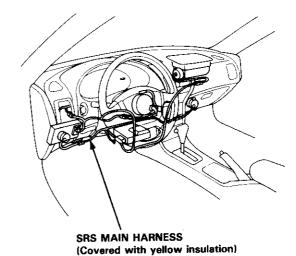


Interlock System

Component Location Index

CAUTION:

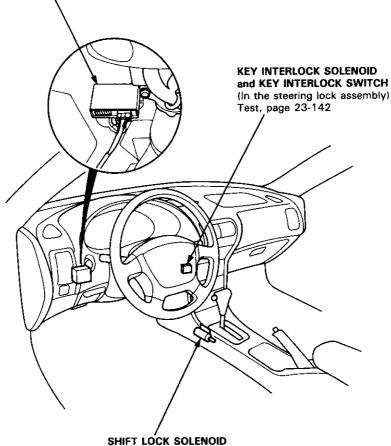
- All SRS electrical wiring harnesses are covered with yellow insulation.
- Before disconnecting any part of the SRS wire harness, connect the short connector(s).
- Replace the entire affected SRS harness assembly if it has an open circuit or damaged wiring.



INTERLOCK CONTROL UNIT

Input Test, page 23-141





Test, page 23-143 Replacement, page 23-143



Description

The car is equipped with the following devices to prevent inadvertent shifting:

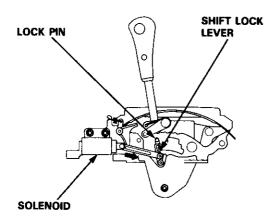
- A/T selector with shift lock
- Key cylinder with interlocked ignition key

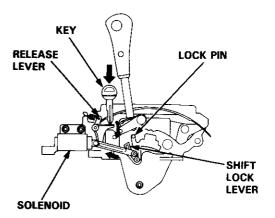
Shift Lock System:

The shift lock system prevents the shift lever from moving to \boxed{R} or $\boxed{D_4}$ from the \boxed{P} position unless the brake pedal is depressed and the accelerator is in its rest position.

NOTE:

- The shift lever cannot be shifted when the brake pedal and the accelerator are depressed on at the same time.
- In case of system malfunction, the shift lever can be released by pushing a key into the release slot near the shift lever.

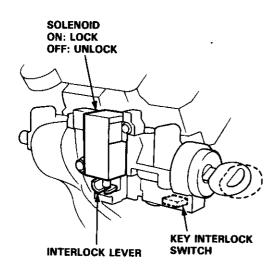


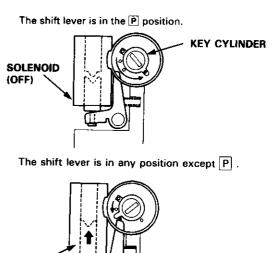


Key Interlock System:

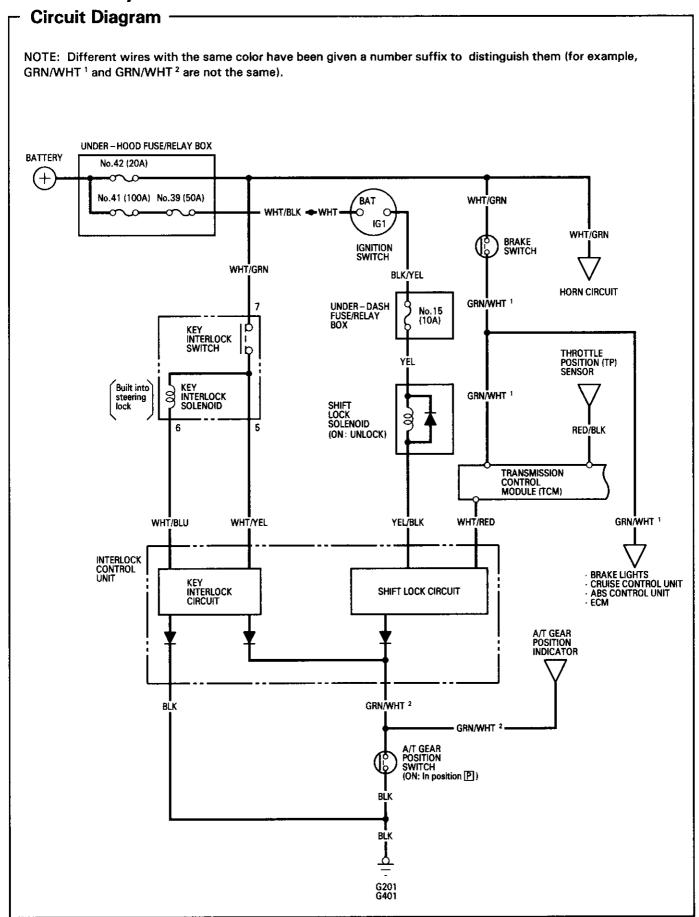
The ignition key cannot be removed from the ignition switch unless the shift lever is in the \boxed{P} position. When the shift lever is in any position other than \boxed{P} , a solenoid is activated, making it impossible for the key to be removed until the shift lever is moved to the \boxed{P} position.

SOLENOID (ON)





Interlock System

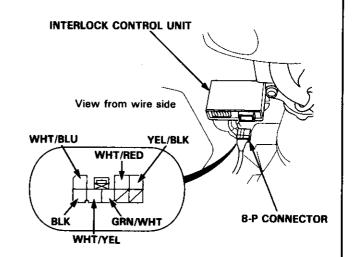




Control Unit Input Test -

Disconnect the 8-P connector from the interlock control unit. Check for good contact between the connector and socket terminals. If the terminals are OK, make following input tests at the connector. If all input tests are OK, but the problem remains, replace the control unit.

NOTE: If the shift lock solenoid clicks when the ignition switch is ON and the brake pedal is pushed (shift lever is in \boxed{P} position, accelerator is in rest position), the shift lock system is electronically normal; test the A/T gear position switch as described on page 23-134.



Shift Lock System:

| No. | Wire | Test condition | Test: Desired result | Possible cause if result is not obtained |
|-----|-----------|---|---|--|
| | WILT IDED | Ignition switch ON (II) Brake pedal pushed | Check for voltage to ground: There should be battery voltage. | Blown No. 41 (15 A) fuse in the under-hood fuse/relay box Faulty transmission control module (TCM) |
| 1 | WHT/RED | Ignition switch ON (II), brake pedal and accelerator pushed at the same time | Check for voltage to ground: There should be less than battery voltage. | Faulty ECM Faulty brake switch Faulty throttle position (TP) sensor An open in the wire |
| 2 | GRN/WHT² | Shift lever in P | Check for continuity to ground: There should be continuity. | Faulty A/T gear position switch Poor ground (G201, G401) An open in the wire |
| 3 | YEL/BLK | Ignition witch ON (II) | Check for voltage to ground: There should be battery voltage. | Blown No. 15 (10 A) fuse in the under-dash fuse/relay box Faulty shift lock solenoid An open in the wire |

Key Interlock System:

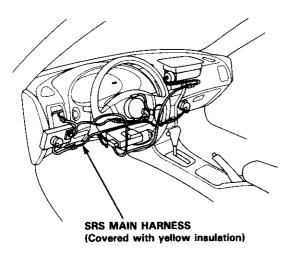
| No. | Wire | Test condition | Test: Desired result | Possible cause if result is not obtained |
|-----|----------|---|--|--|
| 1 | BLK | Under all conditions | Check for continuity to ground: There should be continuity. | Poor ground (G201, G401) An open in the wire |
| 2 | GRN/WHT² | Shift lever in position | Check for continuity to ground: There should be continuity. | Faulty A/T gear position switch Poor ground (G201, G401) An open in the wire |
| 3 | WHT/YEL | Ignition switch turned to ACC (I) and the key pushed in | Check for voltage to ground: There should be battery voltage. | Blown No. 42 (20 A) fuse in the under-hood fuse/relay box Faulty steering lock assembly (key interlock solenoid) An open in the wire |
| 4 | WHT/BLU | Ignition switch turned to ACC (I) and the key pushed in | Check for voltage to ground: There should be battery voltage. | Blown No. 42 (20 A) fuse in the under-hood fuse/relay box Faulty steering lock assembly (key interlock solenoid) An open in the wire |

Interlock System

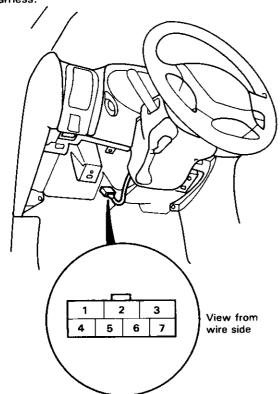
- Key Interlock Solenoid Test

CAUTION:

- All SRS electrical wiring harnesses are covered with yellow insulation.
- Before disconnecting any part of the SRS wire harness, connect the short connector(s).
- Replace the entire affected SRS harness assembly if it has an open circuit or damaged wiring.



- 1. Remove the dashboard lower cover.
- 2. Remove the knee bolster.
- Disconnect the 7-P connector from the main wire harness.



4. Check for continuity between the terminals in each switch position according to the table.

| Position | 5 | 6 | 7 | |
|------------------------|----------------|---|---|----------|
| lanition | Key pushed in | 0 | 0 | <u> </u> |
| Ignition switch ACC | Key released * | 0 | 0 | |

- *: 15-20 ohms
 - 5. Check that the key cannot be removed when the battery is connected to the No. 6 and No. 7 terminals.
 - If the key cannot be removed, the key interlock solenoid is OK.
 - If the key can be removed, replace the steering lock assembly (key interlock solenoid is not available separately).

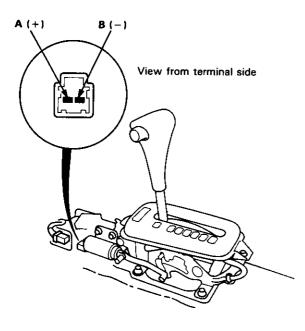


Shift Lock Solenoid Test/Replacement

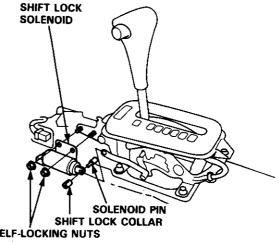
1. Remove the console, then disconnect the 2-P connector of the shift lock solenoid from the main wire harness.

NOTE: Do not connect power to the B (-) terminal (reverse polarity) or you will damage the diode inside the solenoid.

2. Connect battery power to the A terminal, ground the B terminal momentarily, and check solenoid operation.



- If the solenoid does not operate, replace it as described in steps 3.4, and 5.
- If the solenoid does operate, check and, if necessary, adjust its two positions as shown in step 5.
- 3. Remove the shift lock collar and the solenoid pin.
- Remove the self-locking nuts and shift lock solenoid. then install the new solenoid in the reverse order of removal.



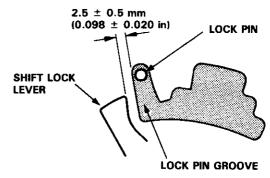
SELF-LOCKING NUTS Replace.

9.8 N·m (1.0 kgf·m,

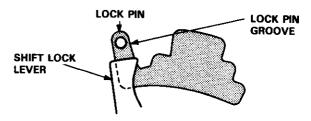
7.2 lbf·ft)

- 5. Check and, if necessary, adjust the solenoid's po-
 - When the shift lock solenoid is ON, check that there is a clearance of 2.5 \pm 0.5 mm (0.098 \pm 0.020 in) between the top rear corner of the shift lock lever and the lock pin groove, then tighten the self-locking nuts.

NOTE: Use new self-locking nuts.



 When the shift lock solenoid is OFF, make sure that the lock pin is blocked by the shift lock lever.



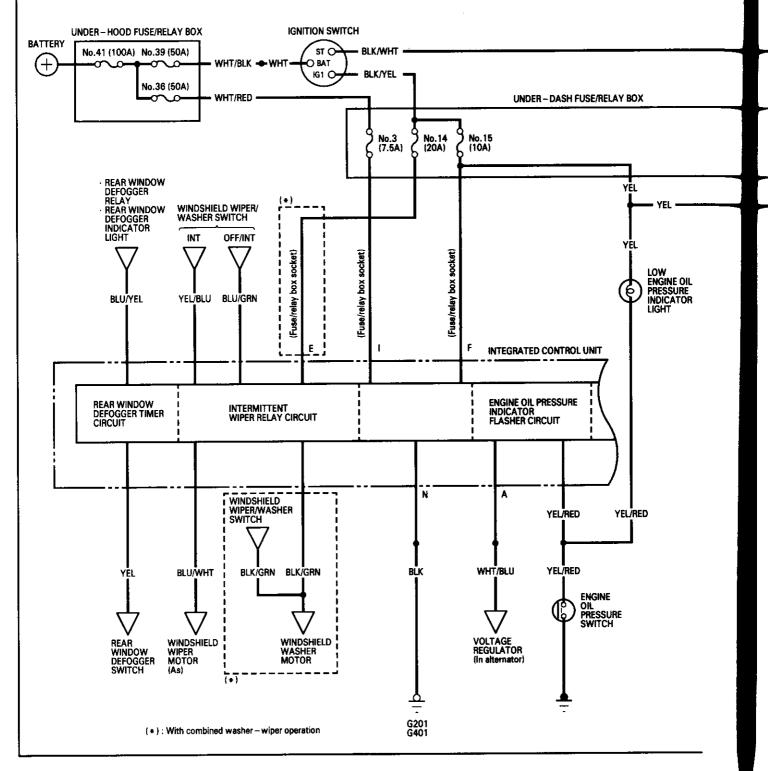
Integrated Control Unit

Circuit Diagram

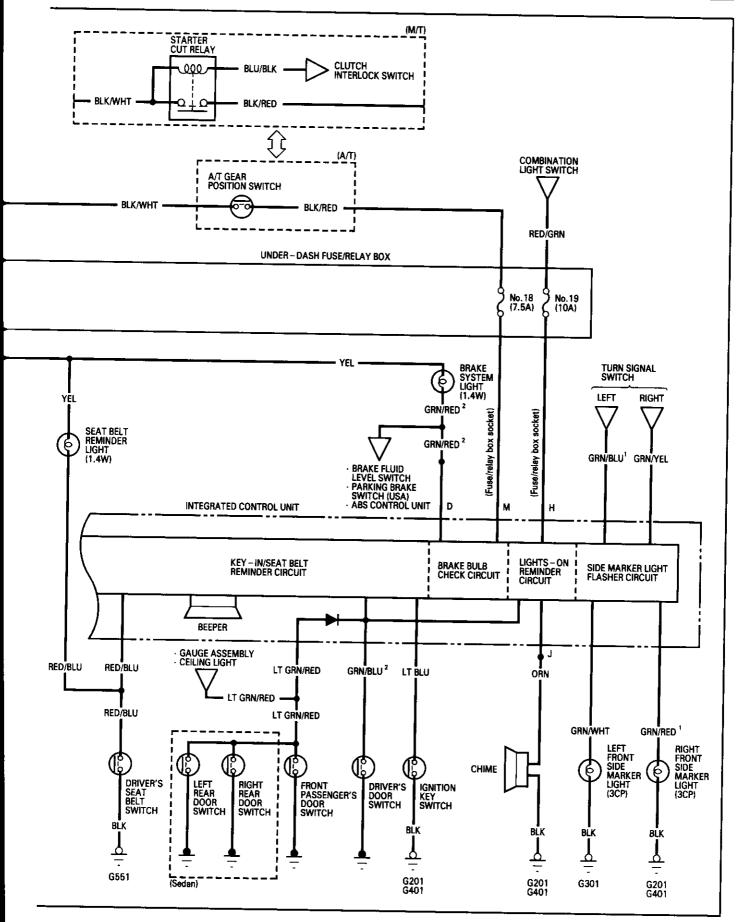
Description

An integrated control unit, located in the left kick panel, integrates the functions of the key-in/seat belt reminder, side marker light flasher, wiper/washer, lights-on reminder, rear window defogger timer, brake system light bulb check, and engine oil pressure indicator flasher circuits.

NOTE: Different wires with the same color have been given a number suffix to distinguish them (for example, GRN/RED¹ and GRN/RED² are not the same).







Integrated Control Unit

Input Test -

CAUTION:

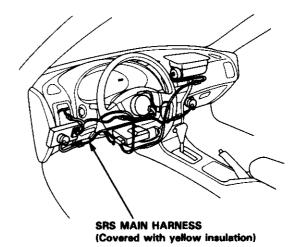
- All SRS electrical wiring harnesses are covered with yellow insulation.
- Before disconnecting any part of the SRS wire harness, connect the short connector(s).
- Replace the entire affected SRS harness assembly if it has an open circuit or damaged wiring.

Remove the dashboard lower cover and knee bolster, then disconnect the 15-P connector from the integrated control unit.

Remove the integrated control unit from the under-dash fuse/relay box.

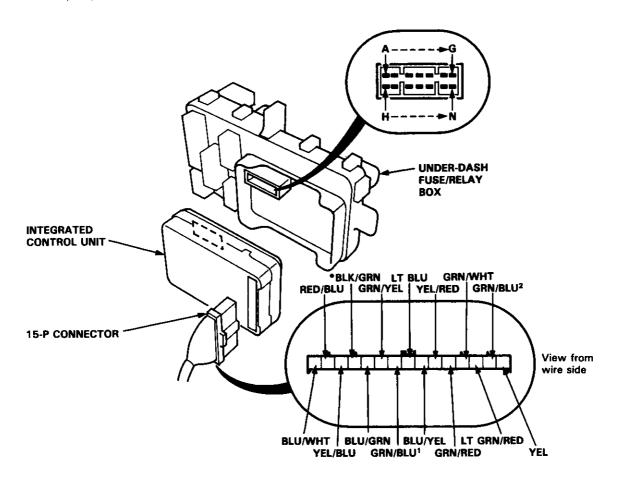
Inspect the connector and socket terminals to be sure they are all making good contact.

- If the terminals are bent, loose or corroded, repair them as necessary, and recheck the system.
- If the terminals look OK, make the following input tests at the connector and under-dash fuse/relay box.
 - If any test indicates a problem, find and correct the cause, then recheck the system.
 - If all the input tests prove OK, the control unit must be faulty; replace it.

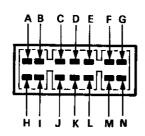


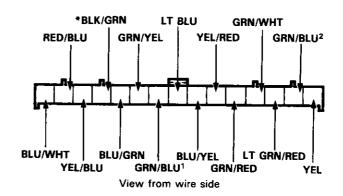
NOTE:

- Different wires with the same color have been given a number suffix to distinguish then (for example, GRN/BLU¹ and GRN/BLU² are not the same).
- Do not disconnect any connectors on the under-dash fuse/relay box except the integrated control unit.









| | A . | |
|----|----------|---|
| ΔШ | ~vetome | • |
| ~ | Systems: | ٠ |

| No. | l erminal | Test condition | Test: Desired result | Possible cause if result is not obtained |
|-----|-----------|-------------------------|--|--|
| 1 | N | Under all conditions | Check for continuity to ground: There should be continuity. | Poor ground (G201, G401) An open in the wire |
| 2 | l | Under all conditions | Check for voltage to ground: There should be battery voltage. | Blown No. 3 (7.5 A) fuse in the under-dash fuse/relay box An open in the wire |
| 3 | F | Ignition switch ON (II) | Check for voltage to ground: There should be battery voltage. | Blown No. 15 (10 A) fuse in the under-dash fuse/relay box An open in the wire |

Rear Window Defogger Timer System: No Wire Test condition

| NO. | vvire | lest condition | Test: Desired result | Possible cause if result is not obtained |
|-----|---------|-------------------------|---|---|
| 1 | YEL | Defogger switch pushed | Check for continuity to ground: There should be continuity as the switch is pushed. | Faulty defogger switchPoor ground (G201, G401)An open in the wire |
| 2 | BLU/YEL | Ignition switch ON (II) | Connect to ground: The rear window defogger should work and the defogger switch indicator light should come on. | Blown No. 13 (7.5 A) fuse in the under-dash fuse/relay box Faulty defogger relay Blown bulb An open in the wire |

Intermittent Wiper Relay System:

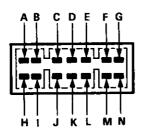
| No. | Terminal | Test condition | Test: Desired result | Possible cause if result is not obtained |
|-----|---------------------------|---|--|--|
| 1 | YEL/BLU | Ignition switch ON (II) and windshield wiper switch INT | Check for voltage to ground: There should be battery voltage. | Blown No. 14 (20 A) fuse in the under-dash fuse/relay box Faulty windshield wiper switch An open in the wire |
| 2 | BLU/WHT and BLU/GRN | Windshield wiper switch OFF or INT and wiper blades in park position | Check for continuity between the BLU/WHT and BLU/GRN ter- minals: There should be continuity. | Faulty windshield wiper switchFaulty windshield wiper motorAn open in the wire |
| 3 | *E | Ignition switch ON (II) | Check for voltage to ground: There should be battery voltage. | An open in the wire |
| 4 | *BLK/GRN | Ignition switch ON (II) and windshield washer motor switch ON | Check for voltage to ground: There should be battery voltage. | Faulty windshield washer switchAn open in the wire |

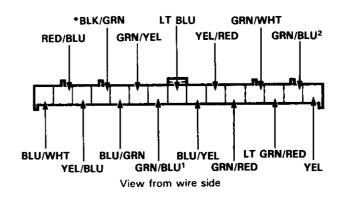
^{*:} With combined washer-wiper operation

(cont'd)

Integrated Control Unit

Input Test (cont'd) -





^{*}With combined washer-wiper operation

Engine Oil Pressure Indicator Flasher System: Wire/

| No. | Terminal | Test condition | Test: Desired result | Possible cause if result is not obtained |
|-----|----------|-------------------------|--|---|
| 1 | Α | Engine running | Check for voltage to ground: There should be battery voltage. | Faulty charging systemAn open in the wire |
| | - | Ignition switch OFF | Check for continuity to ground: There should be continuity. | Faulty engine oil pressure switchAn open in the wire |
| 2 | YEL/RED | Ignition switch ON (II) | Check indicator light. If the light does not come on, attach the YEL/RED terminal to ground: The light should come on as the ignition switch is turned ON. | An open in the wire |
| | | Start the engine. | Check for voltage to ground: There should be battery voltage. | Insufficient oilImproper lubricationFaulty engine oil pressure switch |

Key-in/Seat Belt Reminder System:

| No. | Wire | Test condition | Test: Desired result | Possible cause if result is not obtained |
|-----|----------------------|---|--|---|
| 1 | GRN/BLU ² | Driver's door open | Check for continuity to ground: There should be continuity. | Faulty driver's door switch An open in the wire |
| 2 | LT GRN/ RED | Front passenger's door switch open NOTE: Before testing, remove No. 3 (7.5 A) fuse from the underdash fuse/relay box. | Check for continuity to ground: There should be continuity. | Faulty front passenger's door switch An open in the wire |
| 3 | LT BLU | Ignition key inserted into the ignition switch | Check for voltage to ground: There should be 1 V or less. | Faulty ignition key switchPoor ground (G201, G401)An open in the wire |
| 4 | RED/BLU | Ignition switch ON (II) and driver's seat belt unbuckled | Check for voltage to ground: There should be 1 V or less. | Faulty seat belt switchPoor ground (G551)An open in the wire |

NOTE: Refer to page 23-125 for the seat belt switch test.



| Bulb Check | System | (brake | system | light) |
|------------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
|------------|--------|--------|--------|--------|

| No. | Terminal | Test condition | Test: Desired result | Possible cause if result is not obtained |
|-----|----------|--|--|--|
| 1 | M | Ignition switch at START | Check for voltage to ground: There should be battery voltage. | Blown No. 18 (7.5 A) fuse in the under-dash fuse/relay box Faulty clutch interlock switch or starter cut relay (M/T) Faulty neutral position switch (A/T) An open in the wire |
| 2 | D | Ignition switch ON (II), brake fluid reservoir full, and parking brake lever down | Connect to ground: Brake system light should come on. | Blown brake system lightAn open in the wire |

Lights-on Reminder System:

| 1 | V | V | i | - | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | v | Ŧ | ш | ĸ | ı |

| No. | Terminal | Test condition | Test: Desired result | Possible cause if result is not obtained |
|-----|----------------------|---|--|---|
| 1 | GRN/BLU ² | Driver's door open | Check for continuity to ground: There should be continuity. | Faulty driver's door switch An open in the wire |
| 2 | Н | Combination light switch ON. | Check for voltage to ground: There should be battery voltage. | Blown No. 19 (10 A) fuse in the under-dash fuse/relay box Faulty combination light switch An open in the wire |
| 3 | J | Connect the I terminal to the J terminal. | Check chime operation: Chime should activate each time the battery is connected. | Faulty chimeAn open in the wire |

Side Marker Light Flasher System:

| No. | Terminal | Test condition | Test: Desired result | Possible cause if result is not obtained | |
|-----|--|--|--|---|--|
| 1 | Н | Combination light switch ON | Check for voltage to ground: There should be battery voltage. | Blown No. 19 (10 A) fuse in the under-dash fuse/relay box An open in the wire | |
| 2 | GRN/BLU¹ | Ignition switch ON (II) and turn signal switch to "Left" | Check for voltage to ground: It should change from 0-12-0 V repeatedly. | Blown No. 26 (10 A) fuse in the under-dash fuse/relay box Faulty turn signal/hazard relay An open in the wire | |
| 3 | GRN/YEL | Ignition switch ON (II) and turn signal switch to "Right" | | | |
| 4 | GRN/WHT | Ignition switch ON (II) and turn signal switch to "Left (or Right)": | Check the front side marker light: Left (or Right) front side marker light should come on as | Blown bulb Poor ground (G201, G301, G401) An open in the wire | |
| 5 | GRN/RED¹ Connect the H terminal to the GRN/WHT (or GRN/RED¹) terminal. | | the battery is connected. | , | |

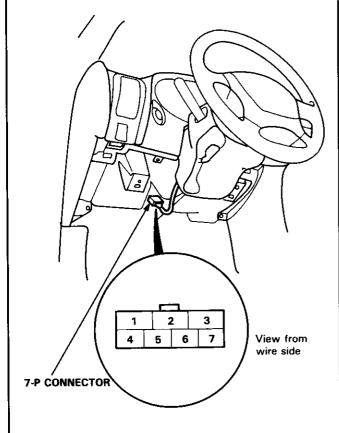
Key-in Reminder System

- Ignition Key Switch Test -

NOTE: Refer to page 23-145 for a diagram of the keyin reminder circuit, and to page 23-148 for the input test of the beeper circuit.

When the ignition key is not removed, the key-in reminder in the integrated control unit senses ground through the closed ignition key switch. When you open the driver's door, the beeper circuit senses ground through the closed door switch. With ground at the "LT BLU" and "GRN/BLU" terminals, the beeper sounds.

- 1. Remove the dashboard lower cover and knee bolster (see page 23-70).
- 2. Disconnect the 7-P connector from the main wire harness.

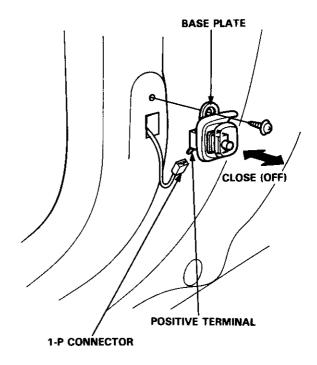


3. Check for continuity between the No. 2 and No. 4 terminals in each condition according to the table.

| Terminal Condition | 2 | 4 |
|--------------------|---|---|
| KEY INSERTED | 0 | |
| KEY REMOVED | | |

Door Switch Test

- 1. Open the door.
- 2. Remove the screw, then pull out the door switch.
- 3. Disconnect the 1-P connector from the switch.



 Check for continuity between the positive terminal and the base plate (ground) in each switch position according to the table.

| Terminal Position | POSITIVE | BASE PLATE |
|----------------------|----------|------------|
| PUSHED (door closed) | | |
| RELEASED (door open) | 0 | 0 |

Engine Oil Pressure Indicator System

Description -

NOTE: Refer to page 23-144 for the circuit diagram of the engine oil pressure indicator flasher, and to page 23-148 for the input test of the flasher circuit.

The low engine oil pressure indicator light works in two ways. It will flash continuously following a momentary loss of oil pressure, or it will go on and stay on with a complete loss of oil pressure.

When the engine first starts, before oil pressure rises above 29.4 kPa (0.3 kgf/cm², 4.3 psi), current flows through the low engine oil pressure indicator light and the oil pressure switch to ground. This tests the circuit.

With the engine running, voltage is applied to the flasher circuit of the integrated control unit. With normal oil pressure, the oil pressure switch is open and the low engine oil pressure indicator light does not operate. If the oil pressure switch closes momentarily (more than 0.5 seconds), but then opens again, terminal "YEL/RED" will sense ground through the switch. The integrated control unit will then provide and remove ground for the low engine oil pressure indicator light through terminal "YEL/RED". The light will flash on and off until the ignition switch is turned to "OFF".

If engine oil pressure falls below 29.4 kPa (0.3 kgf/cm², 4.3 psi) and does not increase, the oil pressure switch will stay closed. The low engine oil pressure indicator light will go on and stay on.

NOTE: Refer to page 23-122 for the engine oil pressure switch test.

Lights-on Reminder System



Description

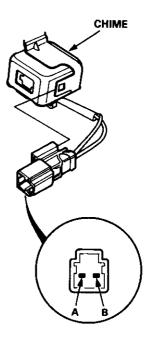
NOTE: Refer to page 23-145 for a diagram of the lightson reminder circuit, and to page 23-149 for the input tests of the circuit.

When the ignition key is turned to OFF and removed, with the lights on, voltage is applied to the reminder circuit in the integrated control unit. When you open the driver's door, the circuit senses ground through the closed door switch.

With voltage at the "H" terminal, ground at the "GRN/BLU2" terminal and no voltage at the "F" terminal, the chime sounds to remind the driver to turn off the lights.

Chime Test -

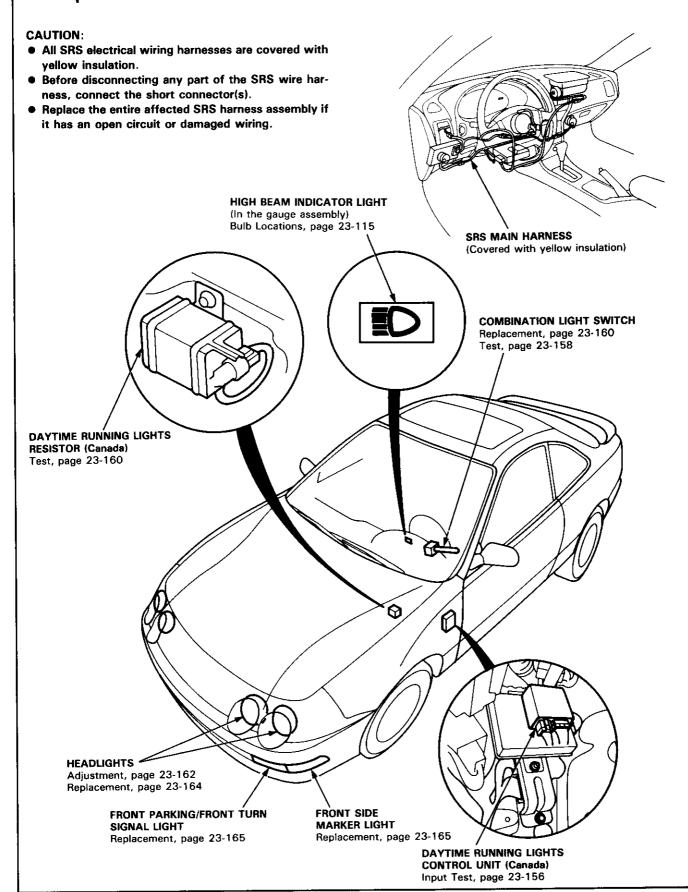
- 1. Remove the dashboard lower cover and knee bolster (see page 23-70).
- Disconnect the 2-P connector from the dashboard wire harness.



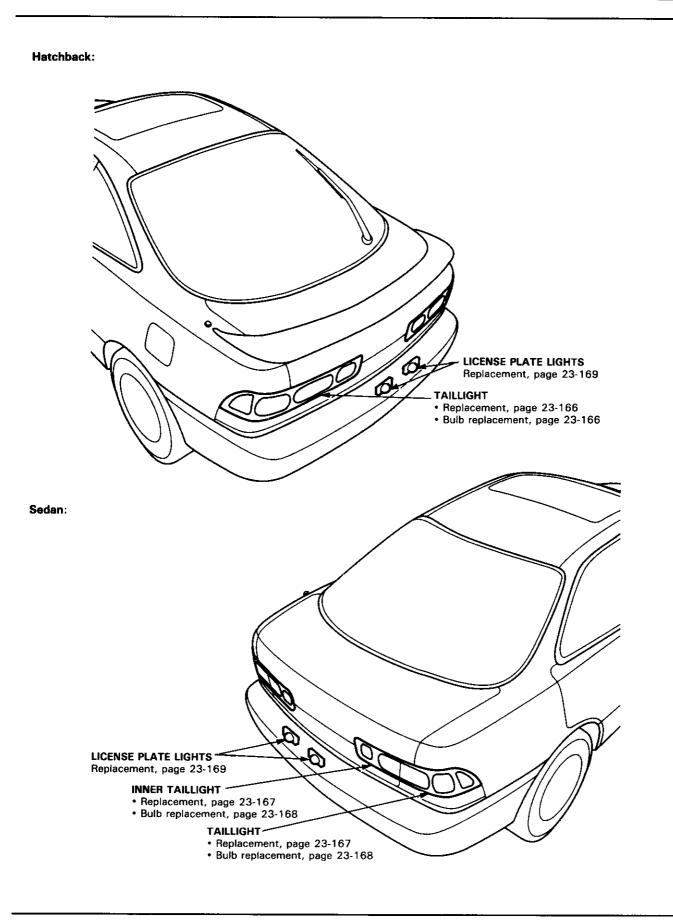
- Test the chime by connecting battery power to the "A" terminal and ground to the "B" terminal, and cycling the power on-off repeatedly.
- If the chime fails to sound every time power is cycled, replace it.

Lighting System

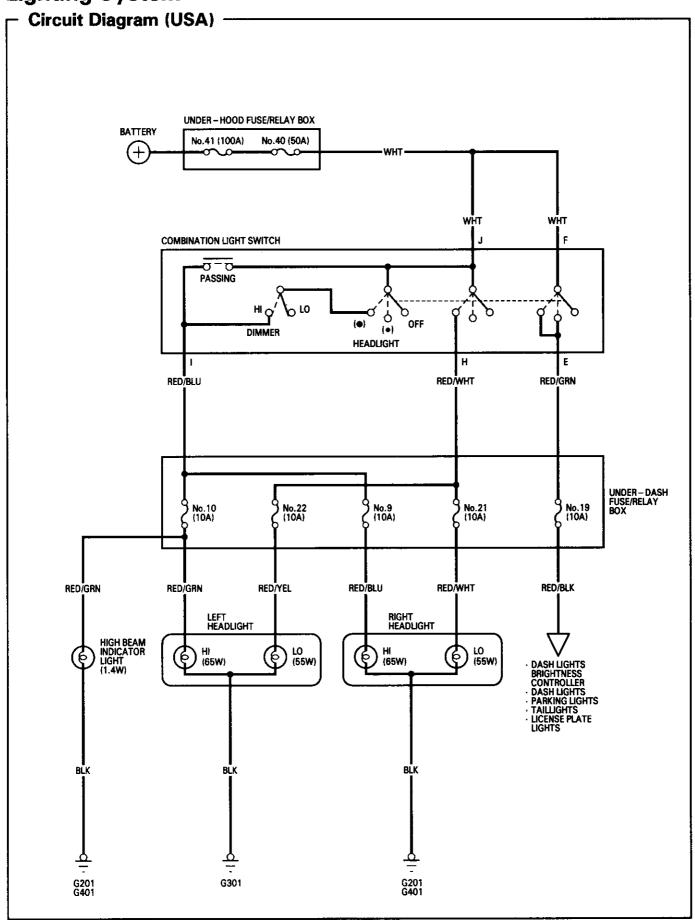
Component Locations Index



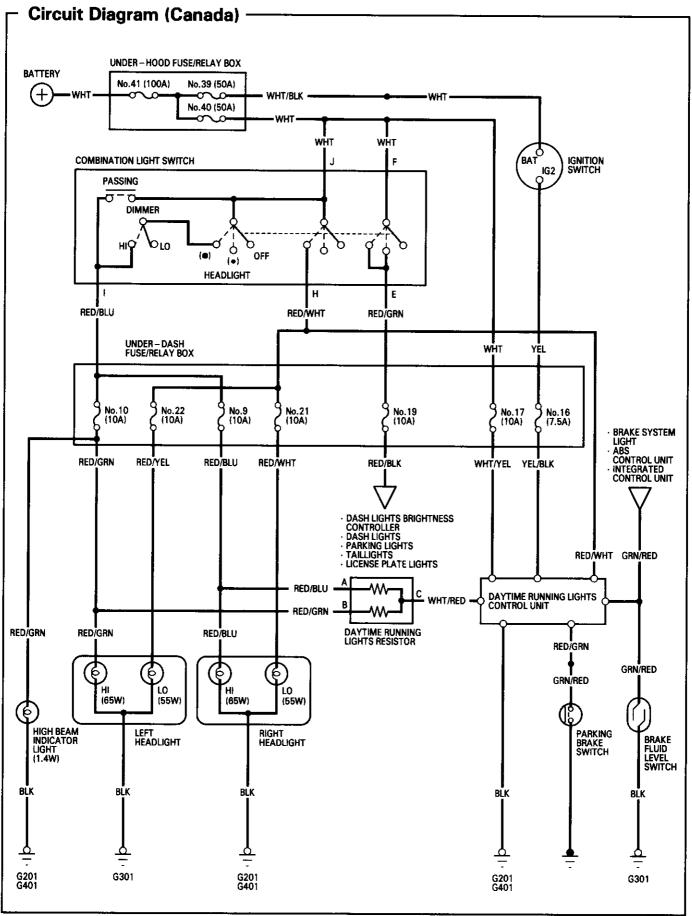




Lighting System





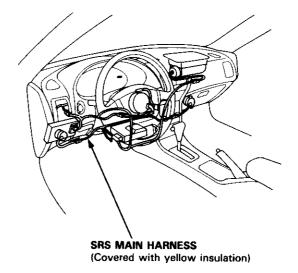


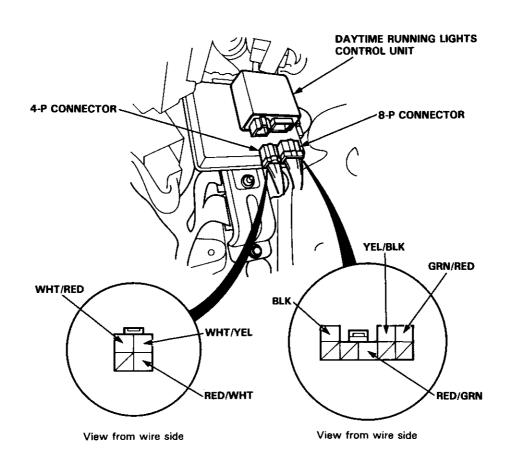
Lighting System

Daytime Running Lights Control Unit Input Test (Canada)

CAUTION:

- All SRS electrical wiring harnesses are covered with yellow insulation.
- Before disconnecting any part of the SRS wire harness, connect the short connector(s).
- Replace the entire affected SRS harness assembly if it has an open circuit or damaged wiring.
- 1. Remove the dashboard lower cover and knee bolster.
- Disconnect the connectors from the daytime running lights control unit.
- Inspect the connector and socket terminals to be sure they are all making good contact.
 - If the terminals are bent, loose or corroded, repair them as necessary, and recheck the system.
 - If the terminals look OK, make the following input tests at the connector.
 - If any test indicates a problem, find and correct the cause, then recheck the system.
 - If all the input tests prove OK, the control unit must be faulty; replace it.







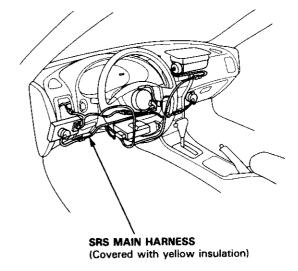
| No. | Wire | Test condition | Test: Desired result | Possible cause if result is not obtained |
|-----|---------|---|---|--|
| 1 | BLK | Under all conditions | Check for continuity to ground: There should be continuity. | Poor ground (G201, G401) An open in the wire |
| 2 | WHT/YEL | Under all conditions | Check for voltage to ground: There should be battery voltage. | Blown No. 17 (10 A) fuse in the under-dash fuse/relay box An open in the wire |
| 3 | YEL/BLK | Ignition switch ON (II) | Check for voltage to ground: There should be battery voltage. | Blown No. 16 (7.5 A) fuse in the under-dash fuse/relay box Faulty ignition switch An open in the wire |
| 4 | RED/WHT | Combination light switch in "●" position | Check for voltage to ground: There should be battery voltage. | Blown No. 40 (50 A) fuse in the under-hood fuse/relay box Faulty combination light switch An open in the wire |
| 5 | WHT/RED | Combination light switch is OFF; connect a jumper wire between the YEL/BLK and WHT/RED terminals, then turn the ignition switch ON. | Left and right headlight (high beam) should be on but dim, and high beam indicator light should come on. | Poor ground (G201, G401, G301) Blown bulbs Faulty daytime running lights resistor An open in the wire |
| 6 | GRN/RED | Ignition switch ON (II), brake fluid reservoir full, and parking brake lever down | Connect to ground: The brake system light should come on. | Blown No. 15 (10 A) fuse in the under-hood fuse/relay box Blown brake system light An open in the wire |
| 7 | RED/GRN | Parking brake lever up | Check for continuity to ground: There should be continuity. | Faulty brake lever switch An open in the wire |

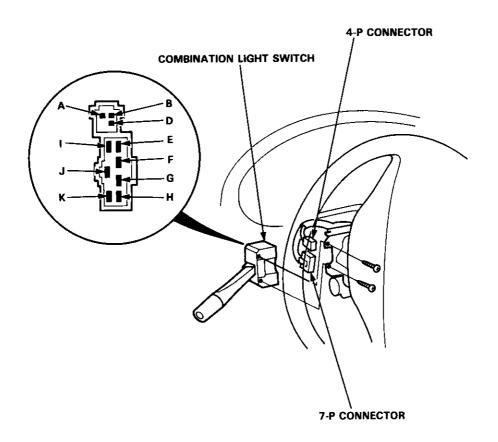
Lighting System

Combination Light/Turn Signal Switch Test

CAUTION:

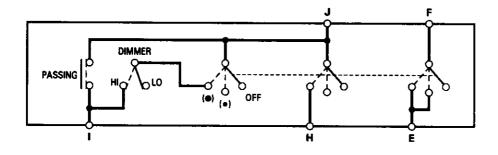
- All SRS electrical wiring harnesses are covered with yellow insulation.
- Before disconnecting any part of the SRS wire harness, connect the short connector(s).
- Replace the entire affected SRS harness assembly if it has an open circuit or damaged wiring.
- Remove the dashboard lower cover and steering column covers (see page 23-71).
- 2. Disconnect the 4-P and 7-P connectors from the switch.
- Check the connector and socket terminals to be sure they are all making good contact. If the terminals are bent, loose, or corroded, repair them as necessary, and recheck the system.
- 4. Check for continuity between the terminals in each switch position according to the table.





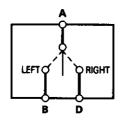


Combination Light Switch:



| | Terminal | | F | F | н | ı | 4 |
|--------------------|----------------------|------|----------|---|---|---|---|
| Position | Position | | E | | | | J |
| Headlight switch | Headlight switch OFF | | | | | | |
| | | • | <u> </u> | 0 | | | |
| | | LOW | <u> </u> | | 0 | | 0 |
| | | HIGH | 0 | | 0 | 0 | |
| Passing switch OFF | | | | | | | |
| r adding dwitter | ON | | | | | 0 | 0 |

Turn Signal Switch:

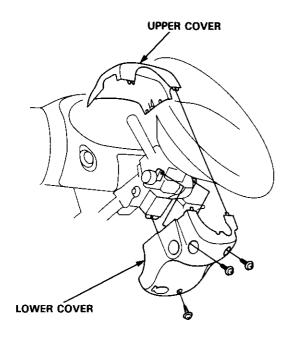


| Terminal | | В | a |
|----------|----------|---|---|
| Position | ^ | | " |
| RIGHT | 0 | | 0 |
| NEUTRAL | | | |
| LEFT | 0- | 0 | |

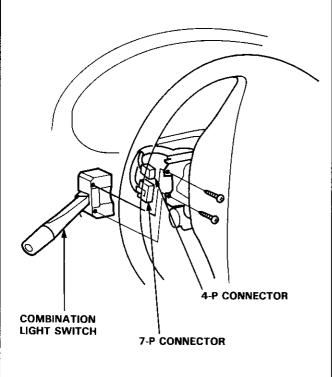
Lighting System

Combination Light Switch Replacement

1. Remove the steering column covers.



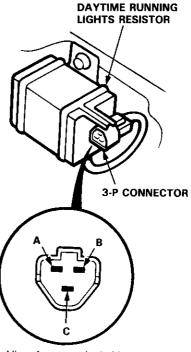
Disconnect the 4-P and 7-P connectors from the combination light switch, then remove the two screws and lift out the switch.



Daytime Running Lights Resistor Test (Canada)

CAUTION: The daytime running lights resistor becomes very hot when the daytime running lights are on; do not touch it or the attaching hardware immediately after the lights have been turned off.

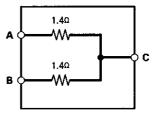
1. Disconnect the 3-P connector from the resistor.



View from terminal side

2. Measure the resistance between the resistor terminals (A and B) and the power terminal C.

Resistance: 1.4 Ω \pm 0.07 Ω



3. Replace the resistor with a new one if any of the resistances are beyond specification.

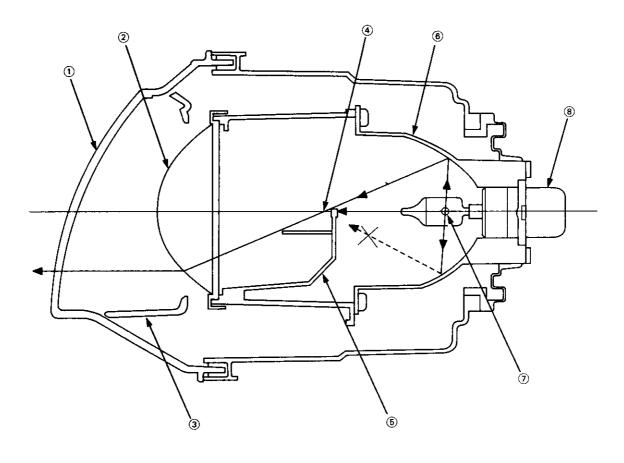
Headlight



Description

The low beam lights are projector-type lights which are more compact while maintaining sufficient brightness. Bundling the light rays reduces stray light and yields a spotlight-effect which improves visibility during night or foul weather driving. For easier aiming, the headlights are equipped with vertical and horizontal gauges.

NOTE: As the outer lenses are made of a resin material, don't cover the headlights when they are turned on.



- 1 OUTER LENS
- **②** CONVEX LENS
- 3 SUB-REFLECTOR
- (4) SECOND FOCUS
- **(5)** INTERRUPTER PLATE
- ® REFLECTOR

 © FIRST FOCUS

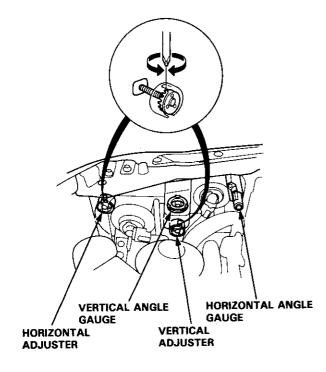
 ® BULB

Headlight

Adjustment

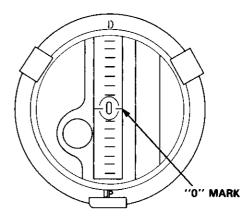
Before adjusting the headlights:

- Park the car on level ground.
- Make sure the fuel tank is full.
- The driver or someone who weighs the same should sit in the driver's seat.
- Load the trunk with the items you usually carry (if you usually pull a trailer, attach it to the car).
- Push down on the front and rear bumpers several times to make sure the car is sitting normally.
- When installing a new headlight assembly, tighten the four mounting bolts so that the indicator in the vertical gauge comes to the "O" mark.

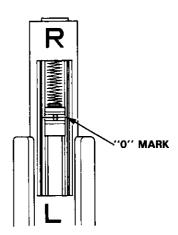


- 1. Open the hood.
- Check that both the horizontal and vertical gauge read "O".
 - If the gauges read "O", check headlight aiming with the aiming charts on page 23-163. (If aiming isn't correct, refer to the frame repair chart in section 20.)
 - If one or both gauges don't read "0", go to step

3. Turn the low beams on. If necessary, align the vertical indicator with its "0" mark by turning the vertical adjuster with a Phillips screwdriver, and check aiming with the chart on page 23-163.



 If necessary, align the horizontal indicator with its "O" mark by turning the horizontal adjuster with a Phillips screwdriver, and check aiming with the chart on page 23-163.



- Recheck that the vertical indicator bubble is aligned with "0" ± 1.
 If necessary, adjust as described in step 3.
- Turn the high beams on and check aiming with the charts on page 23-163.



Measurements (Standard):

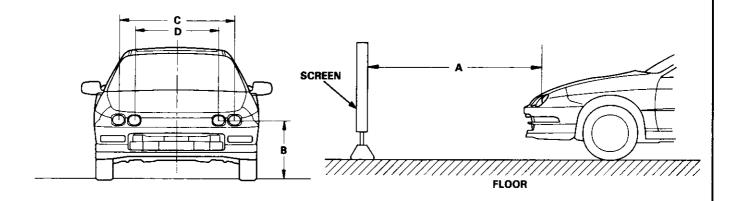
A: 9 ft 10 in (3000 mm)

B: 23 in (585 mm)

C: 46.1 in {1170 mm}

D: 33.5 in (850 mm)

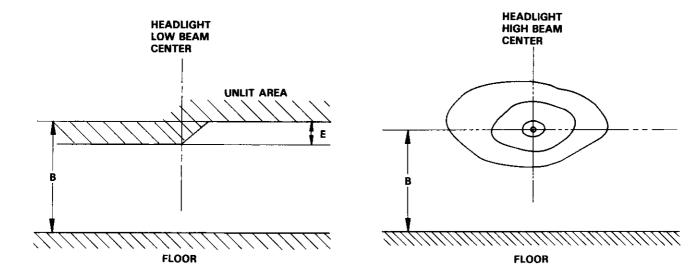
E: 1.2 in (31 mm)



Headlight Aiming

Low beam:

High beam:

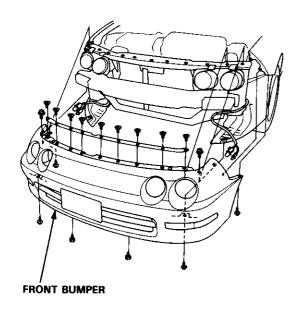


CAUTION: The outer lenses get very hot when the headlights are on; do not cover them.

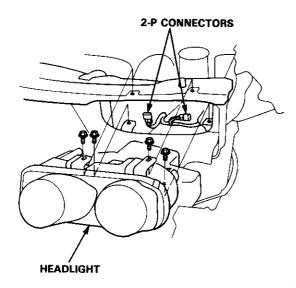
Headlight

Headlight Replacement

1. Remove the front bumper.



Remove the mounting bolts, then pull out the headlight, and disconnect the connectors from it.

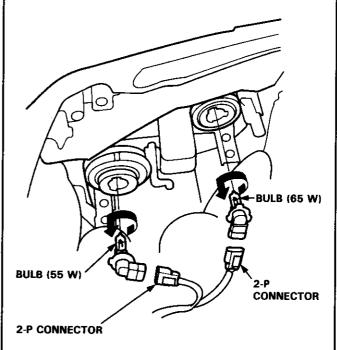


After replacement, the horizontal and vertical aiming must be checked using conventional methods.
 Use the aiming charts on page 23-163.

□ Bulb Replacement -

CAUTION:

- Halogen headlights can become very hot in use; do not touch them or the attaching hardware immediately after they have been turned off.
- Do not try to replace or clean the headlights with the lights on.
- 1. Disconnect the 2-P connector(s) from the headlight.

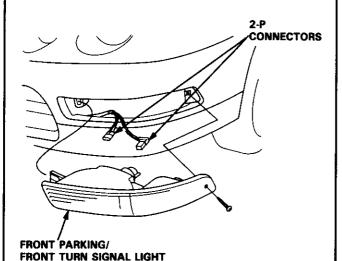


2. Turn the bulb(s) counterclockwise and remove the bulb(s).

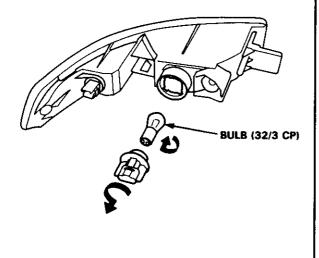
Front Parking/Front Turn Signal Lights

Replacement

1. Remove the screw, and pull the front parking/front turn signal lights out of the front bumper.



- 2. Disconnect the 2-P connector from the light.
- 3. Turn the bulb socket 45° counterclockwise to remove it from the housing.

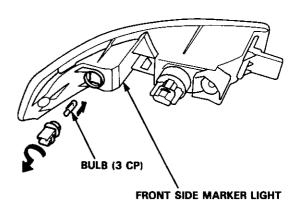


Front Side Marker Lights



- Replacement

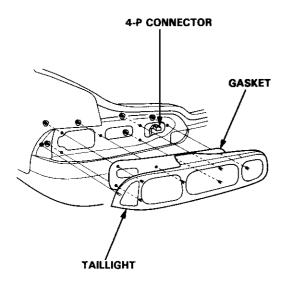
- 1. Remove the screw, and pull the front side marker light assembly out of the front bumper.
- 2. Disconnect the 2-P connector from the light.
- 3. Turn the bulb socket 45° counterclockwise to remove it from the housing.



Taillights (Hatchback)

Replacement -

- 1. Open the rear hatch.
- 2. Remove the rear panel lining and the side lining (see section 20).
- 3. Disconnect the 4-P connector from the taillight.
- 4. Remove the six mounting nuts, then pull out the taillight.



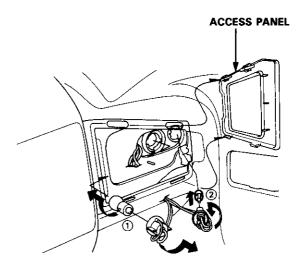
NOTE:

- Inspect the gasket. Replace it if it is distorted or stays compressed.
- After installation, run water over the lights to make sure they don't leak.

- Bulb Replacement -

Rear turn signal/Rear parking lights:

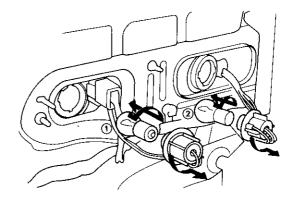
- 1. Open the rear hatch, then remove the access panel.
- 2. Remove the bulb from the bulb socket.



- (1): REAR TURN SIGNAL LIGHT BULB (32 CP)
- (2): REAR PARKING LIGHT BULB (3 CP)

Brake/Taillight/Back-up lights:

- 1. Open the rear hatch.
- 2. Remove the rear panel lining (see section 20).



- 1: BACK-UP LIGHT BULB (32 CP)
- 2: BRAKE/TAILLIGHT BULB (32/3 CP)

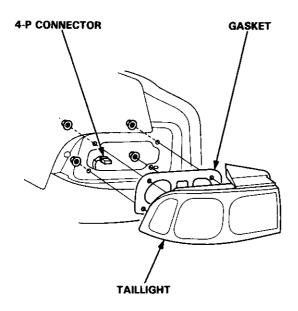
Taillights (Sedan)



Replacement

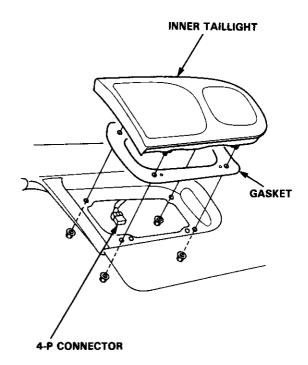
Taillight:

- Open the trunk lid, then remove the rear panel lining and side lining (see section 20).
- 2. Disconnect the 4-P connector from the taillight.
- 3. Remove the four mounting nuts, then pull out the taillight.



Inner Taillight:

- 1. Open the trunk lid.
- 2. Disconnect the 4-P connector from the inner taillight.
- 3. Remove the four mounting nuts, then pull out the inner taillight.



NOTE:

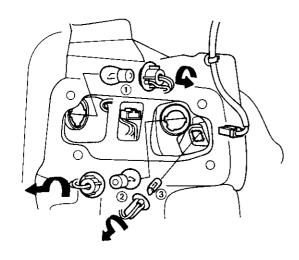
- Inspect the gasket. Replace it if it is distorted or stays compressed.
- After installation, run water over the lights to make sure they don't leak.

Taillights (Sedan)

Bulb Replacement

Taillight:

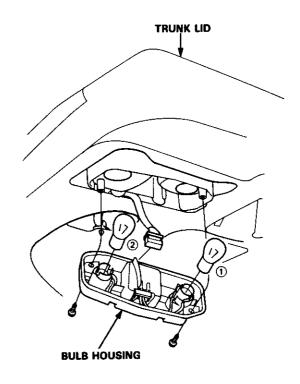
- 1. Open the trunk lid, then remove the rear panel lining and side lining (see section 20).
- 2. Remove the bulb from the bulb socket.



- 1: BRAKE/TAILLIGHT BULB (32/3 CP)
- 2): TURN SIGNAL LIGHT BULB (32 CP)
- 3: REAR PARKING LIGHT BULB (3 CP)

Inner Taillight:

- 1. Open the trunk lid, then remove the bulb housing.
- 2. Remove the bulb from the bulb housing.

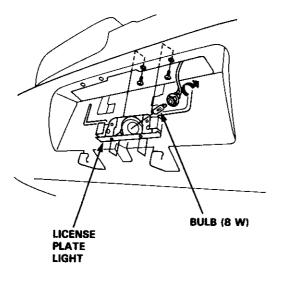


- ①: BACK-UP LIGHT BULB (32 CP)
- 2: BRAKE/TAILLIGHT BULB (32/3 CP)

License Plate Lights

Replacement

- Remove the screws and pull out the license plate lights.
- 2. Turn the bulb socket 45° counterclockwise to remove it from the housing.



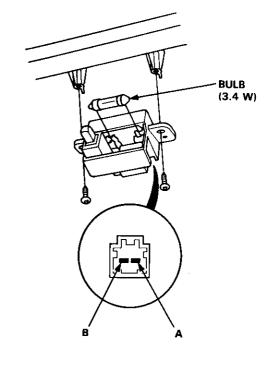
Glove Box Light

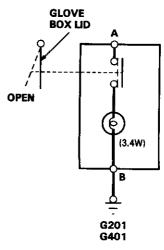


- Test -

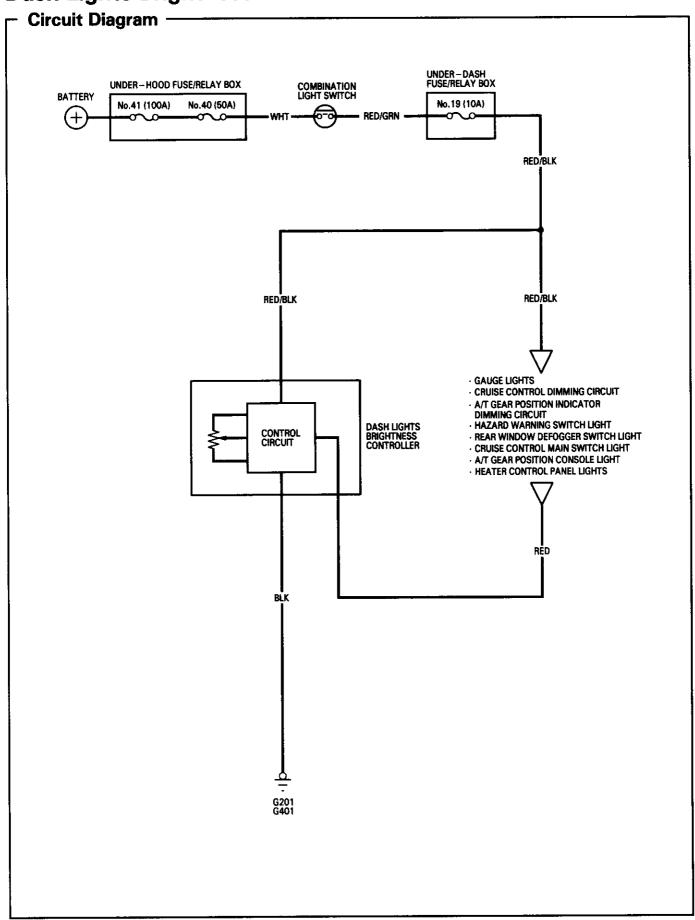
- Remove the glove box and disconnect the 2-P connector.
- 2. Check for continuity between the A and B terminals in each condition according to the table.

| Terminal Condition | А | | В |
|---------------------|---|--------------|---|
| PUSHED (lid closed) | | | |
| RELEASED (lid open) | 0 | _ | 0 |





Dash Lights Brightness Control

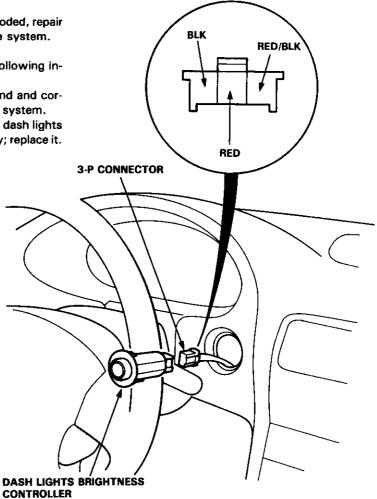




Controller Input Test -

NOTE: Be careful not to damage the controller and the instrument panel.

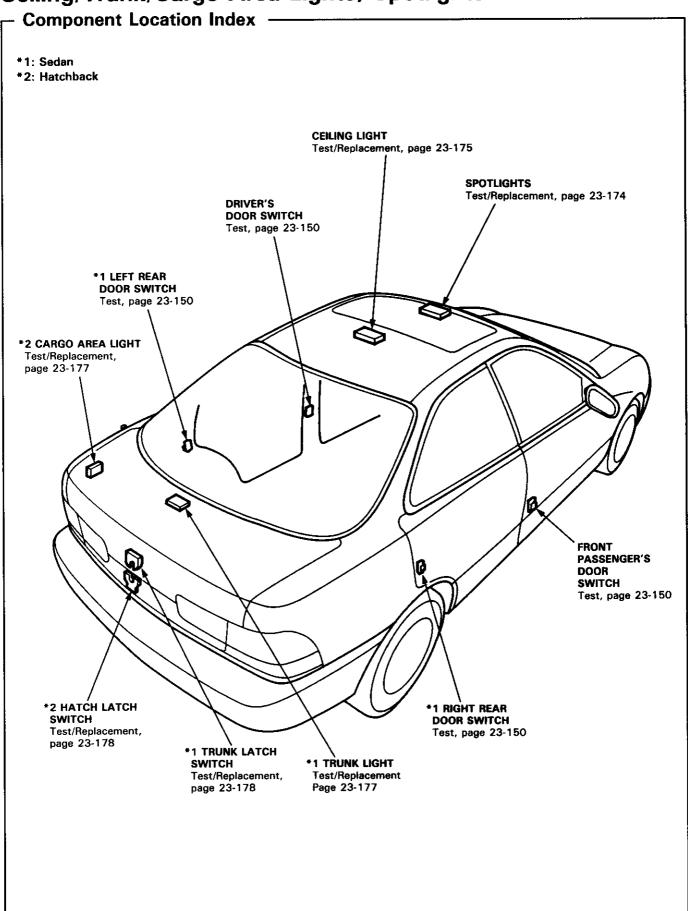
- 1. Remove the instrument panel from the dashboard (see page 23-118).
- Remove the dash lights brightness controller from the dashboard, then disconnect the 3-P connector.
- Inspect the connector and socket terminals to be sure they are all making good contact.
 - If the terminals are bent, loose or corroded, repair them as necessary, and recheck the system.
 - If the terminals look OK, make the following input tests at the connector.
 - If any test indicates a problem, find and correct the cause, then recheck the system.
 - If all the input tests prove OK, the dash lights brightness controller must be faulty; replace it.



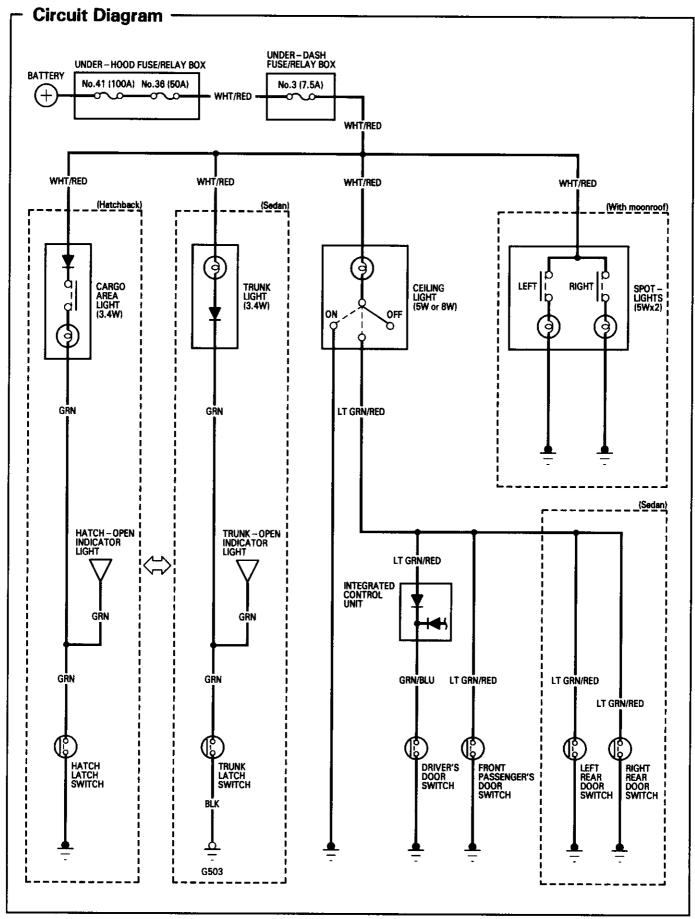
View from wire side

| No. | Wire | Test condition | Test: Desired result | Possible cause if result is not obtained |
|-----|---------|----------------------|--|---|
| 1 | BLK | Under all conditions | Check for continuity to ground: There should be continuity. | Poor ground (G201, G401)An open in the wire |
| 2 | RED/BLK | Headlight switch ON | Check for voltage to ground: There should be battery voltage. | Blown No. 19 (10 A) fuse in the under-dash fuse/relay box Faulty combination light switch An open in the wire |
| 3 | RED | Headlight switch ON | Connect to ground: Dash lights should come on full bright. | An open in the wire |

Ceiling/Trunk/Cargo Area Lights, Spotlights





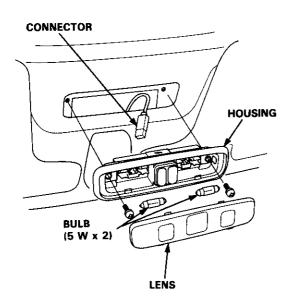


Ceiling/Trunk/Cargo Area Lights, Spotlights

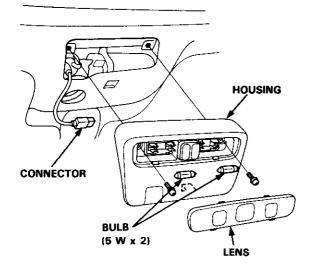
Spotlight Test/Replacement

- 1. Turn the light switch OFF.
- 2. Pry off the lens.
- 3. Remove the two screws, then pull out the housing.

Hatchback:

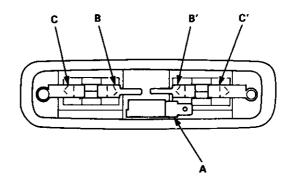


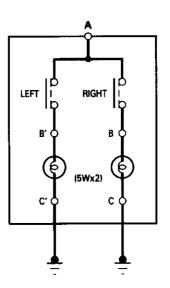
Sedan:



- 4. Disconnect the connector from the housing.
- 5. Check for continuity between the terminals in each switch position according to the table.

| | Terminal | Α | B or B' | | C or C' | |
|----------|----------|---|---------------|---|---------|--|
| Position | | A | 0010 | | 00/0 | |
| LECT | ON | 0 | 0 | 0 | | |
| LEFT | OFF | | | | | |
| DICUT | ON | 0 | $\overline{}$ | 0 | -0 | |
| RIGHT | OFF | | | | | |



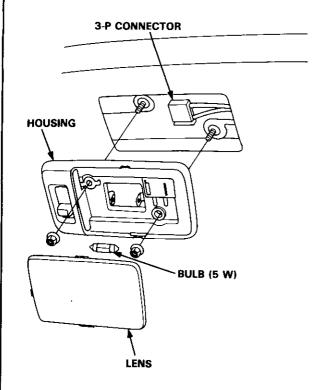




Ceiling Light Test/Replacement

With moonroof:

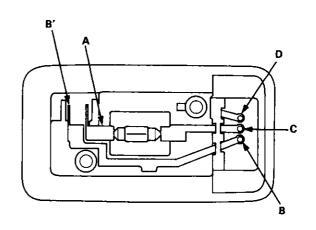
- 1. Turn the light switch OFF.
- 2. Pry off the lens.
- 3. Remove the two mounting nuts, then pull out the housing.



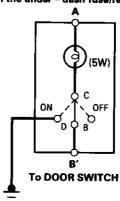
4. Disconnect the 3-P connector from the housing.

5. Check for continuity between the terminals in each switch position according to the table.

| Terminal Position | A | | B or B' | С | D |
|-------------------|----|----------|---------|---|---|
| OFF | 0 | 0 | | 9 | |
| DOOR | 0- | <u> </u> | 0 | 9 | |
| ON | 0 | © | | 0 | |



From No.3 (7.5A) FUSE (In the under – dash fuse/relay box)

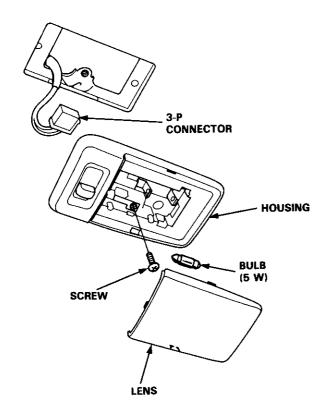


Ceiling/Trunk/Cargo Area Lights, Spotlights

- Ceiling Light Test/Replacement

Without moonroof:

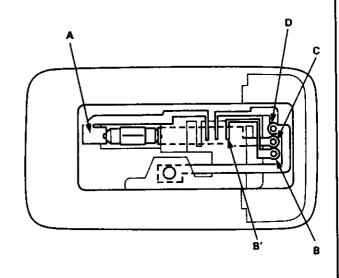
- 1. Turn the light switch OFF.
- 2. Pry off the lens.
- 3. Remove the screw, then pull out the housing.

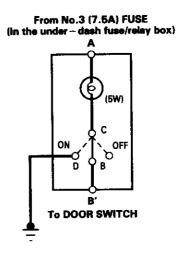


4. Disconnect the 3-P connector from the housing.

Check for continuity between the terminals in each switch position according to the table.

| Terminal Position | A | | B or B' | С | D |
|-------------------|---|----------|---------|-----|---|
| OFF | 0 | <u> </u> | | 0 | |
| DOOR | 0 | © | 0 | -0 | |
| ON | 0 | 0 | | -0- | 0 |



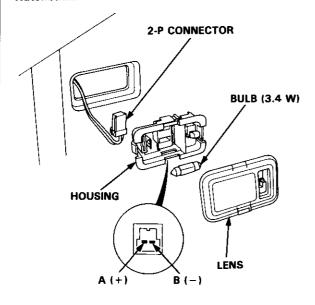




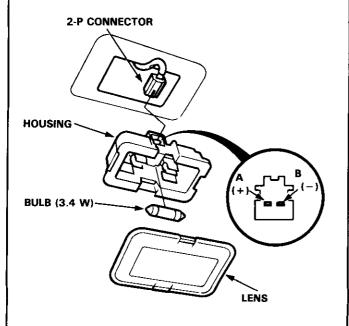
Trunk/Cargo Area Light Test/Replacement

- 1. Pry the trunk/cargo area light lens out of its housing.
- 2. Pry out the light assembly.
- 3. Disconnect the 2-P connector from the housing.

Hatchback:



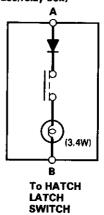
Sedan:



 Make sure that the bulb is in good condition. Check for continuity between the A (+) and B (-) terminals. There should be continuity (Hachback: the switch must be pushed).

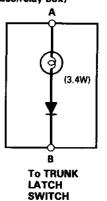
Hatchback:

From No.3 (7.5A) FUSE (In the under – dash fuse/relay box)



Sedan:

From No.3 (7.5A) FUSE (In the under – dash fuse/relay box)

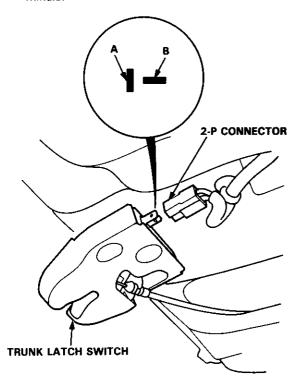


Ceiling/Trunk/Cargo Area Lights, Spotlight

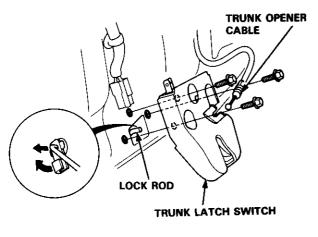
- Latch Switch Test/Replacement

Sedan:

- Open the trunk lid, and disconnect the 2-P connector from the trunk latch switch.
- There should be continuity between the A and B terminals.

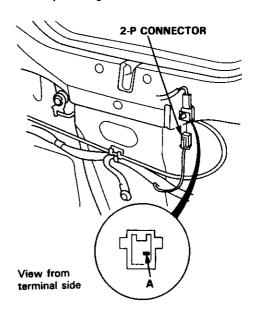


- If necessary, remove the three mounting bolts to pull out the trunk latch switch from the trunk lid, then disconnect the lock rod from the trunk latch switch.
- 4. Disconnect the trunk opener cable from the trunk latch switch.

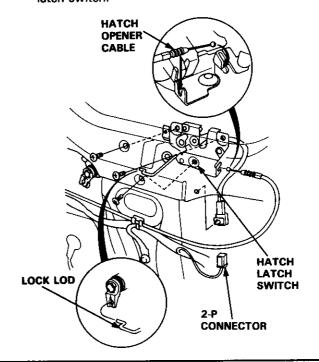


Hatchback:

- 1. Open the hatch, and disconnect the 2-P connector from the hatch latch switch.
- 2. There should be continuity between the A terminal and component ground.

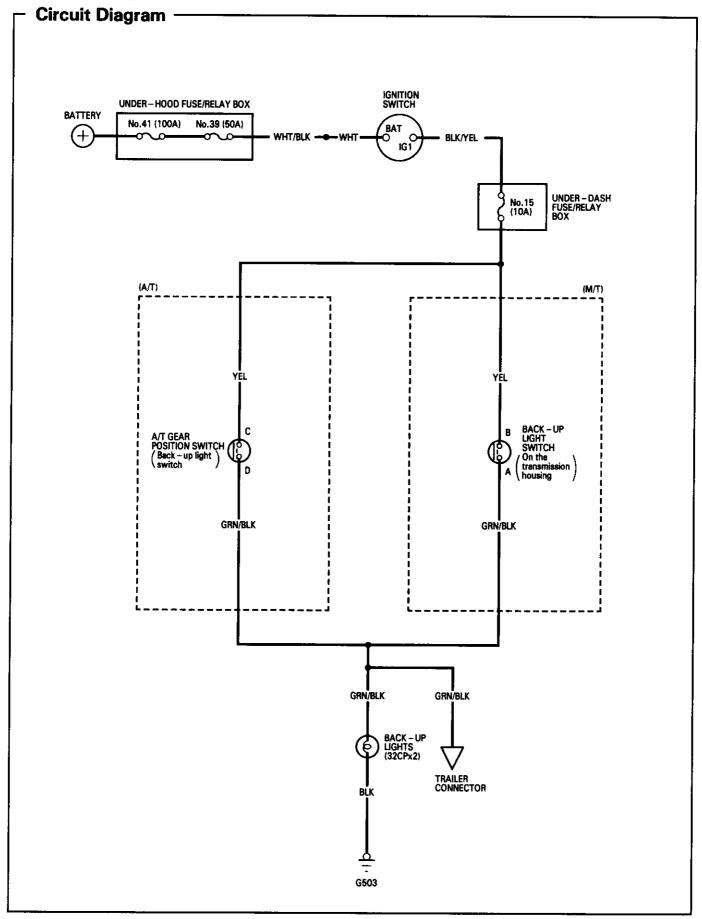


- If necessary, remove the three mounting bolts to pull out the hatch latch switch from the latch, then disconnect the lock rod from the hatch latch switch.
- 4. Disconnect the hatch opener cable from the hatch latch switch.



Back-up Lights



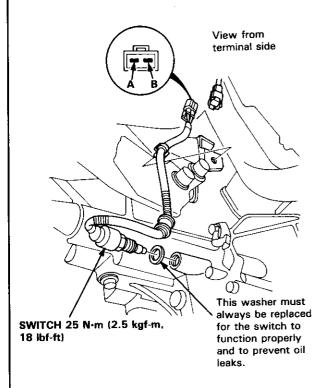


Test

Manual Transmission:

NOTE: Check the No. 15 (10 A) fuse in the under-dash fuse/relay box before testing.

- Test the back-up light switch by placing the shift lever in reverse and turning the ignition switch to ON (II).
- If the back-up lights do not go on, check the backup light bulbs in the taillight assembly.
- 3. If the fuse and bulbs are OK, disconnect the connector from the back-up light switch.



 With the shift lever in reverse, check for continuity between the A and B terminals with the switch installed.

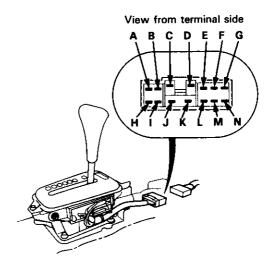
There should be continuity.

- If there is no continuity, replace the switch (see section 13).
- If there is continuity, but the back-up lights do not go on, check for:
 - Poor ground (G503)
 - An open in the wire

Automatic Transmission:

NOTE: Check the No. 15 (10 A) fuse in the under-dash fuse/relay box before testing.

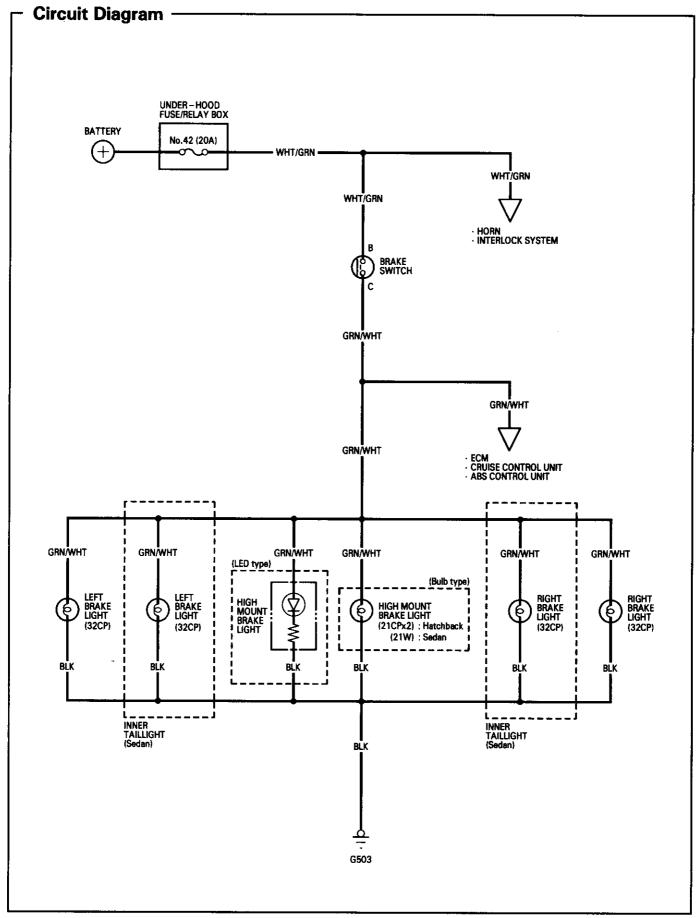
- 1. Test the back-up light switch by shifting the shift lever to R and turning the ignition switch ON (II).
- 2. If the back-up lights do not go on, check the backup light bulbs in the taillight assembly.
- If the fuse and bulbs are OK, disconnect the 14-P connector from the A/T gear position switch (backup light switch).



- 4. Move the lever back and forth at the R position without touching the push button, and check for continuity between the C and D terminals. There should be continuity within the range of free play of the shift lever.
 - If there is no continuity within the range of free play, adjust the position of the A/T gear position switch (see section 14).
 - If there is continuity, but the back-up lights do not go on, check for:
 - Poor ground (G503)
 - An open in the wire

Brake Lights

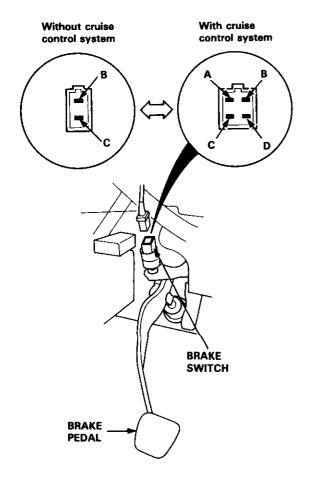




Brake Lights

Brake Switch Test

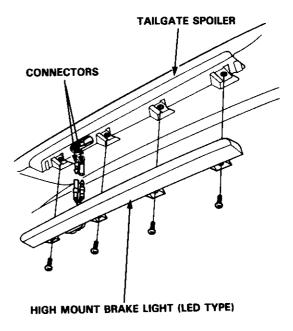
- If the brake lights do not go on, check the No. 42 (20 A) fuse in the under-hood fuse/relay box, and the brake light bulbs in the taillight assembly and high mount brake light.
- 2. If the fuse and bulbs are OK, disconnect the 2-P or 4-P connector from the brake switch.



- Check for continuity between the B and C terminals.There should be continuity with the brake pedal pushed.
 - If there is no continuity, replace the switch or adjust pedal height (see section 19).
 - If there is continuity, but the brake lights do not go on, inspect for:
 - Poor ground (G503)
 - An open in the wire

High Mount Brake Light Replacement (LED type)

 Remove the four screws and the high mount brake light, then disconnect the connectors.

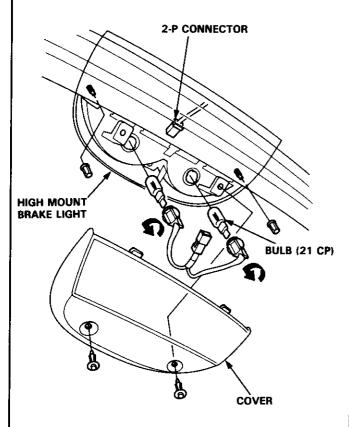




High Mount Brake Light Replacement (Bulb type)

Hatchback:

- 1. Open the hatch.
- 2. Remove the two clips and the cover.
- Remove the two nuts and the high mount brake light, then disconnect the 2-P connector.

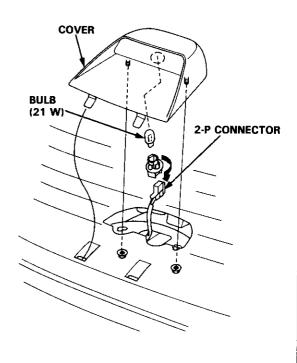


- Turn the socket 45° counterclockwise to remove the bulb.
- Install the high mount brake light in the reverse order of removal, and clean the rear window glass before installing.

CAUTION: When installing the high mount brake light, make sure the rubber seal fits against the rear window evenly.

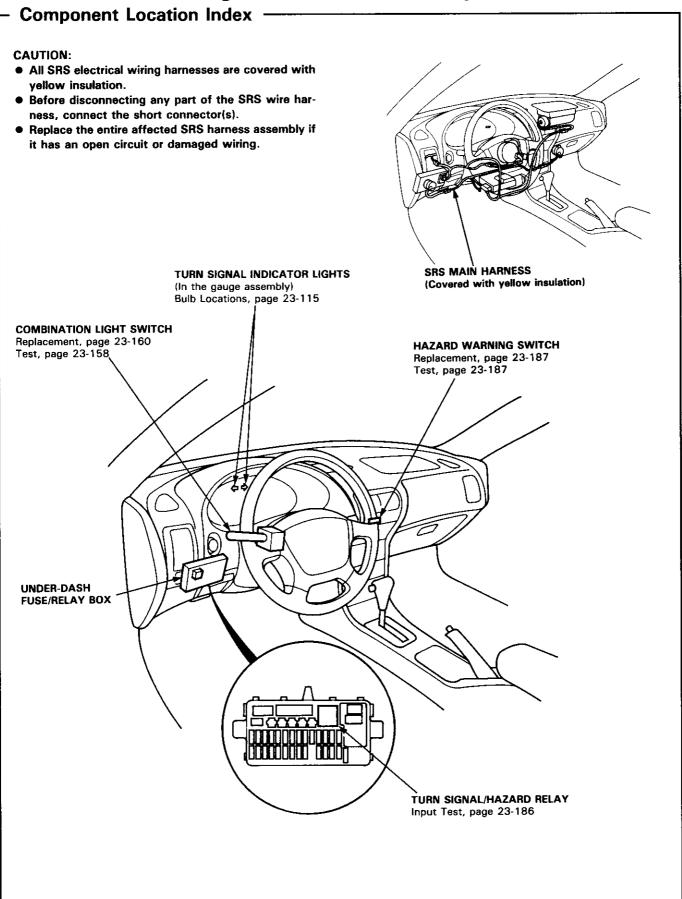
Sedan:

- 1. Open the trunk lid, and disconnect the 2-P connector from the high mount brake light.
- 2. Remove the two nuts, then remove the high mount brake light from the rear shelf.

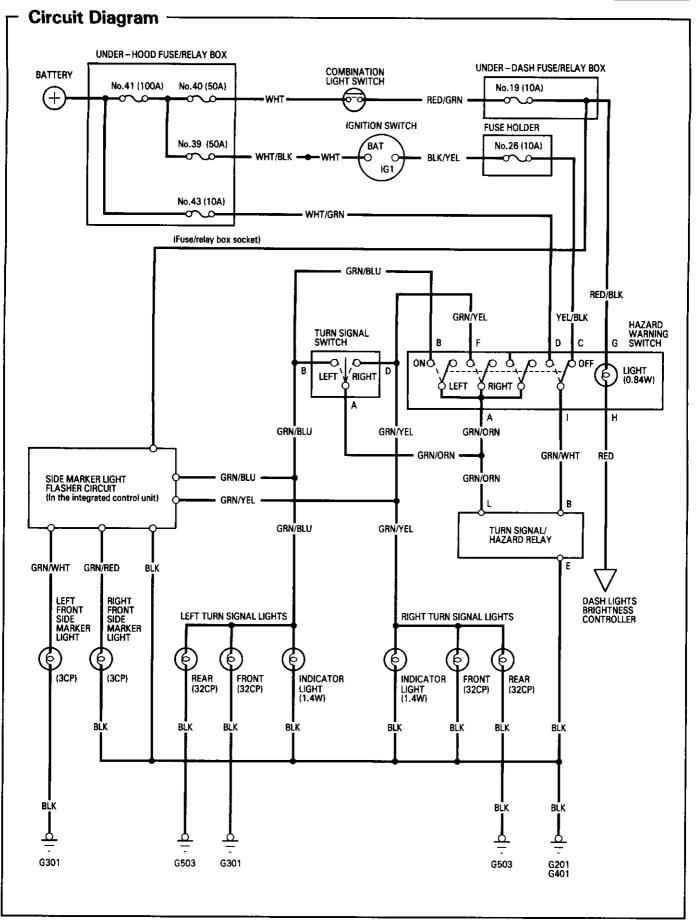


 Install the high mount brake light in the reverse order of removal. Clean the rear window glass before installing the light.

Side Marker/Turn Signal/Hazard Flasher System





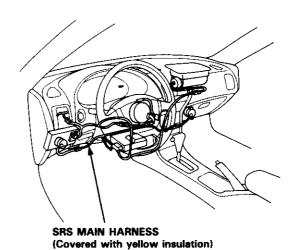


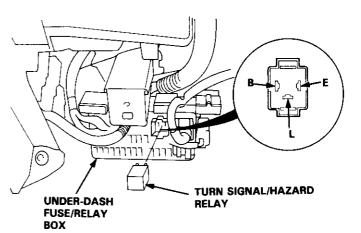
Side Marker/Turn Signal/Hazard Flasher System

Turn Signal/Hazard Relay Input Test -

CAUTION:

- All SRS electrical wiring harnesses are covered with yellow insulation.
- Before disconnecting any part of the SRS wire harness, connect the short connector(s).
- Replace the entire affected SRS harness assembly if it has an open circuit or damaged wiring.
- Remove the turn signal/hazard relay from the underdash fuse/relay box.
- Inspect the relay and socket terminals to be sure they are all making good contact.
 - If the terminals are bent, loose or corroded, repair them as necessary, and recheck the system.
 - If the terminals look OK, make the following input tests at the socket.
 - If a test indicates a problem, find and correct the cause, then recheck the system.
 - If all the input tests prove OK, the turn signal/hazard relay must be faulty; replace it.





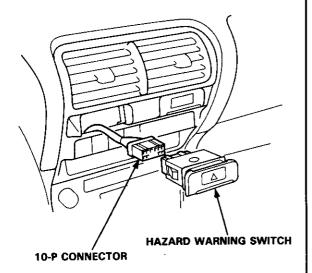
| No. | Terminal | Test condition | Test: Desired result | Possible cause if result is not obtained |
|-----|----------|--|--|--|
| 1 | E | Under all conditions | Check for continuity to ground: There should be continuity. | Poor ground (G201, G401)An open in the wire |
| 2 | В | Ignition switch ON (II) and hazard warning switch OFF | Check for voltage to ground: There should be battery voltage. | Blown No. 26 (10 A) fuse in the fuse holder Faulty hazard warning switch An open in the wire |
| 2 | В | Ignition switch OFF and hazard warning switch ON | Check for voltage to ground: There should be battery voltage. | Blown No. 43 (10 A) fuse in the under-hood fuse/relay box Faulty hazard warning switch An open in the wire |
| | | Hazard warning switch is ON; connect the B terminal to the L terminal. | Hazard lights should come on. | Poor ground (G201, G301, G401, G503) Faulty hazard warning switch An open in the wire |
| 3 | L | Ignition switch ON (II) and turn signal switch in right or left; connect the B terminal to the L terminal. | Right or left turn signal lights should come on. | Faulty turn signal switch An open in the wire |



Hazard Warning Switch Replacement

CAUTION: Be careful not to damage the switch and console panel.

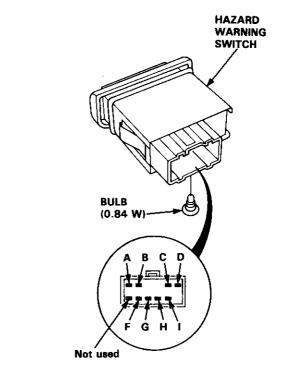
- 1. Pry the hazard warning switch out of the center vent.
- 2. Disconnect the 10-P connector from the switch.

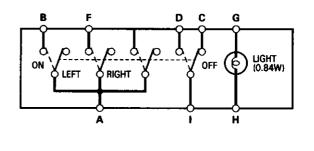


Hazard Warning Switch Test

- 1. Remove the hazard warning switch.
- 2. Check for continuity between the terminals in each switch position according to the table.

| Terminal Position | A | В | С | D | F | G | | н | ı |
|-------------------|----|---|---|---|--------|---|----------|--------|---|
| OFF | | | 0 | | | Ó | (| l o | Ó |
| ON | O- | 0 | | 0 | Q Q | ф | Ф | Q Q | Q |





Stereo Sound System

Component Location Index

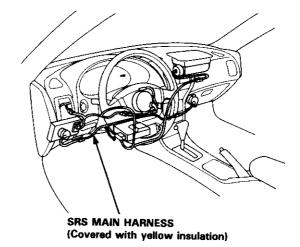
CAUTION:

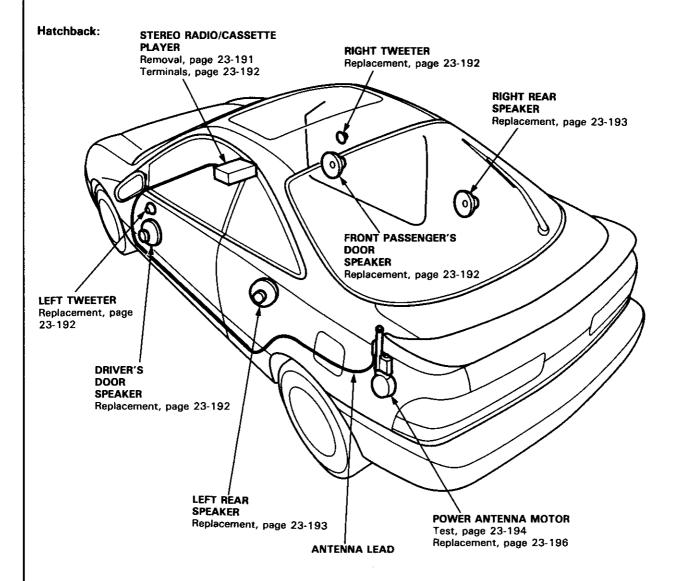
- All SRS electrical wiring harnesses are covered with yellow insulation.
- Before disconnecting any part of the SRS wire harness, connect the short connector(s).
- Replace the entire affected SRS harness assembly if it has an open circuit or damaged wiring.

NOTE: The original radio has a coded theft protection circuit. Be sure to get the customer's code number before

- disconnecting the battery.
- removing the No. 32 (7.5 A) fuse from the under-hood fuse/relay box.
- removing the radio.

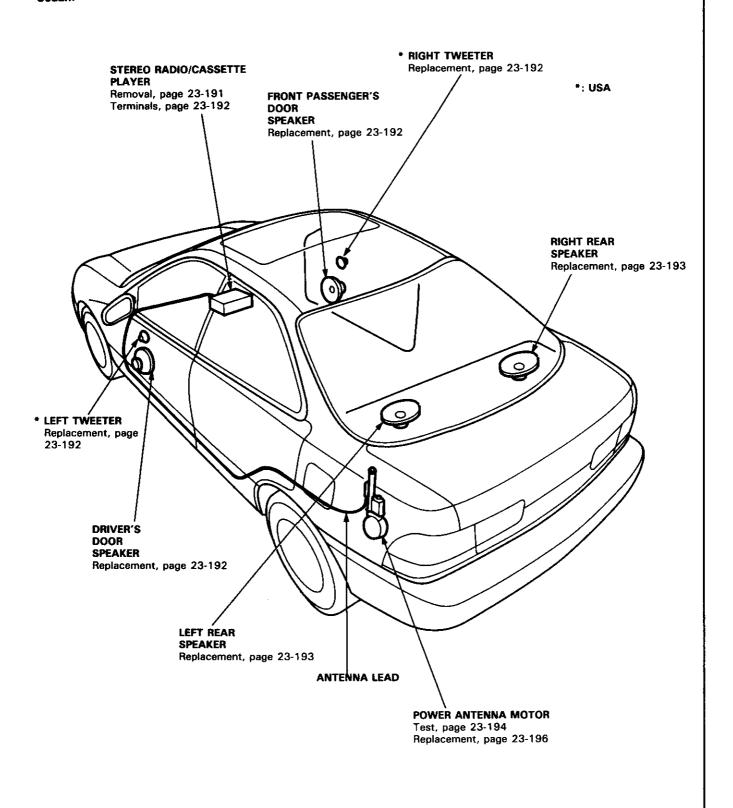
After service, reconnect power to the radio and turn it on. When the word "CODE" is displayed, enter the customer's 5-digit code to restore radio operation.



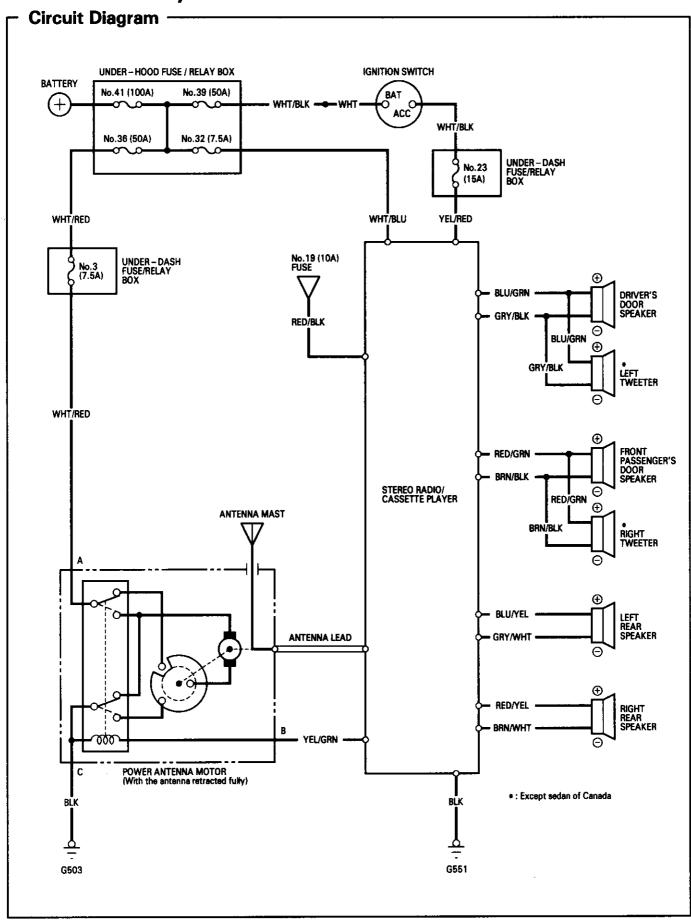




Sedan:



Stereo Sound System

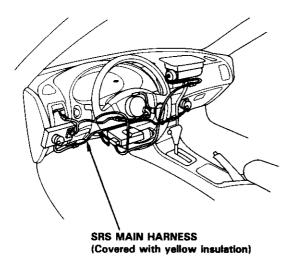




-Unit Removal

CAUTION:

- All SRS electrical wiring harnesses are covered with yellow insulation.
- Before disconnecting any part of the SRS wire harness, connect the short connector(s).
- Replace the entire affected SRS harness assembly if it has an open circuit or damaged wiring.



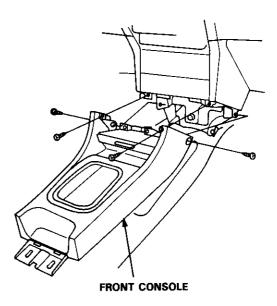
NOTE: The original radio has a coded theft protection circuit. Be sure to get the customer's code number before

- disconnecting the battery.
- removing the No. 32 (7.5 A) fuse in the under-hood fuse/relay box.
- removing the radio.

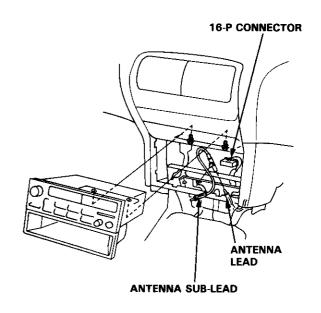
After service, reconnect power to the radio and turn it on. When the word "CODE" is displayed, enter the customer's 5-digit code to restore radio operation.

- 1. Remove the center console (see section 20).
- Remove the cigarette lighter assembly (see page 23-205).

Remove the four mounting screws, then remove the front console.

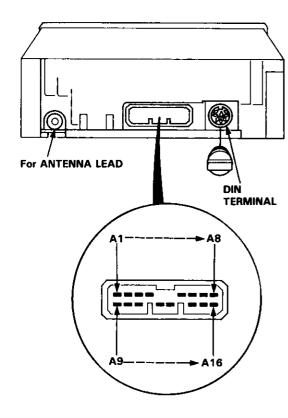


 Loosen the two mounting screws, then disconnect the 16-P connector and the antenna lead, and pull out the stereo radio/cassette player.



Stereo Sound System

Stereo Radio/Cassette Player Terminals



| | A2 | BLU/GRN | Driver's door speaker ⊕ |
|-----|-----|---------|-----------------------------------|
| | А3 | RED/BLK | Lights-on signal |
| | A4 | WHT/BLU | Constant power (Tuning memory) |
| | A5 | YEL/RED | ACC (Main stereo power supply) |
| | A6 | YEL/GRN | Radio switched power (To antenna) |
| | Α7 | BLU/YEL | Left rear speaker ⊕ |
| ĺ | A8 | RED/YEL | Right rear speaker ⊕ |
| | A9 | BRN/BLK | Front passenger's door speaker ⊖ |
| | A10 | GRY/BLK | Driver's door speaker ⊖ |
| | A11 | | (not used) |
| - 1 | | | |

(not used)

(not used)

Ground (G551)

Left rear speaker ⊖

Right rear speaker ⊖

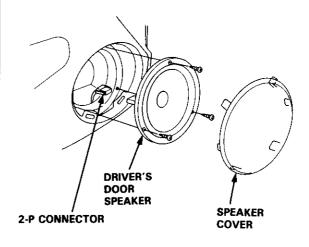
Connects to

Front passenger's door speaker \oplus

- Front Speaker/Tweeter Replacement

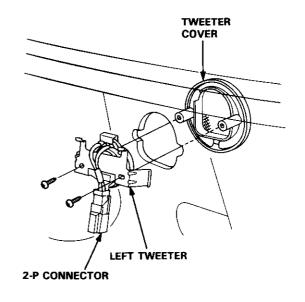
Front Speaker:

- 1. Carefully pry out the speaker cover.
- 2. Remove the three screws, then disconnect the 2-P connector from the speaker, and remove the speaker.



Tweeter:

- 1. Remove the door panel and disconnect the tweeter 2-P connector.
- 2. Remove the two screws, then remove the tweeter and cover.



A12

A13

A14

A15

A16

Terminal

A1

Wire

RED/GRN

BLK

GRY/WHT

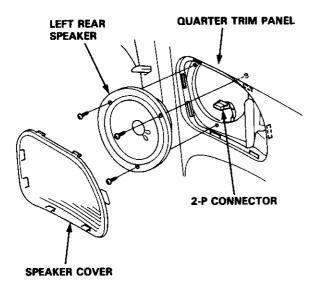
BRN/WHT



Rear Speaker Replacement

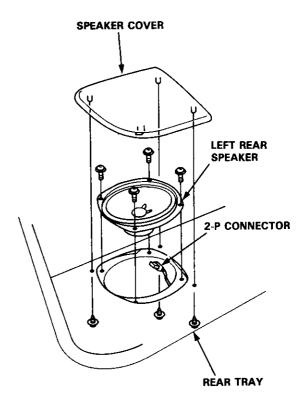
Hatchback:

- 1. Remove the speaker cover.
- Remove the three screws, then disconnect the 2-P connecter from the rear speaker.



Sedan:

- 1. Remove the three screws from the trunk side, then remove the speaker cover.
- 2. Remove the four screws, then disconnect the 2-P connector from the speaker, and remove the speaker.



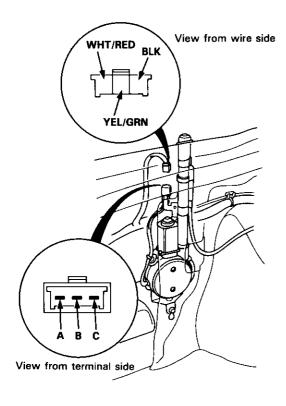
Stereo Sound System

- Power Antenna Motor Test

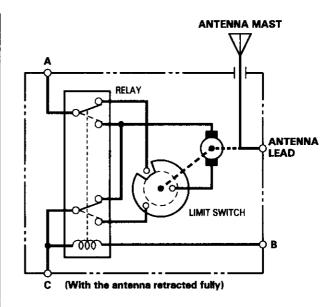
- 1. Remove the quarter trim panel (Hatchback) or trunk side trim panel (Sedan).
- Disconnect the 3-P connector from the motor, and remove the connector from its clamp.
- Check for power to the motor at the connector terminals:
 - There should be battery voltage between the WHT/RED (+) and BLK (-) terminals all the time.
 - There should be battery voltage between the YEL/GRN (+) and BLK (-) terminals only with the ignition and radio switched ON.
- 4. Test motor operation:

EXTEND: Connect battery power to the "A" and "B" terminals and ground the "C" terminal.

RETRACT: Then disconnect power from the "B" terminal.



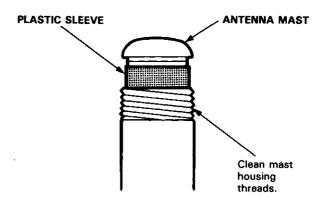
5. If the motor fails to run or does not run smoothly, replace it.



Sticking Antenna:

The antenna sticks in either the up or down position.

- Using the antenna wrench, remove the antenna nut, spacer (see page 23-195).
- Clean the antenna mast housing threads, and reinstall the spacer.



3. Use the antenna nut wrench and tighten the antenna nut to 2.3 N·m (0.23 kgf-m, 1.7 lbf-ft). If you overtightened the nut, the antenna may stick. If sticking occurs, back the nut off a little, then turn the radio on and off to raise and lower the antenna again. Repeat until the antenna moves freely.

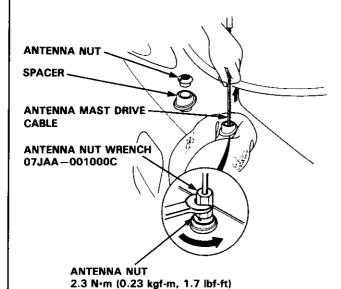


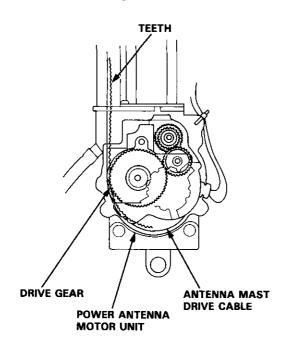
Antenna Mast Replacement -

Removal:

NOTE: The antenna mast alone can be replaced without having to remove the power antenna motor.

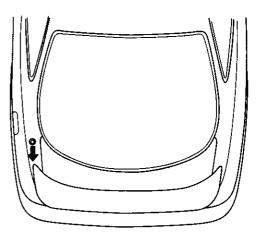
- 1. Remove the antenna nut and spacer.
- Carefully withdraw the antenna mast while extending it by turning the radio switch ON.





Installation:

 Hold the antenna so that the teeth on the drive cable face in the direction shown, then insert the cable into the antenna housing.



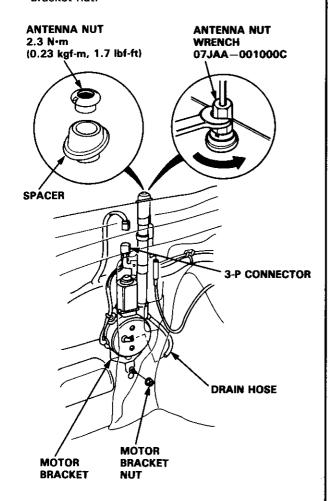
Direction of the teeth

- Check for engagement of the cable teeth with the drive gear by carefully moving the cable up and down.
- 3. Turn the radio switch "OFF", and let the motor pull the drive cable into the antenna housing.
- Clean the antenna housing threads, then insert the antenna into the housing. Install the bushing spacer, and install and tighten the antenna nut to 2.3 N-m (0.23 kgf-m, 1.7 lbf-ft).
- 5. Check that the antenna mast retracts and extends fully when the radio switch is turned ON and OFF repeatedly. If you overtightened the nut, the antenna may stick. If sticking occurs, back the nut off a little, then raise and lower the antenna again. Repeat until the antenna moves freely.

Stereo Sound System

-Power Antenna Motor Replacement-

- 1. Remove the quarter trim panel (Hatchback) or trunk side trim panel (Sedan).
- Disconnect the 3-P connector and antenna lead from the motor, then remove the antenna nut and motor bracket nut.

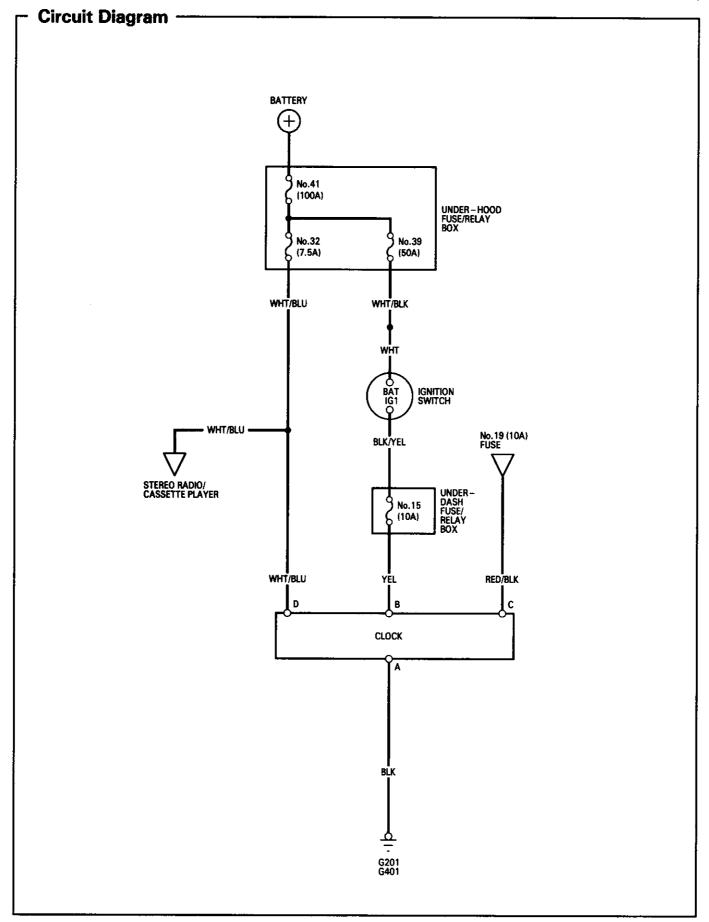


3. Remove the motor and antenna as an assembly.

NOTE: Tighten the antenna nut, then tighten the motor bracket nut.

Clock



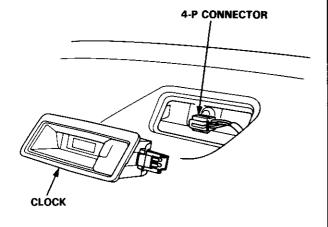


Clock

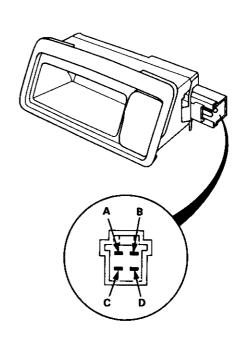
- Replacement -

CAUTION:

- Pry the clock out at the left side.
- Be careful not to damage the clock and the dashboard when prying the clock out.
- 1. Pry the clock out from the dashboard, then disconnect the 4-P connector.



– Terminals ·



| Terminal | Wire | Connects to | | | | | | |
|----------|---------|------------------------------------|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| Α | BLK | Ground | | | | | | |
| В | YEL | IG1 (Main clock power sup- ply) | | | | | | |
| С | RED/BLK | Lights-on signal | | | | | | |
| D | WHT/BLU | Constant power (Time memory) | | | | | | |

Horn



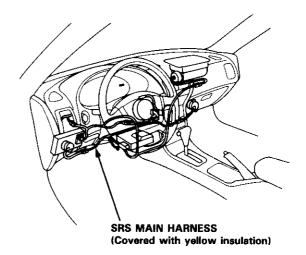
Component Location Index -

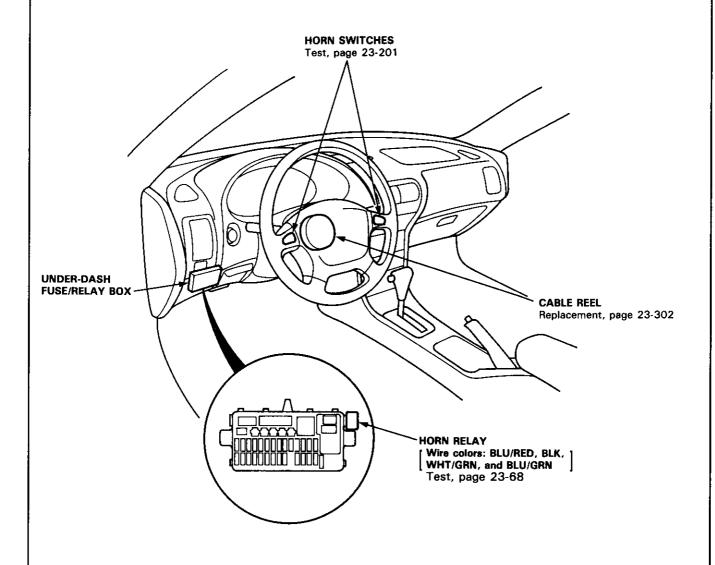
CAUTION:

- All SRS electrical wiring harnesses are covered with yellow insulation.
- Before disconnecting any part of the SRS wire harness, connect the short connector(s).
- Replace the entire affected SRS harness assembly if it has an open circuit or damaged wiring.

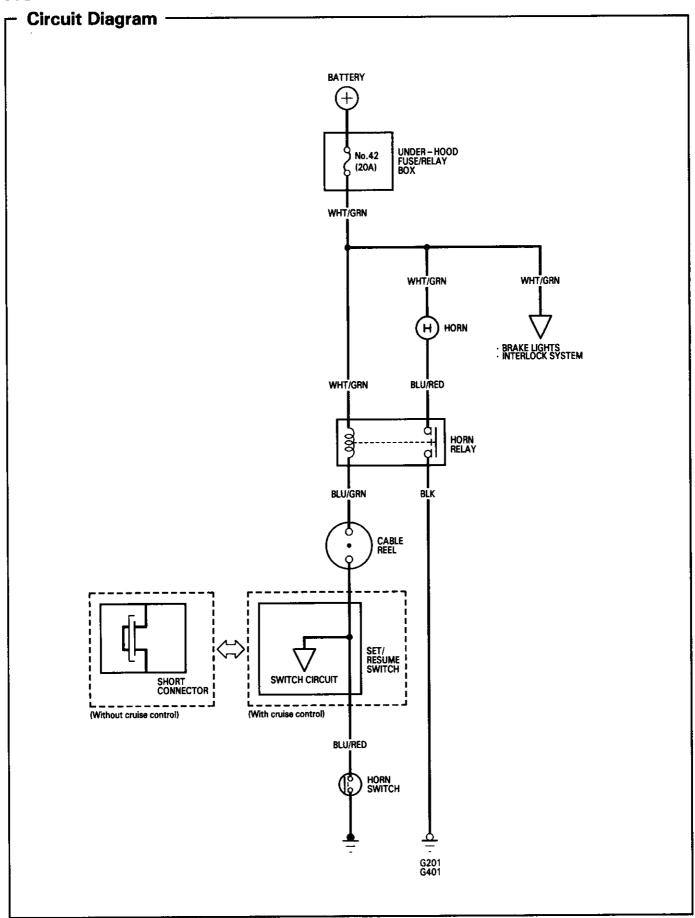
HORN

Test, page 23-203





Horn





Switch Test

CAUTION:

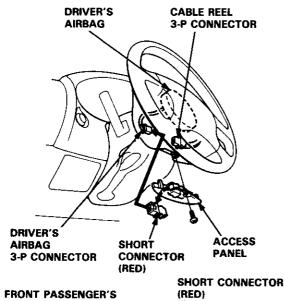
- All SRS electrical wiring harnesses are covered with yellow insulation.
- Before disconnecting any part of the SRS wire harness, connect the short connector(s).
- Replace the entire affected SRS harness assembly if it has an open circuit or damaged wiring.

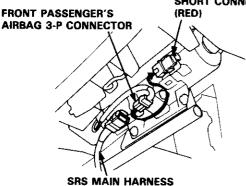
NOTE: The original radio has a coded theft protection circuit. Be sure to get the customer's code number before

- disconnecting the battery.
- removing the No. 32 (7.5 A) fuse from the under-hood fuse/relay box.
- removing the radio.

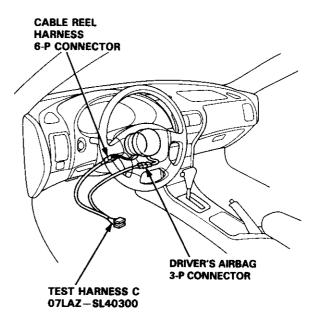
After service, reconnect power to the radio and turn it on. When the word "CODE" is displayed, enter the customer's 5-digit code to restore radio operation.

- Disconnect the battery negative cable, then disconnect the positive cable.
- 2. Connect the short connector(s) to the airbag(s).



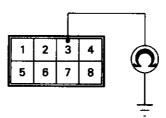


Remove the dashboard lower cover and knee bolster (see page 23-70). Disconnect the cable reel harness 6-P connector from the SRS main harness, then connect Test Harness C only to the cable reel harness.



- Check for continuity between the No. 3 terminal of the 8-P connector of Test Harness C and body ground with the horn switch pressed.
 - If there is continuity, the horn switch is OK.
 - If there is no continuity, go to step 6.

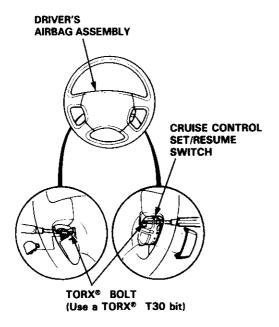
TEST HARNESS C 07LAZ-SL40300



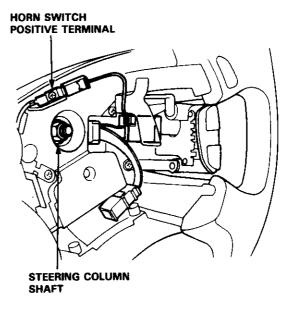
(cont'd)

- Switch Test (cont'd)

 Remove the two TORX® bolts using a TORX® T30 bit, then remove the driver's airbag assembly.



 Check for continuity between the horn positive terminal and the steering column shaft with the horn switch pressed. There should be no continuity.

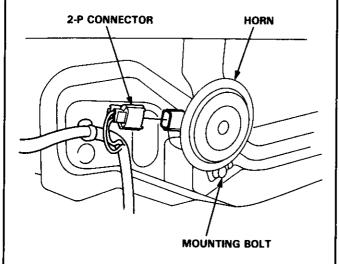


- If there is continuity:
 - With cruise control: Test the set/resume switch. If the switch is OK, replace the cable reel.
 - Without cruise control: Replace the cable reel.
- If there is no continuity, remove the steering wheel and the four screws, then remove the steering wheel cover. Replace the faulty horn switch.
- 8. Reinstall the steering wheel (see section 17).

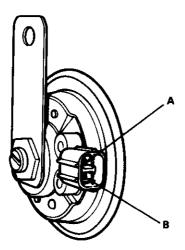


- Horn Test -

- 1. Remove the front bumper (see page 23-164).
- 2. Disconnect the 2-P connector from the horn.
- 3. Remove the horn.

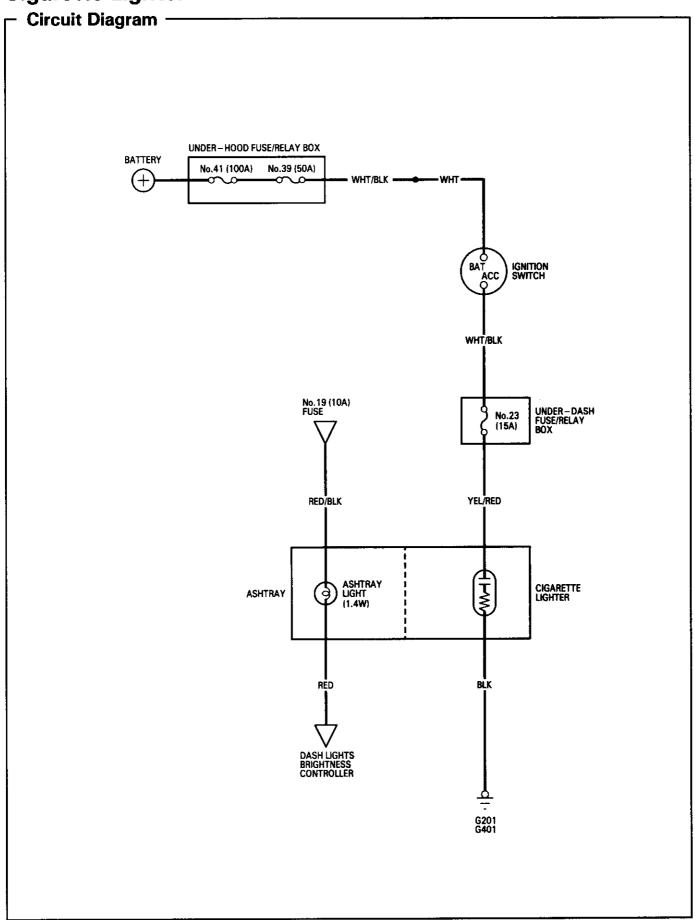


4. Test the horn by connecting battery power to one terminal and grounding the other. The horn should sound.



5. Replace the horn if it fails to sound.

Cigarette Lighter

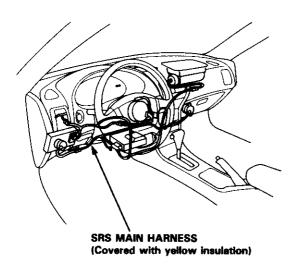




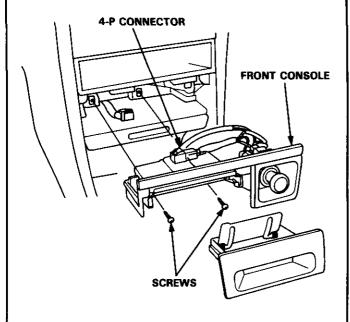
Replacement

CAUTION:

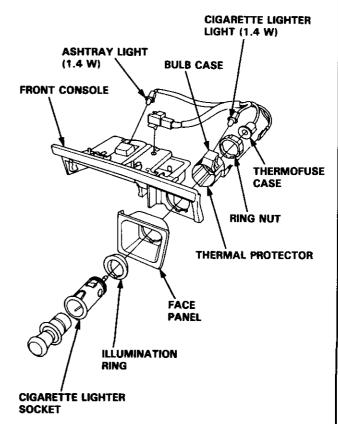
- All SRS electrical wiring harnesses are covered with yellow insulation.
- Before disconnecting any part of the SRS wire harness, connect the short connector(s).
- Replace the entire affected SRS harness assembly if it has an open circuit or damaged wiring.



 Remove the two ashtray mounting screws. Then pull out the ashtray from the front console, and disconnect the 4-P connector.



- Disconnect the thermofuse case from the socket end.
- 3. Remove the thermal protector, and pull out the cigarette lighter socket.



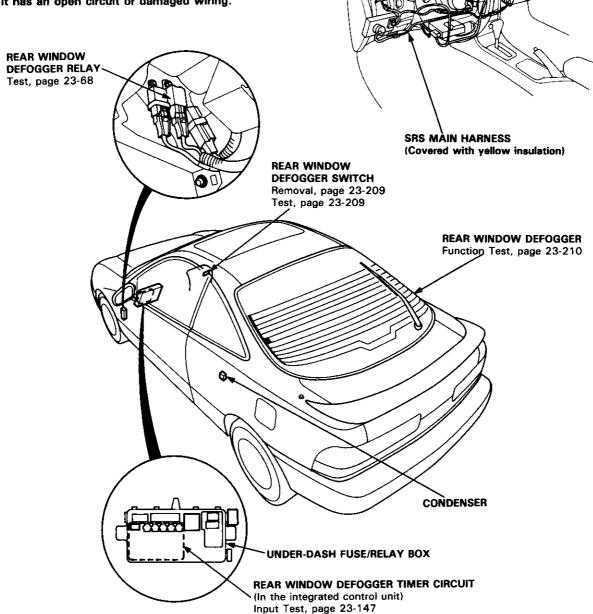
- 4. When installing the cigarette lighter, align each lug on the face panel, illumination ring, and cigarette lighter socket with the groove of the hole, then position the bulb housing on the thermal protector between the stops in the console panel.
- Make sure that the ground wire, bulb socket, and thermofuse housing are seated to the cigarette lighter assembly.

Rear Window Defogger

Component Location Index

CAUTION:

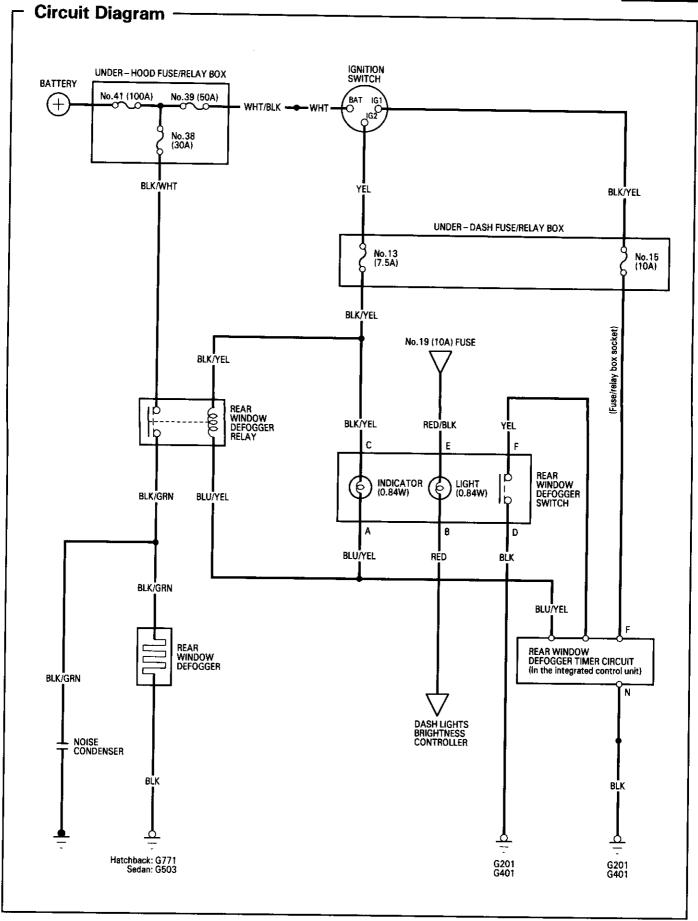
- All SRS electrical wiring harnesses are covered with yellow insulation.
- Before disconnecting any part of the SRS wire harness, connect the short connector(s).
- Replace the entire affected SRS harness assembly if it has an open circuit or damaged wiring.



Description

The rear window defogger is controlled by the integrated control unit. Pushing the defogger switch in the instrument panel it sends a signal to the defogger timer in the integrated control unit, and the defogger stays on for 25 minutes or until the ignition switch is turned off. The indicator light in the switch comes on when the defogger works.





Rear Window Defogger

Troubleshooting —

NOTE: The numbers in the table show the troubleshooting sequence.

| Item to be inspected | | | | | · | | | Ü | |
|--|----------------------------|--|---|---|---------------|----------------|-----------------|----------------------|--|
| Symptom | Blown indicator light bulb | Blown No. 13 (7.5 A) fuse (In the under-dash fuse/relay box) | Defogger timer circuit input (In the integrated control unit) | Blown No. 38 (30 A) fuse (In the under-hood fuse/relay box) | Function test | Defogger relay | Defogger switch | Poor ground | Open circuit, loose or disconnected terminals |
| Defogger works, but indicator light does not go on. | 1 | | | | | | | | BLK/YEL or BLU/YEL |
| Defogger does not work and indicator light does not go on. | | 1 | 3 | | | | 2 | G201 G401 | YEL, BLU/YEL or BLK/YEL |
| Defogger does not work, but indicator light goes on. | | | | 1 | 4 | 2 | 3 | *1: G771 *2: G503 | BLU/YEL or BLK/YEL BLK/GRN or BLK/WHT |
| Defogger-on time is too long or too short (normal operation time is 25 minutes). | | | 1 | | | | | | |

*1: Hatchback

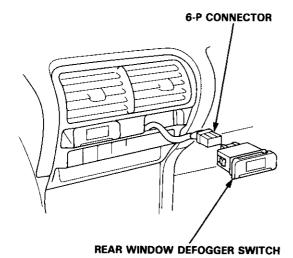
*2: Sedan



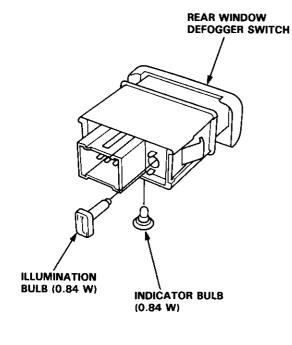
Switch Removal

CAUTION: Be careful not to damage the heater control/center air vent.

- Carefully pry the switch out of the heater control/center air vent.
- 2. Disconnect the 6-P connector from the switch.



Remove the indicator bulb (turn the socket 45° counterclockwise), and remove the illumination bulb.

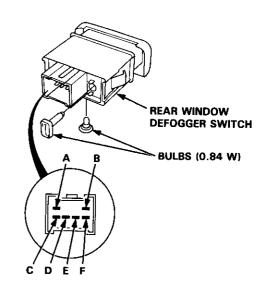


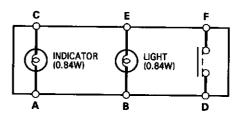
-Switch Test -

NOTE: Be careful not to damage the heater control/center air vent.

- Carefully pry the switch out of the heater control/center air vent.
- 2. Check for continuity between the terminals according to the table.

| Terminal Position | A | В | | С | D | E | F |
|-------------------|---|---------|------|---|---|----------|---|
| PUSHED | 0 | <u></u> | | 9 | 0 | | 0 |
| RELEASED | 0 |) |) (6 | 9 | | <u> </u> | |



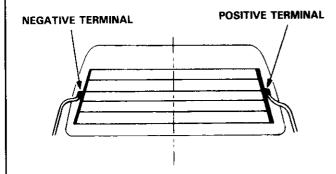


Rear Window Defogger

- Function Test

CAUTION: Be careful not to scratch or damage the defogger wires with the tester probe.

- Check for voltage between the positive terminal and body ground with the ignition switch and the defogger switch ON. There should be battery voltage.
 - If there is no voltage, check for
 - faulty defogger relay.
 - faulty defogger switch.
 - faulty integrated control unit.
 - an open in the BLK/GRN wire.
 - If there is battery voltage, go to step 2.



- Turn the rear window defogger switch OFF. Check for continuity between the negative terminal and body ground.
 - If there is no continuity, check for an open in the defogger ground wire.
 - If there is continuity, go to step 3.
- Touch the voltmeter positive lead to the halfway point of each defogger wire, and the negative lead to the negative terminal.

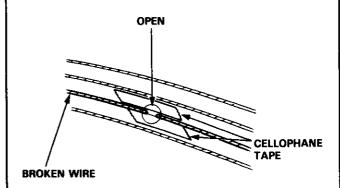
There should be approximately 6 V with the ignition switch and defogger switch ON.

- If the voltage is as specified, the defogger wire is OK.
- If the voltage is not as specified, repair the defogger wire:
 - If it is more than 6 V, look for the damage on the negative half on the grid.
 - If it is less than 6 V, look for the damage on the positive half of the grid.

Defogger Wires Repair

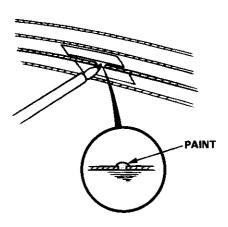
NOTE: To make an effective repair, the broken section must be no longer than one inch.

- Lightly rub the area around the break with fine steel wool, then clean it with alcohol.
- 2. Carefully mask above and below the broken portion of the defogger wire with cellophane tape.



3. Using a small brush, apply a heavy coat of silver conductive paint extending about 3 mm (1/8 in) on both sides of the break. Allow 30 minutes to dry.

NOTE: Thoroughly mix the paint before use.



- 4. Check for continuity in the repaired wire.
- 5. Apply a second coat of paint in the same way. Let it dry three hours before removing the tape.

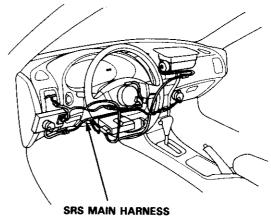
Moonroof



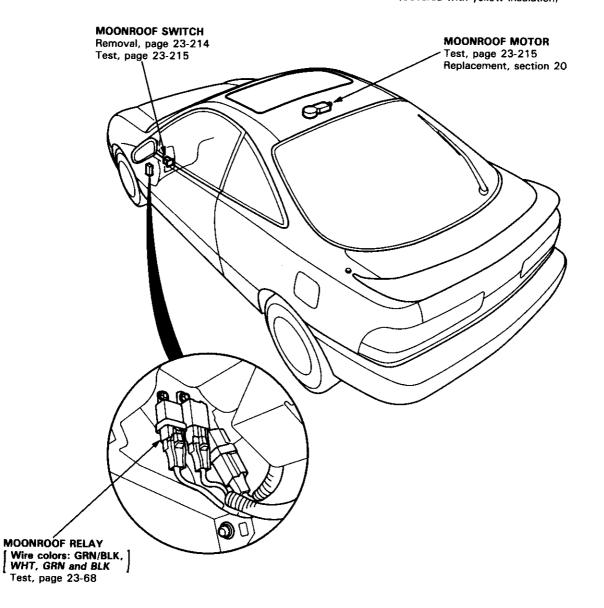
Component Location Index

CAUTION:

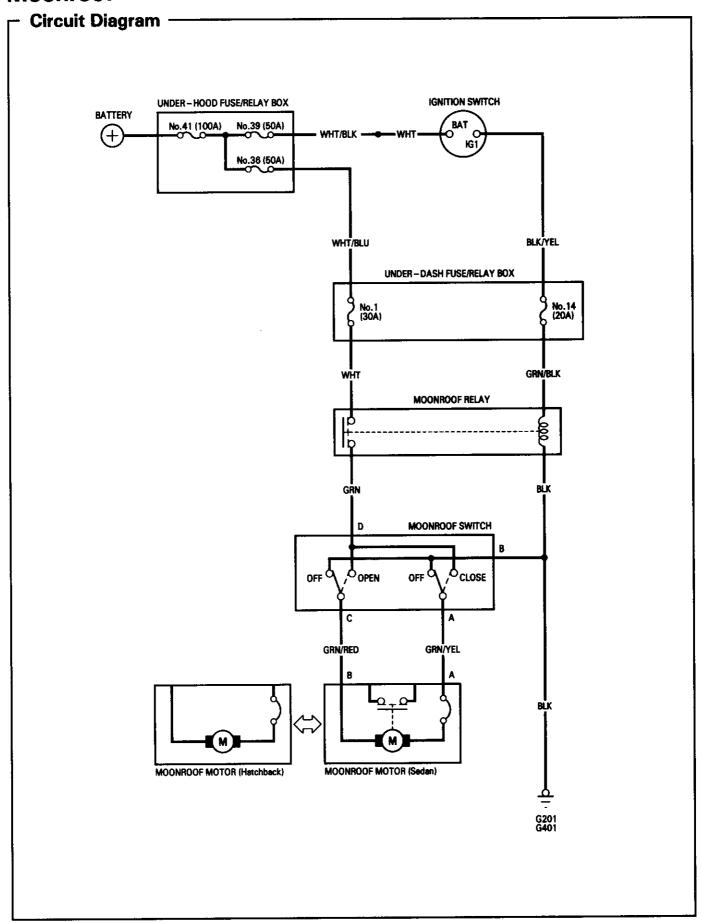
- All SRS electrical wiring harnesses are covered with yellow insulation.
- Before disconnecting any part of the SRS wire harness, connect the short connector(s).
- Replace the entire affected SRS harness assembly if it has an open circuit or damaged wiring.



SRS MAIN HARNESS
(Covered with yellow insulation)



Moonroof





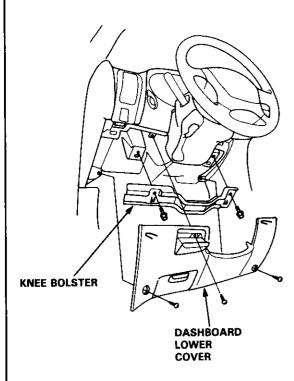
NOTE: The numbers in the table show the troubleshooting sequence.

| Item | n to be inspected | Clutch out of adjustment, foreign matter stuck between guide rail and moonroof, or outer cable not attached properly | Blown No. 1 (30 A) fuse (In the under-dash fuse/relay box) | Blown No. 14 (20 A) fuse (In the under-dash fuse/relay box) | Moonroof switch | Function test | Moonroof relay | Moonroof motor | Poor ground | Open circuit, loose or disconnected terminals |
|--|-------------------------|--|---|--|-----------------|---------------|----------------|----------------|--------------|---|
| Symptom | | Clu stu | B L | 8 등 | Š | 된 | Š | Ψį | <u>&</u> | O or d |
| Moonroof do but motor tu | pes not move, urns. | 1 | | | | | | | | |
| Moonroof does not move and motor does | In all switch positions | | 1 | 2 | | 3 | 4 | 5 | G201 G401 | WHT, GRN/BLK, GRN,BLK |
| not turn (moonroof can be | With OPEN switch | i | | | 1 | | 2 | | | GRN/RED |
| moved with moonroof wrench). | With CLOSE switch | | | | 1 | | 2 | | | GRN/YEL |

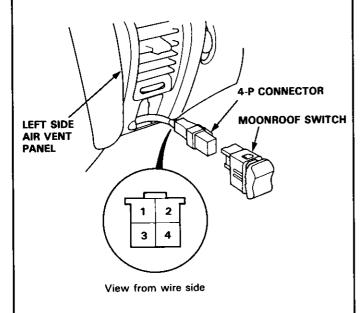
Moonroof

- Function Test

1. Remove the dashboard lower cover, and if necessary, remove the knee bolster.



Carefully pry the switch out of the left side air vent panel, then disconnect the 4-P connector to remove the switch.



- 3. Check for continuity between the No. 2 terminal and body ground.
 - If there is no continuity, check for
 - an open in the BLK wire.
 - poor ground (G201, G401).
 - If there is continuity, go to step 4.
- Check for voltage between the No. 4 terminal (+) and No. 2 terminal (-) with the ignition switch ON (II). There should be battery voltage.
 - If there is no battery voltage, check for
 - blown No. 1 (30 A) or No. 14 (20 A) fuse in the under-dash fuse/relay box.
 - an open in the wires (GRN/BLK, GRN, WHT) or loose terminals.
 - faulty moonroof relay.
 - If there is battery voltage, go to step 5.
- Connect the No. 4 terminal to the No. 3 terminal, and the No. 1 terminal to the No. 2 terminal with jumper wires. The moonroof should open when the ignition switch is turned ON (II).
 - If the moonroof opens, check the moonroof switch.
 - If it doesn't open, remove the headliner and check the motor.

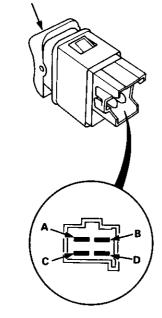


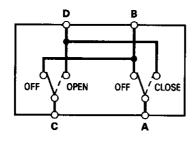
- Switch Test -

- 1. Remove the dashboard lower cover.
- Carefully pry the switch out of the left side air vent panel, then disconnect the 4-P connector and remove the switch.
- Check for continuity between the terminals in each switch position according to the table.

| Terminal Position | A | В | С | D |
|-------------------|---|---|---|----------------|
| OFF | 9 | 0 | 9 | ·" |
| OPEN | 9 | 9 | 0 | $\overline{}$ |
| CLOSE | O | 9 | 1 | - 0 |

MOONROOF SWITCH



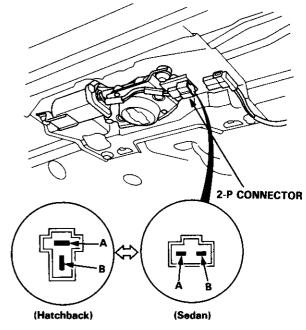


Motor Test -

- 1. Remove the headliner (see section 20).
- Disconnect the 2-P connector from the moonroof motor.
- 3. Check the motor by connecting power and ground according to the table.

NOTE: Motor clutch test is in section 20.

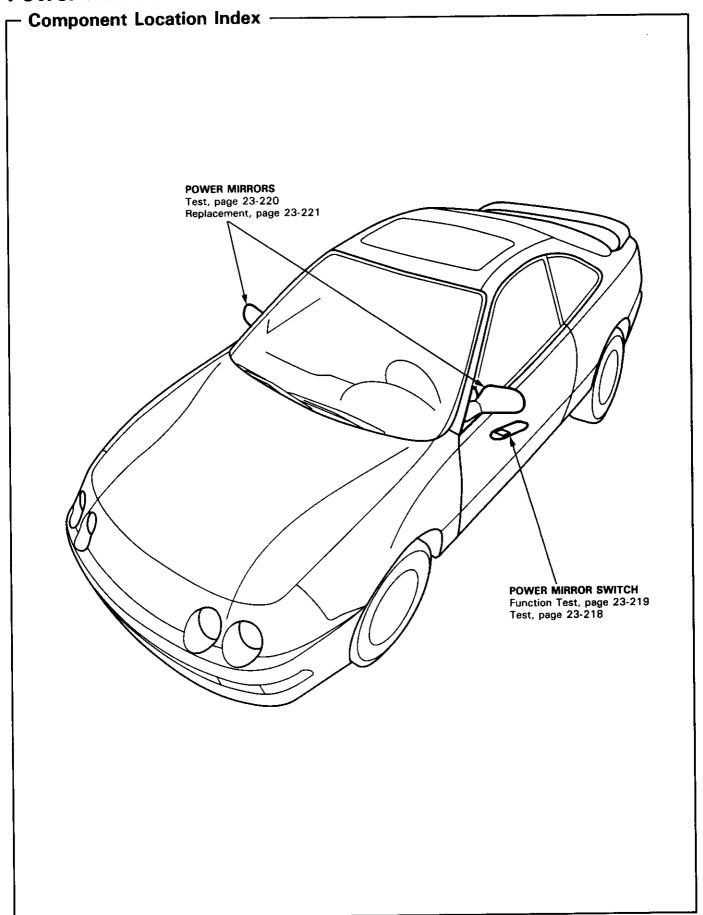
| Terminal Condition | Α | В |
|--------------------|----------|----------|
| OPEN | Θ | \oplus |
| CLOSE | ⊕ | Θ |



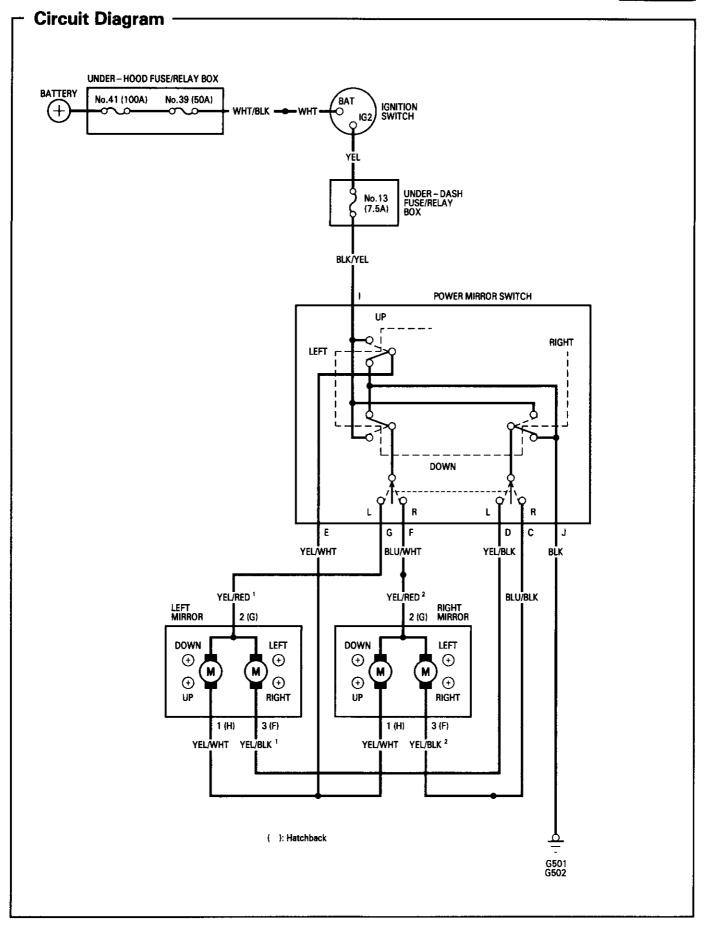
View from terminal side

4. If the motor fails to run or doesn't run smoothly, replace it.

Power Mirrors







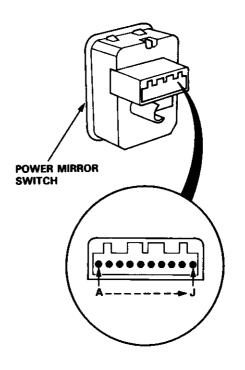
Power Mirrors

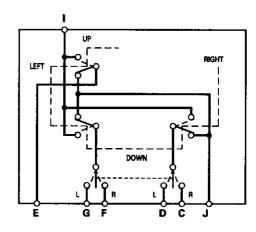
- Switch Test -

- 1. Remove the driver's door panel (see section 20).
- 2. Check for continuity between the terminals in each switch position according to the table.

Mirror Switch

| | Terminal | | J | E | D | G | С | F |
|------|----------|---------|----------|------------|--------------|--------------|-----------------|---------------|
| Posi | tion | | | | | | | |
| | OFF | | 5 | \bigcirc | | | 0 | $\overline{}$ |
| | un | \circ | | Ю | | | | |
| | UP | | 0- | | | ! | - O- | Ю |
| | | 0 | | | | | 0 | |
| R | DOWN | | 0- | -0 | | | | |
| | | 0 | | -0- | | | | PO |
| | LEFT | - | 0- | | | | -0 | |
| | RIGHT | 0 | | | | | - 0 | |
| | | | 0- | -0- | | | | -0 |
| | OFF | | 6 | 0 | - | \vdash | | |
| | | 0 | | Ю | | | | |
| | UP | | 0- | | -0- | -0 | | |
| | | b | | | - | - | | |
| L | DOWN | _ | 0- | -0 | | | | |
| | | | | F0- | | 0 | | |
| | LEFT | | 0- | | | | | |
| | | 0 | <u>.</u> | | Ю | | | |
| | RIGHT | | 0- | -0- | | - | | |

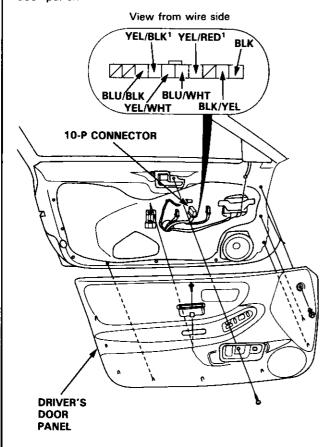






Function Test

NOTE: To test, remove the driver's door panel (see section 20), then disconnect all of the connectors from the door panel.



Mirror Test

NOTE: Check the No. 13 (7.5 A) fuse in the under-dash fuse/relay box before testing.

One or both inoperative:

- Check for voltage between the BLK/YEL terminal and body ground with the ignition switch ON (II).
 There should be battery voltage.
 - If there is no voltage, check for:
 - Blown No. 13 (7.5 A) fuse in the under-dash fuse/relay box
 - An open in the BLK/YEL wire
 - If there is battery voltage, go to step 2.
- Check for continuity between the BLK terminal and body ground.

There should be continuity; check for:

- An open in the BLK wire
- Poor ground (G501, G502)

Left mirror inoperative:

Connect the BLK/YEL terminal of the 10-P connector to the YEL/RED¹ terminal and the YEL/WHT (or YEL/BLK¹) terminal to body ground with jumper wires.

The left mirror should tilt down (or swing left) when you turn on the ignition switch.

- If the mirror does not tilt down (or does not swing left), check for an open in the YEL/WHT (or YEL/BLK¹) wire between the left mirror and the switch. If the wire is OK, check the left mirror actuator.
- If the mirror neither tilts down nor swings left, repair the YEL/RED¹ wire between the left mirror and the switch.
- If the mirror operates properly, check the mirror switch.

Right mirror inoperative:

Connect the BLK/YEL terminal of the 10-P connector to the BLU/WHT terminal and the YEL/WHT (or BLU/BLK) terminal to body ground with jumper wires. The right mirror should tilt down (or swing left) when you turn on the ignition switch.

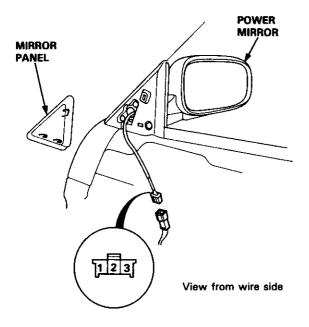
- If the mirror does not tilt down (or does not swing left), remove the right door panel and check for an open in the YEL/WHT (or BLU/BLK) wire between the right mirror and the switch. If the wire is OK, check the right mirror actuator.
- If the mirror neither tilts down nor swings left, repair the BLU/WHT wire between the right mirror and the switch.
- If the mirror operates properly, check the mirror switch.

Power Mirrors

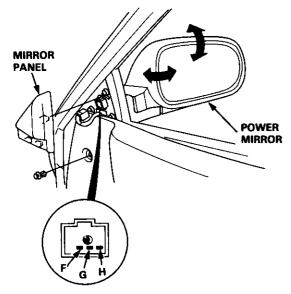
- Door Mirror Test

 Remove the mirror panel and door panel (Sedan), then disconnect the 8-P (Hatchback) or 3-P (Sedan) connector from the power mirror actuator.

Sedan:



Hatchback:



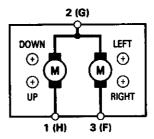
2. Check actuator operation by connecting power and ground according to the table.

TILT:

| Terminal Position | 1(H) | 2(G) |
|-------------------|----------|----------|
| UP | \oplus | Θ |
| DOWN | θ | ⊕ |

SWING:

| Terminal Position | 2(G) | 3(F) |
|-------------------|----------|----------|
| LEFT | ⊕ | Θ |
| RIGHT | Φ | ⊕ |



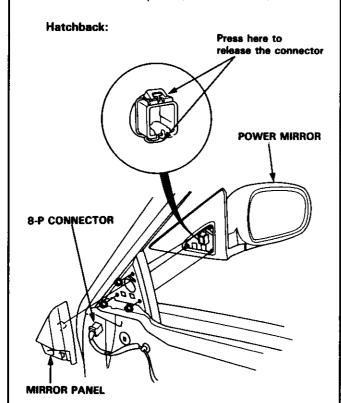
(): Hatchback

3. If the mirror fails to operate properly, replace it.

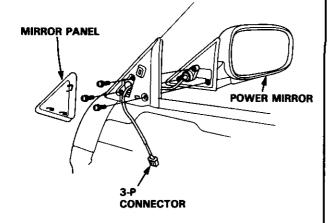


Power Mirror Replacement -

- 1. Carefully pry out the mirror panel with a flat tip screwdriver.
- 2. Remove the door panel (see section 20).

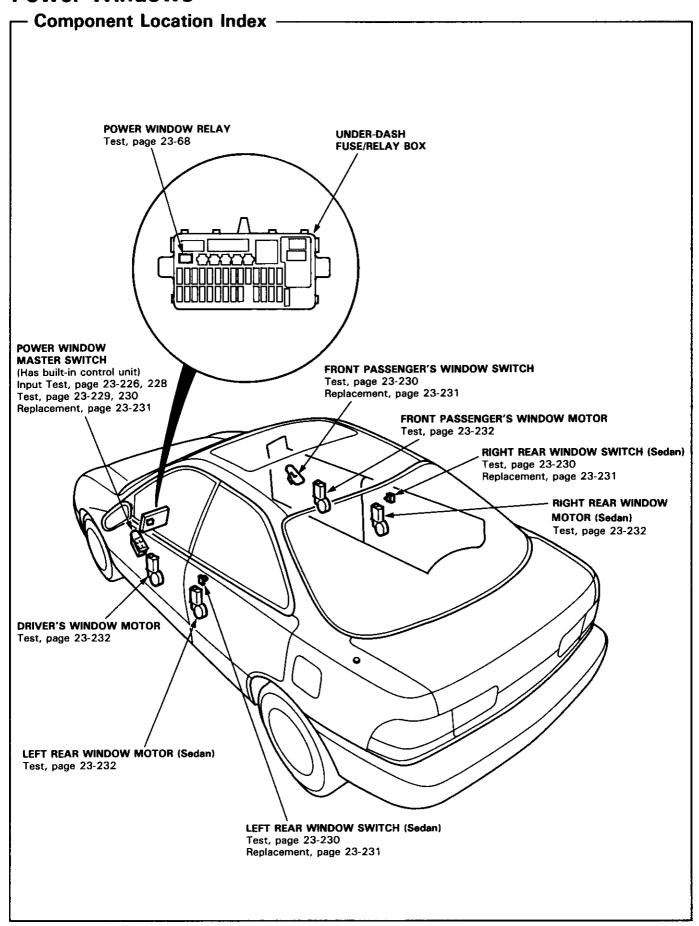


Sedan:

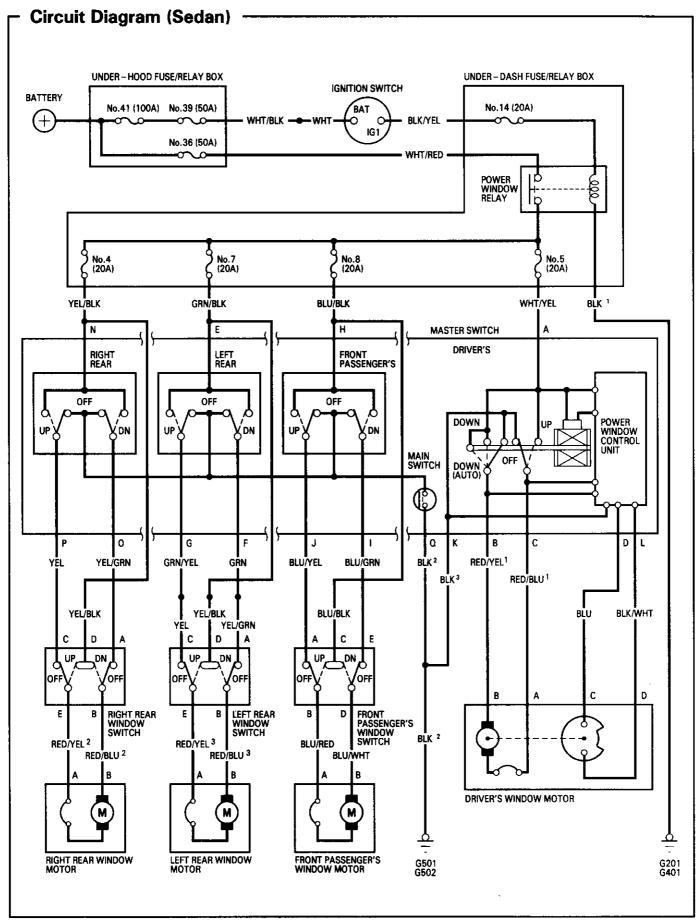


- 3. Disconnect the 8-P (Hatchback) or 3-P (Sedan) connector from the power mirror actuator.
- 4. While holding the mirror with one hand, remove its mounting nuts (Hatchback) or mounting screws (Sedan) with the other.

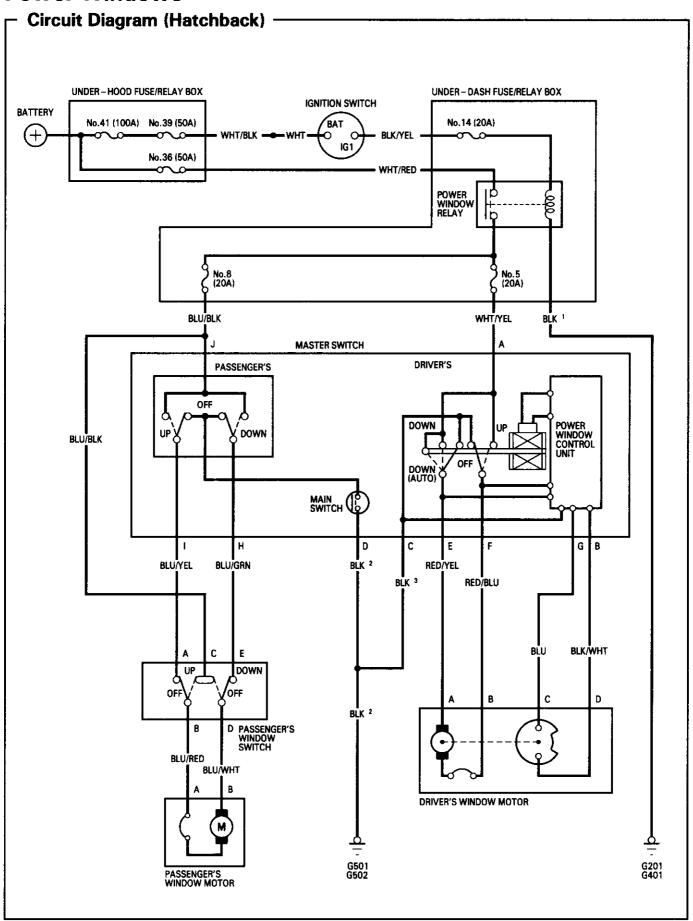
Power Windows







Power Windows





Troubleshooting —

NOTE: The numbers in the table show the troubleshooting sequence.

| Item to be inspected | | lay box) | | | In the under-dash | fuse/relay box | | itch | ક્ | | motor) | 10 | | switch input | | |
|--|--------------|--|--------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|----------------------------|---------------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------------------|--------------------------|------------------|------------------------|------------------------------|--|
| | | Blown No. 14 (20 A) fuse (In the under-dash fuse/relay box) | Power window relay | Blown No. 5 (20 A) fuse | Blown No. 8 (20 A) fuse | *Blown No. 4 (20 A) fuse | *Blown No. 7 (20 A) fuse | Power window master switch | Passenger's window switch | Driver's window motor | Pulser (In driver's window motor) | Passenger's window motor | Window regulator | Power window master sw | Poor ground | Open circuit, loose or disconnected terminals |
| All windows | do not work. | 1 | 2 | | | | | | | | | | | | G201 G401 G501 G502 | BLK/YEL WHT/RED |
| Driver's wind work. | low does not | | | 1 | | | | 3 | | 2 | | | 4 | 5 | | WHT/YEL |
| Driver's window does not work in AUTO. | | · · | | | | | | 2 | | | 1 | | | 3 | | BLU, BLK/WHT |
| Passenger's | Right front | | | | 1 | | | 2 | 3 | | | 4 | 5 | | <u></u> | BLU/BLK |
| windows do not work. | *Left rear | | | | | | 1 | 2 | 3 | | | 4 | 5 | | | GRN/BLK |
| HOL WORK. | *Right rear | | | | | 1 | | 2 | 3 | | | 4 | 5 | | | YEL/BLK |

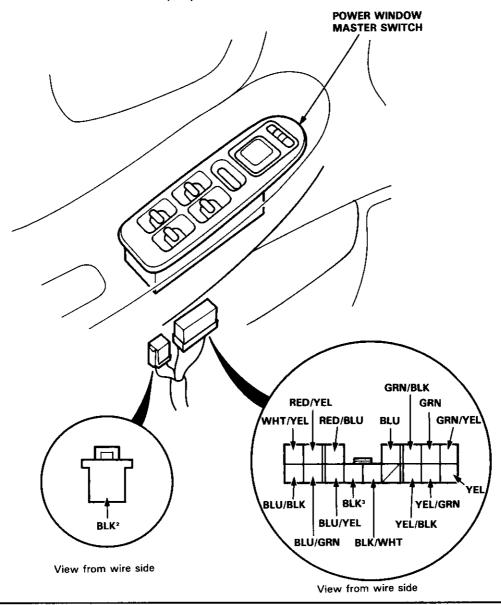
^{*:} Sedan

Power Windows

- Master Switch Input Test (Sedan) -

NOTE: The control unit is built into the power window master switch, and only controls driver's door window operations.

- Remove the driver's door panel and disconnect the 16-P and 1-P connectors from the master switch.
- 2. Inspect the connector and socket terminals to be sure they are all making good contact.
 - If the terminals are bent, loose or corroded, repair them as necessary, and recheck the system.
 - If the terminals look OK, make the following input tests at the connector.
 - If a test indicates a problem, find and correct the cause, then recheck the system.
 - If all the input tests prove OK, the power window master switch must be faulty; replace it.





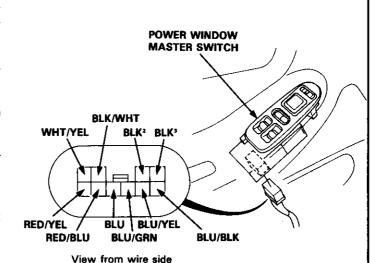
| No | . Wire | Test condition | Test: Desired result | Possible cause if result is not obtained |
|----|---|---|---|--|
| 1 | BLK ² and BLK ³ | Under all conditions | Check for continuity to ground: There should be continuity. | Poor ground (G501, G502) An open in the wire |
| | WHT/YEL | Ignition switch ON (II) | Check for voltage to ground: | Blown No. 14 (20 A) fuse in the |
| 2 | BLU/BLK | | There should be battery voltage. | under-dash fuse/relay box Blown No. 5, 8, 7 or 4 (20 A) fuse |
| - | GRN/BLK | | | in the under-dash fuse/relay box • Faulty power window relay |
| | YEL/BLK | | | An open in the wire |
| 3 | RED/BLU ¹ and RED/YEL ¹ | Connect the WHT/YEL and RED/YEL¹ terminals, and the RED/BLU¹ and BLK³ terminals with jumper wires, then turn the ignition switch ON (II). | Check the driver's window motor: It should run (the window moves down). | Faulty driver's window motor An open in the wire |
| 4 | BLU/YEL and BLU/GRN | Connect the BLU/BLK and BLU/GRN terminals, and the BLU/YEL and BLK ² terminals with jumper wires, then turn the ignition switch ON (II). | Check the front passenger's window motor: It should run (the window moves down). | Faulty front passenger's window motor An open in the wire |
| 5 | GRN/YEL and GRN | Connect the GRN/BLK and GRN terminals, and the GRN/YEL and BLK ² terminals with jumper wires, then turn the ignition switch ON (II). | Check the left rear window motor: It should run (the window moves down). | Faulty left rear window motor Faulty left rear window switch An open in the wire |
| 6 | YEL/GRN and YEL | Connect the YEL/BLK and YEL/GRN terminals, and the YEL and BLK ² terminals with iumper wires, then turn the ignition switch ON (II). | Check the right rear window motor: It should run (the window moves down). | Faulty right rear window motor Faulty right rear window switch An open in the wire |
| 7 | BLU and BLK/WHT | Connect the WHT/YEL and RED/YEL¹ terminals, and the RED/BLU¹ and BLK³ terminals with jumper wires, then turn the ignition switch ON (II). | Connect an analog ohmmeter to terminals BLU and BLK/WHT: The meter needle should move back and forth alternately as the driver's window motor runs. | Faulty pulser Faulty driver's window motor An open in the wire |

Power Windows

Master Switch Input Test (Hatchback) -

NOTE: The control unit is built into the power window master switch, and only controls driver's door window operations.

- Remove the driver's door panel and disconnect the 10-P connector from the master switch.
- 2. Inspect the connector and socket terminals to be sure they are all making good contact.
 - If the terminals are bent, loose or corroded, repair them as necessary, and recheck the system.
 - If the terminals look OK, make the following input tests at the connector terminals.
 - If a test indicates a problem, find and correct the cause, then recheck the system.
 - If all the input tests prove OK, the power window master switch must be faulty; replace it.

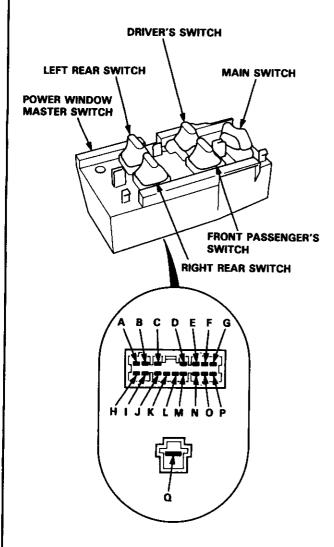


| No. | Wire | Test condition | Test: Desired result | Possible cause if result is not obtained |
|-----|---|---|--|---|
| 1 | BLK ² | Under all conditions | Check for continuity to ground: There should be continuity. | Poor ground (G501, G502) An open in the wire |
| 2 | WHT/YEL | Ignition switch ON (II) | Check for voltage to ground: There should be battery voltage. | Blown No. 14 (20 A) fuse in the under-dash fuse/relay box Blown No. 5, or No. 8 (20 A) fuse in the under-dash fuse/relay box |
| | BLU/BLK | • • | | Faulty power window relayAn open in the wire |
| 3 | RED/BLU ¹ and RED/YEL ¹ | Connect the WHT/YEL and RED/YEL¹ terminals, and the RED/BLU¹ and BLK³ terminals with jumper wires, then turn the ignition switch ON (II). | Check the driver's window motor: It should run (the window moves down). | Faulty driver's window motor An open in the wire |
| 4 | BLU/YEL and BLU/GRN | Connect the BLU/BLK and BLU/GRN terminals, and the BLU/YEL and BLK ² terminals with jumper wires, then turn the ignition switch ON (II). | Check the passenger's window motor: It should run (the window moves down). | Faulty passenger's window motor An open in the wire |
| 5 | BLU and BLK/WHT | Connect the WHT/YEL and RED/YEL¹ terminals, and the RED/BLU¹ and BLK³ terminals with jumper wires, then turn the ignition switch ON (II). | Connect an analog ohmmeter to the BLU and BLK/WHT ter- minals: The meter needle should move back and forth alternately as the driver's window motor runs. | Faulty pulserFaulty driver's window motorAn open in the wire |



Master Switch Test (Sedan)

- 1. Remove the driver's door panel (see section 20).
- 2. Disconnect the 16-P and 1-P connectors from the switch.
- 3. Check for continuity between the terminals in each switch position according to the tables.



Driver's Switch:

The driver's switch is combined with the control unit so you cannot isolate the switch to test it. Instead, run the master switch input test procedures No. 1, 2, 3, and 7 on page 23-226. If the tests are normal, the driver's switch must be faulty.

Front Passenger's Switch:

| | Terminal | | <u> </u> | | _ |
|----------|----------------|----|----------|---|---------------|
| Position | Main Switch | Н | 1 | J | Q |
| OFF | ON | | 0 | 0 | $\overline{}$ |
| | OFF | | 0 | 0 | |
| UP | ON | 0 | 0 | 9 | 0 |
| | OFF | 0 | | 0 | |
| DOWN | ON | 0 | 0 | 9 | - |
| | OFF | 0- | $-\circ$ | | |

Left Rear Switch:

| | Terminal | <u> </u> | Ī | | <u> </u> |
|---------------------------------------|----------------------|----------|----------------|---------------|----------|
| Position | Position Main Switch | | F | G | Q |
| OFF | ON | | lacksquare | | 9 |
| | OFF | | | 4 | |
| UP | ON | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · | OFF | b | | $\overline{}$ | |
| DOWN | ON | 0 | -0 | 0- | 0 |
| | OFF | 0 | - 0 | | |

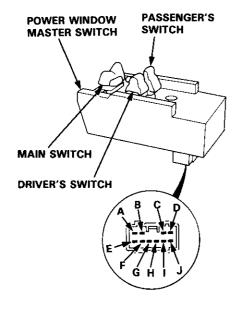
Right Rear Switch:

| | Terminal | | | 1 | 1 |
|----------|----------------|---|--------|----|----------------|
| Position | Main Switch | N | 0 | P | a |
| OFF | ON | | 0- | 0 | - |
| | OFF | | 0 | -0 | |
| UP | ON | 0 | 0- | -0 | 0 |
| | OFF | 0 | | 0 | |
| DOWN | ON | 0 | \neg | 0 | - 0 |
| | OFF | 0 | _ | | _ |

Power Windows

- Master Switch Test (Hatchback) -

- 1. Remove the driver's door panel (see section 20).
- 2. Disconnect the 10-P connector from the switch.
- 3. Check for continuity between the terminals in each switch position according to the table.



Driver's Switch:

The driver's switch is combined with the control unit so you cannot isolate the switch to test it. Instead, run the master switch input test procedures No. 1, 2, 3, and 5 on page 23-228. If the tests are normal, the driver's switch must be faulty.

Passenger's Switch:

| | Terminal | | ., | _ | |
|----------|----------------|------------|----|----------|---|
| Position | Main Switch | D | Ŧ | ! | J |
| OFF | ON | \Diamond | -0 | 9 | |
| UFF | OFF | | 0 | P | |
| UP | ON | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | OFF | | | 0- | 0 |
| DOWN | ON | 0- | 0 | <u> </u> | 9 |
| | OFF | | 0 | | 0 |

Passenger's Window Switch Test -

Front:

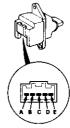
- 1. Remove the passenger's door panel (see section 20).
- 2. Disconnect the 5-P connector from the switch.
- 3. Check for continuity between the terminals in each switch position according to the table.



| Terminal Position | A | В | С | D | E |
|-------------------|---|------------|---|---|----------|
| OFF | d | 9 | | 0 | <u> </u> |
| UP | | \Diamond | 9 | d | 0 |
| DOWN | 0 | <u> </u> | 0 | 0 | |

Rear (Sedan):

- 1. Remove the inner handle (see section 20).
- 2. Disconnect the 5-P connector from the switch.
- 3. Check for continuity between the terminals in each switch position according to the table.



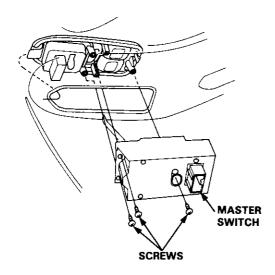
| Terminal Position | A | В | С | D | E |
|-------------------|---|---|---|---|----|
| OFF | Ò | 9 | o | | _0 |
| UP | 0 | Ŷ | | 0 | 0 |
| DOWN | | 0 | 0 | 9 | 0 |



Master Switch Replacement -

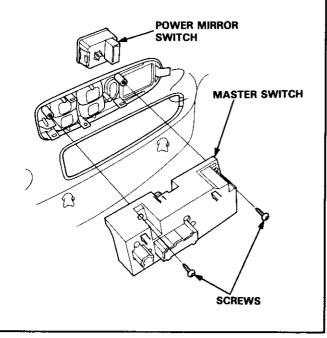
Hatchback:

- 1. Remove the driver's door panel (see section 20).
- 2. Disconnect the 10-P connector from the switch.
- Remove the three mounting screws and the switch.



Sedan:

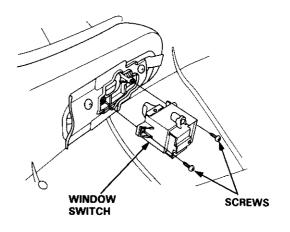
- 1. Remove the driver's door panel (see section 20).
- Disconnect the 16-P and 1-P connectors from the switch.
- 3. Remove the two mounting screws and the switch.



Passenger's Window Switch Replacement

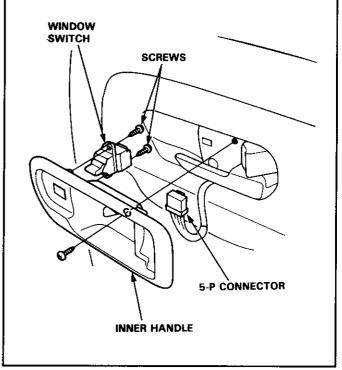
Front:

- 1. Remove the passenger's door panel (see section 20).
- 2. Disconnect the 5-P connector from the switch.
- 3. Remove the two mounting screws and the switch.



Rear (Sedan):

- 1. Remove the inner handle (see section 20).
- 2. Disconnect the 5-P connector from the switch.
- 3. Remove the two mounting screws and the switch.

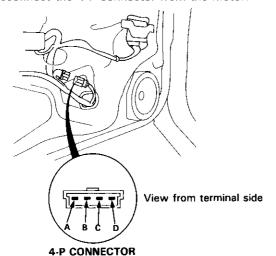


Power Windows

- Driver's Window Motor Test —

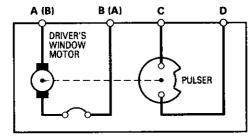
Motor Test:

- 1. Remove the driver's door panel (see section 20).
- 2. Disconnect the 4-P connector from the motor.



Test the motor in each direction by connecting battery power and ground according to the table.

| Terminal Direction | A (B) | B (A) |
|--------------------|----------|----------|
| UP | Θ | ⊕ |
| DOWN | ⊕ | Φ |



{ }: Sedan

CAUTION: When the motor stops running, disconnect one lead immediately.

 If the motor does not run or fails to run smoothly, replace it.

Pulser Test:

- Connect the test leads of an analog ohmmeter to the C and D terminals.
- 6. Run the motor by connecting power and ground to the A and B terminals.

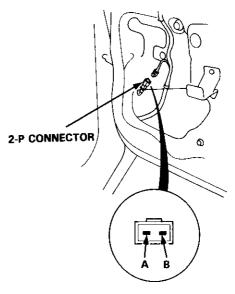
The ohmmeter needle should move back and forth alternately.

Passenger's Window Motor Test

- 1. Remove the passenger's door panel (see section 20).
- 2. Disconnect the 2-P connector from the motor.

NOTE:

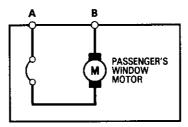
- Front passenger's door is symmetrical to driver's door.
- The illustration shows the right rear door, left rear door is symmetrical.



View from terminal side

3. Test the motor in each direction by connecting battery power and ground according to the table.

| Terminal Direction | В | Α |
|--------------------|----------|----------|
| UP | Θ | \oplus |
| DOWN | 0 | Θ |

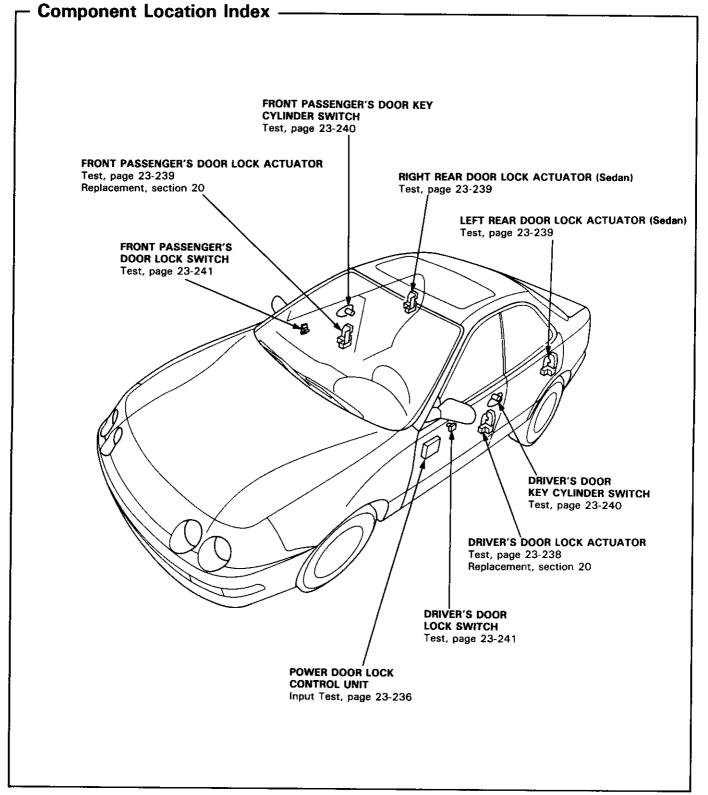


CAUTION: When the motor stops running, disconnect one lead immediately.

 If the motor does not run or fails to run smoothly, replace it.

Power Door Locks

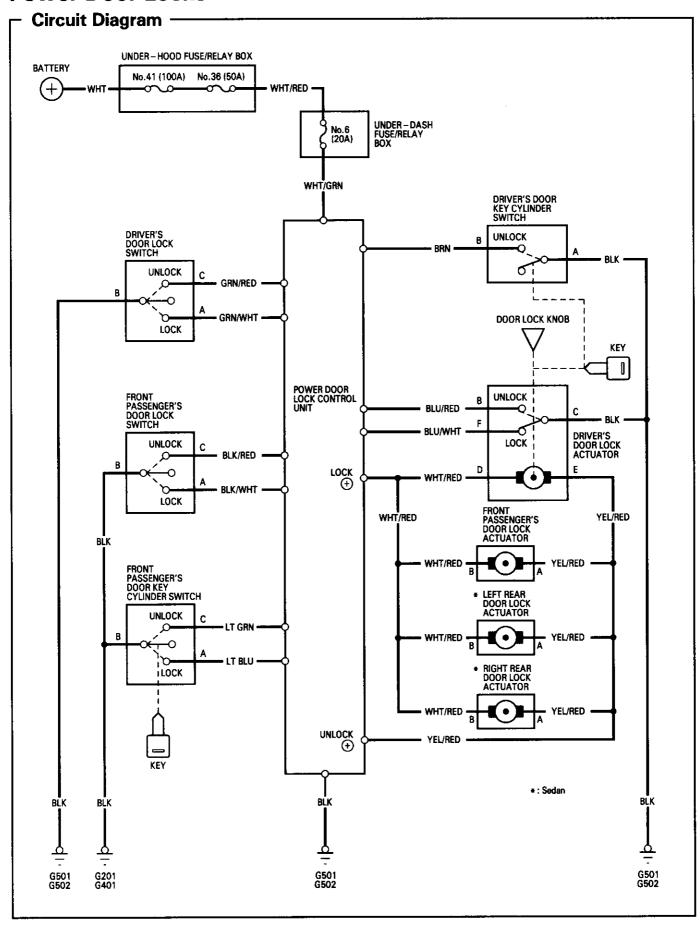




- Description -

For this model, a new door lock system has been adopted to improve convenience and safety. If the key is inserted into the driver's door key cylinder, turned to the unlock position, and pulled out immediately thereafter, ONLY the driver's door will unlock. However, if the key is kept in the unlock position for one second or more, ALL doors will unlock.

Power Door Locks





Troubleshooting -

NOTE: The numbers in the table show the troubleshooting sequence.

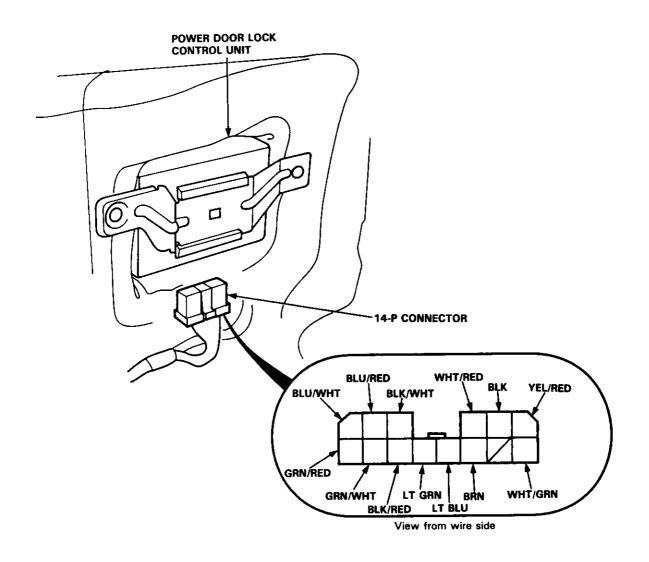
| Symptom | be inspected | Blown No. 6 (20 A) fuse (In the under-dash fuse/relay box) | Disconnected or obstructed door lock rod/linkage | Driver's door lock knob switch (In the door lock actuator) | Driver's door key cylinder switch | Front passenger's door key cylinder switch | Driver door lock actuator | Passenger's door lock actuator | Driver's door lock switch | Passenger's door lock switch | Control unit input | Poor ground | Open circuit, loose or disconnected terminals |
|--------------------------------------|-------------------|---|--|--|-----------------------------------|--|---------------------------|--------------------------------|---------------------------|------------------------------|--------------------|--------------|--|
| Power door lock syst operate at all. | em doesn't | 1 | | | | | | | | | 2 | G501 G502 | WHT/GRN |
| Doors don't lock or unlock with the | All doors | | | | | | | | 1 | | 2 | G501 G502 | GRN/RED or GRN/WHT |
| driver's door lock switch. | One or more doors | | 1 | | | | 2 | 3 | | | | | WHT/RED or YEL/RED |
| Doors don't lock or unlock with the | All doors | | | | | | | | | 1 | 2 | G201 G401 | BLK/RED or BLK/WHT |
| passenger's door lock switch. | One or more doors | | 1 | | | | 2 | 3 | | | | | WHT/RED or YEL/RED |
| Doors don't lock or unlock with the | All doors | | 1 | 2 | | | | | | | 3 | G501 G502 | BLU/RED or BLU/WHT |
| driver's door lock knob. | One or more doors | | 1 | | | | 2 | 3 | | | | | WHT/RED or YEL/RED |
| Door don't lock or unlock with the | All doors | | | | | 1 | | | | | 2 | G201 G401 | LT GRN or LT BLU |
| passenger's door key. | One or more doors | | 1 | | | | 2 | 3 | | | | | WHT/RED or YEL/RED |
| Doors don't unlock with the driver's | Driver's door | | 1 | | 2 | | 3 | | | | | G501 G502 | BRN, WHT/RED or YEL/RED |
| door key. | *All doors | | | | 1 | | | | | | 2 | G501 G502 | BRN, WHT/RED or YEL/RED |

^{*} If the system is working normally, all doors will unlock when you hold the door key in the unlock position (key cylinder switch and door lock knob switch turned ON) for one second or more.

Power Door Locks

Control Unit Input Test

- 1. Remove the driver's door panel (see section 20).
- 2. Disconnect the 14-P connector from the control unit.
- Inspect the connector and socket terminals to be sure they are all making good contact.
 - If the terminals are bent, loose or corroded, repair them as necessary, and recheck the system.
 - If the terminals look OK, make the following input tests at the connector.
 - If any test indicates a problem, find and correct the cause, then recheck the system.
 - If all the input tests prove OK, the control unit must be faulty; replace it.





Disconnect the 14-P connector from the power door lock control unit.

| No. | Wire | Test condition | Test: Desired result | Possible cause if result is not obtained |
|-----|---------|---|--|--|
| 1 | BLK | Under all conditions | Check for continuity to ground: There should be continuity. | Poor ground (G501, G502) An open in the wire |
| 2 | WHT/RED | Connect the YEL/RED terminal to the WHT/GRN terminal, and the WHT/RED terminal to the BLK terminal momentarily. | Check door lock operation: All doors should unlock. | Faulty actuator An open in the wire Blown No. 6 (20 A) fuse in the under-dash fuse/relay box |
| | YEL/RED | Connect the WHT/RED terminal to the WHT/GRN terminal, and the YEL/RED terminal to the BLK terminal momentarily. | Check door lock operation: All doors should lock. | |

Reconnect the 14-P connector to the power door lock control unit.

| No. | Wire | Test condition | Test: Desired result | Possible cause if result is not obtained |
|-----|---------|--|---|---|
| 3 | WHT/GRN | Under all conditions | Check for voltage to ground: There should be battery voltage. | Blown No. 6 (20 A) fuse in the under-dash fuse/relay box An open in the wire |
| 4 | GRN/WHT | RN/WHT Driver's door lock switch in LOCK Check for voltage to ground: There should be 1 V or less. | | Faulty driver's door lock switch Poor ground (G501, G502) |
| 4 | GRN/RED | Driver's door lock switch in UNLOCK | | An open in the wire |
| 5 | BLK/WHT | Right front door lock switch in LOCK | Check for voltage to ground: There should be 1 V or less. | Faulty front passenger's door lock switch |
| 9 | BLK/RED | Right front door lock switch in UNLOCK | | • Poor ground (G201, G401) • An open in the wire |
| 6 | BLU/WHT | Driver's door lock knob in LOCK | Check for voltage to ground: There should be 1 V or less. | Faulty driver's door lock actuator Poor ground (G501, G502) |
| ° | BLU/RED | Driver's door lock knob in UNLOCK | | An open in the wire |
| 7 | BRN | Driver's door key cylinder in UNLOCK | Check for voltage to ground: There should be 1 V or less as the switch is turned. | Faulty driver's door key cylinder switch Poor ground (G501, G502) An open in the wire |
| | LT BLU | Front passenger's door key cylinder in LOCK Check for voltage to ground: There should be 1 V or less as | | Faulty front passenger's door cylinder switch |
| 8 | LT GRN | Front passenger's door key cylinder in UNLOCK | the switch is turned. | Poor ground (G201, G401) An open in the wire |

CAUTION: To prevent damage to the motor, apply battery voltage only momentarily.

Power Door Locks

- Driver's Door Lock Actuator Test -

- 1. Remove the door panel (see section 20).
- 2. Disconnect the 6-P connector from the actuator.

View from terminal side

6-P CONNECTOR

Check actuator operation by connecting power and ground according to the table.

ACTUATOR

| Terminal Position | D | E |
|-------------------|----------|----------|
| LOCK | ⊕ | ⊖ |
| UNLOCK | Θ | ⊕ |

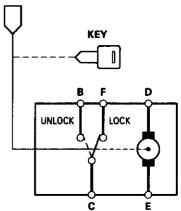
CAUTION: To prevent damage to the actuator, apply battery voltage only momentarily.

4. If the actuator fails to work properly, replace it.

5. Check for continuity between the terminals in each switch position according to the table.

| Terminal Position | F | С | 8 |
|-------------------|---|---|---|
| LOCK | 0 | 0 | |
| UNLOCK | | 0 | |

DOOR LOCK KNOB

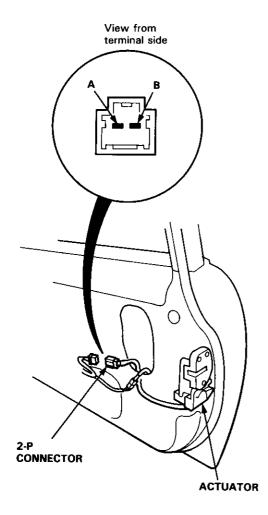




Passenger's Door Lock Actuator Test -

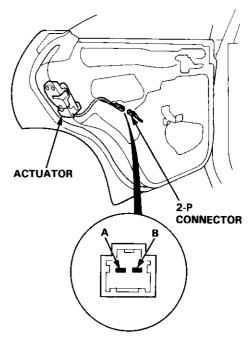
- 1. Remove the door panel (see section 20).
- 2. Disconnect the 2-P connector from the actuator.

Front Passenger's Door:



Rear Passenger's Door:

NOTE: Left rear actuator is shown, right rear actuator is similar.

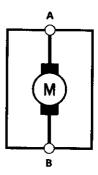


View from terminal side

3. Check actuator operation by connecting power and ground according to the table.

| Terminal Position | Α | В |
|-------------------|----------|----------|
| LOCK | Θ | \oplus |
| UNLOCK | \oplus | Θ |

CAUTION: To prevent damage to the actuator, apply battery voltage only momentarily.

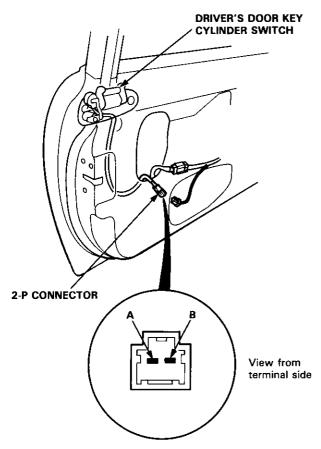


4. If the actuator fails to work properly, replace it.

Power Door Locks

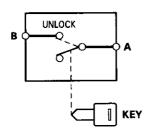
Driver's Door Key Cylinder -Switch Test

- 1. Remove the door panel (see section 20).
- 2. Disconnect the 2-P connector from the switch.



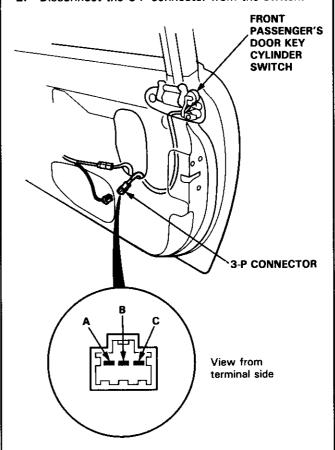
3. Check for continuity between the terminals in each switch position according to the table.

| Terminal Position | Α | В |
|-------------------|---|---|
| UNLOCK | 0 | 0 |
| OFF | | |



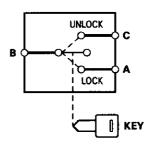
Front Passenger's Door Key Cylinder-Switch Test

- 1. Remove the door panel (see section 20).
- 2. Disconnect the 3-P connector from the switch.



3. Check for continuity between the terminals in each switch position according to the table.

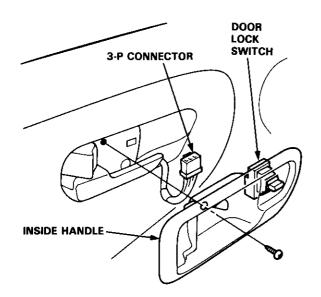
| Terminal Position | A | В | С |
|-------------------|---|---|------------|
| LOCK | 0 | 9 | |
| OFF | | | |
| UNLOCK | | 0 | \bigcirc |





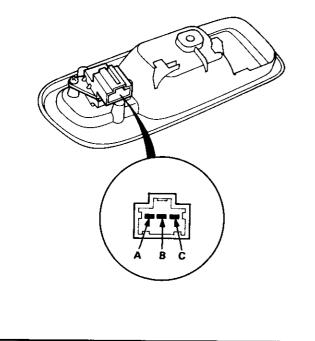
Door Lock Switch Test -

1. Remove the inside handle.



- 2. Disconnect the 3-P connector from the switch.
- 3. Check for continuity between the terminals in each switch position according to the table.

| Terminal Position | A | В | С |
|-------------------|---|--------------|---|
| LOCK | 0 | - | |
| OFF | | | |
| UNLOCK | | 0 | |

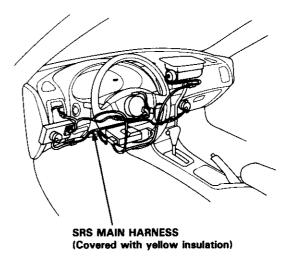


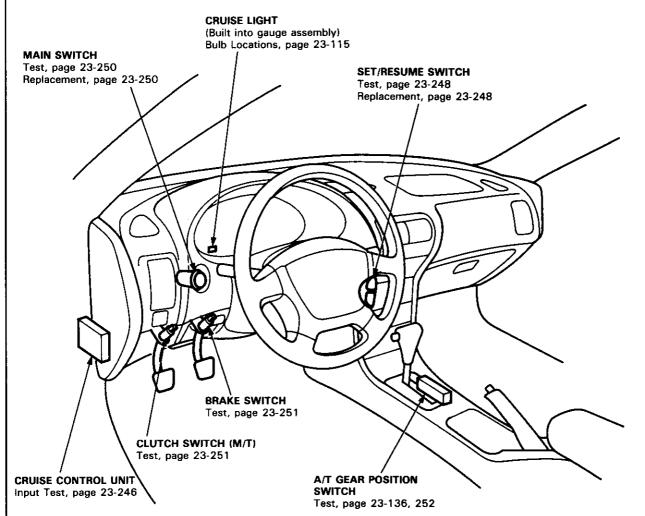
Cruise Control

- Component Location Index

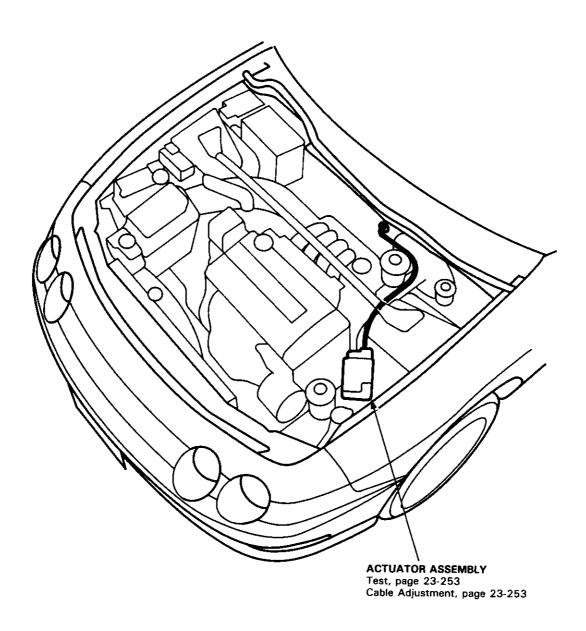
CAUTION:

- All SRS electrical wiring harnesses are covered with yellow insulation.
- Before disconnecting any part of the SRS wire harness, connect the short connector(s).
- Replace the entire affected SRS harness assembly if it has an open circuit or damaged wiring.

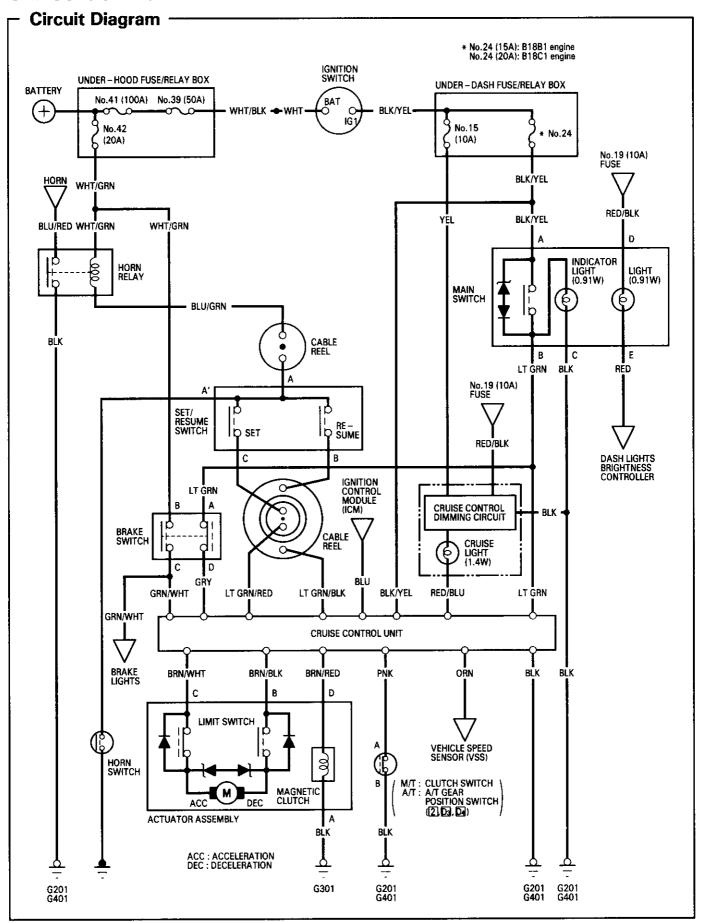








Cruise Control





Troubleshooting -

NOTE:

- The numbers in the table show the troubleshooting sequence.
- Before troubleshooting,
 - check the No.15 (10 A) and *No. 24 fuses in the under-dash fuse/relay box, and the No.41 (100 A), No.39 (50 A), and No.42 (20 A) fuses in the under-hood fuse/relay box.
 - check that the horn sounds.
 - check the tachometer to see if it works properly.

*No. 24 (15 A): B18B1 engine No. 24 (20 A): B18C1 engine

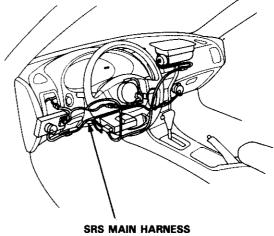
| Item to be inspected Symptom | Main switch | SET/RESUME switch | Brake switch and mounting | Clutch switch and mounting (M/T) | A/T gear position switch (A/T) | Vehicle speed sensor (VSS) | Dimming circuit in gauges | Actuator and cable deflection | Control unit | Poor ground | Open circuit, loose or disconnected terminals |
|---|-------------|-------------------|---------------------------|----------------------------------|--------------------------------|----------------------------|---------------------------|-------------------------------|--------------|------------------------|--|
| Cruise control cannot be set. | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 1 | | | | 5 | G301, G201, G401 | BLU/GRN, LT GRN/RED, BLU, BLK/YEL, LT GRN, GRY, ORN, BRN/WHT, BRN/BLK, BRN/RED or PNK |
| Cruise control can be set, but indicator light does not go on. | | | | | | | 1 | | 2 | G201, G401 | YEL or RED/BLU |
| Cruise speed is noticeably higher or lower than what was set. | | | | | | 2 | | 1 | 3 | | |
| Excessive overshooting or undershooting when trying to set speed | | | | | | 2 | | 1 | 3 | | |
| Steady speed is not held even on a flat road with cruise control set. | | | | | | 1 | | 2 | 3 | | |
| Car does not decelerate or accelerate accordingly when SET or RESUME button is pushed. | | 1 | · | | | | | | 2 | | LT GRN/BLK LT GRN/RED |
| Set speed is not cancelled when clutch pedal is pushed (M/T). | | | | 1 | | | | | 2 | | |
| Set speed is not cancelled when shift lever is moved to N (A/T). | | | | | 1 | | | | 2 | | |
| Set speed is not cancelled when brake pedal is pushed. | | | 1 | | | | | | 2 | | |
| Set speed is not cancelled when main switch is pushed OFF. | 1 | | | | | | | | 2 | | |
| Set speed is not resumed when RESUME button is pushed (with main switch on, but set speed temporarily cancelled). | | 1 | | | | | | | 2 | | LT GRN/BLK LT GRN/RED |

Cruise Control

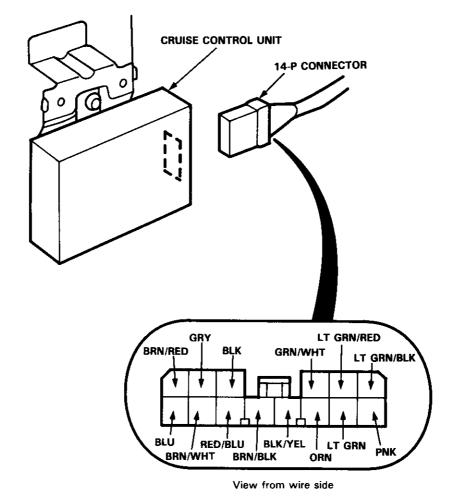
- Control Unit Input Test

CAUTION:

- All SRS electrical wiring harnesses are covered with yellow insulation.
- Before disconnecting any part of the SRS wire harness, connect the short connector(s).
- Replace the entire affected SRS harness assembly if it has an open circuit or damaged wiring.
- Remove the dashboard lower cover and knee bolster (see page 23-70).
- 2. Disconnect the 14-P connector from the control unit.
- Inspect the connector and socket terminals to be sure they are all making good contact.
 - If the terminals are bent, loose or corroded, repair them as necessary, and recheck the system.
 - If the terminals look OK, make the following input tests at the connector.
 - If any test indicates a problem, find and correct the cause, then recheck the system.
 - If all the input tests prove OK, the control unit must be faulty; replace it.



SRS MAIN HARNESS (Covered with yellow insulation)





| No. | Wire | Test condition | Test: Desired result | Possible cause if result is not obtained |
|-----|----------------|--|---|--|
| 1 | BLK | Under all conditions | Check for continuity to ground: There should be continuity. | Poor ground (G201, G401) An open in the wire |
| 2 | BLK/YEL | Ignition switch ON (II) | Check for voltage to ground: There should be battery voltage. | Blown *No. 24 fuse in the under- dash fuse/relay box An open in the wire |
| 3 | LT GRN | Ignition switch ON (II) and main switch ON | Check for voltage to ground: There should be battery voltage. | Faulty main switch An open in the wire |
| 4 | GRY | Ignition switch ON (II), main switch ON and brake pedal pushed, then released | Check for voltage to ground: There should be 0 V with the pedal pushed and battery voltage with the pedal released. | Faulty brake switch An open in the wire |
| 5 | GRN/WHT | Brake pedal pushed, then released | Check for voltage to ground: There should be battery voltage with the pedal pushed, and 0 V with the pedal released. | Blown No. 42 (20 A) fuse in the under-hood fuse/relay box Faulty brake switch An open in the wire |
| 6 | RED/BLU | Ignition switch ON (II) | Connect to ground: Indicator light in the gauge assembly comes on. | Blown bulb Blown No. 15 (10 A) fuse in the under-dash fuse/relay box Faulty dimming circuit in the gauge assembly An open in the wire |
| 7 | LT GRN/ BLK | RESUME button pushed | Check for voltage to ground: There should be battery voltage. | Faulty SET/RESUME switch Faulty cable reel |
| 8 | LT GRN/ RED | SET button pushed | , | An open in the wire |
| 9 | PNK | MT/: Clutch pedal released A/T: Shift lever in 2, D ₃ , or D ₄ | Check for continuity to ground: There should be continuity. NOTE: There should be no continuity when the clutch pedal is depressed or when the shift lever is in other positions. | Faulty or misadjusted clutch switch (M/T) Faulty A/T gear position switch (A/T) Poor ground (G201,G401) An open in the wire |
| 10 | BLU | Start the engine. | Check for voltage to ground: There should be battery voltage. | Faulty ignition system or ECM An open in the wire |
| 11 | ORN | Ignition switch ON (II) and main switch ON; raise the front of the car, rotate one wheel slowly. | Check for voltage between the ORN ⊕ and BLK ⊖ terminals: There should be 0— about 10 V—0— about 10 V repeatedly. | Faulty vehicle speed sensor (VSS) An open in the wire |
| 12 | BRN/WHT | Connect battery power to the BRN/WHT | Check the sound of the actuator motor: You should hear the mo- | Faulty actuator An open in the wire |
| 13 | BRN/BLK | terminal and ground to the BRN/BLK terminal. | tor running smoothly. | The open in the tries |
| 14 | BRN/RED | Connect battery power to the BRN/RED terminal. | Check the operation of the magnetic clutch: Clutch should click and output link should be locked. | Faulty actuator An open in the wire Poor ground (G301) |

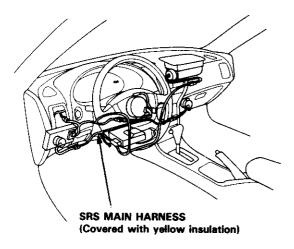
*No. 24 (15 A): B18B1 engine No. 24 (20 A): B18C1 engine

Cruise Control

- Set/Resume Switch Test/Replacement

CAUTION:

- All SRS electrical wiring harnesses are covered with yellow insulation.
- Before disconnecting any part of the SRS wire harness, connect the short connector(s).
- Replace the entire affected SRS harness assembly if it has an open circuit or damaged wiring.

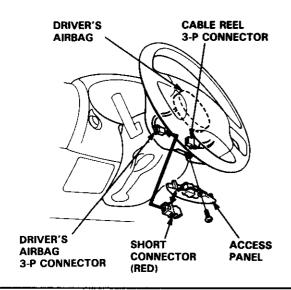


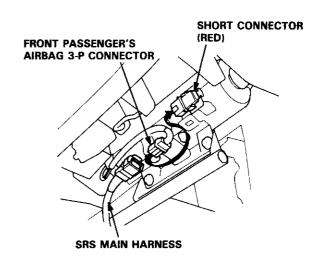
NOTE: The original radio has a coded theft protection circuit. Be sure to get the customer's code number before

- disconnecting the battery.
- removing the No. 32 (7.5 A) fuse from the under-hood fuse/relay box.
- removing the radio.

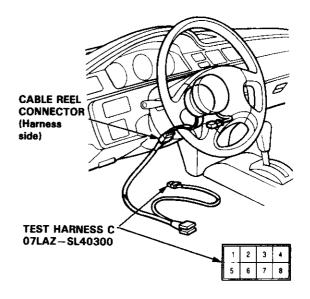
After service, reconnect power to the radio and turn it on. When the word "CODE" is displayed, enter the customer's 5-digit code to restore radio operation.

- Disconnect the battery negative cable, then disconnect the positive cable.
- 2. Connect the short connector(s) to the airbag(s).





- Remove the dashboard lower cover and knee bolster (see page 23-70).
- Disconnect the cable reel harness 6-P connector from the SRS main harness, then connect Test Harness C only to the cable reel side of 6-P connector.

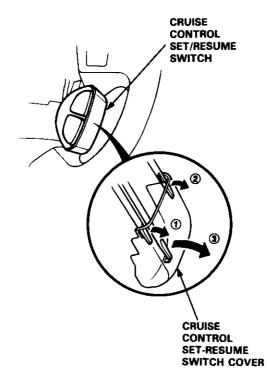




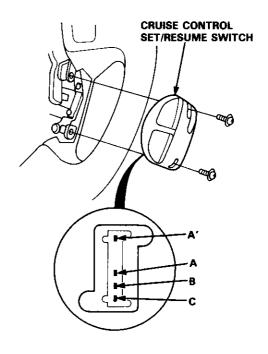
 Check for continuity between the terminals of Test Harness C in each switch position according to the table.

| Terminal Position | 3 | 2 | 1 |
|-------------------|---|---|---|
| SET (ON) | 0 | | |
| RESUME (ON) | 0 | | 0 |

- If there is continuity, the switch is OK.
- If there is no continuity, go to step 6.
- 6. Remove the cover carefully by prying between the cover and the switch in the sequence shown.



7. Remove the two screws and remove the switch.



8. Check for continuity between the terminals in each switch position according to the table.

| Terminal Position | A | A' | В | С |
|-------------------|----------|----------|----------|---|
| OFF | 0 | $-\circ$ | | |
| SET (ON) | 0- | $-\circ$ | | |
| RESUME (ON) | <u> </u> | -0- | $-\circ$ | |

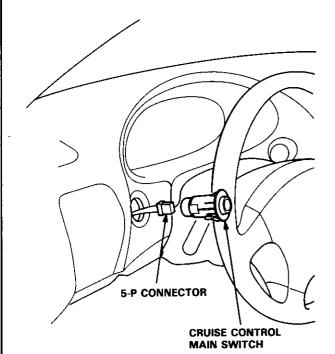
- If there is no continuity in any position, replace the switch.
- If there is continuity in every position, replace the cable reel (see page 23-302).

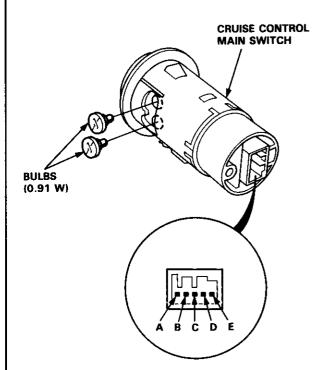
Cruise Control

- Main Switch Test/Replacement

NOTE: Be careful not to damage the switch and the instrument panel.

- Remove the instrument panel from the dashboard (see page 23-118).
- Remove the switch from the dashboard, then disconnect the 5-P connector.

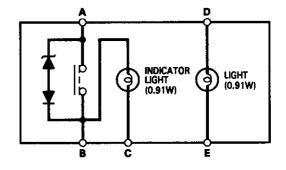




3. Check for continuity between the terminals in each switch position according to the table.

| Terminal Position | A | В | | С | D | | Ē |
|-------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| OFF | | þ | 0 | 9 | Q | 0 | 9 |
| ON | P | þ | 0 | 9 | d | 0 | 9 |

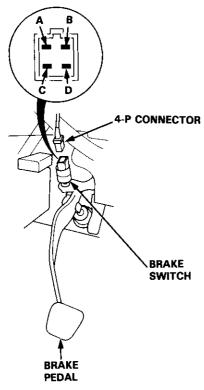
 If there is no continuity in any position, replace the switch.





Brake Switch Test ————

1. Disconnect the 4-P connector from the switch.



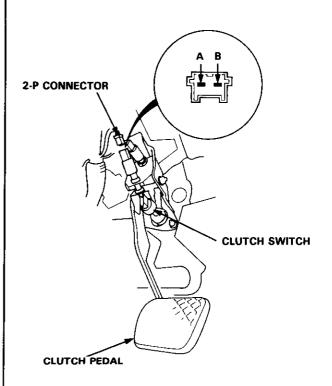
2. Check for continuity between the terminals according to the table.

| Terminal Brake pedal | A | В | С | D |
|----------------------|------------|------------|---|---|
| RELEASED | \bigcirc | | | 9 |
| PUSHED | | \bigcirc | 9 | |

3. If necessary, replace the switch or adjust pedal height (see section 19).

-- Clutch Switch Test (M/T)

1. Disconnect the 2-P connector from the switch.



2. Check for continuity between the terminals according to the table.

| Terminal Clutch pedal | A | В |
|-----------------------|----------|---|
| RELEASED | <u> </u> | 0 |
| PUSHED | | |

3. If necessary, replace the switch or adjust pedal height (see section 12).

Cruise Control

A/T Gear Position Switch Test -

- 1. Remove the center console, then disconnect the 14-P connector from the switch.
- 2. Check for continuity between the terminals in each switch position according to the table.

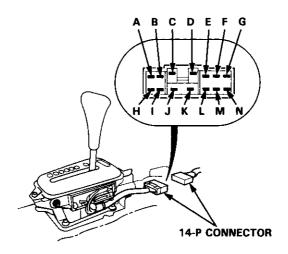
NOTE:

- Move the lever back and forth at each position without touching the button, and check for continuity within the range of free play of the shift lever.
- If there is no continuity within the range of free play, adjust the installation position of the switch.

A/T Gear Position Switch (For cruise control)

| Terminal Position | A | 1 |
|-------------------|----------|----|
| 1 | | |
| 2 | 0 | 0 |
| D 3 | O | -0 |
| D4 | O | O |
| N | | |
| R | | |
| Р | | |

View from terminal side

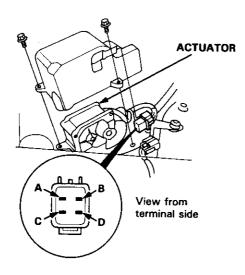


3. If necessary, replace the switch (see section 13).



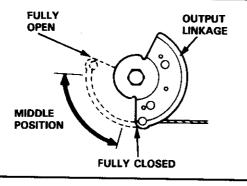
Actuator Assembly Test

- Disconnect the 4-P connector from the actuator.
- 2. Check that the output linkage moves smoothly.
- Connect battery power to the D terminal and ground to the A terminal.



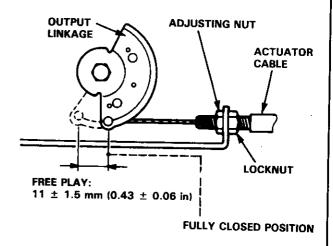
- Check for a clicking sound from the magnetic clutch, and that the output linkage is locked. If the output linkage is not locked, replace the actuator assembly.
- Check the operation of the actuator motor in each output linkage position according to the table (you should be able to hear the motor).

| | tery rities | Output linkage position | | | | |
|---------------|----------------|-------------------------|-----------------------|------------------|--|--|
| 0 | Θ | FULLY CLOSED | FULLY OPEN | | | |
| C Terminal | B Terminal | The motor runs. | The motor runs. | The motor stops. | | |
| B Terminal | C Terminal | The motor stops. | The motor runs. | The motor runs. | | |



─ Actuator Cable Adjustment

- 1. Check that the actuator cable operates smoothly without binding or sticking.
- 2. Start the engine and warm it up to normal operating temperature (radiator fans come on twice).
- 3. Measure how far the output linkage moves from the fully closed position. Free play should be 11 ± 1.5 mm (0.43 \pm 0.06 in).

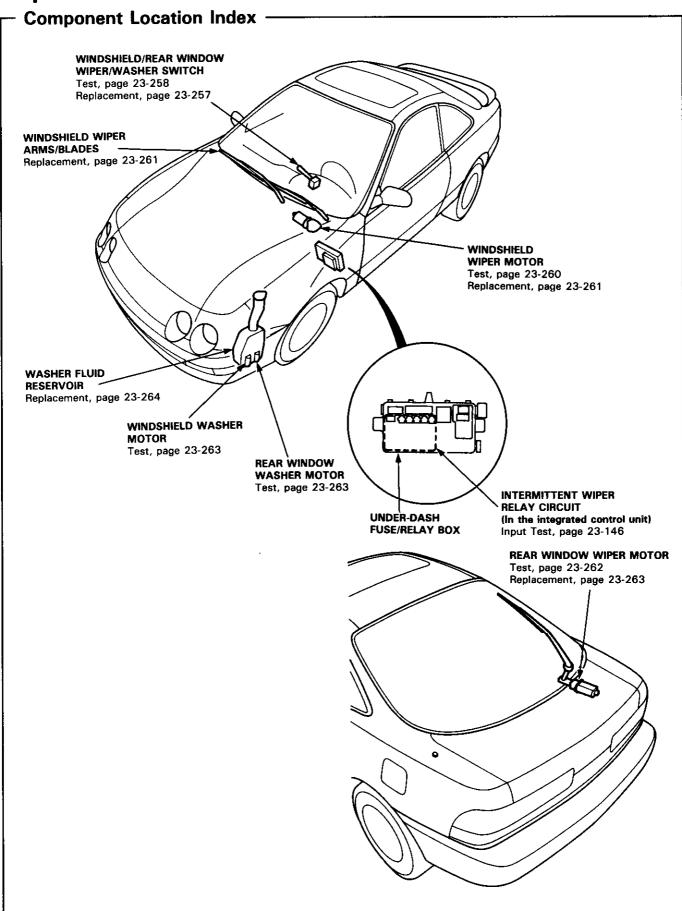


4. If the free play is not within specs, loosen the locknut and turn the adjusting nut as required.

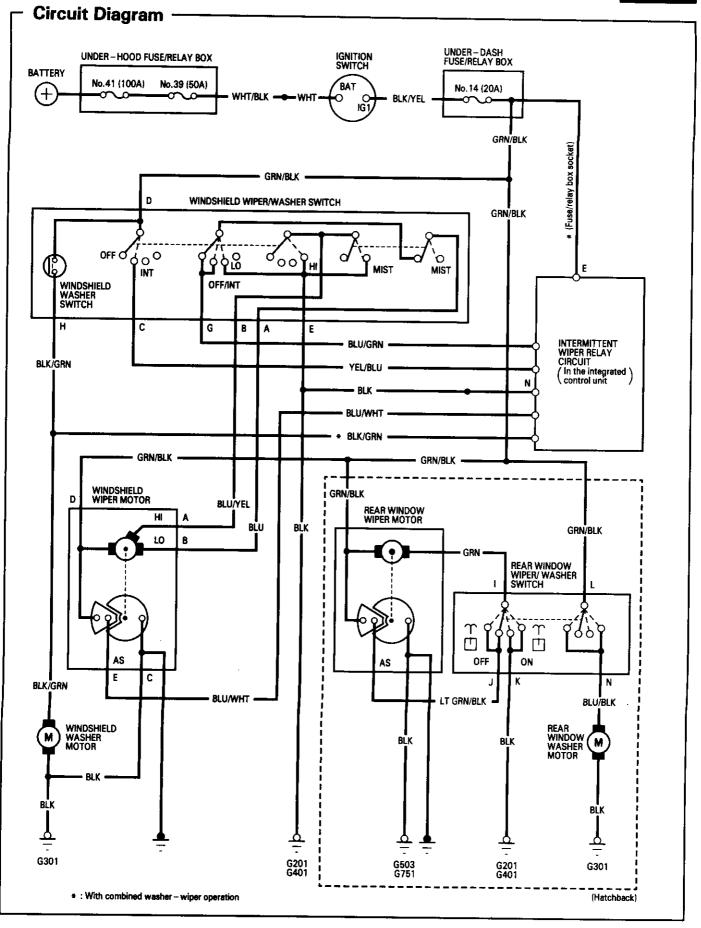
NOTE: If necessary, check the throttle control system (see section 11), then recheck the output linkage free play.

5. Retighten the locknut and recheck the free play.

Wipers/Washers







Wipers/Washers

Troubleshooting -

NOTE: The numbers in the table show the troubleshooting sequence.

| Item to b | e inspected | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|--|-----------------------------|---|--------------|-------------|---------------|--------------|---|--------------------------------------|---|-----------------------------|--|------------------------|--|
| Symptom | | Blown No. 14 (20 A) fuse (In the under-dash fuse/relay box) | Wiper switch | Wiper motor | Washer switch | Washer motor | Intermittent wiper relay circuit (In the integrated control unit) | Not enough washer fluid in reservoir | Disconnected, blocked washer hose or clogged outlet | Disconnected wiper linkages | *Combined operation of wiper/washer (In the integrated control unit) | Poor ground | Open circuit, loose or disconnected terminals |
| Wipers do not work. | In all positions | 1 | 4 | 2 | | | | | | 3 | | G201, G301, G401 | GRN/BLK |
| | In INT | | 1 | 3 | | | 2 | | | | | | YEL/BLU, BLU/GRN |
| | In LO or HI | <u> </u> | 1 | 2 | | <u> </u> | | | | | | | BLU, BLU/YEL |
|] | In MIST | | 1 | 2 | | | | | | | | | BLU/YEL |
| Rear window | | 1 | 3 | 2 | | | | | | | | G503, G751 | GRN/BLK, GRN LT GRN/BLK |
| Blades do no park position switch is tur | when the | | 2 | 1 | | | | | | | | | BLU/WHT, LT GRN/BLK |
| Intermittent erratic or wi work intermi | pers do not | | 1 | | | | 2 | | | | | | YEL/BLU, BLU/GRN |
| Little or no v | washer fluid | | | | 4 | 3 | | 1 | 2 | | | G301 | BLK/GRN, BLU/BLK |
| Wiper and w work at the | vasher do not same time. | | | 3 | | 2 | | | | | 1 | | BLK/GRN |

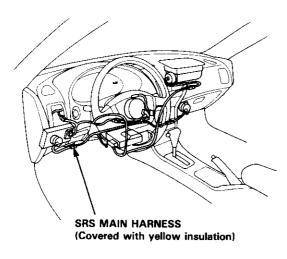
^{*:} Canada



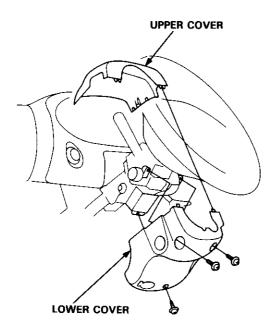
Wipers/Washers Switch Replacement -

CAUTION:

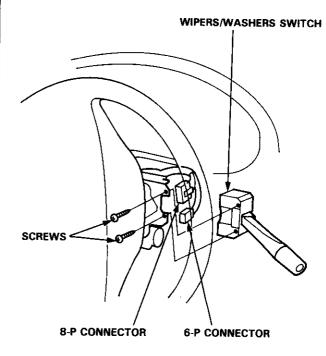
- All SRS electrical wiring harnesses are covered with yellow insulation.
- Before disconnecting the SRS wire harness, install the short connector(s).
- Replace the entire affected SRS harness assembly if it has an open circuit or damaged wiring.



1. Remove the steering column covers.



- 2. Disconnect the 8-P and 6-P connectors from the switch.
- 3. Remove the two screws and the switch.



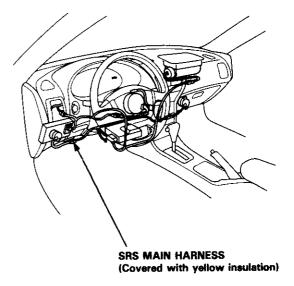
4. Install in the reverse order of removal.

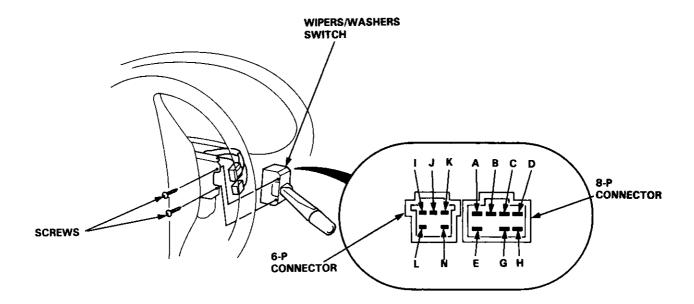
Wipers/Washers

-Wipers/Washers Switch Test

CAUTION:

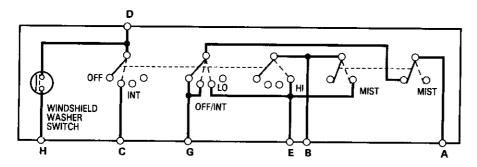
- All SRS electrical wiring harnesses are covered with yellow insulation.
- Before disconnecting any part of the SRS wire harness, connect the short connector(s).
- Replace the entire affected SRS harness assembly if it has an open circuit or damaged wiring.
- 1. Remove the steering column covers.
- Disconnect the 8-P and 6-P connectors from the switch.
- 3. If necessary, remove the two screws and the switch.
- Check for continuity between the terminals in each switch position according to the table.





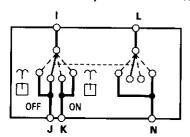


Windshield Wiper/Washer Switch



| Terminal Position | A | В | С | D | E | G | Н |
|--------------------|----------|---|----|----|----|---|-------|
| OFF | 0 | | | | | 0 | |
| INT | <u> </u> | | 0— | -0 | | | |
| LO | 0 | | | | -0 | | ,,,,, |
| н | | | | | 0 | | |
| Mist switch "ON" | | 0 | | | 0 | | |
| Washer switch "ON" | | | | 0 | | | |

Rear Window Wiper/Washer Switch



| Terminal Position | 1 | J | К | L | N |
|--------------------------------------|---|---|----------------|----|----|
| Washer switch "ON" | | 0 | | 0 | -0 |
| OFF | 0 | 0 | | - | |
| ON | 0 | | 0 | - | |
| Washer switch "ON" (with wiper "ON") | 0 | | - 0 | 0- | 0 |

· 非科斯斯斯 (4) 4:

Wipers/Washers

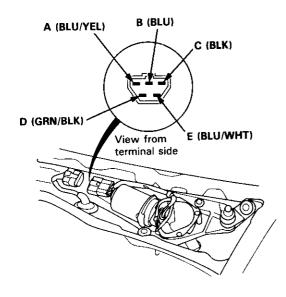
- Windshield Wiper Motor Test

1. Open the hood and remove the cap nuts and the wiper arms (see page 23-261).

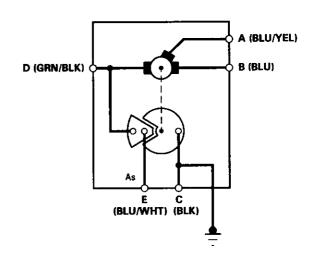
NOTE: Remove the wiper arms carefully without damaging the hood.

- Remove the hood seal and air scoop by prying out their trim clips.
- 3. Disconnect the 5-P connector from the windshield wiper motor.
- 4. Test the motor by connecting battery power and ground according to the table.

| Terminal Position | D (GRN/BLK) | B (BLU) | A (BLU/YEL) |
|-------------------|----------------|------------|----------------|
| LOW SPEED | ⊕ | θ | |
| HIGH SPEED | 0 | | Θ |



If the motor does not run or fails to run smoothly, replace it.



- 6. Reconnect the 5-P connector to the wiper motor assembly.
- Connect an analog voltmeter between the E (BLU/WHT) and the C (BLK) terminals. Run the motor by turning the wiper switch ON (LO or HI position).

The voltmeter should alternately indicate 0 V and more than 4 V.

NOTE: Use an analog tester.

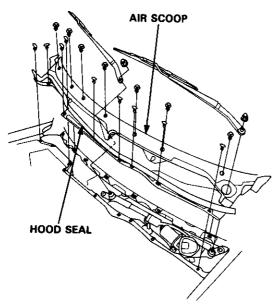


Windshield Wiper Motor Replacement —

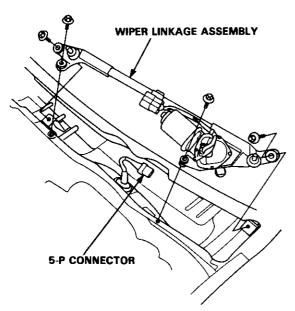
 Open the hood and remove the cap nuts and wiper arms.

NOTE: Remove the wiper arms carefully without damaging the hood.

2. Remove the hood seal and air scoop by prying out their trim clips.

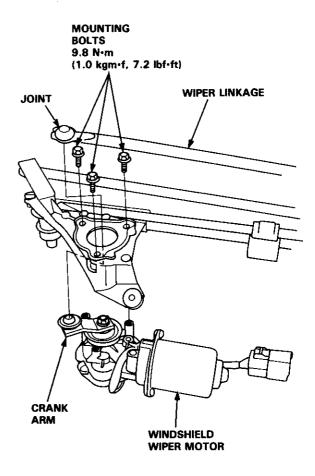


3. Disconnect the 5-P connector from the windshield wiper motor.



- 4. Remove the four mounting bolts and wiper linkage assembly.
- 5. Remove the wiper harness from the wiper linkage.

- 6. Separate the wiper linkage and crank arm at the joint.
- 7. Remove the three mounting bolts and wiper motor.

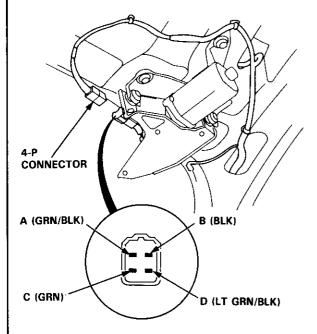


8. Install in the reverse order of removal.

Wipers/Washers

Rear Window Wiper Motor Test

1. Disconnect the 4-P connector from the wiper motor.



View from terminal side

- 2. Test the motor by connecting battery power to the A (GRN/BLK) and ground to the C (GRN) terminals. The motor should run smoothly.
 - C (GRN)

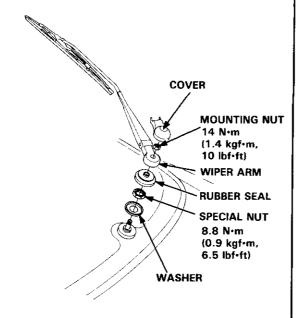
- 3. If the motor does not run or fails to run smoothly, replace it.
- Reconnect the 4-P connector to the wiper motor assembly.
- Connect an analog voltmeter between the D (LT GRN/BLK) and B (BLK) terminals. Run the motor by turning the wiper switch ON.
 The voltmeter should alternately indicate 0 V and more than 4 V.

NOTE: Use an analog tester.

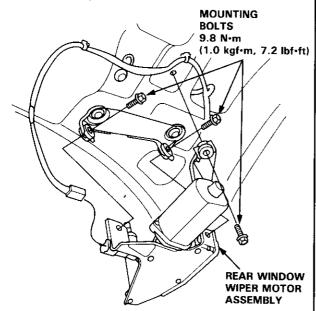


Rear Window Wiper Motor - Replacement

- 1. Remove the cover, mounting nut, and wiper arm.
- 2. Remove the rubber seal, special nut, and washer.



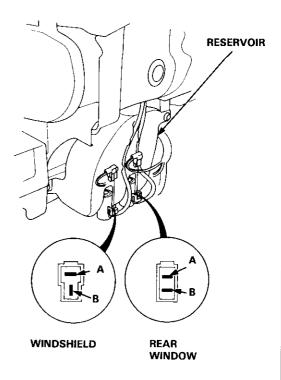
- 3. Open the tailgate and remove the tailgate trim panels (see section 20).
- 4. Disconnect the 4-P connector from the wiper motor.
- Remove the three mounting bolts and the wiper motor assembly.



6. Install in the reverse order of removal.

Washer Motor Test

- 1. Remove the front bumper (see section 20).
- Disconnect the 2-P connector from the washer motor.



- Test the motor by connecting battery power to the A (+) terminal and ground to the B (-) terminal.
 - If the motor does not run or fails to run smoothly, replace it.
 - If the motor runs smoothly, but little or no washer fluid is pumped, check for a disconnected or blocked washer hose, or a clogged pump outlet in the motor.

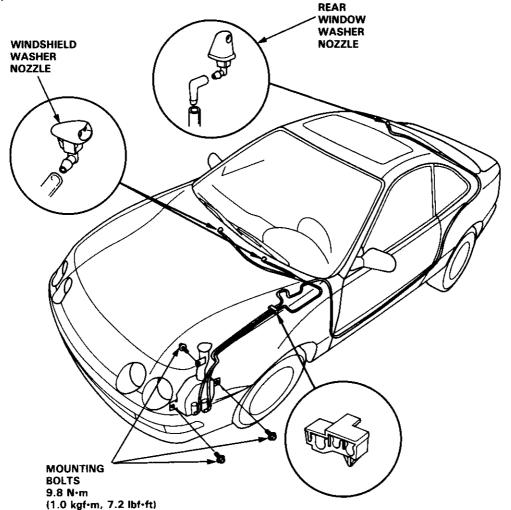
Wipers/Washers

- Washer Replacement

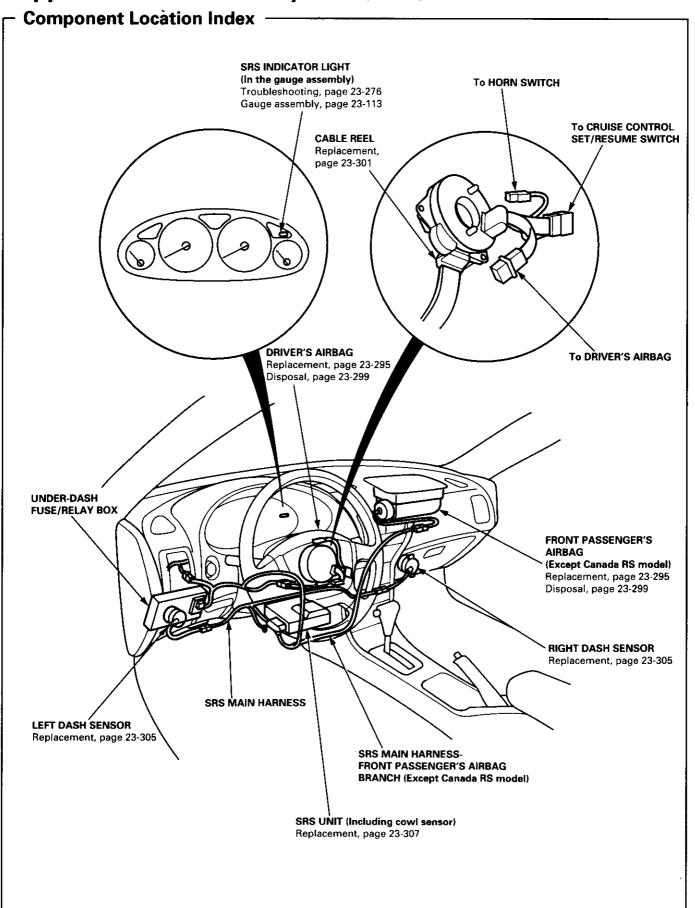
- 1. Remove the front bumper (see section 20).
- 2. Remove the left front inner fender.
- Disconnect the 2-P connector and hose from the washer motor.
- 4. Remove the three mounting bolts and the washer reservoir.
- 5. Remove the washer motor from the reservoir.
- Remove the windshield wiper arms and air scoop (see page 23-261). Then remove the washer nozzles and hoses.
- 7. Install in the reverse order of removal.

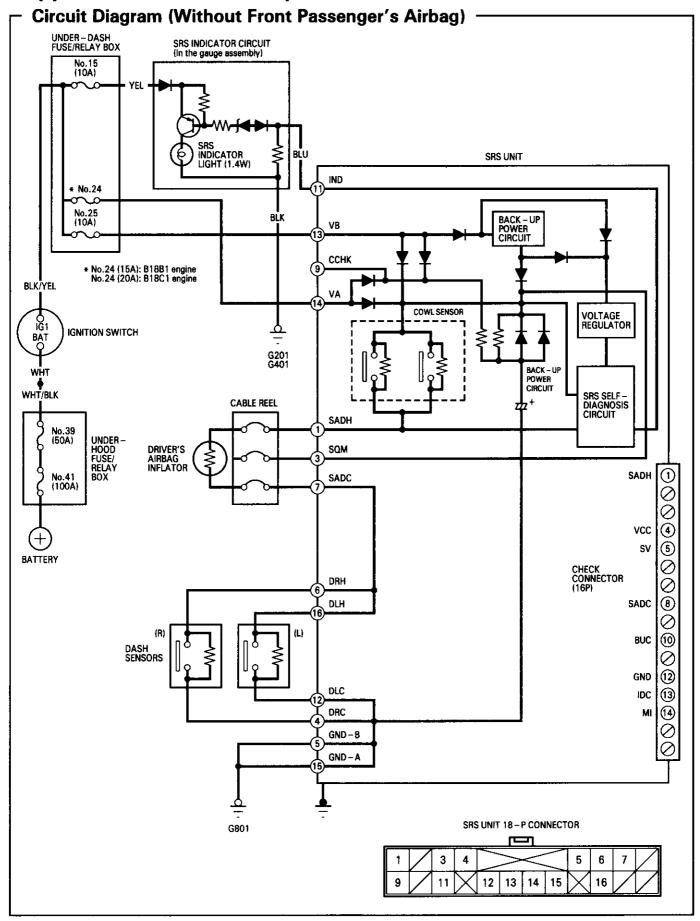
NOTE:

- Take care not to pinch the hoses during installation.
- Install the clips firmly.
- After installing, adjust the aim of the washer nozzles.

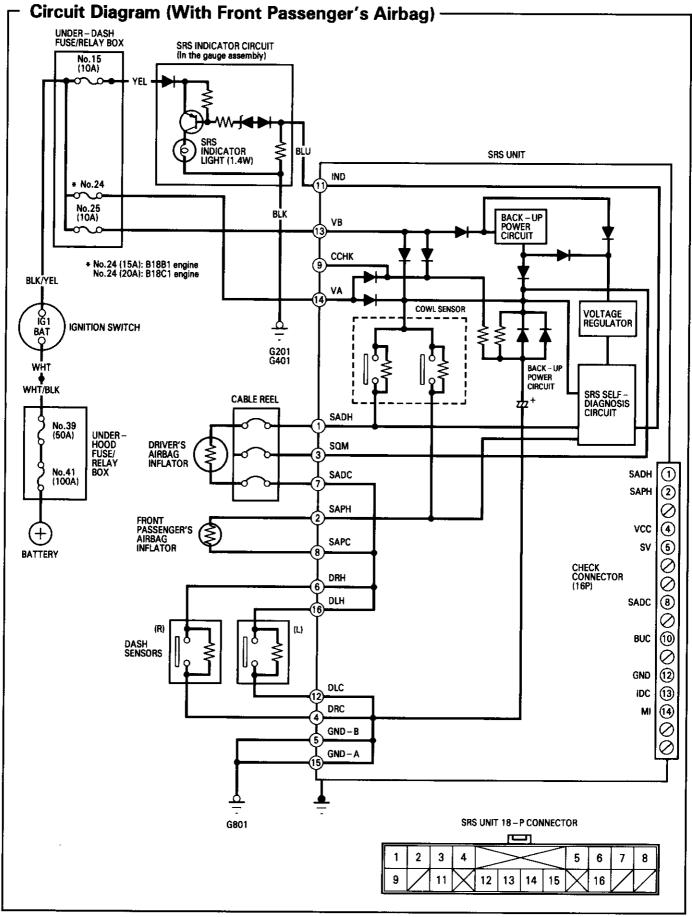


| Component Location Index | 23-266 |
|--------------------------|--------|
| Description | 23-267 |
| Circuit Diagram | 23-268 |
| Wiring Locations | 23-270 |
| Precautions/Procedures | 23-271 |
| Troubleshooting | 23-276 |
| Airbag Assembly | |
| Replacement | 23-295 |
| Disposal | 23-299 |
| Cable Reel | |
| Replacement | 23-301 |
| Dash Sensor | |
| Replacement | 23-305 |
| SRS Unit | |
| Replacement | 23-307 |







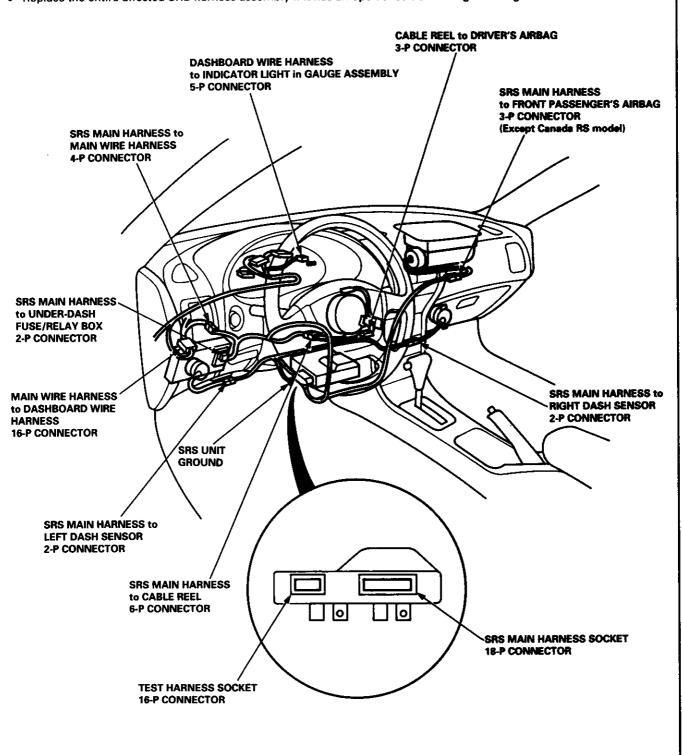


Wiring Locations

CAUTION: Make sure all SRS ground locations are clean and grounds are securely attached.

NOTE:

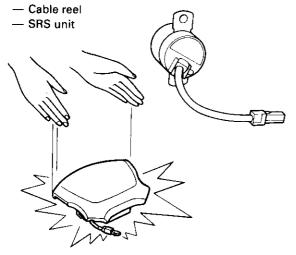
- All SRS electrical wiring harnesses are covered with yellow insulation.
- Replace the entire affected SRS harness assembly if it has an open circuit or damaged wiring.





General Precautions

- Carefully inspect any SRS part before you install it.
 Do not install any part that shows signs of being dropped or improperly handled, such as dents, cracks or deformation:
 - Airbag assembly (driver's and front passenger's)
 - Dash sensors



- Use only a digital multimeter to check the system. If it's not a Honda multimeter make sure its output is 10 mA (0.01 A) or less when switched to the smallest value in the ohmmeter range. A tester with a higher output could damage the airbag circuit or cause accidental deployment and possible injury.
- Do not install used SRS parts from another car. When making SRS repairs, use only new parts.
- Except when performing electrical inspections, always disconnect both the negative cable and positive cable at the battery before beginning work.
- Replacement of the combination light and wiper/washer switches and cruise control switch can be done without removing the steering wheel:
 - Combination light and wiper/washer switch replacement (see page 23-160).
 - Cruise control set/resume switch replacement (see page 23-249).
- The original radio has a coded theft protection circuit.
 Be sure to get the customer's code number before disconnecting the battery.
- When reinstalling the SRS unit cover, be sure it snaps together properly.

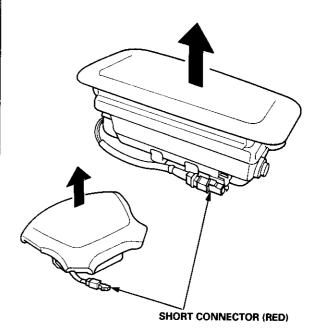
Airbag Handling and Storage

Do not try to disassemble the airbag assembly. It has no serviceable parts. Once an airbag has been operated (deployed), it cannot be repaired or reused.

For temporary storage of the airbag assembly during service, please observe the following precautions:

Store the removed airbag assembly with the pad surface up.

A WARNING If the airbag is improperly stored face down, accidental deployment could propel the unit with enough force to cause serious injury.



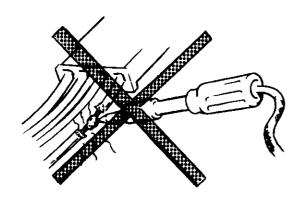
 Store the removed airbag assembly on a secure flat surface away from any high heat source (exceeding 212°F/100°C) and free of any oil, grease, detergent or water.

CAUTION: Improper handling or storage can internally damage the airbag assembly, making it inoperative. If you suspect the airbag assembly has been damaged, install a new unit and refer to the Deployment/Disposal Procedures for disposing of the damaged airbag.

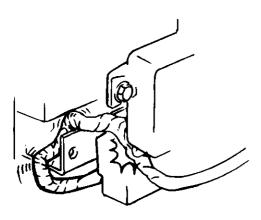
- Wiring Precautions

• Never attempt to modify, splice or repair SRS wiring.

NOTE: All SRS electrical wiring harnesses are covered with yellow insulation.



 Be sure to install the harness wires so that they are not pinched or interfering with other car parts.



 Make sure all SRS ground locations are clean and grounds are securely fastened for optimum metal-tometal contact. Poor grounding can cause intermittent problems that are difficult to diagnose.

Connecting the Short Connectors

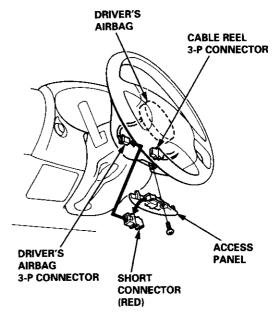
AWARNING
To avoid accidental deployment and possible injury, always install the protective short connector(s) on the driver's and passenger's airbag connector(s) before working near any SRS wiring.

NOTE: The original radio has a coded theft protection circuit. Be sure to get the customer's code number before disconnecting the battery cables.

- Disconnect the battery negative cable, then disconnect the positive cable.
- Connect the short connector(s) (RED):

Driver's Side:

 Remove the access panel from the steering wheel, then remove the short connector (RED) from the panel.

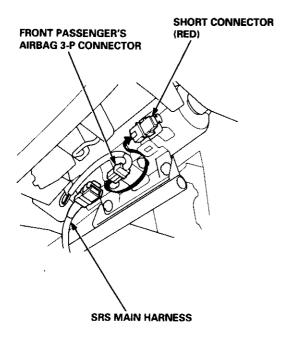


 Disconnect the 3-P connector between the driver's airbag and cable reel, then connect the short connector (RED) to the airbag side of the connector.



Front Passenger's Side:

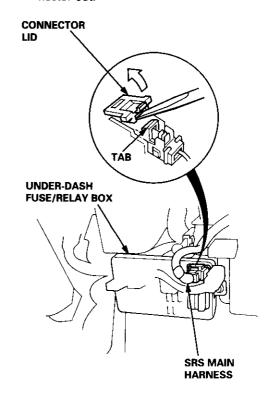
- Remove the glove box damper (see section 20), and then remove the glove box.
- Disconnect the 3-P connector between the front passenger's airbag and the SRS main harness, then connect the short connector (RED) to the airbag side of the connector.



Disconnecting the SRS Connector at the Under-dash Fuse/relay Box:

CAUTION: Avoid breaking the connector; it's double-locked.

 First lift the connector lid with a thin screwdriver, then press the connector tab down and pull the connector out.

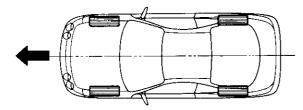


To reinstall the connector, push it into position until it clicks, then close its lid.

Steering-related Precautions

Steering Wheel and Cable Reel Alignment

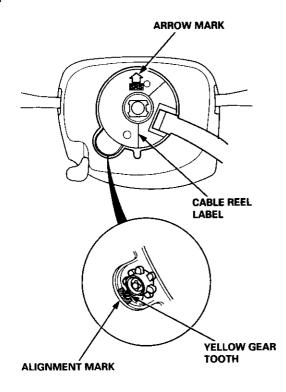
NOTE: To avoid misalignment of the steering wheel or airbag on reassembly, make sure the wheels are turned straight ahead before removing the steering wheel.



Rotate the cable reel clockwise unit it stops.

Then rotate it counterclockwise (approximately two turns) until:

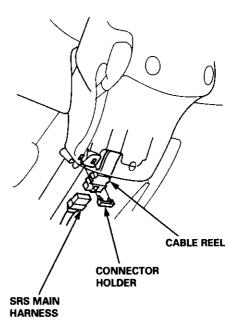
- The yellow gear tooth lines up with the alignment mark on the cover.
- The arrow mark on the cable reel label points straight up.



Steering Column Removal

CAUTION:

- Before removing the steering column, first disconnect the connector between the cable reel and the SRS main harness.
- If the steering column is going to be removed without dismounting the steering wheel, lock the steering by turning the ignition key to 0-LOCK position or remove the key from the ignition so that the steering wheel will not turn.



Do not replace the original steering wheel with any other design, since it will make it impossible to properly install the airbag (only use genuine Honda replacement parts).

After reassembly confirm that the wheels are still turned straight ahead and that the steering wheel spoke angle is correct. If minor spoke angle adjustment is necessary, do so only by adjustment of the tie-rods, not by removing and repositioning the steering wheel.



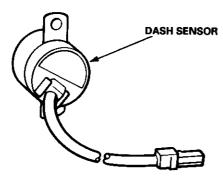
Sensor Inspection

CAUTION: Take extra care when painting or doing body work in the area below the dashboard.

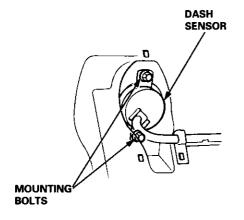
Avoid direct exposure of the sensors or wiring to heat guns, welding, or spraying equipment.

A WARNING

- Disconnect both the negative and positive battery cables.
- Connect the short connector(s) before working below the dashboard or near the dash sensors.
- After any degree of frontal body damage, inspect both dash sensors. Replace a sensor if it is dented, cracked, or deformed.



· Be sure the sensors are installed securely.



Inspection After Deployment

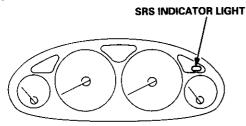
After a collision in which the airbags were deployed, inspect the following:

- Inspect the dash sensors for physical damage.
 If the sensors are damaged, replace them.
- 2. Inspect all the SRS wire harnesses. Replace, don't repair, any damaged harnesses.
- 3. Inspect the cable reel for heat damage. If there is any damage, replace the cable reel.
- 4. After the car is completely repaired, turn the ignition switch on. If the SRS indicator light comes on for about six seconds and then goes off, the SRS system is OK. If the indicator light does not function properly, go to SRS Troubleshooting (next page).

- Troubleshooting

Self-diagnosis Function

The SRS unit includes a self-diagnosis function. If there is a failure in the sensors, SRS unit, inflator, or their circuits, the SRS indicator light in the gauge assembly comes ON.



As a system check, the SRS indicator light also comes on when the ignition is first turned ON to the (II) position. If the light goes off after approximately six seconds, the system is OK.

If the SRS indicator light remains on (or fails to come on in the system check mode), one of the SRS components (or the wiring/connectors inbetween) is faulty.

Troubleshooting Precautions

- Always use the test harness. Do not use test probes directly on component connector terminals or wires; you may damage them or the SRS unit.
- When connecting any of the test harnesses to the system, push the connectors straight-in; do not bend the connector terminals.
- Before disconnecting any part of the SRS wire harness, connect the short connector (RED) on the driver's airbag. On cars equipped with a front passenger's airbag, connect short connectors on the driver's airbag and the front passenger's airbag.

SRS Indicator Light Troubleshooting Possible conditions:

- SRS indicator light does not come on at all see page 23-278.
- SRS indicator light stays on constantly see page 23-282.
- SRS indicator light comes on in combination with a failure of another electrical system (charging system light). Check for damage/corrosion at the under-dash fuse/relay box connector.

NOTE

- Before starting the applicable troubleshooting, check the condition of all SRS connectors and ground points.
- If the fault is not found after completing the applicable troubleshooting, substitute a known-good SRS unit and check whether the indicator light goes off.

Connecting the Short Connectors

AWARNING

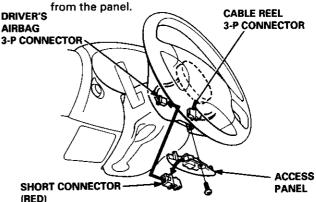
To avoid accidental deployment and possible injury, always connect the protective short connector to the driver's airbag connector and, on cars equipped with front passenger's airbag, connect protective short connectors to the driver's and front passenger's airbag before working near any SRS wiring.

NOTE: The original radio has a coded theft protection circuit. Be sure to get the customer's code number before disconnecting the battery cables.

- Disconnect the battery negative cable, then disconnect the positive cable.
- 2. Connect the short connector(s) (RED):

Driver's Side:

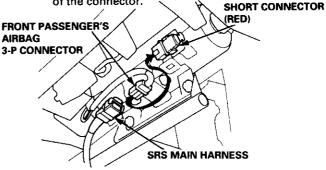
 Remove the access panel from the steering wheel, then remove the short connector (RED)



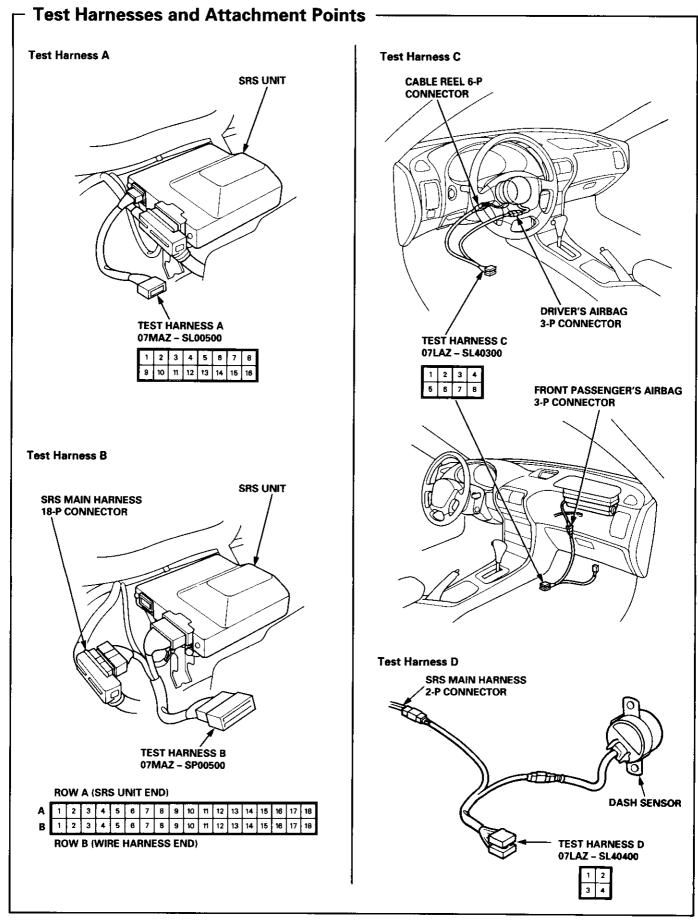
 Disconnect the connector between the driver's airbag and cable reel, then connect the short connector (RED) to the airbag side of the connector.

Front Passenger's Side:

- Remove the glove box damper (see section 20), and then remove the glove box.
- Disconnect the connector between the front passenger's airbag and SRS main harness, then connect the short connector (RED) to the airbag side of the connector.





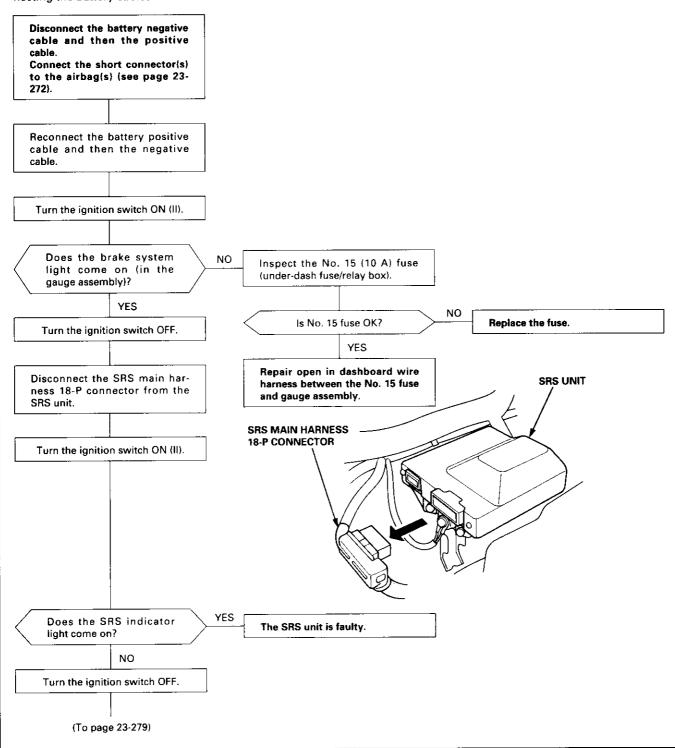


Troubleshooting

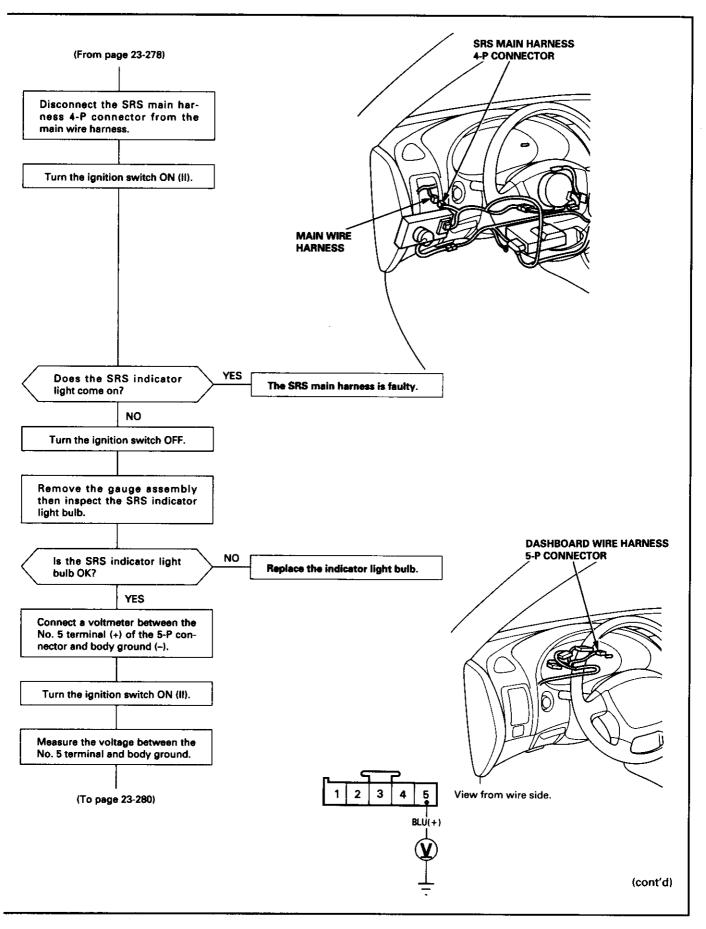
The SRS Indicator Does Not Light

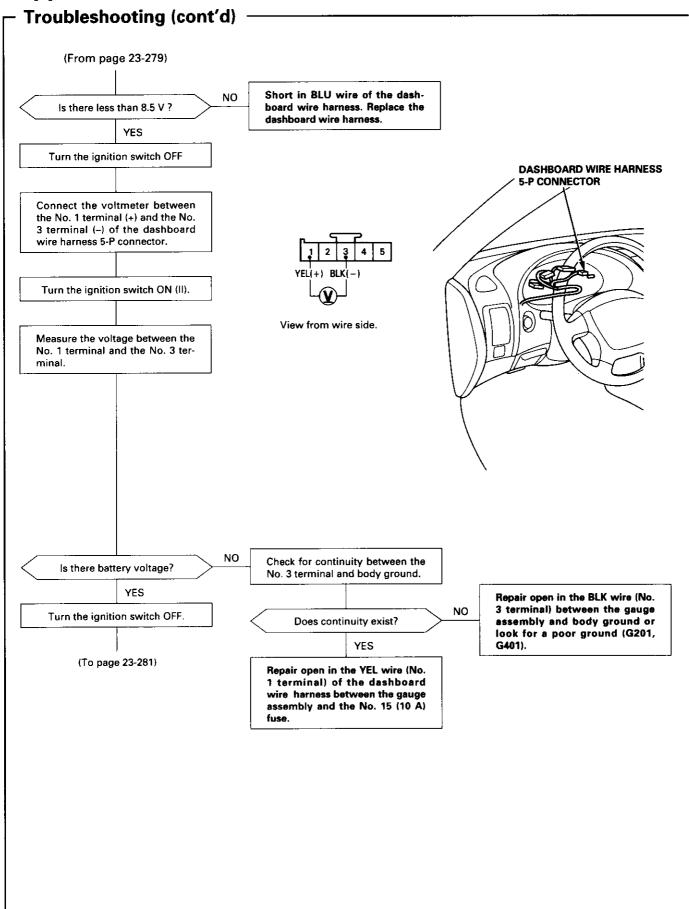
CAUTION: Use only a digital multimeter to check the system. If it's not a Honda multimeter, make sure its output is 10 mA (0.01 A) or less when switched to the smallest value in the ohmmeter range. A tester with a higher output could damage the airbag circuit or cause accidental airbag deployment and possible injury.

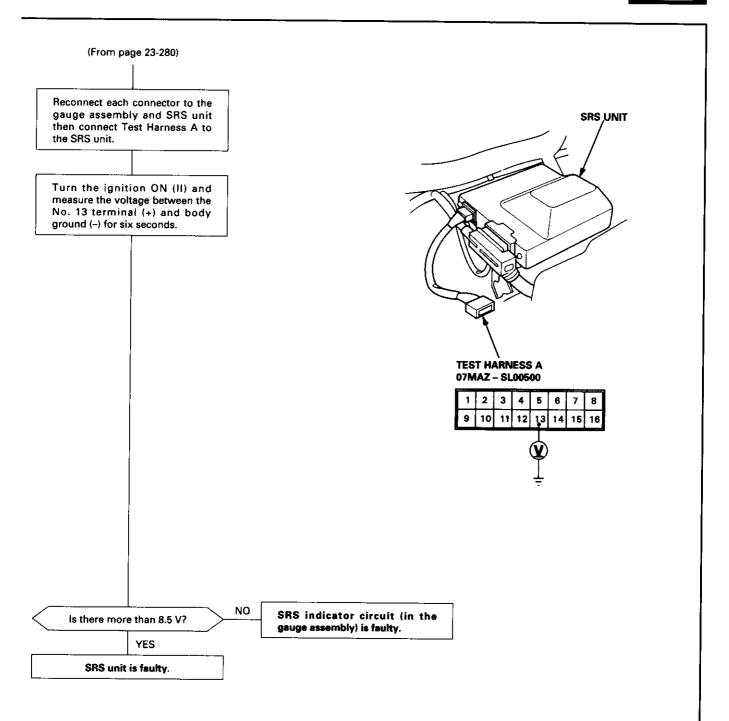
NOTE: The original radio has a coded theft protection circuit. Be sure to get the customer's code number before disconnecting the battery cables.









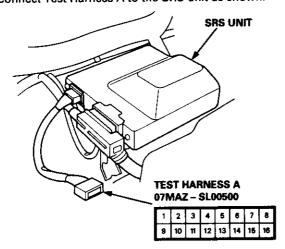


Troubleshooting (cont'd)

SRS Indicator Light Stays on Continuously

NOTE: Before troubleshooting, make sure that battery voltage is 12 V or more. Otherwise you'll obtain wrong test readings.

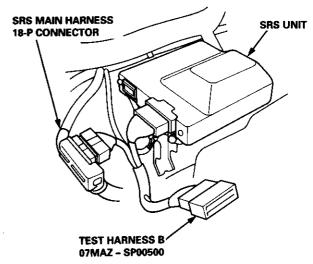
- 1. Make a photocopy of the chart on page 23-283.
- 2. Connect Test Harness A to the SRS unit as shown.



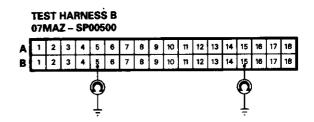
- 3. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).
 - Voltages in the chart assume the car's "battery voltage" is about 12 volts. Less than 12 volts will result in different or possibly false readings.
 - Do not disconnect the airbags from the circuit when checking SRS unit voltages.
- First, check for voltage between Test Harness Terminal No. 12 (+) and ground (-).
 - If no voltage is indicated, go to step 8 and continue checking all the other terminals.
 - If voltage is indicated, there is a poor ground at the SRS unit. Read the following NOTE, and then go on to step 5.

NOTE: The original radio has a coded theft protection circuit. Be sure to get the customer's code number before disconnecting the battery cables.

- Before disconnecting any part of the SRS wire harness, connect the short connector(s) (RED) to the airbag(s) (see page 23-272).
- 6. Connect Test Harness B between the SRS unit and SRS main harness 18-P connector.

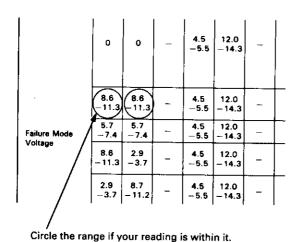


Check for continuity between the B5 terminal and body ground, and the B15 terminal and body ground.



- If there is continuity at either terminal, the SRS unit is faulty. Replace it and check the voltages according to the chart on page 23-283.
- If there is no continuity at either terminal, the SRS unit ground, the SRS unit component grounds or the SRS main harness is faulty. Check the grounds (check wire and control unit mounting bolts) and, if necessary, replace the SRS main harness. Then check the voltages according to the chart on page 23-283.

- Record your voltage readings, for each terminal, in the row of blank boxes near the top of the chart.
- Compare each reading with the voltage ranges listed in the column below it. If the reading is within a range, circle that range.



 If you circled all the Failure Mode ranges across any row, check the car for the Probable Failure Mode listed at the end of the row. (Refer to the letter for that mode on the following pages).

| 2.0 8.5 | 8.4 10.9 | - | - | " Short in one B dash sensor " Short to driver's or passenger's sirbag inflator (body grond) |
|-------------|----------------|---|----|---|
| 2.0 | (3.3) (3.3) | - | - | Short in cowl C sensor or open in both dash sensors |
| 2.0 -8.5 | 8.4 10.9 | - | -/ | D Open in one dash seneor |
| 2.0 -8.5 | 8.4 - 10.9 | - | 7- | Open in driver's E airbeg inflator or cable real |
| 2.0 -8.5 | 8.4 -10.9 | 1 | ı | Open in front F passenger's eirbeg inflator |

If you circled all the ranges in this row, follow the troubleshooting procedure under failure mode "C" on the following pages.

- If you did not circle all the ranges across any row, replace the SRS unit with a known-good unit, and retest.
 - If all your voltage readings are now normal, replace the original SRS unit.
 - If your voltage readings are still not normal but they don't fit within a complete row of Failure Mode ranges, check the condition of the terminals in each of the SRS connectors shown in the system diagram on page 23-270.

NOTE: Do not disconnect the airbag when checking SRS unit voltages. With front passenger's airbag:

| Test Harness Terminal | 1 SADH | 2 SAPH | - | 4 VCC | 5 SV | - | - | 8 SADC | - | 10 BUC1 | _ | 12 GND | 13 IDC | 14 MI | | _ | |
|--------------------------|---------------------|--------------|-------------|--------------|---------------|---|-------------|---------------|---------------|----------------|---|-------------|-----------------|--------------|--------------|--|--|
| Normal Voltage | 4.3 -5.6 | 4.3 -5.6 | - | 4.5 -5.5 | 12.0 14.3 | | - | 5.6 -7.3 | | 11.5 14.5 | - | 0 | 8.5 -13.6 | 8.4 10.9 | - | _ | Probable Failure Mode |
| Your Voltage Reading | | _ | _ | | | - | - | | _ | | _ | | | | _ | - | |
| <u>-</u> | 2.8 -3.7 | 2.8 3.7 | _ | 4.5 -5.5 | 12.0 -14.3 | 1 | _ | 3.7 -4.9 | _ | 11.5 -14.5 | _ | 0 | 2.0 -8.5 | 8.4 10.9 | _ | _ | A Open in one cowl sensor contact |
| | o | O | _ | 4.5 -5.5 | 12.0 -14.3 | _ | _ | 0 | _ | 11.5 -14.5 | _ | o | 2.0 -8.5 | 8.4 10.9 | - | | Open in both cowl sensor contacts Short in one dash sensor Short to driver's or passenger's airbag inflator (body grond) |
| | 8.6 -11.3 | 8.6 11.3 | - | 4.5 -5.5 | 12.0 -14.3 | - | _ | 11.2 -14.6 | - | 11.5 -14.5 | _ | О | 2.0 -8.5 | 8.4 10.9 | _ | _ | Short in cowl C sensor or open in both dash sensors |
| Failure Mode Voltage | 5.7 -7.4 | 5.7 7.4 | | 4.5 -5.5 | 12.0 -14.3 | | - | 7.4 -9.7 | | 11.5 14.5 | - | 0 | 2.0 -8.5 | 8.4 10.9 | _ | - | D Open in one dash sensor |
| VOILAGE | 8.6 -11.3 -3.7 - | | 4.5 -5.5 | 12.0 14.3 | - | - | 3.7 -4.9 | _ | 11.5 -14.5 | _ | 0 | 2.0 -8.5 | 8.4 10.9 | - | - | Open in driver's E airbag inflator or cable reel | |
| | 2.9 -3.7 | 8.7 -11.2 | - | 4.5 -5.5 | 12.0 14.3 | - | _ | 3.7 -4.9 | - | 11.5 14.5 | _ | 0 | 2.0 -8.5 | 8.4 -10.9 | - | - | Open in front F passenger's airbag inflator |
| | 8.6 -11.3 | 8.6 11.3 | - | 4.5 -5.5 | 12.0 14.3 | - | - | 0 | _ | 11.5 - 14.5 | _ | 0 | 2.0 -8.5 | 8.4 10.9 | - | _ | Open in driver's G and passenger's airbag inflator |
| | 4.3 -5.6 | 4.3 -5.6 | _ | 0 | 0 | - | _ | 5.6 -7.3 | - | 11.5 14.5 | _ | 0 | 2.0 8.5 | 8.4 10.9 | - | - | Blown SRS fuse H (No. 25 10 A) or open in the wire |
| | 4.3 -5.6 | 4.3 -5.6 | _ | 4.5 -5.5 | 12.0 14.3 | - | - | 5.6 -7.3 | - | 11.5 -14.5 | - | 0 | 0 (8.5 13.6) | 8.4 -10.9 | _ | | Short (or open) in I SRS indicator wire harness |

- Troubleshooting (cont'd)

NOTE: Do not disconnect the airbag when checking SRS unit voltages.

Without front passenger's airbag:

| Test Harness Terminal | 1 SADH | _ | _ | VCC | 5 SV | _ | - | 8 SADC | - | 10 BUC1 | - | 12 GND | 13 IDC | 14 Mi | | | Probable Failure Mode |
|--------------------------|--------------|---|--------------|-------------|----------------|---|---|--------------|---|----------------|---|-----------|-------------------|--------------|---|---|---|
| Normal Voltage | 4.3 -5.6 | | _ | 4.5 -5.5 | 12.0 14.3 | _ | - | 5.6 - 7.3 | _ | 11.5 14.5 | | 0 | 8.5 -13.6 | 8.4 10.9 | | - | |
| Your Voltage Reading | | _ | - | | | _ | _ | | - | | - | | | | - | - | |
| | 2.8 -3.7 | _ | _ | 4.5 -5.5 | 12.0 -14.3 | _ | 1 | 3.7 -4.9 | _ | 11.5 -14.5 | _ | 0 | 2.0 -8.5 | 8.4 10.9 | - | _ | A Open in one cowl sensor contact |
| Failure Mode | 0 | _ | _ | 4.5 -5.5 | 12.0 14.3 | | _ | 0 | _ | 11.5 14.5 | - | ٥ | 2.0 -8.5 | 8.4 10.9 | - | - | Open in both cowl sensor contacts Short in one dash sensor Short to driver's airbag inflator (body grond) |
| | 8.6 -11.3 | _ | - | 4.5 -5.5 | 12.0 -14.3 | | - | 11.2 14.6 | _ | 11.5 14.5 | - | 0 | 2.0 -8.5 | 8.4 10.9 | - | - | Short in cowl C sensor or open in both dash sensors |
| Voltage | 5.7 | | - | 4.5 -5.5 | 12.0 - 14.3 | | | 7.4 | _ | 11.5 -14.5 | _ | 0 | 2.0 -8.5 | 8.4 -10.9 | | - | Open in one dash sensor |
| | 8.6 -11.3 | _ | - | 4.5 -5.5 | 12.0 -14.3 | _ | - | 3.7 -4.9 | _ | 11.5 - 14.5 | - | 0 | 2.0 -8.5 | 8.4 -10.9 | | - | Open in driver's E airbag inflator or cable reel |
| | 4.3 -5.6 | _ | - | 0 | 0 | | - | 5.6 -7.3 | - | 11.5 14.5 | - | 0 | 2.0 -8.5 | 8.4 10.9 | - | _ | Blown SRS fuse H (No. 25 10 A) or open in the wire |
| | 4.3 -5.6 | - | | 4.5 -5.5 | 12.0 -14.3 | - | - | 5.6 -7.3 | - | 11.5 14.5 | _ | 0 | 0 (8.5 - 13.6) | 8.4 10.9 | - | | Short (or open) in I SRS indicator wire harness |

Mode A: Open in one cowl sensor contact

 The SRS unit is faulty. Substitute a known-good SRS unit and recheck the voltages according to the chart on page 23-283.

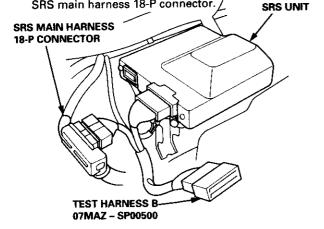
Mode B:

- Short to driver's or passenger's airbag inflator body (body ground)
- Short in dash sensor
- Open in both cowl sensor contacts

NOTE: The original radio has a coded theft protection circuit. Be sure to get the customer's code number before disconnecting the battery cables.

- Disconnect the battery negative cable and then the positive cable. Then connect the short connectors(s) (RED) to the airbag(s) (see page 23-272).
- 2. Connect Test Harness B between the SRS unit and SRS main harness 18-P connector.

 SRS unit and SRS unit a



 Reconnect the driver's airbag connector, then check continuity between the B1 terminal and body ground, and between the B7 terminal and body ground.

TEST HARNESS B 07MAZ - SP00500 A 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 B 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 18 17 18

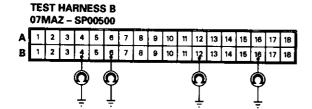
- If there is continuity at either terminal, go to step
 6.
- If there is no continuity at either terminal,
 - go to step 5 (without front passenger's airbag).
 - go to step 4 (with front passenger's airbag).
- Reconnect the front passenger's airbag connector, then check continuity between the B2 terminal and body ground, and between the B8 terminal and body ground.

TEST HARNESS B 07MAZ - SP00500 A 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 B 1 3 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18

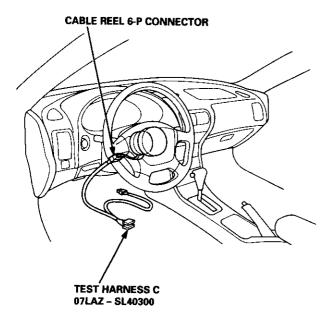
- If there is continuity at either terminal, go to step 10.
- If there is no continuity at either terminal, go to step 5.



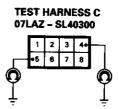
Check continuity between body ground and each terminal of both dash sensors.



- If there is continuity at any of the terminals, go to step 12.
- If there is no continuity at any terminal, go to step 13.
- Disconnect the cable reel 6-P connector from the SRS main harness, then connect Test Harness C only to the cable reel side of the 6-P connector.



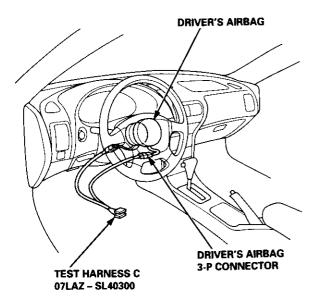
 Check continuity between the No. 4 terminal and body ground, and between the No. 5 terminal and body ground.



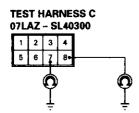
- If there is continuity at either terminal, go to step 8.
- If there is no continuity at either terminal, the SRS main harness is faulty. Replace it and recheck the voltages according to the chart on page 23-283.

Troubleshooting (cont'd) -

8. Disconnect the driver's airbag 3-P connector from the cable reel, then connect Test Harness C to the driver's airbag 3-P connector.

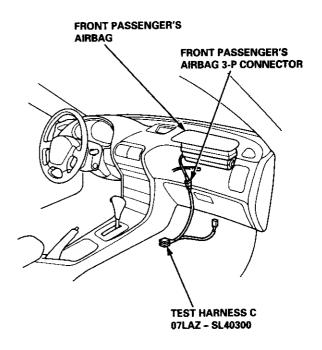


Check continuity between the No. 7 terminal and body ground, and between the No. 8 terminal and body ground.

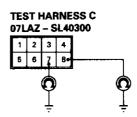


- If there is continuity at either terminal, the driver's airbag inflator is faulty. Replace it and recheck the voltages according to the chart on page 23-283.
- If there is no continuity at either terminal, the cable reel is faulty. Replace it and recheck the voltages according to the chart on page 23-283.

10. Disconnect the front passenger's airbag 3-P connector from the SRS main harness, then connect Test Harness C to the airbag side of the connector.



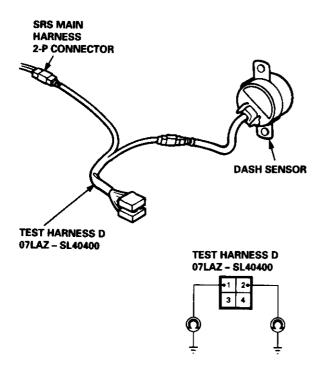
 Check continuity between the No. 7 terminal and body ground, and between the No. 8 terminal and body ground.



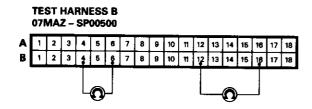
- If there is continuity at either terminal, the front passenger's airbag inflator is faulty. Replace it and recheck the voltages according to the chart on page 23-283.
- If there is no continuity at either terminal, the SRS main harness is faulty. Replace it and recheck the voltages according to the chart on page 23-283.



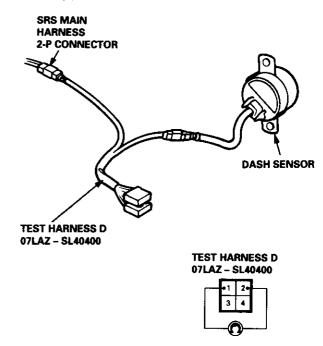
12. Connect Test Harness D between the dash sensor and SRS main harness 2-P connector. Check continuity between the No. 1 terminal and body ground, and between the No. 2 terminal and body ground.



- If there is continuity at either terminal, the dash sensor is faulty. Replace it and recheck the voltages according to the chart on page 23-283.
- If there is no continuity at either terminal, the SRS main harness is faulty. Replace it and recheck the voltages according to the chart on page 23-283.
- 13. Measure the resistance between the left dash sensor terminals B12 and B16, and between the right dash sensor terminals B4 and B6.



- If resistance is 3.8 4.2 kΩ for both sensors, the SRS unit is faulty. Substitute a known-good SRS unit and recheck the voltages according to the chart on page 23-283.
- If resistance is less than 3.8 kΩ for either sensor, go to step 14.
- Connect Test Harness D between the dash sensor and SRS main harness 2-P connector. Measure the resistance between the No. 1 terminal and No. 2 terminal.



- If resistance is 3.8 4.2 kΩ, the SRS main harness is faulty. Replace it and recheck the voltages according to the chart on page 23-283.
- If resistance is less than 3.8 kΩ, the dash sensor is faulty. Replace it and recheck the voltages according to the chart on page 23-283.

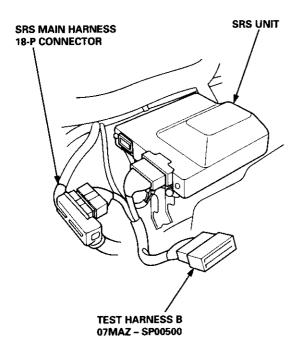
- Troubleshooting (cont'd) -

Mode C: Short in one cowl sensor, or open in both dash sensors

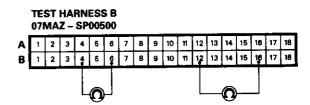
Mode D: Open in one dash sensor

NOTE: The original radio has a coded theft protection circuit. Be sure to get the customer's code number before disconnecting the battery cables.

- Disconnect the battery negative cable and then the positive cable. Then connect the short connector(s) to the airbag(s) (see page 23-272).
- Connect Test Harness B between the SRS unit and SRS main harness 18-P connector.



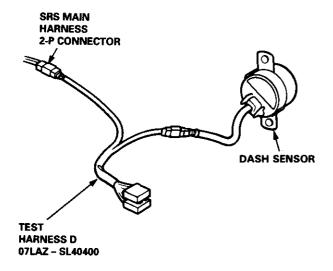
 Measure the resistance between the left dash sensor terminals B12 and B16, and between the right dash sensor terminals B4 and B6.



- If resistance is more than 5 kΩ for either set of terminals, go to step 4.
- If resistance is less than 5 kΩ for both sets of terminals, the SRS unit is faulty. Substitute a known-good SRS unit and recheck the voltages according to the chart on page 23-283.



 Connect Test Harness D between the dash sensor and SRS main harness 2-P connector.
 Measure the resistance between the No. 1 terminal and No. 2 terminal.



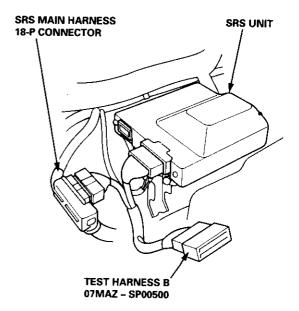


- If resistance is more than $5~k\Omega$, the dash sensor is faulty. Replace the dash sensor and recheck the voltages according to the chart on page 23-283.
- If resistance is less than 5 kΩ, the SRS main harness is faulty. Replace the SRS main harness and recheck the voltages according to the chart on page 23-283.

Mode E: Open in driver's airbag inflator or cable reel

NOTE: The original radio has a coded theft protection circuit. Be sure to get the customer's code number before disconnecting the battery cables.

- Disconnect the battery negative cable and then the positive cable. Then connect the short connector(s) (RED) to the airbag(s) (see page 23-272).
- Connect Test Harness B between the SRS unit and SRS main harness 18-P connector.



 Reconnect the driver's airbag connector, then measure the resistance between the B1 and the B7 terminals.

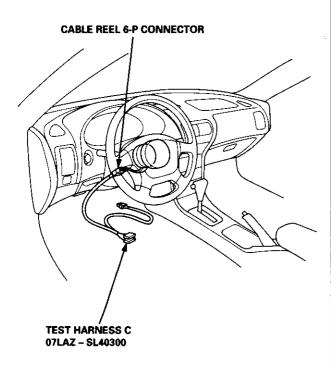
O7MAZ - SP00500 A 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 B 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18

TEST HARNESS B

- If resistance is more than 0.2 kΩ, go to step 4.
- If resistance is less than 0.2 kΩ, the SRS unit is faulty. Substitute a known-good SRS unit and recheck the voltages according to the chart on page 23-283.

Troubleshooting (cont'd)

 Disconnect the cable reel 6-P connector from the SRS main harness, then connect Test Harness C only to the cable reel side of the connector.

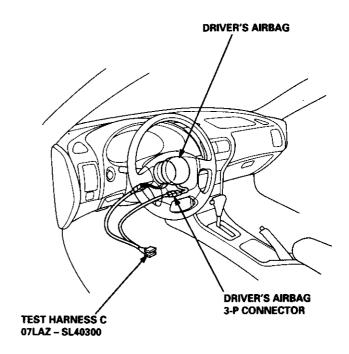


Measure the resistance between the No. 4 terminal and the No. 5 terminal.



- If resistance is more than 0.2 kΩ, go to step 6.
- If resistance is less than 0.2 kΩ, the SRS main harness is faulty. Replace it and recheck the voltages according to the chart on page 23-283.

 Disconnect the driver's airbag 3-P connector from the cable reel harness, then connect Test Harness C to the driver's airbag 3-P connector.



Measure the resistance between the No. 7 terminal and the No. 8 terminal.



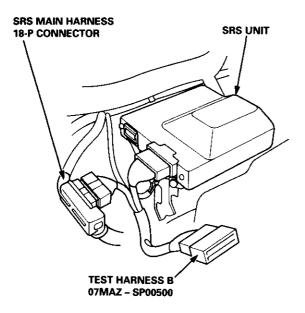
- If resistance is more than 0.2 kΩ, the driver's airbag inflator is faulty. Replace the airbag assembly and recheck the voltages according to the chart on page 23-283.
- If resistance is less than 0.2 kΩ, the cable reel is faulty. Replace it and recheck the voltages according to the chart on page 23-283.



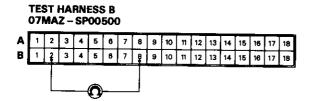
Mode F: Open in front passenger's airbag inflator

NOTE: The original radio has a coded theft protection circuit. Be sure to get the customer's code number before disconnecting the battery cables.

- Disconnect the battery negative cable and then the positive cable. Then connect the short connector(s) (RED) to the airbag(s) (see page 23-272).
- Connect Test Harness B between the SRS unit and SRS main harness 18-P connector.

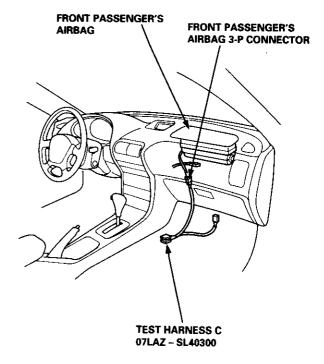


 Reconnect the front passenger's airbag connector, then measure the resistance between the B2 terminal and the B8 terminal.

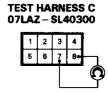


- If resistance is more than 0.2 kΩ, go to step 4.
- If resistance is less than 0.2 kΩ, the SRS unit is faulty. Substitute a known-good SRS unit and recheck the voltages according to the chart on page 23-283.

Disconnect the front passenger's airbag 3-P connector from the SRS main harness, then connect Test Harness C to the front passenger's airbag side of the connector.



Measure the resistance between the No. 7 terminal and the No. 8 terminal.



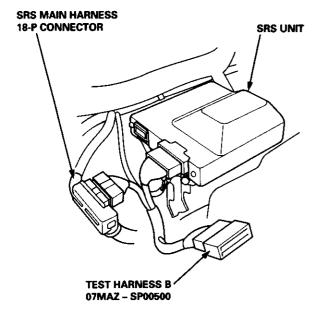
- If resistance is more than 0.2 kΩ, the front passenger's airbag inflator is faulty. Replace the front passenger's airbag assembly and recheck the voltages according to the chart on page 23-283.
- If resistance is less than 0.2 kΩ, the cable reel is faulty. Replace the cable reel and recheck the voltages according to the chart on page 23-283.

Troubleshooting (cont'd)

Mode H: Blown SRS No. 25 fuse, or open in the wire

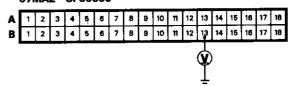
NOTE: The original radio has a coded theft protection circuit. Be sure to get the customer's code number before disconnecting the battery cables.

- Check the SRS No. 25 (10 A) fuse in the under-dash fuse/relay box. If it's OK, go on to step 2.
 If it's blown, replace it with a new 10 A fuse, then turn the ignition switch ON (II):
 - If the fuse doesn't blow, go on to step 2.
 - If the fuse blows, troubleshoot as necessary to find the short.
- Disconnect the battery negative cable and then the positive cable. Then connect the short connector(s) (RED) to the airbag(s) (see page 23-272).
- 3. Connect Test Harness B between the SRS unit and the SRS main harness 18-P connector.



- Reconnect the positive and negative cable to the battery.
- Measure the voltage between the B13 terminal (+) and body ground (-) with the ignition switch ON (II).

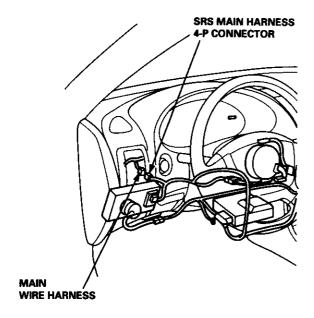
TEST HARNESS B 07MAZ - SP00500



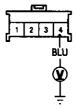
- If there is battery voltage, the SRS unit is faulty.
 Replace it and recheck the voltages according to the chart on page 23-283.
- If there is less than battery voltage, the SRS main harness is faulty. Replace it and recheck the voltages according to the chart on page 23-283.

Mode I: Short or open in SRS indicator wire harness

 Disconnect the SRS main harness 4-P connector from the main wire harness.



Turn the ignition switch ON (II) and wait for six seconds. Measure the voltage between the No. 4 terminal (+) in the SRS main harness 4-P connector and body ground.

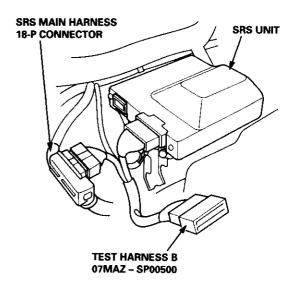


View from wire side.

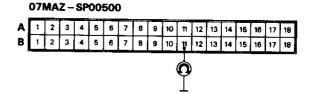
- If voltage is more than 8.5 V, go to step 8.
- If voltage is less than 8.5 V, go to step 3.

NOTE: The original radio has a coded theft protection circuit. Be sure to get the customer's code number before disconnecting the battery cables.

- Disconnect the battery negative cable and then the positive cable. Then connect the short connector(s) (RED) to the airbag(s) (see page 23-272).
- Connect Test Harness B between the SRS unit and SRS main harness 18-P connector.



- Reconnect the battery positive cable and negative cable.
- Check for continuity between the B11 terminal and body ground.



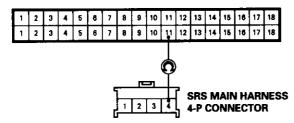
TEST HARNESS B

- If there is continuity, the SRS main harness is shorted. Replace the SRS main harness and recheck the voltages according to the chart on page 23-283.
- If there is no continuity, go to step 7.

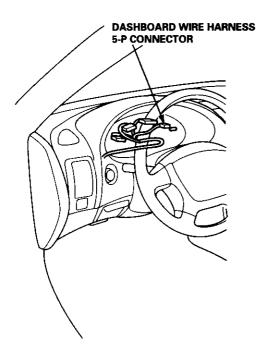
Troubleshooting (cont'd)

 Check for continuity between the B11 terminal of Test Harness B and the No. 4 terminal of the SRS main harness 4-P connector.

TEST HARNESS B 07MAZ - SP00500

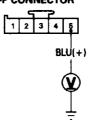


- If there is continuity, the SRS unit is faulty.
 Replace it and recheck the voltages according to the chart on page 23-283.
- If there is no continuity, there is an open in the SRS main harness. Replace the SRS main harness and recheck the voltages according to the chart on page 23-283.
- Reconnect the SRS main harness 4-P connector to the main wire harness. Disconnect the dashboard wire harness 5-P connector from the gauge assembly.



9. Turn the ignition switch ON (II) and wait for six seconds. Measure the voltage between the No. 5 terminal (+) and body ground (-).

DASHBOARD WIRE HARNESS 5-P CONNECTOR



View from wire side.

- If voltage is more than 8.5 V, the SRS indicator circuit is faulty (in the gauge assembly). Replace the SRS indicator circuit assembly and recheck the voltages according to the chart on page 23-283.
- If voltage is less than 8.5 V, the dashboard wire harness (or the main wire harness) is faulty.
 Replace it and recheck the voltages according to the chart on page 23-283.



Airbag Assembly Replacement

AWARNING Store a removed airbag assembly with the pad surface up, if the airbag is improperly stored face down, accidental deployment could propel the unit with enough force to cause serious injury.

CAUTION:

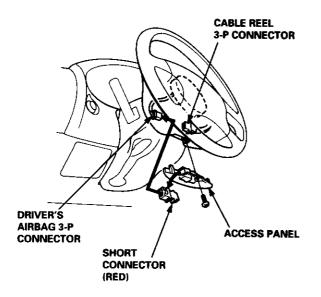
- Do not install used SRS parts from another car.
 When repairing, use only new SRS parts.
- Carefully inspect the airbag assembly before you install it. Do not install an airbag assembly that shows signs of being dropped or improperly handled, such as dents, cracks or deformation.
- Always keep the short connector(s) (RED) on the airbag(s) when the harness is disconnected.
- Do not disassemble or tamper with the airbag assembly.

NOTE: The original radio has a coded theft protection circuit. Be sure to get the customer's code number before disconnecting the battery cables.

- Disconnect the battery negative cable, then disconnect the positive cable.
- Connect the short connector(s) (RED) to the airbag side of the connector(s):

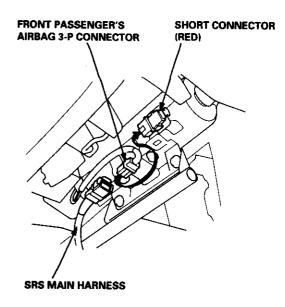
Driver's Side:

- Remove the access panel from the steering wheel, then remove the short connector (RED) from the panel.
- Disconnect the 3-P connector between the driver's airbag and cable reel, then connect the short connector (RED) to the airbag side of the connector.



Front Passenger's Side:

- Remove the glove box damper, then remove the glove box.
- Disconnect the front passenger's airbag 3-P connector from the SRS main harness, and connect the short connector (RED) to the front passenger's airbag 3-P connector.

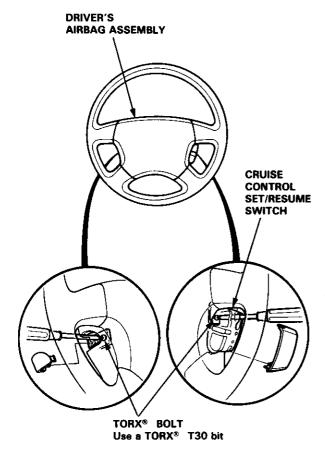


- Airbag Assembly Replacement (cont'd)

3. Remove the airbag(s):

Driver's Side:

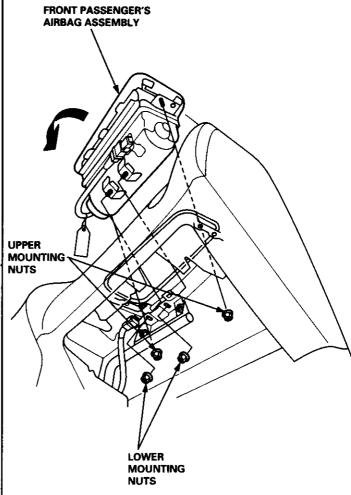
 Remove the two TORX® bolts using a TORX® T30 bit, then remove the driver's airbag assembly.



Front Passenger's Side:

 Remove the four mounting nuts, then lift the front passenger's airbag out of the dashboard.

NOTE: Do not confuse the lower mounting nuts with the upper mounting nuts. The upper mounting nuts are not self-locking.



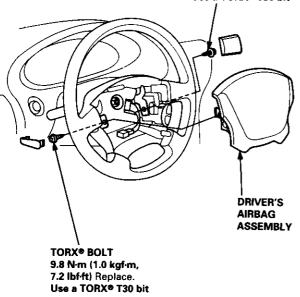


CAUTION: Be sure to install the SRS wiring so that it is not pinched or interfering with other car parts.

Install the new airbag(s):

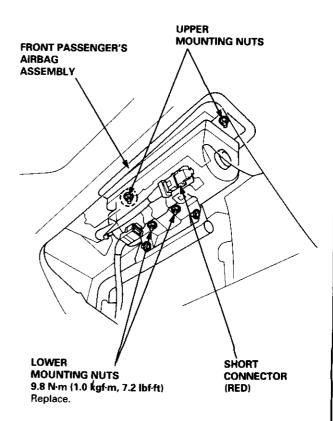
Driver's Side: Place the driver's airbag assembly in the steering wheel, and secure it with new TORX® bolts.

TORX® BOLT 9.8 N·m (1.0 kgf·m, 7.2 lbf·ft) Replace. Use a TORX® T30 bit



Front Passenger's Side:

- Place the front passenger's airbag assembly in the dashboard.
- Loosely install all four mounting nuts.
- Tighten the upper two nuts first, then the lower two nuts. Adjust the lower mounting bracket if necessary.

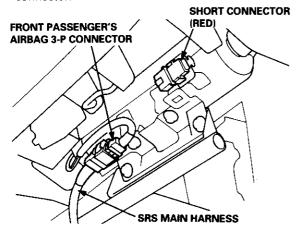


- Airbag Assembly Replacement (cont'd)

 Remove and properly store the short connector(s), then reconnect the airbag connector(s).

Front Passenger's Side:

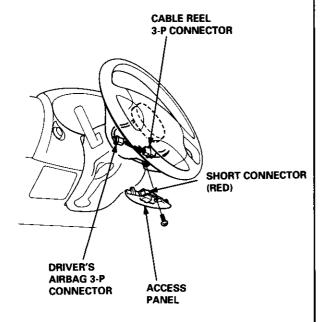
 Remove the short connector (RED) from the front passenger's airbag connector, then connect the airbag 3-P connector to the SRS main harness 3-P connector.



• Then reinstall the glove box on the dashboard.

Driver's Side:

 Remove the short connector (RED) from the driver's airbag connector, then connect the airbag 3-P connector to the cable reel 3-P connector.



 Attach the short connector (RED) to the access panel, then reinstall the panel on the steering wheel.

- Connect the battery positive cable, then the negative cable.
- After installing the airbag assembly, confirm proper system operation:
 - Turn the ignition ON (II): The instrument panel SRS indicator light should come on for about six seconds and then go off.
 - Make sure both horn buttons work.
 - Take a test drive and make sure the cruise control set/resume switch works.
- 8. Enter the code number to restore radio operation (see page 23-191).



Airbag Assembly Disposal

Before scrapping any airbag(s) (including one in a whole car to be scrapped), the airbag must be deployed. If the car is still within the warranty period, before you deploy the airbag, the Acura District Service Manager must give approval and/or special instructions. Only after the airbag has been deployed (as the result of vehicle collision, for example), it can be scrapped.

If the airbag(s) appear(s) intact (not deployed) treat it (them) with extreme caution.

Follow this procedure:

Deploying the Airbag(s): In-car

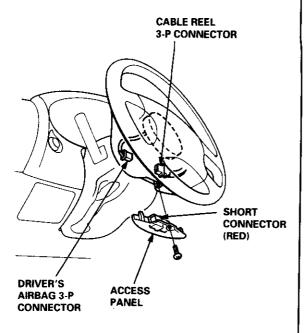
NOTE: If an SRS car is to be entirely scrapped, its airbag(s) should be deployed while still in the car. The airbag(s) should not be considered as salvageable part(s) and should never be installed in another car.

AWARNING Confirm that each airbag assembly is securely mounted; otherwise, severe personal injury could result from deployment.

- Disconnect the battery negative cable, then disconnect the positive cable.
- Confirm that the special tool is functioning properly by following the check procedure on the label of the tool set box, or on page 23-300.

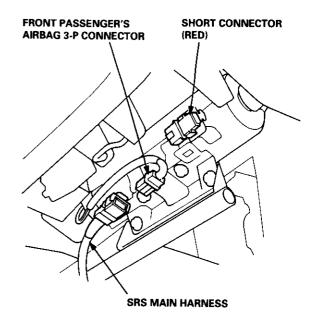
Driver's Airbag:

Remove the access panel, then disconnect the 3-P connector between the driver's airbag and the cable reel.

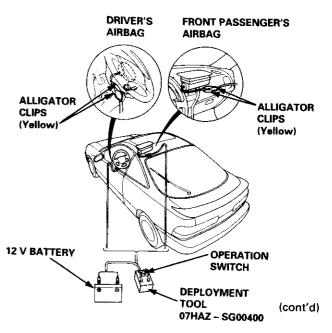


Front Passenger's Airbag:

 Remove the glove box damper (see section 20), then remove the glove box, then disconnect the 3-P connector between the front passenger's airbag and SRS main harness.



 Cut off the airbag connector, strip the ends of the airbag wires, and connect the special tool alligator clips to the airbag. Place the special tool about thirty feet (10 meters) away from the airbag.



Airbag Assembly Disposal (cont'd)

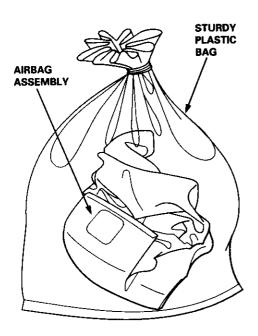
- 6. Connect a 12 volt battery to the tool:
 - If the green light on the tool comes on, the airbag igniter circuit is defective and cannot deploy the airbag. Go to Damaged Airbag Special Procedure.
 - If the red light on the tool comes on, the airbag is ready to be deployed.
- Push the tool's deployment switch. The airbag should deploy (deployment is both highly audible and visible – a loud noise and rapid inflation of the bag, followed by slow deflation).
 - If audible/visible deployment happens and the green light on the tool comes on, continue with this procedure.
 - If the airbag doesn't deploy, yet the green light comes ON, its igniter is defective. Go to Damaged Airbag Special Procedure.

AWARNING During deployment, the airbag assembly can become hot enough to burn you. Wait thirty minutes after deployment before touching the assembly.

 Dispose of the complete airbag assembly. No part of it can be reused. Place it in a sturdy plastic bag and seal it securely.

CAUTION:

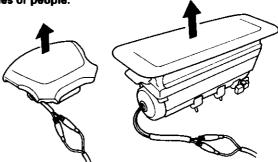
- Wear a face shield and gloves when handling a deployed airbag.
- Wash your hands and rinse them well with water after handling a deployed airbag.



Deploying the Airbag: Out-of-car.

NOTE: If an intact airbag assembly has been removed from a scrapped car, or has been found defective or damaged during transit, storage or service, it should be deployed as follows:

A WARNING Position the airbag assembly face up, outdoors on flat ground at least thirty feet from any obstacles or people.



- Confirm that the special tool is functioning properly by following the check procedure on this page or on the tool box label.
- Remove the short connector from the airbag connector.
- Follow steps 5, 6, 7, and 8 of the in-car deployment procedure.

Damaged Airbag Special Procedure.

AWARNING If an airbag cannot be deployed, it should not be treated as normal scrap; it should still be considered a potentially explosive device that can cause serious injury.

- If installed in a car, follow the removal procedure on page 23-295.
- 2. In all cases, make sure a short connector is properly installed on the airbag connector.
- Package the airbag in exactly the same packaging that the new replacement part came in.
- Mark the outside of the box "DAMAGED AIRBAG NOT DEPLOYED" so it does not get confused with your parts stock.
- Contact your Acura District Service Manager for how and where to return it for disposal.

Deployment Tool: Check Procedure.

- Connect the yellow clips to both switch protector handles on the tool; connect the tool to a battery.
- Push the operation switch: green means the tool is OK; red means the tool is faulty.
- 3. Disconnect the battery and the yellow clips.



Cable Reel Replacement

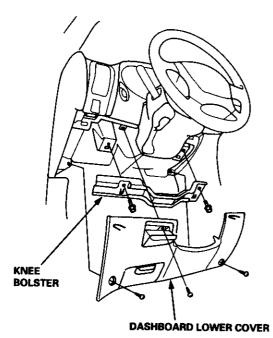
AWARNING Store a removed airbag assembly with the pad surface up. If the airbag is improperly stored face down, accidental deployment could propel the unit with enough force to cause serious injury.

CAUTION:

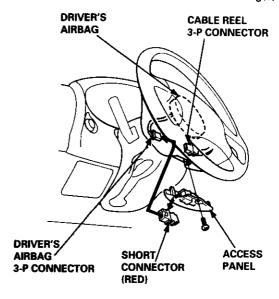
- Carefully inspect the airbag assembly before installing it. Do not install an airbag assembly that shows signs of being dropped or improperly handled, such as dents, cracks or deformation.
- Always keep the short connector(s) on the airbag(s) connector when the harness is disconnected.
- Do not disassemble or tamper with the airbag assembly.

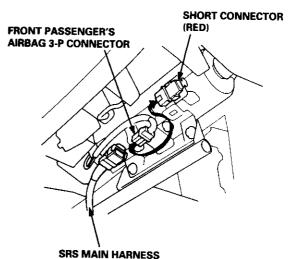
NOTE: The original radio has a coded theft protection circuit. Be sure to get the customer's code number before disconnecting the battery cables.

- Disconnect the battery negative cable and then the positive cable.
- 2. Make sure the wheels are aligned straight ahead.
- Remove the dashboard lower cover and knee bolster.

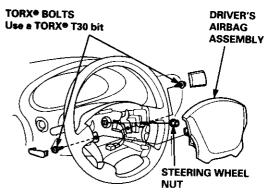


 Remove the glove box damper (see section 20), then remove the glove box. 5. Connect the short connector(s) to the airbag(s).



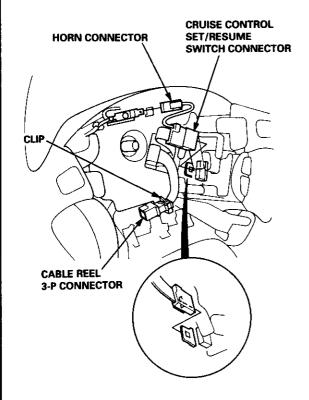


 Remove the driver's airbag assembly from the steering wheel (two T30 TORX® bolts), then remove the steering wheel nut.



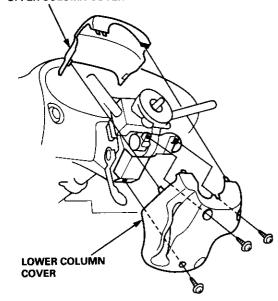
Cable Reel Replacement (cont'd) -

 Disconnect the connectors from the horn and cruise control set/resume switches, then remove the cable reel 3-P connector from its clip.

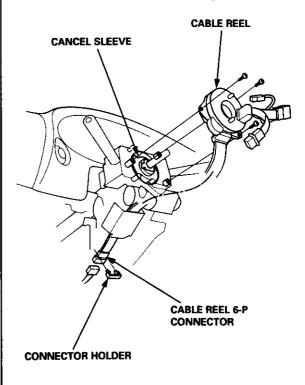


- 8. Remove the steering wheel from the column.
- 9. Remove the upper and lower column covers.





 Disconnect the 6-P connector between the cable reel and SRS main harness, then remove the connector holder from the steering column.

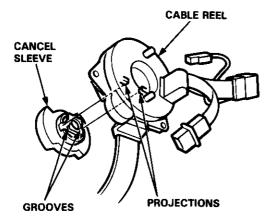


11. Remove the cable reel from the column.

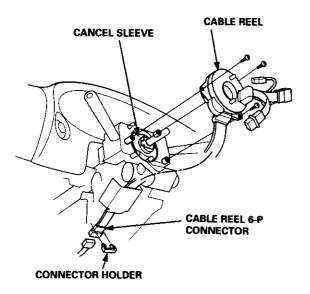


CAUTION:

- Before installing the steering wheel, the front wheels should be aligned straight ahead.
- Be sure to install the harness wires so that they are not pinched or interfering with other car parts.
- After reassembly, confirm that the wheels are still turned straight ahead and that the steering wheel spoke angle is correct (road test). If minor spoke angle adjustment is necessary, do so only by adjustment of the tie-rods, not by removing and repositioning the steering wheel.
- Align the cancel sleeve grooves with the cable reel projections.

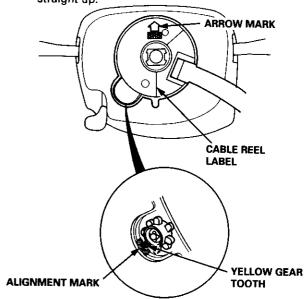


 Carefully install the cable reel on the steering column shaft. Then attach the connector holder to the steering column.



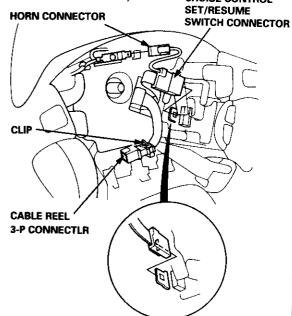
- 14. Install the steering column upper and lower covers.
- 15. Center the cable reel. Do this by first rotating the cable reel clockwise until it stops. Then rotate it counterclockwise (approximately two turns) until:
 - The yellow gear tooth lines up with the alignment mark on the cover.

 The arrow mark on the cable reel label points straight up.



Install the steering wheel and attach the cable reel
 3-P connector to the clip.

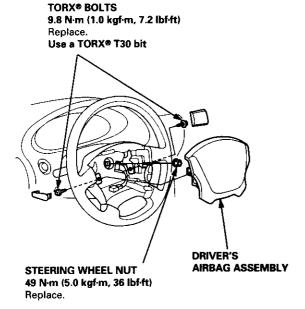
CRUISE CONTROL



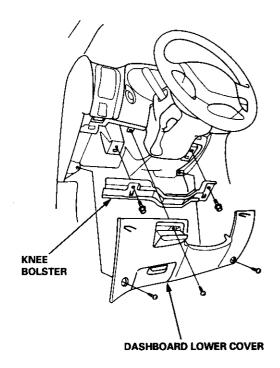
17. Connect the horn connector and cruise control set/ resume switch connector.

Cable Reel Replacement (cont'd)

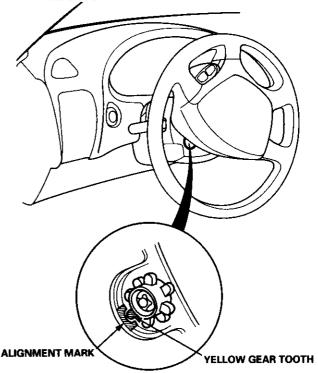
18. Install the steering wheel nut.



- 19. Install the driver's airbag assembly.
- 20. Connect the cable reel 6-P connector to the SRS main harness, then install the knee bolster and dashboard lower cover.



- 21. Remove and properly store the short connector(s) (RED), then reconnect the airbag connector(s) (and reinstall the glove box).
- Reconnect the battery positive cable, then the negative cable.
- 23. After installing the cable reel, confirm proper system operation:
 - Turn the ignition ON (II); the instrument panel SRS indicator light should go on for about six seconds and then go off.
 - Make sure both horn buttons work.
 - Make sure the headlight and wiper switches work.
 - Go for a test drive and make sure the cruise control switches work.
 - Rotate the steering wheel counterclockwise to make sure the yellow gear tooth lines up with the slot on the cover.



24. Enter the code number to restore radio operation (see page 23-191).



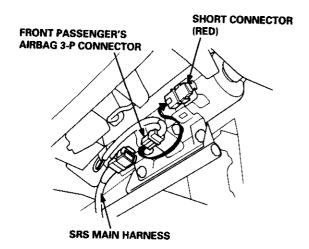
Dash Sensor Replacement

CAUTION:

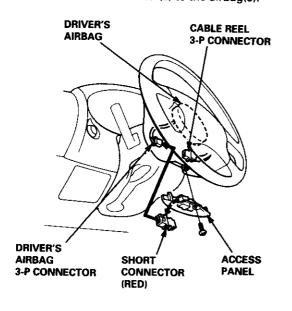
- Do not damage the sensor wiring.
- Do not install used SRS parts from another car, When repairing an SRS: use only new parts.
- Replace a sensor if it is dented, cracked, or deformed.

NOTE: The original radio has a coded theft protection circuit. Be sure to get the customer's code number before disconnecting the battery cables.

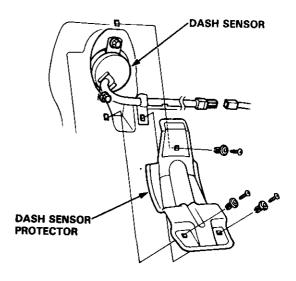
- 1. Disconnect the battery negative cable and then the positive cable.
- Remove the glove box damper (see section 20), then remove the glove box.



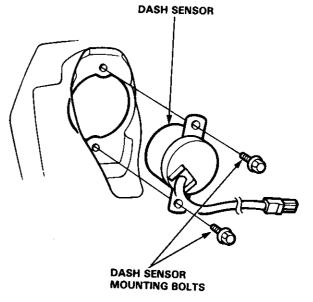
3. Connect the short connector(s) to the airbag(s).



 Remove the footrest driver's side only and door sill molding, then pull the carpet back, and remove the dash sensor protector. (Left side shown; right side is similar.)



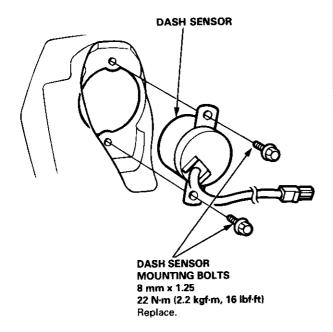
Remove the two mounting bolts, then remove the dash sensor.



Dash Sensor Replacement (cont'd)

CAUTION:

- Be sure to install the harness wires so that they are not pinched or interfering with other car parts.
- Carefully inspect the dash sensors for signs of being dropped or improperly handled, such as dents, cracks or deformation.
- For the SRS to function properly, the right and left sensors must be installed on the proper sides.
- Install the sensor securely.



7. Reinstall all other removed parts.

- Remove and properly store the short connector(s), then reconnect the airbag connector(s) (and reinstall the glove box).
- Reconnect the battery positive cable, then the negative cable.
- After installing the dash sensor, confirm proper system operation: Turn the ignition ON (II): the instrument panel SRS indicator light should come on for about six seconds and then go off.
- 11. Enter the code number to restore radio operation (see page 23-191).



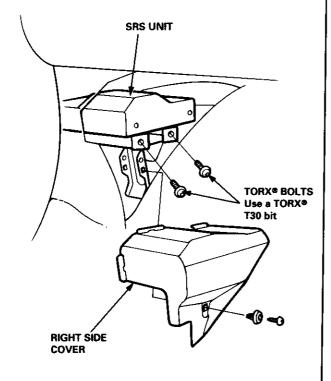
SRS Unit Replacement

CAUTION:

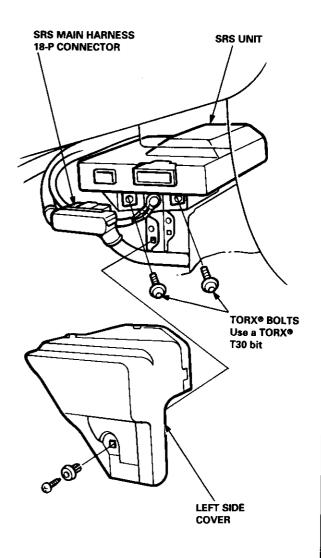
- Before disconnecting any part of the SRS wire harness, connect the short connector(s) (RED) to the airbag(s).
- Do not damage the SRS unit terminals or connectors,
- Do not disassemble the SRS unit; it has no serviceable parts.
- Store the SRS unit in a clean, dry area.
- Do not use any SRS unit which has been subjected to water damage or shows signs of being dropped or improperly handled, such as dents, cracks or deformation.

NOTE: The original radio has a coded theft protection circuit. Be sure to get the customer's code number before disconnecting the battery cables.

- Disconnect the battery negative cable, then the positive cable.
- 2. Connect the short connector(s) to the airbag(s) (see page 23-272).
- Remove the right side cover from the SRS unit.



 Remove the left side cover from the SRS unit, then disconnect the SRS main harness 18-P connector from the SRS unit.

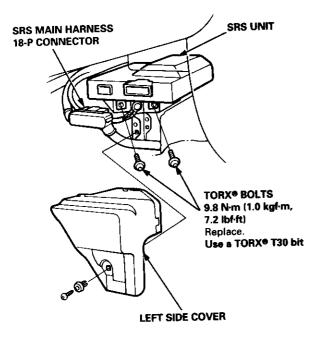


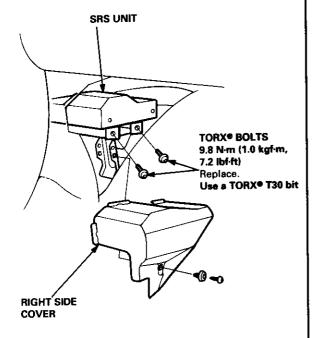
5. Remove the four TORX® bolts from the SRS unit, then pull out the SRS unit from the driver's side.

- SRS Unit Replacement (cont'd) -

CAUTION: Be sure to install the SRS wiring so that it is not pinched or interfering with other car parts.

Install the new SRS unit.





- Connect the SRS main harness 18-P connector to the SRS unit; push it into position until it clicks.
- 8. Install the SRS unit covers (right and left).

NOTE: Make sure the covers snap together in the middle.

- Remove and properly store the short connector(s), then reconnect the airbag connector(s) (and reinstall the glove box).
- 10. Reconnect the battery positive cable, then the negative cable.
- After installing the SRS unit, confirm proper system operation: Turn the ignition ON (II): the instrument panel SRS indicator light should come on for about six seconds and then go off.
- 12. Enter the code number to restore radio operation (see page 23-191).

